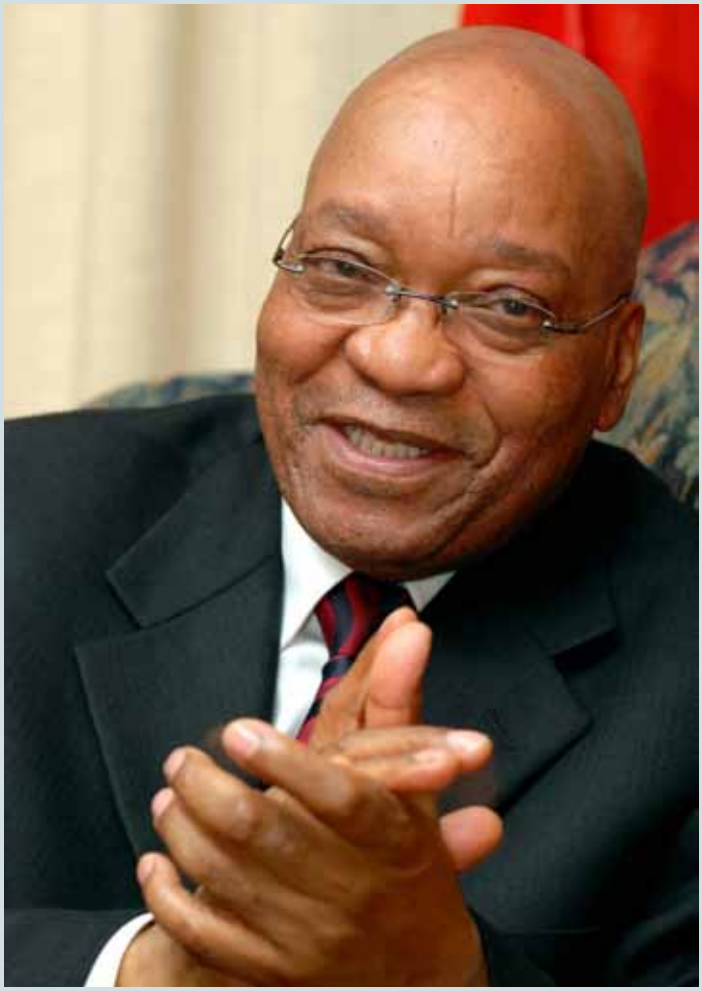
# SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2012/13

Yearbook

# Foreword



The *South Africa Yearbook 2012/13* reflects on 2012/13 as a special period for South Africa in which we celebrated, among many milestones, the 16th anniversary of the Constitution of the Republic, which gives full expression to our democratic ideals.

As President of the Republic, I declared 2012 the year of construction by launching a major national infrastructure development programme to boost the level of our economy and create jobs.

By developing the economy and creating opportunities for all South Africans, we are giving effect to the Constitutional imperative of creating a non-racist, non-sexist and prosperous South Africa.

This Yearbook extensively covers the infrastructure programme, which is driven and overseen by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC). The PICC brings together ministers, premiers and metro mayors under the leadership of the President and the Deputy President.

Government has identified critical social infrastructure projects aimed at laying the basis for the National Health Insurance (NHI) system, such as the refurbishment of health infrastructure.

As part of our infrastructure drive, R300 million has been allocated for preparatory work on two new universities in Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape, respectively. It is not every day that a country undertakes an investment on this scale in developing its human capital. Therefore, this investment demonstrates our commitment to developing the human potential of all South Africans.

The massive investment in infrastructure must leave more than just power stations, railines, dams and roads. It must also industrialise the country, generate and develop skills, and boost much needed job creation projects.

This large-scale reshaping of our physical and social environments is informed and coordinated by the National Planning Commission's National Development Plan (NDP), which the country adopted formally in August 2012.

The NDP creates a vision of a very different, more developed, more efficient and more equal South Africa in the year 2030. The plan offers a long-term perspective, defines a desired destination and identifies the role different sectors of society need to play in reaching that goal.

Fundamentally, it aims to ensure that all South Africans attain a decent standard of living through the elimination of poverty and reduction of inequality.

2012/13 was a year of challenge and achievement in all sectors of South Africa, influenced in large measure by the continuing setbacks in the global economic situation and conditions of underdevelopment in many parts of our society and economy.

It was a momentous year in which we were both inspired and challenged by the results of *Census 2011*, which outlined the progress made in key areas of our development as a nation and the problems that continue to face millions of South Africans.

It is indisputable from the census's results that South Africa is a much better place, both for its own people and as part of the African continent and global community, than it was back in 1994.

You will see this progress coursing through the *South Africa Yearbook 2012/13*, which is developed annually by the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS).

The book outlines, among other things, progress made in our key priority areas, namely: education, health, rural development and land reform, the fight against crime and creating decent work, infrastructure development and strengthening local government and increasing access to basic services.

As we get closer to celebrating 20 years of freedom, we remain committed to delivering in all our key priority areas. As government, we know that our success will be measured by how we intensify efforts in all these areas to improve the lives of our people.

As South Africans, we should continue to have one primary goal – to make our country a truly great and prosperous nation.

I trust that this Yearbook will not only leave you better informed, but that it will leave you inspired to help build a peaceful, prosperous South Africa in the spirit of Working Together.

Jacob Zuma
President of the Republic of South Africa
May 2013

# CREDITS

*South Africa Yearbook 2012/13*
Twentieth edition
(Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook)*
ISSN 0302-0681

Managing editor: Nina Bhaktawar

Editor: Louise van Niekerk

Assistant editors: Antonia Vermeulen; Jacky Hefez
Editorial support: Marié Henning

Picture researchers: Elizabeth Mpila
Images supplied by: GCIS Photo Studio; Louise van Niekerk; Tendai Gonese; SA Tourism; South African Post Office; Tshwane University of Technology; Picturenet; MediaClub South Africa; Gautrain; Uhuru Communications; Eco Images

Cover design: Yolande Dednam
Design and layout: Brenda Ryan

Compiled, edited and published by Government Communication and Information System (GCIS)
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Telephone: 012 473 0349
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*
South Africa Yearbook on Facebook:
http://www.facebook.com/#!/pages/South-Africa-Yearbook/149867311752264

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa by CTP Printers

ISBN 978-0-621-41371-7
ISSN 1022-9515
Library of Congress Catalogue Card Number: 57-40609

The *South Africa Yearbook* is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the *South Africa Yearbook*, or more detailed specific information, should consult the sources as indicated. The information is also available on *Government Online (www.gov.za)*.

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in December 2012.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Land and its people

Situated at the southern tip of Africa, South Africa boasts an amazing variety of natural beauty and an abundance of wildlife, birds, plant species and mineral wealth. In addition, its population comprises a unique diversity of people and cultures.

The southern tip of Africa is also where archaeologists discovered 2,5-million-year-old fossils of man's earliest ancestors, as well as 100 000-year-old remains of modern man.

## The land

Stretching latitudinally from 22°S to 35°S and longitudinally from 17°E to 33°E, South Africa's surface area covers 1 219 602 km$^2$.

According to *Census 2011*, the shift of the national boundary over the Indian Ocean in the north-east corner of KwaZulu-Natal to cater for the Isimangaliso Wetland Park led to the increase in South Africa's land area.

Physical features range from bushveld, grasslands, forests, deserts and majestic mountain peaks, to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

The country shares common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, while the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho is landlocked by South African territory in the south-east.

The 3 000-km shoreline stretching from the Mozambican border in the east to the Namibian border in the west is surrounded by the Atlantic and Indian oceans, which meet at Cape Point in the continent's south-western corner. Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947, lie some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town.

## The oceans and coastline

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola. The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for significant differences in climate and vegetation, as well as differences in marine life.

Owing to the cold waters of the west coast being much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

The 3 000-km coastline is an even, closed one with few bays or indentations naturally suitable for harbours.

Saldanha Bay on the west coast is the only ideal natural harbour, but the area lacks fresh water and does not offer natural lines of penetration to the interior.

## Rivers and lakes

None of the country's rivers are commercially navigable and most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year.

South Africa has no significant natural lakes, but several artificial lakes are used mostly for crop irrigation.

The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. Rising in the Drakensberg Mountains, it traverses through the Lesotho Highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern Cape and the Free State. Before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean, it forms the border with Namibia.

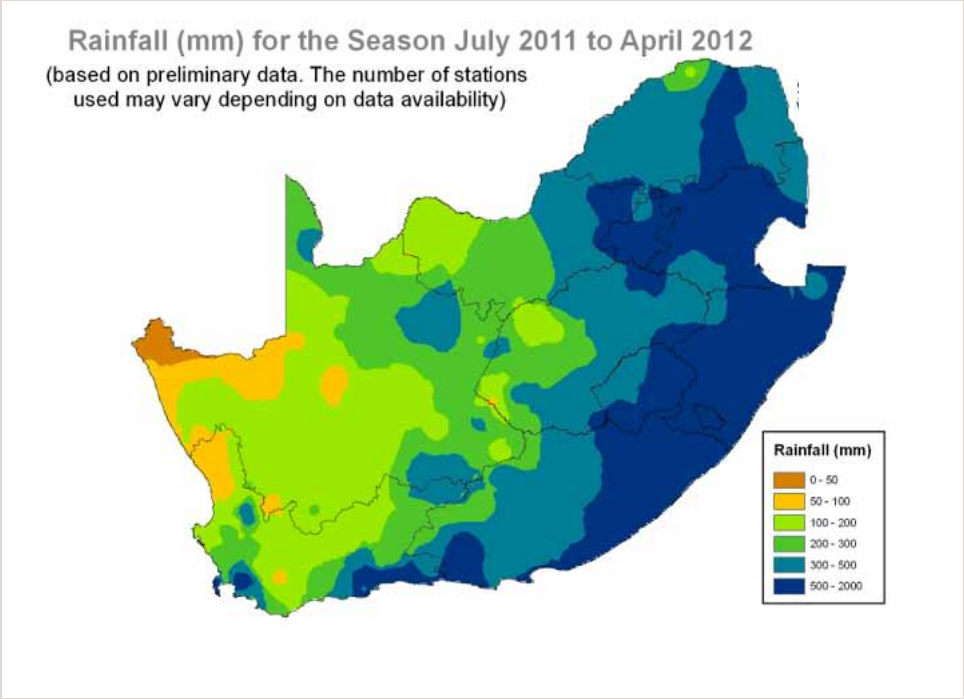
Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and Molopo rivers.

## Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast. Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most

**Rainfall (mm) for the season July 2011 to April 2012**

(Based on preliminary data. The number of stations used may vary depending on data availability)



prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised – the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

**Average temperatures (°C) in South Africa**

| City | Summer | | Winter | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Max | Min | Max | Min |
| Bloemfontein | 31 | 15 | 17 | -2 |
| Cape Town | 26 | 16 | 18 | 7 |
| Durban | 28 | 21 | 23 | 11 |
| East London | 26 | 18 | 21 | 10 |
| George | 25 | 15 | 19 | 7 |
| Johannesburg | 26 | 15 | 17 | 4 |
| Kimberley | 33 | 18 | 19 | 3 |
| Mthatha | 27 | 16 | 21 | 4 |
| Musina | 34 | 21 | 25 | 7 |
| Nelspruit | 29 | 19 | 23 | 6 |
| Pietermaritzburg | 28 | 18 | 23 | 3 |
| Polokwane | 28 | 17 | 20 | 4 |
| Port Elizabeth | 25 | 18 | 20 | 9 |
| Pretoria | 29 | 18 | 20 | 5 |
| Richards Bay | 29 | 21 | 23 | 12 |
| Skukuza | 33 | 21 | 26 | 6 |
| Thohoyandou | 31 | 20 | 24 | 10 |
| Upington | 36 | 20 | 21 | 4 |

Source: South African Weather Service

## Climate

A subtropical location, moderated by ocean on three sides of the country and the altitude of the interior plateau, account for the warm temperate conditions.

Famous for its sunshine, South Africa is a relatively dry country, with an average annual rainfall of about 464 mm, compared to a world average of about 860 mm. While the Western Cape gets most of its rainfall in winter, the rest of the country is generally a summer-rainfall region.

At the same time, temperatures in South Africa tend to be lower than in other countries at similar latitudes – such as Australia – owing mainly to greater elevation above sea level.

On the interior plateau the altitude – Johannesburg lies at 1 694 m – keeps the average summer temperatures below 30°C. In winter, for the same reason, night-time temperatures can drop to freezing point or lower in some places.

South Africa's coastal regions are therefore relatively warm in winter. There is, however, a striking contrast between temperatures on the country's east and west coasts, owing respectively to the warm Agulhas Current and cold Benguela Current that sweep the coastlines.

## The people

It is Archbishop Emeritus Desmond Tutu who coined the well-known phrase "the Rainbow Nation" to describe the melting pot of people and cultures living together in South Africa.

South Africa is a nation of diversity, with more than 50 million people and a wide variety

**Languages according to mother tongue**

| Language | Percentage | Language | Percentage |
|---|---|---|---|
| isiZulu | 22,7% | isiNdebele | 2,1% |
| isiXhosa | 16% | siSwati | 2,5% |
| Afrikaans | 13,5% | Tshivenda | 2,4% |
| Sesotho sa Leboa | 9,1% | Xitsonga | 4,4% |
| English | 9,6% | Sesotho | 7,6% |
| Setswana | 8% | Sign Language | 0,5% |

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

of cultures, languages and religious beliefs.

Black South Africans are in the majority, making up 79,2% of the population, while white and coloured people each make up about 9%, and the Indian/Asian population 2,5%.

## Languages

English is the mother tongue of only 9,6% of the population, but it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans. English is also most widely used for official and commercial communication.

Owing to South Africa's cultural diversity, the country has 11 official languages. They are Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sepedi, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

According to *Census 2011*, isiZulu is the most common home language, spoken by nearly a quarter of the population. It is followed by isiXhosa at 17,6%, Afrikaans at 13,3%, Sesotho sa Leboa at 9,4%, and Setswana and English each at 8,2%.

Government developed the Use of Official Languages Bill in 2012, as part of promoting social cohesion. Another important part of promoting social cohesion was the protection and promotion of indigenous knowledge systems, which included promoting formal indigenous knowledge education and assisting indigenous communities to establish cooperative structures to organise themselves.

## Religion

According to August 2012 polls released by the Win-Gallup International Religiosity and Atheism Index, which measures global self-perceptions on belief, religious South Africans dropped from 83% of the population in 2005 to 64% in 2012.

According to the survey, 28% of South Africans do not consider themselves religious and 4% said they were atheists.

**Eastern Cape**

**Capital:** Bhisho
**Principal languages:**

| | |
|---|---|
| isiXhosa | 78,8% |
| Afrikaans | 10,5% |
| English | 5,6% |

**Population:** 6 562 053
**Percentage share of the total population:** 12,67%
**Area:** 168 966 km²

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

## The provinces

South Africa is divided into nine provinces, each with its own legislature, premier and executive councils. They are the Western Cape, Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Northern Cape, Free State, North West, Gauteng, Mpumalanga and Limpopo.

### Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, at 169 966 km², is roughly the size of Uruguay. It is South Africa's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13,9% of the total land area.

The province has a population of more than 6,8 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

It is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the stretch known as the Wild Coast. The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

Various floral habitats meet in the province, ranging from tropical forests in the north to the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

It has airports in Port Elizabeth, East London, Mthatha and Bhisho, and boasts two major harbours in East London and Port Elizabeth respectively.

### Agriculture, fisheries and forestry

The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa. People in the former Transkei region are dependent on cattle, maize and sorghum farming. An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

The coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west, which makes it particularly suitable for forestry.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

### Industry

With two harbours and four airports offering direct flights to the main centres and an excellent road and rail infrastructure, the province has been earmarked as a key area for growth and economic development.

The Provincial Industrial Development Strategy identified the sectors that can diversify the economy and create jobs.

A total of 110 472 work opportunities had been created in the province by the end of 2011/12, which exceeded the target of 94 504 job opportunities announced for Phase 2 of the Expanded Public Works Programme. The target for 2012/13 is 116 958 work opportunities.

The two industrial development zones (IDZs) have delivered much-needed investment, with the East London IDZ securing private investors to the amount of R4,063 billion in the automotive, aquaculture, agro-processing, renewable energy and business process outsourcing sectors.

Of the R4,063 billion, R3,3 billion is earmarked for two renewable energy projects – the Langa Renewable Energy Project in Berlin, and the Ikhwezi Photovoltaic Project.

The Nelson Mandela Legacy Bridge is currently under construction at former President Nelson Mandela's birthplace, Mvezo Village in the Eastern Cape. This is likely to boost the tourism sector locally and in the province as a whole. The bridge, which joins two districts, OR Tambo to the east and Amathole to the west, will cut the distance between Mvezo Village and its closest town, Dutywa, by at least 50 minutes. Its construction contributed to job creation and skills development in the local communities, such as steel fixing, bricklaying, paving and carpentry.

The Coega IDZ now has 21 operating investors, which represents R1,24 billion in private sector investments. To date, this has created 3 645 construction jobs, and 2 985 direct jobs. Another R7,6 billion projects are being implemented.

Eskom is committed to invest over R10 billion in energy infrastructure over the next six years, including increasing transfer of power to the Nelson Mandela Bay and Buffalo City metropolitan municipalities.

A construction project on the N2 Wild Coast is estimated to create well in excess of 6 800 direct jobs and open up the Wild Coast and key towns such as Port St Johns for investment and economic development.

## Free State

The Free State, a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns, lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

According to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*, there were over 2,7 million people in the Free State on about 129 480 km$^2$ of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

In May 2011, Manguang, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, became South Africa's newest metropolitan authority. It has an established institutional, educational

**Free State**

**Capital:** Bloemfontein
**Principal languages:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Sesotho | 64,2% |
| Afrikaans | 12,2% |
| isiXhosa | 7,5% |

**Population:** 2 745 590
**Percentage share of the total population:** 5,3%
**Area:** 129 825 km²

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

and administrative infrastructure and with Bloemfontein being South Africa's judicial capital, the province houses the Supreme Court of Appeal. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem and the charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other key tourist attractions in the province include the Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg, and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, about 100 km south-west of Johannesburg, is South Africa's seventh World Heritage Site.

## Agriculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km² and natural veld and grazing 87 000 km² of the province. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

The Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme seeks to support smallholder farmers – both subsistence and commercial – as well as the beneficiaries of land-reform programmes. To this end, the Free State received R102,9 million in 2011 from government.

Known as the "bread basket" of South Africa, about 90% of the province is under cultivation for crop production. It produces about 45% of the country's sunflower crop, 34% of the total maize crop, 37% of wheat, 53% of sorghum, 33% of potatoes, and almost all of its cherries (90%). Red meat and dairy are also important products and game hunting is a fast-growing industry.

## Mining

Mining is the Free State's major employer with a gold reef of more than 400 km stretching across the Free State from Gauteng. South Africa's largest gold-mining complex is Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km².

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg.

The Free State also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

## Manufacturing and industry

The Free State economy has been very reliant on primary sectors such as agriculture and mining, but it is now increasingly growing its manufacturing sector, which accounts for about 14% of the provincial gross domestic product (GDP).

The most important manufacturing subsectors, besides chemicals, are food and beverages, textiles, furniture, agriprocessing, jewellery and engineering products.

Some 14% of the province's manufacturing is classified as being in high-technology industries – the highest of all provincial economies. The northern Free State's chemicals sector

is one of the most important in the southern hemisphere.

Petrochemicals company Sasol, based in the town of Sasolburg, is a world leader in the production of fuels, waxes, chemicals and low-cost feedstock from coal. Sasol is also the world leader in Fischer-Tropsch technology, a catalysed chemical reaction in which carbon monoxide and hydrogen are converted into liquid hydrocarbons, producing a synthetic petroleum substitute for use as synthetic lubrication oil or as synthetic fuel.

## Gauteng

Although Gauteng is the smallest of the nine provinces, it is the economic centre of South Africa and the continent. Responsible for over 34,8% of the country's and 10% of the entire continent's GDP, it is also Africa's financial-services capital.

Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

The population of 11 million people have the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport.

Johannesburg, widely referred to as Joburg and nicknamed Jozi, is the capital of the province and a city of contrasts. South of Johannesburg lies Soweto, the most populous black urban residential area in the country, with a population of more than a million.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies South Africa's administrative capital, Pretoria.

In 2012/13, the Gauteng Provincial Government spent more than R500 million on the construction and maintenance of roads in the province. Through the S'hambaSonke road maintenance project, 100 new contractors were capacitated and 6 500 jobs created, benefitting cooperatives and companies owned by women, youths and people with disabilities.

**Gauteng**

**Capital:** Johannesburg

**Principal languages:**

| | |
|---|---|
| isiZulu | 19,79% |
| Afrikaans | 12,4% |
| Sesotho | 11,5% |
| English | 13,27% |

**Population:** 12 272 263

**Percentage share of the total population:** 23,7%

**Area:** 18 178 km$^2$

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

The magnificent Union Buildings, which overlook the city from where it sits on Meintjieskop, represent the official seat of the South African Government and house the offices of the country's President. The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and GaRankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi lie to the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville. Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The province houses some of the most important educational and health centres in the country. The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa, known as Unisa, is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg. The province also has several other tertiary learning institutions such as universities of technology and further education and training colleges.

Gauteng is also home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

### Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products.

The major gold and diamond mining houses all have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers.

There are 159 mines, of which 44 are gold mines. Together they account for a quarter of South Africa's total mineral production with gold-mining constituting 80% of Gauteng's output.

Although gold-mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng's total income and 31% of export earnings.

### Technology

More than 60% of South Africa's research and development takes place in Gauteng.

The CSIR is one of South Africa's leading science and technology research, development and implementation centres. Located in Pretoria, the CSIR's research and development areas include biosciences; built environment; information and communication; materials science and manufacturing; natural resources and the environment; mineral resources; space technology; nanotechnology and synthetic biology.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

In 2012, the Climate Innovation Centre and a Bioscience Park was established at the Innovation Hub to help entrepreneurs to develop and commercialise green technologies that will help disadvantaged communities.

**KwaZulu-Natal**

**Capital:** Pietermaritzburg
**Principal languages:**
isiZulu 77,8%
English 13,1%
Afrikaans 1,5%
**Population:** 10 267 300
**Percentage share of the total population:** 19,8%
**Area:** 94 361 km$^2$

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

### Industry and agriculture

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle". The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

## KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal, or "KZN" as it is widely known, is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. It includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast – washed by the warm Indian Ocean, stretching from Port Edward in the south to Mozambique in the north.

The province also boasts sweeping grasslands in the east and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate. The Midlands area is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

The province has a population of more than 10 million people living on 92 100 km$^2$ of land. isiZulu is spoken by the majority of the people, followed by English.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy,

In August 2012, President Jacob Zuma unveiled a statue of former President Nelson Mandela in Howick at the site where he was arrested in 1962. Howick is famous for its beautiful scenery and its close proximity to the magnificent Howick Falls, a major landmark and popular tourist attraction.

north of Durban or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

The province boasts several nature reserves including the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

It also has several tertiary institutions of learning, including the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

### Industry and agriculture

KwaZulu-Natal has a diverse industrial sector, with major industries having developed around the port of Durban, as well as agricultural and forestry industries.

Major industries in the province are agriculture, forestry, aluminium, petro-chemicals, automotive manufacturing, steel production, plastics and packaging, paper and board manufacturing, and a range of industries associated with imports and exports though the two major ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

Richards Bay is the centre of operations for South Africa's aluminium industry. The Richards Bay Coal Terminal is instrumental in securing the country's position as the world's second-largest exporter of steam coal.

Richards Bay Minerals is the largest sand-mining and mineral-processing operation in the world.

A 50-year master plan is being developed by the Richards Bay IDZ aimed at attracting billions from investment and at positioning the IDZ to take advantage of business opportunities emanating from government's new special economic zone strategy. The sugar-cane plantations along the Indian Ocean coastal belt form the mainstay of the region's economy and agriculture.

The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

## Limpopo

South Africa's northernmost province shares borders with Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, natural beauty and historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa; Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane;

**Limpopo**

**Capital:** Polokwane

**Principal languages:**
Sesotho sa Leboa 52,9%
Tshivenda 16,7%
Xitsonga 16,9%

**Population:** 5 404 868

**Percentage share of the total population:** 10,4%

**Area:** 125 754 km$^2$

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

The provincial "Ku Luma Vukanyi" (Tasting of the First Fruit) Ceremony is celebrated in Limpopo in February each year to mark the start of the marula season. Marula trees grow abundantly in the northern and northeastern parts of Limpopo. It is not only a source of nutrition, but is also used for a variety of other products such as traditional medicine, haircare products, beer, jam and soap.

Between January and March each year, hundreds of unemployed women from rural Limpopo make marula beer which they sell to locals, as well as in Johannesburg and other parts of Gauteng. The money they earn help them to support their families.

Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, which is well-known for its majestic baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi are Limpopo's major mining centres, while the town of Tzaneen in the picturesque Magoebaskloof is known for its tea plantations, forestry products and tropical fruits.

*Census 2011* statistics indicate that the province's 5,5 million people live on about 123 910 km$^2$ of land. The majority speak Sesotho sa Leboa, followed by Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. Natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown.

Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of the Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950AD to 1200AD.

### Agriculture

Limpopo produces a wide range of agricultural products. The area is a potato belt and is known for its superior quality potatoes for high-end markets. It also produces 75% of the country's mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas and litchis; 60% of its avocados and two thirds of its tomatoes.

Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, tobacco, cotton, sunflower, maize, wheat and grapes. In addition, more than 170 plantations produce timber.

Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat), which is a popular South African delicacy.

### Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province's economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. Metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay.

Other reserves include antinomy, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

The Medupi power station, a new dry-cooled, coal-fired power station, is under construction near Lephalale. It is expected to create around 40 000 job opportunities.

## Mpumalanga

Spectacular scenic beauty and an abundance of wildlife, make the province one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

Mpumalanga, which means "Place Where the Sun Rises", is home to just more than 3,6 million people, according to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates 2011 Report*, with the principle languages being Siswati en isiZulu

With a surface area of only 79 490 km$^2$, it is the second-smallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west, it is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks terminating in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The province has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Owing to its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela (previously Nelspruit) is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld area. Other important towns are eMalahleni (previously Witbank), Standerton, Piet Retief, Malelane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie, which lies in the centre of one of the largest man-made forests in the world. Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, facilitates economic development and growth for the region.

## Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate. The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on the high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

Agriculture, as the backbone of the province's economy, employs 8,1% of its total workforce, compared to the national average of 4,7%. Although the agricultural sector's contribution to the province's GDP has declined from 4,2% in 1996 to 3,5% in 2010, the comparative advantage of agriculture over the same industry in the national economy remains, providing the province with expansion opportunities within the sector.

An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's orange exports. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in the city.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also grown there.

## Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol 2 and Sasol 3 are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing.

In the Lowveld subregion, industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo will stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves with eMalahleni the biggest coal producer in Africa. South Africa's major power stations are situ-

**Mpumalanga**

**Capital:** Nelspruit
**Principal languages:**

| | |
|---|---|
| siSwati | 27,67% |
| isiZulu | 24,1% |
| isiNdebele | 10% |

**Population:** 4 039 939
**Percentage share of the total population:** 7,8%
**Area:** 76 495 km²

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

ated in this province. Kendal power station's cooling towers are currently the largest structures of their type in the world. When Kusile power station near Delmas is completed in 2016, it will be the country's biggest, contributing a massive 4 800 megawatts of electricity to the national grid.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg, which produces steel and vanadium, is home to Columbus Stainless, South Africa's only producer of stainless steel flat products.

## Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest province, taking up almost a third of the country's total land area. However, the province is sparsely populated with only 1,1 million people on 361 830 km$^2$ of land.

Afrikaans is spoken by about 68% of the people, while Setswana, isiXhosa and English are also widely spoken.

The last remaining true San (Bushman) people live in the Kalahari area, mainly along the Orange and Vaal rivers. Many fossils and San rock engravings have been found here, some of which are displayed at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry. The Northern Cape borders the Atlantic Ocean in the west with Namibia and Botswana to the north-west and north, respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border.

**Northern Cape**

**Capital:** Kimberley

**Principal languages:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Afrikaans | 53,75% |
| Setswana | 33,08% |

**Population:** 1 145 861
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)

**Percentage share of the total population:** 2,2%

**Area:** 372 889 km$^2$

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

With two major airports at Kimberley and Upington, and an excellent road network, the province's interior is easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports. Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

In May 2012, the Northern Cape was chosen as one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array radio-telescope (better known as the SKA Project). Developed by scientists from 17 countries, it will be the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world. Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is benefiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties, are flooding into the town of Carnarvon.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, including the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park and Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the dry Nama-Karoo Biome, which contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man) tree, aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents. The area is well known for its spectacular annual explosion of spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists.

### Agriculture and industry

The economy of the province's Karoo region depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district.

The province has fertile agricultural land, especially in the Orange River Valley, where at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes a variety of fruit is cultivated. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton facilitates the production of wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton.

Wine is also produced in the Northern Cape's Orange River wine region, which accounts for 25,6% of South Africa's Colombard vines and 10% of Chenin Blanc. The 2010/11 production season will be remembered for the floods in

the middle and especially the lower parts of the Orange River. A second spell of flooding occurred in early February 2011, which caused large-scale damage to crops and agricultural infrastructure.

In 2012, work was underway to add 40 000 tons of grapes to meet the shortage in the production of grapes for wine, juice and raisins. To this end, the Northern Cape Vineyard Development Scheme was formed with the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development, the National Agricultural Marketing Council, the Land Bank, Distell, Winetech and Oranjerivier Wynkelders, better known as OWK.

The Niewoudtville Rooibos Tea processing initiative is centred on development and economic empowerment of the smallholder farmers. It is aimed at unlocking economic potential, creating sustainable jobs and increasing the skills base. The installation of the pasteurisation equipment has been completed and tea has been exported to countries such as Germany, Spain and Japan.

## Mining

Mining contributes 27,6% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by a demand for steel from China. Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela (previously known as South Sishen). New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining, in contrast, has seen declining volumes and jobs losses. Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The province also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

## North West

South Africa's North West province is bordered by Botswana in the north and is fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province", owing to its wealth of this precious metal.

**North West**

**Capital:** Mahikeng
**Principal languages:**
Setswana 63,38%
Afrikaans 8,96%%
isiXhosa 5,51%
**Population:** 3 509 953
**Percentage share of the total population:** 6,8%
**Area:** 140 882 km$^2$

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

The province has a population of 3,2 million people who mainly speak Setswana.

Mafikeng is the capital city and well known for the Mafikeng Siege, which took place in October 1899 during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Most of the province's economic activity is concentrated between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as in Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83,3% of the province's economic activity takes place.

The province boasts a variety of tourist attractions including Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve, and the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust. A portion of one of South Africa's seven Unesco world heritage sites also fall within the borders of North West namely the Taung hominid fossil site, which has been incorporated into South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.

## Mining and manufacturing

Mining contributes 23,3% to the North West's economy, and makes up 22,5% of the South African mining industry. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of the province's total employment.

North West's manufacturing sector is centred in the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mafikeng, which account for more than 50% of the province's total manufacturing production.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry. In the manufacturing arena, auto motive parts, machinery, electronic, audio, and medical equipment are manufactured using local materials and resources.

### Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. The areas around Rustenburg and Brits are fertile, mixed-crops farming land, with maize and sunflowers being the most important crops.

## Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of the African continent, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbsch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

According to *Census 2011*, about 5,8 million people live in the Western Cape on 129 370 km$^2$ of land. Afrikaans is spoken by the majority, with isiXhosa and English being the other main languages. *Census 2011* statstics also indicate that the Western Cape has the lowest rate of unemployment.

**Western Cape**

**Capital:** Cape Town
**Principal languages:**
Afrikaans 49,6%
isiXhosa 24,7%
English 20,2%
**Population:** 5 822 734
**Percentage share of the total population:** 11,2%
**Area:** 129 462 km$^2$

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2011*)

The province has a strong network of higher education institutions including the universities of Cape Town, Stellenbosch and the Western Cape, and has the highest adult education level in the country.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Cape Town, often referred to as the "Mother City", houses Parliament and is South Africa's legislative capital.

Visitors to the province can disembark at one of the province's two main airports, Cape Town International or George Airport or at the seaports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay and Saldanha.

### Agriculture and fisheries

The Western Cape's sheltered valleys between mountains are ideal for the cultivation of export-grade fruit such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges.

A variety of vegetables is cultivated in the eastern part of the Western Cape, while the Swartland and Overberg districts are well-known as the country's prime wheat-growing areas.

The agricultural sector is critical for the Western Cape economy, accounting for 60% of regional exports.

South Africa's 300-year-old wine industry is based in the south of the province. The region produces 3,1% of the world's wine and ranks as number nine in overall volume production, with 100 200 ha under vines for wine production.

Some 75% of all South African fishing take place along the Western Cape coastline. The rich fishing grounds on the west coast are protected from exploitation by a 200 km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the delicacies produced in these waters.

Key exports are also fruit, wine, wool and ostrich. The high quality of exports, combined with the relative weakness of the local currency, makes the products some of the most affordable high-quality exports in the world.

Hortgro, the fruit industry body, in partnership with the Western Cape Department of Agriculture, is establishing 600 ha of fruit trees for various empowerment projects, creating 570 permanent and 545 temporary job opportunities.

In 2012, the department allocated R11 million towards food security projects. Six Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) wine firms exhibited their wines in Nigeria in 2012; another six travelled to Holland for business and 22 wine businesses, six of which were BEE, participated in the Yantai International Wine Show in China.

## Industry

The Western Cape economy contributes roughly 14,5% to South Africa's GDP, growing at an average of 3,2% a year. Sectors such as finance, real estate, information and communication technology, retail and tourism have shown substantial growth, and are the main contributors to the regional economy.

Cape Town remains the economic hub of the province, encompassing industrial areas such as Epping, Montague Gardens, Parow and Retreat.

Many of South Africa's major insurance companies and banks, as well as petroleum companies and the largest segment of the printing and publishing industry are based in the Western Cape.

After Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape's manufacturing sector is the third-largest contributor to the national manufacturing sector. The clothing and textile industry remains the most significant industrial source of employment in the province.

## Acknowledgements

Original text by Theuns and Heila van Rensburg
*Beeld*
*Provincial Economies* (May 2003), published by the Department of Trade and Industry
*Community Survey 2007*, published by Statistics South Africa
*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2012*, published by Statistics South Africa
SAPA
South African Weather Service
*http://cms.privatelabel.co.za*
*www.capegateway.gov.za*
*www.cesa.org.za*
*www.clarens.co.za*
*www.cr/commission.org.za*
*www.engineeringnews.co.za*
*www.freestatebusiness.co.za*
*www.gauteng.net*
*www.gautengonline.gov.za*
*www.gdace.gpg.gov.za*
*www.geda.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.inw.org.za*
*www.iol.co.za/mercury*
*www.joburg.org.za*
*www.kzntransport.gov.za*
*www.mpumalangacompanies.co.za*
*www.mpumalangainfotourism.info*
*www.news24.co.za*
*www.northerncapebusiness.co.za*
*www.pansalb.org.za*
*www.places.co.za*
*www.sacc.org.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sa-venues.com*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.southafrica.net*
*www.theinnovationhub.com*
*www.thenewage.co.za*
*www.tourismnorthwest.co.za*
*www.tradeinvestsa.co.za*
*www.un.org*
*www.weathersa.co.za*
*www.yeboweb.co.za*
*www.zulu.org.za*

## Suggested reading

Biko, S. 2012. *I Write What I Like: A Selection of His Writings*. Johannesburg: Picador Africa.
Chidester, D. 2012. *Wild Religion: Tracking the Sacred in South Africa.* Berkeley: University of California Press.
De Jongh, M. 2012. *Roots & Routes: The Karretjie People of the Great Karoo.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Dickow, H. 2012. *Religion & Attitudes Towards Life in South Africa: Pentecosts, Charismatics and Reborns.* Nomos Publishers.
Johnson, D. 2012. *Imagining the Cape Colony: History, Literature, and the South African Nation.* Claremont: UCT Press.
Gumede, WM. 2012. *Making Sense of Troubled Times.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Kuljian, C. 2013. *Sanctuary*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Mahoney, MR. 2012. *The Other Zulus: The Spread of Zulu Ethnicity in Colonial South Africa*. Durham: Duke University Press.
Molema, SM. 2012. *Lover of His People: A Biography of Sol Plaatje*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Moletsane, R, Mitchell, C & Smith, A. 2012. *Was it Something I Wore? Dress, Identity, Materiality*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Naidoo, M. [2012]. *Between the Ideal and the Real: Ministerial Formation in South African Churches*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Ngcobo, LG. 2012. *Prodigal Daughters: Stories of South African Women in Exile*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

WE
STAND
BY OUR
LEADERS

# History

## The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi(n) and San (the “Hottentots” and “Bushmen” of early European terminology), although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples.

The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and, later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which, generally, are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or “Highveld”, where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities.

Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trad-

The Taung Heritage Site is of enormous scientific importance. It was at these limestone diggings at the old Buxton quarry in 1924 that the lime-encrusted skull of a child was unearthed. Prof Raymond Dart, who discovered the skull belonging to an early hominid, named it "*Australopithecus africanus*" meaning the "southern ape of Africa". The Taung Heritage Site is dedicated to the discovery of this skull. There is monument to the discovery at the site and an old mine tunnel has been opened for exploration.

ing economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope.

Currently, aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

### The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoekhoe(n) for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions from the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities.

As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the Xhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east.

It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion.

As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

### The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims. The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

The first British Settlers, known as the 1820 Settlers, arrived in Algoa Bay, (now Nelson Mandela Bay) on board 21 ships, the first being the Chapman. They numbered about 4 500 and included artisans, tradesmen, ministers of religion, merchants, teachers, bookbinders, blacksmiths, as well as discharged sailors and soldiers, professional men and farmers.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns.

One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation.

The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and

exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot.

Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms.

The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land.

Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu state, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape.

South Africa's diamond-mining industry dates back to 1867, when diamonds were discovered near Kimberley in the Northern Cape. The Kimberley diamond fields, and later discoveries in Gauteng, the Free State, and along the Atlantic coast, emerged as major sources of gem-quality diamonds, securing South Africa's position as the world's leading producer in the mid-20th century.

Far more than diamonds, the discovery of gold changed South Africa from an agricultural society to become the largest gold producer in the world. Gold increased trade between South Africa and the rest of the world. For the main trading nations, i.e. Europe and the United States, gold was of value because their currencies were backed by gold in accordance with the gold standard. Under the gold standard the price of gold was fixed internationally.

Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was entrenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indian-indentured labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that Africans and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of Africans within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

### The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated Africans for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance.

At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands

of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become Prime Minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The Transvaal was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) state, which fell within the republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895.

The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, Africans exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase

The War Museum in Bloemfontein provides an insight into the Anglo-Boer/South African War bringing the visitor closer to understanding the background against which the war took place. Exhibits include a unique art collection of striking paintings depicting battle scenes; dioramas; photos from concentration camps in South Africa as well as in Bermuda, India and Portugal; documents and memorabilia from the war. Apart from a few modern touches this museum remains untouched from its inception.

production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to Africans were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of Africans into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying Africans rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Africans could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa", but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs". Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations". This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and later (from 1948) apartheid.

### The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war.

In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

> The Anglo-Boer/South African War was the bloodiest, longest and most expensive war Britain engaged in between 1815 and 1915. It cost more than 200 million Pounds (Sterling) and more than 22 000 British soldiers died. On the Boer side, more than 34 000 people were killed, including about 15 000 black South Africans.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves for employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used Africans as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the

forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war.

Most Africans supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for Africans to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for Africans.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The most important priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the Africans back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, African resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of Africans came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants.

This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The Africans' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide.

The National Convention drew up a constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

### Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to Africans' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights.

Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent.

An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on African political life, and separa-

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg, which reflects the rise and fall of South Africa's era of racial segregation, has become one of Gauteng's leading tourist attractions. The museum provides a chilling insight into the architecture and implementation of the apartheid system, as well as inspiring accounts of the struggle towards democracy.

A multi-discipliniary team of curators, historians filmmakers, museologists and designers developed the museum's exhibits, which set out to animate the apartheid story using material such as blown-up photographs, artefacts, newspaper clippings, and film footage.

tist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion.

The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part.

A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as JT Jabavu, Pixley Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube, serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest.

Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by Gandhi in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizen and black non-citizen, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also regularised the job colour bar, reserving skilled work for white people and denying African workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act, 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled African mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws

were designed to force Africans into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines.

As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force.

In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

In June 2011, the National Heritage Council, the Department of Arts and Culture and the Umkhonto we Sizwe Military Veterans Association (MKMVA) hosted an awards ceremony to honour some of the living heroes of the Rivonia Trial. The awards served as a build-up to the 50th anniversary of the founding of Umkhonto we Sizwe on 16 December 1961. President Jacob Zuma presented four of the living Rivonia trialists, Andrew Mlangeni, Denis Goldberg, Nelson Mandela and Ahmed Kathrada, with honorary awards. Family members of the deceased trialists were also present to receive posthumous awards on behalf of their relatives.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the “poor-white problem”.

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the Africans of the Cape Province who qualified from the common voters’ roll. Meanwhile, Malan’s breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

### Apartheid

After the Second World War in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of

relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves.

The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent.

For those who supported the NP, its prim ary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The state became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activ-ities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas".

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development", divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations", each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence", supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to

In 1994, the ANC emerged from the first democratic elections with a 62% majority. The main opposition came from the NP, which gained 20% of the vote nationally, and a majority in the Western Cape. The Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) received 10% of the vote, mainly in KwaZulu-Natal. On 10 May 1994, Nelson Mandela was inaugurated as South Africa's first democratically elected President at the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed.

Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s.

Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education to healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour.

However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

### The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The state's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963.

In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia.

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces.

Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics from the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

As capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973, black trade unions revived.

A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and was drawing new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation).

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zim-

babwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance.

An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of Africans outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting.

Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The South African History Archive and Historical Papers (Library, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg) have undertaken a joint digital archive initiative, sponsored by the Atlantic Philanthropies Foundation. It is aimed at developing a non-commercial digital and electronic archive of material from assorted media relating to the work of South Africa's Truth and Reconciliation Commission, and is available on the internet where it can be accessed at *http://truth.wwl.wits.ac.za/about.php.*

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être*. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner élite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

### The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the state, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

In 2011, government undertook a 10-year census designed to assess developments and to identify service-delivery needs. Through *Census 2011*, government gained comprehensive information on the population dynamics at all levels of society with the main output being the size, nature, characteristics and geographic location of South Africa's population. More than 14 million households were visited.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The NP and the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led Government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the First Decade of Freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to

planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, roving executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly engage directly with the public around implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mandela. It saw a sharp decline of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

In May 2012, South Africa's Elon Musk, an engineer, entrepreneur and creator of Space Exploration Technologies (SpaceX), made history when he proved what could be achieved when innovation and creativity are expertly blended.

The company's SpaceX Falcon 9 rocket and Dragon capsule grabbed international headlines by successfully launching from Cape Canaveral in the United States to become the first space launch by a private company in the history of space flight.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit in June 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the summit, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the First Decade of Freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and health-care, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces.

South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003.

In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September of that year.

By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in among other countries, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the First Decade of Freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It played host to several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented on international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

### The Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development.

As government took stock of the First Decade of Freedom in the *Towards a Ten Year Review*, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights inscribed in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, President Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party

based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which were about 2,5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%; the DA 16,6%; the newly formed Congress of the People (Cope) 7,4%; the IFP 4,5%; and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. Shortly thereafter, President Zuma announced several changes to existing government departments and the creation of new structures within The Presidency. The latter essentially comprises the Ministry for Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration and the National Planning Ministry, in keeping with the new administration's approach to intensify government delivery through an outcomes-based approach, coupled with a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system.

Government has adopted 12 outcomes as focus areas for its work. These included among others: improving the quality of basic education and health services, strengthening the fight against crime, creating decent employment through inclusive growth, boosting skills development. It also included ensuring food security for all, building sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life, improving local government structures and an efficient and development-oriented public service.

A major part of making the outcomes a reality lies in escalating the extent to which government departments are accountable for their delivery areas. The President has signed performance agreements with all 34 Cabinet ministers.

Delivery agreements further unpack each outcome and each output and the requirements to reach the targets. The performance monitoring and evaluation systems that have been put in place continue to be built upon so that the work of government towards achieving these outcomes is consistently tracked.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the Second Decade of Freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world.

The 2011 local government elections, held in May, were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57,6% registered voter turnout – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23,9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and Cope.

As part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission (NPC) in The Presidency finalised the draft *National Development Plan: Vision for 2030* in 2011. The plan was a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa.

By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

In August 2012, the Chairperson of the NPC, Minister Trevor Manuel, handed the revised National Development Plan 2030 over to President Zuma during a Joint Sitting of both Houses in Parliament. The revised document, entitled *Our future – make it work*, is a policy

The year 2013 marks the 100th anniversary of the Union Buildings in Pretoria. Situated on Meintjies Kop overlooking the city, the Union Buildings was originally built to house the entire Public Service of the Union of South Africa. It now not only houses the offices of the President, and is the site of presidential inaugurations, but is also a major tourist attraction.

Designed by Sir Herbert Baker in 1908, building began in 1909 and was completed by 1913. At the time, it was the largest building in the country and possibly the largest construction work undertaken in the Southern Hemisphere. It took about 1 265 artisans, workmen and labourers almost three years to build, using 14 million bricks for the interior office walls, half a million cubic feet of freestone, 74 000 cubic yards of concrete, 40 000 bags of cement and 20 000 cubic feet of granite.

blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030.

Implementation of the plan will be broken up into five-year chunks, in line with the electoral cycle, with the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework forming the first five-year building block of the plan.

The Presidency will lead the formulation of the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework, which includes key targets from the NDP and other plans such as the New Growth Path, National Infrastructure Plan and Industry Policy Action Plan.

The Presidency and National Treasury will work with government departments to clarify roles and responsibilities, ensure that plans and budgets are aligned, and develop clear performance indicators for each programme.

Government will focus on areas where implementation of existing policies need to improve and hold focused dialogues to overcome obstacles to implementation. It will also engage with other sectors to understand how they are contributing to the NDP's implementation and to identify any obstacles they face.

The 2019 to 2024 and 2024 to 2029 planning cycles will be used to initiate the remaining activities and will be informed by a performance review of the previous cycle.

The objective of a better life for the people of South Africa, the continent of Africa and the world at large was at the heart of the country's successful hosting of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties in Durban towards the end of 2011. Aware of the fact that Africa is the continent most affected by the impact of climate change, South Africa was committed to ensure that Durban delivered a fair and balanced outcome that would help secure the future of our planet. The resulting Durban Platform outcome was a coup for South Africa and the African continent.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, South Africa began its second term as a nonpermanent member of the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the period 2011 and 2012. South Africa serves alongside the permanent five members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, and elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal. It was the UNSC President in January 2012, which saw the adoption of Resolution 2033 that provides for closer cooperation between the UN and the AU.

In the conduct of its international relations, South Africa is committed to garner support for its domestic priorities, promote the interests of the African continent, enhance democracy and human rights, uphold justice and international law in relations between nations, seek the peaceful resolution of conflicts and promote economic development through regional and international cooperation in an interdependent world.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

On 25 May 2012 the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa.

Following a competitive bidding process, South Africa and Australia were both shortlisted in 2006 as potential sites for building the SKA. Both countries have invested a huge amount in this project – including building pathfinder radio telescopes with associated physical infrastructure, and developing capacity with the skills and expertise to build and use the SKA.

The full dish array and the dense aperture array will be built in Africa. The core, i.e. the region with the highest concentration of receivers, will be constructed in the Northern Cape, about 80 km from the town of Carnarvon (the same site where the MeerKAT is being constructed). The sparse aperture array (low-frequency array) will be built in Western Australia.

Over the next four years, teams of radio astronomy scientists and engineers from around the world will work together to scope and finalise the design of the SKA.

In July 2012, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, then Minister of Home Affairs, was elected as the first female head of the AU Commission and the first person from South Africa to hold this position. In September 2012, she received the UN South-South Award for Global Leadership.

In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47-member Economic and Social Council (Ecosoc). Ecosoc is one of the principal organs of the UN, alongside the Security Council and General Assembly. South Africa completed its two-year non-renewable, non-permanent membership of the Security Council on 31 December 2012, and immediately assumed the membership of Ecosoc on 1 January 2013. South Africa last served in Ecosoc from 2004 to 2006.

Released in September 2012, the World Economic Forum's *Global Competitiveness Report 2012/13* confirmed that South Africa remained the most competitive economy in sub-Saharan Africa. The report said South Africa's financial market development, which was ranked third, indicated high confidence in the country's financial markets at a time when trust was returning only slowly in many other parts of the world.

On 30 October 2012, Stats SA released the Census 2011 results. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa. The exercise saw 156 000 field staff employed to count more than 14,6 million households.

Results showed that the country's population grew to 51,8 million people from 44,8 million in 2001, representing a 15,5% increase over the last decade.

Results also indicate that Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal account for 42% of South Africa's population, with Gauteng overtaking KwaZulu-Natal as the most populous province in the country, surpassing it by two million.

The fastest growing province in South Africa is the Western Cape that grew at 29%, followed by Gauteng, Mpumalanga and North West, which grew collectively at 26% between the two censuses. The rest of the provinces grew at 6%.

In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the President of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung. Cyril Ramaphosa was elected as the party's deputy president.

During 2012, South African sports stars excelled in various sporting codes. The country produced three Olympic champions and eight Paralympic golds. Chad le Clos made headlines worldwide when he beat Michael Phelps in the 200-m butterfly to win gold.

The mining sector, which is historically the backbone of South Africa's economy, faced labour unrest during 2012, culminating in wildcat strikes at Marikana where sadly more than 44 people were killed. An inter-ministerial committee made up of senior Cabinet ministers was established to assist families, while a

judicial commission of inquiry led by Judge Ian Farlam investigated the tragic events.

While the events at Marikana had repercussions on the country's political economy, it also brought together government, business leaders, labour unions and various other stakeholders, who met in October 2012. Out of this meeting came an agreement to work together to strengthen bargaining, address the housing problems and living conditions in mining towns and identify measures to reduce inequality, create better standards of living and above all, create and sustain open channels of communication to prevent similar events from ever happening again.

Violent strikes by farmworkers, especially in the Western Cape, which started in November 2012, led to the announcement of a new minimum wage of R105 per day for farmworkers for the next three years, starting from 1 March 2013. The minister's announcement was preceded by a taxing process by the Employment Conditions Commission.

In January 2013, Amina Cachalia, a staunch anti-apartheid activist, passed away at the age of 82. Cachalia participated in the 1952 Defiance Campaign and the 1956 Women's March against the apartheid pass laws. In 2004, she received the Order of Luthuli in Bronze for her lifetime contribution to the struggle for gender equality, non-racialism and a free and democratic South Africa.

Another struggle veteran, Phyllis Naidoo, died in February 2013 at the age of 85. Naidoo, who was also well-known as an author, wrote seven books, including the "Footsteps" series and *Le Rona Re Batho: An Account of the 1982 Maseru Massacre*. In 2003, she received the Order of Luthuli in silver for her outstanding contribution to human rights and the struggle against apartheid.

## Acknowledgements

*www.gov.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sahistory.org.za*

## Suggested reading

Alexander, N. 2012. *Thoughts on the New South Africa*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Dubow, S. 2012. *South Africa's Struggle for Human Rights*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Field, S. 2012. *Oral History, Community, and Displacement: Imagining Memories in Post-apartheid South Africa*. New York: Palgrave.
Irwin, RM. 2012. *Gordian Knot: Apartheid and the Unmaking of the Liberal World Order*. New York: Oxford University Press.
Landman, JP. 2012. *The Long View: Is South Africa Becoming a Modern and Developed Country?* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Mathebe, L. 2012. *Mandela & Mbeki – The Hero and the Outsider.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Nasson, B. 2012. *South Africa at War, 1939 – 1945*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Smith, C. 2012. *Mandela: In Celebration of a Great Life*. Cape Town: Struik.
Steenkamp, W. 2012. *Assegais, Drums and Dragoons: A Military and Social History of the Cape, 1510 – 1806*. Jeppestown: Jonathan Ball.
Swart, I. 2012. *Welfare, Religion and Gender in Post-apartheid South Africa: Constructing a South-North Dialogue*. Stellenbosch: Sun Press.
Terreblanche, SJ. 2012. *Lost in Transformation: South Africa's Search for a New Future Since 1986*. Johannesburg: KMM Review Pub Co.
Van Heyningen, E. 2013. *The Concentration Camps of the South African War: A Social History* Auckland Park: Jacana Media..

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

The agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors are crucial to South Africa's socio-economic development. However, the future of these sectors depend on critical issues such as climate change, population growth, skills shortages, changes in consumer needs and shifts in the global economy and related markets.

The key priorities of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries are therefore aligned to alleviating poverty, creating employment and improving food security. Added to this, the department focuses on the conservation and sustainable use of the country's natural resources in the agricultural, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The department's overall responsibilities include production and resource management, agricultural support services, trade and economic development, food safety and biosecurity, forestry and marine aquaculture.

As one of the most employment-intensive sectors of the economy, agriculture's potential impact on empowerment and poverty relief is much larger than its actual weight in the economy suggests.

While the primary agricultural sector contributes about 3% to the country's gross domestic product (GDP), it represents about 7% of formal employment. If the entire value chain of agriculture is taken into account, its contribution to GDP reaches about 12%.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle-ranching in the bushveld and sheep-farming in the more arid regions. About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million ha are under irrigation.

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa, with a sig-

About 8,5 million people depend on agriculture for their employment and income. Government's New Growth Path has targeted job opportunities for 300 000 households in agriculture smallholder schemes and 145 000 jobs in agro-processing. This in turn will have the potential to upgrade conditions for 660 000 farm workers by 2020. The department is committed to creating 130 000 jobs in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors by 2014.

nificant contribution towards economic growth and job creation. Therefore, the expansion of South Africa's forest resources remains one of the department's main objectives to ensure growth, transformation and sustainability of the sector.

As a natural resource, the fisheries sector is also recognised as a potential area for economic growth. The mandate for fisheries management includes fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture.

**Gross value of agricultural production, 2011 (R' million)**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Field crops** | |
| Maize | 16 670 |
| Wheat | 4 340 |
| Hay | 3 141 |
| Grain sorghum | 297 |
| Sugar cane | 5 292 |
| Groundnuts | 374 |
| Tobacco | 455 |
| Sunflower seed | 3 340 |
| Soya beans | 2 255 |
| Other | 1 878 |
| **Total** | **38 042** |
| **Horticulture** | |
| Viticulture | 3 733 |
| Citrus fruit | 6 888 |
| Subtropical fruit | 2 364 |
| Deciduous and other fruit | 8 958 |
| Vegetables | 8 320 |
| Potatoes | 5 057 |
| Other | 2 136 |
| **Total** | **37 456** |
| **Animal products** | |
| Wool | 2 074 |
| Poultry and poultry products | 32 664 |
| Cattle and cattle products | 17 259 |
| Sheep and goats slaughtered | 3 788 |
| Pigs slaughtered | 3 228 |
| Milk | 9 200 |
| Other | 3 572 |
| **Total** | **71 785** |
| **Grand total** | **147 283** |

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

Broadening the scope of aquaculture will provide the opportunity to increase the production of fish and other aquatic food species, thereby decreasing the pressure on natural fish resources. Through the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the department strives to ensure effective stakeholder engagement and management, as well as advance the transformation agenda in the sector.

## Legislation and frameworks

Subsequent to a tender process, the University of Pretoria was appointed as the service provider to assist the department with the review of all its legislation in 2012.

The following key legislation guides the actions and decision-making of the sector:

- The Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Act, 1962 (Act 71 of 1962) provides for the establishment, powers and functions of the South African Veterinary Council, for the registration of people practising veterinary and para-veterinary professions and for control over the practising of veterinary and para-veterinary professions, and was amended in 2012.
- The Fertiliser and Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act, 1947 (Act 36 of 1947) regulates the registration of fertilisers, stock feeds, agricultural remedies, stock remedies, sterilising plants and pest control operators, and provides for control over the acquisition, disposal, sale and use of fertilisers, farm feeds, agricultural remedies and stock remedies.
- Consultation regarding the Plant Breeder's Rights Amendment Bill was underway to replace the Plant Breeders' Rights Act, 1976 (Act 15 of 1976). The Bill aims to strengthen the protection of intellectual property rights relevant to new varieties of plants, which in turn positively impacts on the competitiveness of South Africa's agricultural sector.
- The Genetically Modified Organisms (GMO) Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997) provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, and states that biosafety assessments should be conducted for every proposed

In February 2013, the Minister of Labour, Ms Mildred Oliphant, announced the new wage determination for farmworkers. The new minimum wage, as of 1 March 2013 to 28 February 2014, was pegged at R105 per day (up from the current R69 a day) for employees who work nine hours a day – or R11,66 per hour, R525 weekly or R2 274,82 per month. The Department of Labour warned that action would be taken against employers who did not comply with the new sectoral determination for farmworkers.

GMO activity. The Act provides a framework to ensure that all activities involving the use of GMOs are carried out in such a way as to limit possible harmful consequences.

- The Disaster Management Act, 2002 and the National Disaster Risk-Management Framework, 2005 address agricultural risk-management and climate change, and is supplemented by several climate change related policies and programmes.
- The Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000) provides for measures to promote meat safety and the safety of animal products; to establish and maintain essential national standards in respect of abattoirs; to regulate the import and export of meat; and to establish meat safety schemes.
- The Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983) provides for control over the use of natural agricultural resources to promote the conservation of soil, water sources and vegetation, and the combatting of weeds and invader plants.
- The Control of Markets in Rural Areas Ordinance, 1965 (Ordinance 38 of 1965).
- The Problem Animals Control Ordinance, 1978 (Ordinance 14 of 1978).
- The Livestock Brands Act, 1962 (Act 87 of 1962) regulates the registration of a brand in the name of an owner of livestock for the purpose of identifying the livestock.
- The Agricultural Credit Act, 1966 (Act 28 of 1966) provides for a system of assistance to people carrying on or undertaking to carry on farming operations, and for control in respect of assistance rendered.
- The Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, 1970 (Act 70 of 1970) regulates the subdivision of agricultural land and its use for purposes other than agriculture. Investigations are done by the provincial department in support of the execution of the Act.
- The Plant Improvement Act, 1976 (Act 53 of 1976) provides for the registration of establishments where plants and propagation material are sold and packed, for the introduction of schemes for the certification of certain propagation material, for the requirements to which plants and propagation material sold for the purposes of cultivation must conform and for quality control over plants and propagation material imported or exported.
- The Livestock Improvement Act, 1977 (Act 25 of 1977) regulates the collection and sale of semen and ova and the artificial insemination and in-ovulation of certain animals, the establishment of a system for the evaluation and certification of the performance of certain animals, quality control regarding the importation and exportation of certain animals, semen, ova and eggs, the incorporation of livestock breeders' societies and the maintenance of the legal personality of livestock breeders' societies, and the granting of certain exclusive powers relating to the registration of pedigrees of certain livestock.
- The Co-Operatives Act, 1981 (Act 91 of 1981) regulates the formation, registration, management and functioning of various types of co-operatives and the winding-up and dissolution of co-operatives.
- The Perishable Products Export Control Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983) provides for the control of perishable products intended for export from South Africa and for the continued existence of a statutory board to bring about the orderly and efficient export of perishable products from the country.
- The Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983) introduces measures for the prevention and combatting of agricultural pests.
- The Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86

of 1990) establishes a juristic person, the Agricultural Research Council (ARC), to undertake agricultural research and regulate matters regarding the ARC's proceedings, powers, duties, management, control, employees, financing and related matters.

- The Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990) provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products and other related products, with a view to the maintenance of certain standards regarding the quality of products and the packing, marking and labelling thereof.
- The Agricultural Produce Agents Act, 1992 (Act 12 of 1992) provides for the establishment of an Agricultural Produce Agents Council and fidelity funds.
- The Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP) Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999) provides for the establishment of a company to manage the institution known as Onderstepoort Biological Products, the appointment of directors and the holding and disposal of shares in the company.
- The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem, the long-term sustainable use of marine living resources and the orderly access to exploitation, use and protection of certain marine living resources; and for these purposes to provide for the exercise of control over marine living resources in a fair and equitable manner to the benefit of all the citizens of South Africa.
- The National Forest Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998) allows for an exemption for the use and handling of protected trees and their products; and authorises the Minister to establish a trust in respect of state forests under certain circumstances.
- The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998) reforms the law on veld and forest fires and repeals certain provisions of the Forest Act, 1984.
- The Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem and the orderly exploitation, use and protection of certain marine resources; and also provides for the exercise of control over sea fishery.

## Budget and funding

### Agricultural economy

In 2012, government increased agro-processing investments to improve production of products such as soya beans, rooibos, beverages, fruit and vegetables, and forestry by allocating R50 million towards the promotion of local agro-processing businesses.

An equitable food security economy will improve access to markets for especially smallholder farmers. Government aims to increase the extent to which it exports processed rather than unprocessed agricultural products.

The entire value chain of biofuels will also be a priority.

Food processing and agro-industries have provided jobs, demonstrating growth of over 25 000 agricultural jobs in the sector for the third quarter of 2011. A further 6 000 agriculture-related jobs were created in the fourth quarter of 2011, which is a year-on-year growth of 3%. This has brought the total employment in the sector to 630 000.

For the period 2010 to 2013, R70 million was set aside to recapitalise the manufacturing plant and allow OBP to respond adequately to outbreaks of animal diseases. The LandCare allocation for 2012/13 is R115 million.

In 2011/12, 15 000 smallholder farmers were targeted, including support provided to small-scale foresters and fishers. Over R1 billion was allocated to the nine provinces for smallholder farmers. By June 2011, the provinces had received the initial 10% of their allocation, which was followed by a further 20% in the next month, and the remaining allocations in October 2011 and January 2012.

In 2012/13, R415 million was allocated to the Illima-Letsema Programme, which is aimed at ensuring food security.

R954 million was allocated for plant and animal production, including inspection and laboratory services; and R935 million for agricultural research, which represents a sub-

stantial increase over the previous year's allocation. Furthermore, R868 million was allocated to food security initiatives, and R349 million for extension support services including new farmer development support.

## Prices and income

The gross value of agricultural production (total production during the production season valued at the average basic prices received by producers) for 2011 was estimated at R147 283 million, compared to R132 136 million the previous year – an increase of 11,5%. This increase can be attributed mainly to an increase in the value of field crops.

The gross value of animal products, field crops and horticultural products contributed 48,8%, 25,8% and 25,4%, respectively, to the total gross value of agricultural production.

The poultry-meat industry made the largest contribution with 17,5%, followed by cattle and calves slaughtered (11,7%) and maize (11,3%).

Producer prices of agricultural products decreased on average by 12,4% from 2010 to 2011.

The weighted average price of field crops increased by 25,5%. The prices of summer grains increased by 48,5%, winter grains by 33,5%, oil seeds by 11,2%, sugar cane by 10,1%, dry beans by 8,0%, cotton by 7,9% and tobacco by 1,8%, while prices of hay declined by 8,7%.

Producer prices of horticultural products rose by 4,2%. Prices of fruit, vegetables and viticultural products increased by 4,9%, 3,7% and 2,7% respectively.

The weighted average price of animal products was 9,2% lower in 2011 than in 2010. Prices received for pastoral products, slaughtered stock and poultry meat increased by 37,9%, 21,3% and 2,3%, respectively. The price of milk, on the other hand, decreased by 2%.

## Farm income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses, plus the value of changes in inventories) for the year that ended 31 December 2011 amounted to R144 603 million, compared with R129 741 million in 2010 – an increase of 11,5%. The increase can be ascribed mainly to better prices that farmers received for products in general, but in particular prices of field crops, which improved by 25,5%; and those of animal products, which were 9,2% higher.

**Production of important field crops and horticulture products, 2011 ('000 t)**

| | |
|---|---|
| Maize | 10 924 |
| Wheat | 2 014 |
| Sugar cane | 16 800 |
| Grain sorghum | 178 |
| Soya beans | 710 |
| Sunflower seed | 894 |
| Deciduous and other soft fruit | 1 780 |
| Citrus fruit | 2 340 |
| Subtropical fruit | 674 |
| Vegetables | 2 578 |
| Potatoes | 2 195 |

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

Gross income from field crops increased by 29,8%, to R35 798 million in 2011. Income from maize at R16 599 million was R3 096 million or 22,9% more than the previous 12 months. Income from sunflower seed and soya beans also showed substantial increases of 121,9% and 57,6%, respectively.

Income from wheat increased by 53,4% to R4 541 million. At R5 292 million, income from sugar cane was 9,7% higher than in the previous 12 months. Income from tobacco increased by 20,9% to R394 million and income from cotton also showed a marked improvement of 128,5%.

Gross income from horticultural products increased by 3,4%, from R35 787 million in 2010 to R37 020 million in 2011. Income from citrus increased by 6,7% to R6 888 million. This was mainly the result of improved sales and better prices realised on export markets. Income from deciduous fruit at R8 958 million was only 0,8% up on 2010. Income from veg-

etables increased by 6,9% to R13 257 million, and that from viticulture by 3,1% to R3 733 million.

Gross income from animal products was 8,1% higher in 2011 than in 2010 and amounted to R71 785 million, compared to R66 384 million. Red-meat producers earned R17 259 million from slaughtered cattle and calves, as against the previous R14 726 – an increase of 17,2%. Income from slaughtered sheep rose by 10,9%, from R3 220 million to R3 571 million. Income from poultry-meat production increased by 5,5% to R25 713 million. Income from egg production, at R6 951 million, was 4,4% higher than in the previous year. Producers earned R9 200 million from milk production, which is 1,9% less than in the previous year. Income from wool increased by 45,7% to R2 074 million.

Nett farm income amounted to R39 930 million for the year that ended on 31 December 2011, which is 14,6% higher than in the previous 12 months. Payments for salaries and wages, which represented 12,2% of total farming costs, amounted to R12 686 million. Interest paid by farmers to banks and other financiers was estimated at R5 211 million, or 5,0% of total farming costs.

Overall vegetable production in the 2011 season reached 2,578 million tons (Mt), up 2,7% from the previous season, when 2,510 Mt were harvested. Vegetable consumption increased in 2011 to 45,2 kg per capita (+1,0%).

## Role players

### Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (50%), agricultural co-operatives and agribusinesses (12%), the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (the Land Bank) (21%), private creditors (8%), other creditors and financial institutions (9%), and the state (1%).

In June 2012, the African Development Bank approved a R1-billion line of credit to the Land Bank to benefit both emerging and commercial farmers.

**DID YOU KNOW?**

- In 1992, South Africa exported 21 Mℓ of wine. By 2001, the country exported 217 Mℓ and by August 2012, 377 Mℓ was exported.
- Local sales are growing with about 4% year-on-year and exports by 7,8%.
- There are about 3 600 wine farmers in the Western Cape and vineyards of more than 100 000 ha.
- South Africa is the eighth largest wine producer and its share in the international wine market is about 5%.
- Almost 22% of South Africa's wine exports are to the United Kingdom.
- Wine tourism generates almost R5 billion a year in the Western Cape and creates thousands of jobs.

Additionally, the support will be used to assist agricultural co-operatives and agri-related businesses; and will help mobilise financial resources, contributing to job creation and income generation.

The projected 2 700 loans to be given to emerging farmers are expected to generate some 14 000 jobs, while the financing to the commercial farmers, co-operatives and agri-related businesses is expected to create at least 2 000 jobs, especially for people in rural communities, women and black emerging farmers.

The credit also includes a technical assistance component for capacity-building at the Land Bank and will enable the government to support, promote and facilitate the development and transformation of the agricultural sector in South Africa.

In 2012, the Land Bank also made available R75 million to the National Emergent Red Meat Producers Organisation (Nerpo) to start a new financing facility for emerging farmers in South Africa. The funds will be available at a fixed 4% interest rate and will be dedicated to growing black farmers.

Nerpo will finance farmers with between R100 000 and R1 million to improve infrastructure such as fencing, farm access roads, irrigation, tunnels and general equipment.

### Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

The Land Bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services to the commercial farming sector and agribusiness, and make available financial products to new entrants to agriculture from historically disadvantaged backgrounds.

In March 2012, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries entered into an agreement with the Land Bank as an external agency to manage and administer the AgriBEE Equity Fund, which is geared towards increasing black entrepreneurs in the sector.

The scope of the fund also covers the funding of qualifying enterprise development initiatives, which are targeted at creating economic access and participation for black people in the agricultural sector.

### Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (Mafisa)

Mafisa is a government-supported financial scheme that aims to increase productivity in farming and agri-business operations. It has nine intermediaries, both public and private, that are required to be registered with the National Credit Regulator to participate in the scheme.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries presented annual review workshops to monitor and evaluate the performance of intermediaries. In future, workshops will be held on a quarterly basis.

Institutions accredited to retail Mafisa loans include co-operatives, commodity organisations and development finance institutions.

Mafisa loans are available for agriculture-related enterprises, covering the entire agricultural value chain. Funded enterprises include poultry, livestock, vegetables, sugar cane and grain crops.

### Agri South Africa (AgriSA)

AgriSA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. It serves some 70 000 large and small commercial farmers.

On behalf of its members, AgriSA promotes the development, profitability and stability of commercial agriculture through its involvement in and input at national and international policy levels.

### Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC)

The ABC is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses. Its mission is to negotiate and position for a favourable agribusiness environment where members can perform competitively and profitably, and prosper as a result. Other focus areas include:

- serving the broader and common business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa
- facilitating considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment
- being involved in the legislative and policy environment on many fronts.

ABC South Africa hosted its biennial congress in KwaZulu-Natal in June 2012 under the theme *Investing in the Future.* The congress addressed the strategic challenges of the macro-economic landscape, competitiveness and opportunities in the global agro-food system, transformation and land reform, business interaction with government on policy and legislation and local and international socio-political power dynamics. It also provided an outlook on agricultural commodities and resources.

This congress is one of the major events on the food, feed, fibre and wine sectors' agenda of South Africa. It is a premier agribusiness networking opportunity where business leaders and policy makers meet to shape the future of the South African agricultural sector.

In October 2012, Fruit SA received international recognition for devising internationally recognised ethical standards and audit process in response to South Africa's needs. This will guarantee South Africa's fruit is produced in accordance with acceptable labour and environmental practices.

### Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of:

- property rights
- economic issues
- safety and security.

TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

### National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (Nafu)

Nafu was established in 1991 to create a home for thousands of black farmers who had previously been excluded from the mainstream of agriculture. Nafu has members all over South Africa who have constituted themselves into regional unions. The union draws its members from a very broad base that includes farmers, agribusinesses, farmers' organisations, corporations and individuals who support Nafu's objectives and goals.

### Agribusiness as an economic sector

Agribusiness can be divided into two categories: nonco-operative business ventures and co-operatives or transformed co-operatives.

Nonco-operative business ventures, also known as profit companies, are involved in the production and distribution of agricultural equipment and production requisites, and the marketing of agricultural products.

Co-operatives dominate the distribution of intermediate requisites and the handling, processing and marketing of agricultural products.

Agricultural co-operatives or agribusinesses are regarded as the farmers' own independent business organisations. They supply their members with production input such as seed, fertiliser, fuel and repair services. They also provide credit and extension services, and handle a large percentage of their members' produce.

Central co-operatives in the country aim to supply the primary co-operatives with specific services such as the processing and marketing of agricultural products, insurance services for crops, short-term cover and farming requisites.

The structure of agribusiness has changed since the deregulation of the agricultural sector into a free-market economy in 1994. Many co-operatives have transformed into private companies, consolidations and mergers have occurred, international groups have entered South Africa and agribusinesses have listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited.

## Products

The largest area of farmland planted with field crops is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflower seed. The grain industry is one of the largest in South Africa and is a very strategic one.

According to the *Economic Review of South African Agriculture*, the gross income from field crops increased by 29,8% to R35 798 million for the year ended 31 December 2011.

### Grains

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region for animal and human consumption. South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with production averaging about 10,2 Mt a year over the past 10 years.

It is estimated that over 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the majority of the South African crop, while thousands of small-scale producers are responsible for the rest. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. Some 10,8 Mt of maize were commercially produced in 2011/12 on 2,7 million ha of land.

Wheat is produced mainly in the winter rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. In 2011, 2,0 Mt were produced on 604 700 ha of land.

Malting barley is produced mainly on the southern coastal plains of the Western Cape. The area of barley planted totalled 80 150 ha in 2011, and production totalled 312 000 t.

Sorghum is cultivated mostly in the drier parts of the summer rainfall areas such as Mpumalanga, the Free State, Limpopo and North West. In 2011/12, an estimated 48 550 ha were planted, with production totalling 137 150 t.

## Oilseeds

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and the Northern Cape. An area of 45 450 ha was planted in 2011/12, producing 60 290 t.

Sunflower seed is produced in the Free State, North West, on the Mpumalanga Highveld and in Limpopo. South Africa is the world's 14th-largest producer of sunflower seed. An area of 453 350 ha was planted in 2011/12, producing 527 110 t.

Soya beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are also produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West.

For the 2012 production season, soya beans were planted on 472 000 ha, with production totalling 655 700 t.

Canola is an oilseed crop grown mainly in the Western Cape. However, since the 2001 production season, smaller quantities have been planted in North West and Limpopo.

Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans. For the 2011 production season, the canola crop was estimated at 58 800 t on an area of 43 510 ha.

## Sugar

The South African sugar sector is one of the world's leading cost-competitive producers of high-quality sugar.

It is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, as well as a range of byproducts.

The cane-growing sector comprises approximately 29 130 registered sugar-cane growers farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal, with a substantial investment in Mpumalanga and some farming operations in the Eastern Cape.

In September 2012, South African winemaker Bosman Family Vineyards established itself as one of the world's leading ethical wine producers by winning the Fairtrade Award at the 2012 International Wine Challenge in the United Kingdom.

Sugar is manufactured by six milling companies with 14 sugar mills operating in these cane-growing regions.

The industry produces an estimated average of 2,2 Mt of sugar per season, of which about 80% of sugar is marketed in the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu). The remainder is exported to markets in Africa, Asia and the Middle East.

## Deciduous fruit

The deciduous fruit industry in South Africa, including fresh, dried and canned fruit for local consumption and export, is a multimillion Rand industry. It is based on scientific research and development resulting in optimum harvests and quality, a large variety of cultivars, and finely controlled storage methods. Decidious fruits grown in South Africa include apples, pears, apricots, nectarines, peaches, plums, grapes, olives, figs and cherries among others.

Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Langkloof Valley of the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

In 2011, South Africa produced 1 644 825 t of deciduous fruit, 12 036 t more than in 2010.

## Cotton

Cotton is cultivated in the Northern Cape, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. It constitutes 74% of natural fibre and 42% of all fibre processed in South Africa.

It is grown under irrigation, as well as in dryland conditions. Some 10 580 ha are dedicated to cotton production, with 69% under irrigation.

## Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West. The production of Oriental tobacco ceased in 2001.

Jacky Goliath of De Fyne Nursery in the Western Cape won the 2011 South African Commercial Farmer of the Year Award. In 2011, she started a nursery with 1 000 seedlings in her back yard. By March 2012, the De Fyne Nursery handled more than 600 000 plants a year and counted Woolworths among its clients.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 80% to total production, with the number of hectares cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco.

## Honeybush and rooibos tea

Honeybush production is a young, growing industry that is unique to South Africa. Honeybush is part of the fynbos that grows wild in the Cederberg area of the Western Cape and is not produced anywhere else in the world. The plant grows naturally on wetter and cooler southern slopes of mountains. Some species are mostly harvested in the wild, while other species are cultivated commercially.

Some 230 ha of honeybush tea are under cultivation. It is harvested from the natural mountainous veld and processed at on-farm processing facilities.

The honeybush industry has the potential to grow from an annual average of 150 t of processed tea to 1 500 t by 2021 and increase turnover from R10 million to R100 million.

Local and international demand exceeds supply. Only 30% of honeybush tea is cultivated by fewer than 10 farmers, and the rest (70%) is harvested in the wild. A new guide that will help small and emerging farmers to get started with this indigenous crop was launched in August 2012 by the ARC.

Due to the growing interest in the health properties of natural products and specifically herbal teas, many biochemists around the world are investigating rooibos.

Stress, ageing, cancer and obesity are some of the lifestyle challenges that featured prominently in the South African Rooibos Council's R2-million research budget in 2012.

In addition to these health-focused projects, researchers also received funding to explore the chemistry, composition and flavour profile of this unique African herbal tea, or to advance organic and environmentally friendly rooibos farming. Research projects are led by prominent, independent researchers at South African universities and science councils.

## Floriculture

In terms of products and markets, there is a strong demand for South African floriculture worldwide. In particular, Germany, the United Kingdom (UK), Japan and the Netherlands represent the greatest opportunities in the short term.

South Africa's indigenous flowers such as gladioli, nerines, freesias and gerberas have undergone many years of extensive research in Europe, and have become major crops worldwide.

South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut-flowers, which account for more than half of the proteas sold on the world market. South African proteas and so-called Cape greens (fynbos) are marketed in Europe. Production occurs mainly in the Western Cape.

The floriculture industry employs about 17 500 people.

## Indigenous food crops

Indigenous food crops are crops that have their origin in South Africa or Africa, as well as those that were introduced into the country or in Africa long ago and are now recognised as naturalised or traditional crops. They are produced or grow naturally in a variety of climatic conditions. Crops are divided into three categories, namely grains, vegetables and fruits.

Grains can be subdivided into cereals and pulses such as millet, cowpea, sorghum, bambara groundnut, mung bean and marama bean.

Vegetables have three subdivisions, namely leafy, tuber and roots; and they include cassava, amadumbe, Zulu round potato, Livingstone potato, cleome, amaranth, Jews mallow, night shade, black jack and African kale.

Indigenous fruits are marula, kei apple, num-num, wild medlar, wild plum, red milkwood, raisin bush and African mangosteen.

The identification of producers and processors of indigenous crops is underway in selected provinces. The aim is to identify key issues and challenges associated with production and processing and how they can be addressed. Of the 16 projects that had been identified in Limpopo, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and North West, seven are processing marula, wild medlar, tsamma melon, mobola plum and moringa tree into various products (jam, jelly, juice, achar, salad dressing, powder and chutney) while nine are producing cow-pea, bambara groundnut, mung bean, cassava and amadumbe.

## Wine

South Africa is the eighth largest wine producer in the world. The 2011 wine grape crop size was estimated at 1 306 044 t, according to the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems.

This was 3,6% more than the 2010 crop. With the exception of the Orange River, Breede Kloof and Malmesbury, crops in all nine cultivation districts increased.

The 2011 crop – including juice and concentrate for non-alcoholic purposes, wine for brandy and distilling wine – amounted to 1 013,5 million litres. This was 2,8% more than the 2010 wine crop.

Domestic natural wine sales increased by 3,8% between June 2011 and May 2012. Exports of natural wine in bulk increased with 19,9% and exports of packaged natural wine decreased with 10,2% for the period July 2011 to June 2012.

South Africa is looking at a solution to counter the impact of a decision by UK retailers to import South African wine in bulk and bottle it in the UK.

In the 2011/12 period, 52% of South Africa's certified wine was exported in bulk, while in 2006, the figure was around 35%. Wine in bulk means that South Africa does not have the brand identity associated with its high-quality wine. The decision is also likely to affect the development of other ancillary and downstream industries such as the glass bottle industry.

To reduce the impact of bulk import, Cabinet approved the development of a five-year industry strategy for sustainable growth and to reduce the environmental costs of producing wine. A consumer awareness programme, as well as a study on the impact of possible bulk imports of whisky from the UK, among other things, have also been approved.

## Citrus and subtropical fruit

South Africa ranks 13th in world citrus production and despite increased competition, its citrus exports are growing. The country is also the world's third largest exporter of fresh citrus fruit by volume after Spain and Turkey. Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and occurs in Limpopo (25 674 ha), the Eastern Cape (12 508 ha), the Western Cape (8 961 ha), Mpumalanga (6 817 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (3 405 ha), and the Northern Cape (1 215 ha).

Pineapples are grown mainly in the Eastern Cape and in northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, as well as the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

## Vegetables

Potatoes are grown in 16 distinct potato-production regions throughout the country. About 32% of South Africa's potato crop is produced in the Free State, 18% in Limpopo and 14% in the Sandveld area of the Western Cape.

South Africa's first trilingual dictionary for the wine industry is now available online. The specialised dictionary contains translations and descriptions of 3 500 industry terms in English, isiXhosa and Afrikaans. The dictionary can be accessed free of charge at *www.sawis.co.za/dictionary*.

The Cape Winemakers Guild has awarded study bursaries to three oenology and viticulture students at Stellenbosch University as part of its ongoing Protégé Programme to further the development of young aspiring winemakers.

The Cape Winemakers Guild Billy Hofmeyr SETA Bursary Programme pays tribute to the Guild's founding chairman, Billy Hofmeyr. Hofmeyr convened the first guild meeting at his home on the farm, Welgemeend, in Paarl on 24 August 1982. The bursaries provide students with financial support during their final year of study, after which they can apply to the guild's three-year Protégé Programme.

This year's bursary recipients are Tsholofelo Segone, who hails from Stellenbosch, Rudger van Wyk of George and Natasha Williams of Saron in the Western Cape.

Approximately 87% of the country's potato crops are produced under irrigation. Of the total crop, 39% is delivered to fresh produce markets and 17% is processed. Frozen French fries comprise 42% of all processed potato products.

In terms of gross income to the grower, potatoes are by far the most important vegetable crop, contributing about 38% to total income derived from vegetables. This is almost equal to the 40% derived collectively from tomatoes, onions, green mealies and sweet corn. In 2011, the gross value of potatoes was R5 056,7 million. During 2011, 2 195 000 t of potatoes were produced.

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape.

In 2011, 511 000 t of tomatoes were produced, with a gross value of R1 557,9 million.

In Limpopo, which is South Africa's main tomato-growing area, most of the crops are centred around Letaba (3 260 ha) Mooketsi, and Musina (860 ha). The total Limpopo annual production is approximately 230 000 t.

Onions are grown mainly in Mpumalanga, certain areas of the Western Cape and the southern Free State, and in all areas of Limpopo, with the main production areas being Polokwane and Mokopane. Onions have an estimated planting area of 6 500 ha to 9 000 ha and a retail value of R200 million a year. In 2011, the gross value of onions was R1 099,9 million. In 2011, 586 830 t of onions were produced.

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but the largest crops are in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal. South African cabbage production decreased in 2011 by 5 319 t or 3,5%, to 145 526 t. During 2011, the gross value of cabbage and red cabbage production totalled R186,2 million.

Dry beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State, Gauteng and North West. KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, the Western Cape and Northern Cape produce small quantities of this crop. Local demand is substantially higher than local production and therefore large quantities of dry beans are imported each year. In 2012, 47 695 t of dry beans were produced on 39 750 ha of land.

## Organic agriculture

Organic farming avoids the use of synthetic pesticides, herbicides and chemical fertilisers by using a range of techniques that help sustain ecosystems and reduce pollution. There are an estimated 250 farms on 45 000 ha of certified land in South Africa.

Organic crops include various cereals, vegetables, roots and tubers, herbs and spices, fruit, nuts and rooibos tea. The largest fruit crops, in terms of hectares, are bananas, avocados and mangoes, while the largest vegetable crops are cucurbits, tomatoes, asparagus, brassicas and potatoes. Organic wine and olive oil are also produced and organic dairy farming is gaining ground.

As a follow-up to the commitments made in 2011 at the 17th Conference of the Parties to the United Nations (UN) Framework Convention on Climate Change (better known as COP17), the department will promote climate-smart agriculture. This will entail promoting the adoption of sustainable production systems,

namely organic farming, agro-ecology and conservation agriculture.

Regarding conservation agriculture, pilot projects have been implemented in several provinces. This was done in collaboration with the ARC and the Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO) of the UN.

## Livestock

Agriculture forms a critical part of South Africa's socio-economic and socio-political stability. Animal production contributes approximately 41% to the country's agricultural GDP. About 500 000 people are employed by the industry.

The ARC, in partnership with all the provinces, will roll out the implementation of the Livestock Development Programme. In this initiative, the ARC will introduce and expand on the dissemination of technologies such as artificial insemination and embryo transfer.

The National Agriculture Marketing Council is also actively engaged in a programme to introduce farmers to the structure, operation and requirements of the formal red meat market. This is the National Red Meat Development Programme and works with emerging and communal farmers to increase the income earned from raising cattle through greater and more beneficial participation in formal red meat markets.

The National Livestock Development Strategy aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain.

## Dairy farming

Milk production in South Africa contributes approximately 0,5% to the world's milk production. South Africa has four major dairy breeds, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire.

The industry comprises various economic activities with significant differences in farming methods and the processing of dairy products, including the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, cheese and its byproducts.

The South African dairy industry is important to the job market, with approximately 2 700 milk producers employing 60 000 farm workers and providing 40 000 people with indirect jobs within the value chain such as milk processing.

In November 2012, South Africa hosted the World Dairy Summit. The summit was attended by 56 member countries of the International Dairy Federation that represent 86% of the world dairy production community. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is also a member of its committee.

## Beef cattle farming

Beef is produced throughout South Africa. The amount of beef produced depends on infrastructure such as feedlots and abattoirs, and not necessarily on the number of cattle available in those areas. South Africa has highly developed transport infrastructure that allows movement of cattle from one area to another, even to and from neighbouring countries such as Namibia.

Mpumalanga commands the greatest share of beef production in South Africa, accounting for 23% in 2009, followed with the Free State and Gauteng, taking up 20% and 13% respectively. Commercial farmers own 60% of the 14,1 million cattle available in South Africa.

There are 27 popular breeds in South Africa including the Brahman, indigenous Afrikaner and Nguni, Tuli, Boron, Bonsmara, Drakensberger, Simbra, Beefmaster, Angus and Braford.

## Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

South Africa has approximately 8 000 commercial sheep farms and about 5 800 communal farmers. In 2011, most of the estimated 28,8 million sheep in South Africa were found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga. Most sheep are woolled or dual-purpose sheep.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, such as the Dohne Merino, South African Mut-

ton Merino, Afrino and Letelle breeds. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton income.

Mutton sheep are found mostly in the semi-desert areas of the Northern and Western Cape, with the most popular mutton breed being the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found. Karakul sheep are found in the more arid areas.

The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats (37%), followed by Limpopo (21%). The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa.

Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about one million goats. The South African mohair clip of four million kilogrammes accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production. About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

## Poultry and pig farming

The poultry industry is an essential component of South Africa's food value chain. It is the biggest single supplier of protein to the South African consumer and the single largest component of the agricultural sector in the country by turnover, with more chicken meat and eggs consumed per capita than all other animal protein sources combined.

In 2011, broiler production, especially broiler meat production, was the largest segment of South African agriculture at 17%, while all animal products in South Africa contributed 49%.

The farm income from broiler meat for 2011 was R25,556 billion.

The South African pork industry contributes about 2,2% to the primary agricultural sector. The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price received by farmers. The average gross value of pork over the past 10 years amounted to R1,988 billion.

The predominant pig breeds are the South African Landrace, the Large White, Duroc and the Pietrain. Some 2,4 million pigs were slaughtered during 2011.

## Game ranching

Over the past 40 years, there has been a growing interest in the use of wild herbivores in multipurpose systems that include the production of meat, as well as value-added activities such as hunting and eco-tourism. This has led to the emergence of a wildlife ranching sector as a sustainable alternative to more conventional livestock farming systems. The sector uses about 20% of the country's natural veldt resources and provides employment for an estimated 45 000 people.

The game industry is well-organised and regulated. Hunting and game capture are subject to very strict rules and regulations. These include the 2011 *Norms and Standards for Hunting Methods in South Africa* incorporated in the National Environment Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act 10 of 2004). A key clause states that natural resources must be used in an ecologically sustainable way to maintain viable populations of indigenous species.

In addition, the Professional Hunters' Association of South Africa – the largest organisation of its kind in the world – has a wide-ranging code of conduct and veterinarian services have their own rules and regulations.

The commercial game industry benefits conservation. Hunting is a client of the conservation industry. Between 55% and 60% of the income of the commercial game industry is derived from hunting. Game auctions have become a major revenue stream for conservation agencies.

Statistics over the past six years suggest

Professor Kobus Eloff of the Phytomedicine Programme in Veterinary Science at the University of Pretoria was awarded the 2012 Science for Society Gold Medal by the Academy of Science of South Africa. He has made significant contributions to areas that benefit society, including soil fertility, toxic plant and cyanobacteria metabolism and ecology, as well as the use of compounds from plants as medicines and biopesticides.

that the demand for exotic or scarce species is still outstripping supply.

Trophy hunting makes a notable contribution to the industry, although most of the trophy-type animals sold on auctions are used for breeding purposes.

### Veterinary services

In the global trade of food and food products, veterinary public health and food safety aspects in relation to animal products remain a priority and are receiving increasing attention.

In 2011/12, animal disease outbreaks such as Rift Valley fever, Newcastle disease, avian flu, foot-and-mouth disease, African horse sickness and African swine fever posed serious challenges to the industry.

R100 million was set aside for the Primary Animal Health Care Programme. Special attention is given to major rehabilitation of existing infrastructure, as well as the building of new clinics, animal health centres and other animal-handling facilities. Mobile veterinary vehicles will also be considered for remote areas.

These efforts are supporting the creation of an enabling environment for the planned Compulsory Community Service Programme for newly qualified veterinarians.

### Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP)

OBP is a state-owned public company based in Onderstepoort, Pretoria. It is the sole or main producer of a number of vaccines against tropical animal diseases with the potential to cause serious economic disasters.

During the last few years, OBP manufactured a variety of animal health products and played a crucial role in programmes aimed at developing emerging livestock farming and providing food security.

OBP contributes expert advice and vaccines to control other transboundary animal diseases such as contagious bovine pleural pneumonia, lumpy-skin disease, African horse sickness and anthrax, which affect most African countries.

Over the years, OBP has been cooperating with organisations such as the Pan-African Vaccine Network, World Organisation for Animal Health, SADC and the FAO of the UN to share and gain technology in improving its services.

It has also collaborated with the FAO and the European Union, to provide both technical support and vaccines to countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Zimbabwe, Lesotho and Angola.

OBP interacts with both national and international research and academic institutions to introduce new, improved and affordable products.

OBP's quality control system has been accredited to ensure that no substandard batches of vaccines leave the plant. One of the company's key strategic objectives is the establishment of a vaccine bank.

Other efforts to improve animal health will include the development of diagnostic tools for major diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease, and African horse sickness.

## Programmes and projects

### Regulatory services

The department's regulatory services include a variety of activities, including the regulation of plant imports and propagating material of varieties not included in the national varietal lists.

Regulatory activities also include the inspection of plants, animals and their products to ensure that imported animals and their products are free from disease, and imported and exported plants and products are free from quarantine pests and diseases.

South Africa is an active member of the World Organisation for Animal Health. Disease reports are received from the Organisation for Animal Health and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries. Trade in animals and animal products is regulated to prevent the entry of diseases.

The department also conducts inspections at designated ports of entry. Pre-border inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements among trading

partners. Post-border inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at borders or escaped the border-control inspections.

Plants and plant products are inspected for compliance with plant-health, genetic-resources and food- and quality-assurance legislation. Various surveys are also conducted throughout the country.

The Pest Risk-Analysis Division conducts scientific analyses of risks posed, based on scientific data. Risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material are managed by prescribing a compulsory predetermined quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories.

To prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests, all imported plant material is tested and audited.

Early detection of economically important exotic pests is ensured through surveillance, detection and rapid response to prevent them from spreading. Closely linked to early detection is implementing proper pest-awareness programmes to keep the agricultural sector and the general public informed.

Through its Import/Export Protocols Division, the department ensures and maintains market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant-health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes.

## Food import and export standards

Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and to which South Africa is a signatory, including the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measurements Agreement, World Organisation for Animal Health, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health.

Through its Directorate: Food Import and Export Standards, the department collates information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products.

The directorate also coordinates promotion and awareness programmes addressing cross-cutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, plant and animal health.

## National analytical services

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries have laboratories in Pretoria and Stellenbosch that conduct analytical services. They support the units within the department responsible for formulating and updating regulations regarding agricultural foods of plant origin and liquor products.

The laboratory has been working on a project to expand the scope of testing for pesticide residues. By June 2011, 19 chemicals had been included in the existing scope of testing with the liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry/mass spectrometer. This is expected to ensure that South Africa meets its obligations in terms of food safety and quality risk monitoring and improve market access for South African agricultural products of plant origin.

## Risk management

The National Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Committee provides strategic guidance on policy and advises the Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management. The committee comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture such as Nafu, AgriSA, TAU SA, the ARC and relevant directorates within the department.

The established National Drought Task Team, chaired by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster-management centres, organised agriculture such as Nafu, AgriSA, TAU SA, ARC and relevant director-

ates within the department.

During 2011/12, research was carried out to address disaster risk management. Awareness campaigns were also implemented and education and training was provided to strengthen disaster risk management.

The department frequently responds to hazards such as droughts, veld fires, floods and outbreaks of pests and diseases, which includes control of migratory pests such as locusts and quelea. The department was also responsible for the control of the blackfly pest.

## Weather and climate

### Climate change

The agriculture sector in South Africa faces considerable impact from climate change, which affects the livelihoods of the majority of people, especially those that are vulnerable to food insecurity.

South Africa responds to international obligations regarding climate mainly through the Department of Environmental Affairs, but the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, as well as other departments such as the departments of mineral resources, energy, science and technology, and water affairs are also involved.

The Climate Change Programme implemented by the Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries include programmes on raising awareness, policy development, development of sector mitigation and adaptation plans, conducting vulnerability assessments countrywide, and identifying and coordinating climate-related research projects.

South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance, which among other objectives aim to enhance collaborative research into agricultural emission reductions and increase support and resourcing for agricultural emission research.

The research report on the *Agricultural Greenhouse Gas Inventory* as well as capacity-building for the sector was published in 2011. The results of the project will inform the development of the mitigation strategy, which is expected to assist in achieving food security.

The *Atlas of Climate Change* and *The South African Agricultural Sector: A 2010 Perspective*, aimed at investigating the first- to fourth-order impacts of climate change on agriculture, were also completed and published.

### Early warning unit

Reducing disaster risk through strengthening early warning systems and disseminating early warnings, as well as raising awareness through campaigns, helps to build resilient farming communities. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has therefore developed and implemented an Early Warning System (EWS) disseminating extreme weather warnings to farming communities.

The EWS communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings in support of disaster risk reduction. The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system.

National Agro-Meteorological Committee meetings are held quarterly.

### Floods and droughts

Between December 2010 and January 2011, the country experienced devastating floods in Limpopo, the Free State, North West, Gauteng, the Eastern Cape and the Northern Cape. The department has started the process of implementing the Flood Assistance Scheme, with an emphasis on infrastructure repairs. An amount of more than R990 million has been made available through the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period until 2014/15 as part of the flood-assistance scheme.

Linked to the floods that occurred from December 2010 to February 2011, government allocated R12,066 million to the Free State for support to farmers that have suffered losses on farms, including infrastructure losses such as irrigation, soil conservation structures and dams.

During August 2012, farmers in the Free State also suffered crop and livestock losses and damage to infrastructure. Close to 150 000 ha

of veld in the province were destroyed during widespread veld fires. The district that was affected the most was Dewetsdorp, with farmers having lost 65 000 ha.

Other districts affected by fires included Memel (55 000 ha), Reitz (10 000 ha), Viljoenskroon and Verkeerdevlei (6 000 ha) and Bethlehem; the latter reporting five different veld fires in which 1 500 ha were destroyed.

Climate variability has induced drought interspersed with flooding, resulting in lower-than-average agricultural production yields. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has completed two policy documents: the Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Plan and the Agricultural Drought-Management Plan.

Limpopo suffers from recurring droughts that alternate with devastating floods, and the farming sector bears the brunt of these harsh climatic changes. While the province was still recovering from the negative effects of drought and veld fires, the Mopani District and in particular the Maruleng Municipality was swept by floods. Farmers suffered crop losses, livestock losses and damage to infrastructure.

In response to the plight of the affected farmers, R5 million was made available in addition to R5 million already made available for drought relief.

## Sustainable resource management and use

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and the ARC's Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The *National Land Type Survey*, available for use at a 1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision-making at national level.

All available natural-resource spatial in-formation and other required data sets, including the latest Spot 5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agis).

Using interactive web-based applications, Agis provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

> Working through the World Economic Forum's New Vision for Agriculture initiative, more than 250 organisations are collaborating to improve sustainable food production and opportunities for farmers in 11 countries in Africa, Asia and Latin America. Together, these activities will have a direct impact on more than 12 million smallholder farmers in the next three to five years.

The Advanced Fires Information System (Afis) tracks all fire outbreaks in the SADC region, through the use of Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradio-meter satellite imagery. The information can be viewed at *afis.meraka.org.za.*

## Soil degradation

Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in organic soil matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-term fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

It is calculated that 1,5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface) have a high to extremely high erosion risk. More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk, and 17% as very low to low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the "maize quadrangle" in the North West and the north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are also extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in

both dry land and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Large areas of South Africa are covered with soils prone to serious crusting (surface sealing). The extent thereof and awareness of it have increased sharply over the last two decades. Switching to overhead and micro-regulation systems and the widespread effects these have on crusting-prone soils has contributed to the problem.

Human-induced soil acidification is also a major problem. Its effect is severe since it impacts on the country's scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land.

Soil-fertility degradation is a concern. In commercial agriculture, there has been nutrient capital-building of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

## Genetically modified organisms (GMOs)

Genetic modification (GM) provides a way of meeting the growing demand for food without placing greater pressure on scarce resources.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans. The latest approval of GM crops for commercial use was in 2007, for GM maize that is resistant to certain insect species and herbicide-tolerant; and also for GM cotton that has an improved mechanism to enable herbicide tolerance.

Since the adoption of biotech crops in 1996, the areas planted with GM maize, soya beans and cotton in South Africa have increased to about 2,2 million ha. In 2010, white GM maize plantings totalled 1,139 million ha, representing a market share of about 80,3%; yellow maize plantings totalled 759 000 ha, representing 79,6% of the total yellow maize crop; GM soya bean plantings increased to 332 000 ha, representing 79,4% of the total soya bean crop; and GM cotton plantings totalled 12 925 ha, representing 98% of the total cotton crop.

## LandCare Programme

The National LandCare Programme is a government-supported community-based initiative which is active throughout the country. Driven by both the public and private sectors through partnerships and cooperation, it seeks to:

- conserve natural resources
- use them in a sustainable way
- create a conservation ethic through education and awareness
- create jobs and address poverty by launching various natural resource rehabilitation, improvement and conservation projects.

Serious concerns about land and water degradation are identified in each province and specific projects address these issues. Projects have been implemented in all nine provinces through the LandCare Conditional Grant whereby ring-fenced funding is transferred to provinces in terms of the Yearly Division of Revenue.

Four subprogrammes, namely WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare and JuniorCare, are all part of the LandCare Programme.

The fifth Biennial National Landcare Conference was held at the Mmabatho Convention Centre in Mafikeng, North West from 1 to 4 October 2012. The theme of the conference was *LandCare: Sustaining Natural Resource Management 15 Years and Beyond for Better Livelihoods.*

It brought together interested parties within the agricultural resources management sector, to discuss how the programme has addressed degradation, poverty and food security, to reward communities that have taken bold leadership on custodianship of natural agricultural resources and to seek ways to address challenges facing the sector.

Delegates included farmers, members of the executive councils, mayors, traditional leaders, councillors and officials from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and from provincial departments of agriculture, as well as local and international members of the public.

## WaterCare

The WaterCare Programme works with communities to develop action plans for managing and restoring irrigation schemes and preventing the silting up of dams for irrigation.

The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

Irrigated agriculture is by far the biggest single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. It contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has embarked on a process to rehabilitate irrigation schemes that have the potential to increase food production, eradicate poverty, create jobs and contribute to economic growth.

About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine are produced under irrigation. The department has identified the revitalisation of irrigation schemes and development as a priority area.

## VeldCare

This programme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production. It develops and maintains agricultural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development. Economic- and social-development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

## SoilCare

This programme encourages rural farmers to build innovative structures to combat soil erosion. This includes reducing the depletion of soil fertility and acidity. Through SoilCare, sustainable agricultural production systems such as diversification, management of input and conservation tillage are introduced.

The Conservation Agriculture (CA) approach has encouraged the proactive and sustainable use of agricultural natural resources. CA aims to ensure the effective and sustainable use and management of natural resources through minimum disturbance of the soil. CA integrates the management of soil, water and biological resources to maintain and enhance land productivity and reduce the level of risk. It further aims to protect the potential of natural resources, prevent soil and water degradation and ensure economic viability with a reduction in vulnerability to the effects of climate change. The result of these practices will ensure continued household and national food security through crop production, while conserving the environment.

CA is characterised by three principles:

- minimum mechanical soil disturbance (minimum tillage)
- permanent organic soil cover, particularly through available crop residues
- diversified crop-rotation practices.

## Junior LandCare

The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills. This includes promoting food security at home and in schools, enhancing awareness of sustainable agriculture and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that promote other components of LandCare. Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

In 2011/12, 18 schools benefitted from the Junior LandCare Programme in Mpumalanga. Through this intervention, 714 green jobs were created in the province during 2011/12.

## Smallholder development

Smallholder farming has become central to job creation and economic growth in South Africa. Therefore, smallholder farmers are encouraged to produce and drive economies in their respective communities. To this end,

the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries increased its support to new and existing smallholder farmers, working in close collaboration with the provinces to achieve its targets.

A Smallholder Development Working Group was established to strengthen collaboration between the parties that deal with the smallholder support mandate.

The department encourages household food production through backyard gardens and programmes such as the Household Food Security and Ilima-Letsema Campaign, whose main objective is to motivate communities to plough, plant and produce their own food.

The Ilima-Letsema Programme focused on increasing food production and rehabilitating irrigation schemes and other value-adding projects. In 2011/12, 14 029 jobs were created through the programme.

Smallholder farms not only contribute to food security, but also create jobs for women in poverty-stricken communities. An example is the Ezemvelo Direct Farm Programme in Tzaneen, Limpopo where the majority of participants are women. The programme is aimed at identifying, developing and supporting small farmers to supply Massmart with fresh produce in line with the objective of ensuring that small farmers benefit from the group's fresh produce retail proposition. The programme, representing an investment of more than R15 million, includes training, mentoring, technical assistance and establishing essential links to finance and retail markets.

## Extension and advisory services

Over the past three years, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has implemented an extension and advisory service revitalisation programme of R555,5 million. To improve the ratio of extension officers to farmers, by the end of 2010/11, more than 1 000 extension and advisory officers had been recruited.

To ensure that these officers are visible on the ground and accountable, the *Farmer's Green Book* was instituted as a tool to be used by farmers to record extension officers' visits.

To ensure access to appropriate information, the department facilitated the countrywide adoption of the state-of-the-art Extension Suite On-Line. This computerised system enables extension officers to access relevant information on the spot as and when it is needed by farmers.

By June 2011, 1 149 extension officers were registered for qualification upgrades in line with the approved norms and standards, and 5 110 extension officers had completed short technical, generic and information and communications technology skills training programmes.

In 2012, Elizabeth Smith of Victor Khanye Municipality in Nkangala District was the overall winner of the Female Entrepreneur Awards in Mpumalanga. She went on to win the Small-Scale Category at national level. Smith has a small-scale operation focusing on tilapia fish species.

## Training and research

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities.

At grassroots level, South Africa has a number of regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects and specialised agricultural high schools such as Bekker High School in North West, Harry Oppenheimer Agricultural High School in Limpopo and Boland Agricultural High School in the Western Cape

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture such as Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in the Eastern Cape, Cedara College of Agriculture in KwaZulu-Natal and Madzivhandila College of Agriculture in Limpopo. In 2011, the department started the process of transforming colleges of agriculture into national agricultural training institutes and completed a comprehensive audit of these institutions. Glen College of Agriculture in the Free State, for example has been repositioned towards an agricultural training institute delivering both further and higher education. The

number of students has increased from 56 to 100 in the 2012 academic year and bursaries have been provided to the lecturers to further their qualifications. The college will further improve capacity by recruiting highly experienced academic and administrative staff.

Universities (including those with and without designated faculties of agriculture) offer advanced degree courses and Bachelor of Technology degrees. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

This training potential is coupled with a productive and robust research capacity in terms of scientists and researchers based at various organisations who are world leaders in their respective fields of agricultural research.

Agricultural research is conducted by the ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms.

The Directorate: Policy Research Support in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries coordinates all agricultural research and development activities.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the department engages the Department of Science and Technology on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation.

The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural Research and Development Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development matters within the national agricultural research system.

The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to government and others on the coordination of research and development and technology transfer to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability. Annual meetings are held to discuss research needs, priorities and budgeting.

In 2012, the Mpumalanga Provincial Department of Agriculture, Rural Development and Land Administration continued with the research demonstrations on fruits, blueberries and blackberries under the Highveld climate and also evaluated the potential of certain species of medicinal and essential oil plants.

### Animal identification

Under the Animal Identification Act, 2002 (Act 6 of 2002), the Minister declares animals for compulsory identification. The national register is available to the South African Police Service through the State Information Technology Agency to help it trace individual animals to their owners. However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Act.

## Regulation services

### Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (Sapca) is the official representative of the pest-, termite- and woodborer-control industries. All Sapca-qualified inspectors have to register with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.

South Africa regularly liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

In February 2012, the South African Ostrich Business Chamber enlisted the support of internationally recognised avian influenza experts to assess the country's ostrich industry and advise on the sustainability of the industry. The export of ostrich meat from South Africa has been banned since April 2011 owing to the outbreak of H5N2 avian influenza.

Consumer goods firm Unilever South Africa recently formed a sunflower farming partnership as part of its sustainable living plan and has successfully developed hybrid seeds, which are expected to reduce the country's dependence on sunflower oil imports. to basic services. It falls under the firm's sustainable living plan, established in 2010 to reduce its environmental footprint.

The ostrich industry, in partnership with government, is working towards ensuring a reliable and sustainable disease-control system in the interest of other susceptible birds and also to resume meat exports.

To respond comprehensively to the management of regulated plant pests and diseases, the department, in close collaboration with the South African fruit industries, has developed an early warning surveillance programme to quarantine fruit flies. The technical forum continues to identify, prioritise and manage quarantine pest risks such as the African invader fruit fly.

To strengthen contingency planning regarding pests and diseases, the Emergency Plant Pest Response Plan is being developed for implementation in 2013/14.

In the global trade of food and food products, veterinary public health and food safety aspects in relation to animal products received increasing attention. A policy on independent meat inspection will be concluded by 2012/13.

## Food security

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme aims to achieve physical, social and economic access to safe and nutritious food for all South Africans. Its goal is to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme recognises the broad regional food-security framework that the Regional Indicative Sustainable Development Programme highlighted, and which prompted South Africa to respond to the humanitarian appeal by the UN World Food Programme for emergency food relief in the SADC region.

According to the *General Household Survey Series Report on Food Security and Agriculture 2002 to 2011* by Statistics South Africa, South African households' vulnerability to hunger has declined in the past 10 years from 23,8% to 11,5% in 2011.

According to FoodBank SA, 2,8 million South African households, comprising 11 million people, are deemed food insecure.

A further 14 million South Africans are vulnerable to food insecurity. In spite of strong commitment from government, corporate and civil society to address development issues, there are signs of increasing food insecurity in rural and urban areas. This is owing to rising unemployment, food price increases, HIV and AIDS, adverse environmental conditions, a decrease in cultural support, and poverty in general.

Less than a quarter of households in South Africa are involved in agriculture, including doing agriculture as a hobby. Nationally, more than 84% of households that are engaged in agriculture do so to produce extra food for the household, while only 4,2% of households use agriculture to produce the majority of their food.

The draft Food Security Policy and Zero Hunger Strategy promotes equity and prioritises the eradication of poverty and reduction of inequality among people. The creation of self-employment opportunities is at the centre of this.

To this end, smallholder farmers are supported in the provision of livestock, tractors, implements, seeds and fertilisers. Government is promoting the idea of one family, one vegetable garden in South Africa.

A plan to make food accessible to South Africa's poor was presented in September 2012 when the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Ms Tina Joemat-Pettersson, invited representatives from FoodBank SA and the TAU SA to present strategies on how they could contribute towards assisting the poor in urban and rural areas.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries supports and works closely with FoodBank SA to address these issues.

### Mechanisation

Mechanisation in agriculture is important towards ensuring food security. To this end, government has embarked on a mechanisation strategy aimed at stimulating production by smallholders, with a special focus on rural areas and the former homelands.

By April 2012, 72 tractors had been donated to black farmers as part of a plan by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries to donate 502 tractors to seven provinces. The plan falls under the department's mechanisation programme and follows on the successful delivery in June 2011 of 85 new tractors to Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal, respectively.

Under the plan, each of the seven provinces will receive 62 tractors valued at about R160 million.

Gauteng has received 36 tractors, while the Free State, the Western Cape and the North West have received 12 tractors each. Tractors are still to be allocated in the Eastern Cape, Northern Cape and Limpopo.

By August 2011, 272 were used in 40 projects to till 12 835 ha of land, benefitting 1 608 people in Mpumalanga.

In KwaZulu-Natal, 190 tractors were used by nearly 200 traditional leaders to service over 9 000 ha. In Mpumalanga, a fleet of tractors is part of the Masibuyele Emasimini Programme, while in KwaZulu-Natal the state owns and manages a fleet of tractors and employs and trains the tractor drivers.

In 2012, the Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development made 72 tractors available to farmers through a three-tier system mechanisation policy. Fifty-nine cooperatives benefitted directly through leases of these assets, which will collectively cultivate 6 000 ha, and 611 beneficiaries stand to benefit.

Agri-Parks such as Onverwacht Agri-Park attracted greater investment from mines with more hydroponics infrastructure, which have benefitted 65 people who are seasonally employed on the farm. The household food security project is key to the alleviation of poverty and hunger.

The co-hosting of the second African Farmers Expo exposed at least 500 farmers to new agricultural technologies and services they can benefit from the development of their enterprises.

## Regional and international cooperation and trade

### Regional cooperation

South Africa has strong and mutually dependent economic links with countries in the southern African region through the Southern SADC and Sacu. The department continues to expand its trade relations with other countries on the African continent and other countries in the world through bilateral cooperation agreements.

South Africa participates in the Regional Advisory Committee of the Regional Food Security Training Programme.

The Regional Food Security Training Programme was developed over a five-year period as endorsed by the Regional Advisory Committee. Its activities focus on strengthening the supply of food-security training services; strengthening the effective demand for training and development; and sustaining regional markets for food-security-related training services.

The SADC has instituted the Subcommittee for Plant Protection, which is tasked with harmonising phytosanitary requirements in southern Africa. South Africa is also a member of the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, which was established in 1954.

Regional plant-protection organisations such as these are able to provide valuable regional coordination of the activities and objectives of the International Plant Protection Convention. The Inter-Africa Phytosanitary Council is officially recognised as the Regional Plant Protection Organisation for Africa. The council came into being as the African Union's phytosanitary coordinating body.

The SADC has produced the Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Harmonisation of Seed Regulations in the SADC Region, which is based on three technical documents,

namely the *Regional Variety Release System*, *Seed Certification and Quality Assurance*, and *Quarantine and Phytosanitary Measures*.

Lower costs and simpler administration will encourage local, small-scale seed producers and suppliers to expand their activities.

## Regional trade

South Africa, as a member of Sacu and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with the other nations in the region. Free trade within southern Africa under the SADC Trade Protocol started between Sacu and Mauritius in September 2000. Sacu opened its markets to the countries of the region by implementing the first phase of tariff reduction.

Since 2000, SADC tariffs have declined steadily, making it possible for the participating members to trade at a lower cost. Sacu can import from the region over 80% of agricultural products at zero duty. All other countries will have the same advantage at different deadlines between 2012 and 2015.

The signatories to the SADC Agreement are Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The first objective of the trade protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade between SADC countries. The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers in which the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is involved as a contact point to receive traders' complaints.

## International cooperation

The department is committed to participate in a meaningful way as member of the Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) group of countries. As part of the BRICS' Action Plan for 2012 – 2016, South Africa will coordinate the group's effort to reduce the harmful effects of climate change on food security. This will include adapting agricultural practices to climate change.

The department will open offices in Russia, India and Brazil, in addition to the one which is already operating in China.

On the international front, South Africa has reaffirmed the Doha Development Mandate. The fundamental priority remains to redress the imbalances and inequities that continue to be a disadvantage to developing countries. Agriculture remains at the centre of the multilateral trade negotiations of the Doha Round (of the World Trade Organisation) and will determine the desired outcome.

As a signatory to the Rome Declaration of 2003, South Africa has committed itself to the implementation of the World Food Summit Plan of Action. For this purpose, South Africa reports annually to the World Committee for Food Security. South Africa also collaborates with the UN FAO on the implementation of the Special Programme for Food Security.

The department is a member of the FAO, Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research, the International Seed-Testing Association, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development, the Union for Protection of New Varieties of Plants, the World Organisation for Animal Health, the International Organisation of Vine and Wine, the International Grain Council and the International Cotton Advisory Committee.

South Africa is an active participant in other international standard-setting bodies that are vital to its global market share, such as the International Plant Protection Convention, Organisation for Animal Health and Codex Alimentarius.

## International trade

The Directorate: International Trade of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is responsible for implementing, monitoring and reporting on South Africa's commitments under the WTO Agreement on Agriculture.

In 2012, growing exports to Asia have led to it becoming the largest market for South African agricultural products. China, Hong Kong, South Korea and the United Arab Emirates (UAE) buy 12% of South Africa's agri-

food exports. The country has also increased exports of agricultural products to Zimbabwe from 2% to 8%. Mexico imports 5% of South Africa's agricultural products. Trade with Asia increased from R1,4 billion in 2006 to just over R4 billion in 2010.

South Africa's trade of both primary and processed agricultural products have grown from R10-billion exports in 1996 to about R48 billion in 2011. Wine exports are soaring despite the recent global economic slowdown.

Exports of fish and fish products have rapidly expanded in China and Cameroon, while timber and forestry products are gaining ground in China and Indonesia.

Export markets have undergone structural changes from 2001 to 2011 with new destinations in Asia, the Middle East and North America.

Exports to South Korea have increased from 2% to 3%; to China from 1% to 3%; to the UAE from 1% to 3%; and to Mexico from no trade to 5%.

For the period January to December 2011, compared to the same period in 2010, the value of exports to Singapore has increased by 78% for products such as grapes, apples, pears and avocados; to Hong Kong it increased by more than 5% and to Malaysia an increase of 20% was achieved.

## Forestry

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is the custodian of South Africa's forest resources, which cover over 40 million ha of the country's land surface area. R1,2 billion from the department's budget has been allocated to forestry and natural resources management.

The forest sector employs around 201 025 workers and provides about 77 000 direct jobs and 30 000 indirect jobs. Forestry provides livelihood support to 2,3 million people of the country's rural population.

The pulp and paper industry provides approximately 13 200 direct and 11 000 indirect employment opportunities. Some 20 000 workers are employed in sawmilling, 6 000 in the timber board and 2 200 in the mining timber industries, while a further 11 000 workers are employed in miscellaneous jobs in forestry.

In terms of land use, the area under forest is about 1,28 million ha or approximately 1,0% of the total South African land area of 122,3 million ha. The forestry sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 1,2% to the GDP. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 4,5%; in Mpumalanga 4,7%; in the Eastern Cape 0,9%; and about 0,5% in Limpopo.

Tonnage sales for 2011, although marginally more than in 2010, were 1,1% or 176 000 t less than the budget of 15,5 Mt.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries contribute to eradicating poverty through the Forestry Livelihoods Programme. Firewood, construction poles, medicinal plants and edible fruits are all critical to the livelihoods of the rural poor.

The department develops human resources through forestry-sector skills development initiatives and promotes employment through commercial forestry activities such as forestation and downstream activities. The integration of forestry programmes into provincial and municipal development plans will assist the Plant a Million Trees Campaign.

The department pursues the afforestation target of 10 000 ha of nett new afforestation a year.

The focus will remain on encouraging co-operatives, simplifying and streamlining the regulatory environment, training and extension, supporting the implementation of rural credit and offering incentives for new entrants.

In terms of the economic growth and development that forestry offers, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process. In the Eastern Cape, funds have been secured to assist communities with the processes of environmental impact assessments – a prerequisite to precede any afforestation activity.

Afforestation is taking place in rural areas

where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity. The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants, which will lead to broad economic growth. An additional R500 million a year could be generated from such plantations.

The forestry programme also includes greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on fire-fighting programmes such as the Working on Fire Programme and encourages the establishment of fire-protection associations.

## Legislation

The National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998) and the Forestry Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005) reflect the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. This vision emphasises sustainable forest management, and explains how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Acts set out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensures that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree and shrub species. Some are threatened, and 47 species are protected under the Act.

Protected trees may not be cut; damaged, destroyed or possessed; collected; removed; transported; exported; purchased; sold; donated or in any other way acquired or disposed of except under a licence granted by the Minister or in terms of an exemption. In terms of the National Forests Act, 1998, all natural forests are protected.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998) and the National Forest and Fire Laws Amendment, 2001 (Act 12 of 2001) are the primary legislation regulating veldfire management in the country.

The purpose of these Acts is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires. It provides a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose.

These Acts place an individual duty on every landowner where there is a risk of fire to take certain minimum precautions to prevent and combat fires. It also introduces the concept of voluntary fire-protection associations, which may be formed by landowners for purposes of veldfire management in a specific area.

### Industry and exports

The forestry industry was a nett exporter of almost R4,5 billion worth of goods in 2011, of which more than 99% took the form of converted value-added products.

The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 2,12% to total exports and 1,45% to total imports in 2011. Capital investment in the industry amounted to an estimated R45 billion in 2010.

The value of forest product exports grew by 58% over the past decade, from R9,5 billion in 2001 to R15 billion in 2011. In real terms, however, (taking inflation into account) this growth was -10% over the period in question. Consequently, the nett trade balance in foreign trade in forest products decreased from 2001 by -8% in nominal terms (-54% in real terms) to R4,5 billion in 2011.

In 2011, pulp products were the most important exports (R7 064 billion or 47% of the total), followed by paper (R4 622 billion or 31%), solid wood products (R2 741 billion or 18%) and other products (R553 million or 4%). Woodchip exports, mainly to Japan, accounted for 62% (R1 699 billion) of total solid-wood product exports.

As with other export-based industries, the continuing unfavourable economic environment has had a negative impact on demand, particularly in Japan, which is still recovering from the damage caused to some of its pulp and paper mills by the tsunami in March 2011. Despite this, exports of forest products from South Africa increased in value by R1,6 billion or 10,8% from R13,4 billion in 2010 to R15 billion in 2011.

In July 2012, an anti-poaching campaign led by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries resulted in the arrest of seven men and confiscation of 26 429 units of abalone. The 3,2 tons of abalone were confiscated in five different incidents of illegal poaching.

## Role players

### National Forest Advisory Council

The National Forest Advisory Council advises the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on all aspects of forestry in the country. The council is actively involved in developing local criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management, and makes recommendations on how public access to state-owned forests can be improved.

### South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol)

Safcol is government's forestry company, conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities both domestically and internationally. The group currently has 18 plantations covering 187 320 ha with one sawmill and renting capacity at two others.

It subscribes to the Forest Sector Charter and plays a leading role in transformation within the industry. With the focus on communities adjacent to its plantations and specifically the youth in those communities, it makes a difference in the physical circumstances and networking in the communities. Between 2009 and 2011, 11 social compacts were signed with community clusters in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo.

In 2012, Safcol remained committed to socio-economic development. The structured approach of community partnerships was strengthened, with the focus on implementing needs-driven development and making a positive impact in community members' lives. In the areas where the group signed social compacts, an amount of R8,1 million was spent on socio-economic development projects.

In the same year, Safcol received an award at the South African Enterprise Development Awards for the Most Innovative Enterprise Development Projects, as per the BBBEE codes. Initiatives towards green building include implementing timber frame structures within socio-economic and enterprise development projects, which also received huge support from our communities.

In support of the drive on skills development and making forestry a career of choice, the group's bursary committee awarded 22 new internal bursaries for 2012/13. The in-house training centre, outside Sabie, offered training courses to 1 144 people and outsourced training courses to 244 people. Of special note is the launch of the Safcol-sponsored Forestry Chair at the University of Pretoria, which is an opportunity for students who wish to further their studies in forestry-related fields.

Despite difficult trading conditions and operating environment, the Safcol group's financial performance for the 2012 financial year improved as compared to the previous two financial years, resulting in an operating profit of R51 million (excluding the effect of the adjustment of plantation valuation). The profit to date has been attributed to the group's efforts to implement its turnaround strategy.

The group's share in the lumber market has increased from 4% to 12%, following the introduction of its new marketing and sales approach.

### Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry-research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research.

The Forest Research function within the department has been coordinating a number of research projects focusing on sustainable management of forest resources. These include:

- monitoring and evaluation of bark-harvesting techniques of two indigenous tree species in the Letaba State Forest
- sustainable harvesting of plants used for medicinal purposes
- sustainable use of monkey rope (*Secamone*

*gerradii*) by local subsistence farmers
- ex situ and in situ conservation of the critically endangered *protea roupelliae sbsp. hamiltonii*
- conservation of the co-occurring endangered *Leucospermum gerrardii* within the Dr Hamilton Nature Reserve.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role in terms of species protection.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines.

The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Fibre Processing and Manufacturing (FPM) Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta), is responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards.

The department, together with the FPM Seta, offers study bursaries in forestry-related fields.

## Programmes and initiatives

### Participative forestry

The department supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff. An estimated R2 million has already been spent from the Community Facilitation Fund to support the establishment of projects on the ground.

Current projects include the establishment of medicinal plant nurseries in partnership with various stakeholders, and beekeeping in partnership with the ARC.

In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rand.

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3,2 billion and produces some 2 000 t a year. Government investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people.

### National Arbour Week

National Arbour Week is celebrated annually around the first week in September to promote the planting and maintenance of indigenous trees. It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development, community participation, poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry.

Every Arbour Week, two to three indigenous trees are selected and promoted as the trees of the year; they include a common variety and a scarcer, possibly endangered species.

The Tree of the Year is a government initiative to raise awareness about the need to value and protect indigenous trees and to educate the public about South African trees.

The common tree of the year for 2012 was *Syzygium cordatum*, also known as the water berry; and the rare trees were the *Protorhus longifolia*, also know as the red beech and *Bruguiera gymnorrhiza*, also known as the black mangrove.

The Trees of the Year for 2013 are *Virgilia*

In September 2012, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and the Northern Cape MEC for Agriculture, Norman Shushu, launched Arbour Week by planting fruit trees, establishing vegetable gardens and distributing seed packs and seedlings to local communities in Galeshewe. The establishment of vegetable gardens helps rural communities produce food in their own backyards, which helps them to feed their families and fight soaring food prices.

*oroboides*, also known as the blossom tree; the *Grewia occidentalis*, also known as the crossberry; and *Barringtonia racemosa*, also know as the powder-puff tree.

## Champion Tree Project

The purpose of the Champion Tree Project is to identify and protect trees that are of national importance and worthy of special protection owing to their remarkable size, age, aesthetic, cultural, historic or tourism value. Similar projects have been established in several other countries, but this is the first of its kind in Africa.

Any person or organisation may nominate trees for champion status. The trees may be indigenous or non-indigenous. Nomination forms with guidelines for the nomination process are available from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries. Every nomination cycle starts on 1 August of each year, and ends on 31 July the following year.

The first individual tree to be declared as protected under the National Forests Act, 1998 in 2003, was a historic English oak tree, the only remnant of the old Sophiatown that was razed by the previous government when it resettled that community in the 1950s.

This intervention was an attempt by a property owner to stop the imminent destruction of the tree. Protection was afforded only after the tree was severely pruned. This was the starting point of the Champion Tree Project, aimed at preventing similar destruction of other important trees.

Currently, more than 70 trees and groups of trees have been declared by the department as champion trees, based on criteria such as size, age and historical value. These trees are all protected under the National Forests Act. They include the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route, the Post Office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay, the Sagole baobab in Limpopo and camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago.

The oldest planted tree in South Africa is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Dutch East India Company's Gardens in Cape Town more than three centuries ago, supposedly by Jan van Riebeeck.

Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer, the daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founder member of the South African Communist Party.

On 4 January 2013, an international team of tree climbers arrived in Cape Town for a month-long expedition to climb champion trees throughout the country.

The aim of the expedition, under the leadership of David Wiles of the UK, is to scale about 20 of the largest and oldest trees in South Africa – all listed under the Champion Tree Project.

The tree climbers have a passion for scaling the biggest and the oldest trees, and height is not always the defining criterion. While the Sagole baobab, for example, is only 22 m tall, a mathematical formula established it as the largest indigenous tree in the country on the basis of its extensive trunk circumference, which is more than 33 m.

Through this tree-climbing expedition, the climbers hope to raise awareness of trees and the need to protect our heritage. The department, in partnership with the Dendrological Society of South Africa, assisted in organising the expedition and obtaining necessary approval from various landowners and conservation authorities.

## Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees Programme was launched in 2007 as part of a UN greening initiative to encourage countries worldwide to plant more trees. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees, including fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees, are planted every year.

In South Africa, the Million Trees Programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector.

Since its inception, more than four million

trees have been planted, 40% of which were fruit trees planted mostly in poorer rural areas of the country.

In an effort to ensure the programme is implemented widely, government is calling on the corporate sector to make a contribution, and for citizens and organisations to become involved.

## Resources

### Sustainable forest management

Broadly speaking, there are three categories of forests, namely indigenous forests, woodlands and plantation forests. Forestry activities in indigenous forests and woodlands are not limited to the protection of the resource as a natural heritage, but include their development, use and management, as well as the management and processing of non-timber forest products.

Plantation forestry practices include, among other things, the establishment of vast areas of land with exotic species that are harvested and processed into pulp for the paper and packaging industries, sawn timber, furniture, shelving and flooring.

By the end of June 2012, 1 539 752 ha of plantation forestry land (planted and conservation areas combined) in South Africa were certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC), the second-largest area in the southern hemisphere after Brazil.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are carried out.

There has been an increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This can be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably. The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

As part of its commitment to the practice of sustainable forest management, the forestry industry is also involved in the National Forest Advisory Council Committee for Sustainable Forest Management, which develops criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management, tailored to meet South Africa's specific conditions.

The indigenous forests of the southern Cape received FSC-certification – a first on the continent for high forests. This represents a major step towards the sustainable management of the country's natural forests.

### Indigenous forests

Only about 0,5% of South Africa's total land area is covered by natural forests. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth found in South Africa, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, are important tourist attractions.

The large Afro-temperate forests of the southern Cape, although distributed close to the coast, are aligned with the inland forest types of the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. This is because the southerly temperate latitudes compensate

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has urged residents and tourists in coastal areas to help curb the exploitation of the country's marine resources. In October and November 2012 alone, 143 391 units of abalone (about 16 tons) were confiscated. Members of the public can report suspected poaching by calling the anonymous tip-off line on +27 28 313 2703 or +27 28 312 2609, or by calling CrimeStop on 08600 10111.

for the altitude of inland forests.

Almost half of all natural forests in South Africa are found on private property or land under communal tenure. A detailed inventory of natural forests helps government to monitor changes in forest areas.

Although the country's low natural forest coverage has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector over the last 100 years, natural forests have continued to play a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities. The use of natural forests as sources of building material, fuel wood, food and medicine, is increasing with an estimated 80% of South Africa's population still using medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

The forest-type classification for natural forests represents 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in certain areas of southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape. This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On average, 3 750 $m^3$ of round logs are harvested annually (150 $m^3$ of stinkwood, 750 $m^3$ of yellowwood, 2 500 $m^3$ of Australian blackwood and 350 $m^3$ of other species).

The seven-week fern *(Rumohra adiantiformis)*, harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests is another valuable product of indigenous forests. The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales have been known to exceed 420 000 bunches.

## Woodlands

The woodlands, also known as savannas, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 of value to poor households annually. While natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, and plantation forestry covers less than 1,5 million ha, the woodlands collectively cover about 29 million ha to 46 million ha.

The cover includes extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savanna woodland comprising 5 900 plants, 540 bird species and 175 mammals. These include iconic species such as the Big Five group of mammals that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savanna, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braaiwood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared a protected woodland under the National Forests Act, 1998.

In the past, this resource was not really recognised as a forestry responsibility except where some woodland occurred on state forest land in conservation areas. However, the National Forestry Action Programme of 1997 identified woodland management as a key area of operation for Forestry. The New Forests Act of 1998 also includes woodland in its definition of forests and mandates monitoring and reporting on the state of the woodlands. This legislation protects woodlands on private and communal land, as well as in state forests while promoting sustainable use.

Savanna woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula-fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest, for example, is worth some R1,1 billion a year to rural communities.

There are 87 savanna woodland types, and

although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private reserves, many under-protected savanna types have been identified.

Another woodland type is the albany thicket biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha. Extensive spekboom plantings are underway in the Eastern Cape to restore the carrying capacity of degraded thicket areas, and to capitalise on its high carbon-sequestration rates as a climate change offset.

## Commercial forests

South Africa's demand for wood is met predominantly by commercial forest plantations. During the 1930s, government started extensive commercial plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities.

Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle. Currently, South Africa's plantation forests cover about 1,4% of cultivated land.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising sustainable forest management and is a world leader in forest certification. Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all planta-tion and processing activities.

The Institute for Commercial Forestry Research completed its role in developing the National Forest Protection Strategy for the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, a project funded by the FAO of the UN.

Another development which will assist in enhancing forest protection is that an MoU, formalising FSA's support and funding for these activities at Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnical Institute (FABI), has been entered into with the University of Pretoria.

FABI's state-of-the-art biological control and quarantine facility at the university was officially opened in May 2011.

The National Forest Protection Strategy, which includes forest fire matters, was approved by the FAO and the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries in 2011.

Once fully implemented, the strategy is expected to provide the industry with additional resources and enhance the coordination of responses to combat forest fires.

## Plantation yields

Sappi has 290 million commercial trees on their land. The company harvests 35 million trees and plants 37 million trees every year. Sappi manages about 140 000 ha under natural vegetation, which includes grasslands, indigenous forests, wetlands and riverine areas.

The timber is used in wood products such as roof trusses. It is also pulped so that the wood fibre can be used for newspapers, boxes, paper bags and paper.

## Socio-economic reform and growth

The forestry vision states that forests are managed for people and that there is a need to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at a local level.

Forestry strategies to achieve this vision include forestry enterprise development aimed at creating opportunities for people to use forests including indigenous forests, woodlands and plantations, and forest-based resources for economic growth, income-generation and job creation. The forestry enterprise development concept is central to government's pro-poor agenda and is also a key component of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) in the forestry sector.

## BBBEE Charter

The BBBEE Charter process is one of many government strategies to transform the economy. The formulation and implementation of BEE programmes at different levels and in different sectors of the economy include partnerships between government and the private sector, including trade unions and community-based organisations.

The BBBEE Charter for the forestry sector

will be instrumental in achieving objectives such as increasing the number of black people, particularly women, who own, manage and control enterprises and productive assets, facilitating ownership and management of enterprise and productive assets by communities, workers, co-operatives and other collective enterprises.

Under the charter, government aims to process about 15 000 ha of water-use licence applications a year for the next 10 years to obtain a nett increase in afforested land of about 10 000 ha a year or 100 000 ha over the entire period.

### Community forestry

Community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to benefit local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland management by communities and individuals. Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory forest management of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the sustainable management of South African forests.

Elements of participatory forest management were initially developed for indigenous state forests. However, the aim is to use participatory forest management as an approach to managing all forest types where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Ninety-six community stream flow reduction activity applications, totalling about 13 000 ha, were being supported by the departments of agriculture, forestry and fisheries and of trade and industry through assistance provided in the undertaking of environmental impact assessments in the Eastern Cape.

### Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global Releaf, an international greening organisation. Its mission is to contribute to healthier living, especially in disadvantaged communities, through environmental awareness and greening programmes.

The FTFA was started in 1990 to address sustainable development through greening, climate change action, sustainable natural resource management and food-security programmes. By August 2011, the FTFA had planted more than 4,1 million trees, facilitated over 2 500 organic food gardens for the poorest in South Africa and launched the first carbon calculator and the Carbon Standard (now the Carbon Protocol) in this country.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors and civil society. Its goal is to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The Urban Greening Fund is managed by the FTFA; the departments of water affairs and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

## Fisheries

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is tasked with managing the development and sustainable use of marine and coastal resources; maximising the economic potential of the fisheries sector; and protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems.

The South African coastline covers more

than 3 000 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. These shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals having been recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities. Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry while protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems and addressing transformation in the sector.

In line with international trends, the department recognises fisheries as an economic activity rather than a purely environmental or biodiversity matter. Government has expanded the mandate for fisheries management through the inclusion of fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture, to the department's existing responsibilities.

The department will gradually establish offices of the fisheries branch in other coastal, as well as inland provinces. These are economic decisions, which contribute to employment creation and poverty alleviation.

## Industry and products

South Africa has a well-established fishery sector, with 22 commercial fisheries subsectors and new fisheries being explored and experimented with.

There are two fishery sector components, namely the wild capture fisheries, which includes commercial, recreational and small-scale fisheries each with its own specific research and management mandates.

The other component is the aquaculture (fish farming) sector, which is considered underdeveloped and as a result has been prioritised due to declining wild stocks.

Wild capture fisheries currently includes three distinct components (commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries), each of which requires specific research and management interventions.

Fishing contributes approximately 0,5% to the GDP and is regionally important, especially in the Western Cape where it contributes about 2% to the GDP. South Africa is a nett exporter of fish and fish products and 55% of the demersal trawl catches are exported. In rock lobster, squid, tuna and demersal longline, almost the total production is exported.

On average, South Africa exports about 160 000 t of fish a year, and imports approximately 55 000 t. The value of exports and imports during 2008 was approximately R3,1 billion and R1 billion, respectively.

The commercial fishing industry currently employs approximately 27 000 people directly and approximately 100 000 indirectly, while aquaculture provides about 1 850 direct employment opportunities on farms.

Regarding commercial fisheries, marine living resources are considered to be fully used and high-value species largely overexploited. However, some rebuilding strategies are underway, for example in hake, rock lobster and abalone. The annual production of commercial fisheries is more than 600 000 t, valued at R5,8 billion. Demersal fishing industries contribute about 70% of the total value of fishing.

In 2012, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries hosted the sixth session of the UN FAO Committee on Fisheries Sub-Committee on Aquaculture. This sector has shown increased production at an annual average of 11,6%. The Fisheries Management Branch received R400 million in 2012/13 to oversee the management of the fishing industry, including R253 million for the Marine Living Resources Fund.

In line with the Free State Provincial Department of Agriculture's intent to unlock the potential of the province, the department has

declared Xhariep district as the Fish Hub of the province. Some 39 fish ponds have already been established in Springfontein, Bethulie and Koffiefontein. The department will be involved as the custodian for three years, after which the infrastructure will be handed over to fish farmers.

In 2012/13 the department allocated R11 million for further development of aquaculture, and this will address a fish processing plant and more ponds.

Growth in the industry is not only dependent on labour and capital inputs, but is determined by the stock of fish available.

There are currently over 2 900 rights holders using 1 788 vessels in 21 different fisheries. This has decreased since 2002, which is in line with the international trend to decrease the number of fishing vessels to reduce the pressure on the resources.

## Legislation and policies

By March 2012, the department was in the process of developing the transformation framework for fisheries.

The Small-Scale Fisheries Policy was finalised and implemented in 2012. The policy seeks to address imbalances of the past, and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights will be allocated on a group rather than an individual basis.

The policy further aims to support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing the fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.

In March 2012, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries temporarily suspended the harvesting of West Coast rock lobster under the sixth interim relief dispensation.

Interim relief was agreed upon in May 2007, following an Equality Court settlement between the department and small-scale fishers. According to the settlement, the department agreed to grant small-scale fishers access to marine resources until the Small-Scale Fisheries Policy is implemented.

In September 2012, Cabinet approved the ratification of the Maritime Labour Convention 2006 and the Convention on Work in the Fishing Sector, 2007.

The ratification of the convention will provide for improved conditions for decent work in the maritime sector, ensuring that fisheries have decent conditions of work on board fishing vessels.

The department has entered into a service level agreement with the South African Navy to manage its fleet of four patrol vessels and three research vessels for a year, while the department considers its various options regarding the long-term management of these vessels.

## Resource management

The department increased its capacity to combat illegal, unregulated and unreported fishing, and launched an anti-poaching project in the Western Cape, funded through the Working for Fisheries Programme.

This enabled the department to deploy 60 military veterans in the Overberg region to serve as the “eyes and ears” of government.

The fishing sector comprises large-scale operators and small-scale and recreational fishermen and women.

In 2012, the department published the draft National Plan of Action for the Conservation and Management of Sharks (NPOA-Sharks). It serves as a guideline aimed at promoting the conservation and management of sharks and their long-term sustainable use, and is based on principles of the *Code of Conduct for Responsible Fisheries*, to which South Africa is a signatory. South Africa has one of the most diverse shark faunas in the world and many species are caught in appreciable quantities in directed and non-directed shark fisheries.

Once adopted, this voluntary guideline will provide a mechanism for identifying and resolving the outstanding issues around management and conservation of sharks to ensure their optimal, long-term, sustainable use for the benefit of all South Africans.

### Aquaculture

The development of aquaculture production is regarded as a viable solution to increase the production of fish, thereby decreasing the pressure on natural fish resources.

Rehabilitation programmes to rebuild depleted fish stocks will further contribute towards job creation and sustainable livelihoods. To this end, the department developed the national Aquaculture Development Programme and Strategic Framework.

In support of the adoption of sustainable aquaculture that benefits the poor, the department committed to investing in infrastructure and skills transfer to the amount of R150 million over the 2010/13 period.

The department initiated the Aquaculture and Rural Livelihoods Programme, which is formulated to assist in developing provincial aquaculture strategic plans, revitalising state hatcheries and training aquaculture extension officers. The department also initiated a regional capacity-building programme in aquatic animal diseases diagnostics and management for state veterinarians at Rhodes University in the Eastern Cape.

Aquaculture development programmes have the potential to play an important role in the fishing industry. However, aquaculture production is currently underdeveloped and focuses mainly on high-value products (abalone, oysters and mussels).

The current aquaculture production level is 3 543 t worth – about R218 million. Production can increase to over 90 000 t worth (about R2,4 billion) over the next 10 to 20 years.

Most marine aquaculture is capital and skills intensive. It also has limited potential because of the coastline – few protected areas, high energy coastline and high cost of land-based activities. Distance from the markets means the focus is on high-value products. There are also concerns about genetic contamination and environmental impact on sensitive areas.

### Subsistence fisheries

Participation in subsistence fisheries is broad – coastal communities have traditionally made use of intertidal and shallow-water resources as a source of food. Only surplus not consumed by fishers are sold locally.

Some 147 fishing communities, 28 338 fisher households and about 29 233 people are considered as true subsistence fishers. A draft policy for the recognition, allocation and management of small-scale fishing rights is being developed for small-scale fishing.

### Recreational fishing

With South Africa's extensive coastline spanning two oceans and with its numerous dams, lakes, rivers and streams, South Africa is a recreational fisher's paradise. However, recreational fishing may only be undertaken with a valid permit, and recreational fishing is limited to certain times of the fishing season.

To reduce user conflicts between commercial and recreational fishing and to protect stocks during breeding periods, certain areas have been declared closed areas. Recreational fishers are also limited to bag limits of fish on a per-day basis.

The department's Fisheries Division has published a recreational fishing pamphlet to guide recreational fishers regarding the number and species of fish they may catch and where they may catch fish.

Annual recreational fishing licences in all industries total about 300 000, with income generated from these licences amounting to R18 million. The actual annual catch is about 17 000 t of high-value species.

## Conclusion

The department's key priorities remain food security, job creation and rural and economic development. Against the background of an increasing global population, the gradual decrease of natural resources and the effects of climate change, food security is a vital focus area for the department.

Both commercial and emerging farmers are important role players in making a success of agriculture in South Africa and in so doing, ensure food security and contribute to rural development and job creation.

Food security will be strengthened by implementing the Food Security Policy to support the Zero Hunger Campaign.

In the next five years, the programme will focus on integrating all the support services within and outside the department by developing a regulatory framework in the form of an Agrarian Beneficiary Assistance Policy.

Efforts to eradicate deeply entrenched poverty in rural areas include programmes that will overhaul the entire social system.

This includes developing an agribusiness sector that will create more employment opportunities. To this end, government is assisting smallholder farmers to become commercial farmers and to turn rural areas into commercially viable zones.

In addition, the rail freight network will be made more easily and cheaply available for the transport of bulk agriculture, forestry and fisheries commodities.

The department's mandate for fisheries management has been extended to include freshwater and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture. Offices of the fisheries branch will gradually be established in other coastal and inland provinces, which will contribute to job creation and poverty alleviation.

The Small-scale Fisheries Policy, which is being finalised, seeks to address imbalances of the past and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights will be allocated on a group basis, rather than on an individual basis.

To boost the forestry sector's potential to contribute to job and wealth creation, as well as conservation of biological diversity, government has prioritised the expansion of plantations in areas where it is economically, environmentally and socially appropriate to do so.

Over the medium term, 32 million ha of degraded indigenous forests and woodland will be rehabilitated. About 2 500 small growers will be supported.

In view of the impact of climate change on the sector, future plans also deal with the sustainable use and management of limited natural resources through the promotion of LandCare programmes, the expansion of forests and the conservation of fisheries.

The department will continue to support and conduct research initiatives and programmes to gain a better understanding of the processes behind climate change, vulnerability and eco-friendly agricultural practices.

## Acknowledgements

Agricultural Research Council
*Business Day*
C.A.P.E. (*www.capeaction.org.za*)
Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

*http://afis.meraka.org.za*
*http://land.pwv.gov.za*
*www.agis.agri.co.za*
*www.brassicastoday.com*
*www.bizcommunity.com*
*www.brandsouthafrica.com*
*www.capehoneybushtea.co.za*
*www.daff.gov.za*
*www.fin24.com*
*www.freshplaza.com*
*www.gov.za*
*www.info.gov.za*
*www.komatilandforests.co.za*
*www.landbank.co.za*

*Estimates of National Expenditure, 2012*
Forestry South Africa
*Private Life*
*Sowetan*
*The New Age*
*The Times*

*www.mediaclub.com*
*www.myfundi.co.za*
*www.nda.agric.za*
*www.news24.com*
*www.pmg.org.za*
*www.safcol.co.za*
*www.sahoneybush.co.za*
*www.sasa.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sarooibos.org.za*
*www.sawis.co.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.trees.co.za*

## Suggested reading

*Abstract of Agricultural Statistics.* Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Directorate: Agricultural Information Services, annually.

Beinart, W & Wotshela, L. 2011. *Prickly Pear: A Social History of a Plant in the Eastern Cape.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Binswanger-Mkhize, HP, Bourguignon, C & Van den Brink, R (eds). 2009. *Agricultural Land Redistribution: Toward Greater Consensus.* Washington, DC: World Bank.

Bredenkamp, BV & Upfold, S. 2012. *South African Forestry Handbook.* Fifth edition. Menlopark: Southern African Institute of Forestry.

*Economic Review of South African Agriculture.* Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, annually.

Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa.* Bellville: PLAAS, School of Government, University of the Western Cape.

*Investment, Farming and Agribusiness South Africa.* Johannesburg: Trade Edge, annually.

*Market Risk, Water Management and the Multiplier Effects of Irrigation Agriculture with Reference to the Northern Cape.* 2008. Gezina: Water Research Commission.

Platter, J & Van Zyl, P. 2012. *Platter's South African Wines, 2012: The Guide to Cellars, Vineyards, Winemakers, Restaurants and Accommodation.* Hermanus: John Platter SA Wine Guide.

*South African Wine Industry Directory 2012/13: Facts, Figures,Regulations, Wineries, Suppliers, Contact Details.* 2012. Paarl: Wineland Publications.

*The National Agricultural Directory/Die Nasionale Landbougids.* 2009. [South Africa]: Rainbow SA.

*Threats to the Food Security and Food Sovereignty in the Eastern Cape: Impacts of the Massive Food Production Programme (MFPP), GMOs and Cash Crops in Four Villages in the Amathole District Municipality.* 2010. [Sl]: Masifunde Education and Development Project Trust.

# Arts and Culture

Arts and culture open powerful spaces for debate about where a society finds itself and where it is going. Promoted effectively, the creative and cultural industries can contribute substantially to small-business development, job creation, and urban development and renewal.

South Africa's music industry, for example, was worth R2,2 billion in sales in 2011; the craft sector contributed R3,3 billion to gross domestic product (GDP) in 2010 and employs more than 273 000 people; and the visual arts sector has a turnover of nearly R2 billion.

The country's rich cultural legacy and the creativity of its people mean that South Africa can offer unique stories, voices and products to the world. In addition, artistic endeavour and expression can foster values, facilitate healing and restore national pride.

The Department of Arts and Culture is the custodian of South Africa's diverse cultural, artistic and linguistic heritage. It is directly responsible for several public entities, including museums, art galleries, the National Archives and six playhouses.

A large proportion of the department's budget is dedicated to supporting and developing institutional infrastructure to showcase, restore and preserve South Africa's heritage for future generations.

Measures to promote the arts include:

- providing financial as well as information and communication technology support to artists to enable the creation of works expressing national creativity, while opening space for vibrant debate
- strengthening the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa's mandate for nation building and value inculcation
- incentivising commercial distribution networks to distribute and/or host art
- developing and implementing plans for a more effective arts and culture curriculum in schools with appropriate educator support
- supporting income-smoothing for artists in a special unemployment insurance scheme and evaluating funding models for such initiatives
- developing sectoral determination legislation frameworks to protect arts-sector employees.

## Legislation and policies

The mandate and operations of the Department of Arts and Culture are guided by various policies and legislation. These include the:

- National Film and Video Foundation Act, 1997 (Act 73 of 1997)
- National Heritage Council Act, 1999 (Act 11 of 1999)
- National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999)
- National Library of South Africa Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998)
- Pan South African Language Board Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995)
- South African Geographical Names Council Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998)
- South African Library for the Blind Act, 1998 (Act 91 of 1998)
- Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998)
- Culture Promotion Act, 1983 (Act 35 of 1983)
- Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962)
- Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997)
- National Archives and Record Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996)
- National Arts Council Act, 1997 (Act 56 of 1997)
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000)
- National Council for Library and Information Services Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001)
- White Paper on Arts, Culture and Heritage
- Use of Official Languages Bill

## Funding

Budget allocations for 2012/13 include the following:

- South African Heritage Resources Agency (Sahra): R47,1 million
- National Arts Council (NAC): R90,9 million.
- National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF): R88,1 million
- Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB): R69,6 million
- National Heritage Council: R50,7 million.

The following arts institutions receive annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture:

- State Theatre
- Playhouse Company
- ArtsCape
- Market Theatre
- Performing Arts Council of the Free State
- Windybrow Theatre.

In addition to the annual transfer from the department, these entities also generate their own revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance and sponsorships. The total amount of transfers in 2012/13 was R255,4 million, excluding capital works.

The following officially declared heritage institutions are dependent on annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture:

- Northern Flagship Institution, Pretoria
- Iziko Museum, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Bloemfontein National Museum
- Afrikaanse Taalmuseum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Luthuli Museum, Stanger
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

The total amount of transfers in 2012/13 was R288,4 million, excluding capital works.

The Department of Arts and Culture oversees various libraries, including the National Library of South Africa, a statutory body, the South African Library for the Blind, and Blind South Africa. The total amount of transfers to the libraries in 2012/13 was R86,3 million, excluding capital works.

## National symbols

### Animal: Springbok *(Antidorcas marsupialis)*

The springbok's common name is derived from its characteristic jumping display. It is the only southern African gazelle and is fairly wide-spread in open, dry bush, grasslands or riverbeds near water. It is also the emblem

of South Africa's national rugby team, which bears its name.

### Bird: Blue crane *(Anthropoides paradisia)*

This elegant crane with its silvery blue plumage is endemic to southern Africa, with more than 99% of the population occurring within South Africa's borders.

### Fish: Galjoen *(Coracinus capensis)*

The galjoen is found only along the South African coast and is a familiar sight to every angler. It keeps to mostly shallow water, is often found in rough surf and sometimes right next to the shore.

### Flower: King protea *(Protea cynaroides)*

This striking protea is found in the south-western and southern areas of the Western Cape. It derives its scientific name *cynaroides*, which means "like cynara" (artichoke) from the artichoke-like appearance of its flower head.

**The National Anthem**

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

### Tree: Real yellowwood *(Podocarpus latifolius)*

The yellowwood family is primeval and has been present in South Africa for more than 100 million years. The species is widespread from Table Mountain, along the southern and eastern Cape coast, in the ravines of the Drakensberg up to the Soutpansberg and the Blouberg in Limpopo.

## National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag-pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place it should be to the right of the audience.

## National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid-Afrika).*

*Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* was composed by a Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897. The words of *The Call of South Africa* was written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918 and the music was composed by Reverand ML de Villiers in 1921.

## National coat of arms

South Africa's coat of arms, the highest visual symbol of the state, was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

Its central image is a secretary bird with uplifted wings, a sun rising above it. Below the bird is the protea, an indigenous South African flower, representing the aesthetic harmony of all cultures and the country flowering as a nation.

The ears of wheat are emblems of the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant symbolise wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

At the centre stands a shield signifying the protection of South Africans, above which are a spear and knobkierie. These assert the defence of peace rather than a posture of war. Within the shield are images of the Khoisan people, the first inhabitants of the land.

The figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art. The motto of the coat of arms – !ke e:/xarra//ke – is in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, and means "diverse people unite", or "people who are different joining together".

## National orders

National orders are the highest awards the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities. They are presented on 27 April, Freedom Day:

- The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.
- The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation; and community service.
- The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.
- The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.
- The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.
- The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

## Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The country's Constitution guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for its diverse people and their cultures. These are: Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

## Role players

### National Heritage Council (NHC)

The NHC is responsible for the preservation of the country's heritage as a priority for nation building and national identity.

The NHC currently focuses on policy development for the sector to meet its transformation goals, public awareness and education, knowledge production in heritage subjects that were previously neglected, and making funding available to projects that place heritage as a socio-economic resource.

### South African Heritage Resources Agency (Sahra)

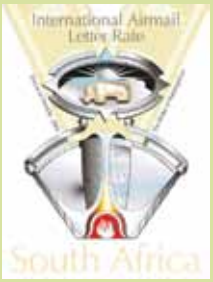
Sahra provides for the identification, protection, conservation and promotion of South Africa's heritage for present and future generations. It established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assist-

**National orders and symbols**

The Order of the Baobab

The Order of Luthuli

The Order of Mendi for Bravery




The Order of Mapungubwe

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order of Ikhamanga

National bird: Blue crane

National flower: King protea

National fish: Galjoen

National tree: Real yellowwood

The coat of arms

National animal: Springbok

ance to approved bodies or individuals, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- underwater cultural heritage, including historical shipwrecks.

## South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC)

The SAGNC advises the Minister of Arts and Culture on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty or jurisdiction acquired by treaty.

The renaming of geographical features is regarded as a form of symbolic reparation to address South Africa's past.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names would generally be avoided:
  - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
  - names of places in other countries and names of countries
  - names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
  - names that are discriminatory or derogatory
  - names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
  - names of living people.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces.

In April 2012, the South African Post Office (Sapo) released a set of stamps to celebrate South Africa's national symbols.

Sapo also commemorated the 100th anniversary of the birth of Dr George Pemba, who has been referred to as the "Grand Master of South African art". The set of 10 stamps feature some of his best-known works.

## National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)

The NAC was established in 1997 as a funding institution for the arts, to provide and encourage the provision of opportunities for people to practice the arts and to promote the appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts

It awards grants to individuals and organisations in the arts. Funding is also available for individual bursaries for postgraduate studies in the arts. Individuals and registered organisations active in theatre, dance, crafts, literature, music, multidiscipline and visual arts may apply for project funding.

## Arts institutions

The following arts institutions contribute to a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

## Business and Arts South Africa (Basa)

Basa promotes mutually beneficial and sustainable business-arts partnerships that will benefit society as a whole.

Basa was founded in 1997 as a joint initiative between the then Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology and the private sector. Basa has peer agencies in the United Kingdom (UK) and Australia, and has over 160 corporate members.

## Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

The ACT is the oldest funding agency in South Africa. It was established to develop and promote arts, culture and heritage in general by securing financial and other resources for arts, culture and heritage. It also promotes the needs and role of the sector in the public domain.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including, but not limited to, arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

## Community art centres and other cultural organisations

More than 160 community art centres are in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed centres. They operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural promotion to advanced programmes and vocational training.

The centres range from craft centres to community halls and theatres. Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development. The Department of Arts and Culture endorses and supports programmes in needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental.

## Bureau of Heraldry

The Bureau of Heraldry is responsible for registering coats of arms; badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order; registering names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities; and promoting national symbols.

## National Language Service (NSL)

The NLS is tasked with meeting the constitutional obligations on multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official and foreign languages.

The Department of Arts and Culture launched the Multilingualism Campaign in February 2010, recognising the national wealth in linguistic diversity and the importance of multilingualism in heritage, culture, education, science and technology.

Through its bursary scheme, the department offers language-learning opportunities as well as training in language practice.

The department awarded 119 postgraduate bursaries in 2010/11 and established the South African Language Practitioners Council at a cost of R5,2 million.

## Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB)

PanSALB was established by Parliament to develop South Africa's 11 official langauages, as well as the Khoi, San and South African Sign Language, and to promote multilingualism through:

- creating the conditions for the development of and the equal use of all official languages
- fostering respect for and encouraging the use of other languages in the country
- encouraging the best use of the country's linguistic resources, to enable South Africans to free themselves from all forms of linguistic

From November 2012, South Africans will for the first time ever be able to air their views online regarding the protection of their cultural heritage.

This comes after government, through the South African Heritage Resources Agency, introduced a heritage resource management web-based database portal – the South African Heritage Resource Information System, which can be found at *www.sahra.org.za/sahris*.

The portal will ensure that all relevant data is streamlined and that every South African will be able to access information about their heritage.

In March 2012, the Voortrekker Monument in Pretoria was formally declared a national heritage site, becoming the first monument reflecting Afrikaner culture to achieve this status. The Voortrekker Monument was built in honour of the Voortrekkers or pioneers, who left the Cape between 1835 and 1854 to cut through the interior in what became known as the Great Trek.

discrimination, domination and division and to enable them to exercise appropriate linguistic choices for their own well being as well as for national development.

To achieve this, the board has three structures:

- provincial language committees
- national language bodies
- national lexicographic units.

## Programmes, projects and initiatives

### Arts and culture summit

Between December 2010 and April 2011, the department conducted a rapid review of prior research and a status quo assessment, which culminated in high-level conceptual proposals to reposition the arts, culture and heritage sector and introduce large-scale, high-impact programmes.

Thirteen project teams were established to develop detailed concept documents and business plans for implementation of the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy. This strategy will work through existing institutions and is built on existing initiatives categorised into five areas:

- stimulation of demand
- audience development and consumption
- heritage
- a cultural observatory
- human capital development.

The implementation of these projects is estimated to create 16 000 work opportunities and 2 300 full-time equivalent jobs between 2013/14 and 2014/15.

The Public Art Programme, which will focus on beautification and storytelling through art in communities and showcasing artistic talent, is one of the three projects aimed at stimulating demand in the sector.

The programme is projected to create 5 000 work opportunities between 2013/14 and 2014/15.

The heritage legacy projects include the liberation heritage route and a marine heritage project. The latter is a recreational underwater museum in Kosi Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, which will interpret aspects of the history of slavery, indentured labour and the South African Native Labour Corps. It has the potential to create 1 517 work opportunities with annual growth of between 200 and 968 work opportunities between 2013/14 and 2014/15.

### Heritage projects

The Department of Arts and Culture declared 2012 as the Year of Heritage, with the aim of preserving South Africa's rich and diverse cultural heritage, paying particular attention to liberation heritage.

This involved museums, monuments and statues in honour of those who played a significant role in the struggle for liberation. It also included the upgrading and declaration of national heritage sites, places and graves of heroes and heroines of the liberation struggle.

In honouring the legacy of the former President of the African National Congress (ANC), Oliver Tambo, a museum, interpretation centre and statue are to be built at Nkantolo, Bizana, which will create an estimated 50 permanent jobs and 90 short-term jobs. Work is also underway to upgrade and declare as heritage sites the graves of Dr Beyers Naude and Robert Sobukwe.

In KwaZulu-Natal, the department launched the Dr John Langalibalele Dube Heritage Legacy Project, which is expected to create 270 jobs.

In the Western Cape, the department partnered with the Ray Alexander Simons Memory Centre in building a museum and a community centre in Gugulethu.

The Steve Biko Centre was opened in Ginsberg in the Eastern Cape, and was expected to create 609 jobs.

The following were declared national heritage sites:

- The graves of Rahima Moosa, Helen Joseph, Lillian Ngoyi and Charlotte Maxeke.
- The Voortrekker Monument, which was connected with Freedom Park by road. The second phase of the Freedom Park Museum, !IXhapo, which will reflect South Africa's history in its totality, was opened in late 2012.
- The Wesleyan Church in Waaihoek and the Maphikela House in Mangaung.
- The houses of former ANC President Joseph Makgatho and Bram Fischer.
- The site of the 1957 anti-pass women's march in Zeerust.

This work is part of the liberation heritage route, through which sites and individuals of significance to the struggle are connected.

## Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy

As part of the national target of creating five million jobs within the next 10 years, the Department of Arts and Culture launched the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy in late 2011, expected to create more than 150 000 work opportunities between 2012 and 2017.

The strategy involves a number of arts and culture job-creation programmes. These include among others the Public Art Programme, where youth will receive art classes after which the department will employ them in their respective communities to beautify the environment through art. About 3 000 full-time art facilitators will be deployed in schools throughout the country to facilitate the initiative. Along with the establishment of an Art Bank, this is expected to create 10 000 new work opportunities over the next three years.

More than R1,5 million was set aside for the Bokgabo Dikolong visual arts and photography competition, which targeted learners from all provinces and was implemented jointly with the Department of Basic Education.

A further R600 000 was set aside for the South African School Choral Eisteddfod, involving all provinces.

Other cultural events that received support, include the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, the North West Cultural Calabash in Taung, the Diamonds and Dorings in Kimberley, the Joy of Jazz in Johannesburg, the Cape Town International Jazz Festival and the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown.

The Department of Arts and Culture committed to support at least one major signature event per province, targeting a baseline of 2 000 work opportunities per event.

Other programmes include:

- five cultural precincts and information centres, which are being piloted in five major cities and which are expected to create more than 2 000 new work opportunities
- supporting 26 major cultural events annually, which would generate a baseline target of more than 2 000 work opportunities per event and include big events such as the Joy of Jazz.
- setting up a National Skills Academy for the arts to train youth, particularly those in rural areas
- the Indoni My Heritage My Pride Programme aimed at providing youth with life skills training, education and appreciation for their heritage
- the Trendsetter Initiative, which will encourage youth to participate in the arts and contribute to the development of their communities
- developing a recreational underwater museum in Kosi Bay, which is expected to boost adventure and cultural tourism in the West Coast
- working with the United Nations (UN) Conference on Trade and Development towards establishing a cultural observancy, to collect and analyse data within the sector
- the department piloted the concept of a sourcing enterprise during the UN Framework Conference on Climate Change (17th Conference of the Parties) that was held in November 2011, which resulted in the creation of more than 8 000 direct work days over a two-week period.

## Infrastructure development drive

In his 2012 State of the Nation Address, President Jacob Zuma unveiled a massive drive towards infrastructure expansion. The

earmarked infrastructure allocation for arts and culture will be used to build, upgrade, restore and maintain museums, performing art centres, libraries and archives.

In 2008/9, the department entered into the planning phase of the new National English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and the construction of storage space at Iziko Museum in Cape Town. Both are scheduled for completion in 2013/14 at a total cost of R350 million.

The department will spend an estimated R168 million on the construction of the Sarah Bartmann Centre of Remembrance in the Eastern Cape and R44 million on the construction of the Matola Monument Museum.

The upgrade to the Craigelea Building in Pretoria, used as the headquarters of the National Film and Video Archives, was completed in 2011/12. Several other projects will be running from 2012/13, such as the upgrading of facilities for people with disabilities at the National Archives of South Africa.

### Investing in Culture Programme

The Investing in Culture Programme promotes job creation, skills development and economic empowerment, supporting business start-ups and poverty-alleviation projects.

Funds are transferred to participants in the programme's projects and are disbursed on the basis of annual business plans and service level agreements between the department and the individual or group contractors.

## Festivals

South Africans love celebrations. Arts and cultural festivals therefore abound, offering something for every taste – from prickly pears, peaches, "witblits", asparagus and cherries, to various music forms, dance, arts, science, books and whales. Many of these have become annual events, growing in popularity and attendance numbers.

- Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.
- Arts Alive International Festival is held in the Johannesburg inner city, with over 600 artists performing during the four-day festival at various venues in Newtown.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival is a two-day festival featuring some 40 international and African acts performing on five stages and attracting more than 15 000 people. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The FNB Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies.
- The Ficksburg Cherry Festival, first held in 1969, attracts about 20 000 visitors to this small eastern Free State town.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, known as the KKNK, is a vibrant festival for the performing arts, presented mainly, but not exclusively, in Afrikaans. It is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music. Measured against 2012 attendance figures, it is presently the most popular festival of its kind.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival in Bloemfontein is gaining status as one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival showcases the cream of African and international talent and attracts up to 140 000 people.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- Oppikoppi Easter Festival and Oppikoppi Bushveld Bash near Northam in North West offers live performances from rock, alternative and blues bands both local and from abroad.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with more than 200 local and international artists per-

forming at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; North West's Cultural Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; Sithengi in Cape Town, Western Cape; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and Innibos, Nelspruit.

## Theatre

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as unique and top class. Reflecting South Africa's kaleidoscope of cultures and customs, the theatre scene offers everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

Apart from early productions, notably the ground-breaking musical *King Kong* in the 1960s, theatre created in South Africa by South Africans only started making an impact with the advent of Johannesburg's innovative Market Theatre in the mid-1970s, just as the cultural, sporting and academic boycott was taking hold.

The Market Theatre was formally opened on 21 June 1976. It was here that Johannesburg theatregoers were introduced to the work of most of South Africa's leading playwrights and directors, including Welcome Msomi, Zanemvula (Zakes) Mda, Pieter-Dirk Uys, Gibson Kente, Paul Slabolepszy, Mbongeni Ngema, Adam Small, PG du Plessis, Kessie Govender, Bartho Smit, Maishe Maponya, Percy Mtwa, Deon Opperman, Reza de Wet, Matsemela Manaka and many others.

It was to the Market Theatre that Athol Fugard brought his *A Lesson from Aloes, Master Harold ... and the Boys*, *The Road to Mecca*, *A Place with the Pigs*, *My Children! My Africa!* and *Playland*. At the Market, Barney Simon and his actors developed in workshop *Cincinnatti – Scenes from City Life*, *Call Me Woman*, *Black Dog Inj'emnyana*, *Outers*, *Born in the RSA* and *Woza Albert!*

The performing arts marketed South Africa to overseas audiences most effectively during the 1980s, specifically through theatre and musical productions.

In recent years, South African theatre has taken the entertainment world by storm with commendable reviews for *Umoja*, *The Lion King* and *Kat and The Kings*. The reception these productions enjoy in capitals of the world testifies to the high quality of indigenous South African theatre.

In nurseries such as the Market Theatre Laboratory, the Liberty Theatre on the Square, Saturday Children's Theatre Workshops, the Cape Town Theatre Lab and the National Children's Theatre, new shoots of talent are burgeoning and blooming, nurtured by events like the Market's Community and Young Writers' festivals. Many new names are being added to the list of South African playwrights such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Xoli Norman, Mondi Mayepu, Heinrich Reisenhofer, Oscar Petersen, Mark Lottering, Nazli George, Craig Freimond and Rajesh Gopie.

In January 2011, the Ministry of Arts and Culture launched the New Plays Writing Programme at the University of the Witwatersrand (Wits), Johannesburg. The programme is a partnership between the Department of Arts and Culture, the university, the British Council and Sustained Theatre.

The objective of the programme is to equip a new generation of South African writers with skills that will enable them to develop dramatic work that resonates with the challenges of the world around them. The programme comprises a series of playwriting workshops, the development of new plays and the production of selected work, both locally and internationally.

## Music

South Africa's music industry was worth about R1,7 billion in sales and ranked 17th in the world in 2007.

South Africa is the 25th-largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwela music of the forties and fifties, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally. Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the *Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report*, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

In this industry, the department has solid foundations on which to build. These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the Department of Basic Education, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The Department of Arts and Culture funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

The Southern African Music Rights Organisation (Samro) Foundation awarded R1,13 million in music study bursaries for 2012, giving 113 young South Africans a helping hand in fulfilling their dreams. Some 195 bursary applications were received, submitted by prospective and existing undergraduate and postgraduate students who are pursuing full-time music studies at various South African tertiary institutions.

Of those applicants, 113 candidates succeeded on merit following evaluation by a panel of adjudicators. Each was awarded a R10 000 bursary towards their tuition fees.

In 2012, Irma Stern's painting "Arab" was sold at an auction for R17,2 million – the second-highest price ever for a painting in South Africa. The highest price was reached in 2011, when Strauss & Co sold Stern's "Two Arabs" for R21 166 000. Another notable record at the auction was Alfred Thoba's 1976 "Riots", which sold for R913 480 – over R800 000 more than his previous record.

In the General Music study category, 71 bursaries were awarded in the following music genres: Western Art (47), Jazz (20) and Indigenous African Music (4). Fifteen bursaries were granted for Music Education studies, and 19 for Composition studies.

A record number of 30 applications were received for Music Composition – which bodes well for the future of original, homegrown compositions, whether they be scores for film, television or other media, advertising jingles or recorded music. In the area of indigenous African music research, eight postgraduate bursaries were awarded. This is an avenue of study that the Samro Foundation is keen to promote.

In August 2012, the Samro Foundation announced an orchestration mentorship programme, aimed at developing young com-posers, or helping inexperienced com-posers gain critical skills and techniques in orchestra-tion. The programme's emphasis is primarily on nurturing young black and female composers, with a view to creating works that incorporate elements of African music.

The successful mentorship candidates will be expected to produce an orchestral suite, comprising three to four three-minute movements. These commissioned works, produced under the auspices of the programme, will then become part of Samro's orchestral repertoire.

At the 2012 Jazz a Juan Revelations Festival in Juan-les-Pins, France, South African jazz singer Melanie Scholtz won all three main prizes: the Jury Prize, the Public Prize and the RTL Prize.

### Midem 2011

The *Marché International du Disque et de l'Edition Musicale* (Midem) is an international music market, held in Cannes, France. Held annually since 1967, the fair brings together major players in the international music industry, including musicians, businesspeople, members of the media and cultural policy-makers.

In 2012, the Department of Arts and Culture, in conjunction with the Department of Trade and Industry, again supported the South African Music Recording Industry's participation at Midem, which took place from 28 to 31 January 2012.

### Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The Department of Arts and Culture hosts the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition, a key music event on the African continent that promotes collaboration among interested parties from both the private and public sectors.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

### South African Music Awards (Samas)

The 18th MTN Samas were held at Sun City's Superbowl in April 2012 and broadcast to millions of viewers countrywide. Winners included:

- Album of the Year: *Loliwe* by Zahara
- MTN Record of the Year: *These Streets* – Mi Casa
- Male Artist of the Year: AKA – *Altar Ego*
- Female Artist of the Year: Zahara – *Loliwe*
- Duo/Group of the Year: Mi Casa – *Mi Casa Music*
- Newcomer of the Year: Zahara – *Loliwe*
- Special Award: MTN Best Selling Mobile Music Download: *Facebook* – DJ Cleo
- Special Award: Best Selling Album: *Loliwe* – Zahara

## Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Music and dance are pulling in new audiences and a number of home-grown productions, particularly those aimed at the popular market, have taken South Africa – and in some cases the world – by storm.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The Wits Theatre is another popular dance venue.

### Dance Umbrella

The FNB Dance Umbrella is an annual platform for South African contemporary dance at which new choreographic creations are presented. It is an open platform encompassing performances of youth and community groups, the efforts of young choreographers and commissioned works from professionals. The FNB Dance Umbrella 2012, held in association with the NAC and the Market Theatre, ran from 17 February to 4 March.

There were performances at various Johannesburg theatres: the University of Johannesburg Arts Centre in Auckland Park, the Wits Theatre, Wits Campus, Wits Downstairs, The

Veteran documentary photojournalist, Alf Kumalo died in October 2012. Kumalo's photographs trace the history of South Africa in all its glory, trials and tribulations. It has earned him several awards of recognition, including the prestigious Nat Nakasa Award and the National Order of the Ikhamanga as a great South African.

Dance Factory, The Nunnery and Goethe on Main.

The festival featured choreographers and companies from all over South Africa, and presented work ranging from community-based and youth groups, young up-and-coming choreographers and newly commissioned work from South African artists, to international companies.

The Cape Town City Ballet, started in 1934 as the University of Cape Town Ballet Company, is the oldest ballet company in the country.

In July 2012, it was announced that the country's largest ballet company, the South African Ballet Theatre (SABT) merged with Mzansi Productions to form the South African Mzansi Ballet (SAMB). The highlight of 2012 was the first local production of the classic, *Le Corsaire*, at the Joburg Theatre in July. SAMB was augmented by additional dancers and the cast of almost 100 made *Le Corsaire* a ballet in the grand tradition. SAMB stars shared the stage with guest artists from Australia, Canada and the United States of America as well as South Africans dancing with companies abroad.

## Visual arts

South Africa boasts a rich variety of visual art with influences ranging from pre-historic, ancient and indigenous art, to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

In November 2012, the Africa Century International African Writers Conference was held at the University of the Free State in Bloemfontein. The conference theme was: *From Resistance to Creative Mediation – Celebrating a Century of Writing and Literary Intellectuals' Influence on the Liberation Struggles & Political Impact on Literary Discourse and Development*.

Educational institutions also play an important role in acquiring works of national interest. Substantial collections are housed at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits and the University of South Africa. Collections at the University of Pretoria include the Mapungubwe, Van Tilburg and Edoardo Villa collections. The University of Stellenbosch art collection dates back to 1919. A collection of contemporary Indian art at is housed at the University of KwaZulu-Natal.

There are also several corporate collections of national interest, including those of Standard and Absa banks and the cellular phone network MTN.

In October 2012, the Department of Arts and Culture hosted the Visual Arts Indaba, *Towards a Visual Arts Policy Framework.*

The department commissioned a team of researchers to do an assessment of the visual arts sector in South Africa, to assess the current position of visual arts in South Africa, and to identify opportunities for growing the artistic, social and economic contribution of the visual arts in the society and economy. The report noted that:

- the sector contributes over R1 billion to the economy
- the sector provides employment to almost 18 000 people
- over 50% of those are women and 53,4% are under 35.

## Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space. Indigenous people

Kearsney College Choir from Botha's Hill in KwaZulu-Natal was the sole African representative at the Rhythms of One World choral festival in New York in June 2012. They also performed at the headquarters of the United Nations and in Times Square, where they were filmed live for *Good Morning America*.

The choir performed at concerts in Washington, Pittsburgh and Charleston before travelling to Cincinnati, where they were crowned champions of the Folklore section and won a gold medal in the Music of the Religions section at the World Choir Games.

with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoin fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world can also be found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone some 10 200 years old, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn. Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

## Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers. Famous South African photographers include Kevin Carter, Ernest Cole, David Goldblatt, Bob Gosani, Alf Kumalo, Peter Magubane, Jürgen Schadeberg, Austin Stevens and Jodi Bieber.

Many universities of technology in South Africa offer diploma and degree courses in photography, including the universities of technology of Tshwane, Cape Peninsula and Durban, the Central University of Technology, Free State and the Vaal University of Technology in Vanderbijlpark.

There are also several private educational institutions that offer photography courses including the Stellenbosch Academy of Design and Photography, the Open Window School of Visual Arts in Pretoria and the Cape Town School of Photography.

## Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

Today, this is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

A prime example of local excellence and innovation is the Mapungubwe Interpretation Centre in the Mapungubwe National Park, Limpopo. Designed by Peter Rich Architects of Johannesburg, the building was awarded the World Building of the Year Award 2009 at the World Architecture Festival in Barcelona, as well as the David Alsop Sustainability Award.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities, including the universities of Pretoria, Cape Town, the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Wits and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University. The Sahra conserves buildings of historical or architectural value. More than 4 000 buildings, sites and other objects (including trees) have been declared national monuments.

Heritage South Africa is a non-profit private organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

Cape Town hosted the 29th International Publishers Association (IPA) Congress from 12 to 14 June 2012; it was the first time this event was held in Africa. It included discussions on the opportunities and challenges of digital publishing, the slow recovery from the current economic recession, threats of state publishing and raging debates on copyright law and intellectual property rights. Local journalist Jonathan Shapiro received the 2012 IPA Freedom to Publish Prize.

## Crafts

South Africa's craft markets and informal craft stalls is a thriving industry and a major attraction for tourists. The craft sector contributes about R11 billion annually to GDP and employs approximately 38 000 people.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products. These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and keyrings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures.

In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, an array of other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income for communities. Examples include Fugitive's Drift in KwaZulu-Natal, which offers a large variety of skilfully crafted basketry; the Northern Cape Schmidtsdrift community of displaced San people produce paintings influenced by ancient rock art; and the Madi a Thavha Art Gallery in the Soutpansberg region of the Limpopo produces and sells a range of arts and crafts created by the local Venda and Tsonga communities, including beautiful beadwork, sculptures, ceramics and jewellery.

## Design

The annual Design Indaba Conference and Expo is held in Cape Town in February. It is regarded as one of the premier design events in the world. The expo is a gallery, marketplace, school and theatre, featuring the finest original South African design, covering everything from homeware and jewellery to architecture, fashion, film, multimedia and graphic design.

The 2012 Design Indaba attracted 367 exhibitors and some 40 232 visitors. It contributed R326,9 million to the GDP, up from R261 million in 2011, R232 million in 2010 and R191 million in 2009. Employment created by the event is also significant, at no less than 1 151 part- and full-time jobs.

The Design Indaba attracted 14 international and five local media partners, resulting in a combined media value of R36,9 million, and extensive exposure for the Design Indaba brand, the City of Cape Town and South African design to all corners of the world.

Some 416 registered buyers, of which 156 were international, used Design Indaba Expo as their creative shopping centre of choice, to source proudly South African designs for their respective retail outlets at home and abroad.

## Literature

The local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

Well-known South African writers include Nobel Prize winners JM Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer, Gcina Mhlope, Phaswane Mpe, Es'kia Mphahlele, Wally Serote, Athol Fugard, Herman Charles Bosman, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Breyten Breytenbach, Dalene Matthee, Alan Paton, Olive Schreiner, Andre P Brink and Njabulo Ndebele.

The current generation of writers is also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker having their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish; and Deon Meyer, whose work has attracted worldwide critical acclaim and a growing international fan base. Originally

written in Afrikaans, Meyer's books have been translated into 25 languages including English, French, German, Dutch, Italian, Spanish, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Russian, Finnish, Czech, Romanian, Slovakian, Bulgarian, Japanese and Polish.

Well-known poets include Keorapetse William Kgositsile, Joseph Mbuyiseni Mtshali, Roy Campbell, Sheila Cussons, Jakob Daniël du Toit (better known as Totius), Elisabeth Eybers, Ingrid Jonker, Antjie Krog, Thomas Pringle, NP van Wyk Louw and Eugène Marais.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms in the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. There are regular platforms created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The total nett turnover of the book publishing industry in 2010 was estimated to be worth R3,4 billion. More than 12 000 authors earned an estimated R1,8 billion worth of royalties. The publishing industry employs about 3 000 individuals on a full-time basis and 2 400 freelancers. More than 7 000 people are employed in the printing industry.

E-books downloaded onto a electronic reading device is gaining in popularity. In 2010, this subsector earned about R1,2 million with 524 titles available.

The Department of Arts and Culture, in collaboration with the National Library of South Africa (NLSA), is reprinting some out-of-print books that are considered as classics in indigenous African languages.

Twenty-seven titles in all nine previously marginalised languages were reproduced and distributed to public libraries across the nation.

The department embarked on the second phase of the project, which involved the reissuing of 18 titles (two in each indigenous language). These titles include *Apha Naphaya* by DM Jongilanga, *Ikusasa Alaziwa* by OTM Nxumalo and *Megokgo ya Bjoko* by Oliver Kgadime Matsepe.

In August 2012, South African Bernard Pieterse was named the first-ever winner of the Environmental category in the Youth Competition of the prestigious 2012 Sony World Photography Awards.

The Department of Arts and Culture is continuing with the Indigenous Languages Publishing Programme, a partnership with the South African Book Development Council (SABDC), to produce new material in the nine previously marginalised indigenous languages.

The programme offers publishing opportunities to emerging writers and support to independent small publishers. By June 2011, the programme had produced titles such as *A Hi Fambe Munghaname* (Xitsonga), *Tikhatsi Tegugcina* (isiSwati) *Ziyodlula Izinsizwa* (isiZulu) and *Boiteko Ba Ka* (Sesotho).

The department, in collaboration with the SABDC, established the very first National Book Week with resounding success in September 2010. With government's support of this platform, the book sector and civil society have established a dynamic partnership for the promotion of the culture of reading and writing.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports the *Baobab Literary Journal* with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the Diaspora.

The department continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals held annually in Durban. These also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WordFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages.

Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans Museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary

Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature. The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

### South African Literary Awards

The South African Literary Awards include categories such as the Literary Lifetime Achievement Award, the National Poet Laureate Prize, the K Sello Duiker Award for Young Novelists, the Literary Journalism Award and many other categories. Other awards include the M-Net Awards and the BTA/Anglo Platinum Short Story Award.

In June 2012, the winners of the 2012 *Sunday Times* Literary Awards were announced in Johannesburg. Michiel Heyns was awarded the *Sunday Times* Fiction Prize for *Lost Ground*, a novel born out of the story of the Inge Lotz murder. This marks Heyns' second win in the fiction category – he shared the award with Marlene van Niekerk in 2007 for his translation of *Agaat*. *Lost Ground* also won Heyns the Herman Charles Bosman Prize earlier in June. The 2012 Alan Paton Award for Non-Fiction was presented to Hugh Lewin for his struggle memoir, *Stones Against the Mirror*.

## Film

The first ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years.

Film production began in 1916, when IW Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg, and the studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922.

When access to international markets became limited in the 1920s, the so-called 30-year lull began; and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans film-makers developed an interest in the industry.

In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

South Africa's entertainment industry is valued at around R7,4 billion, with film and television generating more than R5,8 billion in economic activity each year. In the Western Cape, the estimated turnover contributed to the tourism industry is over R23,2 million annually.

The local film industry has matured and has earned international recognition. The film *Tsotsi* won an Academy Award in 2006 in the category Best Foreign Language Film. In 2009, the sci-fi hit *District Nine* was nominated for an Oscar for Best Film.

The South African government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry. The incentives consist of the Foreign Film and Television Production incentive to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-Production incentive, which aims to assists local film producers in the production of local content.

Funding for film projects rose from R6,9 million in 2009/10 to R8,7 million in 2010/11, with the number of documentaries supported rising from four in 2009/10 to 12 in 2011/12. For every documentary film produced with a budget of R500 000, at least 10 jobs were created.

In May 2012, the Minister of Trade and Industry, Mr Rob Davies, announced changes to the incentives for foreign film and television productions. These changes enable local post-production companies to attract work that is not necessarily filmed in South Africa, helping to sustain and grow South Africa's film industry. In turn, this brings investment into the economy, along with technology transfers that would upgrade the country's skills base.

The incentives offered to foreign-owned productions that meet the qualifying criteria include up to 2,5% of qualifying South African post-production expenditure (QSAPPE) for post-production expenditure of between R1,5 million and R3 million, and up to 5% of QSAPPE for post-production expenditure of more than R3 million.

The revised incentive became effective in April and will be administered for three years, up to 2014.

South Africa's first co-production treaty was signed with Canada in 1997, followed by Germany, Italy, the UK, France, Australia and New Zealand. At the Cannes Film Festival in May, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Mr Paul Mashatile, signed a new co-production treaty with his Irish counterpart, bringing the tally to eight treaties.

Local movies successfully produced under these treaties include the UK co-production *Skin*, *The Bang Bang Club* and *A Million Colours* in partnership with Canada, the German co-production *Death Race*, and the award-winning French collaboration *Skoonheid*.

South Africa had its best year at the Cannes Film Festival on the French Riviera to date. Some 130 local filmmakers registered for the event, and the National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF) showcased 20 local projects, including 12 feature films and eight documentaries.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit called Cinema Nouveau with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

## National Film and Video Foundation

Established in 1997, the NFVF is a statutory body that spearheads the development of the South African film and video industry. It is also involved in the development of projects that appeal to targeted audiences and have greater commercial returns.

The foundation awards grants for developing and producing feature films, short films, television series, documentaries and animation projects, as well as bursaries for students from other countries. This ensures a South African presence at major local and international film markets, festivals and exhibitions.

The South African Film and Television Awards (Saftas), managed under the custodianship of the foundation, is an industry initiative governed by the Saftas Committee and the body of industry representatives comprising broadcasters, the South African Screen Federation and other key stakeholders. The Saftas honour individuals and productions in the following categories: TV Non-Fiction, TV Fiction, Feature Films, Short Films, Student Films and Animation. The awards also honour the lifetime achievers with the Special Lifetime Achievement awards given to those esteemed individuals who have long served the industry in various categories.

## Film and Publication Board (FPB)

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines that identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The Film and Publications Act, 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children. Child pornography is defined as any image, however created, or any description of a person, real or simulated, who is depicted or described as being under the age of 18 years, engaged in sexual conduct; participating in or assisting another person to participate in sexual conduct; or showing or describing the body, or parts of the body of such a person in a manner that amounts to sexual exploitation.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation. Child-pornography websites can be reported at the board's toll-free number 0800 148 148.

In April 2012, Charlie Vundla scooped the Best Director Award and his debut, *How 2 Steal 2 Million*, was named Best Film at the eighth Africa Movie Academy Awards (AMAA) in Lagos, Nigeria. Terry Pheto was named Best Supporting Actress for her role in the film, which also won Best Achievement in Editing (Garreth Fradgely). With four awards, *How 2 Steal 2 Million* was the most awarded film on the night.

South Africa's crime drama *State of Violence* won Best Film in an African Language and Best Achievement in Sound.

*Man on Ground*, a Nigerian/South African xenophobia-themed co-production, won the Special Jury Award and Best Supporting Actor for South African Fana Mokoena.

## Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the "museum country of Africa", with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

More than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are situated in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food.

New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died for the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions (national museums that have framework autonomy and are managed by their own councils), and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the Department of Arts and Culture. They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following officially declared heritage institutions are dependent on annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture:

- Northern Flagship Institutions, Pretoria
- Iziko Museum, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Bloemfontein National Museum
- Language Museum, Paarl
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- uMsunduzi Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Luthuli Museum, Stanger
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

The total amount of transfers in 2012/13 was R288,4 million, excluding capital works.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture:

- Ditsong museums of South Africa
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Language Museum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- uMsunduzi Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong museums of South Africa consist of the National Cultural History Museum and its former satellite museums (Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum and the Coert Steynberg Museum), the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town consist of the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical

sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, the Department of Arts and Culture declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998).

Freedom Park opened the doors of its museum //hapo (meaning "dream" in Khoisan) to the public in June 2010. Other elements include a vast wall commemmorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom, an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines, a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity, a symbolic resting place for those who have died and the story of southern Africa's 3,6 billion years of history.

Apart from the declared museums that fall under the department, there are other museums administered by central government departments or research councils.

Notable examples are the Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria); the Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria); the South African Air Force Museum at Swartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban; and the museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums, the Ditsong museums of South Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.

The following natural history museums do not fall under the Department of Arts and Culture, but work closely with the national heritage institutions:

- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko and the Ditsong museums, as well as the Durban Local History Museum and Museum Africa in Johannesburg.

The following art galleries report to the Department of Arts and Culture:

- South African National Gallery, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, as well as relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent.

The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings. It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The National Cultural History Museum in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans. It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel. It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit in Gauteng. This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on their extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and Archives in Johannesburg aims to preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. It also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years. Exhibitions in the museum include audio-visual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

A common type of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks, outside Pretoria; the Victorian affluence mirrored in Melrose House, Pretoria; and the Kruger House Museum in Pretoria, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek.

Simpler variations include the Pioneer Museum and 1848 house in Silverton, Pretoria; and the Diepkloof Farm Museum featuring a farm house dating back to the 1850s at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example Tsongakraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

South Africa has two national military history museums. The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War in particular. The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

The work of the War Graves Division of Sahra includes the upkeep of graves of victims of the struggle for South Africa's liberation.

## Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives (NFVSA). Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria. The provincialisation process has been completed. All nine provinces now run their archiving services independently from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System, which can be found at *www.national.archives.gov.za*. It includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs, audiovisual material, etc. The National Archives also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at pro-

In May 2012, the SABC1 drama series *InterSEXions* received a Peabody Award, the world's oldest and most respected award for electronic media.

Although *InterSEXions* was not intended to be an overtly HIV and AIDS drama, this groundbreaking series has driven social change by "mapping" out a sexual network over 25 independent, but interrelated episodes. They follow an HIV infection chain as it cuts across geographic, age, racial and class boundaries.

moting efficient, transparent and accountable administration.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance. In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Programme seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and fill the gaps in the archives of previously disadvantaged communities. The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme. The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions. Archives are taken to the people of South Africa through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The National Archives is also responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records.

In April 2011, South Africa hosted the 67th Federation of International Film Archives Congress and summer school.

The National Film and Video Archives of South Africa was co-opted into the executive of this body to represent the interests of African film archivists.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and the multiparty South African collections have been nominated and provisionally registered for the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) Memory of the World International Register. This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the peoples of the world.

## Library and information services

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes the National Library of South Africa, a statutory body; the South African Library for the Blind; Blind South Africa; public/community libraries; special libraries; government libraries; and higher education libraries. The total amount of transfers to the libraries in 2012/13 was R86,3 million, excluding capital works.

In 2012, there were approximately 7 400 libraries, made up of community libraries within the six metropolitan areas, community libraries affiliated to the nine provincial library services, higher education libraries, school libraries, and special and government departmental libraries.

The Department of Arts and Culture has been consolidating the implementation of the Community Library Recapitalisation Programme since 2007. Government has earmarked R1,8 billion for the period 2012 to 2015 towards the community library conditional grant to develop library infrastructure and to expand the provision of access to LIS, especially in rural areas.

The number of staff appointed through the conditional grant to date is 1 575, of which 374 new appointments were made in 2011/12, thus enabling public libraries to increase their opening hours, among other things. In 2011, 51 libraries were upgraded and 13 new libraries were built, subsequently increasing the national usage of public library and information services. In an effort to bridge the digital divide, public internet access facilities are being established in all public libraries, and training in computer literacy is being provided.

### National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town. The new building of the Pretoria Campus, funded by the Department of Arts and Culture, was inaugurated in August 2008. It covers 33 000 m² and has seating for 1 300 library users. The NLSA offers free internet access to users in Cape Town and Pretoria. The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual

documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide. The National Library's collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

The functions of the NLSA are to:

- build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa
- maintain and preserve these collections
- provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services
- promote information awareness and literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

The Bookkeeper Mass De-Acidification has been installed at the National Library in Pretoria to treat books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections. The National Library is also able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums.

## Library and Information Association of South Africa (Liasa)

Liasa, which was constituted in 1997, is a professional non-profit organisation, uniting and representing all institutions and people working in libraries and information services in South Africa. It strives to unite, develop and empower all people in the library and information field into an organisation that provides dynamic leadership in transforming, developing and sustaining library and information services for all people in South Africa.

The Liasa National Office is based at the Pretoria Campus of the National Library of South Africa. The paid-up membership for 2012 was about 1 700 and is divided into 10 branches that reside in each of the nine provinces, with two branches based in Gauteng. The association is governed by a representative council elected by its members. An executive committee consisting of elected officials is mandated by the council to implement its policies and programmes.

Liasa is a member of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) and has a number of members who serve in various leadership positions in IFLA. The current Liasa president is the chairperson of the IFLA Africa Section.

Liasa has two flagship programmes, namely South African Library Week and the Liasa Annual Conference. South African Library Week is celebrated annually during March to promote the role of libraries in the community. Programmes and activities are presented throughout the country and a national launch event is hosted in one of the provinces.

The theme for 2012 was *Develop At Your Library*, promoting the 11 official languages of South Africa. The Liasa Annual Conference is attended by an average of 700 library practitioners and hosts an exhibition of at least 50 library suppliers and vendors.

## Provincial library services

Hundreds of public libraries situated in local municipalities, excluding some larger metropolitan areas, are affiliated to their provincial library services within their respective provincial departments of arts and culture.

These provincial services provide, among other things, centralised buying and distribution of processed library material in all formats to libraries through regional distribution centres. Professional support, training, a centralised reference and information service and a network library computer system are included in this service. The provision of free internet access to the public in libraries is a current focus of development. Most provinces also provide a library infrastructure programme to fund an increase in access to facilities. Promotion of the culture of reading is a major function of the services, offering outreach, literacy and reading and school programmes.

## National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS is an advisory council that advises the ministers of arts and culture, basic education and higher education and training on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The council is broadly representative and councillors are appointed for their expertise and experience in the field of LIS. The current council was appointed in January 2012. Members serve on the council for a renewable term of three years.

The functions of the council are to develop and coordinate LIS and to provide leadership to the sector. Some important policy matters include the development of the Library and Information Services Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government; the training of librarians; and the funding of the sector.

## Legal Deposit Committee

The Legal Deposit Committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997, which is administered by the Department of Arts and Culture. The committee was reconstituted in July 2010. The members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years.

The mandate of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 includes:

- providing for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents
- ensuring the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- providing for access to government information.

The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee include:

- advising the Minister on any matter dealt with in this Act
- making recommendations to the Minister concerning any regulations which the Minister may make under this Act
- coordinating the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit
- advising any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act.

The places of legal deposit are the NLSA (both the Pretoria and Cape Town campuses); the Library of Parliament in Cape Town; the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein; the Msunduzi Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg; and the NFVSA in Pretoria.

The Legal Deposit Act, 1997 also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs).

The Constitutional Court Library was the first OPD to be designated, with the Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State the second. The North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service was designated OPD status with effect from 1 January 2009 and the Mpumalanga Library Services from 1 November 2009.

## South African Library for the Blind (SALB)

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities need to read. The SALB is based on five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute to:

- helping to build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print

disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the state to discharge its cultural mandate and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind people and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of about 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of more than 25 600 books, and an annual circulation of 133 222 books in Braille or audio format. To make library services more accessible, the SALB partners 82 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assistive devices.

### Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg. One of its primary objectives is to provide services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. Blind SA provides:
- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (including free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages
- free Braille training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people)
- free orientation and mobility training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people).

*Vuk'uzenzele,* the government newspaper, is the only newspaper in South Africa published in Braille.

## International relations

The Department of Arts and Culture's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting African heritage.

The department's mandate is to ensure that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and to use arts and culture as a tool for economic self-liberation. Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the UK, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the Department of Arts and Culture is committed to promoting the African Agenda.

The Department of Arts and Culture continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

A priority is the finalisation of the policy on cultural diplomacy in partnership with the Department of International Relations and Cooperation. Among other things, the policy will result in the deployment of cultural attachés in South Africa's diplomatic missions.

### Indigenous music and oral history

The Department of Arts and Culture has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, as well as identifying and collecting all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions.

### African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF was launched in May 2006 under South African trust law to provide financial and technical support for the conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value.

The fund was established as a result of work undertaken by African member states of Unesco with the objective of developing an ongoing strategy to deal with the challenges that most African countries have in implementing the World Heritage Convention.

The AWHF strives towards the effective conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage. AWHF is aimed at AU member states that signed the 1972 Unesco World Heritage Convention in support of these goals. The AWHF is the first regional funding initiative within the framework of the Unesco World Heritage Convention.

## Cultural tourism

South Africa offers a huge diversity in cultural tourism, many of which commemorate the past. These range from the ancient nomadic San culture, to European settlement, apartheid rule and the struggle for political freedom.

Cultural tourist destinations include the Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park in KwaZulu-Natal, which is home to the ancient rock art of the San; the Cradle of Humankind near Johannesburg, which is the richest hominid fossil site in the world; Mapungubwe, in Limpopo, one of the richest archaeological sites in Africa where an advanced South African culture prospered between 1 200 AD and 1 270 AD; and Soweto's Heritage Trail, a reminder of the events that characterised South Africa's liberation struggle, such as the student uprising on 16 June 1976.

Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people. (See Chapter 22: Tourism.)

## Conclusion

The Department of Arts and Culture continues to make significant strides in positioning the cultural and creative industries as one of the main drivers of economic growth and job creation in South Africa.

To realise the economic value of arts and culture, it is crucial that the whole value chain is managed holistically. Therefore, the department will increase the creative capacity of the arts, stimulate demand and develop audiences for the consumption of the arts and culture products and services. This implies that the arts and cultural sector should continue to improve the quality of its offerings to meet the expectations of its audiences, communities, and investors.

The success of the arts and culture sector is also reliant on effective governance, infrastructure and skills development, partnerships, research, sharing of information, and enterprise development.

In this context, the department is committed to supporting a number of emergent shifts in the arts, culture and heritage sector over the next five years. These shifts have the potential to increase the growth and development of the sector significantly. They include addressing a number of inadequacies in the policy and regulatory environment to strengthen governance in the sector, increase investment and improve information and statistics for more effective planning and decision making.

To this end, the department is strenghtening cooperation with a range of public and private sector institutions and stakeholders. The development and implementation of the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy is an example of how to mobilise the resources of all stakeholders in the sector.

Through high-impact development programmes, the department furthermore aims to support entrepreneurship, the growth of new business models, product development and the associated infrastructure, as well as the growth of new markets, which are increasingly present across the various segments of the creative industry.

## Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Arts and Culture
Department of Arts and Culture's 2011 Budget Vote
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2011*, published by National Treasury
FNB Dance Umbrella
*The Sunday Times*

*www.act.org.za*
*www.artsculturetrust.co.za*
*www.actonline.co.za*
*www.artzone.co.za*
*www.basa.co.za*
*www.beeld.com*
*www.bizcommunity.co.za*
*www.blindsa.org.za*
*www.businessday.co.za*
*www.capetownbookfair.com*
*www.createsa.org.za*
*www.gautengfilm.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.litnet.co.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*www.nac.org.za*
*www.nelsonmandelamuseum.org.za*
*www.nelsonmandela.org*
*www.news24.com*
*www.nlsa.ac.za*
*www.pansa.co.za*
*www.risa.org.za*
*www.sahra.org.za*
*www.salb.org.za*
*www.sapa.org.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.tonight.co.za*

## Suggested reading

Brink, Y. 2008. *They Came to Stay: Discovering Meaning in the 18th Century Cape Country Dwelling*. Stellenbosch: SUN Press.
Coplan, DB. 2008. *In Township Tonight! South Africa's Black City Music and Theatre*. Chicago, Ill: University of Chicago Press.
Dubin, SC. 2009. *Mounting Queen Victoria: Curating Cultural Change in South Africa*. Auckland Park: Jacana.
Jaji, S. 2008. *An Aspect of the South African Experience in Literature and Reading*. Ibadan: HEBN Publishers.
Kombuis, K. 2009. *Short Drive to Freedom: A Personal Perspective on the Afrikaans Rock Rebellion*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau.
Kumalo, A. 2009. *Through my Lens: A Photographic Memoir*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Mojapelo, M. 2008. *Beyond Memory: Recording the History, Moments and Memories of South African Music*. Somerset West: African Minds.
Muller, CA. 2008. *Focus: Music of South Africa*. New York: Routledge.
Newbury, D. 2009. *Defiant Images: Photography and Apartheid South Africa*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Ngatane, E. 2009. *Ephraim Ngatane: A Setting Apart*. Johannesburg: Blank Books.
Peffer, J. 2009. *Art and the End of Apartheid*. Minneapolis: University of Minneapolis Press.
Watterson, L (ed). 2009. *Standard Bank Young Artist Awards, 25 Years*. Randburg: DeskLink Media.
Williamson, S. 2009. *South African Art Now*.
Zapiro. 2009. *Don't Mess with the President's Head: Cartoons from the Mail & Guardian, Sunday Times and The Times*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

POSTING BOX

# Communications

Technology is involved in almost every facet of South Africa's economy, from telecommunications to increasing productivity in manufacturing with robots and more efficient computer hardware and software.

However, the information and communication technology (ICT) sector is not a clearly defined industry, but rather a component of multiple industries throughout the economy, including manufacturing, business services, trade and telecommunications.

It is estimated that the ICT industry in South Africa contributes close to 7% to the national gross domestic product (GDP). The Department of Communications' mandate is to create a favourable ICT environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support development in Africa.

This mandate puts the department at the forefront of government initiatives to bridge the digital divide and provide universal access to ICTs for all South Africans. Currently, South Africa's ICT industry is the 20th largest in the world, accounting for 0,5% of worldwide ICT revenue.

The department has prioritised three flagship programmes that are at the core of building a digital information and knowledge society. This includes the acceleration of building a modern digital infrastructure, as well as the policy reforms that position the country for an advanced knowledge economy in 2030.

These programmes are:

- developing a national integrated ICT policy
- rolling out a national broadband network
- implementing the digital broadcasting migration policy.

On 17 May 2012, South Africa celebrated World Telecommunications and Information Society Day. To mark the occasion, a host of festivities took place in the Northern Cape from 17 to 20 May, under the theme *Women and Girls in ICT*. It also served as a precursor for the Women in ICT Conference in November 2012.

At the 25th Universal Postal Union (UPU) Congress, held in October 2012 in Doha, Qatar, the Department of Communications won two seats for South Africa – one as a first-time member of the Council of Administrators (CA) and the other as a member of the Council of Postal Operators, which will run the union from 2013 to 2016.

The CA comprises 41 countries and meets annually at the UPU headquarters in Berne, Switzerland, to ensure the continuity of the UPU's work between congresses.

## Legislation

The legislative framework for the work of the Department of Communications is contained mainly in the:

- Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999)
- Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002)
- Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005)
- Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa) Act, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000)
- Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996)
- Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998)
- South African Post Office (Sapo) SOC Ltd. Act, 2011 (Act 22 of 2011)
- South African Postbank Limited Act, 2010 (Act 9 of 2010).

The department is also guided, among other things, by:

- The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act 108 of 1996)
- The Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended
- The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended.

The department has prioritised the amendments of the Electronic Communications Bill, the Icasa Bill, the Post and Telecommunications-Related Matters Amendment Bill and the Electronic Communications and Transactions Bill.

The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 is the most important piece of legislation regulating the ICT sector, and its amendment is vital in ensuring the sector's continued dynamism.

## Funding and expenditure

The department was allocated R1,7 billion in the 2011/12 financial year. This includes allocations to the following state-owned enterprises (SOEs):

- Sapo: R180,442 million
- Sentech: R279 million; R109,9 million was rolled over from 2010/11 for roll-out of digital terrestrial television infrastructure and transferred to Sentech 2011/12
- South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC): R126,137 million
- National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa): R33,473 million
- Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa): R344,098 million
- Icasa: R313,378 million
- .za Domain Name Authority (DNA) R1,5 million.

## Role players

The following public entities and SOEs report to the Minister of Communications: Icasa, the Sapo, Sentech, the SABC, Nemisa, Usaasa, and the .za DNA.

### The South African Post Office

Sapo was established as a government business enterprise to provide postal and related services to the public. It was granted an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services in the country by the Postal Services Act, 1998. This Act makes provision for the regulation of postal services and operational functions of the postal company, including universal service obligations and the financial services activities of Postbank.

By mid-2012, Sapo had a retail infrastructure of 2 487 service points, which deliver postal, courier, financial and Postbank services. Sapo is expected to open an additional 150 new points of presence by 2014/15. Between 2008/09 and 2011/12, Sapo rolled out more than 4,9 million new addresses. Between 2008/09 and 2011/12, the Postbank depositor's funds increased from R3,2 million to at least R3,9 million. The depositor's book is expected to grow to R5,2 million by 2014/15.

## South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC)

The SABC's mandate requires it to:

- provide its services to all South Africans in all the official languages
- provide programming that informs, educates and entertains, and which reflects the diversity of South Africans
- maintain freedom of expression and journalistic, creative and programming independence.

The SABC's service and broadcasting activities are regulated through the licence conditions issued by Icasa for each of its radio and television services. It reports to the authority quarterly to comply with licence conditions.

The SABC is further bound to meet licence conditions set for its individual radio stations and television channels, and has to abide by regulations set by Icasa, outlining minimum quotas and standards in areas such as local content.

The SABC has two operational divisions: public broadcasting services and commercial broadcasting services.

As a national public service broadcaster, the corporation operates 18 radio stations and three television stations, reaching about 24 million people daily.

## Sentech

Sentech provides broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licensees. In 2002, Sentech was awarded value-added network service licences for its multimedia and carrier of licences, thus allowing for converged ICT solutions.

In 2009, these licences were converted to individual electronic communications network service and individual electronic communications service licences under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005.

Sentech is responsible for migrating signal distribution infrastructure from analogue to digital in line with technological developments and agreements with the International Telecommunications Union for worldwide migration to digital.

Sentech's activities will ensure that the digital terrestrial television network is ready in time to meet the December 2013 analogue switch-off deadline.

## National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa)

Nemisa is a non-profit institute of education formed as part of a government initiative in 1998, in response to the *White Paper on Broadcasting Policy.* The institute's main purpose is to train previously disadvantaged individuals, particularly women, to equip them with the necessary skills to play significant roles in the constantly changing broadcasting environment.

The institute offers hands-on training in electronic media, including content design and production, technical operations and content transmission. It offers national certificates and short courses. National certificates are offered in the areas of television production, animation and radio production.

Between 2008/9 and 2011/12, the institute trained 268 learners in strategic partnerships and special multimedia projects. The number of students trained in electronic media increased from 118 in 2008/9 to 131 in 2011/12 and is expected to increase further to 171 by 2014/15, driven by growth in demand for courses in the areas of television production, radio production, design and animation.

## Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa)

Usaasa's sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications services, electronic communications network services and broadcasting services. The agency is responsible for managing the Universal Service and Access Fund (Usaf).

The Usaf receives contributions from licensed telecommunications providers and broadcasters, which are used to fulfil universal access obligations in underserviced areas. The agency plays a key role in facilitating the achievement of 100% ICT penetration by 2020. Between 2008/9 and 2011/12, 54 access cen-

tres were established. In addition, 267 schools and 56 further education and training institutes were provided with Internet connectivity over the same period. Over the medium term, the fund expects to deploy 600 cyberlabs to underserviced areas by 2014/15.

### .za Domain Name Authority (DNA)

The .za DNA is responsible for the .za domain name space.

The Department of Communications provides funding for the .za DNA and will continue its support and participation until the .za DNA is fully operational and sustainable. Funding will then be sourced through a funding model developed in accordance with the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002. The DNA will also oversee the implementation of the alternative resolution mechanism.

### Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa)

Icasa is the regulator for the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sector. Its mandate is spelt out in the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 for the licensing and regulation of electronic communications and broadcasting services, and by the Postal Services Act, 1998 for the regulation of the postal sector.

Enabling legislation also empowers Icasa to monitor licensee compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations for the three sectors, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers of these services.

Icasa's functions include:

- licensing broadcasters, signal distributors and providers of telecommunications and postal services
- making regulations
- imposing licence conditions
- planning, assigning, controlling, enforcing and managing the frequency spectrum
- ensuring international and regional cooperation
- ensuring the efficient allocation of numbers
- ensuring interoperability of networks
- receiving and resolving complaints.

Icasa completed the conversion of licences issued under repealed legislation to licences that comply with the prescripts of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005. Between 2008/09 to 2011/12, the authority completed 4 538 inspections of distribution and sealing of electronic equipment. Over the same period, Icasa received, analysed and closed 11 464 spectrum licensing applications.

In June 2012, government, Google South Africa and the United Nations Children's Fund launched a local version of the Google Online Family Safety Centre.

The website, *www.google.co.za/familysafety,* is available in English, isiZulu and Afrikaans, and assists parents and caregivers to help children navigate the internet safely. The site forms the first part of the Online Child Safety Campaign.

### South African Accreditation Authority

The South African Accreditation Authority is responsible for the accreditation of authentication and certification products and services used in support of electronic signatures. It is also concerned with monitoring the activities of authentication and certification service providers whose products or services have been accredited.

### Presidential National Commission (PNC) on Information Society and Development (ISAD)

The PNC on ISAD advises the President on matters related to the development of an inclusive information society, facilitates the coordinated development of an inclusive information society, and achievement of the country's information society vision.

The commission comprises leaders in government, industry and civil society. A corresponding body is the Presidential International Advisory Council on ISAD.

## Programmes and initiatives

In 2011/12, the department prioritised key policy initiatives, the major one being a com-

prehensive policy review of the telecommunications, postal, broadcasting and information technology policies. This process will lead towards the development of a *White Paper on Communications for South Africa*.

In April 2012, the department hosted a successful National ICT Policy Colloquium under the theme *Defining a New Era in ICTs for All South Africans*. It served to unpack key issues to be confronted in plans to craft the country's digital future. The policy review will address availability, accessibility and affordability of broadband.

In January 2012, Woza Online was launched as a joint venture between Google, the Department of Trade and Industry, Vodacom and the Human Resources Development Council with the aim of enabling South African small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) to create their own websites quickly and at no cost.

In the first two months following the launch of Woza Online, a total of 11 200 SMEs created their own websites. Many services provided by SMEs could not have existed before the arrival of the World Wide Web and interactive database queries.

## Broadband Infrastructure Development

Broadband is an essential digital resource for accessing basic services, products, commerce and job creation. It has the potential to create job opportunities and open new markets that will allow businesses, particularly small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs), to grow.

By May 2012, it was estimated that only 2% of the population had broadband access at home. Given the strategic importance of broadband, the department, together with the ICT industry, has committed to delivering 100% broadband penetration and creating a million jobs by 2020.

The Department of Communication is aware of the interconnectedness of broadband and the licensing of radio frequency spectrum, which is a scarce natural resource. It therefore committed to finalising the policy directions on high demand spectrum to facilitate the licensing of broadband applications in 2012.

The Broadband Strategy and Implementation Plan, outlining the fibre connectivity across the country to district level, is currently being finalised.

### Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco sells high-capacity long-distance transmission services to licensed fixed and mobile network operators, internet service providers and other value-added network service providers.

It has a 13 600-km network of long-distance fibre and five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas – with an additional seven open access points of presence expected over the next few years.

To enhance South Africa's international connectivity and the speed of broadband, Broadband Infraco co-invested with the private sector in the deployment of the West African Cable System (WACS).

The WACS is the fifth submarine cable system linking South Africa to the world and was launched in May 2012. Broadband Infraco's investment in the WACS entitled it to 11,4% of the system's total capacity, which would help South Africa meet its target of providing broadband connectivity to all who need it by 2020.

The cable system also boasts 15 established terminal stations en route, and will reduce the cost to connect Africa's west coast with the high-speed global telecommunications network for years to come.

Sentech and Broadband Infraco have also commenced with the broadband plan for the KwaZulu-Natal province pilot project, and site surveys in three districts are complete.

## Broadcasting digital migration

During 2011/12, the department made substantial progress towards the implementation of the Broadcasting Digital Migration Policy. In February 2012, final amendments to the policy were published in the *Government Gazette* for implementation by various role players.

Icasa has started the process of finalising the digital terrestrial television regulations.

The SABC, Sentech and Usaasa will play a key role in assisting the department to deliver digital broadcasting in the country. Sentech has already achieved digital signal coverage of more than 60% of the population on the DVB-T2 transmission standard.

The South African Bureau of Standards standard, according to which locally manufactured set-top boxes (STBs) will be built, was launched at the inaugural ICT Indaba in June 2012.

A digital terrestrial television awareness campaign was launched in 2012 to educate the South African public about digital broadcasting and how to access it. The campaign is presented in different phases in all the provinces.

By late 2012, 60% of digital terrestrial television rollout coverage was achieved.

### Rural Development Strategy

ICTs play a significant role in speeding up the integration of services for the development of rural areas and ensuring that rural communities, including those in remote areas, are not left out of the knowledge economy.

The main goal of the department's Rural Development Strategy is therefore to addresses the vacuum in rural ICT and empower rural communities by promoting sustainable job creation and eradicating poverty in rural areas.

The strategy includes programmes that will encourage civil society to promote the use of ICT services and provide the necessary infrastructure.

### New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) e-Africa Programme

The Department of Communications provides programmatic support to the implementation of the Nepad e-Africa Programme.

Nepad's e-Africa Programme promotes Africa as a globally competitive digital society. The programme was previously known as the Nepad e-Africa Commission and is tasked with developing policies, strategies and projects at continental level for the development of ICT throughout Africa.

Key initiatives include the ICT Broadband Infrastructure Network for Africa, a submarine cable system (Uhurunet), a terrestrial cable system (Umojanet), and the Nepad e-Schools Initiative.

This initiative aims to harness ICT to improve the quality of teaching and learning in African primary and secondary schools and equip young Africans with the knowledge and skills that will enable them to participate confidently and effectively in the global information society and knowledge economy.

Sixteen African countries have signed memorandums of agreement with the Nepad e-Africa Programme and a consortia of private sector companies to participate in the Nepad e-Schools demo project. By 2012, over 80 Nepad e-Schools demonstrations have been implemented. Each school in the demonstration project was equipped with a computer laboratory containing at least 20 personal computers as well as a server and networking infrastructure and peripheral devices such as scanners, electronic whiteboards and printers. The schools were connected to the internet to enable them to access content and to communicate with the rest of the world.

A study conducted by World Wide Worx – the first ever in-depth analysis of South Africa's internet economy – has revealed that the internet economy contributes up to R59 billion (or 2%) to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP). Moreover, this contribution is rising by around 0,1% a year, and will reach R79 billion by 2016, contributing up to 2,5% to South Africa's GDP.

The total spent by consumers, small and medium-sized enterprises, and government on products and services via the internet, as well as on internet access and infrastructure, is R59 billion.

## Job creation

In line with government's New Growth Path, the department, together with the ICT sector, aims to facilitate the creation of over 150 000 direct and indirect jobs by 2020.

An industry-wide committee will be established to identify opportunities, using a collective database to ensure effective monitoring and evaluation.

Jobs will be created across various subsectors of the industry through:

- providing broadband infrastructure
- establishing content hubs for radio and television
- animation
- e-cooperatives
- using ICTs in further education and training colleges
- tailor-made solutions for SMMEs
- digital broadcasting and distributing STBs
- rolling out PostBank.

## Internet

South Africa's internet economy contributes 2% to the country's GDP, according to a study by research consultancy World Wide Worx, released in May 2012. This contribution is rising by around 0,1% a year, meaning it should reach 2,5% by 2016.

The study confirmed South Africa's position as having the largest Internet economy in Africa: South African consumers, small businesses and government spent R59 billion on products and services via the internet, internet access and infrastructure in 2011.

Of this, R29,2 billion was spent on internet presence and access, while R13,5 billion was invested in fibre and other data infrastructure by mobile networks. Business-to-consumer e-commerce, the biggest subsector of which is South Africa's airline industry, comprised close to R9 billion in 2011.

South African e-commerce is growing at a rate of around 30% a year, according to the study, with the growth showing no signs of slowing down.

The *Small to Medium Enterprises (SME) Survey 2012* found that 410 000 SMEs in the country have a website – representing 63% of active, formal SMEs. Approximately 150 000 SMEs in South Africa would not be able to survive without their web presence. With SMEs accounting for about 7,8 million jobs in South Africa, this means as many as 1,56 million jobs would be in jeopardy were it not for the internet.

This indirect economic impact is expected to increase significantly in the coming years, fuelled by rapid growth in the number of Internet users, stimulated partly by the smartphone explosion taking place in South Africa.

Mobile penetration stands at about 80%, with 40 million South Africans using cellphones. Around 10 million phones are sold in South Africa every year, and it is expected that by 2013, smartphones will account for half of this number. Smartphone users, in turn, eventually become Internet users, a trend that already began in South Africa in 2010.

In June 2012, South Africa played host to the inaugural Information and Communication Technology (ICT) Indaba at the Cape Town International Convention Centre. The event was organised by the Department of Communications and endorsed by the International Telecommunications Union. Expected to run annually for the next five years, the ICT Indaba will be used to discuss ICT policies geared towards poverty reduction and the creation of a knowledge based economy across the continent. A medium-term target of 80% internet connectivity throughout Africa by 2020 was set.

### Internet access

A study conducted by World Wide Worx in May 2012, found that the number of Internet users in South Africa rose rapidly in 2011/12, driven by both smartphones and ordinary cellphones, as these made the internet accessible to the mass market.

The findings showed that the internet user base grew by 25%, from 6,8 million in 2010 to 8,5 million at the end of 2011. This trend was expected to continue in 2012, taking South Africa's internet user base past the 10-million mark by the end of 2012.

According to the survey, 7,9 million South Africans access the internet on their cellphones. Of these, 2,48 million access it only on their cellphones, and do not have access on computers. The remaining 6,02 million users access the internet on computers, laptops and tablets.

However, 90% of this number – 5,42 million – also access it on their cellphones. This means that almost eight million South Africans sometimes or regularly access the internet on their phones.

## Broadband access

Broadband access in South Africa has more than doubled in the last two years, as mobile operators slashed the cost of data and network roll-out accelerated. This is according to the *Internet Access in South Africa 2012* study by World Wide Worx, released in December 2012.

The report shows that the number of broadband subscriptions grew from 3,6 million at the end of 2010 to an expected 8,2 million by the end of 2012 – 128% growth. Many users have multiple forms of broadband access – such as an ADSL account as well as 3G – while many hop between operators to take advantage of promotional offers. As a result, the number of individual broadband users is substantially lower, but has also more than double in the past two years. The number has grown from 2,8 million to 6,7 million – 140% growth in just two years.

World Wide Worx's research found that fixed-line broadband subscriptions are now outnumbered eight to one by mobile broadband subscriptions. Telkom's ADSL service now holds just 10,6% of the broadband subscriber market in South Africa.

Measured by subscriptions, South Africa now has an apparent 15,8% broadband penetration of the population. However, due to extensive multiple-use of broadband subscriptions, especially owing to the falling cost of data and the proliferation of promotional offers, the number of individuals using broadband subscriptions represents only 11% penetration of the population.

## Social media

The emergence of social media as a social and business communication tool in the last few years has been dramatic. In South Africa, a country where first- and third-world conditions are often seperated by a mere few kilometres, social media has evened the playing field and created a platform that is affordable to everyone, easy to use and highly effective as a communication tool.

By July 2012, there were 5 119 620 Facebook users in South Africa, making it the country with the 31st most Facebook users in the world. It grew by more than 279 160 from the beginning of 2012.

Users in the 18 to 24 and the 25 to 34 groups each comprise 30% of the market, followed by the 35 to 44 age group at 15% and the 45 to 54 segment at 8%. The 65 years and older and the 6 to 16 years old group each comprises 5%, with age group 55 to 64 taking 4% and the 13 to 15 age group making up the remaining 3%. The demographics are split fairly, with 51% of Facebook users being female.

South Africa was the most active country in Africa regarding the use of Twitter. During the last three months of 2011, over 11,5 million geo-located tweets originating on the continent was analysed, complemented by a poll of 500 of Africa's most active tweeters.

Over the survey period, South Africa registered over twice as many tweets (5 030 226) as the next most active country, Kenya (2 476 800), followed by Nigeria (1 646 212), Egypt (1 214 062) and Morocco (745 620).

Africa's tweeters were considerably younger than their global counterparts: 60% of the continent's most active tweeters are aged 20 to 29, whereas the average age of Twitter users worldwide lies at 39.

The study's finding also included that:

- 57% of tweets from Africa are sent from cellphones

As part of efforts to reach its goal of being carbon neutral by 2020, the South African Post Office (Sapo) plans to buy 30 electrical scooters per year until 2015. It is estimated that this will reduce the carbon dioxide emissions of its delivery scooters by 67%, which is equivalent to 87,3 tons of carbon. During 2013, Sapo will also plant 2 000 trees at schools to offset carbon emissions and create a better environment.

- African Twitter users are also active across a range of social media, including Facebook, YouTube, Google+ and LinkedIn
- Twitter in Africa is widely used for social conversation, with 81% of those polled saying that they mainly used it for communicating with friends
- Twitter is becoming an important source of information in Africa: 68% of those polled said that they used Twitter to monitor news, while 22% said they used it to search for job opportunities.

### Cybercrime and cybersecurity

A National Cybersecurity Policy Framework was approved by Cabinet on 8 March 2012. The policy focuses on building the institutional framework and capacity necessary for mitigating any threats to the ICT environment. South Africa is one of the few countries in Africa with a policy document.

As a result of the population's ever-increasing dependence on the internet, there has been a significant rise in hacking, security breaches, misuse of personal information, cybersecurity threats and cybercrime.

As a result of these trends, and in an attempt to ensure that South Africa measures up to international best practice, the Minister of Communications on 26 October 2012 published the Electronic Communications and Transactions Amendment Bill, inviting the public to submit written comments to the proposed amendments to the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002.

## Mobile communications

According to *Census 2011*, the proportion of households owning cellphones significantly increased from 31,9% in 2001 to 88,9% in 2011. The proportion using landlines decreased from 23,9% in 2001 to 14,5% in 2011.

According to research by web marketing company Xcellent Media, there were 29 million cellphones in use in South Africa by June 2012. Vodacom led the market with a 41% share, while MTN trailed at 40%. Some 95% of subscribers remained with their network for around 4,2 years. The majority (82%) of mobile subscribers opted for prepaid packages while only 18% signed contracts, and 70% of mobile subscribers did not own a landline.

South Africa has five operators: Vodacom, MTN, Cell C, Virgin Mobile and Telkom (8ta).

The Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-Related Information Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 48 of 2008), aims to help law-enforcement agencies investigate and combat serious crime. It gives law enforcement access to the identity and whereabouts of SIM-card owners who use cellphones in planning and executing serious crimes.

As of July 2011, cellphone service providers are prohibited from activating a new SIM card unless they have recorded the customer's cell number, full names, identity number and address, and verified the information.

In November 2012, the Department of Economic Development in collaboration with FibreCo Telecommunication launched the first five-day fibre optic training programme on the maintenance of telecommunication cables.

FibreCo Telecommunications, a joint venture between Cell C, Convergence Partners and Internet Solutions, has passed the halfway mark of the first link of its R5-billion national fibre-optic broadband network.

The company said that the construction of 600 km of the targeted 1 000 km stretch from Johannesburg, through Bloemfontein, to East London has been completed.

This network forms part of FibreCo three-phase, 12 000 km, high-speed, open-access, longhaul, fibre-optic network plans. FibreCo aims to complete the first 2 000 km connecting Johannesburg and Cape Town through Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth and East London by the third quarter of 2013.

### Telkom

Telkom is Africa's largest integrated communications company, providing integrated communications solutions to a range of customers. Telkom operates in nine different countries across Africa; however, its core market is South Africa, contributing 98,9% in revenue.

**Did you know?**
SABC News and Current Affairs is responsible for:
- 1 255 radio news bulletins in 13 languages on 18 radio stations every week
- 32 daily current affairs radio shows
- six television news bulletins broadcast daily and 10 television current affairs shows on SABC 1, SABC 2 and SABC 3 every week.

The SABC's online news service attracts about 600 000 visits a month.

It is listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd and majority-owned by the Department of Communications. Telkom was the country's only fixed-line operator until 2006, when the country's second fixed-line operator, Neotel, began its operations.

The organisational structure comprises three major business units: Telkom South Africa, Telkom International and Telkom Data Centre Operations.

In October 2010, Telkom launched its mobile operator, 8ta. In September 2011, it launched Telkom Business Mobile, which focuses exclusively on the business market.

## Postal sector

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard for all citizens. To ensure this, a universal service obligation has been placed on Sapo.

To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly on the provision of the basic letter service.

Mail Business boasts 26 mail sorting centres for domestic mail and parcels, and three international sorting centres for international mail and parcels. Between these centres, approximately six million mail items are handled daily and 50 tons of parcels are processed a year.

Mail is transported to and from these sorting centres domestically to 7 188 delivery offices (delivery depot centres, lobby boxes and 2 443 post office branches). In 2010/11, over 1,7 million new addresses were rolled out, of which 65% were in rural and underserviced areas.

Specialised Sapo products include:
- Securemail
- Speed Services Couriers
- Parcelplus
- insurance and cash-on-delivery
- Postbank
- a courier freight group made up of XPS and PX
- Docex.

## Philatelic Services

The Philatelic Services of Sapo is responsible for producing South Africa's postage stamps and other stamp-related products.

Sapo prints more than 380 million postage stamps a year. They not only reach every corner of South Africa, but also the rest of the world. Although stamps are produced mainly to serve as prepayment for postage, their beauty and historical significance have inspired people to collect them since the first postage stamps were produced in England in 1840.

Over the years, many of them have become valuable collector's items. For example, the first triangular postage stamp was issued on 1 September 1853 in the Cape of Good Hope, which was a British colony at the time. The triangular-shaped stamp, which became known as the Cape Triangular, was the first stamp to be issued in Africa and has become a sought-after collector's item worldwide.

Stamp issues are divided into two main categories:
- Definitive stamps are issued every five to seven years and comprise a set of designs in a full range of face values to provide for the country's postal needs. They usually reflect a particular theme, such as the seventh definitive series, Colourful South Africa, which depicts fish, flowers, birds and butterflies.
- Commemorative stamps are issued according to an annual commemorative stamp-issuing programme. Between 12 and 15 commemorative issues are produced per year. They often commemorate significant historical events or people, or coincide with

important days such as Heritage Day or World Post Day.

### Postbank

The Postbank Limited allows Sapo, through the Postbank, to prioritise the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream.

The Postbank Limited Act established the Postbank division of Sapo as a seperate legal entity, with the principal aim of expanding the existing range of banking services to, among others:

- improve access to affordable services, including loans, especially in rural and lower-income communities
- promote a culture of saving.

In doing so, the Postbank will use the existing Sapo infrastructure but it is not bound by the Act to do so exclusively.

### PostNet

PostNet was founded in 1994 when there was a need for an operation that could deliver a range of efficient and reliable business solutions.

PostNet is South Africa's largest privately owned counter network in the document and parcel industry, trading across more than 250 owner-managed retail stores. PostNet serves in excess of 55 000 walk-in customers per day, countrywide.

There are five product types within PostNet, namely courier, copy and print, digital, stationery and mailboxes.

## The media

When South Africa became a democracy in 1994, the media was freed from all restrictions. According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

### Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA)

The MDDA is a statutory development agency for promoting and ensuring media development and diversity, set up as a partnership between the South African government and major print and broadcasting companies to assist in, among others, developing community and small commercial media in South Africa.

It was established in 2003, in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002) and started providing grant funding to projects on 29 January 2004.

The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders, and political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables government, the media industry and donors to work together to address the legacy of imbalances in media access.

With a limited budget of just more than R201 million accumulatively since 2004, the MDDA has supported more than 413 media projects, focusing on historically disadvantaged communities, using indigenous languages.

By March 2012, the agency had trained over 1 764 people; and provided 247 bursaries to different radio and print media. It had created approximately 310 direct and indirect job opportunities.

### Radio

Established on 1 August 1936, the SABC is South Africa's public broadcaster. It introduced its own national news service on 17 July 1950, with daily news bulletins on the English service, the Afrikaans service and Springbok Radio. Radio Zulu, Radio Xhosa and Radio Sesotho were established on 1 June 1960.

In 2012, the SABC's national radio network comprised 18 radio stations. Fifteen of these were dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting and included 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the

Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape. The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM.

Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

SABC Radio has 25,486 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

### Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94.7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda 94.2
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Radio KFM.

Stations such as Jacaranda 94.2, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are available online.

### Community radio

Community broadcasting remains a critical project for the Department of Communications.

In 2011/12, R5 million was transferred to Nemisa to fund capacity-building for community radio stations in the department's community radio broadcasting support programme and implement content production programmes. R5 million was transferred to the SABC for radio programme production. R7 663 million was transferred to the SABC for upgrading the existing stations and providing additional infrastructure to stations that currently have single studios.

In South Africa, mobile phone use has increased from 17% of adults in 2000 to 76% in 2010. Today, more South Africans – about 29 million – use mobile phones than radio (about 28 million), TV (about 27 million) or personal computers (about six million). Only five million South Africans use landline phones.

By June 2012, South Africa had 165 community stations, with some 8,6 million listeners a week, collectively. Their scope and reach varies enormously – from the 416 000 Johannesburgers who make up the audience of Jozi FM to, for example, the 32 000 people who listen to Overvaal Stereo in the farming communities of the Free State province.

Icasa lisensed 19 community radio stations in 2011/12.

## Television

The SABC is South Africa's national public-service broadcaster. As such, it is obliged to provide a comprehensive range of distinctive programmes and services. It must inform, educate, entertain, support and develop culture and education and, as far as possible, secure fair and equal treatment for the various groupings in the country, while offering world-class programming on television and radio.

The SABC's television network comprises three television channels – all free-to-air. SABC TV has an audience of 30,248 million weekly (86,6% of adults watch SABC TV in South Africa). South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and also in Sign Language.

### Community television

In 2007, Soweto TV was the first community television station to obtain a seven-year broad-

casting licence from Icasa. Since then, five more seven-year licences have been issued. There are currently five stations operational in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay. The issuing of new community television licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

### Free-to-air television

e.tv is South Africa's first private free-to-air television channel, launched in 1998. By mid-2012, it was the largest English-medium channel in the country and the second largest overall. e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries.

e.sat tv supplies television, mobile and online news to various channels in South Africa, across the African continent and in the United Kingdom (UK) under the brand name eNews Channel Africa (eNCA). Growing out of the success of *eNews Prime Time*, eNCA is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour television news channel. The 24-hour news service is broadcast live in the UK to over 10,5 million subscribers on the SKY digital satellite platform. In addition, eNCA provides live news bulletins to nearly three million South African viewers each night on e.tv (in English, isiZulu and Sesotho) and to 200 000 Afrikaans viewers on kykNET.

### Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice started as the subscriber management arm of M-Net. It is the leading multichannel digital satellite television operator across the African continent.

MultiChoice provides its DStv services to different market segments. The DStv bouquets cater for different lifestyles and pockets, from entry level to premium. In October 2012, DStv expanded its subscription satellite television bouquet by adding a new set of high-definition (HD) movie channels. The HD channels upgrade and additions meant that DStv has 14 HD channels.

The changes come as a result of MultiChoice's expanded capacity since the successful launch of the new Intelsat 20 (IS-20) satellite at the start of August 2012, giving the pay-television platform a massive boost in broadband capacity, which makes more television channels possible.

In 2009, Icasa made licences available to new entries into the pay-TV market. TopTV was launched in May 2010. It offers five bouquet options, arranged in seven package options.

## Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media.

A merger between Media24, the Paarl Media Group and the Natal Witness was approved by the Competition Tribunal on May 2012.

### Newspapers

According to the *Audit Bureau of Circulations (ABC) 2012 Third Quarter Report,* total newspapers declined by 30 000 copies, compared to the previous quarter.

The daily newspaper category continued to decline in 2012, with several sharp drops in total circulation, although growth in vernacular circulation continued.

Independent News-papers' *Isolezwe* rose 0,8% in the third quarter to 107 628 total circulation from the corresponding period in the

previous year. Four Independent Newspapers titles showed the largest declines, although a large part of this is owing to the fact that the company reduced incentivised sales: the *Cape Argus* was down 27% to 33 006 total circulation from the year before; *The Star* was down 23% to 105 686; the *Cape Times* down 20% to 34 523; and the *Pretoria News* down 17% to 19 235.

Weekly newspapers – led by Ramcom's *Motorsport World* (up 47% to 4 246 total circulation) and Media24's *Soccer Laduma* (up 5% to 360 668) – posted solid growth.

English and Afrikaans weekend newspapers continued to slide – led by Independent Newspapers' *The Saturday Star* (down 22% to 75 682 total circulation from the year before); *Pretoria News Saturday* (down 22% to 11 174); and Media24's *Sondag* (down 17% to 39 085).

Vernacular growth continues with Independent Newspapers' *Isolezwe ngeSonto* showing the biggest growth (up 4% to 84 577 total circulation from the year before.

### Magazines

The magazine industry in South Africa is a fiercely competitive environment in which new titles appear all the time, despite the worldwide competition from electronic and interactive media. Considering the proliferation of titles on the shelves in supermarkets and bookstores, it seems that many readers are still attracted to print.

Figures for the third quarter of 2012, released in November 2012, showed that overall consumer-magazine circulation declined sharply, yet there was strong growth from titles such as Media24's *Kuier* (up 68% to 78,896 total circulation from the year before); Media24's *Kick Off* (up 35% to 61,140), and Caxton's *Living and Loving* (up 34% to 29,257).

Sciofon's *Playboy*, however, dropped 65% to 3,839 total circulation from the year before.

In June 2012, Cherilyn Ireton became the first woman, as well as the first South African to head the World Editors' Forum, the global organisation for editors within the World Association of Newspapers and News Publishers.

### Online media

The February 2012 Digital Media and Marketing Association (DMMA)/Effective Measure website statistics reveal that News24 has the largest website in South Africa, followed by IOL and Howzit.MSN.

The February 2012 Effective Measure statistics reveal that South Africa produced 14 708 417 unique browsers registering 453 773 181 page views. This is an increase of 2% over the January 2012 stats.

News24 remains the top South African website with 2 587 454 unique monthly visitors, followed by IOL with 1 990 347 unique visitors and Howzit.MSN with 1 888 378 unique browsers. News24 also reigned supreme in the mobile arena with its News24 Mobi site, which attracted 953 748 unique monthly browsers in February 2012.

### Media organisations and role players

Print Media South Africa (PMSA), established in 1996, administers individual bodies, namely the Newspaper Association of South Africa (the oldest communication organisation in South Africa, established in 1882), the Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP).

The purpose of the PMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press.

Allied to the PMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP was formed in September 2004 and represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and

senior journalism educators and trainers in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

Against the backdrop of positive political developments on the African continent, Sanef spearheaded the formation of the All Africa Editors' Conference. The Southern African Editors' Forum was subsequently formed in 2003.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman.

Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PMSA, Sanef, the Media Workers' Association of South Africa and the South African Union of Journalists.

As self-regulating mechanisms of the media industry, the Press Ombudsman and the appeal panel act in accordance with the Constitution and embrace the spirit of transformation in South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

Another body that protects freedom of speech is the Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust. Backed by the marketing communication industry and supported by organised business and consumer organisations, the trust focuses on transparent negotiations with legislators.

The Forum of Community Journalists is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the Community Press Association into the AIP.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

Members include the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and the Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

The Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC) was established under sections 21 and 22 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993 (Act 153 of 1993). It monitors broadcasting licensees for their compliance with, or adherence to, the terms, conditions and obligations of:

- their broadcasting licences
- the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services
- the Code of Advertising Practice.

The BMCC receives and adjudicates complaints from the public regarding licence conditions, and is also entitled to initiate its own investigations into suspected non-compliance by a broadcaster.

If a member of the public is concerned that a broadcaster is not observing its licence conditions, that person may lodge a complaint with Icasa.

If a broadcaster is found to be guilty of contravening its licence conditions, the BMCC makes recommendations to Icasa about action that should be taken.

Material that could be considered X-rated must be submitted to the Film and Publication Board prior to being shown.

The mission of the National Association of Broadcasters is to protect the interests of broadcasting as a whole, and to liaise with Icasa on matters such as freedom of speech.

The mission of the DMMA is to provide a forum in which South African online publishers can address issues of common interest, and which can represent these publishers to advertising agencies and the advertising community, the press, government and the public.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF), launched in December 1993, lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and -run radio stations and support-service organisations. Radio-station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

The Professional Journalists' Association was launched in March 2010. Its mission is to give a voice to working journalists and represent their interests in newsrooms across the country.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa, the Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union, the Specialist Press Association, the South African Guild of Motoring Journalists, Professional Photographers of South Africa, the Media Institute of Southern Africa, the Publishers' Association of South Africa and press clubs in major centres.

## News agencies

The national news agency, the South African Press Association, is a cooperative, non-profit organisation.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are:

- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

## Journalism awards

South Africa's most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Sappi Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa Pica Awards
- Sanlam Community Press Awards
- Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums
- South African Breweries Journalism Awards
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice Africa Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards.
- Sanef's Nat Nakasa Award for media integrity, which was awarded to Press Ombudsman Joe Thloloe. Thloloe had been a journalist for over 50 years, and had headed a number of media organisations, like the SABC News and e.tv.

## Media awards

The 2012 MDDA/Sanlam Local Media Awards included the inaugural Rantho/Letsebe Community Media Achievement Award, which recognises the best community media project in South Africa that ensures the noble principles of community ownership and control, community participation and relevant community content in the languages spoken in the community served.

Entries from 509 community and small commercial newspapers, corporate-owned local newspapers and community radio stations from across the country as well as one from Namibia was received.

These included:

- 921 individual entries in the typography, writing and photography categories
- 79 entries for the radio categories
- more than 213 photographs
- over 79 radio programmes.

This makes the competition the largest of the many community/grassroots competitions held in South Africa annually.

Rantho/Letsebe Community Radio Riverside won the Rantho/Letsebe Community Media Achievement Award. Other winners included:

- Best Community/Small Commercial Newspapers: *Alex Pioneer*
- Independent Emerging Newspaper (between two to five years): *EC Today (Eastern Cape Today)*
- Independent established newspaper: *Polokwane Observer*
- Best Free Paper: *Tygerburger*
- Best Paid Paper: *Lowvelder*

- Hultzer Trophy (circulation under 10 000): *Polokwane Observer*
- Cronwright Trophy (circulation above 10 000): *Lowvelder.*

## Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

### Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

It is an independent body established and funded by the marketing-communication industry to regulate advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

The code is the ASA's guiding document based on the International Code of Advertising Practice, prepared by the International Chamber of Commerce. Drawn up by the ASA with the participation of representatives of the marketing communication industry, the code is amended from time to time to meet the changing needs both of the industry and of our society.

### Advertising awards

The Loerie Awards are the best-known South African awards recognising distinction in advertising. In 2012, the 34th Loeries attracted 3 182 entries, a big increase on 2011's figure of 2 870. The awards were judged by panels comprising over 130 local and international experts in their fields. Some 261 awards were handed out.

Grands Prix were awarded to OFM's Change your Tune Direct & Promotional Mail by Joe Public; South African Breweries Be the Coach Integrated Campaign by Ogilvy Cape Town; Mercedes-Benz Attention Assist Radio Campaign by Net#work BBDO; and Nando's South Africa The Last Dictator Standing TV & Cinema Commercial by Black River FC.

For the first time in Loeries history, a Gold Loerie was awarded to two agencies, King James and Black River FC, for their TV & Cinema commercial campaign, which saw a battle of wits between two local brands, Santam and Nando's South Africa.

A Lifetime Achievement Award was presented to John Hunt, Worldwide Creative Director, TBWA Worldwide, for his outstanding contribution to the South African and global advertising industry over the course of his career.

The Marketing Leadership and Innovation Award was presented to Robbie Brozin of Nando's.

Other important annual awards are the Eagles and the Pendoring Awards.

At the 2012 AdReview Awards, held in May 2012, Gloo was named Media Agency of the Year for 2011, becoming the first digital agency to win the award. The awards give recognition to the advertising agencies and individuals that performed best during the previous calendar year – from January to December 2011.

Nunu Ntshingila won the Lifetime Achievement Award, while the Boabab Award went to The Old Shanghai Firecracker Factory.

## Conclusion

Today's modern, global and competitive economy is driven by ICT, which emphasises the strategic role that the Department of Communications has to play.

The department is entrusted with two main leadership roles as it charts the course towards sustainable development. On the one hand, it must help ensure that government maximises its use of ICT to improve the delivery of services to all citizens. On the other, it must help the ICT sector fulfil its role as one of the primary enablers of economic growth and job creation.

The two roles require the department to assist South African citizens, as well as the private sector, to take full advantage of the

opportunities provided by ICT to interact with government, with each other and with business partners. This will unlock this country's enormous potential, but will require dedicated cooperation.

ICT also play a significant role in public service delivery. In the recent past, communities, through protest action, have called on government to accelerate delivery of basic services.

The Department of Communications is perfectly positioned to provide solutions on how government can interact and communicate with citizens effectively, both virtually and physically. In this regard, the ICT sector is a crucial factor, as it provides the info structures that make society functional.

The department is therefore continuing to establish partnerships with various stakeholders in the sector, big and small, corporate and non-governmental, in the quest to provide quality services to the people.

However, for the ICT industry to play its part in helping the country tackle its various challenges successfully, the skills shortage needs to be addressed. This requires developing better ways of ensuring that the supply of trained people matches industry demand. In particular, the department must continue to ensure that the ICT industry is responsive to the high unemployment in the country. Its e-skills initiative is on such intervention, and it is engaging with the industry to use its training resources to the best effect.

Because the ICT industry is a fast-moving sector, the department's training initiatives must be flexible enough to respond to these changes.

Currently, South Africa's ICT industry is highly competitive and noted for its vibrancy and the high quality of its work. However, one issue that needs to be dealt with properly is the better use of resources like radio spectrum and broadband.

The department will therefore continue to focus on an informed and progressive strategy that will help transform the ICT sector, attract investment, and create jobs.

## Acknowledgements

*AdFocus, Financial Mail*
Audit Bureau of Circulations
*Engineering News*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2012*, published by National Treasury
*ICT Trends and Developments,* January 2010
Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa
M-Net
Print Media SA
Sapa
South African Broadcasting Corporation *Annual Report 2010/11*
*South Africa & SADC Media Facts*, *2011*

*www.abc.org.za*
*www.arivia.co.za*
*www.asasa.org.za*
*www.bizcommunity.com*
*www.channel24.com*
*www.epnetwork.co.za*
*www.etv.co.za*
*www.fxi.org.za*
*www.google.com*
*www.gov.za*
*www.icasa.org.za*
*www.joburg.co.za*
*www.media24.co.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*www.mfsa.co.za*
*www.mtn.co.za*
*www.multichoice.co.za*
*www.mybroadband.co.za*
*www.news24.com*
*www.nrf.ac.za*
*www.opa.co.za*
*www.orbicom.co.za*
*www.researchchannel.co.za*
*www.saaa.gov.za*
*www.saarf.co.za*
*www.sabc.co.za*
*www.sabinetlaw.co.za*
*www.saitnews.co.za*
*www.sanef.org.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sapo.co.za*
*www.sentech.co.za*
*www.southafrica.info.co.za*
*www.telkom.co.za*
*www.theworx.biz*
*www.vodacom.co.za*

## Suggested reading

Chasi, C, Hicks, M & Tager, M (eds). 2011. *iTV; The State of Television in South Africa.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Harber, A & Renn, M. 2010. *Troublemakers: The Best of South Africa's Investigative Journalism.* Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
Knott-Craig, A & Silber, G. 2012. *Mobinomics: Mxit and Africa's Mobile Revolution.* Johannesburg: Bookstorm.
Krabill, R. 2010. *Starring Mandela and Cosby: Media and the End(s) of Apartheid.* Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Limb, P (ed). 2012. *The People's Paper: A Centenary History and Anthology of Abantu-Batho.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Maggs, J. 2012. *The Annual 2011/12: Advertising, Media, Marketing and Branding.* Rivonia: Future Publishing.
Moyo, D & Chuma, W (eds). 2012. *Media Policy in a Changing South Africa: Critical Reflections on Media Reforms in the Global Age.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Olorunnisola, A & Tomaselli, KG (eds). 2011. *Political Economy of Media Transformation in South Africa.* Cresskill, NJ: Hampton Press.
Papadopoulos, S & Snail, S. 2012. *Cyberlaw @ SA III: The Law of the Internet in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Reid, J (ed). 2012. *Visual and Media Studies in South Africa.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Wasserman, H. 2010. *Tabloid Journalism in South Africa.* Cape Town: UCT Press.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Economy

Ranked by the World Bank as an "upper middle-income country", South Africa is the largest economy in Africa. While much of the world staggered in the wake of the global financial meltdown, South Africa has managed to stay on its feet – largely due to its prudent fiscal and monetary policies.

The country has a well-capitalised banking system, abundant natural resources and well-developed regulatory systems, as well as research and development capabilities, and also an established manufacturing base.

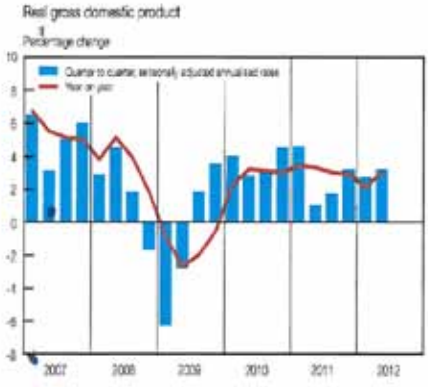
With a world-class and progressive legal framework, legislation governing commerce, labour and maritime issues is particularly strong, and laws on competition policy, copyright, patents, trademarks and disputes conform to international norms and standards. Its modern infrastructure supports the efficient distribution of goods throughout the southern African region.

South Africa's economy has a marked duality, with a sophisticated financial and industrial base, known as the "First Economy", having grown alongside an underdeveloped informal economy, known as the "Second Economy."

In its *2012/13 Global Competitiveness Report*, the World Economic Forum ranked South Africa second in the world for the accountability of its private institutions, and third for its financial market development. Its securities exchange is ranked among the top 20 in the world in terms of size.

The 2012/13 Budget announced by Minister Pravin Gordhan indicated planned spending of R1,1 trillion, exceeding R1 trillion for the first time ever. Gross domestic product (GDP) at 2012 prices is estimated at R2,964 trillion. The economy was projected to create 780 000 jobs between 2012 and 2014.

In 2012, government adopted an infrastructure development plan to transform South Africa's economic landscape, create employment opportunities and improve basic service delivery. Under the guidance of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee, 18 strategic integrated projects (SIPs) have been developed. By January 2013, work had started on all 18 SIPs.




## Economic indicators

### Domestic output

Global economic growth decelerated in the second quarter of 2012, with activity slowing across a wide range of advanced and emerging-market countries after having surprised on the upside in the first quarter of the year.

Economic activity in South Africa expanded at a firmer pace in the second quarter of 2012, with real GDP rising at an annualised rate of 3,2%, a half-percentage point higher than in the first quarter of the year.

Real value added increased at a significantly slower pace in the second quarter of 2012, while real gross domestic expenditure maintained strong momentum and accelerated further, led by capital expenditure.

As had been the case since the beginning of 2012, fixed-capital formation recorded the strongest real growth rate among the components of domestic final demand.

Public corporations, led by Eskom and Transnet, raised their real capital expenditure notably further during the period.

The real value added by the agricultural sector increased at an annualised rate of 5,8% in the second quarter of 2012, compared with an increase of 3,4% in the first quarter.

Growth in the real value added by the mining sector rebounded in the second quarter of 2012, when it accelerated to an annualised rate of 31,2%, following a sharp contraction of 16,8% in the first quarter. The National Association of Automobile Manufacturers of South Africa did expect vehicle export to gain momentum in the second half of the year, despite the slow recovery in global activity levels.

Growth in coal production continued in the second quarter of 2012, underpinned by a steady increase in domestic and foreign demand. Furthermore, a new coal shaft was opened by one of the national petrochemicals groups during the second quarter of 2012.

Having advanced at an annualised rate of 6,4% in the first quarter of 2012, the real value added by the secondary sector contracted by 0,5% in the second quarter. The real value added by the manufacturing sector contracted at an annualised rate of 1% in the second quarter of 2012, following a brisk increase of 7,7% in the first quarter.

The contraction in manufacturing production, which occurred notwithstanding the depreciation in the exchange rate of the rand, caused the contribution of manufacturing to overall growth in real GDP to switch from adding 1,2 percentage points in the first quarter of 2012 to subtracting 0,2 of a percentage point in the second quarter.

Growth in the real value added by the tertiary sector slowed to an annualised rate of 2,3% in the second quarter of 2012 – following an increase of 3% in the first quarter. Real output growth of the trade sector moderated from an annualised rate of 3% in the first quarter of 2012 to 2,8% in the second quarter, mainly reflecting slower output growth in the wholesale trade and catering and accommodation subsectors.

Following an increase of 2,5% in the first quarter of 2012, growth in real value added by the transport, storage and communication sector slowed to 2,3% in the second quarter.

Growth in real value added by the finance,

The proportion of adults in South Africa with the lowest living standards has decreased by 77% over the last 10 years, according to the *South African Institute of Race Relations South Africa Survey*, published in January 2012.

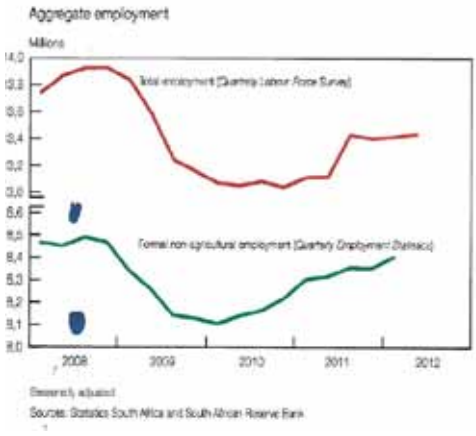
insurance, real-estate and business services sector decelerated from 4,1% in the first quarter of 2012 to 2,3% in the second quarter.

The real value added by the general government increased at annualised rates of 2,3% and 1,9% in the first and second quarter of 2012 respectively. The slower growth in the second quarter reflected a moderation in employment gains over the period.

## Domestic expenditure

Growth in aggregate real gross domestic expenditure accelerated from an annualised rate of 4,3% in the first quarter of 2012 to 4,7% in the second quarter. A steady increase of R5,9 billion in inventory levels was recorded in the first quarter of 2012.

Real final consumption expenditure by households moderated further from an annualised rate of 3,1% in the first quarter of 2012 to 2,9% in the second quarter. This was the lowest rate of increase to be registered since the second quarter of 2010. Growth in real spending on durable goods decelerated slightly from 8,2% in the first quarter of 2012 to 8,1% in the second quarter.




Subsequent to a somewhat slower pace of increase in the first quarter of 2012, real spending on semi-durable goods advanced at an annualised rate of 7,8% in the second quarter.

Real spending on non-durable goods showed steady increases at rates of 3,5% and 3,8% in the first and second quarters of 2012, respectively.

Spending on services declined at an annualised rate of 0,3% in the second quarter of 2012, switching from the 1,6% growth rate recorded in the preceding quarter. More affordable travel and accommodation packages made South Africa an attractive destination for international holidaymakers over the period.

Real spending on non-wage goods and services contracted in the second quarter of 2012. This decline caused the growth in government consumption expenditure, excluding the acquisition of armaments, to slow from 4,3% in the first quarter of 2012 to 4,1% in the second quarter.

Real gross fixed capital formation increased at an annualised rate of 5,7% in the second quarter of 2012, following growth of 5,3% in the first quarter. Improved capital outlays could be attributed to a faster pace of increase in capital spending by private business enterprises and by general government.

Growth in real gross fixed capital formation by private business enterprises accelerated from an annualised rate of 1,8% in the first quarter of 2012 to 2,4% in the second quarter. Spending on machinery and equipment by the manufacturing sector nevertheless picked up slightly in the second quarter of 2012.

The communications subsector continued to expand the optic-fibre network, particularly to augment quality and to support the growth in data traffic through ongoing capital spending on more sophisticated data networks. Real fixed capital expenditure by public corporations increased at an annualised rate of 9,1% in the second quarter of 2012, following an increase of 13,1% in the first quarter.

Real gross fixed capital expenditure by general government accelerated in the second quarter of 2012, driven by ongoing spending at all three levels of government. The upgrading of public roads by provincial governments continued over this period. In addition, expenditure on water and sanitation projects, all of which are largely financed by local governments,

rose further over this period. Capital spending on the health and education services infrastructure also continued. The level of real inventory investment increased from R5,9 billion in the first quarter of 2012 to R7 billion in the second quarter, as the pace of increase in domestic consumption and exports continued to slow in most of the sectors.

## Employment

Releasing the *Quarterly Labour Force Survey* for the fourth quarter in February 2012, Statistics South Africa indicated that the unemployment rate dropped by 1,1% to 23,9% down from the third quarter's 25%.

There were 13,5 million people employed in the fourth quarter. Compared to the fourth quarter in 2010, employment increased by 365 000 in the fourth quarter of 2011. Year-on-year, 453 000 more people were employed in the formal sector in the fourth quarter, making it the highest year-on-year growth seen in the formal sector since the end of the recession in 2009.

The formal sector job gains were driven by finance and other business services, trade, and community and social services. Although there was a decline in unemployment in the fourth quarter, 4,2 million people remain unemployed, with 2,9 million having been looking for work for over a year or longer.

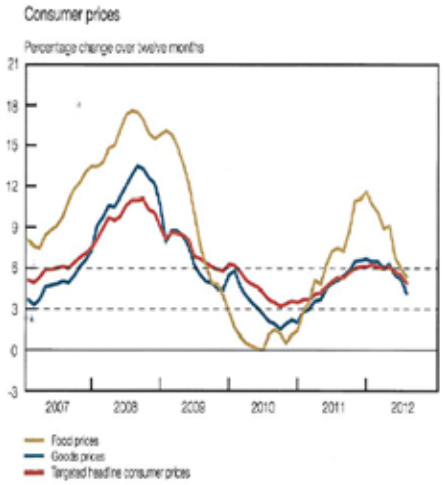
Since most employment creation occurs outside of the government, accelerating it requires the consistent use of core state functions to create an environment that encourages private enterprise and other non-state organisations to expand jobs.

To this end, the New Growth Path (NGP) and the Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 (IPAP 2) provide a framework for undertaking these tasks. They require coordination across all departments, many of which are not primarily concerned with the economy, as well as state-owned enterprises (SOEs), municipalities and provinces.

In August 2012, a work compact on youth unemployment was agreed on by members of Business Leadership South Africa, Business Unity South Africa, the Black Business Council, representatives of women and disabled peoples' organisations, and youth representatives drawn from unions and the South African Youth Council.

Corporate supporters and principles were identified – including current and potential private-sector programmes such as work readiness schemes, the setting up of health, education and rural brigades, as well as internships and apprenticeships.

A youth employment creation committee under the National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) examined measures to tackle unemployment among young people, while government explored work-seeker and work-creation subsidies with key partners and setting up specific programmes to help young people to start their own business or co-operative – including a role in installing solar-water heaters.




In the area of education, government accelerated work on its second-chance matric and expanding the intake of Further Education and Training colleges tenfold to four million by 2030.

## Price inflation

In an environment of declining commodity prices and subdued global inflation, headline

consumer price inflation moderated from a high of 6,3% in the year to January 2012 to 4,9% in the year to July. This outcome, which resulted from a notable moderation in consumer goods price inflation, was more favourable than initially expected. Similarly, year-on-year producer price inflation for domestic output decelerated from a high of 10,6% in October 2011 to 6,6% in April 2012, and remained at this rate up to June, before moderating further to 5,4% in July 2012.

The deceleration in domestic producer price inflation from its peak of 10,6% occurred alongside declining international commodity prices, as global economic growth prospects deteriorated throughout the first half of 2012.

In conformity with overall producer price inflation, the pace of increase in the prices of imported commodities moderated significantly in the first half of 2012, partly underpinned by an appreciation in the exchange rate of the rand in the opening months of the year. Year-on-year producer price inflation for imported agricultural products moderated to such an extent that it turned to deflation from December 2011 onwards, amounting to 3% in May 2012, before prices increased again by 1,9% in the year to July.

Inflation expectations for 2012, as measured by the *Survey of Inflation Expectations* conducted by the Bureau for Economic Research at Stellenbosch University, in the second quarter of 2012 remained unchanged at 6,1% from the previous quarter.

Annual average consumer price inflation was expected to moderate slightly to 6% in 2013, before accelerating somewhat to 6,1% in 2014.

### Exchange rates

After having increased by 4,4% in the first quarter of 2012, the nominal effective exchange rate of the rand lost some momentum and decreased by 4,8% in the second quarter.

During April and May 2012, the nominal effective exchange rate of the rand decreased by 0,8% and 5,8%, respectively. Pronounced declines were registered against the US dollar and the Japanese yen. The rand, however, gained some ground in June, mainly due to progress made in addressing the euro area debt crisis and confirmation by Citigroup that it would include South African government bonds in its World Government Bond Index from October 2012.

The average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange remained broadly unchanged at US$19,5 billion from the first quarter of 2012 to the second quarter.

## Economic Development Department

The Economic Development Department is responsible for coordinating the development of the country's NGP and overseeing the work of key state entities engaged in economic development.

The department was formed after the 2009 elections to strengthen government capacity to implement the electoral mandate, in particular in relation to the transformation of the economy.

This transformation requires a pro-employment growth path that addresses the structural constraints to absorbing large numbers of people into the economy and the creation of decent work.

The department promotes economic development through participatory, coherent and coordinated economic policy and planning for the benefit of all South Africans.

The department contributes directly to the creation of decent work through inclusive economic growth, and the ministerial service-delivery agreement that was signed in October 2010.

In 2011, government, business and labour stakeholders signed a local procurement accord. The accord was to turn around South Africa's heavy reliance on imports, which has led to de-industrialisation and the weakening of the manufacturing sector over the previous decade. Under the local procurement accord, the main economic groupings in the country committed to working together to increase the levels of goods and services bought from local producers, setting a target of 75% local procurement.

In January 2012, South Africa sent a high-powered delegation to the World Economic Forum's annual meeting in Davos, Switzerland. Economically, South Africa is increasingly recognised as the springboard into the world's last great investment frontier, Africa. It is ideally placed to navigate the shifting poles of power, not only as an emerging market, but also as a leading economy in a continent that is home to approximately 15% of the world's population.

The department has assumed responsibility for key outputs relating to inclusive economic growth, including:

- developing of the NGP
- analysing data on income distribution
- concluding social pacts to create decent work
- strengthening the implementation of the framework for South Africa's response to the international economic crisis
- developing spatial programmes
- developing the green economy
- implementing a multipronged strategy to reduce unemployment among the youth
- improving cost structures in the economy
- better integrating Second-Economy activities with the mainstream economy.

The Economic Development Department is working with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research to develop spatial frameworks for the poorest 23 districts in the country. The spatial plans identify how impoverished rural areas can take advantage of economic opportunities in the core economy.

That, in turn, requires a spatial framework to identify major viable opportunities and the key actions required for people in relevant regions to take advantage of them.

## Legislation and policies

The Competition Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 1 of 2009), actively mandates the competition authorities to consider public interest criteria, including impact on employment and linked industries when evaluating proposed mergers and acquisitions.

The Act provides for:

- concurrent jurisdiction between the Competition Commission and other regulatory authorities
- provisions to address other practices that tend to prevent or distort competition in the market for any particular goods or services
- more guidance in relation to conducting market enquiries as a tool to identify and make recommendations with respect to conditions that tend to prevent, distort or restrict competition in the market for any particular goods or services
- provisions to hold personally accountable those individuals who cause firms to engage in cartel conduct
- authority to the Competition Commission to excuse a respondent to a complaint if the respondent has assisted the competition authorities in the detection and investigation of cartel conduct.

## Budget and funding

The Economic Development Department's work on sector policy aims to support the IPAP 2, as well as rural economic development initiatives.

The department guides the work of three economic regulatory bodies, namely the Competition Commission, the Competition Tribunal and the International Trade Administration Commission (Itac); and three development finance institutions, namely Khula, South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf) and the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC).

The budget allocation for 2012/13 amounts to R672,7 million, of which R523 million goes as transfers to agencies and institutions associated with the department. The department's budget for operations and capital spending is R149 million, which will be distributed as follows:

- R169 million in small business funding to the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (Sefa)
- R172,8 million for the competition authorities
- R73,7 million for trade administration to Itac
- R108 million to the IDC for the Agro-processing Fund

- R60,1 million for administration, the Ministry and capital expenditure
- R29,1 million for economic policy development
- R42 million for economic planning and coordination
- R18,1 million for economic development and dialogue.

## Role players

### The Competition Commission, Competition Tribunal and Competition Appeals Court

Three independent bodies, which replaced the Competition Board, were created by the Competition Act, 1998. These are the Competition Commission, the Competition tribunal and the Competition Appeals Court.

The Act also made it compulsory for firms to notify the commission and/or the Tribunal about mergers and acquisitions above a certain monetary threshold.

The commission is the investigation and enforcement agency. The tribunal is the adjudicative body. The Appeals Court considers appeals against decisions of the tribunal.

In August 2012, Cabinet approved that a notice, in terms of the Consumer Protection Act, 2008, be issued requiring the labelling of goods or products from Israeli-occupied territories to prevent consumers being led to believe that such goods come from Israel. Earlier in 2012, the department issued Notice 379 that was published for public comment regarding the labelling of products alleged to be originating in the occupied Palestine Territory by Israeli forces, as the department wanted to ensure that consumers were provided with accurate information on the origins of the goods they bought. This is in line with South Africa's stance that recognises the 1948 borders delineated by the United Nations and does not recognise occupied territories beyond these borders as being part of the state of Israel.

### International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (Itac)

Itac was established through the International Trade Administration Act, 2002 (Act 71 of 2002). The commission is mandated to foster economic growth and development to raise incomes and promote investment and employment in South Africa and within the Common Customs Union Area. This is done by establishing an efficient and effective system for the administration of international trade, subject to this Act and the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement. The core functions are customs tariff investigations, trade remedies, and import and export control.

The Act makes provision for a Chief Commissioner who serves as the Chief Executive Officer directly accountable to the Minister of Trade and Industry.

## Programmes and projects

### New Growth Path

Cabinet endorsed the NGP in October 2010, and set a target for the generation of five million new jobs by 2020 to significantly reduce unemployment. The NGP drivers, resource drivers and institutional drivers will help realise inclusive growth and decent employment over the next 10 years.

To this end, the NGP actively promotes integration and coordination across government.

The most successful example in the past year was the formation of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC), which brought together half of Cabinet, the nine premiers, metropolitan council mayors and the South African Local Government Association, providing a structure where all economic decision-makers in the public sector sit together to drive implementation.

Other examples of coordination that include the department are inter-ministerial committees nationally, which bring ministers, MECs and local government representatives together, and social dialogue.

The department met with social partners to draft various accords to implement the NGP.

The ratification process establishing the Collaborative Africa Budget Reform Initiative (Cabri) as an international organisation was complete in June 2012, with South Africa hosting the Cabri Secretariat. Cabinet approved the signing of the hosting agreement by the ministers of finance and international relations and cooperation on behalf of South Africa. Cabri is a professional network of senior budget officials from ministries of finance throughout Africa that seeks to promote efficient and effective management of public finances through the exchange of good practices and experiences among peers.

In April 2012, the Economic Development Department convened an Infrastructure and Development Conference to provide a platform for ideas and proposals to strengthen the Infrastructure Plan.

The IDC and Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA) continue to invest in other African countries. By April 2012, the IDC portfolio extended to 20 other countries on the continent, with a market value of R19 billion. In 2011, the South African Government worked for the first time with the Namibian competition authorities on the Walmart matter, deepening policy coordination within the region.

### Green economy

The green economy is shaping the next wave of industrialisation and is a key sector in the NGP. National Treasury allocated R800 million over the 2012 to 2014 timeframe for South Africa's Green Fund to provide finance for high-quality, high-impact, job-creating green economy projects throughout the country that would not have been implemented without fiscal support.

The green economy offers substantial opportunities for job creation and development in the environmental goods and services sector, particularly in biodiversity, waste and natural resource management services.

Following the release of the Green Jobs Report, the department concluded the Accord on the Green Economy in November 2011, which signalled a partnership between social partners. It contained clear commitments by each partner, with measurable targets.

About 250 000 solar water heaters had been installed in South Africa by 2012, a solid step towards the million target. This has been a partnership between a number of departments and public entities. The department worked with industry to manufacture more of the units in South Africa. In January 2012, the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) approved a new factory in Alrode with a capacity to produce 8 000 units a month.

The IDC committed about R5 billion in industrial funding for projects in the Department of Environmental Affairs' Green Energy Programme, including to support entry of community empowerment groups.

The department unblocked projects in green energy stuck in bureaucratic delays, for example a wind farm in Coega in the Eastern Cape.

### International cooperation

To advance economic integration and development in Africa, the Tripartite Free Trade Agreement made up of the Southern African Development Community, the East African Community and the Common Market of Eastern and Southern Africa was launched in South Africa during 2011.

This agreement combines market integration and infrastructure development, and initiates a work programme to promote industrial development in Africa. The announcement by the President about the African Union (AU)/New Partnership for Africa's Development North-South Road and Rail Corridor championed by South Africa on behalf of the AU, as well as other spatial development initiatives supported by South Africa will benefit this initiative.

## Department of Trade and Industry

The Department of Trade and Industry's vision is of a South Africa that has a vibrant economy, characterised by growth, employment and equity, built on the full potential of all citizens. To achieve this, the it has become an outwardly focused, customer-centric organisation.

The department's strategic objectives are:

- facilitating transformation of the economy to promote industrial development, investment, competitiveness and employment creation
- building mutually beneficial regional and global relations to advance South Africa's trade, industrial policy and economic development objectives
- facilitating broad-based economic participation through targeted interventions to achieve more inclusive growth
- creating a fair regulatory environment that enables investment, trade and enterprise development in an equitable and socially responsible manner
- promoting a professional, ethical, dynamic, competitive and customer-focused working environment that ensures effective and efficient service delivery.

These objectives will be achieved through the collective efforts of the department's internal divisions and its Council of Trade and Industry Institutions, which are linked through a value chain to generate public value for the country's economic citizens and deliver high-quality products and services to the department's varied clients and stakeholders.

These products and services include policies, legislation and regulations, financial support and investment incentives, information and advisory support, as well as value-added partnerships.

The department also aims to achieve its objectives through the pursuit of a more targeted investment strategy, improved competitiveness of the economy, broadened economic participation of previously disadvantaged individuals into the mainstream economy, and policy coherence.

The department developed a detailed implementation plan, the IPAP 2, released in February 2010, which lays out specific projects housed within the department's programmes and entities.

The department's specialised, regulatory and financial development agencies and institutions include the:

- Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda)
- Companies and Intellectual Property Commission
- National Empowerment Fund (NEF)
- Estate Agency Affairs Board
- Export Credit Insurance Corporation
- SABS
- National Credit Regulator
- National Lotteries Board
- National Gambling Board
- South African National Accreditation System
- National Consumer Tribunal
- National Consumer Commission
- National Metrology Institute of South Africa
- National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications.

## Legislation and policies

The Department of Trade and Industry develops and reviews regulatory systems in the areas of competition, consumer protection, company and intellectual property, as well

Bilateral trade between South Africa and its BRICS partners grew substantially in 2011. Powered by significant increases in trade and exports between South Africa and China in 2011 grew by 32%, totalling R188 billion; with India by 25%, totalling R55 billion; and with Brazil 20%, totalling R18 billion. Bilateral trade between South Africa and Russia in 2011 totalled R3,8 billion.

Among BRICS members, South African exports to China grew the most, at 46%, while exports to India grew by 20%, to Brazil by 14% and by 7% to Russia.

In terms of the balance of trade, South Africa has run a trade surplus with Russia in the last two years of R1,3 billion and R1 billion respectively, after running trade deficits in 2008 and 2009.

While South Africa continued to run a trade deficit with China over the last four years, that deficit narrowed by over 50% from R48 billion in 2008 to less than R18 billion in 2011.

South Africa's trade deficit with Brazil also narrowed in 2011, to R6,1 billion – almost R2,5 billion less than the deficit recorded in 2008. However, after running trade surpluses with India of R2,5 billion in 2009 and R1,5 billion in 2010, South Africa last year recorded a trade deficit of R4,9 billion.

In December 2011, the Department of Trade and Industry made an appeal for contributions to provide solar water geysers to a nominated township or rural area. Some R802 000 was raised from corporates, unions and visitors to the Economic Development Department's stand at COP17. The department selected Ilhembe District in KwaZulu-Natal to install 500 solar water geysers. Groutville, home of Chief Albert Luthuli, is in Ilhembe. Installation started in late January 2012, using locally produced water-tanks.

as public interest regulation. It also oversees the work of national and provincial regulatory agencies mandated to assist the department in providing competitive and socially responsible business and consumer regulations, for easy access to redress and efficient markets.

The department's work is governed by a broad legislative framework. These include:

- Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003)
- Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008)
- Co-Operatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005)
- Copyright Act, 1978 (Act 98 of 1978)
- Intellectual Property Laws Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 107 of 1996)
- Liquor Act, 2003 ( Act 59 of 2003)
- Patents Act, 1978 (Act 57 of 1978)
- Small Business Development Act, 1981 (Act 112 of 1981)
- Trade Marks Act, 1993 (Act 194 of 1993).

The amended Regulations to the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000), became effective in December 2011.

The Department of Trade and Industry may designate sectors and products for local procurement of specified products by all state entities, including clothing, buses, rolling stock and canned foods.

The first designations mark an important milestone in government efforts to arrest and reverse industrial decline with and in support of the private sector.

The designation instrument serves to strengthen public procurement in support of the multipliers derived from reducing the trade deficit, strengthening and diversifying South Africa's industrial base and to build up competitive value-adding exports to the rest of the continent, high-growth developing economies and traditional export markets.

## Budget and funding

The Department of Trade and Industry was allocated a budget of R9,1 billion for 2012/13, R10,4 billion for 2013/14 and R11,1 billion for 2014/15.

The 2012/13 budget represented a nominal increase of R2,2 billion or 32,2% compared to 2011/12. In real terms, this increase reflected a R1,7 billion or 24,9% increase. Furthermore, the department's budget would increase by 13,9% and 7,4% in nominal terms in 2013/14 and 2014/15, respectively. The total share of the department's budget allocation was 0,9% of the total government's budget of R969,4 billion for 2012/13, compared to 0,8% in 2011/12.

The 2012/13 allocation increase of R2,2 billion was primarily due to additional allocations in terms of incentives linked to industrial development. These included the manufacturing development incentives (an additional R1,4 billion is allocated), the capital investment incentives for special economic zones (SEZs), where an additional R500 million was allocated, and the clothing and textile production incentive (an additional R150 million was allocated).

## Role players

### National Small Business Advisory Council

The National Small Business Advisory Council advises on issues affecting owner-managed businesses. The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

There are three primary working groups in each of the following primary areas:

- access to finance
- demand and markets
- regulatory review.

### Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC)

In 2012, the PICC made noticeable progress on drawing up the Infrastructure Plan. The commission has identified a bouquet of projects that will promote growth and development; ensure appropriate investments, taking into account both the cost and quality of infrastructure required by different sectors of the economy, as well as by households; and ensure adequate capacity to drive priority projects, especially at municipal and provincial level.

The Infrastructure Plan has five geographically-defined strategic integrated projects (SIPs) to:

- develop and integrate rail, road and water infrastructure
- improve the movement of goods and economic integration through a Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor
- develop a major new south-eastern node that will improve the industrial and agricultural development and export capacity of the Eastern Cape region and expand the province's economic and logistics linkages with the Northern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal
- expand the roll-out of water, roads, rail and electricity infrastructure in North West where 10 priority roads will be upgraded
- expand the iron-ore rail line between Sishen in the Western Cape and Saldanha Bay in the Western Cape, which will create large numbers of jobs in both provinces.

All the SIPs had been launched by the end of January 2013. Construction was well underway on many of the projects included in the Infrastructure Plan.

### Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda)

Seda provides non-financial business-development and support services for small enterprises in partnership with other role players. By developing, supporting and promoting small enterprises, it ensures their growth and sustainability and subsequently enhances the competitiveness and capabilities of small enterprises through coordinated services, programmes and projects and to ensure equitable access to business support services.

In terms of IPAP 2 the agency is expected to contribute to four action programmes prioritised by the department over the medium term, namely:

- providing accessibility to financing for the national tooling initiative
- mentoring small- to medium-component manufacturers
- participating in the skills transfer and technology upgrading programme for small-scale saw millers
- developing and establishing business-management structures
- providing training to charcoal manufacturing enterprises and co-operatives in communities showing interest in charcoal production.

### South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf)

Samaf's work is guided by the Economic Development Department.

The fund has been operational since 2006 and provides wholesale funding and capacity-building support to on-lending financial intermediaries for the provision of affordable financial services to the enterprising poor in South Africa.

The fund focuses on establishing a network of sustainable micro-finance institutions providing loans to on-lending financial intermediaries.

Disbursements are projected to go to R101 million in 2013/14, which represents a substantial increase in the entity's operations.

In November 2012, the Minister of Trade and Industry, Dr Rob Davies, handed over six fishing boats to Houtbay fishing co-operatives at the Imizamo Yethu Settlement in Cape Town. The project is intended to broaden the participation of small-scale fishing communities in the fisheries value chain, thereby creating employment opportunities for local people.

Samaf focuses on rural and semi-urban areas and contributes to the national priorities of creating decent work and rural development.

Samaf has implemented a major review and evaluation to assess the efficiencies and effectiveness of its operating model in achieving its mandate and will continue implementing the recommendations of the review over the medium term.

### Khula Enterprise Finance Limited

Khula's work is guided by the Economic Development Department. Established in 1996, Khula is dedicated to the development and sustainability of small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) in South Africa.

The company is a wholesale finance institution that operates across the public and private sectors, through a network of channels, to supply much-needed funding to small business. Khula's channels include South Africa's leading commercial banks, retail financial institutions, specialist funds and joint ventures in which Khula itself is a participant.

In 2011, Khula approved R63,5 million to land reform beneficiaries for planting vineyards and citrus orchards in the Citrusdal community in the Western Cape. These two projects will create employment and ownership opportunities to about 565 workers.

In 2012, Khula Finance, South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund and the IDC's small business lending book were amalgamated into a single agency – the Sefa. Through operational efficiencies and leveraging a R2 billion funding envelope over the next three years, Sefa will enhance funding support to SMMEs at a provincial level through initiatives such as the roll-out of a direct lending facility piloted in Cape Town, Western Cape last year.

### Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Ltd is a specialist risk-finance company for formal SMMEs in South Africa and selected African countries. The company actively supports entrepreneurial growth by providing specialist risk finance for SMMEs, as well as specialist sectoral knowledge and added-value services to these small and medium businesses.

It is an unlisted public company whose major shareholders include Remgro Ltd, Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd, major South African banks, insurance companies, mining houses and others. Business Partners Ltd has 22 offices throughout South Africa.

Over the past few years, Business Partners' reach was extended into Africa, with country-specific SMME investment funds providing scalable risk-finance solutions in Rwanda, Kenya and Madagascar. The establishment of SMME risk-finance funds in Mozambique was finalised in 2010. Groundwork was also undertaken in 2010/11 to establish a southern African SMME risk-finance fund covering Namibia, Malawi, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

### National Empowerment Fund (NEF)

The NEF was established by the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic equality and transformation. It provides finance and financial solutions to black businesses across a range of sectors. It also structures accessible retail savings products for previously disadvantaged people based on state-owned equity investments.

Its mandate and mission is to be government's funding agency in facilitating the implementation of BBBEE in terms of the Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) codes of good practice.

In May 2012, the Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda) announced the winners in the 2012 Seda Small Business Stars National Business Plan Competition.

The winners were selected after 180 finalists – drawn from more than 5 500 entries – presented their business concepts to 18 provincial judging panels, who selected a total of 11 national finalists. The overall national winner was Adesh Maidoo from KwaZulu-Natal. Another four special awards were allocated in the categories for:

- most promising woman entrepreneur
- most promising youth entrepreneur
- most promising job-creating entrepreneur
- most promising entrepreneur with a disability.

The fund's objectives over are to:

- encourage and promote savings, investments and meaningful economic participation by black people
- promote and support business ventures pioneered and run by black enterprises
- promote the universal understanding of equity ownership among black people
- contribute to creating employment opportunities
- encourage the development of a competitive, effective and inclusive equities market.

### South African Women Entrepreneurs Network (Sawen)

Sawen assists aspiring and existing business women with their business enterprises. The network advocates policy changes, builds capacity and facilitates women's access to business resources and information.

To buttress government's intent of strategic intervention in women's economic empowerment, the Department of Trade and Industry has been using vehicles such as Sawen, the Isivande Women's Fund (IWF), Bavumile and Technology for Women in Business.

At the end of October 2012, Anna Lelimo, a Free State businesswoman, came out tops in the Sawen awards.

### Isivande Women's Fund (IWF)

The IWF accelerates women's economic empowerment by providing affordable, usable and responsive finance. It renders financial support for deals requiring start-up funding, involving business expansion, rehabilitation, turnaround and franchising. The IWF targets formally registered, 60% women-owned and/or managed enterprises that have been in existence and operating for two or more years with a loan range of R30 000 to R2 million.

The Fund is managed by the IDC on behalf of the Department of Trade and Industry through a development fund manager. The IWF assists with support services to enhance the success of businesses. It pursues deals involving start-up funding, business expansion, business rehabilitation, franchising and bridging finance.

South Africa hosted the International Small Business Congress (ISBC) in September 2012 under the theme *Fostering small business in new and high-potential industries worldwide*. The ISBC, which provides a platform to benchmark and draw lessons from both the developed and developing countries, was held for the first time in Africa.

### Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)

The IDC is the country's largest industrial funding agency. In 2011, the IDC made R102 billion available over the following five years to drive investment in the economic priorities identified in the NGP.

The IDC has achieved an unprecedented level of approvals during 2012. In releasing its annual results, the value of funding approved increased to R13,5 billion from R8,7 billion. There were 293 funding approvals in 2012 compared to 221 in 2011.

Until April 2012, the IDC approvals of funding grew strongly, from R8,7 billion to R13,5 billion, an increase of 55%. This level of investment created about 45 000 jobs, including some that were "saved" rather than new jobs created, as companies were in distress.

The IDC issued a Jobs Bond to the value of R4 billion, taken up by the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF), R2 billion in 2010, and based on its exceptional success, a further R2 billion in 2012, to promote lending with a strong jobs impact.

The IDC will now issue a R5-billion Green Bond to be taken up by the Public Investment Commission, with a 14-year tenure.

In 2012, the IDC implemented the decision to double its envelope of industrial financing. In this context, it dedicated funds for priority jobs drivers in the NGP, including the green economy and agro-processing.

### Trade and Investment South Africa (Tisa)

Tisa, is a division of the Department of Trade and Industry mandated to increase export capacity and support direct investment flows. This is achieved via the implementation of strategies directed at targeted markets, and

The draft Special Economic Zones (SEZ) Bill is expected to boost job creation in outlying areas through the licensing of SEZs. SEZs are developed to promote integration and links between the First and the Second Economy. They are aimed at expanding the work done by industrial development zones and attract more foreign investment. This, in turn, is expected to promote a regionally diverse industrial economy through the development of new industrial hubs in underdeveloped regions.

effectively managing the Department of Trade and Industry's network of foreign trade offices.

In October 2012, Tisa and Investe São Paulo in Brazil entered into a cooperation agreement. The agreement focuses on future investment promotion and facilitation into South Africa and the state of São Paulo. It is anticipated that the cooperation agreement will encourage South African and Brazilian businesses to collaborate and form joint ventures to reach new markets and also to enhance and share skills and best practices in the area of investment promotion and facilitation.

The Investment Trade Initiative, hosted in São Paulo, identified various issues affecting trade and investment in South Africa and Brazil.

## Resources

### Technology support

The Department of Trade and Industry implements skills development, economic infrastructure, and innovation and technology programmes to support priority sectoral and regional industrial development plans. Some of the key programmes include the Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme (Thrip), the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation (SPII) and the Centre for Entrepreneurship and Technology Programme.

Provision is also made for the following transfer payments and subsidies:

- Seda's Technology Programme, which is managed by Seda to finance and support early, seed and start-up technology-based ventures
- Thrip, which is managed by the National Research Foundation to support research and technology development
- the SPII, which is managed by the IDC, to support a wide group of enterprises that promote technological development through financial assistance
- the Workplace Challenge Programme, which finances and supports world-class manufacturing and value-chain efficiency improvements in South African companies.

### Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

Cabinet approved the introduction of the BBBEE Amendment Bill, 2012, to Parliament in August 2012.

The amendments seek to establish a BBBEE Commission to deal with compliance in BBBEE; the promotion of compliance by organs of state and public entities, and to strengthen the evaluation and monitoring of compliance as well as the provision for offences and penalties, among other things.

Points would be deducted from companies that do not invest in skills and supplier development in terms of the BBBEE Act, 2003.

The BBBEE Amendment Bill aims to align the BBBEE Act, 2003 with other legislation impacting on black economic empowerment. It was gazetted in December 2011.

The Presidential BBBEE Advisory Council is an advisory body whose resolutions are tabled in Cabinet for noting or for decisions where resolutions taken materially affect policy, the budget, or address the implementation of existing policy.

In August 2012, Cabinet approved the revised BBBEE Codes of Good Practice, 2012 for public comment. The BBBEE Codes are more closely aligned with the NGP, with stronger incentives for employment creation, enterprise development, collective ownership and broad-based employment equity and skills development. In addition, the BBBEE Act, 2003 is being amended to address fronting and generally strengthen implementation practices.

The fifth meeting of the BBBEE Advisory Council was held in September 2012.

The Department of Trade and Industry hosted a series of workshops with stakeholders on the revised BBBEE Codes of Good Practice during October 2012.

The sessions were aimed at engaging all stakeholders on issues that they may need clarity on to enable them to give concrete feedback on the codes. The sessions were followed by workshops for verification agencies, SOEs, sector charter councils, provincial and local government officials, private sector chambers and foreign embassies over a period of two months.

## Programmes and projects

### Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme is a cost-sharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprise to assist them to improve their competitiveness and sustainability to become part of the mainstream economy and create employment.

The programme provides grants to a maximum of R1 million: R800 000 for tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology.

In July 2012, the South African Chamber of Commerce and Industry (Sacci) met with Trade and Industry Minister Rob Davies to foster a stronger partnership between business and government. Sacci supports the minister's position that it is crucial to the process of job creation that South Africa must raise productivity in the economy, specifically in the manufacturing sector. Programmes to achieve this goal include higher levels of beneficiation, more focused incentive programmes and prioritisation of key sectors. Discussions between the parties included the green economy, Black Economic Empowerment, trade promotion and the proposed Tripartite Free Trade Agreement.

The objectives of the incentive scheme are:

- fast-tracking existing SMMEs that exhibit good potential for growth into the mainstream economy
- growing black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises
- complementing current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises
- enhancing the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders and outsourcing opportunities.

### Industrial development

Industrialisation is central to long-term growth and development. A host of sectoral and cross-cutting initiatives are being implemented.

IPAP 2 2011/12 – 2013/14 is being systematically implemented. To support IPAP, the new Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme was launched in May 2012. The programme will provide R25 billion over the coming six years for a variety of programmes.

In addition, the Automotive Investment Scheme saw the approval of 92 projects (seven final car producers and 85 component manufacturers). The projected investment resulting from these approvals was close to R9 billion based on incentives of R2,5 billion, creating over 7 000 jobs directly and more indirectly.

Localisation is vital to reverse de-industrialisation pressures and strengthen the country's capacity to design and make things.

The steps that have been taken to implement this included the following initiatives:

- The department signed a Local Procurement Accord with the business sector, including the 85 largest companies, labour and community partners. The accord set a target of 75% local content with concrete commitments and is the first agreement of its kind in South Africa.
- Cabinet approved procurement regulations that require all public entities to procure designated goods only from South African

In November 2012, the Department of Trade and Industry and the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) signed a Memorandum of Understanding to cooperate in the promotion and establishment of business incubators. The parties also agreed to cooperate in female economic empowerment; a supplier development programme focusing on the promotion of co-operatives; special economic zones; and economic infrastructure. The experience and knowledge that the UNDP brings to these areas will significantly assist South Africa in strengthening its small, medium and micro-enterprise sector.

manufacturers. The first designated products are bus bodies, power pylons, rolling stock, canned vegetables, clothing, textiles, footwear and leather, set-top boxes and oral solid pharmaceuticals.

- The Infrastructure Plan has a strong localisation component in the purchase of trains, boilers, earth-moving equipment, turbines and other key inputs.
- In 2012, the updated version of the IPAP – the manufacturing driver of the NGP, to increase competitiveness of local companies – was released.
- The department commissioned Proudly South African to drive more focused marketing and buy local campaigns and compile a database of local suppliers. To this end, the department made R8 million in funding available.
- In April 2012, the department reached an agreement with a local manufacturer to buy conference files at a lower price than the imported product, leading to a saving of about R35 000 a year.

### Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 (IPAP 2)

The IPAP 2 2011/12 – 2013/14 was launched in 2011 as a three-year rolling industrial development road map. In terms of the breadth of the interventions outlined and the requirement of intergovernmental coordination and multi-stakeholder involvement, IPAP was a first of its kind in South Africa. It stabilised the clothing sector, turned around the automotive sector, added jobs in the business process services sector and introduced procurement designation to boost local production.

It was anticipated that IPAP 2 2011/12 – 2012/13 interventions would lead to 43 000 direct jobs and 86 000 indirect jobs, totalling 129 000 jobs.

The Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme is a key component of the IPAP 2. The programme provides enhanced manufacturing support aimed at encouraging manufacturers to upgrade their production facilities in a manner that sustains employment and maximises value-addition in the short to medium term. The R5,75-billion programme will run over a period of six years and expands on the distressed facility to SMMEs offered by the IDC. Companies could apply for incentives from June 2012.

The Clothing and Textile Competitiveness Improvement Programme not only stalled employment losses in 2010, but also led to a modest increase in employment in 2011. Some R14,4 million disbursed to 106 companies, combined with the R310 million disbursed under the production incentive scheme, supported 48 384 direct and indirect jobs.

The Motor Industry Development Programme supported investment commitments of over R15 billion from both assemblers and component suppliers. Over 500 jobs were added in the sector in 2012, and a further set of approved projects would create about 11 000 jobs over the following three years.

The transition from the Motor Industry Development Programme to the Automotive Production and Development Programme by 2013 had largely been completed, and this had helped give policy certainty even amid global economic stagnation.

The Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme was launched in May 2012. Through the programme, the Department of Trade and Industry offered incentives worth R5,75 billion over the next six years to help South Africa's manufacturing sector become more competitive in an increasingly difficult global environment, of which R1,25 billion were

allocated for 2012/13. The programme would be complemented by a loan facility from the IDC.

The coverage offered by each incentive is:

- The Capital Investment Grant to upgrade capital equipment and expand productive capacity will cover between 30% and 50% of the investment.
- The Green Technology Upgrading Grant for investment in technology and processes that will make the production process greener, will cover between 30% and 50% of the investment.
- The Enterprise-Level Competitiveness Improvement Grant for investment in the adoption of improved manufacturing practices, will cover between 50% and 70% of project costs.
- The Feasibility Studies Grant, a cost-sharing grant towards developing a bankable feasibility study for new manufacturing projects, will cover between 50% and 70% of project costs.
- The Cluster Initiatives Grant to help fund shared infrastructure such as a sector technology development centre, market research, international advertising and publicity costs, will cover 80% of qualifying project costs; the grant aims to encourage smaller firms to band together in joint marketing or buying.
- The Working Capital facility will include a revolving 180-day, 6% fixed interest rate facility, while the Distressed Fund consists of a concessionary 6% fixed interest rate loan for applicants that are accessing the IDC's Distress Fund.

In October 2012, the third African Accreditation Cooperation (Afrac) general assembly and meeting was held in Johannesburg. The event was hosted by the South African National Accreditation System, an agency of the Department of Trade and Industry. Afrac is a cooperation of accreditation bodies, sub-regional accreditation cooperation and stakeholders whose objective is to facilitate trade and contribute to the protection of health, safety and the environment in Africa and thereby improve Africa's competitiveness.

### Trade

Itac has processed numerous applications for increases, rebates and reductions of duties, in line with IPAP priorities. The SABS has developed an early warning system to identify technical barriers to trade for exporters. Outcomes are distributed to exporters monthly.

### Automotives

In 2012, the South African automotive industry had a promising year with upward growth momentum. The automotive industry remained the largest and leading manufacturing sector in the domestic economy.

Government interaction with the industry had contributed to the opening of the Toyota Ses'fikile Taxi Assembly Line. The plant enables the semi-knockdown production of a 16-seater Quantum Ses'fikile – one seat more than the previously imported 15-seater minibus to be manufactured in South Africa.

The assembly line created 90 new jobs in the start-up phase and a further 210 new positions in upstream and downstream suppliers and service providers.

Locally manufactured Toyota models are exported to 57 countries, and the Ses'fikile and Hino ranges are exported to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland.

### Clothing and textiles

The Clothing Textile Competitive Programme and Production Incentive were implemented, benefitting 106 and 94 companies, respectively.

### Business process services

Investments of up to R40 million resulted in the creation of 950 jobs within nine months. Approval of R42 million for new investment commitments was linked to 806 jobs. A total of 3 400 recruits were trained under the Monyetla 2 Programme – 70% constitute guaranteed employment by a business process outsourcing consortium.

### Green industries

The revision of building standards that require higher levels of energy efficiency and manda-

In July 2012, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Ms Elizabeth Thabethe, led a delegation representing South African businesses to the Feira Internacional de Angola (FILDA) exhibition. FILDA is attended by exhibitors from sectors including oil, banking, services, trade, communications, automobile, machines and equipment, and agricultural and farming products, among others. The Deputy Minister also held bilateral meetings with her Angolian counterparts from the ministries of trade and commerce, mines and industry, and geology.

tory installation of solar water heaters in new buildings, was completed.

The SABS finalised enabling standards for solar water heaters; energy-efficient lighting, wind-energy turbines; appliances and products; electric batteries and alternative fuel vehicles; and co-generation of electricity and biofuels.

Significant progress in developing the renewable energy feed-in tariff rules was achieved.

The intra-departmental South African Renewables Initiative will leverage international climate finance to supplement domestic funding sources for renewable energy production linked to domestic manufacturing.

### Industrial development zones (IDZs)

In 2000, the Department of Trade and Industry initiated the IDZ Programme to support industrial development, with a special focus on export-oriented value-added products. A key requirement for designating an IDZ was proximity to either an ocean or airport. Four IDZs were designated at Port Elizabeth (Coega), East London, Richards Bay and OR Tambo International Airport. All are operational except the IDZ at OR Tambo International Airport.

The achievements of the IDZ Programme include a total of 40 investors attracted into the IDZs with more than R11,8 billion investments generated and more than 33 000 jobs (both construction and direct) created.

However, a review of the IDZ Programme was initiated, which identified some challenges that needed to be addressed to improve the performance of the IDZ Programme.

The proposed SEZs Bill will help to address these challenges, including socio-economic issues such as youth unemployment.

### Trade ports

In March 2012, South Africa officially launched a state-of-the-art, multibillion-rand cargo terminal, trade zone and agrizone – located between the two largest sea ports in the Southern Hemisphere – at the Dube Trade Port in La Mercy, KwaZulu-Natal.

The port, in which the King Shaka International Airport is located, has been operational for 22 months and the first phase was completed. This included a cargo terminal, trade zone, agrizone, information and communication technology (ICT) and a telecommunications platform. The construction phase alone generated close to 20 000 jobs.

The Dube Trade Port forms an important part of the government's new pipeline of major infrastructure development projects, one of which is the improvement of the movement of goods and economic integration through the Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor.

### Broadening participation

One of the key industrial policy goals is the promotion of a broader-based industrial path where there is more participation by historically disadvantaged economic citizens and marginalised regions in the mainstream of the industrial economy. To this end, the Economic Development Department promotes enterprise development, economic empowerment, the development of skills, the facilitation of economic infrastructure, and enhanced technology and innovation. This is done by:

- improving productivity
- reducing the regulatory burden and cost of doing business
- improving access to finance for SMMEs and co-operatives
- improving innovation in the domestic economy
- promoting the development and sustainability of SMMEs and co-operatives

- encouraging entrepreneurship and self-employment.

Business-development support programmes will be strengthened and regulatory impact assessment will be addressed to create a conducive environment for enterprise growth.

The department will work to increase and diversify economic opportunities for black people and for black- and female-owned enterprises, especially in priority industrial sectors.

It will undertake a review of the BBBEE legislation and regulations to enhance efficiency, and expand opportunities for broader participation in the economy. Special attention will be given to preferential procurement and black supplier development initiatives.

### Small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs)

The department launched Sefa in April 2012. The new agency consolidates Khula Finance, Samaf and the IDC Small Business Lending Book. Sefa will initially offer loans of up to R3 million.

By reducing the number of agencies, an estimated annual saving in excess of R20 million through cutting duplication of costs and services is expected.

The amalgamation was motivated to deliver a better service to small businesses; a one-stop shop for funding.

In March 2012, China's leading auto manufacturer, First Automobile Works (FAW), signed a contract with the Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) to mark the beginning of construction on the company's US$100-million truck and passenger car plant, to be built at the IDZ.

The plant will be one of the biggest manufacturing investments by China in the country to date. The plant's initial construction is set to cost R200 million and will be built on 400 000 m² of land. It is is expected to create an initial 500 permanent jobs. Once completed, the truck assembly facility is expected to create a further 500 to 800 jobs, with more jobs being created when the company starts producing an additional 30 000 passenger vehicles annually.

The China Development Bank and the IDC signed an agreement in April 2012 to access US$100 million for small business lending at favourable terms based on a 10-year tenure. This is about R800 million and will boost the IDC's capacity to support Sefa.

Sefa will have R2 billion available over the next three years for lending, through fiscal transfers, reserves and a R921 million shareholder loan from the IDC.

Incubators for SMMEs form an important component of measures to support new enterprises. The Department of Trade and Industry is in the process of establishing a total of 450 incub-ators through partnerships with the private sector. In addition, the Economic Development Department is working with the University of Johannesburg to establish a virtual incubator for social enterprises.

In March 2012, the Department of Trade and Industry was in the process of bolstering support to co-operatives by establishing a Co-Operative Development Agency and Co-Operatives Tribunal.

The Co-Operative Development Agency will ensure that financial and non-financial support is more readily available to co-operatives. The department was also establishing the Co-Operatives Tribunal that will assist co-operatives in addressing and resolving the conflicts within their organisations and will provide judicious management support.

Development challenges faced by co-operatives will also be addressed, with several support interventions designed by the department. The department will increase funds for the Co-Operative Incentive Scheme to ensure that larger numbers of co-operatives are able to gain access to necessary financial support to operate their businesses.

### International cooperation: trade, investment and exports

Increasing the level of international trade is critical to domestic economic growth and development, and it is also an output linked to the outcome to create decent employment through inclusive economic growth.

The Department of Trade and Industry provides leadership on trade policy, and released the Trade Policy and Strategy Framework in July 2010.

The framework aims to promote the development of higher value-added, labour-absorbing production. To complement this framework, the department has also developed strategies for export development and promotion, as well as investment promotion and facilitation.

Building on this framework, significant engagements took place within Sacu, resulting in a consensus being reached on a focused work programme in Sacu on industrialisation, infrastructure development, trade facilitation, revenue sharing and unified engagement in trade negotiations.

Complementary to the work undertaken within Sacu, the department continued to prioritise development and regional integration in Africa. Moreover, work was started to develop a common position on a tripartite free-trade area consisting of the SADC, the East African Community and the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa.

A single integrated facilitation centre has been created to deal with investors and exporters. The department has a network of 45 foreign economic offices abroad, which is spread over 38 countries to facilitate business on behalf of South African companies. The network provides a substantial footprint for South African business to access markets globally.

The department assists exporters by providing information, financial support and practical assistance to sustain growth in traditional markets and penetrate new high-growth markets, such as China, India, Russia and the Democratic Republic of Congo.

The focus is on investments that have a greater multiplier effect in the South African economy.

At multilateral level, South Africa continues to play a prominent and active role in the World Trade Organization, and supports the consolidation of the G20 group of developing countries, which seeks to ensure a developmental outcome in industrial tariff negotiations.

### Business process outsourcing and offshoring

Business process outsourcing and offshoring is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries with the required skills, cost advantages and infrastructure.

Under the Monyetla 2 Programme, 3 400 recruits were trained, of whom 70% have been guaranteed employment by the business process outsourcing consortium. Monyetla, which translated means “opportunities”, was launched in 2008 by the Business Trust, the Department of Trade and Industry and BPeSA – the national association for companies operating in the business process service and outsourcing market – as a pilot project to provide the unemployed youth of South Africa with employment through the business process outsourcing industry.

In June 2012, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Ms Elizabeth Thabethe, led a delegation of 75 South African businesspeople on an investment and trade initiative to Kinshasa and Lubumbashi in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). The initiative was part of the Department of Trade and Industry’s Export and Investment Promotion Strategy, which focuses on targeted high growth markets with the objective of creating investment and export opportunities for South African companies and of promoting South Africa as a trade and investment destination.

The business delegation comprised companies in the following sectors: automotive components, infrastructure, engineering, construction, energy, high-end furniture, agriculture and agro-processing, mining and capital equipment, as well as ICT seeking to export South African value-added products and services or to enter into joint venture partnerships with companies in the DRC.

## Department of Public Enterprises

The Department of Public Enterprises provides effective shareholder management of SOCs that report to the department, and support and

promote economic efficiency and competitiveness.

## Budget and funding

The department's budget increased from R353,3 million in 2011/12 to R1 249,1 billion in 2012/13 as a result of transfers to Denel and Alexkor. Of the total amount, R700 million was earmarked for the recapitalisation of Denel's Aerostructures Division, while R350 million was earmarked for Alexkor's outstanding settlement under the Richtersveld Community Deed of Settlement.

First quarter expenditure of the Department showed that the department spent R36,2 million and about 2,91% in terms of percentage. The bulk of the expenditure came from the administration programme, specifically on compensation of employees. Out of the R104,3 million allocated for the administration programme, the department spent R22,6 million, and about 21,69% in terms of percentage. This was followed by the legal and governance programme, which only spent R3,9 million, and 14,57% in terms of percentage. The last programme, portfolio management and strategic partnerships, only spent R9,7 million and about 0,87% in terms of percentage.

Transfers earmarked for both Denel and Alexkor were not made at the end of the first quarter. At the end of the first quarter, the department was left with R1,2 billion, having spent only 2,91% of its total budget. However, when taking into account transfer payments due to Denel and Alexkor, whose total was R1,050 billion, the remaining amount for the department was approximately R199 million. This amount gave roughly about 23% of the department's first quarter expenditure.

In July 2012, the Minister of Trade and Industry, Dr Rob Davies, attended the fifth Ministerial Conference of the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation in Beijing, China. The conference, which takes place every three years, reviewed the implementation of follow-up activities from the fourth Ministerial Conference of the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation, which was held in Egypt in 2009.

The focus of South Africa's participation in the forum was on promoting South African exports and investment in key sectors including capital equipment, chemicals, metals and mining, financial services, agro-processing, energy, information and communication technology, health and pharmaceuticals.

## Role players

### State-owned enterprises (SOEs)

SOEs have a crucial role to play in advancing economic growth, since they are responsible for the development of key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity for South Africa.

The SOEs that fall under the jurisdiction of the Department of Public Enterprises are active in the following sectors:

- energy and mining: Alexkor and Eskom
- manufacturing: Denel, Safcol and Broadband Infraco
- transport: South African Airways (SAA), Transnet and South African Express Airways (SAX).

### Alexkor

Alexkor was established in 1989, when State Alluvial Diggings was taken over from government and transformed into the Alexander Bay Development Corporation. Since November 1992, Alexkor Limited has been run as a public company, with the state as sole shareholder.

Its core business is the mining of diamonds on land, along rivers, on beaches and in the sea along the north-west coast of South Africa. These activities are complemented by geology, exploration, ore-reserve planning, rehabilitation and environmental management.

The non-core business activities comprise residential services, community services, outside engineering services, external transport services, guest houses, fuel station and an airport. The management of considerable investment funds, together with the traditional supporting services, such as information systems and human resources, constitute additional non-core business activities.

In September 2012, the South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa), the Department of Labour and the KwaZulu-Natal Department of Economic Development and Tourism hosted the South Africa Maritime Industry Careers Expo and Jobs Summit in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal. The summit was in support of government's New Growth Path goal to create five million jobs over the next 10 years and reduce unemployment by 10%. The expo formed part of Samsa's drive to revive the maritime industry and create 160 000 jobs within the next 20 years.

In 2012, Alexkor funded social and community programmes worth R3,4 million, including the transportation of employees, meals, cleaning services, community welfare contributions, HIV and AIDS, and educational assistance to schools in the Richtersveld and Namaqualand areas in the Northern Cape.

### South African Forestry Company (Safcol)

Safcol is government's forestry company, conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities both domestically and internationally. It provides almost 2 200 permanent jobs and 2 000 contractual jobs in rural areas in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal.

As almost 61% of land under Safcol's operation is subject to land claims, the department plays a proactive role in facilitating the resolution of these claims through effective interdepartmental cooperation.

The key focus area for the Safcol Group in 2012 was on restoring the group's profitability. Despite difficult trading conditions and operating environment, its performance in 2012 improved from a loss-making to a profit position. The improved performance was mainly owing to the new initiatives introduced during the year to enhance sales performance, cost-saving initiatives, increases in dividend income and the introduction of revenue-generating initiatives.

In 2012, Safcol funded social and community programmes worth over R8,1 million. This went to various projects in its socio-economic development division, which focuses on the socio-economic development of communities adjacent to its operations.

Contributions are channelled through community forums, which help to identify needs based on the availability of resources.

Safcol projects implemented in 2011/12 included the construction of educational facilities and provision of support, skills development and training, setting up a computer information centre, assistance with healthcare facilities, establishment of gardening for a food production facility and providing boreholes.

### Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco is a state-owned company that operates within specific focus areas of the country's telecommunications sector. It is intended to improve market efficiency in the long-distance connectivity segment by increasing available long-distance network infrastructure.

Broadband Infraco provides long-distance national and international connectivity to licensed private sector partners, licence-exempt projects of national importance and to previously underserviced areas.

Broadband Infraco also provides strategic international connectivity to operators in the SADC region and on the west coast of Africa.

The network established 13 600 km of long-distance fibre, as well as five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas. A further seven open-access points to roll out broadband access in remote rural areas and to facilities such as hospitals, clinics and schools were also established.

Wholesale long-distance connectivity prices have come down by more than 75% over the past two years, partly as a consequence of the establishment of Broadband Infraco, thus further unlocking economic value by reducing the cost of connectivity.

In May 2012, the West Africa Cable System (WACS) international connectivity became operational. This increased bandwith capacity, providing for improved integration of the 10 African countries that are customers of

WACS, and enabling the further reduction of the cost to communicate.

In August 2012, the company reported a 32% rise in revenue for 2011/12, up from R297,6 million in the previous year to R393,6 million.

### Denel

Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992, with its sole shareholder the South African Government.

It is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment.

Denel is an important defence contractor in its domestic market and a key supplier to the South African National Defence Force (SANDF), both as original equipment manufacturer and for the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of equipment in the SANDF's arsenal.

Denel supplies systems and consumables to end users, as well as sub-systems and components to its industrial client base. It also has a number of equity partnerships, joint ventures and cooperation agreements with international players in the defence industry.

During 2011/12, Denel secured over R5 billion's worth of orders, which will be delivered over the next five years.

In 2012, Denel funded social and community programmes worth over R3 million to various projects including mathematics and science support, payment of studies and accommodation, educational tours and community home maintenance.

### Eskom

Eskom was established in 1923 as the Electricity Supply Commission. In July 2002, it was converted to a public, limited liability company, wholly owned by government.

Eskom is one of the top 20 utilities in the world by generation capacity (nett maximum self-generated capacity: 41 194 MW). It generates approximately 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and approximately 45% of the electricity used in Africa. Eskom directly provides electricity to about 45% of all end users in South Africa. The other 55% is resold by redistributors, including municipalities.

Additional power stations and major power lines are being built to meet rising electricity demand in South Africa.

By December 2011, the Eskom Kusile Project had already employed 6 718 people and by 2019 the number would have increased to 22 150. Eskom has committed to training 2 017 employees and already 798 have completed their training, for 341 training is still in progress and it has planned for 1 465 as the new intake for training in various fields such as artisans, engineers and technicians.

In 2012, Eskom topped the list for contributions to social initiatives, contributing R87,9 million to various projects such as business incubators, an energy and environmental programme, enterprise development initiatives and projects in infrastructure development and education support.

The electricity utility's social investment initiatives are executed by way of grants and donations, through the Eskom Development Foundation.

### South African Airways (SAA)

SAA is South Africa's national airline and operates from OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Gauteng. Its principal activities include providing scheduled air services for the transportation of passengers, freight and mail to international, regional and domestic destinations.

In fulfilling its mission to be an African airline with global reach, it operates to 25 destinations across the continent and provides a competitive, quality air transport service within South Africa and to major cities worldwide. Five new routes were launched in 2012: from Johannesburg to Pointe Noire in the Republic of Congo, Bujumbura in Burundi, Kigali in Rwanda, Ndola in Zambia and Cotonou in Benin. A new route was also launched to Beijing in China.

Owing to continued pressure on international routes, SAA halted its direct services between Cape Town and London on 15 August 2012.

In January 2013, President Jacob Zuma travelled to Davos in Switzerland. He used the World Economic Forum as a platform to call for the world's top economies and business to invest in South Africa's and Africa's infrastructural projects for the long-term economic growth of the continent. The President also used the forum to promote the country's National Development Plan – a vision of the nation South Africa strives to be by 2030.

As part of its fleet modernisation plan, SAA took delivery of eight new Airbus aircraft – six A330s and two A320s – in 2012 all under operating lease agreements. The airline also signed an agreement with Airbus for the delivery of 20 A320 aircraft, with deliveries scheduled to start during the course of 2013 through to 2017.

In support of the country's NGP, SAA set a target of creating 529 direct jobs. The group achieved 82% of its target and met, if not exceeded, targets related to the development of appropriate industry-specific skills that will support its job creation goals in the longer term.

In 2012, SAA funded social and community programmes worth R149 802 to a number of projects, including the Joint Aviation Awareness Programme with flights for young mathematics and science learners to visit the airline's technical facilities.

### South African Express (SAX)

SAX is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier established in April 1994. It has since become one of the fastest-growing regional airlines in Africa. With route networks covering major local and regional cities, SAX plays a significant role in the country's hospitality, travel and tourism industry and is a vital contributor to the country's socio-economic development.

SAX has a route network covering four African countries and acts as a strategic feeder, connecting secondary airports with each other and also with large hub airports.

In 2012, the airline launched three new domestic routes and established a base at King Shaka International Airport in KwaZulu-Natal, from which the airline will play a crucial role in continental trade and economic integration, while also supporting the Dube Trade Port IDZ.

SAX also funded social and community programmes worth R707 000 to various projects including Rhino Kids Experience, the Popcorn Kidz Foundation, XL Aloe Travel, Mandela Day and Masimanye Women's Support Centre.

### Transnet

Transnet is a public company wholly owned by government. It is the largest and most crucial part of the freight logistics chain that delivers goods to each South African. Transnet delivers thousands of tons of goods daily around South Africa, through its pipelines and to and from its ports. It moves that cargo on to ships for export while it unloads goods from overseas.

Transnet's total contribution to employment is expected to be increased by 54,8% – from 368 450 in 2011/12 to over 570 000 by 2018/19.

The additional jobs would be created as Transnet embarks on a R300 million market demand strategy over the next seven years, to roll out new infrastructure across the country.

As part of its seven-year investment plan, a locomotive fleet procurement worth about R35 billion for 1 064 locomotives will be rolled out in the next quarter to meet and maintain its volume targets.

It will be made up of 599 new dual-voltage electric locomotives and 465 new diesel locomotives; and lay a platform for a seven-year strategic partnership between Transnet and its suppliers in the locomotive cluster. In 2012, Transnet committed social and community programmes worth over R28,4 million.

In all, Transnet made 29 contributions – ranging between 37 000 to R10 million – to schools, communities groups and other organisations to help fund various sport, educational and container assistance projects.

## Department of Public Works

The department's mandate is to be the custodian and manager of all governments' fixed assets for which other legislation does not make another department or institution responsible.

This includes the determination of accommodation requirements, rendering expert built environment services to client departments, and the acquisition, maintenance and disposal of such assets.

## Legislation and policies

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act 108 of 1996), the President allocated a functional mandate to the Department of Public Works.

The mandate of the department is also confirmed through the annual Appropriation Act. The State Land Disposal Act, 1961 (Act 48 of 1961), furthermore mandates the Minister of Public Works to carry out certain functions.

In terms of the Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), the Department of Public Works is responsible to prepare health and safety specifications for any intended construction project and provide contractors who are making a bid or appointed to perform construction work with the specifications.

The OHS legislative framework consists of the OHS Act, 1993 and 20 sets of regulations. Compliance is achieved by conducting inspections and investigations, and providing advocacy and statutory services. Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments:

- The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS in terms of the OHS Act, 1993.
- The Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996).
- The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mine workers in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

## Role players

### Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB)

The CIDB reports to the Minister of Public Works and comprises individuals appointed from the private and public sector. The CIDB:

- provides leadership to stakeholders
- stimulates sustainable growth
- reforms and encourages improvements in the construction sector
- improves its role in the economy.

### Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils – architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying – to promote good conduct within the professions, transforming them and advise government on built environment-related issues.

The CBE is also an appeal body to ensure protection of the public interest. As such, the CBE and the six councils for the professions maintain and apply standards for built environment professionals conduct and practice to effectively protect the interests of the public.

## Programmes and projects

### Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is one of government's key programmes aimed at providing poverty and income relief through temporary work for the unemployed.

Launched in April 2004, the programme aims to create 4,5 million work opportunities for poor and unemployed people by 2014. By the end of 2011/12, more than two million work opportunities had already been created.

The programme created 540 423 work opportunities and 137 525 permanent jobs in 2011/12. Of these, 66 355 were under the Community Works Programme. The agricultural sector, including the Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme, contributed 7 092

jobs, of which 1 105 were permanent. The use of local labour in housing and infrastructure development contributed significantly to job creation and skills development.

The programme easily reached its target for women and youth participating in the programme, with 60% of the participants being women and 50% being youth, compared to the targets of 55% women and 40% youth. The target for people with disabilities was not met.

**Facts and figures: Economic development in 2011/12:**

- 365 000 new jobs
- five major new state infrastructure projects
- R300 billion for the country's ports and railways
- eight million learners at no-fee schools
- 11 000 new artisans qualified
- unemployment rate of 23,9% in the fourth quarter
- 2 500 applications received since the launch of the government's Jobs Fund in June 2011; project allocations of over R1 billion have already been committed
- seven projects together worth R8,4 billion approved under the R20-billion tax incentive scheme announced in 2011 aimed at supporting new industrial projects and manufacturing
- R1,5 billion approved for 60 companies to promote job creation under a R10-billion cheap loan scheme introduced in 2011 by the Industrial Development Corporation
- R1 billion was to be cut from the port charges paid by exporters of manufactured goods in 2011/12, following an agreement between the Port Regulator and Transnet
- R300 million allocated for preparatory work towards building new universities in Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape
- R1-billion state guarantee fund to promote access to housing loans for South Africans with lower incomes, to start operations in April, managed by the National Housing Finance Corporation
- from April 2012, people earning between R3 500 and R15 000 was able to receive subsidies of up to R83 000 from their provincial governments, to enable them to obtain housing finance from accredited banks.

Furthermore, to date 277 out of 278 municipalities have signed protocol agreements, committing them to achieve their EPWP targets.

The incentive grant model was revised to give rural municipalities easier access to grants to increase labour-intensive work opportunities through the EPWP projects. The revised model has been implemented since 2012/13.

### Green Buildings Framework

The deliberations of the Conference of Parties (better known as COP17) in December 2011 added emphasis to the department's Green Buildings Framework and responsiveness to South Africa's newly unveiled *White Paper on Climate Change*.

Efforts to step up the greening of government buildings are underway as part of South Africa's mitigation strategies on the effects of global warming. In these efforts, the department will realise the green jobs outlined in government's NGP through concerted collaboration with a range of stakeholders such as organised business, the public entities of the department and local communities using the principles of the EPWP.

### Capital projects

Some 250 projects are scheduled for completion during the course of 2012/13. Eleven buildings were rehabilitated during 2011 and a further were 10 earmarked for completion in 2012.

As part of the Accessibility Programme, 51 state buildings were made more accessible for people with disabilities during 2011, with a further 100 buildings prioritised for 2012.

Over the last five years, the department has created 200 000 direct and indirect jobs. The department is also resuscitating departmental workshops to develop in-house maintenance capacity and provide training opportunities. This will include the training of professionals, technicians and artisans.

## Department of Labour

The mandate of the Department of Labour is to regulate the labour market through policies

and programmes developed in consultation with social partners, which are aimed at:

- improving economic efficiency and productivity
- creating decent employment
- promoting labour standards and fundamental rights at work
- providing adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers
- sound labour relations
- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace
- enhancing occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace
- giving value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for competitiveness of enterprises that is balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

## Legislation and policy

The department administers the following legislation:

- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), applies to all workers and employers and aims to advance economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democracy of the workplace.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), applies to all employers and workers and protects workers and job seekers from unfair discrimination, and also provides a framework for implementing affirmative action.
- The Unemployment Insurance Act, 1996 (Act 30 of 1996), provides security to workers when they become unemployed.
- The Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), provides and regulates health and safety at the workplace for all workers.
- Nedlac Act, 1994 (Act 35 of 1994).
- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998 as amended), develops and improves the skills of the South African workforce.

### Labour Policy and Industrial Relations

The Labour Policy and Industrial Relations Branch supervises policy research, labour market information and statistical services. This includes regulation of labour and employer organisations and bargaining councils, dealing with all the department's responsibilities and obligations in relation to the International Labour

Organisation and other international and regional bodies with which the South African Government has formal relations, as well as the effective functioning of the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) and Nedlac.

The CCMA is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996 in terms of the Labour Relations Act, 1995. It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

The CCMA was established to provide South Africans with an accessible, user-friendly and affordable labour dispute resolution system. Workers who have allegedly been unfairly dismissed or the victims of various unfair labour practices are able to approach the CCMA alone or with certain categories of recognised representatives to seek redress for workplace wrongs.

## Role players

### Unemployment Insurance Fund

The main tasks of the UIF are to:

- maintain an employer/employee database
- process claims and pay benefits
- invest excess funds
- reduce opportunities for fraud
- collect contributions.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003), deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits. It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries. The South African Revenue Service (Sars) continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

Sars collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

In support of the efforts to stimulate economic growth, fund industrial development and create job opportunities, the Department of Labour, through the UIF, invested an additional R2 billion with the IDC in 2012, bringing the total investment to R4 billion. This investment has created 24 590 new jobs and contributed to saving 18 552 jobs.

The UIF/IDC bond provides capital for funding start-up industries and growing existing industries. The conditions for accessing the funds stipulate that a qualifying company must contribute to creating employment opportunities. The total number of jobs saved and created through the UIF/IDC bond stands at 43 142.

UIF reserves have grown to R70 billion at the end of September 2012 of which 5% have been set aside for investment in social responsible investments where the focus is on job creation. The UIF collaborated with the IDC through bond placements resulting in the creation and saving of 36 078 jobs.

### Compensation Fund (CF)

The department administers the CF, which compensates workers who are victims of occupational disability, occupational disease and fatal work incidents.

In 2012, the CF undertook a major decentralisation drive in an effort to improve the fund's operational efficiency. Under the initiative, the services of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), will be extended and rendered at provincial level, rather than be solely provided at the CF's head office – a move intended to improve the turnaround time in processing claims.

Before the decentralisation, the turnover time for registering and adjudication was about 90 days. This has now been reduced to 60 days.

Another element in the decentralisation process has been the move away from manual processing to the introduction of an electronic system since October 2011.

The construction sector contributes 16% towards South Africa's GDP, employing just under 1,8 million workers.

By 31 October 2012, 33 000 employers had registered, raising R1,3 billion in assessment revenue, of which R850 million has already been collected. The CF allocated 5% of its total investment, amounting to R1,6 billion, to alleviate unemployment through socially responsible investments in the healthcare industry. This will contribute to job creation and infrastructure development.

### National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac)

Nedlac's mandate is to make economic decision-making more inclusive, and thereby promote the goals of economic growth and social equity. Nedlac's purpose is to facilitate more inclusive economic decision-making, to promote the goals of economic growth and social equity through discussions with organised business, organised labour and organised community groupings on a national level.

The Department of Labour is the main government department from which Nedlac is funded, but the departments of trade and industry, finance and public works are also centrally involved in the council. Other departments attend when there are issues relating to their portfolios.

Organised business is represented by Business Unity South Africa, which brings together the Black Business Council and Business South Africa.

Organised labour is represented by the three main labour federations in South Africa: the Congress of South African Trade Unions (Cosatu), the Federation of Unions of South Africa (Fedusa) and the National Council of Trade Unions (Nactu).

In August 2012, Cabinet ministers attended Nedlac sessions to expedite the debate around the implementation of a youth-wage subsidy.

In October 2012, Cabinet approved the key elements of the youth-wage subsidy package agreed upon with the Nedlac constituencies to respond to the economic challenges facing the country.

## Programmes and projects

The Department of Labour has an infrastructure network of 421 service points across the country. These include 126 labour centres, 31 satellite offices, 19 mobile offices, 153 visiting points, and also services provided at Thusong service centres.

### Labour Market Intelligence System

In September 2012, a research project to develop a Labour Market Intelligence System was launched. The system, which is aimed at enabling government and the private sector to make better decisions in matching skills demand to supply in the country, is led by the Human Sciences Research Council.

The project is complementary to the establishment of the Higher Education and Training Management Information System, and the department's Career Advice Information System; both funded by the National Skills Fund.

The research on the Labour Market Intelligence Partnership includes six themes:

- labour market analysis, framework, data and information systems
- skills forecasting: the supply and demand model
- selected sectoral analyses
- reconfiguring the post-school sector
- pathways through education and training and into the labour market
- understanding changing artisan and occupational identities and milieus.

### Job fairs

The job fairs initiative is part of the department's Public Employment Services' contribution to government service-delivery outcomes. It is a first step towards building a working relationship with social partners and providing a link between work seekers and potential job opportunities.

Job fairs provide free services to create an opportunity for work seekers to meet with prospective employers and other organisations or departments that can assist with their placement in different forms of employment or learning opportunities.

Various organisations present career and other placement opportunities to work seekers, as well as employment counselling, job search tools and assessments.

The fairs are targeted at unemployed youth who dropped out of school, unemployed youth with school exit certificates, unemployed graduates, workers who are under-employed and retrenched workers.

The inaugural event, held in June 2012 in the Eastern Cape, as well as subsequent fairs held other in provinces during the course of 2012, attracted thousands of job seekers

The fairs are held in conjunction with national and provincial sister departments including the departments of economic development, transport and rural development; as well as a number of state-owned and private companies including Transnet, Eskom, the South African Safety and Maritime Authority of South Africa, the DBSA and multilateral organisations like the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank and the International Labour Organisation.

The target of registering at least 600 000 job-seekers by March 2013 on its electronic database, called the Employment System South Africa, was exceeded when more than a million job-seekers had registered by the end of 2012.

## Conclusion

As the global economy recovers, South Africa expects to see growth improve over the next several years. Real GDP growth of 3% is forecast for 2013, rising to 4,1% in 2015. Factors that will contribute to an improved medium-term performance include expanded public-sector infrastructure investment, new electricity-generation capacity and strong regional growth.

Funds are available in the corporate sector to finance stronger investment, once confidence and growth prospects recover.

The macro-economic and fiscal stability achieved since 1994 is a strong foundation on which to build, but there will have to be a clear focus on intensified implementation of the plans and programmes signalled in the NGP and associated sector development strategies.

According to figures from National Treasury, total government spending will reach R1,1 trillion in 2013. This represents a doubling in expenditure since 2002/03 in real terms.

To ensure that there is a similar improvement in service-delivery outcomes, government is putting in place measures to strengthen the efficiency of public spending and to root out corruption.

The outlook for the South African economy in 2013 includes the following:

- expected growth of about 2,5% down from just over 3% in 2011
- gross fixed-capital formation is expected to increase by about 5%, mainly driven by public sector capital spending
- consumer price inflation for September 2012 was 5,5% and headline inflation is expected to stay within the 3% to 6% inflation target band over the forecast period
- export volumes contracted at an annual rate of 6% in the second quarter of 2012, after falling by 1,5% in the first quarter
- import volumes are almost 4% above pre-crisis highs, while exports are still well below their peak, contributing to the widening current account deficit.

The departments of trade and industry, economic development, public enterprises, public works and labour strive to facilitate economic development through promoting outward investment, intra-Africa trade, regional industrialisation and infrastructure development within the SADC region and the rest of Africa.

African development is a key means to achieve the National Growth Path goal of widening and deepening South Africa's markets.

## Acknowledgements

*Business Day*
*Business Map*
Business Partners Limited
*Business Report*
Department of Trade and Industry
*Development Indicators, 2011*
*Estimates of National Expenditure, 2012,* published by National Treasury
*Industrial Policy Action Plan 2011/12 – 2013/14*
*Fifteen-Year Review*, published by The Presidency
Medium Term Strategic Framework
Office for Public Enterprises
*Pretoria News*
*Quarterly Bulletin, September 2012*, published by the South African Reserve Bank
Sapa
SA Government News Agency
South African Reserve Bank
Statistics South Africa
*Sunday Times*
*Sowetan Online*
*Towards a Ten-Year Review*

*www.cbe.org.za*
*www.dpe.gov.za*
*www.dti.gov.za*
*www.godisa.net*
*www.gov.za*
*www.idc.co.za*
*www.itac.org.za*
*www.khula.org.za*
*www.labourguide.co.za*
*www.labour.gov.za*
*www.mediaclub.co.za*
*www.news.gov.za*
*www.pmg.org.za*
*www.polity.org.za*
*www.sacu.int*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.twib.co.za*
*www.engineeringnews.co.za*
*http://allafrica.com*
*http://retail.bizcommunity.com*

## Suggested reading

Collins, T & Ghyoot, V. 2012. *An Introduction to Commercial Property Finance, Development and Investment.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Hunter, C. 2012. *Managing People in South Africa: Human Resource Management as Competitive Advantage.* Second edition. Durban: Sherwood Books.

Ismael, T, Kleyn, N & Ansell, G. 2012. *New Markets, New Mindsets: Creating Wealth with South Africa's Low-Income Communities through Partnership and Innovation*. Auckland Park: Stonebridge Books.

Kuzwayo, M. 2012. *Black Man's Medicine*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Lee, J. 2012. *Making Money out of Property in South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.

Makura, M. 2012. *Going Global: Insights from South Africa's Top Companies*. Johannesburg: MME Media.

*The South African Business Forecast Report: Includes 10-Year Forecasts to end-2018*. London: Business Monitor.

*South African Employment Relations: Theory and Practice*. 2012. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Strydom, JW & Nieuwenhuizen, C. 2012. *Entrepreneurship and How to Establish Your Own Business*. Fourth edition. Cape Town: Juta.

Swanepoel, B. 2012. *Introducing Labour Relations Management in South Africa: Adding Value to Africa*. Durban: LexisNexis.

*Unlocking Markets to Smallholders: Lessons from South Africa*. 2012. Wageningen, Ndl: Wageningen Academic Publishers.

Van Wyk, C & Wiggens, HO. 2012. *The BEE Scorecard Manual*. Cape Town: Juta.

SITAVAYA

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Education

South Africa's Bill of Rights stipulates that every citizen has the right to basic education, including adult basic education and further education.

There is also increasing recognition that education and skills development has a key role to play in South Africa's future prosperity. Government, therefore, places education and skills development at the centre of its policies and has consciously elevated education as one of its top priorities. In the 2012/13 financial year, education constituted more than 21% of government's total allocated expenditure.

The responsibility for education is shared by two ministries, namely the Department of Basic Education and the Department of Higher Education and Training, formed when the former National Department of Education was split into two separate departments.

The Department of Basic Education deals with all schools from Grade R to Grade 12, and adult literacy programmes, while the Department of Higher Education and Training deals with universities, and other post-school education and training, as well as coordinating the Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa (HRDSSA).

The future of basic education is informed by the Action Plan to 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025.

Medium- to long-term interventions focus on:

- improving the quality of teaching and learning with an emphasis on strengthening numeracy and literacy
- undertaking regular assessments to track progress
- improving early childhood development (ECD)
- ensuring a credible outcomes-focused planning and accountability system.

As part of government's Infrastructure Plan, 90 new schools were built during 2012 to replace inappropriate structures. Government is addressing the insufficient number of engineers, which could threaten the speedy implementation of some of the projects, by exploring several strategies including entering into deals with universities and Further Education and Training colleges to ensure an increased supply of engineers.

Open Educational Resources is a system that uses digital materials for teaching, learning and research, and makes them freely available on the internet. In August 2012, Cape Town video marketing company Blink Tower saw off competition from more than 60 global entrants and walked away with top honours at the Why Open Education Matters video competition, an international competition for documenting the importance of the system for teachers and pupils.

Despite some challenges in 2012, there were also many highlights:

- The national pass rate for the matric class of 2012 was 73,9%. This was an increase of 3,7% from 2011 (70,2%) and an increase of 13,3% from 2009 (60,6%).
- In 2012, the *National Curriculum Framework* for children from birth to four years of age, as well as the *Guidelines for Developing Learning Programmes,* were finalised. There are now 19 261 registered ECD centres with about 845 000 children receiving ECD and partial care services.
- 767 865 learners were enrolled in Grade R and 900 000 Grade R workbooks were provided by the Department of Basic Education.
- The Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign for adults reached 2 243 766 adults between 2008 and 2011, with 665 246 adults in enrolled in classes in 2012.
- More than 11 million learners and 24 000 schools benefitted from workbooks and textbooks provided at the beginning of the 2012 academic year. The Department of Basic Education has been monitoring the delivery of educational material to schools since September 2012 to ensure a smoother 2013 school year.
- The Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP) made comprehensive in-school health services available to 290 602 learners by September 2012, exceeding its target of 250 000 learners for the year.
- Regarding higher education, Census 2011 results indicate that there was an encouraging increase in the percentage of students who completed higher education; from 7,1% in 1996 to 11,8% in 2011.
- Funding support for Further Education and Training (FET) received a boost through bursaries. R200 million was provided to enable the NSFAS to grant loans to students who completed their studies but did not received their certificates or graduated owing to outstanding debt.
- A further R50 million was provided for postgraduate students who required financial assistance to complete their honours, master's and doctoral degrees.
- In 2011, 10 370 newly qualified teachers graduated from public universities. This represents an increase of 74,5% since 2008. By 2014, over 14 000 new teachers are expected to be trained and qualified.

## Basic education

The Department of Basic Education has a crucial leadership, policy-making and monitoring responsibility in improving the quality of learning and ensuring quality sustained education across the education sector.

The department strives to develop, maintain and support a South African school education system which is in line with the educational demands of the 21st century. It is also mandated with providing leadership regarding provinces, districts and schools in the establishment of an effective South African education system.

Among the closely monitored performance areas are learners' Mathematics and Physical Science pass rates and the number of Grade 12 learners qualifying for university entry. Government aims to increase the number of Grade 12 learners who qualify to enrol for a Bachelor's Degree to 175 000 by 2014.

One way of achieving this is through the annual national assessment (ANA) tests that is standardised and internationally benchmarked. Analysis of the results of such assessments will inform the department's plans to improve the quality of learning and teaching.

The tests are aimed at measuring learners' improvement in specific grades and subjects.

Through ANA, all public schools, as well as independent schools subsidised by government, conduct the same grade-specific language and mathematics tests.

Language tests cover learners' home language and their first additional language, and teachers mark the ANA tests using the departmental guidelines. The tests are moderated by officials of the various provincial education departments to ensure that similar standards are upheld across all schools.

In September 2012, seven million learners in grades 1 to 6 and 9 successfully completed ANA tests. The results of the 2012 ANAs showed that numeracy and literacy performance of South African learners in the lower grades had improved.

The results showed that in Grade 3, the national average performance in literacy stands at 53%, compared to the 35% in 2011 – an improvement of 17% from 2011.

An allocation of R75 million to strengthen the existing programme and expand assessments to include Grade 9 were secured for 2013/14.

The programme was to be integrated and aligned with the Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (Caps).

## Legislation and policies

Since 1994, a number of policies have been implemented and legislation promulgated to create a framework for transformation in education and training. Some key policies and legislation are:

- The fundamental policy framework of the Ministry of Basic Education is stated in the Ministry's first *White Paper on Education and Training in a Democratic South Africa: First Steps to Develop a New System,* published in February 1995.
- The National Education Policy Act (Nepa), 1996 (Act 27 of 1996), brought into law the policies, and legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Education, as well as the formal relations between national and provincial authorities. It laid the foundation for the establishment of the Council of Education Ministers, as well as the Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom), as intergovernmental forums that would collaborate in the development of a new education system. Nepa, 1996 therefore provided for the formulation of national policy in general, and FET policies for curriculum, assessment, language and quality assurance.
- The South African Schools Act (Sasa), 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), is aimed at ensuring that all learners have right of access to quality education without discrimination, and makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15. It provides for two types of schools, namely independent and public schools. The provision in the Act for democratic school governance, through school governing bodies, has been effected in public schools countrywide. The school-funding norms, outlined in Sasa, 1996, prioritise redress and target poverty regarding the allocation of funds for the public schooling system.
- The Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) Act, 2000 (Act 52 of 2000) regulates adult basic education and training; provides for the establishment, governance and funding of public adult learning centres; provides for the registration of private adult learning centres; and provides for quality assurance and quality promotion in adult basic education and training.

In July 2012, a South African publishing company launched a new digital manual that is transforming the classroom, inspiring a love for learning and improving academic performance by making education fun and interactive. Maramedia Publishing's interactive educational tools are a first for South Africa and are changing the way children experience education.

The manuals, which comply with the Department of Basic Education's curriculum policy statement, are a combination of textbooks, study guides and workbooks to supplement learning in the classroom. In keeping with modern technological trends, the manuals are colourful, fully interactive digital manuals for tablet devices.

READ Educational Trust's 2012 Readathon, from August to October 2012, was launched with a supporting statement of "The more you read, the more you know". The annual Readathon is a literacy awareness campaign that focuses on various activities to encourage an appreciation of reading. Central to the 2012 campaign was a handbook for teachers providing literacy activities and a selection of stories, quotations, slogans, competitions and posters. Some 4 000 handbooks were distributed to schools nationally; these can also be downloaded from the READ website in three booklet formats.

- Sasa, 1996 was amended by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 24 of 2005), which authorises the declaration of schools in poverty-stricken areas as "no-fee schools", and by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 31 of 2007), which provides for the functions and responsibilities of school principals.
- The Employment of Educators Act, 1998 (Act 76 of 1998), regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, as well as teachers' competency requirements. The Act and the South African Council for Educators (SACE), regulate the teaching corps.
- The design of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) was refined with the publication of the Higher Education Qualifications Framework in the *Government Gazette* in October 2007 to provide 10 NQF levels.
- The National Curriculum Statement grades R to 12, a policy statement for learning and teaching in schools, replaced the policy document, *A Résumé of Industrial Programmes in Schools, Report 550 (89/03).*
- The *Education White Paper on ECD (2000)* provides for the expansion and full participation of five-year-olds in preschool Grade R education by 2010, and an improvement in the quality of programmes, curricula and teacher development for birth to four-year-olds and six- to nine-year-olds.
- The *Education White Paper 6 on Inclusive Education (2001)* describes the Department of Education's intention to implement inclusive education at all levels in the system by 2020. The system will facilitate the inclusion of vulnerable learners and reduce the barriers to learning through targeted support structures and mechanisms that will improve the retention of learners in the education system, particularly learners who are prone to dropping out.
- The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 50 of 2002), set the age of admission to Grade 1 as the year in which the child turns seven. However, the school-going age of Grade 1 was changed to age five if children turned six on or before 30 June in their Grade 1 year.

## Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025

The Department of Basic Education finalised a comprehensive turnaround plan for improving the quality of learning and teaching in schools called Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025.

The purpose of the action plan is to improve all aspects of education such as teacher recruitment, learner enrolment, school funding, mass literacy and numeracy and overall quality of education through specific measurable targets.

The adoption in 2010 of an outcomes-based approach in implementing government's priorities ensures that the work of government is measured according to outcomes. The performance outcomes are politically determined positions of government to achieve greater and more focused development. The outcomes approach enables the Department of Basic Education to set measurable targets and deliverables for monitoring progress in addressing challenges in education.

The action plan sets out 13 goals to be achieved, related to learning and enrolment. In addition, it sets out 14 areas in education that need to be improved to reach these goals.

Making sure that every young South African receives quality schooling is an urgent need. Schooling 2025 provides a clear vision of how

to achieve this towards 2025. It is a long-term plan for the basic education sector that will allow for the monitoring of progress against a set of measurable indicators covering all aspects of basic education including, among others, enrolments and retention of learners, teachers, infrastructure, school funding, learner well-being and school safety, mass literacy and educational quality.

### Curriculum and Policy Statement (Caps)

The curriculum focus in 2012 was on the implementation of Caps for grades 1 to 3 and 10. Caps is a single, comprehensive and concise policy document that replaced subject and learning area statements, learning programme guidelines and subject assessment guidelines for all subjects listed in the National Curriculum Statement Grades R to 12.

Caps was to be implemented in a phased approach over a three-year period. Following the 2012 implementation in grades 1 to 3 and 10, it was implemented in grades 4 to 6 and 11 in 2013. Implementation will be completed in 2014, with grades 7 to 9 and 12.

With the introduction of Caps, every subject in each grade will have a single, comprehensive and concise policy document that will provide details on what teachers need to teach and assess on a grade-by-grade and subject-by-subject basis.

This curriculum review is aimed at reducing the administrative load on teachers and ensuring that there is clear guidance and consistency for teaching.

The department trained hundreds of teachers and provincial and district subject advisers from all nine provinces on how to implement Caps in schools.

The *Sunday Times*, through its Storybook Campaign, has published and printed more than two million books for children, written and illustrated by South Africans. These are distributed freely to schools nationwide as part of the campaign to promote literacy. The books contain five stories and is available in all 11 official languages.

More than 1 000 Intermediate Phase subject advisers were orientated and provided with training manuals and resource packs to be used for training teachers. Training is ongoing for the 2013 and 2014 implementations.

## Budget and funding

The overall budget for 2012/13 for the Department of Basic Education increased from R13,868 billion in 2011/12 to R16,344 billion – an increase of R2,475 billion.

Umalusi was allocated R22 million for 2012/13, which will reach R83 million in 2014/15 to cover its expanded mandate.

On earmarked amounts, allocations for 2012/13 included R520,9 million for the Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign.

More than R51 million was allocated to the Extended Public Works Programme's (EPWP) Kha Ri Gude programmes in 2012/13, to contribute to job-creation, by recruiting and training volunteers.

The threshold target allocation for no-fee schools for operational expenditure increased to R880 per learner. The national per learner target amount for Quintile 1 schools was R960.

Total expenditure for school allocation on no-fee schools at the national target level was projected to be in excess of R7,7 billion. Informed by government's Anti-Poverty Strategy, the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP) Conditional Grant increased by R327,7 million in 2012/13, to R4,907 billion.

The Dinaledi Schools Programme received a conditional grant of R99,7 million for 2012/13 towards implementing a new national strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology education.

For expanding distribution of workbooks to Grade 9 learners in 2012/13, R811 million was allocated.

The budget allocation for the Education Infrastructure Grant in 2012/13 was R5 822 398 billion. This budget was R93,215 million more than the adjusted budget of 2011/12 and R324,098 million more than the original budget.

Other allocations in 2012/13 included R37 million for the Integrated Quality Manage-

In May 2012, South Africa and the European Commission signed the Joint Declaration on Education and Training Sectoral Policy Dialogue Forum on the sidelines of the African Higher Education Harmonisation: Tuning and Shaping Responsive and Quality Postgraduate Education Conference at the University of the Western Cape.

ment System and R21,7 million for Systemic Evaluation. For 2012/13, the Funza Lushaka Scheme was allocated R671,9 million.

## Role players/statutory bodies

### Provincial departments of education

The role of the national Department of Education is to translate government's education and training policies and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

However, the national department has to work closely with the departments of education of each province to ensure that provincial budgets and strategies are in line with and support national policies.

The national department shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each provincial department to finance and manage its schools directly.

District offices are the provincial departments' main interface with schools. Not only are they central to the process of gathering information and diagnosing problems in schools, they perform a vital support and intervention function.

This includes organising training for personnel, dealing with funding and resourcing bottlenecks and solving labour-relations disputes. They are key to ensuring that school principals remain accountable to the provincial department and that accountability lines within the school to the principal and to the school governing body are maintained.

Equity in education expenditure between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula, the National Norms and Standards for School Funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

The norms are progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%

### Council of Education Ministers

The council, consisting of the Minister of Basic Education, the Minister of Higher Education and Training and the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education, meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa, and coordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

### Heads of Education Departments Committee

Hedcom consists of the Director-General (DG) of the Department of Basic Education, the deputy DGs of the department and the heads of provincial departments of education.

The purpose of the committee is to facilitate the development of a national education system, share information and views on national education, coordinate administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advise the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

#### Umalusi

Umalusi is responsible for the standards of general and further education and training, hence its name, which means "herder" or "shepherd". In Nguni culture, this is the person who is the guardian of the family's wealth.

The Umalusi Council sets and monitors standards for general and further education and training in South Africa in accordance with the NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), and the General and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001).

The council is tasked with the development and management of a sub-framework of qualifications for general and further education and training and for the attendant quality assurance.

Umalusi is currently responsible for the certification of the following qualifications:

- In schools: the Senior Certificate, to be phased out by 2014; and the National Senior Certificate (NSC), which replaced the Senior Certificate in 2008.
- In FET colleges: the National Technical Certificate (Level N3); the NSC (Vocational), which is being phased out; and the National Certificate Vocational (NCV), which commenced in 2007.
- In adult learning centres: the General Education Training Certificate: Adults.

To issue learners with certificates that are credible, Umalusi:

- develops and evaluates qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard
- moderates assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable
- accredits providers of education and training, and assessment
- conducts research to ensure educational quality
- verifies the authenticity of certificates.

The Ikateleng Programme for Supplementary Instruction, which was started at the North West University's Vanderbijlpark Campus in 1988, has made a huge difference in learner performance in the area. More than 20 000 learners have benefitted from the programme, through which learners receive supplementary education in subjects like Mathematics, Science, Physical Science, Accounting, Business Science and English. They receive textbooks and supplementary hand-outs, and learn life skills, social skills, study methods and career orientation. Ikateleng's pass rate for the past 23 years have been more than 80%. In 2011, 350 Grade 12 learners collectively achieved a 93% pass rate and 177 distinctions. Several former Ikateleng students have already made their mark in the corporate world.

Gauteng's first school built entirely from alternative construction technologies was opened in November 2012. The state-of-the-art Orefile Primary School in Olievenhoutbosch was built in a record of 10 months using the Razorbil alternative construction method, instead of bricks and mortar. The new school dramatically improved learning conditions, especially for learners who had been housed in prefabricated structures. The school boasts 24 classrooms, an administration block, computer and multimedia rooms, storerooms, laboratories, sports fields, and recreational and ablution facilities.

## National Education Evaluation and Development Unit (Needu)

Needu was launched in March 2011 to ensure effective evaluation of all teachers based on the extent to which learner performance improves. Its core responsibilities include:

- providing the Minister with an independent account of the state of schools, including the quality of teaching and learning in all schools
- providing an independent account on the development needs of the school education system
- accounting for the attainment of the standards by all schools through a monitoring and evaluation system
- identifying on a systemwide basis the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement and making focused recommendations for redressing problem areas that undermine school improvement
- proposing appropriate sanctions to ensure that schools offer effective education for all learners
- strengthening internal evaluation capacity within schools in ways that reliably inform and complement external evaluation
- monitoring the different levels of school support and the extent to which there is considered actions on proposed interventions, whether in the form of developmental support or in the form of disciplined action
- reviewing and assessing existing monitoring, evaluation and support structures and instruments on a regular basis to ensure

clarity and coherence in the ways schools and teachers are assessed and supported
- providing schools with evidence-based advice on how to pursue school improvement in their particular context
- promoting school improvement through the dissemination of good practice.

## Education Labour Relations Council

The Education Labour Relations Council serves the public education sector nationally. It is a statutory council, initially established by the Education Labour Relations Act, 1993 (Act 146 of 1993), but now draws authority from the Education Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995). The main purpose of the council is to maintain labour peace within public education through processes of dispute prevention and resolution.

These include constructive collective bargaining between the educator unions and the Department of Basic Education as the employer. The Education Labour Relations Council also conducts various workshops to increase the level of awareness and understanding of sound labour-relations procedures.

While the bargaining council is guided by its own constitution in resolving disputes, the framework for this is governed by South Africa's labour legislation.

## South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE is a professional council aimed at enhancing the status of the teaching profession and promoting the development of educators and their professional conduct. The SACE was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

The council's functions are to:
- register educators
- promote the professional development of educators
- set, maintain and protect ethical and professional standards.

Educators are required to register with SACE before they are employed. The SACE has a register of about 500 000 educators.

In June 2012, movie theatre company Ster-Kinekor, in partnership with the US-based Cinema Park Network, introduced an innovative way to educate young people through entertainment, by bringing the educational programmes of Cinema Park to South Africa. Cinema Park's programming, which encourages interactive viewing, uses multi-sensory technologies, combined with 3D film-projection technology, audio effects and audience interactive tools to heighten viewers' immersion in the learning process. The initiative aims to inspire young South Africans to change their attitudes and behaviour towards various social and moral issues they face on a daily basis.

The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking applicants' professional standing.

The SACE has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include:
- the Professional Development Portfolio Project, which aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and take responsibility for their own professional development
- teacher education and development research activities
- setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development System
- celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators.

The ethics function ensures that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics. The Continuing Professional Teacher-Development System recognises professional development undertaken by teachers on their own initiative.

## Educator unions

The majority of educators are organised into six educator unions, namely the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, the National Teachers' Union, the South African Teachers' Union, the Professional Educators' Union, Cape Professional Teachers' Association and the South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework was agreed on by the former Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation, and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the framework for the establishment of an occupation-specific dispensation for educators in public education. The occupation-specific dispensation provides for dual career paths where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It also provides for a new category of posts of teaching and learning specialists and senior learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

## Programmes and projects

### Learning and teaching support material

In 2012/13, the Department of Basic Education extended the National Workbook Programme to cover grades 7 to 9. The allocation for 2012/13 amounts to R811 million for expanding distribution of workbooks to Grade 9 learners.

In 2012, the department provided 54 million books to learners, at no cost to the parent or learner. In line with its commitment to inclusive education, workbooks for grades 1 to 9 were adapted and printed in Braille.

Regarding textbooks, a national catalogue for grades 1 to 3 and 10 has been developed and distributed to provinces for procurement of core materials for schools.

In January 2013, the National Youth Development Agency gave R450 000 towards the My Future, My Career Project, which provides secondary school learners with career education screenings in cinema complexes. The initiative is run through a partnership between the Department of Basic Education, Primestars Marketing and Nedbank as the main sponsor.

A national catalogue for grades 4 to 6 and 11 was finalised in June and July 2012. The development of a national catalogue for grades 7 to 9 and 12 was expected to be finalised during 2012/13.

The Department of Basic Education distributed 4 424 500 Physical Science and Mathematics supplementary textbooks to all grades 10 to 12 learners in partnership with the Shuttleworth Foundation.

At the beginning of the 2012 academic year, through the Department of Basic Education, government provided the following workbooks to schools:

- 900 000 Grade R workbooks
- 6 754 525 home language workbooks
- 919 220 grades 1 to 9 Mathematics workbooks
- 411 675 grades 1 to 6 English first additional language workbooks
- 1 277 550 grades 10 to 12 Mathematics textbooks
- 934 700 Physical Science textbooks.

Workbooks and textbooks were sent to 24 355 schools across the country, benefitting 11 015 446 learners.

### Educational portal

The educational portal *www.thutong.org.za* offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning “a place of learning” in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a once-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the Department of Basic Education and various role players in the field.

The department also revitalised and revised the content of the portal. It has over 31 000 registered users and more than 22 000 curriculum resources.

In June 2012, the eThekwini Municipality, in partnership with the KwaZulu-Natal Department of Education, hosted a Mathematics, Science and Technology Indaba in an effort to attract learners to careers in these fields.

The indaba included a competition among participating schools to showcase their knowledge of the sciences. Various institutions, further education and training colleges and municipal technical departments exhibited material on educational programmes and career opportunities.

## Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of school governing bodies, where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay, or who can only afford a smaller amount, are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 provided the legal foundation for introducing no-fee schools in 2007.

By May 2012, more than 69,3% of learners were in more than 20 000 no-fee schools. The threshold target allocation for no-fee schools for operational expenditure has increased to R880 per learner. The national per learner target amount for Quintile 1 schools is R960.

Total expenditure for school allocation on no-fee schools at the national target level is projected to be in excess of R7,7 billion.

## National Strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology Education

In 2005, the then Department of Education introduced the National Strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology Education to increase the number of learners passing high-level Mathematics.

The primary objective of the Dinaledi Schools Project is to ensure that selected schools are supported to significantly increase the participation and performance of learners in Mathematics and Physical Science.

Since the project's inception in 2002 with 102 schools, it has been expanded to 500 schools in all nine provinces. This number includes 18 schools that were adopted by the Department of Science and Technology as part of the Adopt-A-School initiative.

The Dinaledi Schools Project is one of many initiatives to improve learning outcomes in schools. The 500 Dinaledi schools continue to demonstrate that learners can perform well above the national average with the necessary focus and support.

In 2012, the department implemented a new National Strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology education. It reinforces the Dinaledi Schools Project, which has received a conditional grant of R99,7 million for 2012/13.

In June 2012, the department convened a Mathematics and Science Indaba, with key education stakeholders involved in the teaching of Mathematics and Science.

## Early Childhood Development (ECD)

Over the next three years, R1,4 billion will be spent to support ECD programmes and to implement the community-based Child Care and Protection Programme. This will increase access to ECD from the current 500 000 to 580 000 children, with a focus on rural areas. It is expected that more than 10 000 youths will be employed as a result of the programme.

Government is committed to ensuring that ECD is linked to other development-based programmes, particularly within the context of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, and integrates other services that flow from different departments and relevant stakeholders.

This is done through a massive education campaign focused on women in rural areas, and selective peri-urban and urban areas like informal settlements, which are generally regarded as focal points for government's poverty and malnutrition eradication programmes. The department is also ensuring that ECD centres have access to relevant study materials.

ECD centres play an integral part in providing children with tools to cope socially, especially where there is a lack of parental supervision

at home. More than 20 000 ECD practitioners have therefore been equipped with the necessary skills to nurture, instil discipline and care for children in ECD centres.

The Department of Social Development coordinates the activities of the three partner departments, namely social development, health and basic education.

The integrated plan includes the development of national early learning standards, the training of ECD practitioners – which is part of government's employment creating EPWP – and the development of national norms and standards for funding.

The Department of Social Development leads government departments for services to children under the age of four years. In terms of the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), it is the department's responsibility to manage the registration of ECD sites, monitor their functionality and impact, and provide a subsidy for those children where a need exists.

## Education of learners with special needs

In July 2001, the then Department of Education gazetted *White Paper 6, Special Needs Education: Building an Inclusive Education and Training System.* This White Paper provided strategies for developing an inclusive system and increasing access to quality education for children experiencing barriers to learning.

The department's approach to inclusive education is geared to promote the democratic values enshrined in the Constitution. Provincial departments of education provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These factors include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual and hearing impairments
- tuberculosis
- conflict with the law
- physical disabilities
- neurological and specific learning disabilities
- intellectual disabilities
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- being over-aged learners.

*Census 2011* results indicate that the past 15 years saw a general increase in the percentage of learners between the ages of five and 15 attending educational institutions. The five- to seven-year age group showed the most significant progress in enrolments rates between 1996 and 2011.

Enrolment for the five-year-old age group was at 22,5% in 1996, 45,6% in 2001 and leapt to 81,2% in 2011. For the six-year-old age group, these figures were 49,1% in 1996, 70,3% in 2001 and 92,7% in 2011, while for the seven-year-old group it was at 73,1% in 1996, 88,4% in 2001 and 96,1% in 2011.

The Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities adopted Techno Girls as a key government programme in terms of the department's mandate to drive government's equity, equality and empowerment agenda. Through this programme, 3 952 girls were exposed to possible career choices, especially those that are technology related, in the private sector.

## Educator development

Teachers are at the heart of curriculum delivery. Continuous teacher professional development and good teaching is the key to unlocking excellence in learner performance.

However, there is still a shortage of qualified teachers. The overall vacancy rate by January 2012 averaged 8,7%, 10,2% and 8,7% for principals, heads of departments and teachers, respectively.

The department oversees the implementation of the Integrated Strategic Planning Framework for Teacher Education and Development that was launched in April 2011. For 2012/13, provinces have set aside over R3 billion for teacher development.

An audit process was conducted to support functionality of the 144 teacher resource centres, including the development of new centres.

School safety awareness campaigns, which aim to raise awareness of various issues affecting learners, was launched in various schools in Gauteng in September 2012. The campaigns, which are part of the road shows for Grade 8 to Grade 11 learners, will raise awareness on drug and substance abuse, gangsterism, bullying and teenage pregnancy. Inspirational speakers, faith-based organisations, psychologists and social workers were available at each event to assist and make arrangements with learners who required support.

In 2011/12, 5 962 principals and deputies completed the Advanced Certificate in Education: School Leadership and Management.

The Department of Basic Education entered into a Memorandum of Understanding with teacher unions to strengthen capacity in teacher development and teacher supply and use. In addition, the university sector has been supported financially to enrol greater numbers of teacher education students through dedicated funding for teacher education.

From a baseline of 5 942 new teacher graduates in 2008, in 2011 there were 10 370 new teachers who graduated from public universities. This represents an increase of 74,5% in four years. Substantial growth is expected over the next few years, and by 2014 over 14 000 new teachers should be produced.

Research output has increased at most universities, including at traditionally low-research-intensive universities. From 2010 to 2011, research publications increased from 9 747 units to 11 191 units and these were in published accredited journals, books and conference proceedings.

## Education infrastructure

Through the Accelerated School Infrastructure Delivery Initiative (Asidi), the department continues to do more to fast-track provision and improvement of school infrastructure. This programme has been given a further boost by being included in the work of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee.

The total budget allocation for the Education Infrastructure Grant for 2012/13 was R5 822 398 billion. This was R93,215 million more than the adjusted budget of 2011/12.

The Department of Basic Education has the following targets to meet through Asidi:

- eradicating 496 inappropriate structures
- providing basic water to 1 257 schools
- providing basic sanitation to 868 schools
- electrifying 878 schools.

By May 2012, 50 inappropriate schools were under reconstruction for completion to be ready for occupation in 2013.

In 2011/12, 55 schools were provided with water, 115 with sanitation and 48 with electrification.

The department is in the process of putting together framework agreements that are intended to provide the sector with more implementing agents, built environment professionals and contractors.

In partnership with the Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory and other partners in education, the department launched the 94+ Schools Infrastructure Project as part of International Mandela Day in April 2012.

In May 2012 the Teacher Laptop Initiative was back on track, with more teachers having access to computers. The departments of basic education and communications developed a connectivity plan providing a comprehensive framework for achieving cost-effective and efficient information and communications technology (ICT) connectivity for all schools. The Telkom Masters Services Agreement was signed in March 2012 for Phase One Implementation of the Connectivity Plan for Schools. The first phase will provide connectivity to 1 650 schools.

In 2011, 2 334 schools were connected to the internet for the purpose of teaching and learning, while 7 008 schools were using the internet for administration purposes. The establishment of nine ICT resource centres, one per province, and sponsored by the Vodacom Foundation, is expected to accelerate training of teachers in the use of ICT to support teaching and learning.

## National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP)

The NSNP is one of the most important components of government's plans to improve learning and the quality of education. It was specifically assigned the responsibility of addressing children's ability to learn by providing them with nutritious meals. Informed by government's anti-poverty strategy, the NSNP feeds over eight million children in more than 20 000 schools, thereby contributing towards increasing their performance in class.

## School enrichment programmes

At the end of June 2011, Sport and Recreation South Africa launched the School Sport Programme to ensure active participation in various sporting codes in all schools in the country. With this renewed focus on school sports, the Magnificent Wednesdays initiative was launched in March 2012 in Mamelodi in Pretoria, to encourage learners to participate in sport.

By April 2012, at least 2 500 KwaZulu-Natal schools had responded enthusiastically to the school sports programme, exceeding the target by 1 000 schools.

Of the 27 000 schools in South Africa, about 10 000 from seven provinces have already enrolled in the programme. The department invested R33 million in the programme to ensure that sports were played in schools.

Sport is set to become an integral part of the school curriculum and different sporting codes will be offered at every school in South Africa. This will culminate in the National Olympics Championship every year; with stakeholders such as trade unions, universities and the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee supporting the programme.

According to the *Ranking of World Universities Report*, issued in August 2012, three of South Africa's universities, namely those of Cape Town, the Witwatersrand and KwaZulu-Natal, were among the world's top 500 academic institutions. No other African country has a university in this group.

*Census 2011* results indicated that the proportion of people aged 20 with no schooling halved from 19,1% in 1996 to 8,6% in 2011. In addition, the percentage of individuals aged 20 years and older who received no formal education has decreased steadily between 1996 and 2011. In 1996, 17% of men in this age group had no formal education. This decreased to 15,5% in 2001 and further to 7,2% in 2011. Among women, the percentage with no formal education declined from 20,9% in 1996, to 20% in 2001 and 9,9% in 2011.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the department coordinates in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival and the National Language Festival and Concert.

To infuse more life into the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the department trained 359 adjudicators, 509 conductors, 82 data capturers and 15 programme directors, the majority of whom were educators. About 230 school choirs participated in the 2012 National Choral Eisteddfod in July.

## School safety

Since 2007, measures have been intensified and implemented to ensure that all schools are safe and secure for both learners and teachers.

An Inter-Ministerial Committee was established by Cabinet to address violence that affect school children. So far, more than 9 000 schools have been linked to police stations. This year, the department aims to link an additional 9 000.

Business Against Crime and the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention focus on eliminating crime and violence in schools. The centre was appointed by the department and the United Nations (UN) Children's Fund to conduct a baseline audit to collect information to guide the design and implementation of operational plans to support provinces in curbing crime and violence.

The Eskom Academy of Learning Welding School was launched at the end of March 2012 in Midrand, Gauteng. The school, a partnership between the South African Institute of Welding and Eskom, is expected to train more than 700 young people as welders over the next seven years. Eskom currently has 6 386 learners, with a focus on training artisans, engineers and technologists for the future. Eskom invests over R1 billion a year, representing over 6% of the wage bill, in training and development of workers.

The department identified 585 schools (65 schools per province) with high levels of crime and violence, and from these one school per province was identified to become part of a ministerial pilot project to create safe, caring and child-friendly schools.

Interventions were designed and implemented to meet the specific safety needs of the identified schools. Although the initial focus is on the nine ministerial schools, it is envisaged that the provinces will roll out this programme to more schools.

### Learner health

To reduce health and social barriers to learning, the department is working with the Department of Health to expand and strengthen school health services. The ISHP, which will ensure that learners have access to primary health care services, was launched in October 2012, under the theme *Taking responsibility for our learners' health and wellbeing.*

The strengthening of existing school health services through the ISHP is a key component of the primary healthcare restructuring process in the Department of Health, and the Care and Support for Teaching and Learning Programme within the Department of Basic Education.

The Department of Social Development is responsible for assisting learners to access services, particularly where financial barriers impede access. This includes providing transport to health facilities where necessary.

The ISHP also offers:

- eyesight, hearing and oral hygiene
- immunisation (for foundation and intermediate phases)
- deworming (for foundation and intermediate phases)
- treatment of minor conditions, especially skin conditions (all phases)
- counselling on sexual and reproductive health issues and offering services via mobile health units (all senior and FET learners, and intermediate learners where required)
- prevention of drug and alcohol use and abuse.

The ISHP will also individually assess every learner once during each of the four educational phases. Additional individual assessments will be offered to all learners who are repeating grades, at the request of an educator or parent or of the learner.

Services will be made available to all learners incrementally over a five-year period from 2012 to 2016. By September 2012, 290 602 learners had been assessed.

### Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet)

Although the concept of adult basic education had been around for some time, the concept of Abet is uniquely South African, as it is here that the "T" was added to include training.

Abet is defined as the general conceptual foundation towards lifelong learning and development, comprising knowledge, skills and attitudes required for social, economic and political participation and transformation applicable to a range of contexts.

Abet is flexible, developmental and targeted at the specific needs of particular audiences and, ideally, provides access to nationally recognised certificates.

One of the most successful Abet initiatives in South Africa is the Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign. It was launched in 2008 with the intention of enabling 4,7 million South Africans to become literate and numerate in one of the 11 official languages by 2015.

Achieving this goal will enable South Africa to reach its UN Education For All commitment made at Dakar in 2000, namely halving the country's illiteracy rate by 2015.

In its first year, 357 195 learners were enrolled, with 613 643 in 2009 and a further 610 000 in 2010. In 2011, 658 000 learners enrolled.

Kha Ri Gude, which means "let us learn" in Tshivenda, is managed by the Department of Basic Education and is available in all nine provinces. The learning material teaches reading, writing and numeracy and integrates themes and life skills such as health, gender, the environment and civic education.

The campaign makes specific efforts to target vulnerable groups. Recent statistics indicate that about 80% of the learners are women, 8% are disabled, 25% are youth, and 20% are older than 60.

Kha Ri Gude provides visually impaired learners with a range of assistive devices, including braillette boards and Perkins Braillers for use in class. Learner packs for the blind include a full set of materials in Braille and a talking calculator.

In addition to adult learning, Kha Ri Gude also offers short-term work opportunities to 40 000 volunteers who are paid a stipend as part of the EPWP.

In August 2012, the Kha Ri Gude Campaign was one of the winners of the Department of Public Works' Kamoso Awards. The department awarded the campaign an incentive grant of R51,5 million for 2012/13 to contribute to job creation by recruiting and training volunteers.

In October 2012, the Clearing House – the first phase of the Central Applications System, which will manage all post-school education and training institution applications – was launched. Its main purpose is to help those who want to study in 2013, but did not apply in time, and those who have applied and have not been accepted.

Implementation of the Clearing House will be supported by the already working and established Career Advice call centre managed by the South African Qualifications Authority. The call centre operates on a website portal, a toll-free line (0860 111 673) and an SMS line (072 204 5056), which also accept "please call me" requests from learners.

In May 2012, the University of Venda unveiled much-needed new facilities at its main campus, including the life sciences building; student administration building; new lecture theatre complex; extension to the school of environmental sciences and the refurbishment of the library.

The awards recognise the work of public bodies and non-state organisations for excellence in the implementation of the EPWP.

## Higher education and training

The Department of Higher Education and Training was formed to bring together all post-school education and training institutions, all higher education institutions, colleges and adult education institutions, formerly with the Department of Education; and the skills levy institutions, formerly under the Department of Labour.

The department is tasked with developing capable, well-educated and skilled citizens who are able to compete in a sustainable, diversified and knowledge-intensive international economy, which meets South Africa's developmental goals.

Higher education and training, also referred to as tertiary education, provides the highest level of education. Entry into institutions of higher learning is through a Grade 12 pass or a Grade 12 pass with exemption.

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Cape Town
- Rhodes University
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of the Western Cape
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda
- University of the Free State
- North West University
- University of Pretoria
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of South Africa (Unisa)
- Tshwane University of Technology
- Durban Institute of Technology

- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- University of Johannesburg
- University of Limpopo
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- Walter Sisulu University
- University of Fort Hare
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Vaal University of Technology.

A ministerial committee was established to review the funding framework of universities and make recommendations, taking into account the needs of universities over the next 15 years. It will also consider ways of improving the funding framework to strengthen rural institutions and ensure that historically disadvantaged students are supported within the system.

The Ministerial Committee for the Review of the Provision of Student Housing submitted its a final report at the end of June 2011.

## Legislation and policies

Some key policies and legislation relating to higher education and training in South include:

- The Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), in accordance with which private institutions offering higher education must register with the Department of Higher Education and Training.
- The Council on Higher Education was established in terms of the Higher Education Act, 1997. The Higher Education Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 39 of 2008), and the NQF Act, 2008 implied a significant change for the council, which was previously an advisory institution, monitoring and evaluating the achievement of South African higher education policy goals and objectives. The council now also functions as a quality council for higher education.
- The National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) Act, 1999 (Act 56 of 1999) is responsible for administering and allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students; developing criteria and conditions for granting loans and bursaries in consultation with the Minister; raising funds; recovering loans; maintaining and analysing a database; and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources. The scheme also advises the Minister on student financial aid in general, and performs other functions assigned to it by the Minister.
- The FET Colleges Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006) regulates FET to provide for the establishment, governance and funding of public FET institutions; to provide for the registration of private FET institutions; to provide for quality assurance and quality promotion in FET; to provide for transitional arrangements and the repeal of laws; and to provide for matters connected therewith.
- The General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001) provides for the establishment, composition and functioning of the General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council. It also provides for quality assurance in general and further education and training. This includes providing for control over norms and standards of curriculum and assessment, the issue of certificates at the exit points, the conduct of assessment and to repeal the South African Certification Council Act, 1986.
- The South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), provides for the establishment of the NQF, which forms the foundation for a national learning system that integrates education and training at all levels

As part of an initiative to reduce the vacancy rate of about 45 000 jobs in the maritime industry, 12 further education and training (FET) colleges throughout the country started offering courses in 2013 aimed at equipping young people for careers in the industry. The FET colleges will meet at least 80% of the industry's skills demands, producing artisans such as riggers, welders and boilermakers.

## National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS)

The Department of Higher Education and Training is responsible for ensuring the development of a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.

The NSDS 3 was launched in January 2011. It draws on lessons learned from NSDS 1 and NSDS 2.

The key driving force of this strategy is improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It represents an explicit commitment to encouraging the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis is particularly on those who do not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.

The development strategy promotes partnerships between employers, public education institutions (FET colleges, universities of technology and universities), private training providers and sector education and training authorities (Setas), to ensure that cross-sectoral and intersectoral needs are addressed.

The NSDS 3 will be guided by, and measured against, several key developmental and transformation imperatives, such as race, class, gender, geographic considerations, age differences, disability and HIV and AIDS.

NSDS 3 addresses the scope and mandate of the Setas. The Setas are expected to facilitate the delivery of sector-specific skills interventions that help achieve the goals of NSDS 3, address employer demand and deliver results. They must be recognised experts in relation to skills demand in their sectors.

NSDS 3 provides a stronger base for the Setas and the Department of Higher Education and Training, through service-level agreements, to set targets that align with sector skills needs and ensure an improved focus on the core Setas' mandate.

The strategy emphasises the relevance, quality and sustainability of skills training programmes focusing on eight goals, namely:

*Census 2011* results indicated a decrease in the proportion of the population with no formal education – the proportion of people 20 years and older with no schooling has halved between 1996 and 2011. The proportion of the population that completed matric has increased from 16% in 1996 to 29% in 2011. Although the proportion of people completing a higher education remained low, results showed upward trends over the same period.

- establishing a credible institutional mechanism for skills planning, and ensuring that the national need in relation to skills development is researched, documented and communicated to enable effective planning across all economic sectors
- increasing access to occupation-specific programmes targeting intermediate and higher-level professional qualifications
- promoting the growth of a public FET college system that is responsive to sector, local, regional and national skills needs and priorities
- addressing the low level of youth and adult language and numeracy skills to enable additional training
- encouraging better use of workplace-based skills development
- encouraging and supporting co-operatives, small enterprises, worker-initiated, non-governmental organisations and community-training initiatives
- increasing public-sector capacity for improved service delivery and supporting the building of a developmental state
- building career and vocational guidance.

The department has been increasing access to higher education programmes by expanding spaces and options available at FET colleges and universities.

The move is part of the department's plan to shift learner focus from traditional institutions such as universities and universities of technology to FET colleges, where training is vocationally based.

In honour of Nelson Mandela's 94th birthday on 18 July, the 94+ Schools Infrastructure Project was launched in July 2012. Aimed at upgrading 94 schools that have fallen into serious disrepair, the project formed part of Mandela Day, which is marked worldwide annually on 18 July to inspire people to change the world for the better and build a global movement for good.

Some 30 117 unemployed learners entered into learnerships against a target of 17 531 for 2011. Similarly, the target for workers entering learnerships was exceeded, with 19 192 workers entering learnerships against the target of 13 243.

More than 11 000 learners entered the artisan training system, with 8 102 passing their trade tests and obtaining their trade certificates. The trade test pass rate increased from 41% in 2010 to 57% in 2011.

The introduction of the NCV system in 2011 also marked a significant milestone in developing alternative avenues for skills development in all of the country's social sectors.

It resulted in the creation of opportunities for 164 713 additional learners at FET colleges. This was accompanied by various activities to improve the quality of service provided by FET colleges, including a review of curricula, distribution of learner and teaching support materials and training of lecturers.

Through internship programmes, students are benefitting from workplace placements, artisan training and learnerships. These include:

- 8 898 FET and universities of technology graduates who were placed in workplaces and a further 4 191 students that were placed in workplaces while studying during 2011/12
- 30 117 unemployed pupils and 19 192 workers who have entered learnerships, while 11 335 learners entered the artisan training systems, with 8 102 learners already passing and obtaining trade certificates
- 57 212 students in N1 to N3 for artisan development
- 120 053 students in NCV programmes
- 164 701 in N4 to N6 as post-matric study courses
- 85 519 learners in skills and occupational programmes.

## Further Education and Training (FET)

In March 2012, Parliament passed legislation reverting all functions of the FET colleges to the Department of Higher Education and Training.

Government has invested resources in public FET colleges to ensure that they deliver quality higher education and become institutions of choice for learners, parents and employers.

FET colleges are well positioned to contribute towards the skills gap in the country. They have a wider geographic reach, especially for poor students from rural areas.

In keeping with the strategic priorities of the NSDS 3, which includes the expansion and strengthening of FET colleges, some FET colleges will be the refurbished, while some new campuses will be built over the 2012 – 2014 MTEF period.

In April 2012, a Presidential Skills Development Summit was held with FET college principals in Pretoria. It served as a platform for principals to engage and deliberate on the central role FET colleges occupy within the country's skills development strategy, and in particular government's new infrastructure development priority programme.

The meeting was also attended by ministers who are members of the management committee of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission as part of a process to identify sectors where skills are most needed.

These include:

- infrastructure development
- mining and beneficiation
- agriculture and the processing of farm products
- manufacturing
- green economy
- tourism and high-level services
- knowledge-based sectors of the economy.

Government's bursary support to FET college students has increased fourfold within the last

three years; with respectively R318 million in 2010, R1,235 billion in 2011 and R1,7 billion in 2012 allocated to all FET college students who meet the eligibility criteria of financial need and academic performance.

In 2012/13, R1,24 billion was allocated to the FET colleges bursary scheme and 122 911 students were being supported by bursaries and loans.

## Budget and funding

Education constitutes more than 21% of government's allocated expenditure for 2012/13. Of this, the Department of Higher Education and Training received R41,1 billion, of which R9,6 billion comprised skills levies that went to the Setas and the National Skills Fund (NSF).

The department's budget (excluding levies) increased from R28,2 billion in 2011/12 to R31,5 billion for 2012/13. This is an increase of R3,3 billion (11,7%) on the 2011/12 allocation.

Universities received R20,9 billion while R4,8 billion was allocated to the FET Conditional Grant. NSFAS received R5 billion during 2012/13 for loans and bursaries in the university and FET sectors.

The amount available in funding to students had almost doubled – with the allocation to the NSFAS having increased from R3,3 billion in 2011/12 to R5,5 billion for 2012/13.

As at 30 September 2011, R753 million had been claimed under the department's financial support programme, covering 23 453 students.

Students who graduate had their student loans converted into bursaries.

In 2012, R200 million was provided to enable NSFAS to grant loans to students who have completed their studies but have not received their certificates or graduated, due to outstanding debt. This will enable an estimated 25 000 students to receive their certificates and enter the job market. A further R50 million was provided for postgraduate students who require financial assistance to complete their honours, master's and doctoral degrees.

## Role players

### South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa)

Saqa which is well-recognised nationally and internationally, focuses on upholding the principles of the NQF, including ensuring access, quality, redress and development for all learners through an integrated national framework of learning achievements.

The authority's main responsibilities include:

- registering qualifications and part-qualifications on the NQF
- maintaining and developing the National Learners' Records Database as the key national source of information for human resource and skills development in policy, infrastructure and planning
- maintaining and developing the authority's role as the national source of advice on foreign and domestic learning and qualifications
- conducting research
- monitoring and undertaking evaluation studies that contribute to the development of the NQF and a culture of lifelong learning
- registering professional bodies and professional designations on the NQF.

In terms of the NQF Act, 2008, the executive functions for setting standards and quality assurance will move to the three quality councils.

In February 2012, PetroSA announced funding of R4,5 million over a three-year period for an eco-schools programme. Aimed at encouraging environmental responsibility among the youth, the programme exposes them to the importance of responsible environmental custodianship.

Launched in 2003, it is offered by the Wildlife and Environmental Society of South Africa and the World Wildlife Fund and accredits schools that make a commitment to continuously improve their environmental performance.

The number of schools that have registered with the programme has grown from 100 in the first year to over 1 100 in 2011. Worldwide, 51 countries are part of the programme.

Several initiatives to use offender labour to revamp and furnish schools in South Africa was launched in 2012.

The Mangaung Correctional Centre outside Bloemfontein donated 32 refurbished desks to Gonyane Primary School. Inmates revamped 1 528 school desks for primary schools in the greater Motheo district.

In July 2012, offenders from the Boksburg Correctional Centre gave the 46-year-old Tsakane Primary School in Tsakane Township near Brakpan in Gauteng a makeover. Inmates repaired desks, installed library shelves and burglar bars, cleaned the schoolyard, fixed broken classroom windows, repaired the fence, painted the school and developed a vegetable garden.

In July 2012, the Ezakheni Combined School received a donation of 2 178 kg of five types of fresh vegetables, planted and cultivated by inmates from Piet Retief Correctional Centre; 900 grey trousers manufactured by offenders from Witbank Correctional Centre; 900 white shirts made by inmates from Mogwase Correctional Centre; several pairs of school shoes; and 834 dozen eggs from Losperfontein Correctional Centre.

## Quality Council for Trades and Occupations

The Quality Council for Trades and Occupations addresses the quality of training in and for the workplace, and ensures that such training and knowledge is accredited and certified, including proper recognition of prior learning.

The National Artisan Moderation Body was established in November 2010 under the council's umbrella. It is responsible for coordinating artisan development in South Africa. Plans are in place to establish offices in engineering campuses of public FET colleges.

## Higher Education South Africa (Hesa)

Hesa is the voice of South Africa's university leadership as it represents vice-chancellors of public universities. Since 2005, Hesa has provided strong and effective representation for its members. Its mandate is to facilitate the development of public policy on higher education and encourage cooperation among universities, government, industry and other sectors in South Africa.

Hesa provides services to member universities in five main areas, namely:

- strategic research
- policy advocacy and stakeholder engagement
- sector support, including providing university leaders and their institutions with a supportive network and opportunities for collective action
- special programmes to strengthen institutions' capacity
- value-adding services, including scholarships and international programmes.

To obtain admission to university study for bachelors, with the old Senior Certificate, a candidate had to pass four subjects at 40% and two at 33,3%.

In the case of the NSC, admission to bachelor studies requires a pass in four subjects at 50% and the remaining subjects at 30%, provided that the home language is passed at 40% and the language of learning and teaching at 30%. The NSC requires a candidate to offer seven subjects, while the old Senior Certificate requires only six subjects.

The department benchmarks its question papers as a credible mechanism for ensuring that national question papers are internationally comparable and are of the highest standard and quality.

In 2007, question papers for 10 major subjects were evaluated by three international assessment bodies, namely Cambridge International Examinations, the Scottish Qualification Authority and the Board of Studies New

In 2012, 70 graduates have been accepted into the Forensic Toxicology Programme, a study programme aimed at reducing the turnaround time for toxicology results and increasing the number of forensic toxicologists. The programme, a joint initiative between the Department of Health and the University of Pretoria, will address skills shortage and unemployment in South Africa. Graduates undergo seven months of training followed by five months in laboratories.

In September 2012, a state-of-the-art school library was unveiled at the MC Weiller Primary School in Alexandra, Gauteng. The library, which is expected to help learners improve their reading and literacy skills, was donated by ad agency Net#work BBDO and its non-profit creative arm, the Make A Living Foundation. Out of 2 100 schools in the province, only 1 200 have libraries.

South Wales. There was consensus among these institutions and Hesa that by international standards, the question papers were well designed and assessed what they purported to assess.

## Human Resource Development Council of South Africa (HRDCSA)

The HRDCSA is a national, multi-tiered and multi-stakeholder advisory body under the leadership and stewardship of The Office of the Deputy President of South Africa.

Established in March 2010, the HRDCSA is managed by the Department of Higher Education and Training. Membership is based on a five-year tenure and it is represented by a number of Cabinet ministers, as well as senior business leaders, organised labour and representatives from academia and civil society.

One of its key responsibilities is to build the human resource development base required to ensure a prosperous and inclusive South African society and economy. In essence, it must ensure that all relevant policies, programmes, projects, interventions and strategies are streamlined and optimised to support overall government objectives rather than merely sectoral imperatives.

The HRDCSA is supported by a technical working group, which is co-chaired by business and labour. It follows the council structure, but is supported by a team of experts comprising technical task teams that are appointed on an issues basis to provide expert input in respect of all matters pertaining to human resources.

In September 2012, the eighth HRDCSA meeting, chaired by Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe, focused on the introduction of the Integrated National Human Resource Development Plan, which is supported by the HRDSA 2010 – 2030. This included equipping young people with skills to participate in national infrastructure projects.

## Sector education and training authorities (Setas)

Setas were re-established by the Ministry of Labour in March 2005 to help implement the NSDS and to increase the skills of people in particular sectors. Setas replaced and extend the work of the old industry training boards and are accredited by Saqa.

They are responsible for the disbursement of training levies payable by all employers in the country. Setas cover all work sectors in South Africa, including government sectors. The members of Setas include trade unions, government and bargaining councils from appropriate industries.

Within its own sector, a Seta must develop and implement a skills development plan, be responsible for quality control and pay out development grants. They are responsible for about R2,5 billion each year.

Part of the objective of the Setas is to ensure that the skills requirements of the various sectors are identified, and that the adequate and appropriate skills are readily available. They are required to ensure that training is of the appropriate quality, meets agreed standards as laid out by the national framework, and caters for the training needs of new entrants to the labour market as well as the currently employed workforce.

As part of its efforts to address the critical skills shortage, government has introduced the TDM-Powered Skills Development Programme in conjunction with the Intsimbi National Tooling Initiative as a partnership between the Toolmaking Association of South Africa and the Department of Trade and Industry. Once qualified, students can pursue careers in cross-cutting sectors such as the aerospace, automotive, chemical, electronics, leisure, marine, medical, mining and packaging industries.

School attendance of children with disabilities aged between seven and 15 years improved by 21% between 2002 (73%) and 2010 (94%). Children with disabilities in the schooling system increased from 1% in 2002 to 6% in 2010. The challenge remains to provide access to the estimated half a million children with disabilities of compulsory school-going age (ages seven to 18) who remain outside the formal education system, by aggressively transforming mainstream schools into accessible, barrier-free and welcoming learning environments for all children.

The Setas are also responsible for a learnership programme and the implementation of strategic sector skills plans. They have discretionary funds, drawn from their levy income, that can be used for projects designed to assist in the achievement of sector priorities, including the design and implementation of learnerships.

## National Skills Authority (NSA)

The NSA is an advisory body, established in terms of the Skills Development Act, 1998, to advise the Minister of Higher Education and Training on the following, among other things:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSF allocations
- liaising with Setas about policy, strategy and sector skills plans
- implementing the NSDS
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of NSF annually
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

## National Skills Fund (NSF)

The NSF is funded by 20% of the skills-development levies collected by the South African Revenue Service (Sars) (of which 2% is paid to Sars as collection fees and 2% is allocated for administrative costs). One of the NSF's key tasks is to advise the Minister on the Seta landscape and the NSDS. The Minister of Higher Education and Training, on advice from the NSA, allocates subsidies from the NSF. The DG of Higher Education and Training is the accounting officer of the fund. The fund is to be used to target gaps and complement resource shortages for national priorities. Funds were set aside for competitive grants/bids from community-initiated skills development projects and other initiatives in line with the objectives and goals of NSDS 3.

In 2011, the Department of Higher Education and Training allocated R200 million to the NSF to enable students with historic debt to obtain their certificates.

## Library and information services (LIS) sector

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, school libraries, special libraries, government libraries and higher education libraries.

The Department of Basic Education recognises the necessity for school library resource provision and addressed this holistically during 2010, through the development of the *National Guidelines for School Library and Information Services.* The guidelines are part of the broader strategy, which is expected to contribute to ensuring that each school has a functional school library and information service.

The nine provincial library authorities provide, in partnership with local governments, extensive public-library services. Public libraries, among other things, increasingly render community and general information services, and provide study material and facilities for school and tertiary students.

In August 2012, the former Irish Head of State and the UN High Commissioner for Human Rights, Mary Robinson, opened the new library of the Vuyani Primary School in Gugulethu, Cape Town, which was donated by the Nelson Mandela Day Library Project.

## Libraries in the higher education sector

The higher education libraries hold the bulk of South Africa's scientific and scholarly information resources and fulfil more than half of all

interlibrary loan requests. Pressure on higher education libraries includes redistribution of educational resources and rising prices.

These libraries have responded by forming consortia, looking at access and exploring digital resources.

## Conclusion

Despite challenges, there has been steady progress in education, with government systematically addressing the shortcomings that have hampered progress in the past.

For example, in less than three years to go before the 2015 target, the Department of Basic Education is set to fulfil the millennium development goals for expanding access to education.

Recent statistics indicate that there are now about 12 million learners in more than 24 000 public schools, with 365 447 educators. Grade R enrolment has more than doubled, from 300 000 in 2003 to 705 000, which is well on track to meet government's target of having 100% coverage for Grade R by 2014.

It is also encouraging that more learners are completing grades 9 and 12, and that the percentage of Grade 12 learners who qualify for Bachelor Degree studies has increased.

The national pass rate for the matric class of 2012 was 73,9%. This was an increase of 3,7% from 2011 (70,2%) and an increase of 13,3% since 2009 (60,6%).

The Department of Basic Education monitored the delivery of educational material to schools for the 2013 school year. Challenges have been identified and are addressed to ensure even better service delivery in 2014.

Much progress has also been made in improving higher education access and outcomes. About R850 million has been set aside towards improving infrastructure of tertiary institutions, including student accommodation.

To reduce finance as a barrier to accessing post-school training, allocations for loans and bursaries increased from R100 million in 2007 to R1,7 billion in 2012.

The long-term goal is to have a post-school system that provides a range of accessible alternatives for young people by 2030. The department strives to raise university enrolments to 1,5 million (a projected participation rate of 23%) as opposed to 899 120 (a 16% participation rate) in 2011. In addition, it aims for four million enrolments (about a 60% participation rate) in colleges or other post-school institutions such as proposed community education and training centres.

The goal is also to develop a post-school system that is able to service both young and older learners, address the needs of people from different economic backgrounds in terms of historical education and training disparities, speak to those who have a schooling background and those with none, as well as those who aspire to be either academics or medical doctors and those who aspire to be artisans or engineers.

Within this context, a differentiated college system is envisaged to include FET colleges, as well as community colleges.

## Acknowledgements

*Beeld*
Department of Basic Education
*Department of Education Annual Report 2011/12*
*Development Indicators, 2011*
*Education for All, 2010 Country Report, South Africa*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2012*, published by National Treasury
Library and Information Association of South Africa
*Mail & Guardian*
National Library of South Africa
South African Qualifications Authority
*Sowetan*

*www.bizcommunity.com*
*www.education.gov.za*
*www.engineeringnews.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.hesa.org.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.co.za*
*www.mg.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.umalusi.org.za*

## Suggested reading

Booyse, JJ *et al*. 2011. *A History of Schooling in South Africa: Method and Context*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Carnoy, M, Chisholm, L & Chilisa, B. 2012. *The Low Achievement Trap: Comparing Schools in Botswana and South Africa*. HSRC Press.
Clarke, A. 2012. *The Handbook of School Management*. Cape Town: Kate McCallum.
Cooper, D. 2011. *The University in Development: Case Studies of Use-Oriented Research*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Davies, EH. 2012. *Financial Management in Education in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
*Education Management in Early Childhood Development*. 2012. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
*Financial Management in Education in South Africa*. 2012. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Lalu, P & Murray, N. 2012. *Becoming UWC: Reflections, Pathways and Unmaking Apartheid's Legacy*. Belville: Centre for Humanities Research, University of the Western Cape.
Levy, S & Pearl, C. 2012. *Student Voices in Transition: the Experiences of Pathways Students*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Oosthuizen, IJ, Rossouw, JP & De Wet, A. 2011. *Introduction to Education Law*. Second edition. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Perold, H, Cloete, N & Papier, J. 2012. *Shaping the Future of South Africa's Youth: Rethinking Post-School Education and Skills Training*. Somerset West: African Minds.
Soudien, C. 2012. *Realising the Dream: Unlearning the Logic of Race in the South African School*. HSRC Press.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Energy

Energy is the vital force that powers business, manufacturing, the transportation of goods and the delivery of services to the nation. It is the lifeblood of modern living, as it has an impact on everything we do and affects our very existence.

South Africa's steady economic growth, coupled with an increasing focus on industrialisation and a mass electrification programme to take power into deep rural areas, has seen a steep increase in the demand for energy. In fact, South Africa's energy demand is expected to be twice the current levels by 2030.

The Department of Energy has, since its formation in 2009, been responsible for ensuring secure and sustainable provision of energy for socio-economic development.

With the cooperation of Eskom, the department has embarked on a massive programme to bring the electricity supply and distribution system into balance. At a cost of about R340 billion, Eskom is building new power stations, including Medupi in Limpopo that will make its first contribution to the energy grid by 2013, and Kusile, which will come on stream in mid-2014.

South Africa has always been heavily dependent on coal and although the country has ample supplies of coal, it is looking at ways to diversify its power-generating capacity.

Government is also looking to support sustainable green-energy initiatives on a national scale through a diverse range of clean-energy options as envisaged in the Integrated Resource Plan (IRP). In terms of this plan, which is a 20-year projection on electricity demand and production, about 42% of electricity generated must come from renewable resources. To this end, government has signed contracts to the value of R47 billion investing in the renewable energy programme. This involves 28 projects in wind, solar and small hydro technologies, to be developed in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, Northern Cape and in the Free State.

In addition, government is continuing its Nuclear Energy Policy, which aims to increase the role of nuclear energy as part of the process of diversifying the primary energy sources to ensure energy security.

Government is also continuing the implementation of its energy efficiency programme for the industrial and domestic sector in line with the IRP to achieve the target for improved energy efficiency in South Africa of 12% by 2015.

As part of its energy efficiency strategy, government will also launch a public awareness campaign aimed at making energy efficiency an integral part of domestic, commercial and industrial activity.

## Legislation and policies

The Department of Energy derives its mandate from the *White Paper on Energy Policy, 1998,* the *White Paper on Renewable Energy, 2003,* and the National Energy Efficiency Strategy.

The following legislation regulates the energy sector:

- The National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008), ensures that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and at affordable prices in South Africa. In addition, the Act provides for the increased use of renewable energies, contingency energy supplies, the holding of strategic energy feedstock and carriers, and adequate investment in energy infrastructure.
- The Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006), establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry to be enforced by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa). The Minister of Energy is empowered to make determinations for the establishment of independent power producers (IPPs) to increase the supply of electricity.
- The Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977), as amended, provides for measures in the saving of petroleum products and the economy in the cost of distribution, the maintenance and control of price, the furnishing of certain information regarding petroleum products and the rendering of service. It further provides for the licensing of people involved in the manufacturing, wholesale and retailing of prescribed petroleum products.
- The Central Energy Fund (CEF) Act, 1977 (Act 38 of 1977), as amended, provides for the determination of state levies.
- The Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) provides for the establishment of the National Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) and defines its functions, powers, financial and operational accountability, governance and management. It also regulates the acquisition and possession of nuclear fuel, nuclear and related material and equipment, and the import and export thereof.

Other relevant legislation include:

- National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999)
- National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008)
- Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003)
- Petroleum Pipelines Levies Act, 2004 (Act 28 of 2004)
- Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001)
- Gas Regulator Levies Act, 2002 (Act 75 of 2002)
- National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004)
- Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended
- National Environmental Management Act, 1999 (Act 107 of 1999)
- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002).

Legislation tabled in Parliament during 2011/12 included:

- Electricity Regulation Amendment Bill
- The National Energy Regulator Amendment Bill
- The Independent Systems and Market Operator Bill.

### National Energy Efficiency Strategy

In November 2012, Cabinet approved South Africa's revised energy efficiency strategy. The strategy was initially approved by Cabinet in March 2005, and a review process was started in October 2008. The strategy sets the target for improved energy efficiency in South Africa at 12% by 2015.

The objectives of the strategy are to:

- promote and develop energy efficiency practices, norms and standards in different energy sectors, including industries, commercial buildings, households, transport and agriculture
- develop energy efficiency policies and guidelines
- facilitate information awareness, and capacity-building campaigns on energy efficiency and environmental issues
- promote energy for sustainable development
- mitigate negative impacts of energy use on the environment
- promote energy efficiency technologies and clean energy technologies including environmentally sound energy technologies
- promote and facilitate international collaboration and cooperation
- ensure the Department of Energy's participation at international forums on energy efficiency and the environment, including the United Nations (UN) Commission on Sustainable Development, the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

The strategy includes Eskom's Demand Side Management (DSM). When a utility or local authority that supplies electricity influences the way it is used by customers, this activity is known as DSM. Municipalities are also implementing their own energy efficiency strategies.

In addition, 32 large companies have joined forces with the Department of Energy and Eskom by signing an energy efficiency accord, committing themselves to targets contained in the strategy.

To assist households in becoming more energy efficient, the Department of Energy initiated an appliance labelling campaign. Labels on household appliances inform consumers of the energy efficiency of the appliances. The Department of Energy, in collaboration with the Department of Public Works and Eskom, is retrofitting government buildings to make them more energy efficient. This contributes a saving of about R600 000 in electricity bills per year.

### National building standards

Energy efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy efficiency regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building. The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with the South African national standards.

### National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The Energy Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuel identified a number of capacity constraints and challenges faced by the petroleum sector in meeting the energy demand. In response to these, the National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy was finalised and expected to be published for comments early in 2013.

It sets out the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It also seeks to guide the necessary investment decisions within the liquid-fuels sector to ensure the security of energy supply.

### National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

As part of the promotion of clean energy sources, an LPG Strategy was submitted to Cabinet in 2011/12. The strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy will highlight strategic options that could be adopted for the orderly devel-

opment of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications.

## Budget and funding

The Department of Energy was allocated R6,8 billion in 2012/13, of which 95% (R6,5 billion) was transferred to the following:

- the Integrated National Energy Programme (Inep): R3,1 billion to connect 150 000 and 10 000 households to the grid and none-grid systems, respectively
- Energy efficiency and DSM programmes: R1 billion to accelerate the solar water heating programme
- the New Multiproduct Pipeline: R1,5 billion for the final instalment
- Necsa: R554 million to continue with its central role as the anchor for nuclear energy, research, development and innovation
- the balance will be used for smaller projects and transfers to state-owned entities (SOEs) reporting to the Minister of Energy as follows:
  - South African National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi): R50,1 million
  - NNR: R30,9 million
  - Renewable Energy Fund Subsidy Scheme: R40,4 million.

The operational budget comprised R307,27 million, a 0,06% increase from 2011/12.

## Role players

### National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa)

Nersa regulates electricity, gas and petroleum pipelines in South Africa. It adopted high-level strategic objectives over the next three years, namely:

- creating regulatory certainty in the energy sector
- protecting the interests of the public and customers
- creating dispensation for fair competition for industry players
- creating energy supply certainty
- creating an effective organisation that delivers on its mandate and purpose.

### National Nuclear Regulator (NNR)

The NNR provides for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage, through the establishment of safety standards and regulatory practices. Strategic objectives between 2011 and 2014 include:

- optimising the regulatory framework
- creating a high-quality performance and service culture
- promoting good governance
- developing and maintaining sound organisational infrastructure
- developing a financially viable and sustainable funding model
- managing talent and knowledge
- enhancing stakeholder relations.

### Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa)

Necsa is a public company and is wholly state-owned. Its functions are to:

- undertake and promote research into nuclear energy and radiation sciences and technology
- process source, special nuclear, and restricted material including uranium enrichment
- collaborate with other entities.

The Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 provides for the commercialisation of nuclear and related products and services, and delegates specific responsibilities to Necsa, including the implementation and execution of national safeguards and other international obligations. The Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 elaborated on Necsa's mandate relating to research and development and nuclear fuel-cycle responsibilities.

Necsa's main function is to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy research and development, and innovation in South Africa. The research focus is directed mainly at nuclear technology applications, such as:

- the production of medical isotopes
- applied chemistry with an emphasis on uranium chemistry
- the application of radiation and nuclear technologies
- aspects of the nuclear fuel cycle, including waste.

The corporation is also responsible for:
- operating the Safari-1 research reactor to undertake nuclear science research and development and to provide irradiation services for the production of medical radioisotopes
- decommissioning and decontaminating nuclear facilities
- implementing the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement with the International Atomic Energy Agency; the Africa Regional Cooperative Agreement for Research, Development and Training related to Nuclear Science and Technology; and the Pelindaba Treaty.

In the medium term, Necsa will focus on:
- radiation research, products and services
- nuclear fuel research and development in relation to low-enriched uranium research-reactor production facilities
- nuclear component manufacturing to support future nuclear programmes and future power reactors
- contributing to higher industrial manufacturing standards and sustainable job creation.

## South African National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi)

Sanedi (previously Saneri) was restructured to expand its mandate to also promote energy efficiency initiatives and demand-side management. Additionally, it will house South Africa's carbon-capture and storage research and development, and other energy research programmes.

The original institute's mandate was to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally by procuring research, facilitating cooperation with others in the research community and commercialising innovations achieved under its auspices by disseminating research and development results and, if required, conducting its own research programmes.

It also provided support to postgraduate research students, promoted career development and assisted internationally renowned researchers to return to or remain in South Africa.

## Central Energy Fund (CEF)

The CEF researches, finances, develops and exploits appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs. It is also mandated to manage the Equalisation Fund, which collects levies from the retail sales of petroleum products to eliminate unnecessary fluctuations in the retail price of liquid fuel and to give tariff protection to the synthetic fuel industry.

The objectives of the CEF are:
- managing the energy business for the benefit of all South Africans
- playing an active role in the governance and planning of all its subsidiaries and coordinating the long-term future of the group
- improving energy security of supply by diversifying sources, and building and managing strategic energy stocks and energy infrastructure
- developing and investing in renewable and alternative energy sources and in energy efficiency
- developing human capacity and investing in relevant research and development
- managing and optimally exploiting local strategic energy and related resources
- mitigating against environmental impacts and maximising sustainable development.

The Department of Energy and PetroSA launched an Integrated Energy Centre in Mbizana in the Eastern Cape in November 2012.

The centre is a one-stop shop offering services of energy goods. It will house an information centre, a convenience store, a car wash, an energy shop, ablution facilities and a fuels forecourt. Petrol, diesel, paraffin and liquid petroleum gas will be sold at the centre.

Previously, Mbizana residents had to travel at least 15 km to the nearest town to purchase every-day commodities such as electricity, petrol and diesel.

## Integrated energy centres (IECs)

The IECs Programme is one of the initiatives the department has adopted to contribute to rural development and job creation in the fight against energy poverty.

Sasol supported the drive to commemorate the 20th anniversary of the release of former President Nelson Mandela by establishing an IEC at Qunu.

In 2010, the department reported challenges facing the Kuruman (Northern Cape) and Eshane (KwaZulu-Natal) IECs. The department, together with Total (Pty) Ltd and the municipalities in these areas, revived the projects, which were re-opened during 2011/12.

The department is also working with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform to develop future IECs, in line with the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme. The two departments conducted an energy needs assessment in Muyexe Village in Giyani.

In 2011, the department launched a further two IECs, funded by PetroSA, the national oil company of South Africa.

On average, 60 temporary jobs are created during the construction phase of each IEC, and 10 permanent jobs once the centre is operational. Four new IECs were in development in 2012/13, and will contribute a further 240 construction-related jobs and 40 permanent jobs.

## Sasol

Sasol is an integrated energy and chemical company. It beneficiates coal, oil and gas into liquid fuels, fuel components and chemicals with the help of its proprietary Fischer-Tropsch processes.

Sasol mines coal in South Africa, produces gas in Mozambique and oil in Gabon. Its chemical manufacturing and marketing operations span the globe. In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and retails liquid fuels through its network of retail convenience centres. Sasol also supplies fuels to other distributors in the region and gas to industrial customers in South Africa.

In 2011/12 state-owned enterprises committed over R131 million to help fund social and community programmes, with the bulk of funding coming from Eskom and Transnet.

Through Sasol Synfuels International, Sasol is pursuing international opportunities to commercialise its gas-to-liquids (GTL) and coal-to-liquids (CTL) technology.

Sasol's energy cluster focuses on the manufacturing, refining and marketing of automotive and industrial fuels, oils and gas.

With partners in China, the company launched a feasibility study into a CTL plant with a potential capacity of around 80 000 barrels per day.

End products include petrol; diesel; jet fuel; fuel oil; illuminating paraffin; liquefied petroleum gas; pipeline gas; lubricants and greases; bitumen and naphtha.

Sasol's local energy cluster comprises the following:

- Sasol Oil: Handles crude oil refining activities as well as blending and marketing of liquid fuels and lubricants.
- Sasol Gas: Supplier of pipeline gas to industrial and commercial customers.
- Sasol Mining: Produces about 40 million tons (Mt) of saleable coal per year.
- Sasol Synfuels: Operates the coal-based synfuels manufacturing facility at Secunda, in Mpumalanga.

## Eskom

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. Additional power stations and major power lines are being built to meet rising electricity demand in South Africa. Eskom will continue to focus on improving and strengthening its core business of electricity generation, transmission, trading and distribution.

Eskom buys electricity from and sells it to the countries of the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Future involvement in African markets outside South Africa – the SADC countries connected to the South Af-

rican grid and the rest of Africa – is limited to those projects that have a direct impact on ensuring security of supply for South Africa.

### National Nuclear Energy Executive Coordination Committee

In November 2012, Cabinet was briefed on the first meeting of the National Nuclear Energy Executive Coordination Committee, chaired by Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe, to oversee any future nuclear procurement processes as well as the energy build programme.

It endorsed the proposed phased decision-making approach for implementation of the nuclear programme. It also endorsed the designation of Eskom as the owner-operator as per the Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008. Cabinet approved the Nuclear Communication and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy.

### The Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between SADC member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the significant potential in the Congo River (Inga Falls). SAPP has made it possible for members to delay capital expenditure on new plants due to the existence of interconnections and a power pool in the region. SAPP member countries are Mozambique, Botswana, Malawi, Angola, South Africa, Lesotho, Namibia, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

### Other role players

- iGas is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- PetroSA is a government-owned oil and gas company mandated by Cabinet to lead developments in gas infrastructure in the Western Cape.
- The Petroleum Agency of South Africa promotes the exploration and exploitation of natural oil and gas, both onshore and offshore, in South Africa and undertakes the necessary marketing, promotion and monitoring of operations.
- Petronet owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of the government.

## Energy resources

South Africa produces about 5% of its fuel needs from gas, about 35% from coal and about 50% from local crude oil refineries. About 10% is imported from refineries elsewhere in the world. The country has a sizeable capital stock and management capacity to produce fuel from gas. The Department of Energy's Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels, energy efficiency, renewable energy and energy planning, including the energy database.

The *White Paper on the Promotion of Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development (2002)* commits South Africa to producing 5% of the country's energy supply from renewable energy sources by 2013.

### Liquid fuels

The recommendations made in the Energy Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuels, approved by Cabinet in 2007, continue to be implemented, with the focus primarily on addressing short- to medium-term infrastructural constraints within the liquid fuels sector.

South Africa faces a number of specific challenges in the liquid fuels sector:

Gas stocks for the existing gas-to-liquids plant from offshore fields are declining. South Africa should source sufficient feedstocks to support – and, ideally, increase – production. The best option to secure feedstocks would be to invest in gas fields close or adjacent to existing fields in the southern Cape, as marginal costs are lower and it will allow for further exploitation of existing fields, maximising use of existing capital. PetroSA is best placed to lead this petroleum refinery investment, given its existing capital and its management experience.

In the longer term, the Mossel Bay Refinery could use either liquefied natural gas imports or Karoo shale gas, if it becomes available. Refining capacity has run out and South Africa now has to import a share of its refined fuel needs. There are five options to deal with this, namely:

- building a new oil-to-liquid refinery (such as the proposed Mthombo Project in Coega)
- building a new coal-to-liquid refinery
- upgrading the existing refineries; allowing significant expansion of one or more of the existing refineries
- importing refined product
- building a refinery in Angola or Nigeria and buying a share of the product of that refinery.

The least risky and most cost-effective option is to continue importing a share of refined products until the country reaches a stage where it can absorb the output of either a new refinery or a major upgrade of an existing refinery. South Africa will, therefore, continue to import, taking a decision on the next step by 2016/17. Timing is important, given lead-time requirements to develop a new refinery (estimated at about eight to 10 years) that would be expected to produce output by 2025 to 2028 (if no other options are implemented).

Other issues related to liquid fuels include:

- Clean fuel standards: Health issues and the advent of new, more efficient automobile engines mean that South Africa needs to migrate to international clean fuel standards.
- Vehicle carbon tax: If South Africa adopted a consistent carbon price across the economy, and this price was around R100/t carbon, it would translate into an increase of only 5% at petrol pumps (compared to 20% for the electricity sector), thus sending only a weak signal to consumers to conserve petrol or diesel. A much more effective instrument would be a tax on vehicle sales based on their carbon-emission signatures.
- Electric vehicles: Over the next 20 years, South Africa can expect to see greater use of electric vehicles, making it even more vital to start decarbonising electricity generation. The Department of Energy has also encouraged a shift to greater use of public transport.

The South African liquid-fuels sector presents several opportunities for investors throughout the petroleum value chain.

A key feature of the South African liquid-fuels sector is that most transport fuel is produced in the coastal areas, about 68% of which is consumed in the inland region of Gauteng. This requires investments in storage and distribution facilities for the supply of petroleum products at the point of need.

A new R15-billion pipeline to transport petroleum from Durban to Johannesburg is under construction.

The 555-km trunk pipeline, with pump stations, terminals and a 160-km inland pipeline network, will increase capacity from the existing 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres and is expected to become operational by the end of December 2013.

These mega infrastructural projects and related support infrastructure require a close and ongoing partnership between SOEs and private companies.

## Oil and natural gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves. About 60% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- CTL and GTL fuels (Sasol)
- natural GTL (PetroSA).

The wholesale and retail markets for petroleum products in South Africa are subject to a set of government controls.

Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets.

Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while rendering a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

The department views natural gas as an evolving energy source, despite the country's limited gas reserves. There are projects underway to explore the potential of importing natural gas, both as liquid natural gas and compressed natural gas.

To this end, the IRP was developed, which incorporates gas among alternative energy sources for electricity generation. The IRP presents a 20-year view on South Africa's energy mix that seeks to balance growth in demand with South Africa's commitments to reduce its dependence on coal and to lower climate-changing emissions.

The IRP aims to:

- improve the country's global competitiveness
- support job creation
- improve management of natural resources
- reduce and mitigate greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions in line with commitments on reduction targets.

Cabinet's approval of the IRP and the tabling in Parliament of the Independent System and Market Operator Bill in March 2011 bode well for the facilitation of participation of IPPs in electricity generation in South Africa. Under the approved IRP, imported gas is expected to make up 6% of all new electricity generation, hydro power 6%, open-cycle gas turbines 9%, coal 15% and nuclear 23%.

This translates into 15% of electricity being obtained from gas. Natural gas accounts for 3% of the country's primary energy consumption.

## Alternative gas resources

Experiments are underway to assess the potential for mining coal-bed methane gas, although the overall potential of this resource for producing electricity in South Africa is probably less than previously thought. Underground coal gassification technology is also being developed.

According to the United States of America (USA) Energy Information Administration, technically recoverable shale-gas resources in South Africa form the fifth-largest reserve globally. Confirmation of recoverable reserves is still necessary through further drilling of test wells. Even if economically recoverable resources are much lower than currently estimated, shale gas as a transitional fuel has the potential to contribute a very large proportion of South Africa's electricity needs.

In investigating the potential for accessing shale gas in the Karoo Basin in the Northern Cape, Cabinet decided that only normal exploration would take place until a proper and relevant regulatory framework had been put in place, and until government was satisfied that it could deal adequately with the consequences of the technique known as hydraulic fracturing.

Cabinet established a task team to evaluate the use of a hydraulic fracturing technique in the extraction of shale gas. This task team comprised representatives from the departments of environmental affairs, water affairs, science and technology, energy, mineral resources, the Petroleum Agency of South Africa, the Council for Geoscience, Square Kilometre Array (known as SKA) South Africa, the Water Research Commission and Eskom.

The task team, in turn, appointed a working group of experts that brought on board technical advisers and academics from the University of the Free State and University of the Western Cape, who served as a reference group.

This team was tasked with evaluating the potential environmental risks posed by the use of hydraulic fracturing as a method of extracting shale gas, and the negative and positive social and economic impacts of shale gas exploitation as identified in the Karoo Basin.

In August 2012, Cabinet approved the task team's report on the matter and lifted the moratorium on the processing of applications for exploration in the Karoo Basin. It was also made clear that this was conditional on the establishment of the appropriate regulations, controls and coordination systems, which is

expected to be in place by the end of 2013. Hydraulic fracturing will be authorised under the strict supervision of the monitoring committee. In the event of any unacceptable outcomes, the process may be halted.

There will be ongoing research, facilitated by relevant institutions, to develop and enhance scientific knowledge, including but not limited to geo-hydrology of the prospective areas, methodologies for hydraulic fracturing in South Africa and environmental impact.

## Electricity

Results from *Census 2011* indicate that 84% of the 51,7 million people in South Africa has access to electricity.

However, the electricity demand is expected to double over the next 20 years as government implements its Programme of Action, including the Infrastructure Development Programme, to put the country's economy onto a higher growth path.

To this end, more than R340 billion will be spent on Eskom's New Build Programme. This will bring on line a further 11 641 MW of new capacity in the short term, adding to Eskom's existing 40 000 MW of capacity.

Government's goal is to ensure that all South African households have electricity by 2014.

## Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy-resource base is dominated by coal. Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

By international standards, South Africa's coal deposits are relatively shallow with thick seams, which make them easier and cheaper to mine. At the present production rate, it is estimated that there is more than 50 years of coal supply left.

About 65% of South Africa's primary energy needs are provided by coal. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next two decades, owing to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source. Many of the deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, about 28% of South Africa's production is exported, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth-largest coal exporting country in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries that range from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers.

About 51% of South African coal mining is done underground, while the rest is produced by open-cast methods. The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies accounting for 85% of saleable coal production.

Production is concentrated in large mines, with 11 mines accounting for 70% of the output. South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced every year.

About 21% of the run-of-mine coal produced is exported, and 21% is used locally (excluding power-station coal). The rest is not saleable and is discarded.

The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries:

- 62% is used for electricity generation
- 23% for petrochemical industries (Sasol)
- 8% for general industry
- 4% for the metallurgical industry (Mittal)
- 4% is purchased by merchants and sold locally or exported.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first in the world as a steam coal user and seventh as an electricity generator. Sasol is the largest coal-to-chemicals producer in the world.

## Renewable and alternative fuels

The Department of Energy has the sole mandate to promote the use of renewable energy, initiate projects to advance the use of renewable energy and annually monitor the precise

quantity of energy produced from renewable energy.

The *White Paper on Renewable Energy (2003)* has set a target of 10 000 GWh of energy to be produced from renewable energy sources (mainly from biomass, wind, solar and small-scale hydro) by 2013.

Following Cabinet approval of the White Paper, the Department of Energy proceeded with the development of its renewable energy strategy. The implementation plan of the various technologies was identified in a macro-economic study undertaken in 2003. The White Paper's target of 10 000 GWh renewable energy contribution to final energy consumption by 2013 was confirmed to be economically viable with subsidies and carbon financing. Achieving the target will:

- add about 1 667 MW of new renewable energy capacity, with a nett impact on gross domestic product as high as R1,071 billion a year
- create additional government revenue of R299 million
- stimulate additional income that will flow to low-income households by as much as R128 million, creating just over 20 000 new jobs
- contribute to water savings of 16,5 million kilolitres, which translates into a R26,6 million saving.

Renewable energy sources, other than biomass (the energy from plants and plant-derived materials), have not yet been exploited optimally in South Africa.

The vision of the Department of Energy is to make adequate and affordable energy available to developing communities through a mix of providing alternative energy resources at a reasonable cost. The aim is to satisfy the basic needs of the developing sector and at the same time promote the effective use of South Africa's vast alternative energy sources.

To monitor progress towards the White Paper's target of producing 10 000 GWh of energy from renewable energy sources by 2013, a monitoring and evaluation project has been set up.

Every year, the department collects data on renewable energy contributions from relevant stakeholders to assess or evaluate progress towards this goal.

The target can be achieved mainly from production of renewable energy by grid, off-grid (a source of energy not connected to a grid) and bio-fuel facilities. This renewable energy will be used for power generation to the grid and for water heating purposes.

The 10 000 GWh 2013 target would be equivalent to electrifying approximately two million households having an annual electricity consumption of 5 000 kWh. Put another way, the 10 000 GWh target is equivalent to about 5% of the present electricity generation in South Africa. This is equivalent to replacing two 660-MW units of Eskom's combined coal-fired power stations.

## Biofuel

The biofuel sector has grown rapidly internationally. However, South Africa has remained only a peripheral participant in the sector's growth. There are several reasons for this:

- being a relatively new sector there are various complex regulatory barriers that need to be finalised
- the global economic crisis and the resultant reduction in oil prices reduced the commercial viability of some investments and negatively affected investor sentiment
- national debates have tended to focus on food-versus-fuel arguments and the potential to create biofuels using crop surpluses.

South Africa has significant potential to develop a commercially viable biofuels sector notwithstanding the country's water-poor status. The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and the CEF are the main investors in the sector in South Africa. The IDC, in particular, is involved in all four of South Africa's current biofuel projects.

The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular. In addition, second-generation

biofuel technology will also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

Government has committed to a 2% blend target for biofuels inclusion in the national fuel supply. If South Africa increased its blending target to 10%, some 125 000 direct jobs could be created, many of which would be based in rural areas, where poverty is widespread.

In September 2012, fuel company Total unveiled its first sustainable service station in Fairland, Johannesburg. Innovative eco-friendly features include natural lighting, enhanced ventilation, double-walled underground tanks, solar panels and energy-reducing glass for lower electricity consumption, easy-access recycling receptacles, and a water-harvesting facility that collects rainwater in underground tanks to use for the bathrooms, or to water the plants and rinse off the forecourt floor.

## Hydro power

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydro-electricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Pumping uses some electricity, but this is done in off-peak periods. During peak hours, when extra electricity is needed, the water is released through a turbine that drives an electric generator. Peak hours are usually from 06:00 to 08:00 and 18:00 to 20:00.

South Africa used to import electricity from the Cahora Bassa hydropower station in Mozambique and will do so again once the transmission line is repaired. There is also the potential to import more hydropower from countries such as Zambia, Zimbabwe and Zaire. If this happens, South Africa could become less dependent on coal-fired power stations.

However, the generation of hydro-electricity is not without environmental effects; for example, large areas of land may be flooded when dams are built, which will disrupt wildlife habitats and residential and farming areas.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams will likely limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale. Irrespective of the size of its installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act 1998, Act 36 of 1998.

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for the development of small, i.e. less than 1 MW, hydropower plants. These plants can either be stand-alones or in a hybrid combination with other renewable energy sources. Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water – such as water supply, irrigation and flood control – which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea. For example, the rise and fall of the waves could be converted into hydraulic pressure by mechanical compression devices.

Such pressure could drive a turbine generator to produce electricity, while the tidal variation, sea current and different thermal layers in the ocean could also be used.

The main reason why this energy resource is not being harnessed is that no reliable technology for generating electricity from this resource exists.

Various companies are testing systems internationally to develop technically viable solutions. Once technical reliability has been proven, cost-effectiveness in relation to other solutions will have to be established.

Eskom is continuing resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

The Bramhoek and Bedford dams have both been completed and the R23-billion Ingula

Pumped Storage Scheme will be implemented during 2013/14. To date, 2 400 MW of capacity has been awarded to renewable projects.

In August 2012, Cabinet approved a draft treaty between South Africa and the DRC for the development of the Grand Inga Hydro-electric Project. The project on the Congo River could become the largest hydro-electric project in the world, and is expected to generate a massive 40 000 MW of electricity – more than the current electricity generation in South Africa, with the potential to supply clean and cost-effective hydroelectric power to meet the needs of the DRC and surrounding or nearby countries, including South Africa.

According to the IRP's 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand, about 6% of electricity generated in the country will be required to come from hydro resources.

## Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 kWh/m$^2$ and 6,5 kWh/m$^2$ in one day. The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m$^2$ for South Africa, compared with about 150 W/m$^2$ for parts of the USA, and about 100 W/m$^2$ for Europe.

This makes the local resource one of the highest in the world. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

The country's solar-equipment industry is developing rapidly to meet demand. Annual photovoltaic panel-assembly capacity totals 5 MW, and a number of companies in South Africa manufacture solar water heaters.

Solar power is used increasingly for water-pumping through the rural water-provision and sanitation programme of the Department of Water Affairs.

Research has shown that low-cost housing could be made "energy smart" by using elementary solar-passive building design practice. This could result in fuel savings of as much as 65%, which could significantly benefit households' energy costs.

Energy-efficient homes may be constructed at the same direct cost (and lower life-cycle cost) as energy-wasteful houses. The challenge is to develop awareness and to ensure implementation of basic energy efficiency principles.

Government is considering the following building norms and standards: orientation for the purposes of passive solar design, lighting, and installation of solar water heaters, insulation, ventilation, heating and air conditioning.

The minimum direct normal radiation to justify a combined solar-thermal power plant is 1 800 kWh/m$^2$ per year. According to the Renewable-Energy Resource Database, the area exceeding the minimum required direct normal radiation in South Africa covers about 194 000 km$^2$. A 100-MW solar-thermal plant requires roughly 3 km$^2$ (1 800 kWh/m$^2$ a year).

If 1% (1 940 km$^2$) of the identified area is available for solar-thermal power generation, South Africa has an installed potential of 64,6 GW, which is about 36 217 GWh per year. Back-up and energy-storage constraints are limiting the wider economic use of solar-electricity generation (solar thermal and photovoltaic).

In November, Spanish renewable energy group Abengoa started construction on two concentrated solar power projects in South Africa. Abengoa, one of the 28 first-phase IPPs, will build a 50 MW solar power tower near Upington and a 100 MW parabolic-trough solar power plant near Pofadder, both in the semi-desert Northern Cape province.

The two plants will reduce South Africa's carbon dioxide emissions by about 498 000 t a year, while creating between 1 400 and 2 000 construction jobs and about 70 permanent operation jobs, as well as numerous indirect jobs to fulfil the needs required by the plant and its construction.

## Wind power

Eskom's Klipheuwel wind energy facility, just north of Cape Town, is the first large wind-turbine facility in sub-Saharan Africa. The pilot

phase of the Klipheuwel Research and Demonstration Project ran from 2002 to 2005.

During that time, the Klipheuwel Pilot Wind Farm generated more than 12 GWh of electricity, reducing carbon dioxide emissions by 11 000 t. The three wind turbines operated at an average availability of 90%. The project's research phase has been completed and the wind farm will be operated commercially for its anticipated 20-year lifespan as calculated from 2006.

The Darling Wind Farm in the Western Cape has four wind turbines, which can supply 5,2 MW. All the electricity produced would be sold to Cape Town as part of a long-term power agreement with the city. The facility consists of four German-designed wind turbines. The structures are 50 m high with the blades spanning 31 m. Each turbine will produce 1,3 MW, bringing the total output of the wind farm to 5,2 MW.

The project is referred to as the National Demonstration Project and will be used as an example for future public-private partnerships in the establishment of alternative electricity generation.

The R75-million project was the first green-energy initiative in the country to produce electricity from wind power commercially.

It was developed through collaboration between the Darling Independent Power Producer, the Development Bank of Southern Africa and the CEF. The Danish International Development Agency also funded part of the project.

Construction on the first commercial wind farm at the Coega Industrial Development Zone, Port Elizabeth, in the Eastern Cape was expected to start in September 2012, and was expected to start supplying power by October 2013. The R550-million wind farm will be the first of its kind in the province. Nine 3-MW turbines will provide 80 million kWh a year to the local electricity grid, accounting for nearly half of Nelson Mandela Bay's 10% renewable energy target. It will provide electricity close to source to around 5 000 to 6 000 homes. Over the 20-year period of its licence, renewable energy company Metrowind will plough an estimated R50 million back into local communities, who will own a 5% stake in Van Stadens Wind Farm through a trust.

In November 2012, Ireland's Mainstream Renewable Power started construction on solar and wind power projects in the country, as part of a €500-million (about R5,5-billion) investment. Mainstream Renewable Power is one of the 28 IPPs that signed contracts with the South African Government in the first round of the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement (REIPPP) Programme.

Mainstream Renewable Power and its partners will build a 138-MW wind farm in Jeffreys Bay in the Eastern Cape, and two 50 MW solar photovoltaic parks in the Northern Cape – one near De Aar and one at Droogfontein near Kimberley. All three projects are scheduled to be fully operational by mid-2014.

The projects are expected to produce 635 GWh of electricity, enough to supply up to 48 000 households and displace approximately 628 000 t of carbon emissions per year.

May 2012 saw the opening of the PetroSA Synthetic Fuels Innovation Centre at the University of the Western Cape. This is the country's first academic facility offering research on improving the quality of diesel. PetroSA, South Africa's national oil company, provided funding of R36 million to establish and operate the centre for an initial five-year research programme.

## Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid (a source of energy not connected to a grid) supply.

Currently, there are two pilot hybrid systems in the Eastern Cape at the Hluleka Nature Reserve on the Wild Coast and at the neighbouring Lucingweni community.

The Hluleka hybrid mini-grid system consists of two proven 2,5 kW wind generators and three Shell solar photovoltaic module arrays

fitted with 56 100-watt photovoltaic modules wired in series (total 10,6 kW). An integrated design approach, which resulted in a joint energy, water purification and telecommunication system, was followed. The energy system makes use of renewable energy (wind and solar), solar water heaters and LPG. One diesel generator is retained for back-up supply. The Hluleka system has been in operation since June 2002.

The Lucingweni hybrid system consists of 50-kW solar photovoltaic panels and 36-kW wind generators serving 220 dwellings (four lights per dwelling, radio, television, mobile phone charger, street lighting, telecommunications and water pumping).

## Tradable renewables

The *White Paper on Renewable Energy Policy* proposed that tradable renewable energy certificates be investigated to find out whether these could be one of the funding streams to support the implementation of the renewable energy programme in South Africa. This would be in addition to other funding options, i.e. sale of physical electrical power through a power purchase agreement into the electrical grid at prevailing electricity (energy) market prices and certified emission reductions trading through the clean development mechanism (CDM), a UN framework mechanism that encourages developing countries to implement emission-reduction projects to earn certified emission reductions.

A tradable renewable energy certificate is an electronic record that verifies the origin of energy by a registered renewable energy entity. It is also referred to as a green certificate or green tag. Tradable renewable energy certificates are based on separating the various attributes of renewable resource-based energy provision from the physical energy carrier, electric or otherwise. It is another revenue stream for renewable energy IPPs and its major advantage is that, apart from potential extra income, certificates can be traded worldwide and separately from the electricity grid infrastructure.

The 49M Campaign launched in 2011, is aimed at challenging South Africans to be more energy efficient by reminding them that they have the power to make a difference. For Earth Hour on 31 March 2012, 49M encouraged people to save energy by switching off all unused electricity appliances. A total of 402 MW was saved – enough electricity to power the city of Mangaung in the Free State for a day.

By May 2012, the campaign had reached more than 40 000 South Africans in one-on-one conversations and over seven million people through the above-the-line campaign.

## Nuclear

Nuclear energy is set to play a critical role in South Africa's IRP implementation process. For this reason the National Nuclear Energy Executive Coordination Committee was established in 2011 as the authority for decision-making, monitoring and ensuring general oversight of the nuclear energy expansion programme.

The success and deployment of nuclear power requires public acceptance, and public education is the most important topic surrounding nuclear energy.

Concerns regarding the safety of nuclear energy in view of the Fukushima incident in Japan in 2011, when an earthquake and subsequent tsunami damaged a nuclear power plant, causing nuclear meltdown and the release of radioactive materials, were factored into the South African approach. Proper safety measures were put in place and overseen by the appropriate expert authorities. As a member of the International Atomic Energy Agency, South Africa is obliged to comply with the relevant guidelines and safeguards on nuclear plants.

The nuclear sector in South Africa is mainly governed by the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) and the NNR Act, 1999. The Department of Energy administers these Acts.

The Department of Health administers the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973) related to Group 3 and Group 4 hazardous substances. Cabinet approved the Nuclear Energy Policy for South Africa in 2008.

Skills development strategies and acquisition and retention of the relevant skills to support the nuclear programme have to be formulated. The following categories will be addressed:

- construction skills
- plant-operation skills
- skills for the relevant government departments
- regulatory skills
- supporting industry skills
- decommissioning and rehabilitation skills
- radioactive waste management.

The Nuclear Fuel Cycle Strategy for the beneficiation of uranium resources is a key factor with special focus on:

- securing South African uranium mineral resources
- developing a uranium conversion plant
- developing a uranium enrichment plant
- developing a fuel fabrication plant.

Eskom is investigating the possibility of generating up to 20 000 MW of new nuclear power capacity by 2025. This will entail recapitalising certain nuclear agencies, financing others and setting up new ones.

The following main organisations are directly involved in the nuclear sector:

- The Department of Health's Directorate: Radiation Control issues licences for Group 3 hazardous substances (electronic product generating X-rays, other ionising beams, electrons, neutrons or other particle radiation or non-ionising radiation) and Group 4 hazardous substances (radioactive material outside a nuclear installation, which does not form part of or is used or intended to be used in the nuclear fuel cycle, and which is used or intended to be used for medical, scientific, agricultural, commercial or industrial purposes).
- The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station, the only nuclear power station on the African continent, is responsible for about 6% of total electricity generation. It is owned by Eskom, which reports to the Minister of Public Enterprises.
- The iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences brings together scientists working in the physical, medical and biological sciences. The facilities provide opportunities for modern research, advanced education, the treatment of cancers and the production of unique radio-isotopes.
- The Nuclear Fuels Corporation of South Africa is responsible for uranium-ore refinement and export.

The department participates in the Women in Nuclear South Africa Programme. Government is expected to accelerate preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and other renewable energies. The department has introduced initiatives such as the South African Young Nuclear Professionals Society and the Women in Nuclear South Africa Programme to promote the industry among historically disadvantaged people.

In May 2012, South Africa's Anglo American Platinum (Angloplat) launched the prototype of the first fuel-cell-powered underground locomotive.

Hydrogen-powered fuel-cell locomotives are more economical and environmentally friendly than traditional rail transport, as it is powered by a cleaner and more secure energy source.

A fuel cell is essentially a gas battery that produces electricity as long as it is fed with hydrogen gas. Power is available for 24 hours per day with no need to change or recharge the battery. This means less downtime and increased productivity.

## Programmes and projects

### The Integrated Resources Plan (IRP)

By 2030, the department aims to have reduced the country's dependency on coal to 60%, with the rest of the country's power coming from low-emitting sources such as solar, hydro and nuclear.

If successfully implemented, the IRP will see South Africa diversify its mix of power sources away from coal, which is currently where the country gets about 90% of its power, and at the same time double its energy output.

Despite the increase in output, the decrease in coal burning will result in a nett reduction of

carbon dioxide emissions by 2030 to less than 275 Mt a year, and a 60% reduction in water usage.

The IRP 2 was approved by Cabinet in March 2011. Renewable energy sources make up 42% of projected new and additional capacity to be added over the period, and will constitute 9% of installed capacity by 2030.

The IRP laid the foundation for the country's energy mix up to 2030, and sought to find an appropriate balance between the expectations of different stakeholders considering a number of key constraints and risks, including:

- reducing carbon emissions
- new technology uncertainties such as costs, operability, lead time to build
- water usage
- localisation and job creation
- southern African regional development and integration
- security of supply.

The IRP 2 provides for a diversified energy mix, in terms of new generation capacity, that would comprise:

- coal at 14% (government's view is that there is a future for coal in the energy mix, and that it should continue research and development to find ways to clean the country's abundant coal resources)
- nuclear at 22,6%
- open-cycle gas turbine at 9,2% and closed-cycle gas turbine at 5,6%
- renewable energy carriers, which include hydro at 6,1%, wind at 19,7%, concentrated solar power at 2,4% and photovoltaic at 19,7%.

Progress thus far constitutes 1 415 MW of Phase 1 of a total of 3 725 MW to be procured by 2016. Some 97 environmental authorisations were approved during the first bidding phase of the REIPPP, which represents in excess of 10 454 MW. In its first roll-out phase, the REIPPP will see an initial 1 400 MW of renewable energy being added to South Africa's energy mix, while bringing an estimated R47 billion in new investment into the country.

A total of 4 MW of solar photovoltaic capacity was installed in the country in the lead-up to Conference of the Parties (COP17), which took place a the end of 2011, by Eskom, IPPs and municipalities as part of a carbon offset and legacy programme.

The South Africa Renewables Initiative was launched at COP17 as an international partnership to support the rapid and ambitious scaling up of renewable energy in a manner that delivers economic, social and environmental benefits.

In addition, amendments to building regulations to promote the use of renewable energy and thermal efficiency have been finalised.

Approximately 200 000 solar water heating units were installed between 2009 and December 2011, towards the target of one million units by 2014. Of these, 70% have been installed in rural areas and 30% in the higher-income areas. It is envisaged that the balance of the target will be funded by an electricity tariff increase in the period 2012 to 2014.

Regarding objectives set for the green economy under the New Growth Path, the implementation of the IRP will make a significant contribution to stimulating the domestic green economy.

Over 12 000 construction-related and more than 1 000 permanent jobs are expected to be created under the programme.

## Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement (REIPPP) Bidding Programme

The flagship programme under the IRP is the REIPPP Bidding Programme for the provision of 3 625 MW of capacity from IPPs.

In December 2011, 28 preferred independent renewable power producers was announced, comprising 18 solar photovoltaic projects, eight onshore wind projects and two concentrated solar power projects. All projects must be generating power by mid-2014.

The department then initiated a fresh bidding round for other technologies such as cogeneration from biomass, including sugar and paper, biogas, landfill gas, and small hydro. The 19 selected preferred bidders in this second round were announced in May 2012.

In September 2012, it was announced that the third bidding round for small power or less than 5 MW-capacity bidding were postponed to May 2013.

In November 2012, Government signed agreements with the 28 first-window IPPs. This would see an initial 1 400 MW of renewable energy being added to South Africa's energy mix, and bring an estimated R47 billion in new investment into the country. While the majority of the bidders are foreign companies, 67 South African companies formed partnerships with them.

The projects are spread across some of South Africa's most rural and least developed provinces, including the Eastern Cape, Northern Cape, Limpopo, North West and the Free State.

The wind and solar projects are expected to be integrated into the country's national energy grid during 2014.

Bidders also committed to community development initiatives within a 50-km radius of each project. The bidders have collectively committed R2 billion towards socio-economic development, and R1 billion towards empowering women in the energy field.

In total, these bidders will spend R12 billion over the duration of the implementation agreements on South African contractors.

## Integrated National Electrification Programme (Inep)

The Department of Energy began funding Inep in April 2001, with Eskom implementing the programme on the Department of Energy's behalf. Operating costs relating to this electrification programme are incurred by Eskom as the licensed distributor supplying electricity to its consumers.

Inep is a modern energy option and also has a positive socio-economic impact on the lives of South Africans. There have been improvements in the education, health and social circumstances of communities that have been electrified through the grid and off-grid technologies. By 2011, South Africa's energy penetration stood at over 75%, and with R3,2 billion allocated to the electrification programme, the department aimed to connect an additional 150 000 households, build 10 substations and contribute about 5 000 jobs. In 2010/11, the department created 5 811 jobs and connected 195 000 homes to the electricity grid, exceeding its target by 45 000 households.

In 2011/12, the electrification programme was allocated R3,119 billion, with municipalities receiving R1,151 billion and Eskom R1,882 billion, while R86 million was allocated for non-grid connections. This catered for the planned 192 000 grid and non-grid connections for the year.

For bulk infrastructure projects, R345 million was allocated to municipalities and R243 million to Eskom.

## Cleaner Fuels Programme

To improve the quality of transport fuels, the department reviewed the fuel specifications and standards to reduce harmful emissions, and to align standards with global vehicle technology trends and environmental requirements. This is expected to encourage vehicle manufacturers to introduce more fuel-efficient engine technologies with lower carbon and noxious gas emissions. The department drafted a position paper for consultation and intended to announce new fuel specifications in 2011/12.

## New Build Programme

Eskom's New Build Programme was launched in 2005, with the aim of adding more than 17 000 MW to the national electricity grid by 2018. By mid-2011, more than 5 000 MW of new generation capacity and more than 3 000 km of new transmission lines had been added to the country's electricity grid.

In May 2012, South Africa launched its first verified wind atlas, which maps out potential hotspots as a tool for wind-farm developers as the coal-hungry country pushes toward renewable energy. The atlas models the wind climate in the Northern, Eastern and Western Cape provinces, which is backed up by measured data from 10 masts.

As part of the programme, Eskom has spent R20,5 billion on recommissioning three power stations that have been out of service for over 20 years: Camden, Komati and Grootvlei, all in Mpumalanga. Together, the stations can produce an estimated 3 800 MW, which equals that of a new power station.

The cost of recommissioning the retired stations is estimated at almost R100 billion less than a new station, and the electricity will be available sooner. Camden was reopened in 2010, with work progressing on Komati and Grootvlei. Eskom aims to have all three operational by 2013.

Two new coal power stations are under construction – the 4 800-MW Medupi Power Station near Lephalale in Limpopo and Kusile in Mpumalanga, which is also expected to have an output of 4 800 MW.

Medupi is scheduled for full commercial operation by 2015 and Kusile by 2018, although individual units will be brought online earlier as they are completed.

On 8 June 2012, the Hydrostatic Pressure Test for Unit 6 at the Medupi Power Station was unveiled. The test was undertaken to ensure that the boiler was fully functional and ready to start generating electricity for South Africa's national grid. Medupi, the first coal-fired power station to be built in South Africa in 20 years, is due to make its first contribution to the grid at the end of 2013.

The boiler and turbine contracts for Medupi are the largest contracts that Eskom has signed in its 87-year history. The planned operational life of the station is 50 years. It is one of the largest construction sites in the Southern Hemisphere, employing about 17 000, with about 40 000 job opportunities expected to be created by the new power station.

When complete, Medupi will be the world's largest dry-cooled coal-fired plant. It will incorporate super-critical machinery, which can operate at higher temperatures and pressures than older-generation equipment, and is also more efficient, resulting in better use of natural resources and lowered impact on the environment. The super-critical design is Eskom's first.

Kusile, on the other hand, will be the first power plant in South Africa to have cutting-edge fuel gas desulphurisation technology installed. This means that its exhaust gases will be processed to remove all traces of sulphur oxides before being released into the atmosphere. Excess sulphur dioxide in the air is one of the causes of acid rain.

South Africa's energy demand is expected to be twice the current levels by 2030. Once all six units are completed, Medupi will be able to produce enough electricity to power almost all of Gauteng.

In May 2012, Hydro Alternative Energy from Florida in the United States of America announced negotiations with the City of Durban to develop a project that would harvest hydrokinetic energy from the fast-flowing Agulhas current off the KwaZulu-Natal coastline. The current is one of the most consistent currents in the world, making Durban an ideal location to harness it. Generating electric power from sea currents has never been done before; with all previous sea and wave generation technologies being tidal-based.

## Carbon capture and storage roadmap

Although South Africa has a programme to increase the use of renewable energy and energy efficiency, coal is likely to provide most of the country's primary energy for the next few decades.

The displacement of fossil fuels by renewable and nuclear energy is seen as a gradual task. Carbon capture and storage is a transition measure from fossil fuel to nuclear and renewable energy. To this end, the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage was established in March 2009.

The five phases of the roadmap and their status are as follows:

- A preliminary investigation was undertaken by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research for the then Department of Minerals and Energy to ascertain whether South Africa had potential capturable carbon-

dioxide sources and storage sites. The results of that investigation, released in 2004, showed that South Africa had capturable emissions and potential storage sites. Based on this premise, further investigations were initiated. The preliminary investigation also identified that the synfuel industry in South Africa produced 30 Mt per year of 95% concentration carbon dioxide.

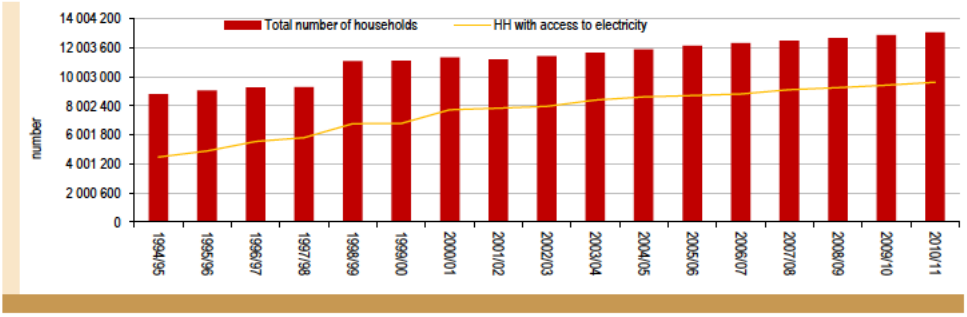
- The Carbon Dioxide Geological Storage Atlas, launched in August 2010, will locate and characterise potential storage sites at a theoretical level and on a geological basin extent. The atlas will then be taken into the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage's programme of work and be developed to locate a storage site suitable for a test injection. Pre-atlas knowledge had identified four possible carbon-dioxide geological storage basins:
  - Orange Basin (offshore of the west coast)
  - Outeniqua Basin (offshore of the southern coastline and site of the only producing gas/petroleum wells in South Africa)
  - Durban/Zululand Basin (east coast)
  - Karoo On-Shore Basin (near the main coal fields and most coal-based electricity generation and synfuel production).

The first three are conventional types of storage – that is depleted oil/gas wells and deep saline formations. The fourth, the Karoo Basin, has sandstone formations that

HOUSEHOLDS WITH ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY

| | 1996/97 | 1998/99 | 2000/01 | 2002/03 | 2004/05 | 2006/07 | 2008/09 | 2009/10 | 2010/11 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.Total number of households | 9 258 000 | 11 077 100 | 11 320 614 | 11 429 819 | 11 891 395 | 12 317 505 | 12 675 275 | 12 860 165 | 13 068 953 |
| 2. HH with access to electricity | 5 544 968 | 6 774 207 | 7 735 748 | 7 959 862 | 8 610 706 | 8 819 835 | 9 245 357 | 9 419 466 | 9 624 445 |
| % | 59.9% | 61.2% | 68.3% | 69.6% | 72.4% | 72.0% | 74.5% | 74.9% | 75.8% |
| 3. HH with no access to electricity | 3 713 032 | 4 302 893 | 3 584 866 | 3 469 957 | 3 280 689 | 3 497 670 | 3 429 918 | 3 440 699 | 3 444 508 |
| 4. New electrical connections(cumulative) | 1 432 073 | 2 302 789 | 3 036 726 | 3 654 060 | 4 144 214 | 4 452 758 | 4 930 101 | 5 097 423 | 5 300 250 |

HOUSEHOLDS WITH ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY




| | |
|---|---|
| Definition | Number of households connected to grid electricity through Eskom and municipalities. Household figures based on Department of Energy's projection using census data |
| Data source | 1-4) National Electricity Regulator of South Africa; Statistics South Africa Department of Energy |
| Data note | The difference in household figures is due to the different methodologies used by the departments where data is sourced vis a vis the various surveys conducted by Statistics SA. The backlog figures has also considered growth (in informal settlements and low cost housing), for an example Gauteng Province look less in terms of access to electricity because of growth (in informal settlement). |

are subject to low permeability and also to dolerite intrusions.

Consequently, further investigation is required as to how carbon dioxide could be stored in these less favourable formations.

The Karoo Basin is the closest to the current major sources of carbon dioxide emissions.

- The $CO_2$ Test Injection Experiment of safely injecting carbon dioxide into South African reservoirs is essential to understanding the suitability of the local geology as a storage medium. It is also necessary to ascertain the dispersion and transformation reactions of carbon dioxide in the storage medium and its effects on the surroundings of the storage medium. This experiment will be informed by similar injection activities underway internationally.
- A demonstration plant will test an integrated operating system under local conditions and form an essential link between feasibility trials and a full-scale commercial plant. This phase will demonstrate the safe injection of carbon dioxide into South African geological formations. The magnitude of the demonstration plant is in the order of hundreds of thousands of tons of carbon dioxide per year.
- If positive outcomes of the demonstration plant ensue, a full-scale commercial plant is envisaged. This phase will be dependent on the outputs of the previous phases.

## Working for Energy Programme

In 2010, the Department of Energy launched the Working for Energy Programme, with the primary objective of using the feedstock created from clearing alien biomass vegetation to produce power.

The programme focuses on two things: the provision of energy through renewable-energy technologies and the facilitation of energy management. Both use labour-intensive methodologies to stimulate sustainable job creation, local economic development, technology skills transfer and capacity development within a South African context.

Through this programme, it intends to diversify its energy mix and increase access to energy. The department will ensure that all projects under this programme are labour-intensive, educational and empower communities.

In 2011/12, the department allocated R25 million for this project, which is implemented by Sanedi.

## Designated National Authority (DNA) for Clean Development Mechanism (CDM)

The Department of Energy is mandated to regulate and promote the implementation of a CDM in South Africa. This is done to make sure that South Africa complies with its obligations under the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

As custodian of CDM, the DNA is responsible for ensuring that CDM investments are in line with sustainable development objectives and that South Africa benefits from the CDM.

In 2011/12, the DNA received and reviewed 58 clean development project proposals; 52 project identification notes and six project design documents.

Two projects were registered with the CDM's executive board. These were the Ekurhuleni Land-fill Gas Recovery Project, which has the potential of ensuring a reduction of 243 629 t of carbon dioxide equivalent ($CO_2$) a year, and the Fuel Switch Project on the Gluten 20 dryer of the Germiston Mill of Tongaat Hulett Starch Pty (Ltd), which has the potential of reducing 8 360 t of $CO_2$ a year.

By the end of 2011/12, South Africa had 19 registered projects, six of which had been issued with certified emission reductions amounting to 1,7 Mt of $CO_2$. The CDM uptake was slow, mainly because of the complexities associated with the CDM project cycle. The DNA conducted programmes to raise awareness and to build capacity in this area.

## Liquid Fuels Roadmap

As a result of the identified constraints throughout the liquid fuels supply chain, the Department of Energy embarked on a pro-

Construction of the two terminals that complete the first phase of freight logistics group Transnet's New Multi Product Pipeline (NMPP) is on track, The mechanical, electrical, instrumentation and piping work started in January 2013.

The terminals – one in Heidelberg and the other in the Cutlet Complex at Island View in Durban – are expected to be completed by the end of 2013. The NMPP is a key strategic investment for South Africa that will ensure the supply of petroleum products to regions.

Once complete, the NMPP will have capacity to carry five products, namely 95 and 93 unleaded petrol, 500 and 50 PPM diesel, and jet fuel.

cess to develop a Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Roadmap. A key objective of this roadmap is to ensure that South Africa has access to reliable, affordable, clean, sufficient and sustainable sources of energy to meet the country's liquid fuel demand.

In addition, in dealing with the supply challenges of refineries, in 2012 the department conducted an audit of the country's refineries to assess the state of the refineries and to obtain an understanding of their current capacity.

A preliminary investigation indicated that South Africa's refineries are experiencing reduced production levels, which is equally a threat to liquid fuels security of supply.

## The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan will form the basis for the implementation of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission Strategic Implementation Project regarding refinery upgrades and development, and will make recommendations on the future of the refinery infrastructure in the country.

As a further response to the global situation and domestic development imperatives, the department decided to strengthen the Strategic Fuels Fund (SFF), a subsidiary of the CEF. A new SFF board with the requisite complement of skills and a new chief executive officer were expected to be appointed by the end of 2012. The Department of Energy will position the SFF to improve the country's strategic petroleum reserves and enable the country to better respond to catastrophic global events that impact on the petroleum trade.

## Renewable energy programmes from Eskom

Eskom has an active research programme investigating ways to harness South Africa's renewable energy sources for power generation. Eskom is looking to increase the renewables component of its supply mix.

The long-term strategic energy plan includes a mix of all viable sources, including renewables, to be implemented where commercially viable. The two most advanced areas under investigation are wind-generated and concentrated solar thermal power.

Eskom's renewable energy journey has been affected by several factors, including the changing nature of power generation, environmental concerns and procuring loans that will fund solar and wind-electricity generation.

Other loans obtained to expand the programmes to develop renewable energy projects include €100 million from the Agence Française de Développement, and US$260 million (part of a US$3,75 billion loan) from the World Bank. Construction on the project was underway in 2012.

## Sere Wind Farm

Eskom signed two loan agreements totalling US$365 million with the African Development Bank (AfDB) in September 2011, which will go towards financing Eskom's 100-MW Sere Wind Farm in Vredendal, Western Cape.

The loans consist of US$265 million from the AfDB's own resources and US$100 million from the Clean Technology Fund, a climate investment fund that promotes the transfer of low-carbon technologies. The Sere Project will go into commercial operation towards the end of 2013.

## Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme

Another project is the 1 333-MW Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme in KwaZulu-Natal, with a roll-out cost of R23 billion.

This plant comprises two dams that are connected via an underground powerhouse, with four 333-MW pump turbines. Each dam has a capacity of roughly 22 million m³. Water will flow from the upper dam to the lower in peak times, generating power as it passes through the turbines, and when the demand is low the turbines will pump the water back to the upper dam.

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme is scheduled to come on line in 2014 and add 1 332 MW of hydro power to South Africa's electricity grid, as well as making a significant contribution to job creation and rural development.

## Underground coal gassification

Eskom also has an underground coal gassification project in the pilot stage, with a test plant next to Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga. The gas produced is co-fired with coal in Majuba's Unit Four, and contributes 3 MW to the station's output.

When the pilot plant delivered its first batch of gas to Majuba in October 2010, Eskom made history as the event marked the first production of commercial electricity from underground coal gassification outside the former Soviet Union.

The process entails using coal seams that cannot be mined for various reasons – they may be too deep, or fractured, or of poor quality – and turns the coal into clean gas on site. With the region's substantial coal reserves, there is potential in this source of power. Eskom has developed a 10-year transmission development plan which includes renewable energy integration.

## Concentrated solar power

A solar park is a concentrated zone of solar plants that are built in clusters, sharing common transmission and infrastructure. Together, these clusters generate thousands of megawatts of electricity. The types of technologies used are solar photovoltaic and concentrated photovoltaic, which operate with semiconductors and solar panels, as well as concentrated solar power, which uses mirrors to reflect the sun's rays.

Photovoltaic systems make a direct conversion into electricity, and are ideal to use at peak load times. The only drawback is that there is no cost-effective way to store this power, so it is only viable when the sun is shining.

Concentrated solar power, on the other hand, captures the sun as heat and turns it into steam to power turbines, which in turn generate electricity – much like coal-fired plants. Its advantage is that it is cheap and efficient to store heat, so power can be supplied around the clock.

According to the Department of Energy, about 15 300 jobs will be created through the solar park to boost the economy of the Northern Cape, where there are high levels of unemployment. The park will also diversify the province's industry profile, which is currently limited to mining and agriculture.

South Africa's first solar plant of its kind was unveiled in October in Ekurhuleni, Gauteng.

The solar power plant, situated at the environmentally friendly OR Tambo Precinct in Wattville outside Benoni, produces about 200 kW of electricity through 860 photovoltaic solar panels on 2 500 m² of land, generating enough energy to power about 133 low-cost houses.

Energy produced by the solar pant will be connected to the grid using 18 inverters and one combiner unit.

## Compact fluorescent lamp (CFL) exchange

Through Eskom's Efficient Lighting Campaign, South Africans saved 1 800 MW between 2004 and 2010 – enough to power a city the size of Durban.

Eskom's CFL roll-out encouraged South Africans to switch from incandescent bulbs to energy-efficient CFLs – miniature versions of full-sized tubular fluorescents – in line with

global trends. CFLs use up to 80% less electricity than traditional incandescent light bulbs, while providing the same amount of light.

The CFLs were distributed free to consumers across the country in exchange for their existing incandescent bulbs. The environmentally friendly light bulbs, which used to cost between R60 and R80 each, came down in price in 2011 to about R15 per bulb on average.

The campaign has been remarkably effective. Its highlights included:

- between 2007 and 2012, more than 30 million CFLs were distributed free of charge to South Africa
- more than seven million tons of $CO_2$ emissions were saved
- more than 30 000 jobs were created.

Between 2011 and 2014, the CFL Sustainability Programme is to distribute between 20 million and 40 million CFLs.

By November 2012, Eskom had distributed 54 million light bulbs.

## International cooperation

### Sustainable development in Africa

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project was signed in October 2004.

This New Partnership for Africa's Development flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydro-electric energy of the Inga rapids site in the DRC to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Namibia, South Africa, the DRC, Botswana and Angola. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of the DRC, Angola, Namibia, Botswana and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River, will be the first of these projects.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

### Energy and the global environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 Mt of carbon dioxide per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The Department of Energy is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption, and therefore is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa is proactively moving the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Energy playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the CDM of the Kyoto Protocol. It developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

The Grand I MoU signed with the DRC is an important milestone in working towards sustainable African partnerships aimed at developing strategies for low-carbon economies and interconnected energy systems.

The Tete-Maputo Power Transmission Line, also known as the Centre-South Project (Cesul), in Mozambique, will improve the ability to evacuate power from the projects in the northern Mozambique complex, particularly releasing the hydropower potential relating to Mpanda Nkuwa and Cahora Bassa, among others.

The South African Renewables Initiative secures international financing partnerships in investment in deploying renewable energy; and develops renewable supply chains through securing a critical mass of renewable energy, without imposing undue burden on the fiscus or the South African consumer.

In line with this objective, the Department of Energy has signed a Declaration of Intent with Germany, the United Kingdom, Denmark, Norway and the European Investment Bank. This agreement will lead to the establishment of a fund to assist in the deployment of renewable energy.

Further, the department participates in structures such as the:

- International Renewable Energy Agency
- International Energy Forum
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation
- UN Industrial Development Organisation
- Clean Energy Ministerial
- African Union-European Union Energy Partnership.

### Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia.

Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply has risen from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005).

This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

### Import and export of fuel products

The importation of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, owing to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho and Swaziland.

At a bilateral level, the Department of Energy signed seven agreements/declarations of intent with the International Energy Agency, the Swiss Confederation, Ghana, Lesotho, Denmark, Korea, and the DRC.

These agreements cover access to capacity-building, funding, technology, exchange of information and development of energy infrastructure on the continent with the objective of increasing generation capacity.

## Conclusion

With South Africa's growing population and increasing need for energy, the Department of Energy is continuously working towards ensuring energy security, achieving universal

access, transforming the energy sector and ensuring the optimal use of energy resources.

A great deal has been achieved during the last financial year. Some milestones include:

- the construction of the New Multiproduct Pipeline
- the launch of the energy efficiency campaign
- installation of more than 250 000 solar water heater systems
- completion of the wind atlas, which accurately quantifies the country's wind energy resources
- signing of seven bilateral agreements and declarations of intent, covering areas of cooperation in capacity-building, funding, technology and infrastructure.

By 2020, it is envisaged that:

- coal rail capacity will match coal export port capacity at Richards Bay
- the Kusile coal-fired power station will be commissioned and at least 7 000 MW of renewable energy will be contracted, mostly from private IPPs
- liquefied natural gas infrastructure will be in place to power the first combined-cycle gas turbines
- pro-poor electricity tariffs will be better targeted to include all qualifying electricity customers
- electrification coverage will reach at least 85%, with affordable access to complementary energy sources that include solar water and space heating
- a decision will be made on whether South Africa should continue importing petroleum products or invest in a new refinery.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 MW of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydroelectricity. About 11 000 MW of Eskom's older coal-powered stations will be decommissioned, but close to 6 000 MW of new coal capacity will be contracted – part of it from other southern African countries.

Long-term goals also include the promotion of cleaner coal technologies through research and development investments, and technology-transfer agreements.

The extent of economically recoverable coalbed seam and shale gas reserves will also be better understood. Subject to acceptable environmental controls, these gas resources, supplemented by liquefied natural gas imports, will begin to supply a growing share of power production. This could avoid the need for further base-load nuclear generation.

South Africa has committed to substantial reductions in carbon dioxide emissions by 2025 and supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

## Acknowledgements

*Business Day* Business Report
Department of Energy Developmental Indicators, 2012
*Energy Efficiency Strategy, First Review Digest of South African Energy Statistics* – 2009
*Engineering News*

*www.businessday.co.za*
*www.cef.org.za*
*www.ecdc.co.za*
*www.energy.gov.za*
*www.engineeringnews.co.za*
*www.eskom.co.za*
*www.fin24.com*
*www.gov.za*
*www.hartrao.ac.za*
*www.miningweekly.co.za*
*www.news24.com*
*www.sabcnews.com*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.saneri.org.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sasol.co.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.globaldialogue.info*

## Suggested reading

Bond, P, Dada, R & Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate Change, Carbon Trading and Civil Society: Negative Returns on South African Investments.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

*Energy Efficiency Made Simple.* 2008. Bedfordview: Crown Publications.

*Scoping Study on Water Use of Crops/Trees for Biofuels in South Africa: Report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: Water Research Commission.

*Water Conservation Through Energy Conservation.* 2007. Gezina: Water Research Commission.

Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner Energy, Cooler Climate: Developing Sustainable Energy Solutions for South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Environmental Affairs

South Africa is a land of variety and extremes; its climatic conditions, for example, vary considerably, notably from the coastal to the inland regions. Topographically it is also characterised by extremes, ranging from a narrow coastal plain to a steep escarpment and a large plateau.

The country boasts a remarkable diversity of species. Although it has a land surface area of 1,2 million km$^2$ – representing just 2% of the Earth's total land surface – South Africa contains almost 10% of the world's total known bird, fish and plant species, and more than 6% of the world's mammal and reptile species.

Government is committed to protect the country's rich biodiversity heritage for the benefit of all, and to create a prosperous and equitable society that live in harmony with its natural resources.

The Department of Environmental Affairs is mandated to formulate, coordinate and monitor the implementation of national environmental policies, programmes and legislation. Strategies are, therefore, in place to:

- protect, conserve and enhance the environment, and natural and heritage assets and resources
- plan, manage and prevent pollution and environmental degradation to ensure a sustainable and healthy environment
- provide leadership on climate-change adaptation and mitigation
- contribute to sustainable development, livelihood, and green and inclusive economic growth by facilitating skills development and job creation
- contribute to a better Africa and a better world by advancing national environmental interests through a global sustainable development agenda.

## Budget and funding

The total budget at 2012/13 for the Department of Environmental Affairs stood at R4,512,161 billion.

The Green Fund, which was established in 2012/13, was allocated R300 million. A further R380 million was allocated to the Department of Environmental Affairs for the Working

The Minister of Environmental Affairs, Ms Edna Molewa, launched the *National Biodiversity Assessment 2011 Report* on International Day for Biodiversity, celebrated annually on 22 May 2013. The assessment focuses on spatial biodiversity information, including species and ecosystems.

on Fire Programme and R750 million for the Working for Water Programme.

The Natural Resource Management Subprogramme received an additional R1,1 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period for Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) projects related to the Working for Water and Working on Fire subprogrammes. In addition, the South African National Parks (SANParks) received an additional allocation of R350 million over the medium term for infrastructure development.

Budget allocations for entities reporting to government were as follows:

- SANParks: R230,521 million
- South African Weather Service (SAWS): R250 million.
- South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi): R421 million.
- iSimangaliso Wetlands Park Authority: R128 million.

## Legislation and policies

The framework within which the department fulfils it mandate is guided by a number of policies and legislation.

- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), establishes the concepts of participatory, cooperative and developmental governance in environmental management, as well as principles for environmental management and provides for structures to facilitate these.
- The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Nemba), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), reformed South Africa's laws regulating biodiversity. It sets out the mechanisms for managing and conserving South Africa's biodiversity and its components; protecting species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting, including indigenous biological resources; and the establishment of Sanbi.
- National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003), provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas, the establishment of a national register of protected areas, as well as the proclamation and management of these areas.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 15 of 2009), provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites to SANParks.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004), provides for a national system of protected areas in South Africa as part of a strategy to manage and conserve the country's biodiversity.
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (AQA), 2004 (Act 39 of 2004), reforms the law regulating air quality to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development.
- The National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008), establishes a system of integrated coastal and estuarine management in the country; ensuring socially and environmentally responsible development and use.
- The National Environmental Management:

The *National Environmental Compliance and Enforcement Report 2011/12* was published in November 2012. It included the work of the Environmental Management Inspectorate, commonly known as the Green Scorpions – a network of environmental compliance and enforcement officials from national, provincial and municipal government, tasked with implementing and ensuring compliance to environmental legislation.

Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008), reforms the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment.
- The National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 46 of 2003).
- The National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 8 of 2004).
- The National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 44 of 2008).
- The National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 62 of 2008).
- The National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 14 of 2009).
- The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), provides for the cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of, and related activities in a world heritage site.
- SAWS Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).
- Sea Shores Act, 1935, (Act 21 of 1935).
- Sea Birds and Seals Protection Act, 1973 (Act 46 of 1973).
- Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980 (Act 73 of 1980).
- Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988).
- Antarctic Treaties Act, 1996 (Act 60 of 1996).
- Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998).
- Prince Edward Islands Act, 1948 (Act 48 of 1948).

Other policy frameworks include:
- *The White Paper on National Climate Change Response, 2011*
- *The White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management, 2000*
- *The White Paper on Environmental Management, 1998*
- *The White Paper on Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity, 1997.*
- *White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa, 2000.*

During 2012, the following legislation was amended or pending promulgation:
- The amended regulations of Nemba, 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), were gazetted in August 2012.
- The regulations regarding fees for the provision of aviation meteorological services of the SAWS Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001) were gazetted in March 2012.
- The Western Cape Biosphere Reserves Bill was introduced in the provincial Parliament in March 2011. When the Bill is passed, South Africa will be the first country in the world to have adopted specific legislation in terms of which biosphere reserves are regulated.
- Government established a legal framework to manage radioactive waste as set out in the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) which came into effect in February 2000.

In July 2012, the Council of the Global Environment Facility extended funding of R25 million to the Department of Environmental Affairs aimed at strengthening wildlife forensic capabilities in southern Africa through the enhancement of forensic-based technologies. This forms part of efforts to combat wildlife crimes, such as rhino poaching and the illegal international trade in their horns.

## National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD)

In 2008, Cabinet approved the South Africa NFSD. The approval signalled a new wave of thinking aimed at promoting the effective stewardship of South Africa's natural, social and economic resources. Following the approval of the NFSD, the National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan – also referred to as NSSD 1 (2011 – 2014) – was approved by Cabinet in November 2011, with an implementation time frame of 2011 to 2014.

The NSSD 1 builds on the 2008 NFSD, as well as several initiatives that address issues of sustainability in South Africa, and marks the continuation of a national partnership for sustainable development. The 1992 Rio Earth Summit, followed by the 2002 Johannesburg World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD), provided a platform to learn and begin to implement sustainability practices.

The 2012 Rio+20 identified two important themes to support the country's efforts: the green economy in the context of sustainable development and poverty eradication, and the

In July 2012, the International Wildlife Management Congress took place at Durban's International Convention Centre. It was hosted by American Maryland-based Wildlife Society in partnership with South African National Parks, the Wildlife and Environmental Society of South Africa, and the provincial wildlife authority Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife. The theme of this year's congress was *Cooperative Wildlife Management Across Borders: Learning in the Face of Change.*

institutional framework for sustainable development. The following five strategic objectives were identified in the NSSD 1:

- enhancing systems for integrated planning and implementation
- sustaining our ecosystems and using natural resources efficiently
- towards a green economy
- building sustainable communities
- responding effectively to climate change.

The Department of Environmental Affairs will establish and oversee the National Committee on Sustainable Development that will operate in multifolds among government spheres to engage civil society, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the private sector, academia, independent reviewers and other multi-stakeholders

### The Green Economy Accord

In 2012, the National Development Plan was launched as a new economic framework for South Africa. It aims to create an additional 11 million jobs by 2030. The Green Economy Accord is the fourth accord of the New Growth Path Policy and sets out 12 commitments to give effect to the green economy.

The South African Government and its social partners signed the Green Economy Accord in November 2011 as an outcome of social dialogue on government's New Growth Path.

The accord facilitates a green partnership to create jobs, provide a spur for industrialisation and help to create a sustainable future for this and the next generation. It is one of a series of agreements in which social partners commit to work together to achieve the goals of the New Growth Path.

### Climate Change Policy Framework

In July 2012, the Minister of Public Enterprises, Mr Malusi Gigaba, launched the Department of Public Enterprises' Climate Change Policy Framework for all state-owned companies (SOCs) under his portfolio.

The framework is to optimise the impact of the SOCs on the reduction of carbon emissions and development of the green economy without compromising the SOCs' financial viability. An announcement on the move towards a biofuels strategy and the signing of the United Nations' (UN) Global Compact by SOCs also followed.

The framework is intended to guide longer term actions required to put South Africa on a low-carbon development path and to ensure that the SOCs lead as agents of change in the process of building a green economy.

## Role players

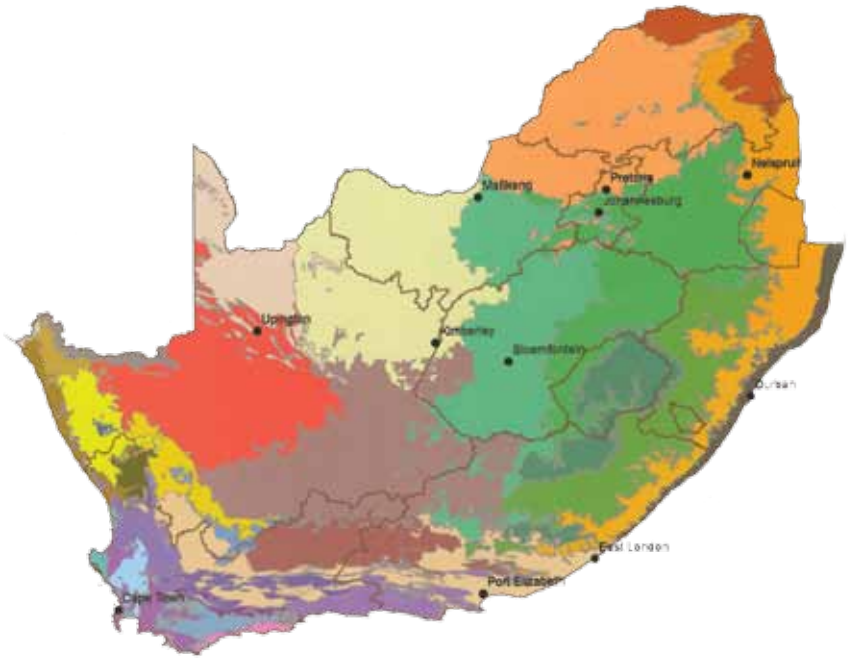
### South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi)

Sanbi was formed in September 2004 through Nemba, 2004. The Act expanded the responsibilities of Sanbi's forerunner, the National Botanical Institute, which was flora-focused, to include responsibilities relating to the full spectrum of South Africa's biodiversity.

Sanbi is a respected authority in research and has an unmatched research record in the indigenous, naturalised and alien flora of

The devil worm *(halicephalobus mephisto)*, a tiny worm found in South Africa, is officially one of the 10 strangest species discovered in 2011. The International Institute for Specie Scouting at the University of Arizona, United States of America, in collaboration with experts around the world, annually updates the list of bizarre newly discovered fauna and flora. The worm, which is only half a millimetre long, was discovered in deep cracks in South African gold mines, between 0,9 km and 3,6 km below the surface – deeper underground than any known species can survive.

**Bioregions of South Africa**




- Northwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southern Fynbos Bioregion
- South Coast Fynbos Bioregion
- Western Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- Eastern Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- West Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- East Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- Karoo Renosterveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Cape Shrublands Bioregion
- Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion
- West Strandveld Bioregion
- Richtersveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Hardeveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Sandveld Bioregion
- Knersvlakte Bioregion
- Trans-Escarpment Succulent Karoo Bioregion
- Rainshadow Valley Karoo Bioregion
- Southern Namib Desert Bioregion
- Gariep Desert Bioregion
- Bushmanland Bioregion
- Upper Karoo Bioregion
- Lower Karoo Bioregion
- Drakensberg Grassland Bioregion
- Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion
- Mesic Highveld Grassveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Grassland Bioregion
- Central Bushveld Bioregion
- Mopane Bioregion
- Lowveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Savanna Bioregion
- Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Bioregion
- Kalahari Dunneveld Bioregion
- Albany Thicket
- Indian Ocean Coastal Belt

Source: *Vision Endangered Wildlife Trust Seventeenth Annual*

southern Africa and beyond. Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change. Sanbi is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision-making.

Its biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions, such as the grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo, are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way.

Sanbi is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. It is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

The institute operates environmental education programmes within its national botanical gardens, while outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

Sanbi is South Africa's official body to facilitate access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol.

## iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority

As an area of exceptional and outstanding universal heritage significance, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park was inscribed as South Africa's first world heritage site in December 1999.

The park has received recognition under three of four natural criteria recognised by the World Heritage Convention: it has outstanding examples of ecological processes, superlative natural phenomena and scenic beauty, and exceptional biodiversity and threatened species.

iSimangaliso is 332 000 ha and comprises 9% of South Africa's coastline. It includes five ecosystems (marine, coastal dunes, lake systems, wetlands and woodlands). The species lists for the park are the longest in the region. Of the species listed in the park, 56 are endemic to KwaZulu-Natal, 108 to South Africa and 467 are listed as threatened and endangered in South Africa. The park also has four Ramsar sites.

iSimangaliso is located in one of South Africa's poorest rural areas and has been largely under claim. All but three of the land claims settlements have been concluded and a series of co-management agreements have been signed with land claimants. The management of such a diverse asset in an area of extreme poverty and high expectations requires an adaptive and inclusive approach.

## South African Weather Service (SAWS)

The SAWS strives to provide useful and innov-

**Important dates on the world's environmental calendar:**
World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
Earth Hour: 27 March
Earth Day: 22 April
National Bird Week: 3 – 9 May
International Day for Marine Biological Diversity: 22 May
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Day to Combat Desertification: 17 June
National Arbour Week: 1 to 7 September
World Water Week: 5 – 11 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
International Coastal Clean-up Day: 18 September
World Car Free Day: 22 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
Weedbuster Week: 4 – 8 October
World Habitat Day: 5 October
National Marine Week: 11 – 15 October
International Mountain Day: 11 December

ative weather, climate and related products and services through the following:

- enhancing observational data and communications networks
- effectively developing and managing talent within the sector
- enhancing collaborative partnerships and effectively disseminating weather services products to the users
- utilising cutting edge technology to convert data into meaningful products and services for risk mitigation
- advancing the science of meteorology, research and relevant applications
- enhancing fiscal discipline and resource mobilisation to ensure sustainability.

In its continued efforts to carry out its legal mandate, the work of SAWS is guided by five key strategic goals:

- ensuring the continued relevance of the organisation in delivering meteorological related products and services in compliance with all applicable regulatory frameworks
- ensuring effective management of stakeholder, partner and key client relations
- addressing the short-term viability and long-term sustainability of the entity's revenue and ensuring continued fiscal discipline
- ensuring continuous organisational effectiveness and efficiency
- ensuring the availability of strategy-driven human capital capacity for the performance of the SAWS.

### South African National Parks (SANParks)

SANParks' primary mandate is to oversee the conservation of South Africa's biodiversity, landscapes and associated heritage assets through a system of national parks. Its mandate is based on the following core values:

- conservation management through the national parks system
- constituency building and people-focused eco-tourism management
- corporate governance and sound business and operational management.

SANParks plays a significant role in the promotion of South Africa's nature-based tourism or ecotourism business, targeted at both international and domestic markets. The ecotourism pillar provides for the organisation's much-needed self-generated revenues from commercial operations.

A pair of black eagles, nesting at the Walter Sisulu National Botanical Gardens in Roodepoort, Gauteng, has a webcam trained on their nest to broadcast the hatching of their chicks on the internet. The eagles are thought to have been nesting in the same spot for 35 years, raising chicks in a semi-urban environment. The webcam feed is available on *www.africam.com.*

The work of SANParks focuses on building strategic partnerships at international, national and local levels, in support of the conservation of the natural and cultural heritage of South Africa. It has to ensure that South Africans participate and get involved in biodiversity initiatives, and that all its operations have a synergistic existence with neighbouring communities for their educational and socio-economic benefit.

In 2012, SANParks was responsible for the management of 22 national parks.

## Environmental resources

### National botanical gardens

Sanbi manages the nine national botanical gardens, classified as conservation gardens, in five of South Africa's nine provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural

In 2012, two new velvet worm species were discovered in the Western Cape. The Department of Botany and Zoology at Stellenbosch University found significant differences in the make-up of the worms, which qualifies them as a new species. The worms live in rotten logs and are difficult to find. Researchers had previously identified unique species in Australia, New Zealand and Brazil, but the species found in the Western Cape is distinct. The velvet worm, which is a critical indicator of ecosystems health, is nocturnal, preying on small insects as part of the food chain.

vegetation. The gardens, which collectively attract over a million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, which was launched in 2000, and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The national botanical gardens are natural escapes close to some of the country's urban centres, offering visitors a taste of the country's uniquely rich and colourful biodiversity. They feature facilities such as restaurants, function rooms and conference venues and include activities such as hikes, picnics and shopping.

The botanical gardens are:

- Kirstenbosh, Cape Town
- Pretoria
- Harold Porter, Betty's Bay
- Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort
- Hantam, Nieuwoudtville
- Free State, Bloemfontein
- Karoo Desert, Worcester
- KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
- Lowveld, Nelspruit

## National Herbarium

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, houses the largest collection of scientific plant specimens in southern Africa, with over one million specimens.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter-rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

## Protected areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity, to which South Africa is a signatory, required that 10% of terrestrial and 20% of marine biodiversity be conserved by 2010.

There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

By mid-2011, South Africa had 528 protected areas, of which 20 were marine, totalling 7,5 million ha or 6,2% of the land area.

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The department works closely with landowners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship Programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

## Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources.

Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

## Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the

Only about 6% of South Africa's land is covered by protected areas. The Mountain Zebra-Camdeboo Project aims to improve the conservation status of the land to create a corridor between the two national parks. It will provide private landowners with the option to protect their land from environmental threats while maintaining current land use.

The projects's area covers about 530 000 ha and includes sections of four biomes – grassland, Nama Karoo, thicket and savanna – as well as six major vegetation types and a globally important birding area.

It is envisaged that the corridor will consist of a mosaic of SANParks-managed and privately owned and managed properties, which are expected to stimulate economic development and tourism while protecting the area from inappropriate development.

Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

## National parks

South Africa's national parks are among the key drawcards for tourism in South Africa. They also play a major role in conservation.

South Africa has the following national parks:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

SANParks is committed to contributing to economic growth and transformation by creating decent jobs and sustainable and quality livelihoods. National parks are integral to the country's job creation agenda, with more than 10 000 people already employed by the national parks.

Through the infrastructure development programme and EPWP, the organisation ensures that national parks are important components of economic stimulus through enterprise and social development, such as job creation.

## Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas.

Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources. Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

The seven TFCAs are the:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa)
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe)
- Greater Mapungubwe (former Limpopo-Shashe)
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe)
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa)
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

In August 2012, the Zoological Society of London and the World Conservation Union (IUCN) in a joint report, *Spin Less,* announced that a fifth of the world's invertebrates could be faced with extinction. The report indicated that earthworms, butterflies, bees, clams and corals could disappear from the Earth for ever if people didn't interact more carefully with the environment.

The IUCN's Survival Commission said in a statement that invertebrates were indispensable if life on Earth was to continue. A team of conservation scientists studied 12 000 invertebrates on the IUCN Red List, and found that 20% were on the verge of extinction. Invertebrates that live in fresh water are most at risk of extinction, followed by those that live on land and in the sea.

In July 2012, South Africa hosted the 11th BASIC Ministerial Coordination Meeting on Climate Change in Johannesburg. The meeting was aimed at implementing an agreement reached at the previous ministerial meeting held in New Delhi in March 2012. The BASIC group of countries consisting of Brazil, South Africa, India and China is playing an increasingly important role in international environmental governance.

## Biosphere reserves

Biosphere reserves exist in partnership with a range of interested landowners, and can incorporate development, provided it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

The UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's (Unesco) Man and the Biosphere Programme addresses the impact of man on the environment by studying the social, ecological and economic implications of biodiversity loss. It then takes steps to minimise this through the sharing of knowledge, research and monitoring, education and training and multilateral decision-making.

Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management (IEM) are tested. This is important as it helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- In the north there is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- In November 2012, the Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve was recognised by Unesco in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

## World heritage sites

A Unesco World Heritage Site is a place (such as a forest, mountain, lake, desert, monument, building, complex or city) that is listed by Unesco as being of special cultural or physical significance. The programme catalogues, names, and conserves sites of outstanding cultural or natural importance to the common heritage of humanity. While each World Heritage Site remains part of the legal territory of the state wherein the site is located, Unesco considers it in the interest of the international community to preserve each site.

South Africa has seven world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco:

- Robben Island: Situated 11 km offshore from Cape Town, the island is most famous as the place where Nelson Mandela was imprisoned. It is now home to the world-renowned Robben Island Museum and has become a popular tourist attraction.
- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park was listed

as South Africa's first World Heritage Site in December 1999 in recognition of its natural beauty and unique global values. The 332 000 ha park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa's largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000-year-old coastal dunes – among the highest in the world. The name iSimangaliso means miracle and wonder.

- Cradle of Humankind consisting of the the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai: The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo. The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils, that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years. Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago. In April 2010, a new species of hominid, *Australopithecus sediba*, estimated to be two million years old, was discovered in the Cradle of Humankind.
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site) is a world heritage site covering 242,813 ha (2 428 km²) of area. The park spans parts of both South Africa, in KwaZulu-Natal, and Lesotho. The park includes Royal Natal National Park, a provincial park, and Drakensberg National Park, which covers part of Drakensberg, the highest mountain in southern Africa. In November 2000, the uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was added to the World Heritage List. The park is also in the List of Wetlands of International Importance (under the Ramsar Convention).
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site: In September 2011, the Department of Environmental Affairs, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed an historical Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with Nema, 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site. According to the MoA, the integrity of the World Heritage Site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.
- Cape Floral Region, the smallest of the six recognised floral kingdoms of the world, is an area of extraordinarily high diversity and is home to more than 9 000 vascular plant species, of which 69% are endemic. Much of this diversity is associated with the fynbos biome. The economical worth of fynbos biodiversity, based on harvests of fynbos products (e.g. wildflowers) and eco-tourism, is estimated to be in the region of R77 million a year.
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape: The site covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or *Iharu oms*.

## Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

In May 2012, government and landowners of the Vredefort Dome signed a Memorandum of Agreement, taking the site a step closer to becoming a new World Heritage Site and protected under South African law. The signing of the memorandum paved the way for the proclamation of the area and appointment of a management authority that will serve as a precursor for the development of an integrated management plan.

The site has been recognised on the Unesco Heritage List, being described as having outstanding universal value to humankind.

## Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

## Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

## Wetlands

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

By 2012, about 115 000 wetlands, covering over four million hectares, comprising close to 4% of the country's total surface area, had been mapped in South Africa. They are part of the natural infrastructure for gathering, managing and delivering water for human use.

Rhino poaching statistics released in January 2013 by the Department of Environmental Affairs reveal that 668 rhinos were poached in South Africa in 2012. This represents an increase in the previous record of 448 animals killed for their horns in 2011. In March 2013, rhino poaching statistics indicated that the Kruger National Park remained the hardest hit, with 15 rhino poached for their horn since 20 February 2013. Twelve rhino had been poached in KwaZulu-Natal and North West provinces each, while eight had been poached in Limpopo and seven in Mpumalanga.

Of the 50 people arrested, 47 were alleged poachers and three had been charged with the illegal trade in rhino horn following their arrest in possession of three rhino horn, during a raid in Johannesburg in February 2013.

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material to people. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up purification plants/facilities.

South Africa was one of the first six countries to become a signatory to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, called the Ramsar Convention, when it came into force in 1975. It is an intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

The Department of Environmental Affairs is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme, which ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes.

South Africa is seen as a leader in wetlands rehabilitation. Working for Wetlands is a government initiative to preserve the country's wetlands. It was launched in 2001, and since

then a number of wetlands have been rehabilitated. The damage to wetlands currently done can be reversed, as is seen at Rietvlei Dam in Gauteng.

The programme is implemented by Sanbi on behalf of the departments of en-vironmental affairs; of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and of water affairs. It forms part of the Government's EPWP, which seeks to draw unemployed people into the productive sector of the economy.

Government has pledged more than R75 million. Rehabilitation is ongoing, with attention to poverty-stricken areas being of major concern.

## Marine protected areas (MPAs)

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay MPA, Westen Cape
- Bird Island MPA, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop MPA, Westen Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe MPA, Eastern Cape
- False Bay MPA, Westen Cape
- Goukamma MPA, Westen Cape
- Hluleka MPA, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island MPA, Westen Cape
- Pondoland MPA, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg MPA, Westen Cape
- Sardinia Bay MPA, Eastern Cape

In June 2012, the Deputy Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, Ms Rejoice Mabudafhasi, was recognised for her contribution to and leadership role in women and environmental issues at an award ceremony held during the Rio+20 United Nations Conference on Sustainable Development.

In September 2012, the second Eco-Logic Awards function was held at Maropeng. Companies and individuals were recognised in 12 categories for ecological practices that are making a difference in managing the planet. The winners were:
Biodiversity: Endangered Wildlife Trust
Climate change: Food and Trees for Africa
Eco-innovation: Bottleworx
Energy saving: RISO copiers
Recycling: Rocking the daisies
Water award: EcoWash
Youth award: Generation Earth
Eco Angel award: Marcelle Meredith of the NSPCA
Community award: Oyster Bay Reserve
Eco Warrior award: Braam Malherbe
Lifetime Achievement award: Clive Walker.

- Stilbaai MPA, Westen Cape
- Table Mountain MPA, Westen Cape
- Trafalgar MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma MPA, Westen Cape.

## Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa in Pretoria is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it yearly.

It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa, and has over 8 000 individual animal specimens representing over 500 species.

The species are managed across two facilities stretching into the provinces of Gauteng (Pretoria) and Limpopo (Mokopane). About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums and the African Association of Zoos and Aquaria, the NZG participates in several endangered species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance.

Among the endangered species the NZG contributes in conserving are the cheetah,

In September 2012, South Africa and Vietnam signed a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) to address the ongoing poaching of rhinos.

The MoU on Cooperation in the Field of Biodiversity Conservation and Protection will cover cooperation between South Africa and Vietnam in the field of biodiversity management, law enforcement, compliance with the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species and other relevant legislation.

rhino, ground hornbill, red-billed oxpecker and several endangered antelope species.

The 85-ha zoo in Pretoria houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It also plays an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals. The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes involving:

- wattled crane recovery
- amphibian conservation
- ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys
- vulture conservation
- chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute

The Endangered Wildlife Trust is a major partner.

## Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, which covers an area of some 6 000 ha, and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering 1 333 ha.

The two centres supplement the zoo's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and the zoo's own animal collection.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre houses, among other animals, Père David's deer, which is extinct in the wild, pygmy hippopotamus, white rhino, the endangered addax, and scimitar-horned and Arabian oryx. Large herds of impala, springbok, zebra, blesbok and red hartebeest also roam the area.

About 32 ha of the wetland area at the centre have been developed into a system of dams and pans, which serve as a natural haven for waterbirds such as spoonbills, kingfishers, ibises and herons.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre, situated near Pretoria, is best known for its highly successful captive-breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the *South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals* in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species. The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation of coat patterns and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs. It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Mpumalanga was established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The Cape of Good Hope Society for the Prevention of Cruelty Against Animals opened its first short-term wildlife rehabilitation centre in May 2012, offering 24-hour emergency service and short-term care to wild animals in need. Rehabilitation centres allow injured and sick wild animals to recover from trauma before being released back into the wild, or offer them a safe place to live the rest of their lives should they not be able to be returned to their natural habitat.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins as well as white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures. The centre is also known for its wild-dog breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG in Pretoria), bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

## Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish. It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged-tooth sharks.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays. East London aquarium will be 82 years old in 2013, making it South Africa's oldest aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

The aqaurium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water species, and is the fifth-largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World incorporates a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium, the largest dolphinarium in Africa.

## Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG in Pretoria houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is situated inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle, crocodile and fish ponds; the water monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere has been created, and which is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

The giant Moreton Bay wild fig tree of Australian origin (*ficus macrophylla*) at the main entrance of the National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria now occupies a place on the Champion Tree List. The tree has the second-largest canopy of any single tree in South Africa. It is 27 m high and has a trunk circumference of 11,9 m. At its widest, the crown is 43,1 m. The tree is thought to have been planted more than 100 years ago.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit in Mpumalanga, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

## Managing environmental resources

### Private sector involvement

In South Africa, numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. More than 400 organisations concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include among others:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Conservation Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

The 2012 *Red List for Birds* issued by the International Union for Conservation (IUCN), indicated that three bird species in South Africa were under threat.

- The white-backed vulture, the most widespread and common vulture in Africa, was uplisted by two categories: from near-threatened to endangered.
- The grey crowned crane was uplisted from vulnerable to endangered.
- The crowned eagle, a widespread species in sub-Saharan Africa, was globally uplisted from least concern to near-threatened.

Birdlife South Africa also warned that mining activity near sensitive eco-systems was increasingly placing South Africa's birds under severe threat.

The IUCN *Red List of Threatened Species* (also known as the IUCN Red List or Red Data List), founded in 1963, is the world's most comprehensive inventory of the global conservation status of biological species.

### Rhino poaching

In an effort to fight the escalation in rhino poaching, the National Biodiversity Investigators Forum was established specifically for multi-departmental cooperation and information-sharing with various law enforcement bodies.

In addition, the interim National Wildlife Reaction Unit will be established as a permanent unit and the South African National Defence Force is monitoring the 350-km national border in the Kruger National Park, as well as other borders with neighbouring countries. During 2013, an additional 150 rangers will be also be deployed to the Kruger National Park to add to the current 500, to address this crime.

The department will furthermore implement a decision to deploy conservation specialists at key designated ports of entry and exit through which the international trade in endangered species can be exported and imported.

### Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combatting of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This

includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising the spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of the marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the Department of Environmental Affairs will be implementing the national Programme of Action for land-based sources of pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The department has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean.

The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

## Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km$^2$ Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers and 100 honorary fishery-control officers, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery-Control Officers Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental-protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the *Lillian Ngoyi*, *Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge* and *Sarah Baartman.* They patrol up to the 200 nautical-mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ as well as around the Prince Edward Islands. The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) coastal states.

## Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so its movements can be monitored.

Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. South Africa, Namibia, Angola, Mozambique and Tanzania have signed a Memorandum of Understanding that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

The Department of Environmental Affairs hosted the fifth People and Parks Conference in September 2012. The conference was inspired by the World Parks Congress, which emphasised the need to consider communities as key stakeholders in parks management under the theme *Benefits Beyond Boundaries.* The conference deliberated on the issue of resolving land claims, and outlined the areas of cooperation between government and communities in an attempt to resolve claims that are within protected areas.

More than R497 000 was made available by government for seven provinces to implement projects, an initiative that had led to over 4 874 employment opportunities.

## Chemicals and waste management

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste throughout its life cycle, including being a party to a range of multilateral environment agreements and an active member in instruments on chemicals and waste. These include:

- the Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade
- the Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants
- the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer
- Basel Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes
- the Strategic Approach to International Chemicals Management which is governed by the International Conference on Chemicals Management.

South Africa has been playing a significant role in the ongoing negotiations on the Intergovernmental Negotiating Committee to Prepare a Globally Legally Binding Instrument on Mercury, including research on the coal dependent power/electric stations and on the situational analysis of mercury in the country.

In July 2012, the *SA Agulhas II* embarked on a 26-day shakedown cruise to the edge of the ice shelf in Antarctica and sailed back to Cape Town in August 2012.

A group of marine scientists from the Department of Environmental Affairs, the South African Weather Service, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, and the universities of Stellenbosch, Rhodes and Cape Town took part in the trip. Its purpose was to test all ship systems under full operational conditions and to train researchers. A wide variety of vertical and towed probes, nets and underwater photographic equipment was deployed and their associated on-board processing systems were fully tested.

In an effort to align fragmented legislation, the department established a National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination.

Cabinet approved the National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS) in November 2011. The NWMS has eight key goals namely:

- promoting waste minimisation, re-use, recycling and recovery of waste
- ensuring effective and efficient delivery of waste services
- growing the contribution of the waste sector to the green economy
- ensuring that people are aware of the impact of waste on their health, well-being and the environment
- achieving integrated waste management planning
- ensuring sound budgeting and financial management for waste services
- providing measures to rehabilitate contaminated land
- establishing effective compliance with and enforcement of the Waste Act.

In February 2011, the National Domestic Waste Collection Standards came into effect to provide a uniform framework within which domestic waste should be collected in South Africa. The standards guide municipalities on how to provide acceptable, affordable and sustainable waste-collection services.

In assisting municipalities to accelerate waste collection services, the department has undertaken a range of training programmes in 2011/12, including 325 landfill operators, 250 councillors and about 147 waste official and CFOs on the solid waste tariff model.

## Recycling

The National Recycling Forum (NRF) is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa. Members of the NRF include representatives of:

- the formal recycling industry in South Africa
- government departments
- regional recycling forums
- local government-based organisations
- local government utilities and co-opted advisory members

To promote the interests of its members and the formal recycling industry in South Africa, the NRF:

- provides a national communication forum for key players in the field of recycling
- interacts with central and provincial government to encourage the recycling of glass, paper, plastics, tin-plate steel, used oil and electrical and electronic waste
- facilitates the formation of regional forums that draw their memberships from enthusiastic and interested volunteers as well as small recyclers, in the major centres of South Africa.
- encourages the establishment of buy-back centres and drop-off points through the activities of its members in the various centres.

Collect-a-can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in South Africa. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

Since its inception in 1993, the recovery rate for used beverage cans for southern Africa has grown significantly from 18% in 1993, to 72% for 2011. Collect-a-Can has introduced millions of school children to the idea of caring for the environment through its schools competition. In addition, it annually pays out more than

R20 million to an estimated 100 000 collectors, most of whom have no other source of income.

In August 2012, the Integrated Industry Waste Tyre Management Plan of the Recycling and Economic Development Initiative of South Africa was gazetted for immediate implementation. The benefits of the plan include ensuring that the negative environmental impact of tyres are minimised, as well as ensuring coordinated industry action.

This approach will extend the lifespans of landfill sites at a time when land contestation is high and land availability for development of landfill sites is scarce.

### Climate change and air-quality management

As part of efforts to address climate change, the National Climate Change Response Policy was approved in October 2011, and was formally published as a White Paper in the *Government Gazette*.

The policy presents government's vision for an effective climate change response, and the long-term, just transition to a climate-resilient and lower carbon economy and society.

Government continues to engage actively and meaningfully in international climate change negotiations, specifically with the UNFCCC.

Air quality also remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa. The legislation governing air-quality management in South Africa is the AQA, 2004.

Various technical and legislative tools have been developed to roll-out and monitor the implementation of national environmental management. These include, among others:

- National Framework for Air Quality Management
- air quality model by-laws
- Air-Quality Management Planning Manual
- National Ambient Air-Quality Standards and Listed Activities and the Minimum Emission Standards.

Several of these tools are currently under review to build momentum around the ongoing implementation of the AQA.

The South African Air-Quality Information System (Saaqis) contains the latest updated data of locations and can give the status of air quality or pollution for a specific day and time on their website: *www.saaqis.org.za*.

A number of air-quality monitoring stations, mostly in Mpumalanga, eThekwini Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane report to Saaqis.

## Environmental impact management

South Africa's environmental impact assessment (EIA) regulations came into effect in August 2010, signalling the start of the official implementation of a new regime aimed at improving the efficiency and effectiveness of EIA.

The EIA regulations:

- streamline the EIA process
- introduce an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention
- introduce a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.

The Environmental Assessment Practitioners' (EAP) Association of South Africa aims to:

- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field
- encourage continued professional development for EAPs in South Africa
- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

Under the theme *Green Economy: Does it Include You?*, Environment Month 2012 recognised the significance of the green economy as one of the key elements in government's New Growth Path, as well as in the Industry Policy Action Plan.

Celebrated every June, National Environment Month encourages citizens and businesses to make environmentally friendly choices. These include taking action such as reduce, reuse and recycle.

The Department of Environmental Affairs has put in place a new and improved EIA and management regime. In addition, the department is moving towards alternative approaches to environmental impact management.

There is a concerted effort by the department to move towards an integrated permitting system. The department is already fully integrating waste and EIA permitting processes and some provinces have followed suit.

## National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy (EIAMS)

The National EIAMS was launched in February 2010. At the 10 Years of EIA in South Africa Conference in 2008, it was agreed that the system giving effect to the objectives of IEM, as indicated in Section 23 of Nema, 1998, was inadequate. It was further agreed that an EIAMS should be formulated for South Africa. A desired future was sketched and agreement reached that the strategy should be developed and implemented to map the road to achieving such a system.

The EIAMS consists of voluntary and regulated instruments in the next five years, where:

- regulated EIA is used only when it is the most appropriate tool
- EIAM occurs within a strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials
- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned
- government, EAPs, developers, and the community are equally committed to making it work.

Estimates from the World Wide Fund for Nature predict that total paper consumption is set to rise from the current 400 million tons to about 500 million tons by 2020. South African businesses are urged to recycle unwanted paper to help reduce their environmental impact.

According to the Paper Recycling Association of South Africa, for every ton of paper recycled:

- three cubic metres of landfill space is saved, reducing municipalities' transport costs and freeing up landfill space
- 17 trees are saved, which means they could be used in other ways
- energy saved from paper recycling in South Africa per year is sufficient to provide electricity to 512 homes for a year.

## 4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa is aimed at minimising the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

This strategy was approved by the Minister in May 2009, who then mandated the National Off-Road Workgroup to develop an implementation framework for the strategy. A key outcome of the strategy was the development, drafting and implementation of national norms and/or standards, with a supportive enabling legislative framework, to facilitate environmental compliance, responsible tourism and long-term sustainability of the off-road industry.

The banning of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again. The number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches also increased since the ban was enforced.

## Coastal management

Oceans cover three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of protecting it.

There is recognition of the challenges regarding the management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department will focus its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritise developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

The Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which will provide information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park, is the first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, which will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System.

The Department of Environmental Affairs also reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters. The ultimate intention is to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Between 2011 and 2012, the department deployed a range of new equipment on and around the coast of South Africa covering the coastline, shelf waters, the deeper continental slope environment, very deep offshore regions and coastal weather systems.

### Erosion and desertification

According to the UN Environment Programme, desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries as 24 Mt of topsoil are lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US$9 billion every year.

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 million tons of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of South Africa's total land area is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the United Nations Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD), which was ratified in September 1997. The main objectives of the convention include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

The purpose of the convention is to support member countries in Africa to prevent desertification and its consequences. These countries support one another at technical and scientific level, as they share similar climatic conditions.

South Africa also acts as coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group consists of Australia, New Zealand, Argentina, Chile, Uruguay, South Africa and Brazil. The aim is to, among other things, foster scientific and technological cooperation.

South Africa has introduced legislation such as the Nemba, 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

Rhinos were named the 2012 Newsmaker of the Year by the National Press Club in Pretoria. The onslaught on South Africa's rhino population has resulted in much debate throughout the world and has united people to rally behind campaigns against their poaching.

A record number of 668 rhinos were poached in 2012 – one every 13 hours. It is critical for governments, companies, individuals and the media to take action to stop the killing of rhinos.

In September 2012, the Department of Environmental Affairs: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008) was shortlisted for the prestigious 2012 World Future Policy Award.

The award is granted by the World Future Council, which chooses one topic on which policy progress is particularly urgent. The 2012 award was dedicated to exemplary coastal and ocean policies and for the theme, the council partnered with the United Nations Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity, the Global Environment Facility and the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations, with support from the Okeanos Foundation for the Sea.

As part of the UN international campaign to tackle global environmental deterioration and in particular combat dry land degradation, which cover up to one-quarter of the world's land surface, the UN has designated 17 June as the World Day to Combat Desertification. This date marks the anniversary of the adoption of the UNCCD. The theme for 2012 was *Healthy Soil Sustains Your Life: Let's go Land Degradation Neutral.*

The observance of the World Day to Combat Desertification was celebrated one week before the Rio+20 Conference, in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil in June 2012.

## Biodiversity

Biodiversity plays a crucial role in sustainable development and poverty eradication.

In February 2013, South Africa ratified the Nagoya Protocol, which provides for measures to regulate the use of the indigenous fauna and flora of a country as well as their associated traditional knowledge.

South Africa was the first country in 2013 and the 12th country overall to ratify the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the Convention on Biological Diversity. South Africa became party to the Convention on Biological Diversity in 1995.

The Nagoya Protocol is a legally binding agreement outlining a set of terms prescribing how one country will gain access to another country's genetic resources and how the benefits derived will be shared.

In October 2012, the Green Building Council of South Africa officially launched the Green Star SA Public and Education Building rating tool at its annual convention in Cape Town. The tool will be used to assess and assign a rating based on the environmental merits of new or significantly refurbished public and education building developments. It consists of eight environmental-impact categories for assessment and one innovation category with ratings possible at the design and post-construction phases.

South Africa is the third most biodiverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively contain more than two thirds of global biodiversity.

South Africa is home to approximately 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians, South Africa ranks as the fifth richest country in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

As a biodiversity-rich country, South Africa is committed to the conservation and sustainable management of biological resources and is a signatory to the following biodiversity-related multilateral agreements:

- Convention on Biological Diversity Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (Cites)
- UNCCD
- Convention on Migratory Species.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) is aimed at establishing a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

A scientific, systematic biodiversity assessment for the country was carried out in 2004 to spatially support the NBSAP, titled the National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment (NSBA).

The NSBA was updated in 2012, forming the National Biodiversity Assessment (NBA 2011), with many significant findings requiring conservation action.

The NBA 2011 provides a new national map of areas that are important for climate change resilience, supporting functional, stable landscapes in the long term.

In addition, marine and coastal habitat types and wetland ecosystem types have been identified and mapped for the first time, and the estuarine functional zone has been mapped for the first time for all estuaries. The NBA 2011 will lay the foundation for the revision of the NBSAP.

The National Biodiversity Framework (NBF), published in 2009, provides a framework to coordinate and align the efforts of the many organisations and individuals involved in conserving and managing South Africa's biodiversity, in support of sustainable development. The NBF is a requirement of the Nemba, 2004.

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots (areas with especially high concentrations of biodiversity, which are under serious threat) are found in South Africa. They are the:

- Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the fynbos biome)
- Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia)
- Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, the eastern side of Swaziland and into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga.

The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which are divided into 70 veld types.

## National biodiversity biomes

### Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, and is generally known as bushveld.

In June 2012, SANParks launched the second phase of the SANParks Kudu Green School Initiative at the Pilanesberg National Park. This environmental programme was started in 2010, targeting urban schools to enable learners to understand climate's influence on society, as well as appreciation of their environment.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*tarchonanthus camphoratus*).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*Acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*acacia galpinii*), mopani (*colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions.

The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhinoceros, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck, hippopotamus and many others.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

### Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third-largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20,5% of the country or more than 260 000 km$^2$. It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 mm a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east.

Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (*acacia karoo*) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

## Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the second-largest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km$^2$ and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1,9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved.

The Grassland Biome provides essential ecosystem services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value.

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee (*rhus lancea*), wild currant (*rhus pyroides*), white stinkwood (*celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third-largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemicity for birds. Birds commonly found in the area include the black korhaan, blue crane and guinea-fowl.

## Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family *asteraceae*), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairy land. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered from horizon to horizon with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall).

This is a winter-rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (*aloe dichotoma*) and the human-like elephant's trunk (*pachypodium namaquanum*) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of neighbouring biomes (Fynbos and Nama-Karoo).

The biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

## Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the Earth's land surface.

Fynbos, which is found mainly in the Western Cape, is the name given to a group of evergreen plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, and incorporates diverse plant species (more than 8 500 kinds, of which more than 6 000 are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, which is South Africa's national flower. The

biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, the Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. baboon, honey-badger, caracal, rhebuck and several types of eagle and dassies are found in the mountains.

### Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant natural forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively.

Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (*podocarpus spp.*), ironwood (*olea capensis*) and lemonwood (*xymalos monospora*) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

### Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second-smallest biome in South Africa, and is known for its high biodiversity.

Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species in the Thicket Biome are endemic to the biome.

The Thicket Biome, which is predominantly in the Eastern Cape, supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (*geochelone pardalis*), angulate tortoise (*chersina angulata*), tent tortoise (*psammobates tentorius*) and parrot-beaked tortoise (*homopus areolatus*).

### Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water. Common examples of such habitats are broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in this Biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

## International cooperation

South Africa has signed several international conventions, treaties, protocols and other agreements, which has strongly regarding the principles of sustainable development.

These multilateral environmental agreements include among others, the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity (ratified in 1995)
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (South Africa became a party in 2003)
- Kyoto Protocol (signed in 2003)
- UN Convention to Combat Desertification

(signed in 1995, ratified in 1997)
- World Heritage Convention (ratified in 1997)
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (ratified in 1975)
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species (acceded in 1991).

In 2012, South African Airways joined an internationally benchmarked and transparent carbon offset programme that will enable passengers to make voluntary contributions to offset the effects of climate change. Customers can buy carbon offset credits with their air tickets in a single transaction on *www.flysaa.com.*

## United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC)

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997, which is aimed at:
- implementing urgent action, from 2013 to 2020, including the adoption of a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol; and a number of institutional mechanisms such as the Green Climate Fund
- acknowledging the inadequate commitments to reduce emissions made thus far; a work programme was agreed upon to increase pre-2020 levels of ambition
- action for the future with the negotiation of a legal agreement for the period beyond 2020.

The UNFCCC entered into force in 1994. The Conference of the Parties (COP) to the UNFCCC has been meeting annually to assess progress in dealing with climate change. The COP is the supreme body of the convention ans is its highest decision-making authority.

With 195 parties, the UNFCCC has near universal membership and is the parent treaty of the 1997 Kyoto Protocol. The Kyoto Protocol has been ratified by 193 of the UNFCCC parties.

Under the protocol, 37 states, consisting of highly industrialised countries and countries undergoing the process of transition to a market economy, have legally binding emission limitation and reduction commitments.

The ultimate objective of both treaties is to stabilise greenhouse gas concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will prevent dangerous human interference with the climate system.

The launch of the negotiation to shape the new global climate change agreement and first discussions on how to raise ambition took place at the UNFCCC in Bonn in May 2012, which prepared decisions for adoption at the UNFCCC in Qatar later in 2012.

One of the central outcomes of the meeting in South Africa was to pave the way for a legal agreement under the UN Climate Convention applicable to all parties, to be completed by 2015 and to come into effect from 2020.

## United Nations Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The UN CSD was established by the UN General Assembly in December 1992 to ensure effective follow-up of the UN Conference on Environment and Development, also known as the Earth Summit.

From its inception, the CSD was highly participatory in structure and outlook, by engaging in its formal proceedings a wide range of official stakeholders and partners through innovative formulae.

At the UN Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20), member states agreed to establish a high-level political forum that will subsequently replace the Commission on Sustainable Development.

## Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (Cites)

South Africa was a founding member of the Cites Treaty, which was adopted on 3 March 1973, but only came into force on 1 July 1975.

Signed by 149 countries, Cites is an international agreement between governments to protect endangered species against over-exploitation through regulations regarding imports and exports and in some cases prohibiting trade.

Cites was drafted as a result of a resolution adopted in 1963 at a meeting of members of the IUCN. Today, it accords varying degrees

of protection to more than 30 000 species of animals and plants, whether they are traded as live specimens, fur coats or dried herbs.

## Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer

16 September 2012 marked the 25th anniversary of the Montreal Protocol. This date coincides with the International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer, the UN commemorative day that marks the date when the treaty was established in 1987.

The theme for the 2012 celebration, *Protecting our Atmosphere for Generations to Come*, emphasised the extraordinary collaboration and environmental benefits achieved by the international community through the operation of the Montreal Protocol.

The Montreal Protocol is an international treaty designed to protect the ozone layer by phasing out the production and consumption of numerous substances responsible for ozone depletion. The protocol has been recognised as a global success, demonstrated by the massive elimination of production and consumption of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), halons, carbon tetrachloride, methyl chloroform, and chlorobromomethane worldwide since it came into force in 1987.

South Africa, which became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990, has phased out CFCs, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride.

This makes it the only developing country in the world that has achieved so much in line with the phase-out schedule for developed countries. Although South Africa is classified as a developing country, its consumption of these substances is equal to that of some developed countries.

## World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

South Africa hosted the WSSD in September 2002 in Johannesburg. The agreements reached then are a guide to action that will take forward the UN Millennium Summit Declaration's goal of halving world poverty by 2015, and will incorporate decisions taken by world bodies since the Rio Earth Summit in 1992.

The most notable success was getting the world to turn the UN Millennium Declaration into a concrete set of programmes and to mobilise funds for these programmes.

Targets set at the summit will have an enormous impact, including the following:

- the number of people without basic sanitation and access to safe drinking water to be halved by 2015
- collapsed fish stocks to be restored by 2015
- chemicals with a detrimental health impact to be phased out by 2020
- energy services to be extended to 35% of African households over the next 10 years.

## United Nations Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20)

Rio+20 refers to the UN Conference on Sustainable Development which took place in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil in June 2012. The meeting took place 20 years after the landmark 1992 Earth Summit in Rio, when more than 108 heads of state agreed to work together to develop national strategies to reduce carbon emissions, stabilise greenhouse gas, protect forests from destruction, and pay for their share of the damage caused to the Earth through pollution.

At the Rio+20 Conference, world leaders, along with thousands of participants from the private sector, NGOs and other groups, came together to shape how countries could work together to reduce poverty, advance social equity and ensure environmental protection on an increasingly crowded planet.

The official discussions focussed on two main themes: how to build a green economy to achieve sustainable development and lift people out of poverty; and how to improve international coordination for sustainable development.

The most important thing to come out of the Rio+20 talks was that 50 of the 193 member states of the UN have launched new energy strategies, while private investors have pledged more than US$50 billion to help carry

out his goal to double the share of global renewable energy and the rate of energy efficiency improvement by 2030.

### Urban environmental management

The Urban Environmental Management Programme is a partnership between 11 government institutions, from all three spheres of government, namely national, provincial and municpal. The programme alleviates poverty through improved service delivery within the environmental management of urban areas.

Started in April 2006, the programme is a continuation of more than 10 years of environmental collaboration between South Africa and Denmark.

## Conclusion

Following the approval of the National Climate Change Policy by Cabinet in 2011, the department's work going forward is geared towards ensuring the implementation of the policy, and meeting the ambient air-quality standards.

An area of great concern to the environment sector is the plundering of natural resources, especially the ongoing slaughtering of the rhino population – a grave reality that calls for drastic measures.

The latest statistics show that 32 rhinos were killed in South Africa in January 2013 alone, of which 18 were poached in the Kruger National Park, six in North West and five in KwaZulu-Natal. In 2012, a record number of 668 rhinos were killed.

The department is increasing its capacity to address current and future potential wildlife crimes and will continue to use all the legal instruments and other resources at its disposal nationally to stop this scourge.

Internationally, it will continue to play an active role in supporting and contributing towards global forums, including Interpol's Wildlife Crime meetings, the Cites Rhinoceros Task Force, the regional Rhino and Elephant Security Group and other rhino management groups and initiatives.

Another top priority for the department over the medium term is to provide support to local governments in the areas of air-quality management, waste management, biodiversity management, coastal planning and open-space planning.

The department will also focus on strengthening compliance and enforcement activities; drawing linkages between climate change, the green economy and sustainable development; aligning governance systems with the new outcomes approach; and paying particular attention to ensuring that environmental assets and natural resources are valued, protected and continually enhanced.

## Acknowledgements

*Beeld*
*Business Report*
Department of Environmental Affairs
*Estimates of National Expenditure, 2012*, published by National Treasury
*The Mail & Guardian*
National Zoological Gardens of South Africa
*Rapport*
South African National Biodiversity Institute
*The Times*

*www.bcb.uuc.ac.za*
*www.bwi.co.za*
*www.capeaction.org.za*
*www.cbd.int*
*www.cites.org*
*www.collectacan.co.za*
*www.csir.co.za*
*www.deloitteblog.co.za*
*www.ekapa.ioisa.org.za*
*www.explore.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.jhbzoo.org.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*www.news24.com*
*www.peaceparks.org*
*www.plantzafrica.com*
*www.sacanegrowers.co.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sahistory.org.sa*
*www.sapa.org.za*
*www.sanbi.org*
*www.skep.org.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.sustainabledevelopment.un.org*
*www.ucmp.berkeley.edu*
*www.visitmosselbay.co.za*
*www.wwf.org.za*
*www.polity.org.za*
*http://eprints.ru.ac.za*
*http://en.wikipedia.org*

## Suggested reading

Astronomical Society of Southern Africa. 2011. *2012 Sky Guide Africa South: Astronomical Handbook.*
Cowgill, R & Davis, S. 2013. *Shorebirds: A Guide to the More Common South African Species*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Dorrat-Haaksma, E & Linder, HP. 2012. *Restios of the Fynbos*. Cape Town: Struik Nature.
Duminy, A. 2011. *Mapping South Africa: A Historical Survey of South African Maps and Charts*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Holmes, PJ & Meadows, ME. 2012. *Southern African Geomorphology: Recent Trends and New Directions*. Bloemfontein: Sun Media.
Joubert, S. 2012. *The Kruger National Park: A History. Three volumes*. Johannesburg: High Branching (Pty) Ltd.
Kruger, AC. 2012. *Climate of South Africa: Surface Temperature*. Pretoria: South African Weather Service.
Pienaar, U de V. 2012. *A Cameo from the Past: The Prehistory and Early History of the Kruger National Park*. Pretoria: Protea Boekhuis.
South Africa. 2012. *National Environmental Management Act and Regulations 107 of 1998; Environment Conservation Act 73*. Cape Town: Juta.
Spence, LAG. 2012. *The Last Rhinos: The Powerful Story of One Man's Battle to Save a Species*. London: Sidgwick and Jackson.
Stoffberg, H, Hindes, C & Mulder, L (eds). 2012. *South African Landscape Architecture: A Compendium,* and *South African Landscape Architecture: A Reader*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Stuart, C & Stuart, M. 2012. *National Parks and Nature Reserves: A South African Field Guide*. Cape Town: Struik.
Walker, C & Walker, A. 2012. *The Rhino Keepers: Struggle for Survival*. Sunnyside: Jacana Media.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Finance

South Africa has demonstrated resilience in the face of the global financial and economic crisis that started in 2008. The economy is growing, though more slowly than originally projected. More jobs are being created, household spending is robust and private-sector investment is gathering pace.

This underscores the fundamental importance of supportive, efficient and sustainable public financial management to the promotion of economic development, good governance, social progress and a rising standard of living for all South Africans.

The Ministry of Finance is at the heart of South Africa 's economic and fiscal policy development. The Minister of Finance and Deputy Minister of Finance are responsible for a range of state entities that aim to advance economic growth and development, and to strengthen South Africa's democracy.

National Treasury is responsible for managing South Africa's national government finances.

The Constitution mandates National Treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of public finances.

National Treasury is furthermore mandated to promote government's fiscal policy framework; to coordinate macro-economic policy and intergovernmental financial relations; to manage the budget preparation process and preparing a sound and sustainable national budget; to facilitate the Division of Revenue Act, 2009 (Act 12 of 2009) which provides for an equitable distribution of nationally raised revenue between national, provincial and local government; and to monitor the implementation of provincial budgets.

It will also continue to support the optimal allocation and use of financial resources in all spheres of government to reduce poverty and vulnerability among South Africa's most marginalised.

It has also created an independent Auditor-General (AG) and an independent central bank, the South African Reserve Bank (SARB), and sets out the principles governing financial accountability to Parliament, as well as the annual budget process.

## Financial expenditure

National Treasury plays a pivotal role in managing government expenditure.

It determines financial-management norms and standards, and sets reporting policy that guides the AG's performance. It also assists Parliament, through the Standing Committee on Public Accounts, with its recommendations and the formulation of corrective actions. National Treasury closely monitors the performance of national departments and is obliged to report any deviations to the AG.

The department maintains transparent and fair bidding processes, as well as accounting, logistic and personnel systems. It sets and maintains standards and norms for treasury and logistics, acts as a banker for national departments and oversees logistical control of stocks and assets.

National Treasury draws its mandate from Chapter 2 of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), based on Chapter 13 of the Constitution. It is mandated to:

- coordinate macro-economic policy
- promote government's fiscal policy framework
- manage the budget preparation process
- coordinate intergovernmental financial relations
- facilitate the Division of Revenue Act, 2009, which provides for equitable distribution of nationally raised revenue between national, provincial and local government
- monitor the implementation of provincial budgets
- create an enabling regulatory environment for the financial sector
- defend the integrity of the financial system
- ensure efficient and effective revenue collection
- oversee the programmes of development finance institutions (DFIs).

More than R1,87 billion in grant funding was approved by the R9-billion Jobs Fund in its first year, and complemented by a further R1,78 million from the private sector, to support 41 projects.

In all, more than R3,6 billion was committed to Jobs Fund projects between April 2012 and February 2013. The fund, which is managed by the Development Bank of South Africa (DBSA), will run until 2014.

By the end of September 2012, R320 million would have been transferred by National Treasury to the DBSA. The R1,8 billion approved by the DBSA will be disbursed in tranches over the agreed terms of the projects.

The Jobs Fund was announced by President Jacob Zuma in 2011 to create jobs and fight poverty.

### Fiscal policy framework

Government's fiscal policy seeks to encourage and support structural reform of the South African economy consistent with long-run growth, employment creation and equitable distribution of income.

Fiscal policy seeks to:

- present a fuller picture of government finances and the effects of policy decisions
- ensure a sound and sustainable balance between government's spending, tax and borrowing requirements
- improve domestic savings to support a higher level of investment and reduce the need to borrow abroad
- keep government consumption spending at an affordable level
- contribute to lower inflation and a sustainable balance of payments
- support an export-friendly trade and industrial strategy to improve South Africa's competitiveness.

Meeting the country's social and economic goals requires sustainable increases in real expenditure over the decades to come. To achieve this goal, the principles of countercyclicality, debt sustainability and intergenerational equity will continue to anchor fiscal policy choices.

### Budget framework

Over the past decade, government has advanced a broad array of social and economic programmes as declining debt-service costs, healthy levels of tax revenue and sound

policy choices supported significant increases in public expenditure.

The budget of more than R1 trillion in 2012/13 maintains the state's contribution to growth and social development, while taking steps to ensure fiscal sustainability.

In line with the countercyclical fiscal stance, the budget deficit remains substantial at 4,6% of gross domestic product (GDP) in 2012/13, but narrows to 3% in the outer year as economic activity accelerates.

Over the medium term, slower growth in public spending, combined with rising revenue, will strengthen the sustainability of the fiscus. The stabilisation of public debt will arrest the growth of debt-service costs.

Government will begin to shift the composition of spending from consumption towards capital investment. Moderating growth in the public-sector wage bill and stabilising the growth in interest payments will allow more funds to be spent on infrastructure and social spending.

The consolidated budget includes the national budget, social security funds, Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) funds, provincial budgets and extra-budgetary institutions such as the South African National Roads Agency Ltd and the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority.

Average annual real revenue growth of 4,8% is projected to outpace GDP growth of 3,7% over the next three years, while expenditure will grow by an average of 2,9% in real terms over this period.

A large share of expenditure growth is absorbed by debt-service costs, which will amount to R109 billion in 2014/15. An improvement in the deficit from 4,8% of GDP to 3% in 2014/15 will stabilise growth in debt-service costs as a percentage of GDP.

## Fiscal outlook

Total spending is expected to reach R1,1 trillion in 2013, representing some 32% of GDP. During a period of global uncertainty, the 2012 Budget provided conitinued support for growth, investment and job creation; and maintained the value of social wages. Key features of the fiscal outlook included:

- real growth in non-interest expenditure averaging 2,6% over the medium term, bringing spending in line with long-term revenue trends
- additional allocations of R55,9 billion over the next three years, including R9,5 billion for an economic support package
- tax revenue levels stabilising at about one quarter of GDP
- a reduction in the budget deficit from 4,8% in 2011/12 to 3% in 2014/15
- a shift from consumption to capital spending so that, from 2014/15, new borrowing will support productive investment.

The fiscal position will consolidate in line with improved economic performance and rising revenue over the medium term.

As the economy grows, government will build fiscal space to respond to future crises.

## Macro-economic outlook

Government maintains prudent macro-economic policies that promote a favourable environment for investment and job creation through low and stable inflation and interest rates, a competitive real exchange rate and measures to support financial stability.

Policies further seek to create a climate conducive to dynamic private-sector investment, entrepreneurship and growth by removing bottlenecks to trade, reducing red tape and business costs, increasing competition, raising productivity and expanding exports.

The South African economy remains vulnerable to slow global recovery (slowdown in China's economic growth and decreased demand for South African exports by the European Union, which is South Africa's largest trading partner), as well as to domestic factors such as the recent labour unrest.

Economic growth (in real terms) decreased from 2,8% in 2010 to 2,5% in 2012. However, the economy still managed to register moderately positive growth for the third year in a row following the 2009 recession.

The subdued growth rate perpetuates the trajectory of sub-optimal growth. This implies that even though the economy may be performing reasonably and is certainly not collapsing, it is also not performing well enough to make a meaningful dent in the country's high unemployment rate. Furthermore, even though the economy is expected to slowly recover in the medium term, the economic growth forecasts fall below the 5,4% economic growth cited in the National Development Plan (NDP) document, which is necessary to achieve government's job-creation and poverty reduction goals.

## Revenue estimates and tax proposals

The tax system raises the revenue needed to fund government programmes and deliver services.

While the South African economy has continued to grow since the 2009 recession, the moderate pace of economic growth has adversely affected revenue performance.

The revised tax revenue estimate for 2012/13 is R810,2 billion, R16,3 billion lower than the estimate made in the 2012 Budget. This underperformance is largely the result of weak economic growth during the second half of 2012, labour unrest and lower commodity prices.

Tax revenues are expected to improve over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period in line with higher economic growth and the stabilisation of key commodity prices at marginally higher levels.

The main tax proposals for 2013 include:

- personal income tax (PIT) relief of R7 billion
- reforms to the tax treatment of contributions to retirement savings
- an employment tax incentive targeted to support young workers and those employed in special economic zones
- tax relief for small businesses
- requiring foreign businesses selling digital goods in South Africa to register as value-added tax (VAT) vendors
- increases in fuel and excise taxes
- alignment of the proposed carbon tax, energy-efficiency savings tax incentive and the electricity levy.

Over the next year, a tax review will assess whether present tax policy is appropriate to support government's objectives of inclusive growth, employment, development and fiscal sustainability.

The NDP notes that the best way to generate resources to implement the national vision is to grow the economy more rapidly.

The *Open Budget Index Survey* results put South Africa second out of 100 countries in the transparency of its budget processes.

The Washington-based International Budget Partnership has placed South Africa in second place in its *Open Budget Index Report* of 2012, with a score of 90 points out of a possible 100 points.

South Africa is one of only six countries worldwide that release extensive budget information to the legislature and the public in general.

The Institute for Democracy in Africa cooperates with the International Budget Partnership on the Open Budget Index, which is the only independent, comparative and regular measure of budget transparency and accountability around the world. It is produced by independent experts not beholden to national governments.

## Spending on public services

Allocations for employment programmes will increase by 13,5% a year over the next three years.

Consolidated spending on health and social protection for 2013/14 is R268 billion. Health infrastructure remains a priority. In 2012, 1 967 health facilities were in stages of planning, construction and refurbishment.

Substantial improvements in the social assistance payments system are in progress, providing easier access by recipients to grants. The cost of social grants payments has been reduced from R32 to R16 per disbursement.

Spending on education, sport and culture amounts to R233 billion in 2013/14. Over the period ahead, the basic education sector will focus on improving numeracy and literacy, expanding enrolment in Grade R and reducing

school infrastructure backlogs. Together with the broader education infrastructure grant, R23,9 billion is available to provincial education departments for infrastructure over the next three years.

R700 million has been allocated over the MTEF period for the Technical Secondary Schools Recapitalisation Grant. This will finance the construction and refurbishment of 259 workshops and training of over 1 500 technology teachers. Transfers to higher education institutions increase from R20,4 billion in 2012/13 to R24,6 billion in 2015/16.

Expenditure on economic services in 2013/14 will amount to R48 billion, including R5,3 billion for the Manufacturing Competeveness Enhancement Programme and R2,9 billion for special economic zones.

Expenditure on transport, energy and communications will amount to R89 billion in 2014.

Additional allocations include R450 million over three years to the Economic Development Department for the Small Enterprise Finance Agency.

The allocation to the Department of Science and Technology includes R2 billion to support the Square Kilometre Array Project.

The allocation to the Department of Transport increases from R42,3 billion in 2014, to R53,4 billion in 2015/16.

Local government, community amenities and housing are allocated R132 billion in 2013/14. The largest increases will go to bulk water, water treatment and water distribution projects, and allocations to the Local Government Equitable Share.

R4,3 billion is allocated to a new grant to be administered by the Department of Water Affairs, providing for water treatment, distribution, demand management and support for rural municipalities. The Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency of the Department for Cooperative Governance receives R820 million to provide technical assistance to rural and low-capacity municipalities.

Funding for improving human settlements will grow from R26,2 billion to R30,5 billion over the next three years, including R1,1 billion to support the informal settlement upgrading programme in mining towns. Social housing receives an additional allocation of R685 million.

The general public services function is allocated R57 billion in 2013/14. This includes the South African Revenue Service (Sars) budget of R9,5 billion, which is just over 1% of revenue to be collected.

The Department of Public Works reprioritised R464 million over the medium term to fund its turnaround strategy, which focuses on lease and property management portfolios. The Public Service Commission receives R71,4 million to combat corruption and address grievances.

Over the MTEF period, the Department of Home Affairs will spend R1 billion on its Information Systems Modernisation Programme.

The allocations for defence, public order and safety amount to R154 billion in 2013/14.

The Department of Police has reprioritised R2,5 billion over the MTEF to improve detective and forensic capability. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development receives R1,2 billion for the Criminal Justice Sector Revamp and Modernisation Programme.

## Debt management

Government's borrowing requirement has increased significantly over the past five years as a countercyclical response to the global economic crisis. The nett borrowing requirement is expected to peak at R168,8 billion in 2012/13 before declining to R158 billion in 2013/14. In 2014/15, the nett borrowing requirement is projected to decease further to R140,8 billion owing largely to economic recovery.

Despite elevated borrowing requirements, the funding cost in the domestic markets has declined significantly in 2011/12 relative to the preceding year. Sound economic and fiscal policies coupled with deep and liquid domestic capital markets continue to underpin demand by non-residents and local investors. Consequently, government is able to fund the bulk of its borrowing requirement in the domestic capital markets.

The holdings of domestic government bonds by non-residents increased to 29,1% in 2011 up from 21,8% in 2010. In addition, a successful issuance of US$1,5 billion global bond in January 2012 served as a sign of confidence in the country's story.

National government debt amounted to R1,2 trillion on 31 March 2012 and is expected to reach R1,7 trillion in 2014/15.

Debt-service costs for 2011/12 were 2,6% of GDP. Debt-service costs are expected to peak at 2,8% of GDP in 2013/14 before decreasing slightly to 2,7% of GDP in 2014/15.

## Treasury norms and standards

In terms of the Constitution, National Treasury must prescribe measures to ensure both transparency and expenditure control in each sphere of government, by introducing uniform treasury norms and standards.

These aim at deregulating financial controls by granting spending agencies' accounting officers more autonomy in financial decision-making within the ambit of impending financial legislation.

## Budget evaluation

National Treasury plays an important role in supporting the economic policy to which government has committed itself. It determines the macro-limit on expenditure, which is then matched with requests from departments, in line with the affordability and sustainability of services.

Based on this limit, all national departments are requested to submit budget proposals annually to National Treasury for the next financial year.

## Budget Council

The Budget Council comprises the Minister of Finance and the nine provincial members of the executive councils responsible for finance.

The Budget Forum extends the Budget Council to include representatives of organised local government. These forums ensure cohesion between national policy priorities, the division of nationally raised revenues, and planning and budgeting in provincial and local spheres of government.

The forums also allow the leadership of the three spheres of government to evaluate government's execution of key national programmes and, where necessary, to agree on support initiatives that will ensure the attainment of national goals.

The National Treasury and representatives of the Banking Association of South Africa (Basa) – representing Absa, Standard Bank, FirstRand, Nedbank, African Bank and Capitec – signed an agreement in October 2012 aimed at improving responsible lending and preventing households from being caught in a debt spiral. In a joint statement, the parties expressed concern at the excessive lending to households even when such loans were not affordable or involved unethical practices.

The parties agreed to support the National Credit Regulator (NCR) in enforcing the law and stamping out poor market conduct practices. Going forward, National Treasury, Basa and the NCR are expected to discuss how the current system of debt counselling can be improved to remove unethical incentives and eliminate abuses.

## Early Warning System

The Early Warning System was established in 1997. Any likely under- or over-expenditure is brought to the attention of Cabinet, so that the relevant Minister can ensure that appropriate action is taken.

The system assists in monitoring provincial departments' expenditure trends monthly, by having provincial treasuries report to National Treasury in a prescribed format. The information derived from early warning reports is used for advising the Minister of Finance, Budget Council and Cabinet.

## Financial systems

National Treasury is responsible for the development, maintenance and support of financial management systems (Basic Accounting System or Bas, Persal, Logis and Vulindlela) that support:

- payment of government employees' salaries and service providers
- financial reporting and management for government departments.

In 2005, Cabinet approved the development of the Integrated Financial Management System (IFMS).

Annual spending on infrastructure for the IFMS has remained stable at approximately R177 million and is expected to increase marginally to R180,3 million over the medium term.

The main purpose of the IFMS is to replace the existing legacy financial management systems. The project has already spent R603,9 million on the development and implementation of the business intelligence, human resources management, procurement management and asset management modules by 2012/13.

The first phase of the business intelligence module has been completed and the module is currently undergoing testing before being rolled out. The rollout of the human resources management module has progressed well at the Department of Public Service and Administration lead site, while the progress at the Free State Department of Education has been hampered by delays in the development of the payroll module.

The rollout of the procurement management module at the lead sites, National Treasury and the Department of Defence has progressed although there are systems integration issues at the latter. This module automates the procurement process and correctly classifies commodities to ensure appropriate and effective demand-planning.

The asset management module had been successfully implemented at five departments in the Limpopo provincial government by the end of 2012 and these departments can now account for all their assets.

However, capacity challenges within the province are likely to impact negatively on its ability to adequately maintain this positive outcome. The cost of this rollout up to March 2012 was R150,4 million, which included software licences and maintenance. The development of the financial management, payroll management and inventory management modules is estimated to cost R650 million.

## Supply chain management (SCM)

SCM is an integral part of financial management. The SCM Framework, issued in terms of Section 76 of the PFMA, 1999 replaced outdated procurement and provisioning systems in government.

The Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (PPPFA), 2000 (Act 5 of 2000), and its related regulations are being aligned with the aims and strategies of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003).

A phased approach is envisaged. The first phase will be alignment through the amendment of the current preferential procurement regulations as an interim measure.

The second phase will be the comprehensive review of primary procurement, namely the PPPFA, 1999.

The current Act prescribes that tenders must be evaluated on a preference point system where 80 or 90 points are allocated for the price of the lowest acceptable tenderer, and a maximum of 10 or 20 points are allocated for ownership by historically disadvantaged individuals and for promoting specified RDP goals.

Cabinet has approved for promulgation, subject to legal refinement, the draft revised preferential procurement regulations, aligning the preferential procurement policy with the aims of the BBBEE Act, 2003.

Once promulgated, tenders will be evaluated in terms of the generic black economic empowerment scorecard and where sectoral charters exist, evaluation will be done in terms of them.

It is also proposed that local content be considered as an important element of the evaluation criteria. The revised preferential procurement regulations were expected to be promulgated during 2011.

## Legislation and policies

### Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives. To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the PFMA, 1999 since 1 April 2000.

The Act changed the approach to the way in which public funds are managed by introducing a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability.

Since its introduction, the PFMA, 1999 has contributed towards measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are required to compile and table strategic plans consistent with their budget envelope
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- the submission by departments of monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the AG within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

### Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)

The Act applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.

The objective of the Act is to secure sound and sustainable management of the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities by establishing norms, standards and other requirements for:

- ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in their fiscal and financial affairs
- managing their revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities, and handling their financial dealings
- budgetary and financial-planning processes and coordinating processes for borrowing by organs of state
- handling financial problems and other financial matters.

### Co-Operative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007)

The Co-Operative Banks Act, 2007 came into effect on 1 August 2008. Its functions include:

- promoting and advancing the social and economic welfare of all South Africans by improving access to banking services
- promoting the development of sustainable and responsible co-operative banks
- establishing an appropriate regulatory framework for co-operative banks that protects members of co-operative banks.

The Act provides for the establishment of the Co-Operative Banks Development Agency as a public entity under the executive authority of the Minister of Finance.

The agency's responsibility's include:

- supervising and registering deposit-taking financial services co-operatives as co-operative banks
- capacitating, promoting and informing communities and groups about co-operative banking
- registering and regulating representative bodies and support organisations
- establishing the Deposit Insurance Fund for Co-Operative Banks
- liquidity/solvency management through loans and grants

- formalising approaches to developing co-operative financial institutions.

## Financial institutions

### Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC)

The FIC is a national agency that develops and provides financial intelligence for law-enforcement authorities, the intelligence services and the South African Revenue Service (Sars). The FIC was established by the FIC Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001), which came into effect in February 2003. The FIC Act, 2001 is aimed at maintaining the integrity of South Africa's financial and economic system. FIC reports directly to the Minister of Finance and to Parliament.

The FIC's mandate is to:

- monitor the compliance of designated businesses (accountable institutions) and supervisory bodies regarding their anti-money laundering and terror financing obligations
- receive and analyse transactional data from a range of businesses to identify the proceeds of crime, money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- provide financial intelligence reports to the law-enforcement authorities, intelligence agencies and the revenue service as a result of the analysis conducted
- formulate and lead the implementation of policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- advise to the Minister of Finance
- uphold the international obligations and commitments required by the country in respect of anti-money laundering and combatting financing of terrorism (AML/CFT).

The FIC Act, 2001 introduces a regulatory framework of measures that require that certain categories of business take steps regarding client identification, record-keeping, reporting of information and internal compliance structures.

All businesses have to report various suspicious transactions to the FIC. The FIC also receives additional financial data from accountable and reporting institutions.

From October 2010, the FIC requires that all accountable and reporting institutions report on cash transactions exceeding R25 000.

In December 2010, amendments to the FIC were promulgated, which required that all accountable and reporting institutions be registered with the FIC. Furthermore, the Act gave the FIC and supervisory bodies the authority to inspect and impose administrative penalties on non-compliant businesses. The Act also introduced an appeals process and appeals board.

South Africa is a member of the Financial Action Task Force, a body which sets international standards and policy on AML/CFT. It is also an affiliate of the 14-member Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group, which aims to help countries to implement the global AML/CFT standards.

The FIC is a member of the Egmont Group, consisting of the financial intelligence units of 126 countries, which aims to facilitate international cooperation, and the sharing of information and expertise among its members.

### Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC is an independent, objective, impartial and unbiased constitutional advisory institution. It is a permanent expert commission with a constitutionally defined structure, a set of generic responsibilities and institutional processes.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of government, based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures
- assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

Government is required by the Constitution and other legislation to consult with the FFC on issues such as provincial and local government revenue sources, and provincial and municipal loans.

Consultation about the fiscal implications of assigning functions from one sphere of government to another is also required.

## Public Investment Corporation (PIC)

The PIC's clients are public-sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds.

The PIC's role is to invest funds on behalf of these clients, based on investment mandates set by each client and approved by the Financial Services Board (FSB), with which it is registered as a financial services provider (FSP).

The PIC is wholly owned by the South African Government, with the Minister of Finance as the shareholder representative.

The PIC was established as a corporation on 1 April 2005 in accordance with the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004).

Corporatisation has enabled the PIC to structure its investment activities and operations in a manner comparable to that of private-sector investment managers.

Some 1 001 162 income tax returns for the 2012 tax season were submitted in record time, exceeding the South African Revenue Service's (Sars) expectations. In the corresponding period during the 2011 tax season, Sars received only 681 497 tax returns.

The higher rate of submissions and much faster turnaround times in processing tax returns enabled Sars to pay R3,07 billion in refunds to 501 096 taxpayers over 22 days.

Some 620 564 returns were submitted via e-Filing, which is 32% higher for e-Filing than the same period during the 2011 tax season.

At branch offices, Sars assisted taxpayers across the country to submit 376 802 returns electronically, which is 82% higher than for the same period during the 2011 tax season.

Apart from pursuing FSB-compliant mandates, the PIC benchmarks its investment performance against market-driven indices, enabling clients and the shareholder to compare PIC's returns with those achieved in the marketplace.

## South African Revenue Service (Sars)

In accordance with the Sars Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997), Sars is an administratively autonomous organ of state.

It aims to provide a world-class, transparent and taxpayer-centred service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection.

Its main functions are:

- collecting and administering all national taxes, duties and levies
- collecting revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between Sars and an organ of state or institution entitled to the revenue
- advising the Minister of Finance on all matters concerning revenue and the exercise of any power or the performance of any function assigned to the Minister of Finance or any other functionary in the national executive in terms of the above mentioned legislation
- facilitating trade
- providing protection against the illegal import and export of goods
- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement and storage or use of certain goods.

## Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government. As part of this role, the department must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function, and that are aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy. National Treasury and Sars cooperate in compiling tax policies.

A Modernisation Programme begun in 2006 resulted in the successful introduction of electronic platforms for taxpayers and employers

to interact with Sars across major tax products like PIT, withholding of employee's tax, VAT and Customs. As a result, individual taxpayers, employers, customs traders and VAT vendors can submit returns, make declarations and pay dues to Sars electronically. The electronic take-up by taxpayers and employer of these electronic channels are amongst the highest in the world, surpassing most tax administration jurisdictions in developed economies.

The Modernisation Programme is based on:

- automating basic tax processes
- using the latest computer technology
- rethinking how better to use the Sars pool of skills
- accessing third-party data and enhanced risk management.

The automation of tax processes is continuously enabling faster processing of taxpayer and employer declarations. The majority of individual tax returns are assessed within minutes and refunds, where applicable, are paid out within three days in more than 77% of cases. Third-party information enables Sars to pre-populate most PIT returns, and also serves to verify information supplied by taxpayers in their returns. In turn, this enables Sars to more accurately focus on areas of non-compliance.

The new Tax Administration Act, (Act 28 of 2011) was promulgated into law in September 2012 and commenced in October 2012. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law. It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements and aligns disparate requirements that currently exist in the different Tax Acts administered by Sars. It creates a single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of the various Acts.

The Act provides for common procedures across the tax products, and provides for the appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of Sars and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

## South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based tax system, which means residents are – subject to certain exclusions – taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are, however, taxed on their income from a South African source, but subject to the provisions of International Agreements for the Avoidance of Double Tax.

In broad terms, tax is levied on taxable income, which is calculated by reference to gross income less certain income of a capital nature, exemptions and permissible deductions.

The main tax products are corporate income tax (CIT), VAT, PIT and customs and excise duties.

The South African Revenue Service (Sars) exceeded its target when it collected more than R814 billion in taxes for the 2012/13 fiscal year. This is R4 billion (0,5%) more than what Finance Minister Gordhan projected when he delivered the National Budget in February 2012.

It is the first set of results after the introduction of Sars's new five-year Compliance Programme in 2012. The programme was introduced to help Sars achieve high levels of compliance with tax and customs legislation.

An increase of 8,8% in the compensation of employees contributed positively to the growth in personal income tax. Personal income tax collection grew by R25 billion to R276,8 billion compared to the R251 billion Sars managed to collect in the previous financial year, while value-added tax accounted for R215 billion.

## Corporate income tax (CIT)

Corporate institutions are subject to a flat tax rate, currently 28% of taxable income. An exception to the rule is the relief provided to small and micro businesses.

## Value-added tax (VAT)

VAT is currently levied at a rate of 14% on the value-added supply of all goods and services rendered by persons (certain supplies are zero-rated) and contributes approximately 33% to the national budget. The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive. A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT if the

income earned from supplying such goods or services is more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount.

A person can also register voluntarily for VAT if the income earned from supplying goods or services for the past period of 12 months exceeded R50 000 or where the turnover is likely to exceed R50 000 only after a period of time as a result of the nature of activity being conducted.

## Personal income tax (PIT)

PIT mainly focuses on the taxation of non-corporate income. The main contributor to PIT is employment income, but it also includes income generated from sole-proprietor ventures.

The tax rate applicable to PIT-related taxable income is progressive of nature, currently ranging from marginal rates of 18% to 40%.

Employees' tax (commonly referred to as Pay As You Earn or PAYE) is withheld by employers from salary and wage income on a monthly basis, and reconciled at year-end or on assessment to the final tax liability of the taxpayer.

## Other tax products administered by Sars

### Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents, such as tobacco and liquor, and as an *ad valorem* duty on cosmetics, audio-visual equipment and motor cars.

Relief from excise duty is available where excisable products are exported, for example specific farming and forestry equipment, and certain manufacturing activities.

### Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property. With effect from 23 February 2011, property costing less than R600 000 attracts no duty. A 3% rate applies to properties costing between R600 000 and R1 million.

In respect of property with a value between R1 million and R1,5 million, the duty is R12 000 plus 5% of the value above R1 million.

In respect of property above R1,5 million, the duty is R37 000 plus a rate of 8% of the value exceeding R1,5 million.

### Estate duty

Estate duty is levied at a flat rate of 20% on property of residents and South African property of non-residents.

A basic deduction of R3,5 million is allowed in the determination of an estate's liability for estate duty as well as deductions for liabilities, bequests to public benefit organisations and property accruing to a surviving spouse.

### Dividend-withholding tax

With effect from 1 April 2012 a dividend-withholding tax is levied on shareholders on payment of a dividend at a rate of 15%.

The tax is withheld by either the institution paying the dividend or by a regulated intermediary distributing the dividend. The dividend-withholding tax replaces the secondary tax on companies.

### Securities transfer tax

Securities transfer tax is levied at a rate of 0,25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or member's interests in close corporations.

### Skills-development levy

The Skills Development Fund is intended to be used for employee training and skills development.

The levy, which is an amount paid by all employers to Sars, goes into a government body responsible for organising education and training programmes within a specific sector. Each sector has its own Sector Education and Training Authority.

The rate, as from 1 August 2005, is 1% for employers with an annual payroll in excess of R500 000.

## Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF insures employees against the loss of

earnings due to termination of employment, illness or maternity leave. The contribution to the UIF is shared equally by employers and employees at a rate of 1% of remuneration each. The employee share of 1% is withheld by the employer and paid to Sars together with the employer share of 1% on a monthly basis.

## Tax on international travel

This tax is levied as follows: R190 per passenger departing on international flights, excluding flights to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland, in which case the tax is R100.

## Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates (sometimes referred to as "property taxes") and charges for refuse and sewerage, although the latter apply mainly to those in urban areas; there are no refuse or sewerage services in some rural areas.

The calculation of municipal rates was changed in March 2004, when the Local Government Municipal Property Rates Bill became law.

## Customs duty

The policy on tariffs applicable to importation into South Africa is set by the International Trade Administration Commission under the authority of the Department of Trade and Industry.

The duties levied on imported goods can be separated mainly into customs duties, which include additional customs duties (*ad valorem*) on certain luxury or non-essential items, and anti-dumping and countervailing measures. In addition, VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption and certain other levies are imposed on specific products.

## Southern African Customs Union (Sacu)

South Africa, Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland are signatories to the Sacu agreement. They apply similar customs and excise legislation and the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods. The uniform application of tariffs and harmonisation of procedures simplify trade within the Sacu area by enabling free movement of goods for customs purposes. However, all other national restrictive measures such as import and export control, sanitary and phytosanitary requirements and domestic taxes apply to goods moved between member states.

The 2002 Sacu Agreement is in force and provides a new dispensation for calculating and effecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component of the Revenue Sharing Formula.

The Sacu Heads of State and Government endorsed an ambitious Sacu regional trade facilitation programme that is focused on creating common information technology platforms to allow:

- interconnectivity
- harmonising enforcement strategies to curb illicit trade
- improving border efficiencies to facilitate seamless trade
- developing partnerships with traders through the establishment of a formalised Customs-Trader Forum
- developing similar customs legislation
- establishing one-stop border posts.

South Africa and all Sacu countries are working towards implementing the programme.

## Border posts

South Africa is automating most of its border processes to bring the country in line with the international standards of the World Customs Organisation and world-class immigration processes.

The latest technology is now being used to enable cargo to be cleared electronically, while allowing customs and immigration officials to scan passports and release notifications at ports of entry. The intention is to have a seamless process for compliant travellers and traders while making it difficult for illegitimate travellers and traders.

Visitors to South Africa need to ensure that they are familiar with the list of goods

(and quantities) that can be imported without payment of customs duty and VAT and those for which customs duty and VAT are payable. This information is available on the Sars website.

## International tax agreements for the avoidance of double taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, by providing certainty about the tax framework.

By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between international investors' residence and source countries, double-taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with over 60 countries.

## African Tax Administration Forum (ATAF)

The ATAF is a platform to promote and facilitate mutual cooperation among African tax administrations (and other relevant and interested stakeholders) with the aim of improving the efficacy of their tax legislation and administrations.

The forum brings together heads of African tax administrations and their representatives to discuss the progress made, challenges faced and a possible new direction for African tax policy and administration in the 21st century.

In implementing its mission, ATAF will:

- improve the capacity of African tax administrations to achieve their revenue objectives
- advance the role of taxation in African governance and state building
- provide a voice for African tax administrations
- develop and support partnerships between African countries and development partners.

The ATAF has 36 member countries. South Africa's Sars Commissioner, Oupa Magashula, was unanimously elected as the first chairperson of the ATAF at the inaugural conference and re-elected at the ATAF General Assembly in July 2011.

## Organisational performance

In 2011/12, Sars collected R3,9 billion more than the targeted R742,7 billion, representing an increase over the previous financial year of R68,5 billion or 10,2%.

Of the R3,9 billion surpluses against the revised estimate, the most significant contributors are secondary tax on companies (R2,5 billion) and custom duties (R1,9 billion). CIT amounted to R153 billion. While showing steady growth it has remained below the pre-crisis levels that were achieved in 2008/09.

PIT collection rose to R251,3 billion from R228,1 billion in 2010/11. Of the R742,7 billion collected, R595,6 billion (80%) came from PIT, CIT and VAT. Historically these three taxes have always contributed around 80% of the total tax revenue.

The revenue collected from the fuel levy earned Sars R36,6 billion, which was -2% below target, and contributed 4,9% to the overall revenue collected. This decreased from 5,1% in 2010/11 to 4,9% in 2011/12.

## e-Filing

Sars introduced its Internet service, e-Filing (*www.sarsefiling.co.za*) as an electronic gateway for taxpayers to interact with Sars, as well as the facility to file electronically at Sars branches.

The e-Filing gateway is a secure and free service, enabling taxpayers to submit their tax returns online from the comfort of their home or office, at any time. It removes the risks and inconvenience of submitting paper tax returns. Not only can returns be submitted via the Internet, but users can also make secure tax payments online. There is also a facility to apply for tax directives, which can be obtained within 24 hours.

The e-Filing service is equal to international standards, being comparable with services offered in the United States of America, Australia, Singapore, Ireland, Chile and France.

## Tax calendar

Sars has instituted three critical filing seasons in the tax year that runs from March to Febru-

The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University's (NMMU) business school has been named an international business leader at the third annual Asia's Best Business Schools award ceremony, held in Singapore in July 2012.

The awards are organised by the World Brand Congress and CMO Asia, which is an arm of the California-based CMO Council, a peer network of marketing executives and brand decision-makers from around the world. It promotes global best practices, knowledge sharing, market transformation and relationship building among its more than 20 000 individual members located in 100 countries.

Based in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, the NMMU Business School was founded in 2005, and is the youngest such institution in southern Africa.

It was one of 12 award recipients in the business leadership category, and it was the only African institution recognised. Most winners were drawn from the highly competitive Indian and Southeast Asian tertiary education systems.

ary. The first one is Tax Season for Employers, when employers file their annual PAYE reconciliations. This runs from April to May every year.

This is followed by Tax Season for Individuals, when individual taxpayers file their income tax returns. This runs from July to the end of November for non-provisional taxpayers who submit via e-Filing.

Provisional taxpayers who submit via e-Filing have until 31 January the following year to submit their returns. Provisional tax is a system that allows qualifying taxpayers to pay at least two amounts in the course of the year of assessment. Final liability, however, is determined upon assessment.

For the 2012 Tax Season for individuals, Sars received 3 057 296 returns by 3 October, compared to 2 368 928 returns by 3 October 2011, representing a 29% increase.

Employers then have an interim filing season when they file reconciliations for the first six months of the tax year, and this is in effect during September and October.

All three filing seasons are accompanied by innovative communication and marketing campaigns aimed at the relevant taxpayer segments, in line with Sars' segmentation approach. There has been a steady increase in taxpayer compliance as a result of the predictable filing seasons, combined with Sars' improved service offering and taxpayer education.

The Taxpayer Education Campaign focuses on helping all eligible taxpayers to complete their tax returns correctly, honestly and on time.

People who owe Sars tax are charged interest at a rate as published in the *Government Gazette*.

## National Gambling Board (NGB)

The NGB was established in terms of the National Gambling Act (NGA), 1996, (Act 33 of 1996), which was repealed on 1 November 2004 by the NGA, 2004 (Act 7 of 2004).

The vision of the board is to position South Africa as the pre-eminent jurisdiction with an effectively regulated industry. The NGB is committed to effective regulation and supervision of the South African gambling industry, a significant economic sector, by upholding internationally recognised standards of compliance.

The emergence of illegal Internet gambling raises challenges to the regulatory regime concerning when, how and what the framework of interactive gambling will be, and what the challenges are.

## Statistics

The NGB maintains a national gambling database that contains information on national gambling statistics such as turnover, gross gambling revenue (GGR), gambling taxes and levies, as well as returns to players and punters.

Provincial licensing authorities are required to submit statistics to NGB on a quarterly basis for consolidation and reporting on the national status.

The results for 2011/12 continued to show an increase in GGR and the collection of taxes. In current prices, the GGR increased

by 7,5% from R17 140 million to R18 417 million, whereas taxes/levies paid increased by 9,8% from R1 670 million to R1 834 million. In constant (2008/9 financial year) prices, GGR increased with 2,6% and taxes/levies with 4,9%.

## Responsible gambling

The NGB has a legislated responsibility to educate the public on the odds of gambling and the negative socio-economic impact of the gambling industry on society.

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) is a resource that integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling.

The NRGP is managed by the South African Responsible Gambling Foundation, which comprises a board of directors, representing regulators and industry. The main thrust of the NRGP's prevention programme is to educate gamblers and potential gamblers and society as a whole about responsible gambling.

The NRGP has a toll-free Problem Gambling Counselling Line that is staffed by multilingual telephone counsellors. It also has a national network of treatment professionals who provide free and confidential treatment and counselling.

The NRGP has various operational components, e.g. public awareness and prevention, a toll-free counselling line, a countrywide treatment network for outpatient counselling and therapy, research and monitoring initiatives, training for regulators and industry employees, a crisis line service available to gambling industry employees and management, as well as a life skills programme called Taking Risks Wisely – a teaching resource for grades 7 to 12.

Key highlights of the NRGP's activities in 2012 included:

- Problem gambling numbers have remained stable over the past three years at between 3% and 4,7% with 0,5% experiencing severe problems, in line with international trends.
- Available evidence suggests that regular gambling at casinos constitutes no greater risk than other forms of regulated gambling, but that illegal gambling on games such as Fafi, dice and cards does significantly increase the risk of problem gambling. Internet gambling, although not yet legal, constitutes a serious potential threat.
- The multilingual treatment network has more than 70 treatment professionals and has been extended to over 50 towns and cities in southern Africa.
- Over 27 000 gambling industry workers, along with staff from government regulatory authorities, have received formal training on the subject of compulsive and problem gambling.
- The website *www.responsiblegambling.co.za* enjoys up to 1 000 hits monthly.
- The NRGP's services are advertised widely in the media and through collateral displayed in all gambling venues.
- The NRGP is funded by voluntary contributions from the private sector which includes the casino, horse racing, bingo and limited payout machines industries. This comprises 0,1% of the industry's GGR or company winnings. Some R123 million has been invested in the programme by the private sector up to February 2012.

From its inception to December 2011, the National Responsible Gambling Programme's toll-free counselling line – 0800 006 008 – operating 24 hours a day and seven days a week, has received more than 316 148 calls; 13 661 callers were referred for free treatment to a medical professional (about 100 per month on average); and more than 3 830 received assistance telephonically.

## Gambling Review Commission (GRC)

To consider questions about the appropriateness of current gambling policy, regulation, and the proliferation of gambling opportunities and challenges around the regulation of particular forms of gambling, the Minister of Trade and Industry appointed the GRC in December 2009. The commission was to review the gam-

bling industry in terms of framework policy, structural efficiency and socio-economic consequences, from the period 1996 onwards.

In 2011, the Department of Trade and Industry released the committee's findings. These included:

- 68,2% of the South African population does not engage in any gambling activity (based on a representative sample of 3 500 respondents drawn from rural, semi-rural and metro areas). Data includes all variables such as race, household income, education, gender, age and working status.
- Critical to regulate in a manner that balances the growth of this industry while ensuring communities are protected from excessive gambling activities that impact negatively on households. The data affirms the benefits of a well regulated gambling regime.

Recommendations included:

- There is a need to ensure that horseracing is brought within the regulatory framework. Review of work already done in this area should be revisited and this industry should be regulated nationally, to be inclusive of the National Horseracing Authority.
- Regulation of betting exchanges – however, government has to determine implications thereof and policy in this area. Critical to maintain a regulatory national advisory and oversight body with oversight powers and authority to create harmonisation and uniform gambling norms and standards.
- Regulating interactive gambling required mutual cooperation across multidisciplinary institutions with broader knowledge involving movement of money; verification of players; Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002) and Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008); cybercrime and communication strategies to ensure monitoring and verifying punters.
- Regulatory framework must accommodate innovations and emerging trends without necessarily allowing for a penetration of illegal activities.
- Any additional gambling modes should be informed by research, national policy and comprehensive legislative framework.
- The NGB facilitates processes of aligning legislations notwithstanding provincial gambling boards retaining their provincial permutations.
- There is a need to introduce a regulatory framework intended to level the playing fields between all forms of gambling activities – no sector should be granted significant competitive advantage over others.
- NGB facilitates processes of aligning legislations notwithstanding provincial gambling boards retaining their provincial permutations.
- There is a need to introduce a regulatory framework intended to level the playing fields between all forms of gambling activities – no sector should be granted significant competitive advantage over others.

Conclusions made going forward in the regulation of the gambling industry included:

- A proposed merger of the NGB and the National Lotteries Board (NLB). Currently, these boards have two entirely different mandates derived from different legislations.
- There is a need for collaboration to effectively regulate and research responsible gambling; register advertisements and promotions; registration of machines and devices; and the probity registers.
- The current Act requires a complete over-

The Financial Services Laws General Amendment Bill, 2012, was tabled in Parliament in September 2012.

The Bill, which was released for public comment in March, addresses urgent issues in 11 financial sector laws, including legislative gaps that were highlighted after the 2008 financial crisis and to align these laws with the new Companies Act, 2008, and other legislation.

Among other things, the Bill seeks to make the Financial Services Board the lead regulator where there is concurrent jurisdiction, as well as eliminate overlaps caused by the Consumer Protection Act, 2008; Companies Act, 2008; and Competition Commission Act, 2009.

Brand Finance, together with Brand South Africa and Brand Africa, launched Brand Finance South Africa 50, a study of the most valuable brands from South Africa, in early 2012.

Brand Finance South Africa measured the financial value of the 50 most valuable brands from South African companies that operate both within and outside South Africa.

MTN topped the list as the Most Valuable South African Brand, with a global value of R43,3 billion and is also the only South African brand in the Brand Finance Global 500, the definitive guide to the world's top 500 brands.

South African banks also had a successful year in 2012, with Standard Bank ranked as the Most Valuable Banking Brand. Banks make up the majority of the Top 10 with Absa, Nedbank and First National Bank also securing high places in the South African ranking.

Vodacom and Standard Bank were found to be the second and third most valuable brands in South Africa (at R18,7 billion and R18 billion respectively), while MTN and First National Bank were found to be the strongest brands, with both having a brand rating of AAA-.

haul to address all identified lacuna, and all approved new forms of gambling.
- Expediting the promulgation of additional national norms and standards.

The commission established that online gambling was unlikely to disappear, as the world was driven by technology. It recommended that a holistic view of online gambling should be taken to its regulation that includes interactive gambling and all forms of remote gambling such as telephone or cellphone gambling.

## National Lotteries Board (NLB)

The NLB was established in October 1998 in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997). The board's main activities include:
- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on the issuing of the licence to conduct the National Lottery
- ensuring that the National Lottery and sports pools are conducted with all due propriety
- ensuring that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected
- ensuring that the nett proceeds of the National Lottery are as high as possible
- administering the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund and hold it in trust
- advising the Minister on percentages of money to be allocated in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997
- advising the Minister on establishing and implementing a social-responsibility programme in respect of lotteries
- administering and investing the money paid to the board in accordance with the Lotteries Act, 1997.

The National Lottery operator is Gidani, a 89,2% black-majority-owned private company.

Between 1 April 2011 and 31 March 2012, 68 players won more than a million rand. 49 Lotto players, 18 PowerBall players and one SportStake player became millionaires. Since the lottery began in March 2000, 1 112 millionaires have been created.

More than R2 billion in funding was disbursed to non-governmental organisations countrywide during 2011/12, against a backdrop of an increasing number of applications from eligible organisations.

In 2011, the Department of Trade and Industry launched a review of the Lotteries Policy Framework. The *Lottery Policies Review,* detailing proposed amendments to the Lotteries Act, 1997, was published for public comment in the *Government Gazette* in October 2012. A draft Bill will flow from the policy proposals following consultations with various stakeholders.

## Auditor-General of South Africa

The AG strengthens South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AG is one of the Chapter-9 institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AG is thus respected and strengthened.

As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AG is responsible for auditing national and provincial state departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AG.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as performance audits, information system audits and audit research and development. The AG also boasts an impressive international auditing complement.

The AG has been presented with the Jörg Kandutsch Award by its peers, in recognition of its efforts to enhance public auditing. The organisation has benefited from the shared experiences and knowledge gained as a member of several working groups, subcommittees and regional working groups of the International Organisation of Supreme Audit Institutions.

In addition, the AG contributed directly to the development of the International Standards of Supreme Audit Institutions, which were officially re-launched as a whole during the 20th International Congress of Supreme Audit Institutions held in Johannesburg in 2010. The next congress will take place in Beijing, China, in October 2013.

## Financial sector

### South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The Reserve Bank is the central bank of South Africa. It was established in 1921 in terms of a special Act of Parliament, the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), which was the direct result of abnormal monetary and financial conditions that had arisen during and in the period immediately following World War I.

The Reserve Bank is governed by the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989). In terms of the Constitution, it has been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties.

Since its establishment, the Reserve Bank has always been privately owned. It has more than 600 shareholders. Its shares are traded on the over-the-counter share-trading facility managed by the Reserve Bank.

Its operations are not motivated by a drive to return profits, but to serve the best interests of all South Africans.

The Reserve Bank has branch offices in Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria North.

The bank must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities to National Treasury and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the Reserve Bank holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and other select committees on finance from time to time.

The Reserve Bank has a unique position in the economy, as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the Reserve Bank have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy has remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The Reserve Bank has used different monetary-policy frameworks over time, such as credit ceilings and credit controls in the 1970s, money-supply growth targets in the 1980s, money-supply growth guidelines in the early 1990s and an eclectic monetary policy with an informal inflation target from the mid-1990s.

In February 2000, an inflation target was specified for the first time, and the adoption of this target entrusted a single objective to the Reserve Bank: price stability. This target was set for the first achievement in 2002. The target is to keep the headline consumer price index between 3% and 6% per year.

The Reserve Bank publishes monetary-policy reviews, while regular regional monetary-policy forums are held to provide a platform for discussions of monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

### System of accommodation

The Reserve Bank's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its mon-

etary policy. Through its refinancing system, the Reserve Bank provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements.

"Liquidity" refers to the banks' balances at the central bank that are available to settle their transactions with one another, over and above the minimum statutory level of reserves that they have to hold.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is repo transactions. The refinancing system, based on repo transactions, was introduced in March 1998.

The repo rate is the price at which the Reserve Bank lends cash to the banking system and is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process. It represents the most important indicator for short-term interest rates.

The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and standing facilities to bridge the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs, as well as a concession to banks to use their cash-reserve balances with the Reserve Bank to square off their daily positions.

## Creating a liquidity requirement

In terms of its monetary-policy implementation framework, the Reserve Bank has to compel banks to borrow a substantial amount (the liquidity requirement or the money-market shortage) from the Reserve Bank.

The Reserve Bank, therefore, creates a liquidity requirement (or shortage) in the money market, which it then refinances at the repo rate – a fixed interest rate determined by the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC), comprising the bank's governors and other senior officials. After each meeting, the MPC issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and announces policy changes, if necessary.

The Reserve Bank's repo rate influences the interest rates charged by banks, the general level of interest rates in the economy and therefore other economic aggregates such as money supply, bank-credit extension and, ultimately, the rate of inflation. The repo rate influences market rates in two ways: it directly influences the bank's marginal cost of funding and it reflects the bank's stance on monetary policy.

The Reserve Bank has to intervene regularly in the money market to create a shortage that would drain excess liquidity. In addition to the liquidity-management operations, the Reserve Bank uses other open-market operations to achieve its monetary-policy objectives.

The open-market operations refer to the selling of Reserve Bank debentures, longer-term reverse repos, money-market swaps in foreign exchange and the movement of public-sector funds, for example, the Corporation for Public Deposits and central government funds, as well as changes in the cash-reserve requirements for banks, which by mid-2009 amounted to 2,5% of banks' liabilities.

## Functions

The functions of the Reserve Bank can be grouped into the following major areas of responsibility:

- Formulation and implementation of monetary policy (aimed at achieving the inflation target).
- Refinancing system and interest rates: The essence of the bank's monetary-policy implementation framework and the transmission of monetary policy is its influence on the level of interest rates through its refinancing system.
- Open-market operations: These operations are conducted for two reasons: Firstly, to neutralise or smooth the influence of exo-genous factors on the liquidity position in the money market. Secondly, to maintain an adequate liquidity requirement in the market, which has to be refinanced from the bank. Through this mechanism, the bank can exert influence over interest rates in the market.

- Service to government:
  - Gold and foreign-exchange reserves: The bank is the custodian of the country's offi-

cial gold and foreign-exchange reserves. Subsequent to the conversion of the negative nett open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, foreign reserves have been growing.
  - Banker and adviser to government: The main services provided are administering the auctions of government bonds and National Treasury bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the bank and National Treasury, and managing the flow of funds between the exchequer.
- Account and tax and loan accounts.
  - Administration of exchange control: The bank is responsible for the administration of government's exchange-control policy.
  - Provision of economic and statistical services: The bank collects, processes, interprets and publishes public information, economic statistics and other information, and uses this information in policy formulation.
- Bank supervision: The purpose is to achieve a sound and effective banking system in the interest of depositors of banks and the economy as a whole.
- The national payment system: The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.
- Banker to other banks: The bank acts as custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily with the bank.
- Banknotes and coins: The South African Mint Company, a subsidiary of the bank, mints all coin on behalf of the bank. The South African Bank Note Company, another subsidiary of the bank, prints all banknotes on behalf of the Reserve Bank. Currency is distributed through the bank's seven branches to commercial banks. It is the responsibility of the branches to ensure that there is an adequate supply of new notes available to meet the demand, and to replace unfit notes. The branches are responsible for the quality of banknotes in circulation in their respective regions.
- Lender of last resort: In terms of its "lender-of-last-resort" activities, the bank may, in certain circumstances, provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems.
- Monitoring financial stability: In view of the interrelationship between price and financial-system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.
- Provision of internal corporate support services and systems.
- To ensure smooth operations and administration, the bank provides its own internal services, supported by information, commutation and technology, and human resources.

## Monetary policy

Global economic developments had a major impact on the conduct of monetary policy in 2011, as a series of negative shocks resulted in slower economic growth and higher inflation outcomes.

The Reserve Bank launched a national campaign on a new range of banknotes honouring former president Nelson Mandela.

The range was themed *One of a Kind* and the campaign was aimed at educating the public about the banknotes, which entered circulation at the end of 2012.

The new R200, R100, R50, R20, and R10 notes show Mandela's face on the front, and the Big Five group of mammals, which appear on the existing notes, on the back.

Security features include watermarks, micro-printing, and unique numbering. The notes also feature raised printing for the visually impaired.

The new banknotes are the same size as the previous one that are in circulation to avoid confusing the visually impaired.

The South African rand was relatively strong for most of the first half of 2011, which helped contain negative price trends. The second half of the year was dominated by the sovereign debt and banking crises in the eurozone and heightened risk aversion resulted in a depreciation of the rand, which exacerbated the impact of higher international oil prices and posed an increased risk to the domestic inflation outlook.

Monetary policy in South Africa was significantly influenced by this global backdrop, alongside a range of key domestic factors. At the time of the March 2011 MPC meeting, the domestic growth prognosis had improved but upside risks led to an upward revision of the inflation forecast. By the May 2011 MPC meeting, the Reserve Bank's forecast for domestic economic growth was reduced slightly and the inflation forecast was again revised upwards.

By the time of the May 2012 MPC meeting, the outlook for domestic economic growth remained unchanged, whereas the inflation outlook improved. A stable interest rate environment was preferred given the conflicting pressures on monetary policy and during the entire period under review, the repurchase rate remained unchanged at 5,5% in support of the real economy despite the temporary breach of the target. Since then, there have been further indications of a generalised slowdown in the global economy and at the July meeting the growth and inflation forecast was revised down. In light of these developments, the repurchase rate was reduced by 50 basis points to 5% a year.

## The banking industry

As at the end of December 2011, 31 banking institutions – 10 locally controlled, six foreign-controlled, 13 registered branches and two mutual banks – were reporting data to the Bank Supervision Department of the Reserve Bank. There were also 43 authorised representative offices of international banks in South Africa.

The banking industry is characterised by a high degree of concentration, with four banks, namely Absa Bank Ltd, Standard Bank of South Africa Ltd, FirstRand Bank Ltd and Nedbank Ltd, dominating the sector. The domestic banking sector's operating environment remained challenging during 2011; however, signs of improvement were evidenced compared to 2010.

Total banking-sector assets amounted to R3 409 billion at the end of December 2011, compared to R3 126 billion at the end of December 2010, representing year-on-year growth of 9,0%. Total assets of the four largest banks accounted for 84,1% of total banking-sector assets as at December 2011 (December 2010: 84,6%). Gross loans and advances increased by 8,8% from R2 312 billion at the end of December 2010 to R2 516 billion at the end of December 2011.

Home loans remained the largest component of gross loans and advances, representing about 32,9%, followed by term loans at 17,4% and other loans and advances at 12,8%. At the end of December 2011, banking-sector total equity and liabilities amounted to R3 409 billion (December 2010: R3 126). Total deposits, amounting to R2 710 billion, represented 85,7% of the banking sector's liabilities of R3 161 billion at the end of December 2011 (December 2010: 85,6%).

Deposits from corporate customers (including financial institutions) constituted the largest portion of total banking-sector deposits (46,3%). The total capital-adequacy ratio of the banking sector increased marginally from 14,9% at the end of December 2010 to 15,1% at the end of December 2011.

The banking sector operating profit increased by 30% to R49 billion for the year ending December 2011 (December 2010: R38 billion). The return on equity and return-on-assets ratios improved during 2011 to 16,4% and 1,2%, respectively, at the end of December 2011 (December 2010: 14,6% and 1%, respectively).The ratio of liquid assets to liquid assets held by the banking sector increased during 2011, rising from 174,8% in December 2010 to 193,5% in December 2011.

Impaired advances to gross loans and advances improved throughout 2011 and amounted to 4,7% at the end of December

2011 (December 2010: 5,8%). In line with the general improvement in the quality of the loan books of the banks, the ratio of specific credit impairments as a percentage of gross loans and advances decreased from 1,9% in December 2010 to 1,6% in December 2011.

### The microlending industry

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005), to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner.

The NCA, 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980). The NCA, 2005, which became effective on 1 June 2007, aims to regulate the granting of consumer credit by all credit-providers, including microlenders, banks and retailers.

It created the National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal, which play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act.

Out of a population of close to 50 million, South Africa has just over 18 million credit-active consumers.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. It carries out education, research and policy development; registers industry participants; investigates complaints; and ensures that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act.

The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist overindebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service providers appointed by the regulator.

## Other financial institutions

### Co-Operative Banks Development Agency

The Co-Operative Banks Development Agency was established in 2009 in terms of the Co-Operative Banks Act, 2007.

Its objectives are to provide for the registration of deposit-taking financial service co-operatives, savings and credit co-operatives, community banks and village banks, and their regulation and supervision. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training of co-operative bank personnel.

Access to financial services is a precondition for economic development. As 37% of South Africans have no access to regulated financial services, National Treasury is committed to a range of initiatives to increase access.

Financial co-operatives are owned and controlled by members. The agency provides training and support to ensure that the members' savings and assets are properly managed, and not exposed to undue risk.

In line with government's responsibility for regulating banking and developments in the co-operative banking sector, the department developed appropriate legislation to supervise and support the sector.

### Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA)

The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997), stipulates that the DBSA's main role is to promote economic development and growth, human-resource development and institutional capacity-building. The bank achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

The DBSA's annual financial results for the year ended 31 March 2011 showed an enhanced contribution to development (loan and equity disbursements plus developmental initiatives) amounting to R8,9 billion. This was achieved despite the financial year being

dominated again by economic and market conditions, characterised by lower short-term interest rates and increased long-term interest rates on investments.

During 2010/11, the DBSA spent R518,9 million (2009/10: R550,2 million) on developmental initiatives, representing 60,8% (2010: 66,9%) of its sustainable earnings.

In June 2011, National Treasury's R9-billion Jobs Fund, which aims to create 150 000 jobs over three years, was accepting applications from companies and non-governmental organisations with innovative job-creation projects.

The aim was to give R2 billion in grants in 2011/12 to those companies in the private sector that create jobs. The fund will run for three years and be administered by the DBSA. The department chose the DBSA to administer the fund because of its footprint, which covers over 200 municipalities across the country, and its experience in funding community development projects.

The fund targets established companies with a good track record that plan to expand existing programmes or pilot innovative approaches to employment creation, with a special focus on opportunities for young people.

The fund will target four areas, namely enterprise development, local infrastructure development, support for work seekers and institutional capacity-building.

The DBSA is an implementing agent of the Siyenza Manje Project, an initiative to build capacity and support programmes within local government by hiring experts and young professionals in areas where there are skills shortages.

In 2012, South Africa's former secret service head Mo Shaik was appointed as chief executive of the Development Bank International, to be launched as a subsidiary of the DBSA.

## Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a DFI within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002).

The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry. Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, co-operatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
  - service delivery
  - resource management
- sustainability.

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans.

A key recent achievement was the diversification of investors to fund the growing loan book.

## Financial Services Board (FSB)

The FSB is a regulatory institution established in terms of the FSB Act, (Act 97 of 1990). The functions of the board include:

- supervising the compliance with laws regulating financial institutions and the provision of financial services
- advising the Minister on matters concerning financial institutions and financial services, either of its own accord or at the request of the Minister
- promoting programmess and initiatives by financial institutions and bodies representing the financial services industry to inform and educate users and potential users of financial products and services.

## Collective investment schemes (CIS)

CIS are investment structures whereby individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers

regulated under the Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

The South African CIS industry has recovered well after the financial crisis. The industry continued to benefit from strong investor confidence in the first quarter of 2013, attracting nett inflows of R47 billion – the second highest quarterly nett inflows ever. The highest ever nett quarterly inflows of R63 billion were recorded in the third quarter of last year and the third highest of R41 billion were achieved in the fourth quarter of 2012.

The three consecutive quarters of record-breaking nett inflows for unit trusts and other local CIS resulted in the highest ever nett inflows for any rolling 12-month period. R166 billion in nett inflows was recorded for the year ended March 2013.

At the end of the first quarter in 2013, the local CIS industry managed assets of R1,28 trillion and offered investors 988 funds. In comparison, total assets under management at the end of December 2012 stood at R1,20 trillion.

The industry's assets under management almost doubled over the past five years.

## Financial advisers and intermediaries

The purpose of the FAIS Act, 2002 is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services to certain clients in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FSB, through the FAIS Division, is responsible for the regulation of the rendering of financial advisory and intermediary services to clients by FSPs in respect of a wide range of financial products.

The provisions of the FAIS Act, 2002 became effective on 30 September 2004. In terms of this Act, before conducting any transaction, consumers should ensure that the FSP they are dealing with has obtained a licence from the FSB. Information on authorised FSPs can be obtained from the FSB website.

## Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the FAIS Act, 2002 provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of its powers in terms of the Act to anybody recognised by the Act. Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to two recognised representative bodies. As recognised examination bodies, another four bodies are responsible for developing and delivering the regulatory examination.

## Advisory Committee on Financial Services Providers

The Minister of Finance appoints the Advisory Committee on FSPs, whose function is to investigate and report or advise on any matter covered by the FAIS Act, 2002.

The advisory committee consists of a chairperson and other members, including a rep-resentative of the Council for Medical Schemes established by Section Three of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), and persons representative of product suppliers, FSPs and clients involved in the application of this Act, appointed by the Minister after consultation with the board.

The members of the advisory committee, except for the Registrar and Deputy Registrar, who are ex officio members, hold office for a period determined by the Minister.

## Licensing of financial services providers

The Registrar of FSPs authorises and renders ongoing supervision of five categories of FSPs. Category-1 consists of financial advisers and intermediaries who provide financial services without discretion. Category-2 FSPs offer discretionary intermediary services in terms of financial product choice, but without implementing bulking. Category-2A FSPs are hedge-fund managers. Category 3 FSPs are investment administrators specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment

services providers). Category 4 FSPs represent assistance business administrators who render intermediary services in terms of the administration of assistance business (funeral policies) on behalf of an insurer to the extent agreed to in a written mandate between the two parties.

## Insurance companies

Insurance is divided into long- and short-term insurance. Insurance is an agreement between a policy holder and the insurance company. Under a short-term insurance policy, the insured is entitled to be compensated by the insurer for the loss of or damage to assets caused by the event against which they are insured.

The aim of short-term insurance is to put the insured in the same position they occupied immediately before the loss, depending on the terms and conditions of the policy contract. Examples of short-term insurance include motor-vehicle, household, theft and fire insurance. By 31 March 2011, there were 108 short-term insurers in South Africa.

Long-term insurance includes life and assistance policies that pay a benefit to dependants on the death of the insured person(s), endowment (savings) policies payable at a predetermined date, disability policies, pensions and retirement policies, or even a combination of these. By 31 March 2011, there were 87 long-term insurers in South Africa.

In terms of the Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 52 of 1998), and the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 53 of 1998), all insurance companies must be registered by the FSB and must comply with the provisions of these Acts.

The insurance industry has appointed a short-term and long-term insurance ombudsman to mediate dispute resolution between insurers and policy holders.

## Market abuse

The Directorate: Market Abuse is an FSB committee responsible for combatting market abuse in the financial markets in South Africa. The three forms of market abuse prohibited in South Africa are insider trading, price manipulation and publication of false or misleading statements. The members of the directorate are representative of the legal and accounting professions, financial markets, the banking industry, the fund managers industry, the Reserve Bank and investors.

All three forms of market abuse are criminal contraventions. In addition, an offender may be referred to the FSB Enforcement Committee, which can impose unlimited penalties. In the case of insider trading contravention, such penalties are distributed to people who were prejudiced by the offending transactions.

## Retirement funds

The Minister of Finance announced proposals in the 2013 Budget Speech to reform the retirement industry, with a focus on governance, preservation, annuitisation and harmonisation of retirement funds.

These proposals follow a series of technical discussion papers with draft proposals that were issued in 2012, after the 2012 Budget announcements by the Minister.

Over the course of 2012, both formal and informal consultations were held in respect of these papers with stakeholders, including unions, industry associations, product providers, intermediary associations, and members of the public. Following on from these consultations, government has developed revised policy proposals for further consultation.

The overall approach of these policy proposals is to alter the defaults implicit in retirement fund design, where appropriate, to nudge, rather than force, individuals into making decisions which serve their long-run interests.

From an effective date, on or after 2015, called T-day, employer contributions to retirement funds will become a fringe benefit in the hands of employees for tax purposes. Individuals will be able to receive a tax deduction on employer and employee contributions to a pension fund, provident fund or retirement annuity fund up to 27,5% of the greater of remuneration and taxable income. A ceiling of R350 000 will apply.

In addition, government is exploring ways to increase retirement fund coverage to all workers.

### Enforcement

The Enforcement Committee of the FSB is adjudicates on all alleged contraventions of legislation, regulations, codes of conduct, etc. administered by the FSB within the South African non-banking financial services industry.

The FSB administers the following Acts:

- CIS Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002)
- FSB Act, 1990, the FAIS Act, 2002
- Financial Institutions (Protection of Funds) Act, 2001 (Act 28 of 2001)
- Financial Supervision of the Road Accident Fund Act, 1993, (Act 8 of 1993)
- Friendly Societies Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Inspection of Financial Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 80 of 1998)
- Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998
- Pension Funds Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Short-Term Insurance Act, 1990
- Supervision of the Financial Institutions Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 32 of 1996)
- Securities Services Act, 2004 (Act 36 of 2004).

The committee considers cases of alleged contraventions of legislation administered by the FSB. The industries regulated by the FSB include CIS; FSPs; insurance; nominee companies; retirement funds and friendly societies. The committee may impose unlimited penalties, compensation orders and cost orders. Such orders are enforceable as if it were a judgment of the Supreme Court of South Africa.

### Financial markets

Capital markets were characterised by high levels of capital inflows into emerging markets and the sovereign debt crisis in Europe from 2010 to 2012.

Attractive returns in emerging debt markets coupled with higher growth prospects impelled investors around the globe to seek higher-yielding emerging market assets, particularly in the second half of the year.

The South African capital market had its fair share of capital inflows, with a substantial amount finding its way to the local currency government bond market.

## Government bonds

### Retail bonds

Retail bonds can be purchased from National Treasury, the South African Post Office and Pick n Pay stores countrywide. Since the introduction of RSA fixed-rate retail savings bonds in May 2004 and inflation-linked retail bonds in April 2007, the cumulative amount reached R17,2 billion on 31 May 2012.

Government first issued these bonds to encourage South African citizens to save. These bonds are easily accessible through various distribution channels across the country. The number of investors has increased over the past eight years.

Due to general familiarity with fixed deposits as made available by the commercial banks, investors in the RSA retail bonds are more inclined to invest in a predictable product such as fixed-rate investment. There has been increased investment in inflation-linked bonds, mainly due to the decline in stereotype associated with fixed-rate investments.

### Domestic capital market bonds

Increased global demand for emerging market's higher-yielding debt has led to rising international interest in South African government bonds. Non-residents' purchases of domestic bonds declined somewhat from a nett annual high of R52 billion in 2010 to a nett R42 billion in 2011. In the first six months of 2012, non-residents purchased a nett of R49 billion worth of domestic bonds, which contributed to the noticeable decline in bond yields.

Among the most traded bonds in the market are the R157 (13,5%: 2015) and the R186 (10,5%: 2026). The daily yields on the R157 government bond averaged 6,555% in 2012 to June, after closing 2011 at the average of 7,271%, from a daily average of 7,751% in 2010. The R186 government bond averaged 8,297% in 2012 to June, after closing 2011 at the aver-

age of 8,511% as opposed to 8,614% in 2010. The average spread between the R157 and the R186 widened to the 170 basis points level from 2010's average of about 88 basis points.

The break-even inflation rate – calculated as the differential between fixed-interest bond yields and the real yields of inflation-linked government bonds within the one-year maturity range – increased from an average of 5,56% in June 2011 to 5,95% in June 2012. The long-term break-even inflation rate (21-year) increased from an average of 6,03% in June 2011 to 6,21% in June 2012, owing to stronger real yields being driven down by the demand for inflation-linked bonds.

## Primary market

Government funding in the domestic primary market is done through long-term market loans, which comprise fixed-income bonds, inflation-linked bonds, floating-rate notes and retail bonds.

Fixed-income bond issuances constitute most of the total bond issuance, and were issued at a weighted average nominal yield of 8,3%, while inflation-linked bonds were issued at a weighted average real yield of 2,9% in the previous year.

Five new domestic bonds were issued in 2012 – the two new fixed-income bonds, R2023 (7,75%; 2023) and R2048 (8,75%; 2047/48/49), and three new inflation-linked bonds, I2025 (2%: 2025), I2038 (2,25%: 2038) and I2050 (2,5%: 2049/50/51). All were well received by market participants and their volume has increased to contribute to the improved market turnover.

## International bonds

South Africa priced a US$1,5 billion 12-year global bond in the international capital markets on 9 January 2012. The bond was priced at a yield of 4,715%, a coupon (interest) of 4,665% and a spread of 270 basis points above the 10-year United States of America (USA) Treasury's benchmark bonds. The coupon (interest) of 4,665% was 159 basis points lower than the coupon of the 30-year global dollar coupon issued in 2011 at 6,25.

After reaching a spread of 129 basis points over the underlying US Treasury bond on 29 June 2011, the spread on the RSA global bond maturing in 2041 widened to 290 basis points on 23 September 2011 before narrowing to 177 basis points, while the new 2024 narrowed to 208 basis points at end of June 2012.

After recording nett redemptions in 2009 and 2010, gross issues of rand-denominated bonds by non-residents in the European and Japanese Uridashi bond markets exceeded gross redemptions in 2011, resulting in nett issues of R20 billion over the period.

While issuances in the Japanese Uridashi bond market remained broadly on the same level, issuance activity in the European bond markets more than doubled in 2011 when compared with 2010.

Although rand-denominated bond issuances by non-residents continued steadily in 2012, they were at a somewhat lower level, possibly in part as a result of fragile market conditions amid the political and financial problems in Europe, and the downgrading of sovereign debt credit ratings in Japan and a number of European countries.

In the first half of 2012, nett redemptions of rand-denominated bonds in the European bond markets amounted to R1,3 billion, while nett issuances of R1,4 billion were recorded in the Uridashi bond market.

## Secondary market

The local bond market continued to benefit from prudent macro-economic policies, which saw the country through the global financial crisis in 2008. The nominal turnover on the domestic bond market reached a high of R19,3 trillion in 2008 before declining significantly to R13,4 trillion in 2009. In 2010, turnover increased to R16,9 trillion and continued higher to a record high of R20,9 trillion in 2011 with support from non-residents.

Non-residents contributed about 10% to total turnover in June 2012, while local investors added the remaining 90%. The bond market capitalisation on the JSE Ltd amounted to

R1,7 trillion in June 2012, with government contributing the largest share of 61% to the total market capitalisation, followed by public and private corporations at 38%. Fixed-rate (including zero-coupon) bonds accounted for 67% of the total listing on the exchange in terms of instrument composition while inflation-linked and floating rate contributed 21% and 12% respectively.

## Exchange rates

Uncertainty about the sovereign debt crisis in peripheral European countries to an important extent dominated foreign-exchange markets over the past 18 months, although factors such as political turmoil in North Africa and the economic impact of the natural disaster in Japan also had a bearing on currencies.

Subsequent to an increase of 0,7% in the final quarter of 2011, the nominal effective exchange rate of the rand increased by 4,4% from the end of December 2011 to the end of March 2012.

The rand appreciated in the first quarter of 2012 most notably against the US dollar, Chinese yuan and the Japanese yen. The appreciation in the external value of the rand in the first quarter of 2012 was supported by an improvement in international investor sentiment and risk appetite following the approval of Greece's second bailout package of €130 billion, alongside sustained low interest rates in developed economies.

However, from the end of March 2012 to the end of May 2012, the nominal effective exchange rate of the rand lost momentum and declined by 6,6%. The depreciation in the exchange value of the rand over this period could largely be ascribed to risk aversion following inconclusive Greek elections and renewed uncertainty in the global financial markets.

Subsequent to a 2,4% increase in December 2011, the real effective exchange rate of the rand rose by a further 0,8% up to March 2012, dampening the price competitiveness of local exporters. However, this trend reversed on account of the decline in the exchange rate of the rand in April.

The average nett daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange increased by 34,3% from US$16,5 billion in 2010 to US$22,1 billion in 2011 and approximately US$20 billion in the first five months of 2012. The higher turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange could largely be attributed to increased activity by non-resident investors in the swap market. The value of transactions in the market for third currencies also rose firmly in 2011 compared with the preceding year before levelling out in the early months of 2012.

## Exchange controls

Exchange-control regulations are administered by the Reserve Bank on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister of Finance has also appointed certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as authorised dealers with limited authority in foreign exchange, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the Financial Surveillance Department of the Reserve Bank. Authorised dealers are not agents of the Financial Surveillance Department, but act on behalf of their customers.

Since 1994, there have been gradual exchange-control reforms concerning individuals, corporates and institutional investors. The liberalisation has been focused on progressively increasing the individual foreign capital allowance, increasing institutional investors' foreign exposure and allowing South African firms to raise capital and expand their operations offshore from a domestic base.

Under current exchange control regulations there are no limitations as to how much money can be brought into South Africa, but there are limitations on the amount of money that can be transferred out of South Africa.

South Africans are currently, for example, able to transfer up to R4 million out of the country and invest it overseas. This is their lifetime allowance; additional allowances are available for travelling and other defined activities.

For all non-South Africans, their exchange

control status is vital in deciding if there will be limitations on transfering money out of South Africa that was introduced previously.

## Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE) Ltd

The JSE Ltd is privately owned and funded, and governed by a board of directors. Its activities are licensed and regulated by two Acts of Parliament, namely the Stock Exchanges Control Act, 1985 (Act 1 of 1985), which governs the equities markets, and the Financial Markets Control Act, 1989 (Act 55 of 1989), which governs the derivatives markets.

In keeping with international practice, the JSE Ltd also acts as regulator of its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection. Similarly, issuers of securities must comply with the JSE Ltd listings requirements, which aim to ensure sufficient disclosure of all information relevant to investors.

The JSE Ltd's roles include regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations. The JSE Ltd monitors applications for alterations to existing listings, and scrutinises company disclosures to the public. It also provides a Stock Exchange News Service through which company news, including price-sensitive in-formation, is distributed to the market.

The JSE Ltd has been bold in restructuring in view of increasingly tough global competition, adopting new technologies and outsourcing aspects of its business.

The traditional open outcry market in which traders jostled for deals on a noisy trading floor has now disappeared, replaced by a less colourful, but faster, computer-driven trading system (the Johannesburg equities trading screen-based system).

The JSE Ltd has been opened to corporate membership, resulting in a stampede by foreign banks, who have bought out most of the major local broking firms, using these as platforms for other financial services, such as corporate and government advisory work.

The introduction of an electronic settlement system called Strate (Share Transactions Totally Electronic), replaced the previous manual settlement method. Strate Ltd is the licensed Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of financial instruments in South Africa.

The Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE) was established in 1887 and became a member of the World Federation of Exchanges in 1963. It is currently the largest stock exchange in Africa, and the 16th largest in terms of market capitalisation and trading volume in the world. It has some 480 listed companies on the exchange with a total market capitalisation of approximately $580 billion.

The JSE Ltd's trading and information systems were replaced with the London Stock Exchange's (LSE) Sequence and the London Market Information Link or LMIL systems, branded JSE SETS and InfoWiz, respectively. The trading engine and information dissemination feed-handler is hosted in London and connected remotely to the JSE Ltd. The connection takes place over a 9 000-km transcontinental undersea cable and an innovative, integrated solutions design. More than 1 500 traders and information users access the system via a sophisticated application service provider with sub-second response time.

The JSE Ltd also aligned its equities trading model with that of Europe, and reclassified their instruments in line with the FTSE Global Classification System. This has led to the introduction of the FTSE/JSE Africa Index Series that makes the South African indices comparable to similar indices worldwide.

The investment community is now served by one of the most reliable trading platforms worldwide. Trade information of instruments listed on the JSE Ltd can be disseminated by the LSE to more than 104 000 trading terminals around the world, raising the profile of the JSE Ltd among the international investor community.

## Conclusion

Over the next 10 years, National Treasury's priorities include increasing investment in

infrastructure and industrial capital; improving education and skills development to raise productivity; improving the regulation of markets and public entities; and fighting poverty and inequality through efficient public service delivery, expanded employment levels, income support and empowerment.

During the next five years, National Treasury will continue to contribute to the design of social and economic reforms, especially in the areas of transport, energy, telecommunications and health.

It will also continue to focus government's financial resources on the stimulation of economic growth and job creation, and take a more hands-on approach to ensuring that government realises greater value for public funds spent. In this regard, some of the shortcomings in the management and monitoring of public finances will be addressed. A multifaceted approach has been adopted, including changes to supply-chain policy and selected expenditure reviews, as well as technical support where required.

State-owned entities and DFIs will continue to invest and fund infrastructure development that promotes long-term growth. Government will ensure that these institutions remain financially stable by facilitating cost-effective funding and thus enabling them to deliver on their mandates.

As part of its commitment to transparency, National Treasury will start publishing yearly reports on the management of public debt. These reports are intended to complement regular domestic and international road shows, as well as the investor relations website.

On the international front, National Treasury will continue to focus on influencing regional and global policies to advance the economic, financial and development objectives of South Africa and that of Africa more generally.

During the next five years, member states of Sacu – Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Swaziland – are expected to reach an agreement on a new revenue-sharing arrangement for the customs union. National Treasury will also engage in multilateral efforts to ensure the full implementation of SADC's Finance and Investment Protocol.

In view of current global economic uncertainty, G20 member states have been working to intensify international cooperation, giving particular consideration to the processes and institutions of global governance. National Treasury will play a leading role in developing, coordinating and negotiating South Africa's positions with respect to this agenda, in close collaboration with The Presidency, the Department of International relations and Cooperation and other core departments.

## Acknowledgements

*Business Day*
Development Bank of Southern Africa
*Development Indicators, 2010*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2011*, published by National Treasury
*Financial Services Board, Annual Report 2011*
National Gambling Board
National Treasury
*Quarterly Bulletin*, September 2011, published by the South African Reserve Bank
South African Reserve Bank
South African Revenue Service

*www.bondexchange.co.za*
*www.dti.gov.za*
*www.ffc.co.za*
*www.fin24.com*
*www.fsb.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.jse.co.za*
*www.landbank.co.za*
*www.news24.co.za*
*www.nlb.org.za*
*www.pic.gov.za*
*www.responsiblegambling.co.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.samint.co.za*
*www.sars.gov.za*
*www.southafrica.info*

## Suggested reading

De Koker, AP. 2012. *Silke Tax Yearbook 2011-2012.* Durban: LexisNexis.
Fourie, M, Opperman, L, Scott, D & Kumar, K. 2011. *Municipal Finance and Accounting.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Hugo, WMJ & Badenhorst-Weiss, JA. 2011. *Purchasing and Supply Management.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Hull, G & Gibson, C. 2012. *The VAT Handbook.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors (South Africa). 2011. *Manual of Information 2011 Guidelines for Registered Auditors.* Johannesburg.
Mahadea, D & Van Zyl, J (eds). 2012. *Entrepreneurship and Small Business Management.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Spitz, B, Gouws, J & Moss-Morris Inc. 2012. *Exchange Control Encyclopaedia and Financial Surveillance.* Durban: LexisNexis.
Swart, N. 2012. *Personal Financial Management: The Southern African Guide to Personal Financial Planning.* Claremont: Juta.
Van Wyk, K, Botha, Z & Goodspeed, I. 2012. *Understanding South African Financial Markets.* 4th ed. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Government System

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary. The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution as "distinctive, interdependent and interrelated".

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders. It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance.

Government is committed to the building of a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The outcomes-based approach, which started in 2010, is embedded in and a direct result of the electoral mandate. Five priority areas have been identified: decent work and sustainable livelihoods; education; health; rural development; food security and land reform; and the fight against crime and corruption.

These have been translated into the following 12 outcomes to create a better life for all:

- better quality basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all South Africans should be safe and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and enhanced
- a better Africa and a better world as a result of South Africa's contributions to global relations
- an efficient and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

Based on the outcomes and targets, President Jacob Zuma signed performance agreements with all ministers. The outcomes are reviewed by Cabinet and are open to public scrutiny as part of government's commitment to be transparent and accountable for service delivery.

## The Constitution

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

### The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

### Founding provisions

South Africa is a sovereign and democratic state founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

**The Presidency, November 2012**

| | |
|---|---|
| **President** | Jacob Zuma |
| **Deputy President** | Kgalema Motlanthe |

### Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter 2 of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals. The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the state are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

## Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

### Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Since the establishment of Parliament in 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process. The website *www.parliament.gov.za* encourages comment and feedback from the public.

### National Assembly

The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the speaker, assisted by the deputy speaker.

## National Council of Provinces (NCOP)

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government. Delegations consist of 10 representatives from each province. The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions.

It cannot, however, initiate a Bill concerning money, which is the prerogative of the Minister of Finance.

NCOP Online (*www.parliament.gov.za/ncop*) links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions. The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

## Government clusters

Clusters were established to foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government's planning, decision-making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The main functions of clusters are to ensure alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes, and provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters function at different levels, namely ministerial, directors-general and communication clusters. There are seven clusters.

### Infrastructure Development Cluster

- Transport (Chair)
- Public Enterprises (Deputy Chair)
- Communications
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Economic Development
- Energy
- Finance
- Human Settlements
- Public Works
- The Presidency: National Planning Commission
- Water and Environmental Affairs.

### Economic Sectors and Employment Cluster

- Rural Development and Land Reform (Chair)
- Science and Technology (Deputy Chair)
- Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
- Communications
- Economic Development
- Finance
- Higher Education and Training
- Labour
- Mineral Resources
- Public Enterprises
- Tourism
- Trade and Industry.

### Governance and Administration Cluster

- Home Affairs (Chair)
- Public Service and Administration (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Justice and Constitutional Development
- Finance
- The Presidency: Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration.

### Human Development Cluster

- Basic Education (Chair)
- Health (Deputy chair)
- Arts and Culture
- Higher Education and Training
- Labour
- Science and Technology
- Sport and Recreation.

### Social Protection and Community Development Cluster

- Social Development (Chair)
- Public Works (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs

## Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at June 2012

| Portfolio | Minister | Deputy Minister |
|---|---|---|
| Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries | Tina Joemat-Pettersson | Pieter Mulder |
| Arts and Culture | Paul Mashatile | Joe Phaahla |
| Basic Education | Angie Motshekga | Enver Surty |
| Communications | Dina Pule | Stella Ndabeni |
| Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Richard Baloyi | Yunus Carrim |
| Correctional Services | Sibusiso Ndebele | Ngoako Ramathlodi |
| Defence and Military Veterans | Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula | Thabang Makwetla |
| Economic Development | Ebrahim Patel | Hlengiwe Mkhize |
| Energy | Dipuo Peters | Barbara Thompson |
| Finance | Pravin Gordhan | Nhlanhla Nene |
| Health | Aaron Motsoaledi | Gwen Ramokgopa |
| Higher Education and Training | Blade Nzimande | Mduduzi Manana |
| Home Affairs | Naledi Pandor | Fatima Chohan |
| Human Settlements | Tokyo Sexwale | Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks |
| International Relations and Cooperation | Maite Nkoana-Mashabane | Marius Fransman<br>Ebrahim Ebrahim |
| Justice and Constitutional Development | Jeff Radebe | Andries Nel |
| Labour | Mildred Oliphant | - |
| Mineral Resources | Susan Shabangu | Godfrey Oliphant |
| Police | Nathi Mthethwa | Makhotso Sotyu |
| Public Enterprises | Malusi Gigaba | Gratitude Magwanishe |
| Public Service and Administration | Lindiwe Sisulu | Ayanda Dlodlo |
| Public Works | Thembelani Nxesi | Jeremy Cronin |
| Rural Development and Land Reform | Gugile Nkwinti | Solomon Tsenoli |
| Science and Technology | Derek Hanekom | - |
| Social Development | Bathabile Dlamini | Maria Ntuli |
| Sport and Recreation | Fikile Mbalula | Gert Oosthuizen |
| State Security | Siyabonga Cwele | - |
| The Presidency:<br>National Planning Commission | Trevor Manuel | - |
| The Presidency:<br>Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration | Collins Chabane | Obed Bapela |
| Tourism | Marthinus van Schalkwyk | Thokozile Xasa |
| Trade and Industry | Rob Davies | Elizabeth Thabethe<br>Thandi Tobias-Pokolo |
| Transport | Ben Martins | Sindisiwe Chikunga |
| Water and Environmental Affairs | Edna Molewa | Rejoice Mabudafhasi |
| Women, Children and People with Disabilities | Lulu Xingwana | Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu |

- Environmental and Water Affairs
- Human Settlements
- Labour
- Rural Development and Land Reform
- Transport
- Women, Youth, Children and People with Disabilities.

**International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster**
- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- International Relations and Cooperation (Deputy Chair)
- Finance
- Trade and Industry
- Tourism
- Rural Development and Land Reform
- Water and Environmental Affairs.

**Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster**
- Justice and Constitutional Development (Chair)
- Police (Deputy Chair)
- Correctional Services
- Defence and Military Veterans
- Home Affairs
- State Security.

## Monitoring and evaluation

As part of assessing government's efforts to create a better life for all, Cabinet approved proposals for a 20-year review that will evaluate progress towards a democratic, non-racial and non-sexist South Africa, socio-economic development, and a review of government programmes. The review will build on existing research, and will be overseen by an Interministerial Committee led by the Minister in The Presidency, Mr Collins Chabane. An academic reference group will be established to ensure the review is rigorous and is expected to be completed by the end of 2013.

In November 2011, Cabinet approved the National Evaluation Policy Framework aimed at developing national and provincial annual and three-year evaluation plans, using standardised evaluation guidelines. Cabinet has now approved the first annual National Evaluation Plan, under which the following evaluations will be undertaken over the next year:
- National School Nutrition Programme and Grade R under the Department of Basic Education
- Integrated Nutrition Programme under the Department of Health
- Comprehensive Rural Development Programme and Land Reform Recapitalisation and Development Programme under the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform
- Business Process Services Incentives Scheme under the Department of Trade and Industry
- Integrated Residential Development Programme and Urban Settlements Development Grant under the Department of Human Settlements.

**Management performance assessment**

The Department of Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration, and the offices of the premiers were mandated by Cabinet in 2011 to implement annual management performance assessments for all national and provincial departments. In 2011/12, 103 national and provincial departments completed these assessments. Cabinet has further approved amendments to the Performance Management and Development System, according to which all heads of departments enter into performance agreements and are assessed every year.

Management areas identified for improvement include supply chain management, information technology (IT) governance, human resource management, and monitoring and evaluation. Pockets of excellence in some management areas have been identified and will be used as best-practice case studies to be shared throughout government.

## Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

## Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at October 2012

| | |
|---|---|
| **Eastern Cape** | |
| Noxolo Kiviet | Premier |
| Mcebisi Jonas | Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism |
| Mandla Makupula | Education and Training |
| Phumulo Masualle | Finance and Provincial Planning |
| Sicelo Gqobana | Health |
| Helen August-Sauls | Human Settlements, Safety and Liaison |
| Mlibo Qhaboshiane | Local Government and Traditional Affairs |
| Thandiswa Marawu | Public Works, Roads and Transport |
| Zoleka Capa | Rural Development and Agrarian Reform |
| Pemmy Majodina | Social Development, Women, Youth and People with Disabilities |
| Xoliswa Tom | Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture |
| **Free State** | |
| Sekgobelo Elias Magashule | Premier |
| Mosebenzi Zwane | Agriculture |
| Olly Mlamleli | Cooperative Governance, Traditional Leadership and Human Settlements |
| Mamiki Qabathe | Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs |
| Tate Pule Makgoe | Education |
| Fezi Ngubentombi | Health |
| Seiso Mohai | Provincial Treasury |
| Thabo Manyoni | Police, Roads and Transport |
| Sisi Elisa Mabe | Public Works and Rural Development |
| Sefora Sisi Ntombela | Social Development |
| Dan Kgothule | Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation |
| **Gauteng** | |
| Nomvula Paula Mokonyane | Premier |
| Nandi Mayathula-Khoza | Agriculture and Rural Development |
| Nonhlahla Faith Mazibuko | Community Safety |
| Nkosipendule Kolisile | Economic Development and Planning |
| Barbara Creecy | Education |
| Mandla Nkomfe | Finance |
| Hope Papo | Health and Social Development |
| Qedani Dorothy Mahlangu | Infrastructure Development |
| Ntombi Mekgwe | Local Government and Housing |
| Lebogang Maile | Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation |
| Ismail Vadi | Roads and Public Transport |
| **KwaZulu-Natal** | |
| Dr Zweli Mkhize | Premier |
| Dr Bonginkosi Meshack Radebe | Agriculture, Environmental and Rural Development |
| Ntombikayise Sibhidla-Saphetla | Arts, Culture, Sport and Recreation |
| Nomusa Dube | Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs |
| Mike Mabuyakhulu | Economic Development and Tourism |
| Senzo Edward Mchunu | Education |
| Catharina Magdalena Cronje | Finance |
| Dr Sibongiseni Maxwell Dlomo | Health |
| Ravi Pillay | Human Settlements and Public Works |

**Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at October 2012**

| | |
|---|---|
| Weziwe Gcotyelwa Thusi | Social Development |
| Thembinkosi Willies Mchunu | Transport and Community Safety and Liaison |
| **Limpopo** | |
| Cassel Charlie Mathale | Premier |
| Jacob Marule | Agriculture |
| Clifford Motsepe | Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs |
| Pinky Kekana | Economic Development, Environment and Tourism |
| Namane Dickson Masemola | Education |
| Dr Norman Mabasa | Health and Social Development |
| Soviet Lekganyane | Local Government and Housing |
| David Masondo | Provincial Treasury |
| Thabitha Mohlala | Public Works |
| Pitsi Moloto | Roads and Public Transport |
| Dipuo Letsatsi-Duba | Sport, Arts and Culture |
| Florence Dzhombere | Safety, Security and Liaison |
| **Mpumalanga** | |
| David Mabuza | Premier |
| Candith Mashego-Dlamini | Agriculture, Rural Development and Land Administration |
| Vusi Shongwe | Community Safety, Security and Liaison |
| Madala Masuku | Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs |
| Sbongile Manana | Culture, Sport and Recreation |
| Norman Mokoena | Economic Development, Environment and Tourism |
| Regina Mhaule | Education |
| Yvonne Pinky Phosa | Finance |
| Dr Rhulani Mkasi | Health and Social Development |
| Siphosezwe Masango | Human Settlements |
| Dikeledi Mahlangu | Public Works, Roads and Transport |
| **Northern Cape** | |
| Hazel Jenkins | Premier |
| Norman Shushu | Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development |
| Kenny Mmoiemang | Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs |
| Grizelda Cjiekella | Education |
| Sylvia Lucas | Environment and Nature Conservation |
| John Block | Finance, Economic Affairs and Tourism |
| Mxolisi Simon Sokatsha | Health |
| Dawid Rooi | Roads and Public Works |
| Alwin Botes | Social Services and Population Development |
| Pauline Williams | Sport, Arts and Culture |
| Patrick Mabilo | Transport, Safety and Liaison |
| **North West** | |
| Thandi Modise | Premier |
| Desbo Sefanyetso Mohono | Agriculture and Rural Development |
| Motlalepule Rosho | Economic Development, Environment and Tourism |
| Louisa Lerato Mabe | Education |
| Paul Sebegoe | Finance |
| Dr Magome Masike | Health |

**Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at October 2012**

| | |
|---|---|
| Nono Maloyi | Human Settlements, Safety and Liaison |
| China Dodovu | Local Government and Traditional Affairs |
| Raymond Elisha | Public Works, Roads and Transport |
| Masetsanagape Mokomela-Mothibi | Social Development, and Women, Children and People with Disabilities |
| Tebogo Modise | Sport, Arts and Culture |
| **Western Cape** | |
| Helen Zille | Premier |
| Gerrit van Rensburg | Agriculture |
| Dan Plato | Community Safety |
| Ivan Meyer | Cultural Affairs and Sport |
| Donald Grant | Education |
| Alan Winde | Finance, Economic Development and Tourism |
| Theuns Botha | Health |
| Bonginkosi Madikizela | Human Settlements |
| Anton Bredell | Local Government, Environmental Affairs and Development Planning |
| Albert Fritz | Social Development |
| Robin Carlisle | Transport and Public Works |

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After the council passes it, it must be referred to the National Assembly.

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the NCOP rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments. There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

## The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency comprises four political principals: the President, the Deputy President, the Minister of the National Planning Commission and the Minister of Performance, Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration.

The President, as the head of state, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly. The Deputy President assists the president in executing government functions.

## Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President, ministers and deputy ministers, assigns their powers and functions, and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of ministers from the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

## Elections

National and provincial elections are held once every four years. All South African citizens over the age of 18 are eligible to vote.

The Constitution places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

The obligations of the IEC are to:

- manage elections of national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies
- ensure that those elections are free and fair
- declare the results of those elections
- compile and maintain a voters' roll.

The duties of the IEC are to:

- compile and maintain a register of parties
- undertake and promote research into electoral matters
- develop and promote the development of electoral expertise and technology in all spheres of government
- continuously review electoral laws and proposed electoral laws, and make recommendations
- promote voter education
- declare the results of elections for national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies within seven days
- appoint appropriate public administrations in any sphere of government to conduct elections when necessary.

In July 2012, President Jacob Zuma launched the Siyahlola Presidential Monitoring Programme in Umzimkhulu on the south coast of KwaZulu-Natal. Although visits had been undertaken to other provinces in the past, the Umzimkhulu visit introduced the programme formally.

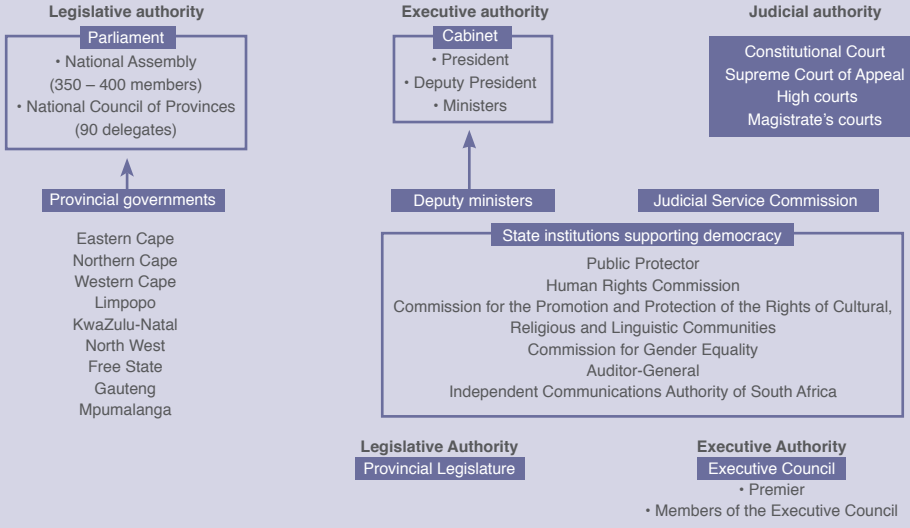
The Siyahlola Programme, which means "we are inspecting", is the President's hands-on, on-site monitoring of government performance in the delivery of services to the communities. Previous visits were undertaken to a number of areas in different provinces including Limpopo, North West, Eastern Cape and Gauteng. The President continues to undertake visits under the programme to assess first-hand any progress with various service delivery initiatives.

## Programmes and initiatives

### National Development Plan (NDP) 2030

South Africa's NDP seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 by drawing on the energies of the country's people, growing an inclusive economy, enhancing the capacity of the state, and promoting leadership and partnerships throughout society.

**Structure and functions of the South African Government**



Following months of public consultation and revision, the NDP 2030, titled *Our Future – Make it Work,* was handed over to President Jacob Zuma by the chairperson of the National Planning Commission, the Minister in The Presidency Mr Trevor Manuel, during a joint sitting of both Houses of Parliament in Cape Town in August 2012.

The plan focuses on the elimination of poverty – reducing the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to zero and a reduction of inequality in South Africa. Other goals include:

- increasing employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million by 2030
- broadening the country's ownership of assets by historically disadvantaged groups
- ensuring that all children have at least two years of pre-school education and that all children can read and write by Grade 3
- providing affordable access to healthcare
- ensuring effective public transport.

## Presidential Hotline

As part of President Zuma's directive to create an interactive, accessible and responsive government, the Presidential Hotline was established in 2009. Members of the public can use the toll-free hotline to lodge queries or complaints relating to government services. The hotline is supported by a network of public liaison officers in national departments, provinces and municipalities.

Since its establishment, the hotline has served as an important source of information for government-wide performance monitoring and evaluation, and for monitoring the impact of government on citizens as it enables government to track the important issues for citizens and respond accordingly.

By November 2012, citizens had logged more than 140 000 cases with the hotline, of which 87% had been resolved. Since September 2012, monthly satisfaction testing was conducted and the first results indicated that of 1 205 citizens surveyed, 65% rated their satisfaction with the resolution of their hotline case as high or average.

Calls from citizens included issues relating to employment/working conditions, housing, legal matters, social services, citizenship, electricity, education, health and basic services. The majority of these calls were from KwaZulu-Natal, Gauteng and the Eastern Cape, possibly due to the population size of these provinces.

To ensure that the hotline operated optimally, the number of call agents were increased in June 2012 from 20 to 30. This ensured an increase to 15 agents per shift operating on two shifts a day.

## Brand South Africa

From April 2012, the Brand South Africa responsibility has been moved from the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) to The Presidency.

Charged with marketing South Africa at home and abroad, Brand South Africa's focus internationally is to positively influence and shape perceptions about South Africa among target audiences. In March 2012, Brand South Africa launched its new slogan, *South Africa: Inspiring New Ways.* It replaced the previous slogan *Alive with Possibility*, which ran from 2003 to 2011 and reflected South Africa's potential as a leading country in Africa's emergence as an untapped market.

The new slogan is set to represent the next phase of the country's development, where South Africa has moved from possibility to delivery, and is now an important regional power.

Brand South Africa is best known locally for the highly successful Football Fridays campaign that inspired the nation to show their support in the build-up to the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Internationally, Brand South Africa lobbies and networks extensively among global opinion leaders to shift perceptions about the country and the continent.

Being a member of the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa trade bloc (BRICS), for example, provides a platform to engage and influence perceptions. This was evident at the Davos World Economic Forum (WEF) confer-

ence in January 2012, where South Africa was profiled as a competitive investment destination.

Brand South Africa also regularly brings groups of international journalists to the country to interact with South African government and business representatives, experience local life and culture, and learn about the country's latest technological developments.

## The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs is responsible for facilitating cooperative governance, to support all spheres of government and to assist the institution of traditional leadership to transform itself into a strategic partner of government in the development of communities.

In 2011/12, the department provided leadership to nine national departments in relation to achieving government's outcome of a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system with the following impact:

- 93 703 work opportunities were created through the Community Work Programme (CWP)
- 92% of ward committees were established, while 77% of these were inducted
- 80% of municipalities established municipal public accounts committees to improve governance and oversight in these municipalities.

In May 2012, the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, Mr Richard Baloyi, launched the Strategic Integrated Project 7 (SIP 7), which he chaired. SIP 7 is one of the 17 SIPs that form part of the Integrated Infrastructure Plan approved by the Cabinet and the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC) in February 2012.

In the initial phase, SIP 7 will focus its service delivery on the 11 major urban areas where most of South Africa's urban population resides. These are:

- Johannesburg, Tshwane and Ekurhuleni in Gauteng
- Cape Town in the Western Cape
- eThekwini and Msunduzi in KwaZulu-Natal
- Buffalo City and Nelson Mandela in the Eastern Cape
- Mangaung in the Free State
- Mbombela in Mpumalanga
- Polokwane in Limpopo.

### Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among others, the following legislation:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005).
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004), which regulates the power of a municipality to impose property rates, excludes certain properties from rating in the national interest, provides fair and equitable valuation methods of properties, and for municipalities to implement a transparent and fair system of exemptions, reductions and rebates through their rating policies.
- The Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 19 of 2009), which was introduced in September 2009 and aims to extend the validity of a valuation roll and supplementary valuation rolls from four to six years.
- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003) aimed at modernising municipal budgeting and financial management. It facilitates the development of a long-term municipal lending/bond market. It also introduces a governance framework for separate entities created by municipalities.
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002).
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 57 of 2002) which establishes a framework for planning, performance-management systems, effective use of resources and organisational change in a business context.
- The Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011), aimed at professionalising local government for improved service delivery and performance management, while also instilling a people-centred local government mindset in municipalities.

- Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998), which provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to prepare, implement and review integrated development plans (IDPs) and establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems.
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998).
- *White Paper on Local Government (1998)*.

The National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 2009 (Act 22 of 2009), and the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003), were consolidated by the National Traditional Affairs Bill to simplify the process. The National Traditional Affairs Bill was tabled in Parliament in July 2012.

The amendment of the legislation will also ensure, among other things, that traditional affairs, rather than only traditional leaders, will take centre stage. The Khoisan communities will also be fully represented in the National House of Traditional Leaders.

## Budget

The 2012/13 budget for the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs was R54,715 billion, with funds allocated as follows:

- R37,837 billion for the Equitable Share
- R13,881 billion for Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)
- R230 million for the Municipal Systems Improvement Programme
- R1,439 billion for the CWP
- R196,5 million for the Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency (Misa).

In a move that could change the face of local government, Finance Minister Pravin Gordhan announced that a new formula for the local government equitable share would be introduced in 2012/13.

The new formula would address the need to better differentiate assistance to different municipalities, including those in rural areas.

Under the previous formula, municipalities received their budget share according to their size. The new formula would result in significant changes in allocations to municipalities with higher poverty rates and less ability to raise their own revenue.

The formula for calculating equitable share would also be updated to reflect population changes as published in *Census 2011.* The census count showed that overall, the South African population grew from 44,8 million in 2001 to 51,8 million in 2011.

During 2011/12, provincial expenditure fell 1,3% short of an adjusted budget of R373 billion, primarily due to underspending on health and basic education in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Free State.

In the same period, municipalities underspent by R31 billion, representing 11,7% of the total budgeted municipal expenditure. Of 278 local municipalities, 212 underspent their transfer receipts by more than 5%, while 30 over-spent by more than 5%.

## Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members. The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members (MECs). Premiers are appointed by the President.

Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet. Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

However, a provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services

- human settlements
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road-traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreational activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005, which brings together the three spheres of government on matters of common interest and national importance, therefore strengthening cooperative government. Among other things, the forum looked at:

- mechanisms for monitoring job creation and implementation of the New Growth Path in all spheres of government
- shared experiences in creating an environment for job creation in provinces
- specific provincial matters
- monitoring and evaluation.

Infrastructure transfers to provinces increased sharply in recent years, growing from R4,8 billion in 2005/6 to R39,7 billion in 2012/13. To improve the quality of spending, the application process for infrastructure grants has been revised: provinces will be required to submit building plans two years ahead of implementation and will only receive allocations if plans meet certain benchmarks.

### Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF)

The PSDF was finalised in August 2012 to:

- be the spatial expression of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- guide (metropolitan, district and local) municipal IDPs and spatial development frameworks and provincial and municipal framework plans
- help prioritise and align investment and infrastructure plans of other provincial departments, as well as national departments' and parastatals' plans and programmes in the provinces
- provide clear signals to the private sector about desired development directions
- increase predictability in the development environment, for example by establishing "no-go," "conditional" and "go" areas for development and redress the spatial legacy of apartheid.

## Local government

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), which formally recognise organised local government associations, organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The Department of Cooperative Governance aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing per-

formance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda (LGSA) and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government.

The department is also responsible for coordinating and supporting policy development, implementing the LGSA, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

In July 2012, the Department of Cooperative Governance concluded its three-year Network of Tuscan and South African Local Governments (NETSAFRICA) partnership, which was funded by the Italian government. Its aim was to consolidate the role of local institutions in the realisation of effective policies and services to alleviate poverty and improve community access to basic services.

NETSAFRICA is a network of Italian and South African local governments aimed at promoting partnerships, exchanging expertise among partners and strengthening targeted institutions using a "practitioner-to-practitioner" approach.

Under the NETSAFRICA partnership, four municipalities – Buffalo City Metro, OR Tambo District Municipality, Ekurhuleni Metro and Metsweding District Municipality – were supported.

### Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipalities.

There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and service.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single employer bodies.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, and the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils.

District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning.

The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review IDPs
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

### Local Government Turnaround Strategy (LGTAS)

The LGTAS was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better

service delivery aimed at responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government.

Five focus areas aimed at fast-tracking implementation of the strategy have been identified. These are:

- service delivery
- governance
- financial management
- infrastructure development
- fighting corruption.

Working with provinces and municipalities, 108 priority municipalities have been identified to receive targeted support. These municipalities have the highest backlogs in basic services, are financially distressed, have the highest number of informal settlements and are under-spending on their infrastructure grants. Stakeholders outside government have also been mobilised to support such initiatives.

As part of the contribution to government's overall Infrastructure Development Plan, R47 billion was budgeted for 2012 to 2014 towards the development of infrastructure in the 12 major cities to ensure that people enjoy a better life.

The department aims to review all pieces of legislation that impede service delivery. In this regard, more than 300 sections of legislations that fall under this category have been identified and reviews will be undertaken.

In May 2012, Misa was proclaimed as a government agency as part of the LGTAS. Its purpose is to accelerate support to municipal-ities in providing service-delivery infrastructure.

The service-delivery statistics for 2012 showed improvement from previous years:

In July 2012, the World Bank, in partnership with the South Africa Government, the United Nations, the European Commission and the African Development Bank, hosted the second Understanding Risk Forum under the theme *Mapping Global Risk.*

The forum attracted 350 leading global experts in disaster risk assessment from more than 60 countries. They discussed cutting-edge risk analysis methodologies and showcased the latest innovations in risk assessment.

The Department of Corporative Governance and Traditional Affairs and the South African Local Government Association signed two memorandums of understanding (MoUs) for the Business-Adopt-a-Municipality initiative with Santam and Eskom.

The initiative encourages private companies to adopt a municipality, enter into a MoU and together improve infrastructure development, deal with governance challenges and address issues of local economic development, while at the same time contributing to job creation and provision of critical skills.

- The number of households with access to water services increased from 92% in 2009 to 94,7% in 2012.
- The number of households with access to sanitation services increased from 64% in 2009 to 84% in 2012.
- The number of households with access to refuse removal services increased from 64% in 2009 to 72% in 2012.
- Some 4 110 (96%) ward committees were established.
- Some 89% (38 060) ward committee members were inducted across all provinces.

### Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The MIG is aimed at eradicating municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The Department of Cooperative Governance is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing MIG projects.

In 2012/13, R9,2 billion was allocated towards MIG. Spending on the grant resulted in the provision of water to 98 394 households, sanitation to 217 349 households, and building of 1 184 km of municipal roads. In addition, 23 sports facilities were completed.

### Community Work Programme (CWP)

The CWP is a government programme aimed at addressing poverty and the high unemployment rate.

The programme is not an employment solution for participants, but serves as an employment safety net which provides them with a minimum number of regular days of work. This is typically two days a week or eight days a month, thus supplementing their existing livelihoods by offering a basic level of income security. It is an ongoing programme that does not replace government's existing social grants programme but complements it.

In 2012, 94 977 work opportunities were created through the CWP against a target of one million set for 2014.

### Local economic development (LED)

LED is an approach towards economic development that allows and encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life to all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED
- providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local government
- managing the LED Fund
- managing and providing technical support to Nodal Economic Development Planning
- facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor programmes
- assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised for the sake of achieving economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

### Municipal Demarcation Board (MDB)

The MDB is an independent authority responsible for the determination of municipal boundaries. The board's status as an independent authority is also protected by Section 3 of the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 and various judgements by the Constitutional Court.

In addition to the determinations and redeterminations of municipal boundaries, the MDB is also mandated by legislation to declare the district management areas; to delimit wards for local elections; and to assess the capacity of municipalities to perform their functions.

### South African Local Government Association (Salga)

Salga is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs in terms of the Organised Local Government Act, 1997.

Salga represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the PCC, Minister and MECs (MinMec) forum, the Budget Forum, the NCOP and the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

Salga aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

Salga is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

## Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act, 2002 was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster-Management Centre (NDMC) with functional disaster-management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces. The National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum was recognised by the United Nations (UN) as the national platform for reducing disaster risk.

South Africa has also made significant progress in respect of the implementation of the Hyogo Framework for Action – a global blueprint which aims to substantially reduce disaster losses by 2015.

Through the NDMC, the Department of Cooperative Governance registered unit standards for levels three to seven with the South African Qualifications Authority for a national certificate in disaster risk management. The department also developed regulations for recruiting and using disaster-management volunteers.

In September 2012, the Disaster Management Institute of Southern Africa held its annual conference on Disaster Risk Management under the theme *Taking Up the Challenge: Readiness for Risk Reduction and Response.*

The institute's conference is the biggest annual disaster reduction conference in Africa and routinely attracts approximately 300 delegates. The institute is recognised as the mouthpiece of the disaster management profession in southern Africa and is also recognised by the UN's International Strategy for Disaster Reduction.

The 2012 conference was supported by the Mopani District Municipality, Limpopo Provincial Government, the South African Weather Service and the NDMC.

## Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised.

Government acknowledges the critical role of traditional leadership institutions in South Africa's constitutional democracy and in communities, particularly in relation to the rural development strategy. It therefore remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership.

To this end, numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

The department is also working on a range of policies which, among other things, include policies on unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards, and involving the Khoi-San people in the system of governance in South Africa.

### Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy. It states that 40% of members must be elected and that one third of members must be women.

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance. Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

The National Khoi-San Council (NKC) is aimed at uniting the Khoi-San communities and creating a platform through which they can raise issues affecting them as a group of communities. The most important and recent issue is the statutory recognition and inclusion of the Khoi-San people into formal government structures.

Between March and June 2012, the NKC met various Khoi-San communities in the Western, Northern and Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng. It also met leaders in the Free State, North West, Limpopo and Mpumalanga as part of the drive to involve communities in the processes of developing the legislation that ultimately seeks to regulate national traditional affairs, the National Traditional Affairs Bill.

### Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

In August 2012, the fourth National House of Traditional Leaders was officially opened by President Jacob Zuma in Parliament.

### Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003.

It is tasked with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader and headmen and -women), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 requires that the commission investigates and makes recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

## Government Communication and Information System (GCIS)

The GCIS's prime responsibility is to provide strategic leadership and coordinate a government communication system that ensures that citizens are informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them.

The Chief Executive Officer of the GCIS is also the official spokesperson for Cabinet. He or she chairs the GCIS Executive Committee, a strategising body that integrates, coordinates and rationalises the work of the GCIS and government communication structures.

The GCIS coordinates the Public Participation Programme and outreach events of political principals at national, provincial and local levels to reinforce dialogue and accountability to citizens.

The GCIS also supports the implementation of access to government-wide information and services through Thusong service centres.

It furthermore assists departments with specific campaigns and events, as well as in developing departmental communication structures.

Two agencies were established under the executive authority of the GCIS, namely the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) and Brand South Africa. The latter was moved to The Presidency in April 2012.

To guide communication in government, the GCIS developed the National Communication

Strategy, which shapes the various communication activities of departments, provinces and entities.

The GCIS effectively supported and played a key role in coordinating the communication services for campaigns prioritised in the 2011/12 Government Communication Programme. Some of the campaigns coordinated in 2012 include:

- the WEF in Davos, Switzerland in January 2012
- Water Week in March 2012
- 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children from 25 November to 10 December 2012.

Activities for 2012/13 included:

- the launch a project focusing on 20 years of democracy, mobilising government and the nation at large in the build-up to marking two decades of democracy in 2014
- the implementation of about 3 000 communication projects through various platforms, such as community media, seminars, workshops, public participation programmes, door-to-door visits and Thusong-driven campaigns
- a special focus was placed on the Achievements of Local Government Campaign – a planned community radio approach where elected local officials were to provide feedback on achievements in their municipal turnaround strategies.

### Budget

The GCIS Budget for 2012/13 was R429 million, with the MDDA receiving an allocation of R20 million.

R50 million was invested during 2012/13 in the department's new headquarters in Hatfield, Pretoria, which provided staff with a much-needed upgrade in facilities and placed GCIS close to clients and stakeholders.

GCIS was allocated an additional R19,5 million to increase the print run of *Vuk'uzenzele*, the only newspaper in the country that is also published in Braille. The newspaper is printed in English, but the front page and other selected articles are translated into all the official languages. In 2012/13, GCIS planned to produce just over 20,4 million copies of *Vuk'uzenzele,* with over 5 000 copies to be available to Braille users.

### Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA)

The MDDA was set up by an Act of Parliament (Act 14 of 2002) to enable historically disadvantaged communities and people not adequately served by the media to gain access to the media. Its beneficiaries were community media and small commercial media.

To achieve its objective, the MDDA encouraged:

- ownership and control of, and access to, media by historically disadvantaged communities and historically diminished indigenous language and cultural groups
- the channelling of resources to community and small commercial media
- human resource development and capacity-building in the media industry, especially among historically disadvantaged groups
- research regarding media development and diversity.

## Department of Public Service and Administration

The Department of Public Service and Administration is at the centre of government. It plays a major policy role in establishing norms and standards for the Public Service, which ensure that service-delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, human resources, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of the citizens.

This mandate has evolved over the years; from transforming and modernising the Public Service through the development and implementation of policies and frameworks, to providing implementation support to ensure compliance, improve service delivery and strengthen monitoring and evaluation.

In terms of the Public Service Act of 1994, as amended, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service
- organisational structures and establishment of departments and other organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service
- labour relations, conditions of service and other employment practices for employees
- the health and wellness of employees
- information management
- electronic government in the Public Service
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other matter to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

## Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among others, the following legislation:

- Public Service Act, 1994 as amended by Act 30 of 2007
- Public Service Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 30 of 2007)
- State Information Technology Agency (Sita) Act, 2002 (Act 38 of 2002)
- Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000)
- Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999)
- Public Service Laws Amendment Act, 1997 (Act 47 of 1997)
- Public Service Laws Second Amendment Act, 1997 (Act 93 of 1997)
- Public Service Regulations, 2001, as amended 31 July 2012.

## Budget

In 2012/13, the following budget allocations relating to the Public Service were made:

- the Department of Public Service and Administration received an allocation of R411,4 million
- the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama) received R123,4 million
- the Centre for Public Sector Innovation (CPSI) was allocated R16,036 million
- the Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority (PSeta) received R22,086 million
- the Public Service Commission (PSC) was allocated R158,4 million.

## Role players

### Community development workers (CDWs)

There are approximately 3 100 CDWs employed in the Public Service, working in over 2 000 municipal wards throughout South Africa. CDWs are the only public servants in South Africa who are required to work in the municipal wards where they live and whose work-related activities straddle the three spheres of government.

One of their aims is to identify children without access to the Early Childhood Development Programme and make them part of it.

The CDW Programme played a critical role in making positive development impacts by:

- assisting in the elimination of government service-delivery deadlocks, including bureaucratic bottlenecks in a range of government departments, especially the departments of home affairs and social development
- advocating an organised voice of and for the poor by supporting community-based organisations
- strengthening government-community networks through dissemination of information
- assisting in bridging the gap between the First and the Second Economy as an important part of advancing the South African developmental state.

A review of the public service regulations on the institutionalisation of service-delivery mechanisms, and a framework for community development and public participation was underway in 2012.

The code of conduct for the CDWs was also to be reviewed to address conflict between the Public Service and political activities. The department planned to link the CDWs to existing community structures such as school governing bodies, community policing fora, ratepayers' associations, traditional institutions, citizen assemblies and religious bodies.

### Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is tasked and empowered to, among other things, investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service. This mandate entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof, of government programmes.

The PSC has an obligation to promote measures that will ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The Constitution mandates the commission to:

- promote the values and principles governing public administration
- investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation, administration and the personnel practices of the Public Service
- propose measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- give directions aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the constitutionally prescribed values and principles
- report its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make and to provide an evaluation of the extent to which it complied constitutionally with the prescribed values and principles
- either of its own accord or on receipt of any complaint:
  - investigate and evaluate the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and report to the relevant executive authority and legislature
  - investigate grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommend appropriate remedies
  - monitor and investigate adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
- advise national and provincial organs of state regarding personnel practices in the Public Service.

In 2012, the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy in partnership with the National Youth Development Agency, trained 2 443 unemployed youths for public service employment opportunities. A further 18 660 new public servants participated in the Junior and Middle Management Induction Programme in 2011/12, while 17 575 were to complete the programme in 2012/13. This is part of government's efforts to develop skills and create jobs.

### Centre for Public Sector Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI was established to identify, support and nurture innovation in the public sector to improve service delivery.

The CPSI works through partnerships with other departments and state-owned enterprises to, for example, enhance the productive capacity of visually impaired educators by providing data-card devices to access teaching material without the use of Braille.

The CPSI runs targeted innovation programmes to support the outcomes of rural development, accelerated service delivery at local government level, as well as human settlement.

### State Information Technology Agency (Sita)

Sita consolidates and coordinates the state's IT resources to save costs through scale, to increase delivery capabilities and improve interoperability.

Sita is committed to government's IT strategy, which seeks to leverage economies of scale, enhance the interoperability of government systems, ensure system security, eliminate duplication and advance Black Economic Empowerment. The strategic priorities for 2009 to 2012 are:

- improving financial sustainability
- optimising infrastructure
- extending the service footprint
- modernising public-service operations
- reducing operational costs
- achieving operational excellence
- developing and retaining personnel.

### Government Information Technology Officers Council (Gitoc)

The Gitoc advises government on the application of IT to improve service delivery. Its membership consists of the chief information officers from national departments and premiers' offices. The council has been involved in developing an IT security policy framework, IT procurement guidelines and e-government policy and strategy. It also monitors government IT projects to avoid duplication.

In February 2012, the late Minister of Public Service and Administration, Mr Roy Padayachie, hosted a Gitoc workshop. On the agenda were issues of information and communication technology (ICT) procurement, ICT governance, ICT projects as well as ICT information security. A structured process within the regulatory framework for the provision of transversal tenders was near completion on the matter of procurement processes. On projects, the development of a government-wide project management framework was planned for completion within the course of 2012.

### Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama)

Palama is a Sesotho word, which means "Arise!" or "Get on Board". As government's training department, Palama offers training and development opportunities to public servants at national, provincial and local spheres of government. This includes training of new public service employees as part of their probation, re-orientation of senior managers and orientation of unemployed youth graduates preparing them for Public Service employment opportunities.

Some of the courses offered by Palama are accredited by the Pseta or by other sector education and training authorities (Setas) and higher education institutions.

Other courses can be combined into programmes which are equivalent to certificates or degrees. Training offered can also become stepping stones for career advancement in the Public Service.

In 2011/12, Palama trained 51 760 officials in leadership, management, administration and induction.

The Legislature Capacity Building Programme has received approval from the University of South Africa for the accreditation of the Certificate in Governance and Leadership. The first group of trainers have completed all requirements and 173 members of Parliament and legislatures graduated in November 2011.

In March 2013, the Department of Home Affairs stopped issuing abridged birth certificates and now only issue unabridged birth certificates. The unabridged certificates are issued on the spot, reducing the turnaround time. The unabridged certificates contain the parents' particulars in full – identity numbers, names in full, place of birth and citizenship – at the time of the baby's birth.

An unabridged birth certificate is required for overseas travel, claiming citizenship by descent and applying for permanent residence, as well as nationally for insurance claims or any other purpose where proof is required of the identity of the individual's parents.

On 11 May 2012, the Department of Home Affairs launched a campaign to eradicate duplicate identity documents (IDs).

In the first phase of the campaign, the department published the names of 29 000 South Africans affected by duplicate IDs in national newspapers, on the departmental website and in other media. Citizens could also send an SMS to check if their IDs had been duplicated. Phase 2 will involve a list of an additional 83 000 South Africans also affected by ID duplication.

## Programmes and projects

### Continental Capacity Development Programme

The Department of Public Service and Administration continues to provide coordination for the implementation of the Continental Capacity Development Programme.

South Africa is engaged in several post-conflict interventions in several countries, namely:

- The Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC): developing and implementing the Anti-

Corruption Framework, the Public Service Census and capacity-building programmes.
- Burundi: rebuilding and strengthening its Public Service for it to run effectively and implementing capacity-building programmes.
- Rwanda: capacity-building programmes and leadership development.
- South Sudan: capacity building in human resources and enhancing legislative and policy review.
- For the first time, government included the participation of traditional leaders as one of the sectors in the Africa Peer Review Mechanism process. This move was necessitated by the fact that 70% of South Africa's population is rural. Through the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development, South Africa was asked to assist in developing a framework for civil society's participation in the review of government programmes.

### Public Service Month

South Africa marks Public Service Month in September each year. It is a regular national event that requires all the national and provincial departments to participate by putting in place activities and campaigns to improve service delivery.

Public Service Month is a follow-up to and mirrors the UN and Africa Public Service Day. In 2012, it took place on 23 June under the theme *Capacity Development for Implementation of the African Charter and Principles of Public Service and Administration Towards Capable Developmental States.*

The 2012 Public Service Month was significant as it coincided with 15 years of institutionalising and instilling the ethos of Batho Pele within the Public Service.

### Batho Pele

The Batho Pele Campaign, aimed at improving service delivery to the public, was implemented in October 1997 and revitalised during the 2012 Public Service Month. Batho Pele is a Sesotho phrase meaning "People First".

From this concept, eight principles were derived and made known in a White Paper as the principles for transforming Public Service delivery, which are:
- regularly consultation with customers
- set service standards
- increased access to services
- higher levels of courtesy
- more and better information about services
- increased openness and transparency about services
- remedy failures and mistakes
- giving the best possible value for money.

## Department of Home Affairs

The Department of Home Affairs is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates. This goes beyond merely issuing documents; it encompasses the safe maintenance and archiving of biometric and demographic records of citizens and residents of the country.

As part of ongoing efforts to render a service that is efficient, accessible and corrupt-free, the department continued to train its management.

About 98,3% of IDs were issued within 47 days, amounting to 222 713 in the second quarter of 2012. About 95,9% of passports that were processed manually were issued within 24 days, amounting to 98 316 in the period under review.

With offices that have live capture capacity, 97,49% of passports were issued within 13 days. This amounts to 35 269 passports.

In March 2012, the Deputy Minister of Home Affairs, Ms Fatima Chohan, officially launched the first ever Youth Forum, in which approximately 70 young people of 35 years and under from the department participated. The department has committed to developing a cadre of young people able to deliver on government's mandate to create a better life for all South Africans.

In September 2012, South Africa, on behalf of the United Nations Economic Commission for Africa and the African Union, hosted the second Ministerial Conference on Civil Registration and Vital Statistics. In addition to monitoring progress, the conference provided an opportunity for ministers and delegates to ensure that all countries were moving in the same direction. Some 54 African ministers responsible for civil registration and vital statistics and about 500 delegates from African countries attended the conference.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

## Budget and funding

The department was allocated R5,3 billion in 2012/13, a 9,5% decrease in nominal terms from 2011/12. As a result of the reduced budget allocation, all programmes within the department had a cut in expenditure in 2012/13.

The biggest reduction was in the Administration Programme, which was 11,8% or R223,8 million less. The Citizen Affairs budget decreased by 9% or R306,3 million and Immigration Services received 4,2% or R24,2 million less in 2012/13.

The only increases were under the Administrative Programme for Corporate Services (up by 11,24% or R56 million); Office Accommodation (up 5,5% or R17 million); while Citizen Services Delivery to Provinces received a R105 million increase (up 6,8%).

The budgets of the Government Printing Works and the Film and Publication Board were increased. The publication board's budget increased by 6% or R3,9 million and the printing work's budget was increased by 4,8% or R6,2 million. The majority of the subprogrammes within the Department of Home Affairs received smaller allocations this financial year than 2011/12.

## Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among others, the following legislation:

- South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995)
- The Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010)
- The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010)
- The Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998)
- The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002).

The Immigration Act, 2002 was amended to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate importing skills. The final immigration regulations came into effect on 1 July 2004. The release of these regulations followed the signing of the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004) into law on 12 October 2004. The Immigration Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 13 of 2011) provides for, among other things, revising provisions relating to the Immigrating Advisory Board.

The Refugee Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 12 of 2011), contains certain amendments to eliminate abuse of the asylum system and redefines the criteria for refugees seeking asylum in a clear and transparent manner.

## Citizenship

South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995) and regulations issued in terms thereof. South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- the registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

In October 2010, the National Assembly adopted the South African Citizenship Amendment and Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Bills.

The Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010) seeks to streamline the procedures related to the following:

- who, other than parents, should register the birth of a child, including the next-of-kin or a legal guardian
- the registration of orphans and abandoned children
- simplifying the process for the change of surnames of children and adults
- paternity, including steps to be followed when a mother registers a child under one father and later changes to another
- registration of birth after 30 days
- the registration of adopted children to ensure alignment to the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005).

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010) amends provisions of the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 that deals with citizenship by birth, naturalisation, and the loss of citizenship in terms of the mandate of the Department of Home Affairs.

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010, among other things, ensures that:

- a child born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth as long as the child is registered according to South African law
- a child born of non-South African parents but adopted by South African parents is a citizen by descent
- a child born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age of 18 years, apply for naturalisation; while he or she is a minor, such children will retain the citizenship of their parents
- a child with no claim to any citizenship will be given South African citizenship in accordance with international law and practice.

## National Population Register (NPR)

Since the launch of the National Population Registration (NPR) Campaign in 2010/11, the number of children registered within 30 days of birth has increased from 445 853 to 556 762 in 2011/12, just over 50% of all births. Early registration of childbirths will ensure that government is able to extend services to children, including social grants where applicable, while helping to prevent fraudulent registration of childbirths through such schemes as "rent a baby".

To encourage parents to register their babies within 30 days of delivery, 264 hospitals, clinics and healthcare facilities have been connected to the Department of Home Affairs. A further 80 hospitals were to be connected in 2012/13, while 88 hospitals and other healthcare centres were visited by officials for collection of registration forms.

The department witnessed a dramatic decrease in the late registration of people aged 15 years and above, from 354 588 in 2009/10 to 110 902 in the 2011/12 year, thus reducing the risk of fraudulent acquisition of citizenship while protecting the NPR. Some 1 199 467 IDs were issued to first-time recipients in 2011/12. This is a significant increase compared with the 834 353 issued in 2009/10.

With the number of applications for the re-issue of IDs and late registration of birth steadily decreasing, it is evident that South Africans are beginning to value their enabling documents, their identity and their citizenship. In this regard, in 2011/12, it reissued 1 075 994 IDs, which is 5% fewer when compared with the 1 125 141, issued in 2010/11.

In November 2012, the President's Award of the Computer Society of South Africa named the Deputy Director-General for Information Services of the Department of Home Affairs, Sello Mmakau, the Visionary Chief Information Officer for 2012. This category recognises an executive who has demonstrated vision and leadership in using technology to support and grow business.

Mmakau played an instrumental role in the department's introduction of the Online Fingerprint Verification System, in partnership with the South African Banking Risk Centre, as well the piloting of the new smart identity card and the Information Technology Modernisation Project, which will help reduce the time taken to produce enabling documents such as identity documents and passports.

## Immigration

The Department of Home Affairs' National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence in and departure from South Africa. This entails:

- processing applications for visas, temporary residence permits and immigration permits
- maintaining a travellers' and foreigners' control system
- tracing and removing foreigners who are considered undesirable or who are in South Africa illegally.

The Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998), gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters.

In recent years, the department has sought to control illegal immigration through various measures:

- the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), provides for a stricter immigration policy – implementation of administrative fines and other measures came into effect in 2003; the Act was later amended to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate importing skills
- the department works closely with the South African Revenue Service and the South Af-rican Police Service to ensure effective border control.

A computerised visa system was instituted to curb the forgery of South African visas and has been extended to all South African missions abroad.

In the first half of 2012, the Department of Home Affairs issued 100 pilot identity document (ID) smart cards to test the functionality and durability of the smart ID. The smart-card ID system will replace the current civic and immigration identity systems. The new system will enable government to digitally capture biometric and biographical details of all South Africans or foreign nationals, which will be stored in one integrated system.

The final immigration regulations came into effect on 1 July 2004. The release of these regulations followed the signing of the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004).

The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment.

The final immigration regulations furthermore aim to establish a new system of immigration control to ensure that:

- temporary and permanent residence permits are issued as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- security considerations are fully satisfied and the state regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour, foreign investment is facilitated, the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the Southern African Development Community are facilitated
- tourism is promoted
- the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The department prioritised the issuance of quota work permits to foreigners who fall within specific occupational classes or specific professional categories. In this context, details of specific occupational classes and specific professional categories and the applicable quotas are published annually in the *Govern-*

*ment Gazette* after consultation with other stakeholder departments.

The Immigration Amendment Bill provides for, among other things:

- revising provisions relating to the Immigrating Advisory Board
- revising provisions relating to the making of regulations
- the designation of ports of entry
- revising provisions relating to visas for temporary sojourn in South Africa
- the mandatory transmission and use of information on advance passenger processing
- the transmission of passenger name record information
- revising provisions relating to permanent residence
- revising penal provisions.

The Department of Home Affairs is charged with the responsibility of providing enabling documents to those fleeing from persecution in their country of origin to afford them sanctuary and to play a part in developing a better and safer world.

Like all countries, South Africa has an obligation to scrutinise asylum claims and turn down those that are not justified. The Asylum Seeker and Refugee Management System has been under tremendous pressure owing to South Africa having the largest number of asylum seekers in the world, according to the UN High Commission for Refugees. This is in part owing to economic immigrants using this as a route to regularise their stay in the country. This trend causes much strain on South Africa's bureaucratic capacity and hampers efforts to assist genuine asylum seekers and refugees. The adjudication of these claims therefore tended to take long and in some cases years to finalise.

The department introduced new structures and processes to improve the quality and efficiency of adjudication of claims and since September 2011, the turnaround time and quality of adjudication has improved on all new asylum applications. The appointment of permanent members to the department's Standing Committee on Refugee Affairs at some of its centres resulted in decisions on new applications being made within three months.

As part of a regional approach towards asylum seeker and refugee management, South Africa is engaging in bilateral and multilateral cooperation with neighbouring countries through which asylum seekers transit. As a signatory to the International Protocol on Refugees, South Africa joins other nations in its obligation to guarantee the safety of asylum seekers. The Cessation of Angolan Refugees came into effect on 30 June 2012.

### Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry.

The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

South Africa is to sign visa waiver agreements with Belgium, the Netherlands, Luxembourg, Italy, Panama and Spain in April 2013.

With a view to enhancing economic, cultural and humanitarian ties, South Africa signed visa waiver agreements with several countries in February 2013.

An agreement was signed with the Benelux States of Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg on the exemption of visa requirements for holders of diplomatic, official and service passports.

An agreement was also signed with Italy on the exemption of visa requirements for holders of valid diplomatic and service passports.

South Africa and Spain signed an agreement regarding visa requirements for holders of diplomatic passports and South Africa signed an agreement with Panama concerning reciprocal exemption from visa requirements for holders of diplomatic, official, consular and special passports.

### Control of travellers

People arriving in South Africa by air, sea or land have to pass through customs control, where they may be questioned and their baggage scanned or searched for dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods. Visitors found with undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods, could be fined or may face prosecution.

South Africa acceded to the Admission Temporaire/Temporary Admission (ATA) convention in 1975, which means foreign visitors – companies and individuals – can approach their local chambers of commerce for advice regarding the issuing of an ATA Carnet for the temporary import of certain goods in a simplified method. An example would be broadcasters or sponsors of international sporting events taking place in South Africa.

### Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and are therefore guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, people who are in South Africa illegally are either prosecuted, removed, or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

### Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The Department of Home Affairs is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The department is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The department considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting in Pretoria.

The department started addressing the permanent residence backlog from August 2012. It is currently prioritising temporary residence permits, as this category of foreigners is at risk of being in the country illegally if their applications are not finalised in time.

The department will prioritise applications for permanent residence permits from holders of quota work permits and exceptional skills work permits in line with the country's objective of attracting critical skills.

### Temporary residence

In terms of the Immigration Act, 2002, temporary residence permits are divided into the following categories:

- visitors' permits
- diplomatic permits
- study permits
- treaty permits
- business permits
- crew permits
- medical permits
- relatives' permits

- work permits with the following categories:
  - quota work permits
  - general work permits
  - intra-company transfer work permits
  - exceptional skills work permits
  - corporate work permits
  - retired person permits
  - exchange permits
- asylum permits.

In terms of Section 11, a visitor's permit may be issued to a person who intends to enter South Africa for less than 90 days for the purpose of tourism, business, education or medical treatment.

Foreigners who are exempt from visa requirements may therefore proceed to a port of entry where visitors' permits for the mentioned period will be issued, provided such people can produce evidence to prove their bona fides.

Foreigners who are citizens of countries that are exempted from visa requirements for less than 90 days may likewise obtain visitors' permits at a port of entry. Such foreigners enjoy exemption for the period only. Foreigners who require a visa prior to proceeding to South Africa, or who intend to enter South Africa for any period longer than the period for which they are exempt from the visa requirement, must apply for and obtain a visa prior to proceeding to the country.

Foreigners who intend to accept an offer of employment, start a business, take up studies or enter South Africa for any purpose for which a temporary residence permit is provided for in the Act, must apply for an appropriate temporary residence permit via the South African diplomatic representative in their countries of origin/residence. In countries where there are no representatives, applications must be submitted in the nearest country where there is a foreign representative.

The outcome must be awaited outside South Africa and applicants may only proceed to South Africa once the permit as applied for has been issued to them.

The overriding consideration when dealing with applications for work permits is whether the employment or task to be undertaken cannot be performed by a South African citizen or an approved permanent immigrant already residing in South Africa.

Applications for the extension of temporary residence permits must be submitted at least 30 days prior to the expiry date of the permit, to the nearest regional/district office of the Department of Home Affairs where the applicant is employed. Any enquiries related to temporary residence permits may be directed to the nearest district/regional office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to South African diplomatic representatives abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs, for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting.

### Removal of undesirable people

In terms of legislation, the Minister of Home Affairs may order the deportation of any person who is declared undesirable or prohibited, other than an asylum seeker.

These are foreign nationals who are in South Africa illegally and should be deported to the countries of which they are citizens or territories where they have rights of domicile or residence.

Any person who has become a deportation subject may, pending his or her deportation, be detained in a manner and at a place determined by the Director-General of the Department of Home Affairs.

## Role players

### Government Printing Works

The Government Printing Works, a division of the Department of Home Affairs, is a South African security printing specialist that deals with the printing of passports, visas, birth certificates, smart-card identification documents and examination materials, as well as government stationery and publications, such as tender bulletins and government gazettes.

It does this by continuously updating its security printing technology and today boasts a new state-of-the-art facility that has been benchmarked internationally and is widely divergent from its humble beginnings.

Based in Pretoria, the printing works provides a variety of related services to other government departments, the printing industry and other African countries, including manufacturing and supplying fingerprint ink to the South African Police Service, and printing postage stamps for the DRC and Lesotho.

### Learning Academy

The Learning Academy deals with issues of learning and development, research, knowledge and information management within Home Affairs. The academy has three main sections, namely:

- Learning Programme Delivery
- Research and Information Management
- Quality and Stakeholder Management.

It forms part of the support for the department's core business of offering immigration and civic services for South Africa.

The academy has registered the National Certificate of Home Affairs Services with the South African Qualifications Authority. This qualification has three specialisations, namely: Refugee Affairs, Immigrations and Civic Services. The department is accredited by the Pseta as a site for learning, allowing the Learning Academy to enrol learners for the registered home affairs qualifications.

The academy also offers generic learning and development such as customer services, management development programmes and training in uniform processes and procedures of the services offered in the department.

Managing research in the Department of Home Affairs entails coordinating research projects that external scholars and researchers want to conduct on the department. The Research Management Unit also identifies research areas within the department that can assist in better delivery of home-affairs services.

## Conclusion

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs remains central in the fight against poverty and underdevelopment in many communities. Looking forward, it will continue to use all its resources to facilitate cooperative governance and support all spheres of government, promote traditional affairs and support associated institutions.

During 2012/13, the department will focus on fast-tracking the implementation of its decision to enhance the functioning of municipalities and to locate the role of traditional institutions within the broader agenda of government.

The department will also focus on support to 105 municipalities which are within the 23 district municipalities, as well as to corresponding traditional communities identified by Cabinet as requiring dedicated assistance.

The GCIS, as the driver of government's communication strategy, will modernise its operations and practices to boost its outputs, from providing training to communicators, to leveraging government's considerable buying power in the advertising sector.

The GCIS will also improve direct communication with communities to increase its reach in conveying government's messages and will strengthen partnerships with stakeholders in government communications, the National Executive, provinces, local government and the private sector.

As South Africa seeks to have a positive impact on the creation of a better Africa and a better world, the GCIS will promote the country through communicating to domestic and international audiences the work that the government does in the international arena. Working together with other key departments and agencies, the department will also continue to promote the country as a desirable tourism and investment destination.

The forthcoming milestones of 20 Years of Democracy, the fifth democratic general election and the millennium development goals are among the important communication landmarks that will arise towards 2014.

The Department of Public Service and Administration has identified five focus areas that will form part of the overall work of the Public Service and Administration Portfolio over the next four-year period. These will serve as the main strategic indicators that will answer the question of whether the Public Service is effective,

efficient and development-oriented. They are:

- services rendered with speed
- services easily accessible to citizens
- services provided at lower cost
- appropriately skilled public servants to render services.
- competitive conditions of services for public servants and the achievement of labour peace.
- no corruption
- a positive impact on the lives of people and the economy.

A major focus for the Department of Home Affairs is transforming the department so that it can deliver a service that is efficient, accessible and corruption-free. Several closely related strategic drivers are used in this regard.

The most important strategy is to capacitate staff and establish a new culture and values through the organisation. Another strategic driver is the goal to achieve a clean audit. This achievement requires that a large number of systems and controls (governance, management and operational) are put in place. Similarly, performance management requires systems as well as a change in values and behaviour by staff and managers.

## Acknowledgements

*2008 Local Government Budgets and Expenditure Review 2003/04 to 2010/11*
SA Government News Agency
*Budget Vote 2012*
Department of Home Affairs
Department of Public Service and Administration
Department of Public Service and Administration, *Annual Report 2011/12*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2012*, published by National Treasury
*Green Paper: National Strategic Planning* Government Communication and Information System
Office of the Public Service Commission
*State of the Nation Address 2012*

*www.cpsi.co.za*
*www.dpsa.gov.za*
*www.dplg.gov.za*
*www.gcis.gov.za*
*www.goav.za*
*www.guardian.co.uk*
*www.imc.org.za*
*www.info.gov.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*www.reuters.com*
*www.salga.net*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.thedplg.gov.za*

## Suggested reading

Badat, S. 2012. *The Forgotten People: Political Banishment Under Apartheid.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Booysen, S. 2012. *Local Elections in South Africa: Parties, People, Politics*. Stellenbosch: Sun Media.
Daniels, G. 2012. *Fight for Democracy: The African National Congress and The Media in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Dubow, S. 2012. *South Africa's Struggle for Human Rights*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Holland, H. 2012. *100 Years of Struggle: Mandela's ANC*. Johannesburg: Penguin Books.
Landau, LB (ed). 2012. *Exorcising the Demons Within: Xenophobia, Violence and Statecraft in Contemporary South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Lissoni, A, Soske, J, Erlank, N, Nieftagodien, N & Badsha, O (eds). 2012. *One Hundred Years of the ANC: Liberation Histories and Democracy Today.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Lodge, T. 2013. *Black Politics in South Africa Since 1945*. Auckland Park: Jacana.
Odendaal, A. 2012. *The Founders: The Origins of the African National Congress and the Struggle for Democracy.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Plaatjies, D (ed). 2012. *Governance and Public Accountability in Democratic South Africa*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Plaut, M & Holden, P. 2012. *Who Rules South Africa?* Cape Town: Jonathan Ball.
Siddle, A & Koelble, T. 2012. *The Failure of Decentralisation in South African Local Government: Complexity and Unanticipated Consequences*. Cape Town: UCT Press.
South African Democracy Education Trust (SADET). 2012. *The Road to Democracy in South Africa, Volume 4, Parts 1 & 2 [1980 – 1990].* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Taljaard, R. 2012. *Up in Arms: Pursuing Accountability for the Arms Deal in Parliament.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Health

Healthcare in South Africa is undergoing far-reaching reforms to revitalise and restructure the system and to ensure access to quality healthcare for all. In addition to South Africa's large public health sector, it also has a smaller but fast-growing private sector.

The Department of Health has an overall responsibility for healthcare in the country, with a specific responsibility for public-sector healthcare. The department's priority is to improve the health status of the entire population and to realise its vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans. To accomplish this, it identified four strategic outputs:

- increasing life expectancy
- decreasing maternal and child mortality
- combatting HIV and AIDS and decreasing the burden of tuberculosis (TB)
- strengthening health-system effectiveness.

Service delivery agreement goals include the following:

- Life expectancy must increase from 54,9 years for males and 59,1 years for females to 58 years for males and 60 years for females by 2014.
- South Africa's maternal mortality ratio (MMR) must decrease to 100 or less per 100 000 live births by 2014. The *Millennium Development Goals Country Report* estimates South Africa's MMR at 625 per 100 000.
- The child mortality rate must decrease to 20 or less deaths per 1 000 live births by 2014.
- The TB cure rate must improve from 64% in 2007 to 85% by 2014.
- 80% of eligible people with HIV and AIDS must access antiretroviral (ARV) treatment.
- New HIV infections must be reduced by 50% by 2014.

As part of improving the healthcare system and ensuring that all South Africans have equitable access to essential health services, government is introducing the National Health Insurance (NHI) System. It is a financing system that will make sure that all South Africans, including legal long-term residents, are provided with essential healthcare, regardless of their

*Cooking from the Heart*, a recipe book that encourages healthy eating, was launched in September 2012 as part of National Heart Awareness Month. The joint initiative between the Heart and Stroke Foundation of South Africa and Pharma Dynamics encourages South Africans to eat healthier by providing healthy recipes and tips on healthy cooking methods, basic guidelines for healthy eating, ideas for healthy shopping on a budget and advice on how to interpret food labels.

employment status and ability to make a direct monetary contribution to the NHI Fund.

## Life expectancy

Life expectancy in South Africa is largely influenced by the quadruple burden of disease, or four pandemics, that the country is experiencing, namely the:

- scourge of HIV, AIDS and TB
- unacceptably high incident of maternal and child mortality
- expanding burden of non-communicable diseases
- high incidence of violence and injury, including motor vehicle accidents.

## Maternal and child health

### Child health

Carefully planned and systemic interventions, based on the service-delivery agreement objectives, have been adopted for child health. Interventions are based on a three-tiered health promotion and disease prevention strategy, namely:

- preventing unintended pregnancies (primary prevention)
- preventing complications (secondary prevention)
- preventing death or disability from complications (tertiary prevention).

These interventions are targeting various phases, namely pre-pregnancy; pregnancy; birth; newborn/postnatal and childhood.

Postnatal and newborn interventions include:

- early and exclusive breastfeeding
- warmth provision
- infection control
- provision of vitamin A to the mother when indicated.

Community-based interventions include:

- increasing home visits by community workers to within 10 days of delivery for normal birth weight babies and an additional three in the subsequent three weeks for lower birth weight babies
- improving referral channels between community health workers and midwives
- expanding the Perinatal Problem Identification Programme to include more facilities.

One of the key interventions to improve the nutritional status of South African children is to reduce vitamin A deficiency in children under five years of age, through supplementation. In 2011/12, the coverage rate for vitamin A supplementation among children between 12 and 59 months was 43%. This exceeded the annual target of 40% for 2011/12. To improve initiation and support for exclusive breastfeeding, 24 facilities were accredited as providing baby-friendly health services. The target for 2011/12 was 25 facilities.

Immunisation is an essential intervention to protect children against vaccine-preventable diseases, including polio and measles. During 2011/12, the national full immunisation coverage rate for children under the age of 12 months was 95,2%, which exceeded the annual target of 95%.

In improving maternal and child health, government reached 70% immunisation coverage for diarrhoea and pneumonia.

### Maternal health

Most of the Department of Health's interventions in HIV and AIDS are directed at saving pregnant women and children, as mortality brought by HIV, AIDS and malaria is disproportionally affecting young women of childbearing age more than men. This disproportionate assault on women of childbearing age is more prevalent in Africa than any other part of the world.

Subsequently, the African Union came up with a programme called the Campaign on

Accelerated Reduction of Maternal and Child Mortality in Africa, which was launched in South Africa in May 2012.

The department also announced the roll-out of the Essential Steps in Managing Obstetric Emergencies and Emergency Obstetric Simulation Training strategies.

Some 89,3% of deliveries took place in the public health sector, which was consistent with the target of 90%. Antenatal coverage was provided to 100,4% of pregnant women. Six provinces reported coverage of over 100% for this indicator, which suggested that antenatal coverage services were accessed by pregnant women beyond the boundaries of these provinces.

### Women's health

Women tend to have a higher burden of disease than men and therefore need more services. The package of interventions for women's health includes:

- family planning and contraceptive services
- care following sexual assault
- treatment of STIs
- a focus on diseases specific to women such as cervical cancer.

Sexual and reproductive health interventions include contraceptive information services, safe termination of pregnancy and reproductive health education and services.

Sexual assault is an area needing strengthening due to weak intersectoral collaboration between the provincial departments of health, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the South African Police Service and the justice system. In 2011, the Department of Health audited how services are geared towards providing quality and comprehensive care for sexual assault clients.

Key interventions in adolescent health include increasing coverage for the youth and adolescent-friendly health services in all public healthcare (PHC) facilities. Between 40% and 50% of PHC facilities are implementing this intervention. This figure will be increased to 70%. The draft Youth Health Strategy was finalised in 2011 and distributed to provinces and districts to guide health services' response to young people's health needs.

Some 89,3% deliveries took place in PHC facilities during 2011/12, consistent with the target of 90%. Follow-up of newborns and their mothers is an essential part of the continuum of care, as it assists in detecting and addressing health problems early. During 2011/12, 57% of mother-and-baby pairs were seen at PHC facilities within six days after delivery, against a target of 60%.

To enhance these gains, the department is embarking on a Safe Motherhood Strategy to comprehensively deal with maternal morbidity and mortality. The interventions are multipronged (individual and community-based approaches) as well as multilayered, being delivered via various platforms (such as at home, primary level and secondary level).

There will be community level interventions that will focus on advocacy and social marketing regarding nutritional advice, iron and folate supplements and clinical interventions, including blood pressure screening, screening and treatment of syphilis and urinary tract infections and fast-tracking pregnant women starting ARV treatment.

## HIV, AIDS and TB

The Department of Health launched a campaign to counsel and test 15 million South Africans for HIV. This target was achieved and exceeded, with 20,2 million South Africans knowing their status by June 2012. Through this programme, 1,6 million people were counselled and placed on ARV treatment.

During 2011/12, 617 147 new patients were initiated on ARVs. This performance represents 99% of the target of 625 000. It also exceeded

Launched in August 2012, Let's Talk Mental Health Awareness is a social media campaign involving well-known media personalities. The project aims to remove the stigma attached to mental illness and is a joint effort between the South African Depression and Anxiety Group and Pharma Dynamics. A short film, titled *Let's Talk*, was posted on YouTube on World Mental Health Day on 10 October.

by far the 2010/11 achievement, when 418 677 patients were placed on treatment.

By June 2012, the number of people with HIV and AIDS in the country stabilised, with the rate of new infections decreasing from 1,4% to 0,8% in the 15 to 24 age group.

The cost of ARVs had been halved, making it possible for government to treat more people within the same resources.

The number of public facilities initiating patients on ARV treatment also increased from 490 in 2010 to 2 948 in 2011, while the number of nurses trained to provide treatment increased from 290 in 2010 to 10 000 in 2011.

There was a decrease in mother-to-child transmission, from 8% in 2008 to 3,5% in 2011, protecting more than 30 000 babies a year from infection.

The rate at which TB was is being cured rose slowly but steadily to 73%, still short of the 85% target. The number of people who tested for TB increased to eight million. Of these, one million were referred for further diagnosis and management at relevant health facilities.

The number of people who default on their TB treatment declined from 7,9% in 2009 to 6,5% in 2010 and, for the first time, the national TB cure rate reached the 70% mark in 2010.

## The healthcare system

South Africa's national healthcare system is being reformed and revitalised. The process comprises five key areas, namely:

- improving infrastructure
- planning, development and managing human resources
- ensuring quality of care at PHC institutions
- re-engineering PHC
- reducing the cost of healthcare.

As part of interventions to enhance the quality of care, the Department of Health commissioned an independent comprehensive audit of PHC facilities to assess infrastructure, human resources, cleanliness, attitude of staff, safety of staff and patients, infection control, drug stockouts and the reported long queues patients faced.

By the end of March 2012, 3 780 of the 4 210 health facilities (90%) had been audited. The audit revealed major challenges concerning the management of these facilities, as well as the quality of services provided.

Consequently, four health facility improvement teams were sent to improve facilities across the country, in partnership with provincial management.

The first facilities to receive attention were in the Motheo District in the Free State, Sedibeng in Gauteng, Zululand in KwaZulu-Natal and Pixley ka Seme in the Northern Cape.

South Africa's second state-of-the-art clinic on wheels, Phelophepa II, hit the tracks in April 2012. This initiative takes primary healthcare services to the country's poorest rural communities.

Phelophepa, which means "good clean health" in Setswana, is a flagship project of the Transnet Foundation that travels 36 weeks a year, visiting regions with inadequate access to medical services. The healthcare staff consists of 20 core employees and close to 30 student interns.

## Legislation and policies

The National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003) provides a framework for a single health system for South Africa.

It highlights the rights and responsibilities of healthcare providers and users, and ensures broader community participation in healthcare delivery from health facility up to national level. It establishes provincial health services and outlines the general functions of provincial health departments.

The Act provides for the right to:

- emergency medical treatment
- have full knowledge of one's condition
- exercise one's informed consent
- participate in decisions regarding one's health
- be informed when one participates in research
- confidentiality and access to health records
- complain about poor service
- be treated with respect (health workers).

Other legislation that informs the health sector include the following:

- The Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998) provides for the regulation of the medical schemes industry to ensure consonance with national health objectives.
- The Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965) provides for the registration of medicines and other medicinal products to ensure their safety, quality and efficacy. The Act also provides for transparency in the pricing of medicines.
- The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002) provides a legal framework for mental health, in particular the admission and discharge of mental health patients in mental health institutions with emphasis on human rights for mentally ill patients.
- The Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 92 of 1996) provides a legal framework for termination of pregnancies based on choice under certain circumstances.
- The Sterilisation Act, 1998 (Act 44 of 1998) provides a legal framework for sterilisations, also for people with mental health challenges.
- The South African Medical Research Council (MRC) Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991) provides for the establishment of the MRC and its role in relation to health research.
- The Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993) provides for the control of tobacco products, prohibition of smoking in public places and advertisements of tobacco products, as well as sponsoring of events by the tobacco industry.
- The National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) Act, 2000 (Act 37 of 2000) provides for a statutory body that provides laboratory services to the public health sector.
- The Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974) provides for the regulation of health professions, in particular medical practitioners, dentists, psychologists and other related health professions, including community service by these professionals.
- The Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974) provides for the regulation of the pharmaceutical profession, including community service by pharmacists.

In May 2012, 10 South African journalists were selected to participate in the International Women's Media Foundation's 2012 HIV/AIDS Investigative Reporting Fellowship. They were:

- Zeenat Abdool (SABC Radio Channel Africa)
- Tanja Bencun (*SABC Digital News*)
- Bianca Capazorio (*Weekend Argus*)
- Euline Fillis (*SABC FOKUS*)
- Mukelwa Hlatshwayo (eTV)
- Sibongile Mashaba (*Sowetan*)
- Sipho Masombuka (*The Times*)
- Ina Skosana (*The New Age*)
- Bibi-Aisha Wadvallab (SciDev)
- Nomsa Zwane (Alex FM).

- The Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005) provides for the regulation of the nursing profession.
- The Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982) provides for the regulation of health practitioners such as chiropractors, homeopaths and others; and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.
- The Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act 19 of 1979) provides for the regulation of dental technicians and for the establishment of a council to regulate the profession.
- The Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973) provides for the control of hazardous substances, in particular those emitting radiation.
- The Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972) provides for the regulation of foodstuffs, cosmetics and disinfectants; in particular setting quality and safety standards for the sale, manufacturing and importation thereof.
- The Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973) provides for medical examinations of people suspected of having contracted occupational diseases, especially in mines, and for compensation in respect of those diseases.
- The Human Tissue Act, 1983 (Act 65 of 1983) provides for the administration of matters pertaining to human tissue.

## Budget and funding

The bulk of health-sector funding comes from National Treasury. The Department of Health's budget grew by 15,3% from R21,7 billion in 2010/11 to R25,7 billion in 2011/12. Policy areas that received additional funding included:

- the HIV and AIDS Conditional Grant
- the Hospital Revitalisation Conditional Grant
- the Mass Measles Immunisation Campaign
- stabilising personnel expenditure
- improving the conditions of service for employees in the department, including the NHLS and the MRC.

Total expenditure on the comprehensive HIV and AIDS Conditional Grant will amount to R26,9 billion over the 2011 to 2014 period, based on the number of people on treatment increasing from 1,2 million in 2011 to 2,6 million by 2013/14.

At national level, an additional amount of R442 million was allocated for 2011/12, R692 million for 2012/13 and R2,28 billion for 2013/14. This will be used to improve quality; strengthen PHC teams; upgrade and maintain nursing colleges, improve maternal and child health; and for universal coverage of HIV and AIDS.

Additional funding was allocated at provincial level for preparatory work for the NHI, which amounts to R16,1 billion over a three-year period. This will be mainly for registrar posts, specialist posts at district level, family health teams and helping hospitals comply with norms and standards.

The North West Health Department allocated R11,5 million from its 2012/13 provincial budget to fund the NHI pilot in the Dr Kenneth Kaunda District. The pilot was to help the department finalise how service benefits would be designed, how the population would be covered and how services would be delivered under the NHI.

## Role players

### Medicines Control Council

The Medicines Control Council oversees the regulation of medicines in South Africa. Its main purpose is to safeguard and protect the public by making sure that all medicines that are sold and used in South Africa are safe, therapeutically effective and consistently meet acceptable standards of quality.

The council is mandated to:

- advise the Minister of Health on any matter referred by the Minister or arise from the application of the Act
- keep the medicines register
- register new medicines
- amend entries in the register
- prohibit the sale of medicines not registered
- transfer certificates of registration
- cancel the registration of medicines
- approve medicine labels and advertisements
- authorise the sale of unregistered medicine for certain purposes.

### Compensation Commission for Occupational Diseases

The Compensation Commission for Occupational Diseases was established to compensate ex-miners and miners for impairment of lungs or respiratory organs and reimbursement for loss of earnings incurred during TB treatment. If the ex-miner is deceased, it compensates the beneficiaries of the ex-miner. It administrates the government grant for pensioners. The fund has three major streams: leadership and management, administration and finance.

### Council for Medical Schemes

The Council for Medical Schemes provides regulatory supervision of private health financing through medical schemes. Its objectives include:

- protecting the interests of medical schemes and their members
- monitoring the solvency and financial soundness of medical schemes
- controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes
- investigating complaints and settling disputes in the affairs of medical schemes
- collecting and disseminating information about private healthcare in South Africa
- making rules regarding its own functions and powers

- making recommendations to the Minister of Health on criteria for the measurement of quality and outcomes of the health services provided by medical schemes.

### Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC is a science, engineering and technology institution with the purpose of improving the health and quality of life of South Africans through research, development and technology transfer. Its powers and duties include:

- undertaking research of its own accord and on behalf of the state
- operating and maintaining research facilities the Minister of Health assigns
- promoting cooperation between South Africa and other countries on research, development and technology transfer
- developing and using the technological expertise it has
- promoting the training of researchers
- establishing and controlling research laboratories and other facilities
- cooperating with people and institutions doing research in other countries
- making grants to universities, technikons, colleges, schools, museums and other institutions
- participating in joint research operations with other institutions
- cooperating with educational authorities and scientific or technical societies or industrial institutions representing employers and employees to promote the training of researchers
- other administrative duties
- undertaking investigations or research the Minister assigns
- advising the Minister on research policy and priorities and the development, promotion, implementation and coordination of research.

### Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPSCA)

The HPCSA is a statutory health professional council that provides for control over the training, registration, and practices of practitioners of health and to provide for matters incidental thereto.

Its mandate includes:

- coordinating the activities of the professional boards
- promoting and regulating interprofessional liaison
- determining strategic policy
- consulting and liaising with relevant authorities
- controlling and exercising authority in respect of the training of and practices pursued in connection with the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of physical or mental defects, illnesses or deficiencies in humankind
- promoting liaison in the field of training
- advising the Minister of Health
- communicating to the Minister information of public importance.

### Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA)

The AHPCSA regulates all allied health professions, which include ayurveda, Chinese medicine and acupuncture, chiropractic, homeopathy, naturopathy, osteopathy, phytotherapy, therapeutic aromatherapy, therapeutic massage therapy, therapeutic reflexology and unani-tibb.

### South African Dental Technicians Council

The South African Dental Technicians Council controls all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians or dental

In October 2012, global non-governmental organisation Doctors Without Borders (MSF) set up mobile HIV and AIDS testing units in Eshowe, KwaZulu-Natal, to provide some reprieve for state resources. Eshowe has the highest infection rate in the country, at 39,5%. While some MSF staff oversee the testing centres, others go on a door-to-door drive to encourage residents to get tested on the spot. For those who test positive, a driver is at hand to transport the patient to a nurse's station nearby, where their CD4 count is determined and counselling provided.

technologists and exercise the practices in the supply, making, altering or repairing of artificial dentures or other dental appliances.

Its mandate includes:

- promoting dentistry in South Africa
- controlling all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians, dental technologists and practitioners who supply, make, alter or repair artificial dentures or other dental appliances
- promoting good relationships between dentists, clinical dental technologists, dental technicians and dental technologists
- advising the Minister of Health
- communicating to the Minister information on matters of public importance.

## South African Pharmacy Council

The South African Pharmacy Council ensures the provision of quality pharmaceutical services in South Africa by developing, enhancing and upholding universally acceptable standards, professional ethics and conduct, ongoing competence and pharmaceutical care.

The council is tasked with:

- assisting in the promotion of the health of South Africans
- advising the Minister of Health or any person on matters relating to pharmacy
- promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care with universal norms and values
- upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice
- establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling universally acceptable standards
- maintaining and enhancing the dignity of the pharmacy profession.

Chris Hani Baragwanath Academic Hospital in Soweto, Gauteng was the first to benefit from a project to replace deteriorating electro-mechanical equipment in health facilities in the province. The project was allocated R57 million for construction and R296 million for maintenance for 2012/13. Other hospitals in the project include the Charlotte Maxeke, George Mukhari, Jubilee and Helen Joseph hospitals.

## South African Nursing Council

The South African Nursing Council controls and exercises authority in respect of the education, training and manner of practices pursued by registered nurses, midwives, enrolled nurses and enrolled nursing auxiliaries.

The council's mandate includes:

- inspecting and approving nursing schools and nursing education programmes
- conducting examinations and issuing qualifications
- registering and enrolling nurses, midwives and nursing auxiliaries and keeping registers and rolls
- removing from or restoring any name to a register or roll
- issuing licences to nursing agencies
- requiring employers to submit annual returns of registered and enrolled nurses in their employ.

## National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS was established in 2001 by an Act of Parliament, amalgamating the former South African Institute for Medical Research, National Institute for Virology and National Centre for Occupational Health as well as university and provincial pathology laboratories. It is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with 349 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laborator-ies provide diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines, including anatomical pathology, haematology, microbiology, infectious diseases, immunology, human genetics, chemical pathology, epidemiology, occupational and environmental health, occupational medicine, tropical diseases, medical entomology, molecular biology and human nutrition.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and

The KwaZulu-Natal Research Institute for Tuberculosis and HIV was officially opened in September 2012. The eight-storey R346-million research centre is located on the campus of the University of KwaZulu-Natal's Nelson R Mandela School of Medicine and was founded in partnership by the university and the Howard Hughes Medical Institute, based in the United States of America.

The Institute will substantially boost health research in the country.

sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for the African continent, particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases
- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational diseases and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance
- South African Vaccine Producers, which is the only South African manufacturer of antivenom for the treatment of snake, scorpion and spider bites.

### Non-governmental organisations (NGOs)

Many NGOs at various levels continue to play a crucial role in healthcare, and cooperate with government's priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution in relation to HIV, AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of PHC systems.

Through the Partnership for the Delivery of PHC Programme, including the HIV and AIDS Programme, the department has strengthened its collaboration with NGOs. The programme has empowered communities and NGOs working in the health sector by focusing on three key areas:
- providing skills to NGOs in the rural nodes by using accredited service providers
- reducing unemployment by ensuring that NGO workers are provided with stipends
- ensuring accountability by requiring NGOs to include community members in their administration structures.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

## Resources

### Physicians

By the end of 2012, there were more than 159 569 medical practitioners registered with the HPCSA. These include doctors working for the state, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector.

In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the continuing professional development system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

### Oral health professionals

By November 2012, there were 5 387 dentists, 2 293 dental assistants, 984 oral hygienists and 496 dental therapists registered with the HPCSA. Dentists are subject to the continuing professional development system and the community service system. Oral health workers render services in the private and public sectors.

### Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public health facility. Those who have not completed this year of service may not practise independently as pharmacists. By December 2010, 25 876 professionals were registered with the South African Pharmacy Council, compared to 23 496 in 2009, a 9% increase.

### Nurses

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month community service programme, whereafter they may be registered as nurses (general, psychiatric or community) and midwives. By the end of December 2011, the number of nurses stood at 238 196, compared to 231 086 the previous year. This includes registered, enrolled and auxiliary nurses, but excludes students and pupils.

### Health facilities

There are 4 200 public health facilities in South Africa. People per clinic is 13 718, exceeding World Health Organization guidelines of 10 000 per clinic. However, figures from March 2009 show that people averaged 2,5 visits a year to public health facilities and that the usable bed occupancy rates were between 65% and 77% at hospitals.

Since 1994, more than 1 600 clinics have been built or upgraded. Free healthcare for children under six and for pregnant or breastfeeding mothers was introduced in the mid-1990s.

The NHLS is the largest pathology service in South Africa. It has 265 laboratories, serving 80% of South Africans. The labs provide diagnostic services as well as health-related research.

The South African National Council on Alcoholism and Drug Dependence (Sanca) comprises 38 alcohol and drug help and treatment centres, providing over 76 service points and satellite offices in all provinces of South Africa. Each centre functions independently, but is affiliated to Sanca.

### Medical schemes

In November 2012, there were about 97 medical schemes in South Africa, with around 8 469 784 beneficiaries. These schemes have a total annual contribution flow of about R84,9 billion.

Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered. Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants.

If families are unable to bear the cost in terms of the standard means test, patients are classified as hospital patients. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with medical-aid cover, charging a tariff designed to recover the full cost of treatment. This private rate is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals.

## Programmes and projects

### Re-engineering primary healthcare

The re-engineered primary healthcare model comprises three streams: creation and deployment of municipal ward-based primary healthcare outreach teams in defined geographic areas (wards); deployment of district clinical specialist teams in all districts across the country and strengthening of school health services.

A task team, comprising the three ministerial mortality committees, deans of the faculties of Health Sciences and other experts who advised the Minister of Health on the development of district clinical specialist teams, was convened in 2011. Their recommendations were adopted by the National Health Council and are being implemented.

The district specialist task teams each consists of an:

- anaesthetist
- family physician
- PHC nurse

The revamped South African National AIDS Council (Sanac) was unveiled in October 2012, coinciding with the announcement that South Africa had achieved universal access to HIV treatment. Sanac was reformed over 18 months. The body, chaired by Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe, will now hold annual meetings comprising representatives from the research community, labour unions and people with HIV. At these meetings, participants discuss major policy issues and review progress on the country's current national plan to address the twin epidemics of HIV and tuberculosis.

- obstetrician
- advanced midwife
- paediatrician
- advanced paediatric nurse.

Every district has a team responsible for supportive supervision and clinical governance within its defined geographic area. These task teams need to strengthen existing services and ensure equitable access to appropriate care for all mothers, babies and children.

By the end of 2011/12, over 5 000 community health workers had been re-trained to work as part of PHC teams and 337 PHC teams had been established countrywide.

## Health Sector 10-Point Plan

The health sector's 10-Point Plan for 2009 to 2014 has served as an important overarching and macro framework for overhauling the health system, to enhance its capacity to improve health outcomes and to harness focused interventions towards the millennium development goals (MDGs).

The 10-Point Plan focuses on:

- providing strategic leadership and creating a social compact for better health outcomes
- implementing NHI
- improving the quality of health services
- overhauling the healthcare system
- improving human resources planning, development and management
- revitalising infrastructure
- accelerating implementation of the National Strategic Plan (NSP) on HIV, AIDS, TB and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) 2007 – 2011 and reducing mortality due to TB and associated diseases
- mass mobilisation for better health for the population
- reviewing the drug policy
- strengthening research and development.

Six priority areas were identified for immediate improvement:

- staff attitudes and the values underpinning them
- reducing the long waiting times or delays in receiving care
- ensuring all facilities are spotlessly clean and tidy
- protecting the clinical as well as the physical safety of patients and staff
- taking the measures needed to avoid transmission of infections and cross-infection
- ensuring that basic medicines and supplies are available when patients are seen.

In November 2011, Cabinet approved the National Health Amendment Bill for Office and Health Standards Compliance, which will accredit health facilities.

In preparation, the department put in place quality norms and standards, which cover the availability of med-icines and supplies, cleanliness, patient safety, infection prevention and control, positive attitudes and waiting time in all health facilities.

By August 2011, the department had audited over 1 600 PHC facilities against these standards. Quality improvement projects to address the gaps identified by these audits were expected to be developed as part of the service-delivery improvement programme, which is the largest and most ambitious of its kind ever to be implemented in South Africa.

## National Strategic Plan on HIV, AIDS, STIs and TB 2012 – 2016

The NSP on HIV, AIDS, STIs and TB 2012 – 2016 was launched on World AIDS Day on 1 Desember 2012. The integration of HIV, AIDS and TB into one strategic plan, a first for the country, outlines a 20-year vision in the fight against the double scourges of HIV and AIDS and TB.

The NSP has four strategic objectives, namely:

- addressing the social structural drivers of HIV, STIs and TB care, prevention and support
- preventing new HIV, STI and TB infections
- sustaining health and wellness
- ensuring protection of human rights and improving access to justice.

The NSP 2012 – 2016 further encourages South Africans to be tested for these diseases at least once a year; and that every pregnant woman undergoes routine HIV testing. The department also targeted 600 000 men for male circumcision as part of the strategy.

### National Health Insurance (NHI)

The *Green Paper on NHI* was released in August 2011 for comment. The cornerstone of the proposed NHI System is universal coverage. NHI is a financing system that will ensure the provision of essential healthcare to all citizens of South Africa (and legal long-term residents), regardless of their employment status and ability to make a direct monetary contribution to the NHI Fund.

This is seen as a 14-year project, with the first five years being a process of building and preparation.

The NHI will offer all South Africans and legal residents access to a defined package of comprehensive health services. The State is committed to offering as wide a range of services as possible. Although the NHI service package will not include everything, it will offer care at all levels, from PHC to specialised secondary care, and highly specialised tertiary and quaternary levels of care.

Examples of what the NHI package will exclude are:

- cosmetic surgery that is not necessary or medically indicated but done as a matter of choice
- expensive dental procedures performed for aesthetic purposes and eye-care devices such as fashionable spectacle frames
- medicines not included in the National Essential Drug List, except in circumstances where the complementary list has been approved by the Minister of Health
- diagnostic procedures outside the approved guidelines and protocols as advised by expert groups.

The benefits provided will cover preventive, promotive, curative and rehabilitative health services. The emphasis will be on preventing disease and promoting health.

Pilot programmes were rolled out in the following districts:

- OR Tambo (Eastern Cape)
- Thabo Mofutsanyane (Free State)
- City of Tshwane (Gauteng)
- uMgungundlovu (KwaZulu-Natal)
- Umzinyathi (KwaZulu-Natal)
- Vhembe (Limpopo)
- Gert Sibande (Mpumalanga)
- Dr. K Kaunda (North West)
- Pixley ka Seme (Northern Cape)
- Eden (Western Cape).

KwaZulu-Natal added Amajuba District as a further pilot site for NHI in the province.

National Treasury also approved an NHI conditional grant of R1 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period 2012 to 2014. NHI will be implemented over a period of 14 years.

### Catch-up Immunisation Campaign

The four-month Catch-Up Immunisation Campaign ran from February to May 2012. It aimed to provide children under five with an additional dose of Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccine (PCV13) that is meant to protect them and their communities against pneumococcal diseases.

The campaign targeted all children between 18 and 36 months, and children with underlying medical conditions such as HIV infection, cardiac conditions and those who were on cytotoxics.

To get maximum benefit of the introduction of the pneumococcal vaccine, it is common practice to conduct a catch-up campaign that targets children below five years. Due to the high price of the vaccine and other compelling needs, it was not possible to conduct such a campaign up until 2012.

## Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP)

The ISHP was launched in October 2012. It aims to ensure that all learners have access to primary healthcare services.

Held under the theme *Taking Responsibility for our Learners' Health and Wellbeing*, the programme means that barriers to effective learning will be a thing of the past.

Many children face barriers to optimal health and development as a result of the HIV and AIDS epidemic, violence and injuries and non-communicable diseases. The strengthening of school health services through the ISHP is a key component of the PHC restructuring process in the Department of Health and the Care and Support for Teaching and Learning Programme within the Department of Basic Education. The Department of Social Development will be responsible for assisting learners to access services, particularly where financial barriers impede accessing services. This includes providing transport to health facilities where necessary.

The ISHP will offer services including:

- eyesight, hearing and oral hygiene
- immunisation (for foundation and intermediate phases)
- deworming (for foundation and intermediate phases)
- treatment of minor conditions, especially skin conditions (all phases)
- counselling on sexual and reproductive health issues and offering services via mobile health units (all senior and Further Education and Training college learners, and intermediate learners where required)
- prevention of drug and alcohol use and abuse.

The ISHP further aims to individually assess every learner once during each of the four educational phases. Additional individual assessments will be offered to all learners who are repeating grades, at the request of an educator, parent or learner.

Assessments during the foundation phase will focus primarily on identifying health barriers to learning, and identifying children who have or are at risk for long-term health, psychological or other problems.

The key health workers involved in the programme will be nurses and health promotion practitioners. This policy will in the first phase target quintiles 1 and 2 schools, of which there are an estimated 8 000 countrywide.

The ISHP was launched in Tshwane, one of 11 pilot districts identified in terms of the NHI.

## HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) Campaign

Prevention remains the cornerstone of efforts to combat HIV and AIDS in South Africa. Leadership in this critical area has ensured that South Africa is getting global recognition for the massive efforts and interventions designed to combat HIV, AIDS and TB at national, provincial and local level.

In addition, the HCT Campaign, initiated in April 2010, is showing results in terms of its original aim to ensure that more people test for HIV and know their status.

By September 2012, more than 20 million people had undergone voluntary testing for HIV and AIDS. The number of people receiving treatment increased from 1,1 million in 2009 to 1,7 million in 2011. This number was expected to increase following the launch in September of a campaign to intensify HIV and AIDS testing and counselling among South Africa's 1,3 million public servants.

## Managing communicable and non-communicable diseases

Work on reducing the impact of chronic conditions (non-communicable diseases) resulted in the hosting of the Diabetes Leadership Forum Africa 2010 in South Africa in September 2010. By mid-2011, an implementation plan for the Diabetes Declaration was being finalised. A chronic diseases management register was implemented in the first half of the year.

Intersectoral work on alcohol and violence is the focus of partnerships at community level. The Phuza Wise Campaign and the strengthening of PHC teams are aimed at addressing the national scourge.

Other initiatives aimed at reducing the effect of non-communicable diseases included the United Nations Summit on Non-Communicable Diseases, held in September 2011 in New York, United States of America.

The burden of respiratory and diarrhoeal diseases is a cause for concern. It may be related to HIV and AIDS; however, there is still a component that is not linked to HIV and has to be addressed in this context. To respond adequately to disease outbreaks, the department will need to strengthen its response to disease outbreak and surveillance systems.

Over a million people die of malaria yearly in Africa, mostly children under the age of five. Most cases of malaria in South Africa are caused by *plasmodium falciparum*. It is potentially the most dangerous type of malaria, and can prove rapidly fatal.

Government's efforts to combat malaria incidence have been largely successful. Available data demonstrate a downward trend.

## Improving human resources planning, development and management

By 2011, South Africa was producing about 1 200 doctors a year, an insufficient cadre to service the nation's healthcare needs. The Department of Health initiated the Human Resource Strategy for Health, which addressed the problem on several platforms.

The Department of Health conducted an audit of service quality in over 75% of health facilities and improvement plans are being developed. The department also developed a human resource strategy which links intake of health professionals to projected demand. An audit of all 122 nursing colleges was underway in June 2012, with 45 of the target 105 colleges already refurbished.

To improve capacity to implement the NHI, the department has increased the number of matriculants sent to Cuba to study medicine from 60 to 80 a year in 2011, and aimed to reach 1 000 matriculants in 2012. Thje department also encouraged the country's eight medical schools to increase their intake of students – the University of the Witwatersrand accepting 40 extra students, which the department covered with an additional R8 million. The other universities followed suit, increasing their intake by an overall 160 students in 2012, for which the department gave R48 million. Thirdly, the department also planned to set up a new medical school in Limpopo and build a tertiary hospital in Mpumalanga, in anticipation of the new university planned for the region in 2014.

In April 2011, the department hosted the National Nursing Summit 2011, which focused on addressing human resources concerns in the nursing sector. The department identified 122 nursing colleges nationwide that would be improved, of which 72 were expected to be refurbished and improved by the end of 2011/12. The project will run over three years at a total cost of R1,24 billion, of which R220 million is earmarked for the 2011/12 financial year, and R510 million each in subsequent years.

Talks were held with retired nurses, which led to the creation of a database, so that these retired nurses can register to return to work on a temporary basis. Government also encouraged the media to draw attention to the annual International Nurses Day in May, to increase public awareness of the profession.

In May 2012, it was announced that South Africa's healthcare system would receive a healthy injection of human resources following the signing of an agreement between the South African and Cuban health ministries.

The agreement, signed by the Minister of Health, Dr Aaron Motsoaledi, and his Cuban counterpart, Roberto Morales Ojeda, will strengthen the Department of Health's strategic interventions by:

- implementing the NHI
- overhauling the healthcare system by refocusing on primary healthcare and improving functionality and management
- improving human resources, planning, development and management
- strengthening research and development, with a focus on biotechnology exchange and innovation.

The two countries first entered into agreements in 1995, with the aim of bolstering South Africa human resource requirements, especially in rural communities. By May 2012, 304 medical doctors had been produced out of 808 recruited in the programme, with 406 undergoing medical training in Cuba; 98% were doing final clinical training in local medical schools and 34 medical students were expected to graduate in 2012. Cuba has the capacity to train as many as 1 000 South African students a year, and South Africa was expected to send at least 500 students by September 2012.

The health ministers also agreed to resume the recruitment of Cuban doctors to work in South African hospitals. The department identified close to 208 posts in different specialities where these doctors are to be posted.

To improve service delivery in 2012/13, the Department of Health launched an internship programme in June 2012. The 400 graduate interns were grouped into three internship programmes: financial management, human resources and information management.

The unemployed graduates – who have qualifications in finance, commerce, accounting, human resources and information and communication technology – were to be put to work in the department's offices nationwide. Among other things, they would provide additional assistance in asset management, revenue collection, supply chain management, Persal clean-up and information management.

From March to December 2012, Gauteng's clinic outreach teams visited 8 462 households and treated 7 682 patients in an effort to improve the quality and delivery of primary healthcare across the province. From these, 1 499 patients were referred to hospitals for specialised treatment and care.

The department has also extended the service hours at some community health centres making them operational 24 hours a day to help ease the pressure on tertiary institutions. All community health centres and clinics now provide services for patients with chronic illnesses such as diabetes, hypertension, asthma, epilepsy, TB and those on ARV treatment.

## Improving health infrastructure

Over 2 100 individual infrastructure-related projects exist in health facilities in South Africa – ranging from maintenance and minor repairs through to renovation and major construction works. As a result, 138 clinics and 38 community health centres were constructed nationally (an increase of 4%). An infrastructure support model has been implemented, a component of which includes the appointment of engineers in each province to provide consistent technical expertise for managing active projects in the health sector.

Eighteen major revitalisation projects have been initiated nationwide in hospitals in urgent need of infrastructure development. Five of these 18 projects are identified as flagship projects, supported through a public-private partnerships. The balance will be supported by a more streamlined hospital-revitalisation programme, which now incorporates a much improved provincial resource planning and allocation model, enabling a reduction in unspent funding on infrastructure projects countrywide.

In addition, the assistance of infrastructure development resource people and built environment specialists from the Development Bank of Southern Africa and Council for Scientific and Industrial Research have been secured to strengthen implementation, monitoring and evaluation.

## Strengthening research and development

The Department of Health has forged partnerships aimed at strengthening research and development with other government departments such as science and technology; entities such as the MRC, the Human Sciences Research Council, the Health Systems Trust and academic institutions.

The Department of Science and Technology has established three centres of competence in malaria, TB, HIV and AIDS, cancer and diabetes in conjunction with the Department of Health.

The National Health Research Committee and National Health Research Ethics Com-

mittee have been established in terms of the National Health Act, 2003. The National Health Research Committee's duties are to:

- determine the health research to be carried out by public health authorities
- ensure that health research agendas and research resources focus on priority health problems
- develop, and advise the Minister of Health on, the application and implementation of an integrated national strategy for health research
- coordinate the research activities of public health authorities.

Research bodies that have been established in terms of the statutes will scale up their efforts to build research capacity in the country. The research agenda will be designed to respond in accordance with the priorities.

South Africa needs to develop a model for the translation of evidence generated through empirical research into national health policy. In an interactive manner, research must review health policy implementation. To this end, a health and policy technical unit has been budgeted for in the 2011 to 2013 period to develop and institutionalise this capacity within the department.

## Conclusion

In pursuit of its vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans, the Department of Health remains firmly focused on the implementation of the 10-Point Plan for the health sector for 2009 – 2014.

The plan is aimed at creating a well-functioning health system capable of producing improved health outcomes. It consists of a number of priorities such as the provision of strategic leadership and the creation of a social compact for better health outcomes; the implementation of the NHI plan; improving the quality of health services; overhauling the healthcare system and improving the management of the health system.

The plan also includes other priorities that are crucial for the department to reach its goal of improved health outcomes. These include better human resources management, planning and development; revitalisation of infrastructure; accelerated implementation of programmes for HIV and AIDS and STIs; increased focus on TB and other communicable diseases; mass mobilisation for better health; a review of the drug policy; and strengthening research and development.

Among other things, the department is implementing a two-pronged approach to overhaul the health system. The first entails refocusing the health system on primary healthcare. The second seeks to improve the functionality and management of the health system.

To this end the department has put measures in place to ensure that the health system is managed by appropriately trained and qualified managers.

Initial focus has been placed on hospital chief executive officers, senior managers and district managers. Their skills and competencies are being assessed independently and where skills gaps are identified, appropriate training will be provided. In addition, the department will place increased emphasis on the four key focus areas expected from the health sector, namely increasing life expectancy, combatting HIV and AIDS, decreasing the burden of diseases from TB and improving health-system effectiveness. These focal areas are consistent with the health-related MDGs, which the UN expects nations of the world to attain by 2015.

## Acknowledgements

*Beeld*
*Census 2011 Report*
*Development Indicators, 2010*
Department of Health Budget Vote, 2012/13
*Department of Health Annual Report 2011/12*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2012/13*, published by National Treasury
*Government Mid-Term Review*
*Millennium Development Goals Country Report 2010*
*National Development Plan: Vision 2030*
Sapa
*The Times*

*www.drugaware.co.za*
*www.gostudy.mobi*
*www.gov.za*
*www.hasa.co.za*
*www.health24.com*
*www.iol.co.za*
*www.iwmf.org*
*www.lovelife.org.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*http://www.medicalschemes.com*
*www.soulcity.org.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.southafrica.info*

## Suggested reading

Barnards, M. 2011. *Defining Moments.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.
Blessing, HG. 2012. *South African Traditional Medicinal Plants from KwaZulu-Natal.* Akademika Publishing.
Dreyer, G. 2012. *Contraception: A South African Perspective.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Ellis, G, Stein, D, Meintjies, E & Thomas, K. 2012. *Substance Use and Abuse in South Africa.* Cape Town: UCT Press.
Hutton, B (ed). 2011. *Recovery RSA.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Jones, TF. 2012. *Psychiatry, Mental Institutions, and the Mad in Apartheid South Africa.* Routledge.
Laher, S & Cockcroft, K. 2013. *Psychological Assessment in South Africa: Research and Applications.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Makaudze, E, Du Preez, M, & Potgieter, N. 2012. *How Does the HIV and AIDS Epidemic in South Africa Impact on Water, Sanitation and Hygiene Sectors?* Gezina: Water Research Commission.
Meyer, M & Struthers, H. 2012. *(Un)covering Men: Rewriting Masculinity and Health in South Africa.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Ruiters, G & Van Niekerk, R. 2012. *Universal Health Care in Southern Africa: Policy Contestation in Health System Reform in South Africa and Zimbabwe.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Tomaselli, K & Chasi, C (eds). 2011. *Development and Public Health Communication.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Van Dyk, A. 2011. *HIV and AIDS: Education, Care and Counselling. 5th edition.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Visser, M & Moleko, AG. 2012. *Community Psychology in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.

# Human Settlements

The human settlements sector in South Africa remains one of the most challenging areas in the social and economic environment. This mirrors worldwide trends as population explosions continue to create an increasing demand within the property market for well-located land and housing.

Following President Jacob Zuma's proclamation in 2009 to change the Department of Housing to the Department of Human Settlements, the focus shifted from housing being just a roof over people's heads, to providing sustainable and integrated human settlements where people can work, pray, play and have access to amenities required for their day-to-day living.

The mission of the Department of Human Settlements is therefore to facilitate the creation of sustainable human settlement and improve the quality of household life. Its functions are to determine, finance, promote, communicate and monitor the implementation of housing and sanitation programmes.

The sanitation function, previously administered by the former Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, was allocated to Human Settlements owing to the need for a more holistic focus as opposed to the mere building of houses. In 2012, the Estate Agency Affairs Board, which used to fall under the Department of Trade and Industry, was also transferred to the Department of Human Settlements.

*Census 2011* results indicate that households that have flush toilets connected to the sewerage system increased to 57% in 2011 from 50% recorded in *Census 2001*.

Households with no toilets declined significantly from the 13,3% in 2001 to the 5,2% in 2011.

The proportion of households with access to piped water increased from 62,3% in 2001 to 73,4% in 2011.

Households that use electricity for lighting increased from 70,2% in 2001 to 84,7% in 2011, while households that use electricity for cooking increased from 52,2% to 73,9% over the same period. Households that use electricity for heating increased from 49,9% in 2001 to 58,8% in 2011.

The department committed itself to improving the quality of life of 400 000 households through upgrading informal settlements in 45 priority municipalities. A target was also set to stimulate growth in affordable home ownership and the rental market. To enable more integrated planning of human settlements, 27 municipalities were to be accredited to carry out the housing function.

By 2012, the Department of Human Settlements achieved 77% of its 171 targets. During the year, it created over 76 000 job opportunities. Of these, about 50 000 were direct, 5 000 indirect and 22 000 induced.

The South African Women in Construction initiative was placed in charge of relatively large projects. Their outstanding projects included China Square, where 500 houses were completed. They are also involved in the Soul City project, where they are improving 1 000 units that were badly built.

Regarding public-private partnerships, the department successfully partnered a number of stakeholders; for example, houses were built in Mazista and Skierlik in North West on land donated by a farmer.

The Vulindlela-enhanced People's Housing Process (PHP) Project was initiated in the rural Msunduzi Municipality near Pietermaritzburg, with a target of building 25 000 houses within a five-year period. By May 2012, 6 000 had been completed.

All the provincial governments have committed themselves to fight corruption and maladministration in the building industry. Limpopo is taking the lead with 24 blacklisted contractors for shoddy workmanship, non-delivery and incompetence. More than R1 million was recovered from these companies and the cases have been referred to the Special Investigating Unit for further action.

Regarding public servants in all three spheres of government who committed housing subsidy-related misconduct and fraud; more than 290 have been arrested, more than 240 have been found guilty, and more than 220 are facing internal disciplinary action. Nearly R30 million lost through corrupt activities has been recovered.

## Legislation and policies

In 2012, the Department of Human Settlements had several legislative proposals in the pipeline to accelerate the achievement of ideal human settlements for the people, and strengthen the legal environment. These include:

- amendments to the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997), to align it to the ethos and principles that underpin the creation of sustainable human settlements
- the Land Use Management Bill.

In February 2011, the National Assembly passed the Sectional Titles Schemes Management Bill and the Community Schemes Ombud Service Bill, which could fundamentally change the lives of people living in high-rise flats, inner-city buildings, townhouse complexes and other gated communities.

These bills will contribute to good governance and improved administration of sectional titles and community schemes. They will also minimise the negative actions of some corporate bodies.

The Sectional Titles Schemes Management Bill provides for the establishment of bodies corporate to manage and regulate common property in sectional title schemes and the establishment of an advisory council to advise the Minister.

The Community Schemes Ombud Service Bill will establish an ombud service to resolve disputes emanating from within community schemes. An increasing number of community schemes are being developed, where there is governance by the community involved, shared financial responsibility and common land and facilities. The Bill is aimed at addressing any problems and disputes among participants involving control and administration of finances, facilities and behaviour.

In line with the Home Loans and Mortgage Disclosure Act, 2000 (Act 62 of 2000), the setting up of the Office of Disclosure was completed by May 2012.

Progress around the Estate Agency Affairs Act, 1976 (Act 112 of 1976), the Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP), and the Mortgage Default Insurance

will go a long way in addressing the challenges in the upgrading of slums, access to basic services, accreditation of key municipalities and land acquisition for human settlements. The programme of improving property markets remains a major challenge.

In 2012, Gauteng approved the implementation of the FLISP. The primary objective of the FLISP is to reduce the initial mortgage loan amount to render the monthly loan repayment instalments affordable over the loan repayment term. This programme is targeted at anyone earning between R3 501 and R15 000 and who has never owned a house or benefitted from any government housing subsidy programme before.

More than one million homes have been built in Gauteng since the advent of democracy in 1994. While Gauteng is the smallest province geographically, it has the largest population at 12,3 million, generating an increasing demand for housing.

The mixed housing model, which includes different housing typologies for different income groups, is yielding fruits. Examples include Cosmo City, Fleurhof and Olievenhoutbosch, among others.

## Housing Act, 1997

The Housing Act, 1997 provides for, among other things, facilitating a sustainable housing-development process, and for this purpose lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of government; defines the functions of national, provincial and local government in respect of housing development; and provides for the financing of national housing programmes.

Section 2 of the Housing Act, 1997 compels all three spheres of government to, among other things, give priority to the needs of the poor in respect of housing development.

## Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999)

The Rental Housing Act, 1999 defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market. It creates mechanisms to advance the provision of rental housing property and promotes access to adequate housing by working to ensure proper functioning of the rental housing market.

It furthermore provides for the establishment of rental housing tribunals; defines the functions, powers and duties of such tribunals; and lays down general principles governing conflict resolution in the rental housing sector. The Act provides for the facilitation of sound relations between tenants and landlords and for this purpose lays down general requirements relating to leases. It repeals the Rent Control Act, 1976 (Act 80 of 1976), and provides for matters connected therewith.

Among other things, the Act prescribes that:

- Leases may be oral or in writing. Tenants can demand a written lease.
- The landlord must give the tenant a written receipt for all payments received by the landlord from the tenant.
- The landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in.
- The balance of the deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.

The Act gives tribunals the power to make rulings, which are deemed to be rulings of a magistrate's court in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993 (Act 120 of 1993), and which are enforced in terms of the Act.

Cabinet approved the Rental Housing Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 43 of 2007) to, among other things, further provide for rulings by rental housing tribunals, to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental housing tribunals. The amendment also substitutes certain definitions, extends the application of Chapter 4 to all provinces, requires that the members of the executive council and local authorities establish rental housing tribunals and rental housing information offices respectively and extends the power of the rental housing tribunals to rescind any of its rulings.

Anglo Platinum committed to build more than 20 000 houses in the next nine years for its employees in the North West and Limpopo at a cost of R1,4 billion. This is part of its commitment to take part in the Each-One-Settle-One campaign, whose objective is to mobilise the private sector to participate in housing provision to help reduce the backlog.

Although the response from JSE-listed companies was not as forthcoming as initially anticipated, by May 2012, there had been considerable responses from private individuals and smaller companies. More than 22% of enquiries and pledges to Each-One-Settle-One are from individuals who want to build homes for their domestic workers and 15% are from individuals who wish to offer technical expertise.

## Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008)

The Social Housing Act, 2008 aims to establish and promote a sustainable social housing environment. It defines the functions of the national, provincial and local spheres of government in respect of social housing.

It provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to regulate all social housing institutions obtaining or having obtained public funds, and it allows for the undertaking of approved projects by other delivery agents with the benefit of public money.

It furthermore gives statutory recognition to social housing institutions and provides for matters connected therewith.

Over the years, the social housing sector has grown significantly, and has been the beneficiary of significant funding from government. It is, however, characterised by a patchwork of policies, findings and institutions that neither supports the growth of the sector nor allows for proper regulation and monitoring of funding and policy. For these reasons, the Department of Human Settlements has taken steps to assist governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Act, 2008 and the establishment of the SHRA, all framed by the approved Social Housing Policy.

The Act also provides for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. In providing for specific functions and responsibilities for the three tiers of government, the Act requires that national government, among other things, create the kind of legislative, regulatory, financial and policy frameworks that will enable the sector to grow further.

Provincial governments are given responsibilities to, among other things, approve, allocate and administer capital grants, as well as administer the Social Housing Programme and, for this purpose, approve any projects in respect thereof.

Local governments are required to ensure access to land, municipal infrastructure and services for approved projects in designated restructuring zones. Local governments are also responsible for initiating the identification of these restructuring zones.

The Act's major purpose is the establishment of the SHRA, the body that in accordance with the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), is, among other things, responsible for accrediting social housing institutions, administering and disbursing capital and institutional grants, and monitoring compliance with norms and standards through regular inspections.

It has powers to intervene in the affairs of social housing institutions, to resolve maladministration issues and take remedial steps where necessary.

In April 2011, the SHRA launched the Social Housing Accreditation Register and issued accreditation certificates to 18 social housing institutions.

The issuing of certificates and the unveiling of the accreditation register is part of the SHRA's mandate to regulate social housing institutions and manage the investment programme for social housing.

Government is committed to providing sustainable human settlements to improve the quality of household life for the poor. Such provisions entail access to quality accommodation, basic services, secure tenure and affordable mortgage finance.

By the end of March 2012, the Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme (ISUP) had delivered a total of 114 062 serviced sites. This figure represents 29,5% of the total target of 400 000 for 2014. Of the total number of 45 prioritised cities and towns, 19 of them have established upgrading programmes of informal settlements.

By the end of March 2012, over 22 000 rental units had been delivered through the Social Housing Programme. This figure includes the Institutional Subsidy, Community Residential Unit and private rental programmes. It also represents 27,6% of the 2014 target.

A total of 72 out of the 130 restructuring zones had been gazetted as provisional restructuring zones.

## Human Settlements Vision 2030

Human Settlements Vision 2030: On the Road to 2050 is to no longer have poverty traps in rural and urban areas. It looks at total eradication of backlogs of more than 2,1 million housing units, which translates to about 12,5 million people.

Under Vision 2030's framework, most South Africans will have affordable access to services and quality environment; instead of living in isolation in the periphery of cities.

New developments throughout the country will break away from old patterns and significant progress will be made in retrofitting existing settlements. In rural areas, targeted investments and institutional reform will drive a revival of rural South Africa towards 2050.

The Each-One-Settle-One campaign was launched by the Minister of Human Settlements, Mr Tokyo Sexwale, in 2012 at the Johannesburg Stock Exchange in partnership with the top 200 companies. The campaign motivates stakeholders, private sector institutions, donor agencies and ordinary citizens to help the department to reduce the housing backlog.

The inefficiencies and inequalities in South Africa's settlement patterns are deeply entrenched, where townships were developed and are still being developed in the periphery of the cities and town far from places of work, shopping and social facilities.

The Department of Human Settlements is a key player in the property market. A recent study found that of the six million registered residential properties in the Deeds Registry, 1,44 million were government subsidised houses. This represents just less than a quarter of registered residential properties and could increase to 35% if the backlog in issuing title deeds is overcome.

The obvious value of a title deed should not be underestimated. It provides the following:

- protection of rights to a property
- asset security
- facilitation of entry of ordinary South Africans as players in both the property as well as the financial markets.

What is least understood and nevertheless a major contribution to asset formation by beneficiaries, is that each time government facilitates acquisition of a house, it comes with its own land.

By May 2012, land distribution by human settlements was over 78 000 ha, hence the value of the house was no more just linked to the price of the top structure but was inclusive of the total value of the land.

Government's service delivery priorities from 2012/13 to 2013/14 were:

- eradicating housing backlogs and upgrading informal settlements
- rural housing development
- fast-tracking municipal infrastructure development through the Municipal Infrastructure Grant
- creating short-term jobs
- constructing houses and site services
- increasing jobs in plumbing, electrical fittings and bricklaying.

## Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery

The Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery was signed in September 2005 during the Housing Indaba in Cape Town. The contract

was signed by the then Department of Housing, provincial housing departments, national housing institutions and private stakeholders that form part of the supply value chain in the delivery of housing.

The Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery aims to be a structuring device for steering interdependent activities into a new bargaining context so that all of the activities in the wider sector co-produce desirable outcomes such as:

- more sustainable human settlements for social equality
- economically efficient and effective settlements
- environmentally sensitive built environments with reduced carbon footprints.

The areas of focus broadly take account of the department's mandate. These focus areas are:

- social cohesion
- planning and development
- financing human settlements
- neighbourhood design: building communities (through spatial and physical articulation).

### Inclusionary Housing Policy

The New Economic Growth Path has identified energy, transport, roads, water, communication and indeed housing as key areas in its strategy to fast-track sustainable growth, employment and equity creation.

This has been further given a boost by President Zuma's establishment of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee (PICC). This is a major breakthrough towards reversing the system of apartheid infrastructure and its spatial planning.

More single women are buying homes in South Africa, with the number rising significantly over the last four years. According to mortgage company Ooba, the ratio of women to men in single-person home-loan applications increased from 36,53% in January 2007 to 46,94% in 2011. Indications are that this increased further in 2012. Single-person applications made up 49,65% of applications, compared to joint applications.

Effectively, the introduction of the PICC means the beginning of the end for government operating in silos.

Sanitation, which provides the most basic protection to the private dignity of citizens, is an internationalised programme through the United Nations (UN) millennium development goals (MDGs) as agreed to by all UN member states. In the PICC, this programme has been elevated into a national priority. This is also one of the key recommendations of the Ministerial Sanitation Task Team in its preliminary findings.

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These include housing projects in Bertrams and Cosmo City, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale, outside Durban.

Multiple housing projects that are designed as mixed-income housing developments ensure cross-subsidisation and achieve inclusionary housing objectives.

## Budget

The department's budget for 2012/13 increased from R22 billion to R25,2 billion, a 10% increase from the previous budget. It was expected to grow to R30,1 billion in 2014.

The Human Settlements Development Grant for provinces was allocated R15,7 billion.

The Urban Settlements Development Grant, which allows for eight metropolitan municipalities to improve efficiency and achieve a coordinated approach to the built environment, was allocated R7,4 billion.

The Rural Households Infrastructure Programme was allocated R868,5 million to provide specific capital finance for the eradication of rural sanitation backlogs targeted at current households without access to sanitation and water.

SHRA was allocated R2,1 billion for the rental programme.

The National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha) were allocated R100 million to accelerate housing delivery.

*Census 2011* figures show that 73,4% of households in South Africa has piped water inside the yards; 57% has flush toilets connected to a sewerage system; 3,1% has flush toilets connected to a septic tank; 84,7% has electricity, 0,2% has access to gas, 3% use paraffin, 11,4% use candles, and 0,4% use solar power. The number of households with a television set has increased by 20,7% since 2001.

The department will continue to support and to find better solutions to issues of affordability through social housing, affordable rental and promoting home ownership.

## Subsidies and funding

### Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries for housing purposes.

The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, the subsidy is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards. The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the Department of Human Settlements' areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor.

This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

### Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project. The latter option is only available to beneficiaries who access housing credit.

This programme was enhanced by aligning the quantum of the grant available under the programme with the actual current delivery cost of a house of 40 $m^2$ on a serviced stand. The new subsidy amount is R84 000. The amount comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

The revised subsidy amount was expected to improve beneficiary access to mortgage finance and is available on a first-come first-served basis.

### Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

### Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions. The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options.

This is done on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy. Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

### Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy will receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

### Discount Benefit Scheme

The Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

## Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the state and is governed by traditional authorities. These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents. Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

### Farm resident subsidies

In 2011, a new housing-subsidy programme for farm residents was approved. The programme attempts to address the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context. In most instances, the programme will be applied where the farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in the town impracticable.

Farm residents will play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions with regard to the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, as well as the ongoing management of the housing stock.

## Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP)

Following consultation with banks and other financial institutions, the FLISP was introduced in the market in April 2012 to assist households earning up to R15 000. The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by the state. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

## Home Ownership Mortgage Indemnity Guarantee Fund (MDI)

The MDI assists ordinary working people and those in the middle class to obtain their own homes outside of the gap market. It was expected to be concluded in October 2012. Beneficiaries to both these initiatives include more than two million public servants that cannot acquire mortgage loans.

## National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC)

The NHFC was established in 1996 as a development finance institution to search for new ways to mobilise finance for housing from sources outside the State.

The corporation provides wholesale finance and acts as a fund and risk manager. The organisation has been incorporated as a company with share capital in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973, as amended).

The NHFC supports the Breaking New Ground Strategy of the Department of Human Settlements by facilitating and funding the development of sustainable human settlements and the eradication of informal settlements.

The NHFC's function is:

- providing wholesale funding to intermediaries for small home-improvement loans to households
- funding long-term project finance to social housing and private rental landlords
- providing bridging funding in partnership with others to the development of affordable homes, particularly integrated developments
- providing retail home loans to the lower end of the housing market through various channels.

The NHFC fulfils a facilitating role by:

- implementing risk-enhancement mechanisms to encourage active participation in the low- to middle-income housing market
- promoting an enabling environment in the low- to middle-income housing market through advocacy and involvement in development
- inproving access to housing finance for the low- and middle-income housing market to improve their living standards.

The NHFC has interacted with all provinces to identify pilot projects regarding the FLISP, to

reprioritise funding allocations and to conclude implementation protocols. More than 115 177 loans had been issued between April 2010 up to March 2012 by the NHFC, Nurcha and the Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF).

### Development finance institutions

To ensure the alignment of appropriate financial instruments to achieve the human settlements mandate, the consolidation of the development finance institutions namely the RHLF, Nurcha and the NHFC was in the process of being finalised in 2012.

### Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF)

The RHLF was established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973. It acts as a wholesale provider of development finance to retail financial intermediaries for the disbursement of housing credit to low-income rural households, thereby supporting government's effort to expedite housing delivery.

The Rural Households Infrastructure Programme has been allocated R868,5 million to provide specific capital finance for the eradication of rural sanitation backlogs targeted at current households without access to sanitation and water.

## Role players

### People's Housing Process (PHP)

The PHP is a government housing-delivery mechanism that supports households who wish to enhance their subsidies by building their own homes or organising between themselves the building of their homes. The process allows beneficiaries to establish a housing-support organisation that will provide them with organisational, technical and administrative assistance.

The assistance includes training and guiding the beneficiaries in building their own homes. The subsidy is available to beneficiaries enjoying functional tenure rights to the land they occupy.

The land is normally in rural areas and belongs to the State and is given by the State and the authorities. Unlike the project-linked subsidy, where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, the PHP allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes.

In January 2013, government started constructing new low-cost houses in Lenasia, where houses that were built on illegally acquired land were demolished in November 2012. These houses were believed to have been built on state land and fraudulently sold to unsuspecting individuals. The new houses are built for people on government's housing waiting list.

The PHP is a useful tool for community involvement.

Savings resulting from beneficiary participation in the building of their own homes and the material used may result in homes that are bigger and of better quality than contractor-built houses.

### Stakeholder management

The private sector is a vital partner that must be engaged if the world's cities are to be achieved sustainably.

A further challenge is to increase operations through new partnerships to address the daunting challenges of rapid urbanisation.

The Department of Human Settlements has been at the forefront of addressing this challenge in South Africa. The Chief Directorate: Stakeholder Management's primary objective is to mobilise sector stakeholders to partner with government to fast-track housing delivery.

The unit facilitates stakeholder engagement through various dialogue forums, which has led to collaboration in the implementation of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery and Rural Housing Contract, Stakeholder Engagement, Youth Build, Women's Build and the Govan Mbeki Housing Awards.

### Women in housing

As a result of initiatives such as the Women's Build and the Women in Housing Indaba, women's participation in the construction industry is projected to significantly increase to reach the

According to Statistics South Africa's *Household Survey 2011*, 12,1% of South Africa's 14,75 million households lived in informal housing in 2011. This means that 1,789 million households lived in squatter camps or in informal housing in backyards compared to the 1,864 million households of 2010. The decrease shows that houses are being built faster than the increase in households.

Government is building 250 000 houses a year and the private sector 50 000. Gauteng has 20,4% households living in informal settlements, North West has 18,5% and the Western Cape has 15,1%. Limpopo has the smallest percentage with 4,5% and the Eastern Cape has 6,5%.

The survey showed that 15,3% of South Africa's households lived in state-subsidised housing in 2011, while 13,3% of the households had at least one member on a waiting list for subsidised housing. The percentage of households that owned houses decreased from 58,6% in 2010 to 53,6% in 2011. The percentage of households leasing houses in 2011 increased to 20,9% up from 20,6% in 2010.

50% target for female-owned projects in housing construction by 2014, including disabled women and youth.

National Women Build is a Letsema housing construction project, which was originally launched in 2005 in Gauteng. Since then, the project has been hosted by different provinces where houses have been built for vulnerable and marginalised women to commemorate one of the largest demonstrations in the country's history, when thousands of women marched to the Union Buildings in Pretoria in 1956 to protest against the pass laws.

National Women Build seeks to promote the spirit of volunteerism as well as public-private partnership.

The organisation, now known as Khuthaza, has been operating as Women for Housing since 1995. Khuthaza, meaning "encourage" in Zulu, is a non-profit company supporting the development of women in the housing and construction sectors.

Khuthaza encourages the entrance of women into the built environment sectors and the development of thriving careers and businesses. It supports government initiatives relating to housing and infrastructure delivery, the maintenance and growth of the construction industry and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment.

In November 2012, the hand-over of 56 houses built by women as part of the Department of Human Settlements' Women's Month activities took place in the KwaMathukuza community.

The Women's Build coordinated every August and organised in different provinces every year. It is a partnership between government, private sector and communities to raise consciousness about the construction sector and the women's role in it.

The build also contributes to the creation of sustainable human settlements.

## Youth Build

The Youth Build SA Programme integrates academic achievement, work experience, social action, leadership development and personal transformation in a single project. It was piloted in Ivory Park, Midrand, in Gauteng and will be rolled out to other parts of the country.

Its components include:

- education and skills development
- leadership and service
- counselling and support services
- exit opportunities.

The five-year planned project will see:

- 1 000 young people trained in various related skills
- 10 small businesses created
- 10 scholarships awarded.

The estimated cost of the project is R31 million.

Celebrating Youth Month in June 2011, the Department of Human Settlements called on the South African youth to join the department in accelerating the delivery of sustainable human settlements. The Minister of Human Settlements launched Youth Month activities in Modimolle in Limpopo. Youth volunteers constructed 76 houses in four weeks in the province.

## Housing institutions

The department's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play. These institutions are accountable to the Executive Authority of the Department of Human Settlements.

The institutions are the National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBRC), NHFC, Nurcha, the Social Housing Foundation, RHLF, the Housing Development Agency (HDA), Servcon Housing Solutions, SHRA and Thubelisha Homes.

## National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBRC)

The NHBRC was established in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998, as amended), to represent the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes and to regulate the home-building industry.

The council is providing training and capacity-building to promote satisfactory levels of technical standards in the home-building environment.

The NHBRC achieved a number of operating targets during 2010/11:

- registering 3 650 home builders against the target of 3 000 home builders
- enrolling 31 458 homes against a set target of 37 000
- commencing a review of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 to address misalignments with other legislative prescripts, such as the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) and the Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008).

In July 2011, the NHBRC launched the Legacy Project, which aims to provide homes to the elderly, child-headed families and the disabled.

The Govan Mbeki Human Settlements Awards is a yearly event to encourage and motivate all stakeholders in the South African housing sector to improve the lives of fellow South Africans.

Each year the awards honour people who play a significant role in the sector, including contractors, bankers, the mining sector, professional associations and community-based organisations who partner with government to build sustainable human settlements.

The 2012 awards ceremony was a glittering gala dinner held in May at Gallagher Estate in Midrand. The category winners are:

- Best Priority Project – N2 Gateway Project, Western Cape
- Best Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme – Turnkey Group, Emalaheni Mpumalanga
- Best Social Housing Project – Sohco, Emerald Sky, Eastern Cape
- Best Rental Community Residential Units Project – Rathanda, Gauteng
- Best Enhanced People's Housing Process Project – Elliotdale, Mbashe Municipality, Eastern Cape
- Best Financed Linked Subsidy Project – Impala Boitekong, Rustenburg Municipality, North West
- Best Provincial Department in Performance Delivery – Limpopo.

In September 2011, the Department of Human Settlements handed over houses to some beneficiaries who were registered on provincial and city housing lists. Four areas allocated by government were set aside to build eight double-storey 60-$m^2$ homes.

The Legacy Project's achievements formed part of the 12th International Housing and Home Warranty Conference.

With the drive from the NHBRC, the department piloted the building of houses using alternative technologies, including the use of recycled materials.

## National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha)

Nurcha was established as a Presidential Lead Project in 1995, in partnership with the Open Society Institute as a Section 21 company in terms of the Companies Act, 1973.

More than 2 600 families have received solar-powered geysers as part of government's programme to create better living conditions for residents of the former Joe Slovo informal settlement in Cape Town. The units have been fitted on 2 639 new homes which have been built in Joe Slovo 3A, 3B and 3C over the past 18 months to house former shack-dwellers.

Human Settlements Minister Tokyo Sexwale launched the project, which is one of the first energy-efficiency initiatives in human settlements developments, in April 2013.

The institution's strategic focus is on the financing of building contractors in the housing industry, specifically subsidised, affordable housing and related community infrastructures, differentiating between established and emerging contractors.

Finance is provided directly to established contractors while a separate, specialised intermediary channel is used for the provision of finance to emerging contractors, resulting in the normalisation of risks associated with this market segment by the traditional financial institutions. In this regard, the intermediaries assist the emerging contractors with a range of construction support services.

In 2012/13, Nurcha had been allocated R100 million to accelerate housing delivery.

## Housing Development Agency (HDA)

The HDA was established in terms of the HDA Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), in April 2009. Its purpose is to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state- and privately owned land for residential and community purposes and for the creation of sustainable human settlements.

The agency is required to facilitate the acquisition of land in a way that supplements the capacities of government across all spheres.

The HDA provides project-management expertise in human-settlement projects and facilitates the development of projects through accelerated and innovative project packaging.

To accelerate human settlements, the HDA assessed more than 35 219 ha of state land for suitability. The HDA is in the process of acquiring 1 329 ha of urban land, while an additional 500 ha of privately owned properties are being considered. A total of 111 792 ha of provincially held land were released for human settlements.

The National Human Settlements Land Inventory (NaHSLI) and Land and Property Spatial Information System are fully developed and operational. NaHSLI is a comprehensive, multidimensional catalogue of habitable land. NaHSLI presents a national tool based on the geospatial analysis of the natural, regulatory, structural and social environment context within which a habitable land profile for South Africa is being developed.

It facilitates the identification of suitable, available, accessible land that can be used to earn a livelihood, thereby demarcating non-habitable land and risk-prone areas and informing potential users where human settlements could be best located.

NaHSLI also provides insight into the development potential of habitable land and lends itself to the functions of choice, governance and sustainability.

In total, seven implementation protocols have been signed and further agreements are under negotiation with a number of municipalities and provinces.

The HDA's sole mandate is to acquire land on behalf of government for human settlement. The target is to acquire 6 025 ha by 2014. This is expected to provide for 500 000 housing units.

In 2012/13, the HDA had been allocated R100 million to accelerate housing delivery.

## Servcon Housing Solutions

Servcon Housing Solutions was established in 1995 as a result of the Record of Understanding entered into between the then Department of Housing, representing government, and the Banking Council, representing participating banks.

It was established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 and mandated to provide exclusive management services effective from April 1998, with respect to a documented ring-fenced port-

folio of 33 310 properties comprising properties in possession and non-performing loans worth R1,277 billion from April 1998 to March 2006.

In 2006, the shareholders represented by the Banking Council and the then Department of Housing parted in terms of the sale of shares and claims agreement.

During 2010/11, Servcon Housing Solutions continued with the implementation of a closure plan, as approved by the executive authority.

## Resources

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The Department of Human Settlements continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme.

The strategy and guidelines for housing capacity-building, as well as guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The Department of Human Settlements has undertaken several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote Black Economic Empowerment and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the department has developed a framework for emerging contractor support that has resulted in a support programme that focuses initially on training emerging contractors.

In 2012, the department identified the following interventions:

- accreditation of municipalities
- professionalising skills in human settlements
- establishing a Centre of Excellence for Human Settlements Research.

After years of waiting, residents of Elliotdale in the Eastern Cape were finally on the receiving end of new houses that replaced the old mud structures they called home.

In September 2012, 200 houses were handed over in Phase 1 of the Rural Sustainable Human Settlements Project to beneficiaries who qualify for government's housing subsidy grant.

Phase 2 will result in another 800 house. At the end of the project, 7 000 new homes will have been built. In addition to housing, the project also provided much-needed employment opportunities, including 25 jobs for semi-skilled labourers, 22 for skilled labourers, 64 for youth, 68 for women and 90 for men.

## Programmes and projects

### Sustainable human settlements

Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life are defined by:

- access to adequate accommodation that is suitable, relevant, appropriately located, affordable and fiscally sustainable
- access to basic services such as water, sanitation, refuse removal and electricity
- security of tenure irrespective of ownership or rental, formal or informal structures
- access to social services and economic opportunities within reasonable distance.

In May 2012, government unveiled a plan that it expects will turn the country's major cities into sustainable economic hubs.

Part of the new strategy will be to unlock the mineral beneficiation potential in the country's mining cities, speeding up the building of new human settlements closer to where people work and building an integrated public transport system that incorporates rail, taxis and buses.

### Strategic Integrated Project 7 (SIP7)

The SIP7 is part of the 17 SIPs contained in the Presidential Infrastructure Plan announced by the PICC in April 2012. They incorporate a range of economic and social infrastructure projects and cover all nine provinces with the emphasis on poorer regions. Investment in rail, water pipelines, energy generation and transmission infrastructure have been identified for Limpopo.

SIP7 focuses on 12 of the country's major cities in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-

Natal, the Free State, North West and the Western Cape.

The cities include major metros like Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane in Gauteng, Buffalo City and Nelson Mandela Metro in the Eastern Cape, eThekwini in Durban, Cape Town in the Western Cape and Mangaung in the Free State. The cities were chosen because of their demographic and economic significance. They are to be given implementation powers, with the PICC expected to exercise an oversight role.

In Gauteng, some of the projects that are up and running include the roll-out of the Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) System in all three of the province's metropolitan cities.

Tshwane will spend more than R1,6 billion on its BRT System.

Johannesburg finalised plans for a major rehabilitation of Diepsloot and Ivory Park townships, including the construction of clinics, schools and community libraries.

About R45 million has been set aside to turn Ekurhuleni into an aerotropolis – a new urban form where cities grow around airports, connecting workers, suppliers, executives and goods to the global marketplace.

An amount of R2 billion has been earmarked for a new rail link that connects Cape Town International Airport and the city centre while in other provinces such as the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal the focus will be on the expansion of ports and rail services.

## Comprehensive Housing Plan (CHP)

The CHP for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground) is aimed at, among other things, the eradication of informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

It incorporates principles such as:

- integrating subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- providing municipal engineering services at a higher level and being applied consistently throughout the township
- providing ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities
- combining different housing densities and types, ranging from single-stand units to double-storey units and row houses.

The CHP provides for programmes that promote the development of the entire residential property market, including the development of low-cost housing, medium-density accommodation and rental housing; stronger partnerships with the private sector; social infrastructure; and amenities.

The plan is also aimed at changing spatial settlement patterns by building spatially, economically and socially integrated human settlements.

The CHP is being implemented through informal settlement-upgrading pilot projects in each province. These projects provide for phased, area-based development, and emphasise community participation and social and economic development as an integral part of housing projects. The goal of upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is aligned to the UN MDGs to improve the lives of 100 million slum-dwellers worldwide.

The CHP focuses on:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion

A South African housing construction company, Moladi Housing Technology, has made it to the finals of a prestigious international competition for providing affordable houses for the poor.

The Port Elizabeth-based company was in the final six of the 2012 Hult Global Case Challenge. One of the judges was former United States President Bill Clinton, whose foundation wants to build millions of houses in Africa.

This South African company has built housing complexes in 10 African countries, South America, the Philippines and Mexico.

The Department of Human Settlements in collaboration with the Department of Higher Education and Training, and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (NMMU), has established a Chair for Education in Human Settlements Development Management.

The new bachelor's degree will focus on education and training in human settlements development management to provide capacity in the sector. It will initially be offered only at NMMU in 2014, but will later also be offered by the University of Fort Hare and the University of South Africa.

- using housing development to break down barriers between the first-economy residential property boom and the second-economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

As part of the CHP, government provides a 40-m$^2$ house with two bedrooms; a separate bathroom with a toilet, shower and hand basin; a combined living area and kitchen with wash basin; and a ready board electrical installation where electricity supply is available in the township, to qualifying households earning less than R3 500 a month.

The department developed and launched a number of instruments to guide the implementation of the comprehensive plan in all three spheres of government.

These include the monitoring, evaluation and impact-assessment policy and implementation guidelines, and the operating system for the policy and guidelines.

The department has also initiated a project-monitoring process to measure the performance of provincial housing departments against targets set in their business plans, to identify constraints and assist with addressing them swiftly.

By 2012, significant progress had been made in delivering projects in all the provinces. These included

- Lakehaven, Ethekwini in KwaZulu-Natal
- a Brandfort Women's Build project in the Free State
- Mazista, Swartruggens in the North West
- Seshego, Polokwane in Limpopo
- Klarinet, Emalahleni in Mpumalanga
- China Square Project, Kimberly in the Northern Cape
- Jabulani Hostel Redevelopment in Soweto, Gauteng
- densification of the Joe Slovo settlement, Western Cape
- Southernwood Social Housing in Buffalo City, Eastern Cape; making the Eastern Cape the leader in the human settlements social housing programme.

## Rental housing for the poor

The National Rental Housing Strategy, which was approved in 2008, provides for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- provision made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock that has not been transferred to the households that inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock to be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Many job seekers in urban areas require rental accommodation. There has been an increased demand for affordable and well-located rental accommodation. The Department of Human Settlements has developed a project pipeline with a mix of public-private sector rental stock, including the:

- Umlazi Community Rental Unit Programme in KwaZulu-Natal
- Brooklyn Social Housing Programme in Cape Town
- Amalinda Institutional Housing Subsidy in Buffalo City
- Cavendish Inner-City Private-Sector Rental in Johannesburg

- Zola Township Small-Scale Private Rental Stock for backyard dwellers in Gauteng.

All of these are aimed at creating 80 000 rental opportunities by 2014.

## Community Residential Unit (CRU) Programme

The CRU Programme replaces the National Hostel Redevelopment Programme and the proposed Affordable Rental Housing Programme.

There are approximately 2 000 public hostels that need to be addressed by government.

There are also 200 000 residential units owned by provinces and municipalities. The programme, therefore, provides a coherent framework for dealing with the many different forms of existing public-sector residential accommodation.

The CRU Programme aims to facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower-income individuals.

The programme targets low-income individuals and households earning between R800 and R3 500 a month, who are unable to enter the formal private rental and social housing market.

The CRU programme covers:

- public hostels owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- "grey" hostels that have both private and public ownership
- public housing stock that cannot be transferred and has to be managed as rental accommodation
- post-1994 newly developed public residential accommodation owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- dilapidated, derelict and dysfunctional buildings.

## Emergency housing

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, and the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

## Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)

The IRDP provides for the acquisition of land; servicing of stands for a variety of land uses, including commercial, recreational, schools and clinics; as well as residential stands for low-, middle- and high-income groups. The land-use and income-group mix is based on local planning and needs assessment.

The IRDP can be undertaken in several phases or in one single phase. The first phase could provide serviced stands, whereas the second phase provides for housing construction for qualifying low-income beneficiaries and the sale of stands to persons who, for various reasons, don't qualify for subsidies; and/or the disposal of other stands such as those for commercial uses.

The Human Settlements Development Grant for provinces, which provides funding for human settlements development was allocated R15,7 billion for 2012/13.

The average house price in South Africa has increased by over 5% in the past year, according to bond originator Ooba. The average house price reached R894 510 in January 2013, up by 5,2% from R850 589 in January 2012.

The market was driven by first-time home buyers with more than 51% of Ooba's applicants in January being first-time buyers.

The average house price for first-time buyers was up 5,5% year-on-year to R686 452 and up 3,2% month-on-month to R665 167.

The current market conditions are supported by lower interest rates coupled with property price inflation and improved lending policies.

The Urban Settlements Development Grant, which allows for eight metropolitan municipalities to improve efficiency and achieve a coordinated approach to the built environment, was allocated R7,4 billion.

In November 2012, the first phase of the Fleurhof Integrated Human Settlement Development in Soweto was launched. Fleurhof is one of the Gauteng's largest integrated housing projects that will bridge the gap between the rich and the poor. This integrated development, situated less than 12 km from the Johannesburg city centre, will serve as a link to the formerly segregated areas of Soweto and Florida/Roodepoort, thus unlocking economic opportunities and creating direct access for both areas.

The project consists of various types of housing opportunities and forms of tenure. These include fully subsidised housing, social housing for rental, finance linked for the gap housing market and affordable bonded housing.

The project is a partnership between the Department of Human Settlements, Gauteng Local Government and Housing Department and the City of Johannesburg.

The project also provides amenities like business centres, seven crèches, five religious sites, one community centre, three school sites and parks.

### Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA)

The Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), provides for the establishment of the SHRA and the disbursement of three types of institutional investment grants, namely:

- project acquisition and feasibility grants
- pre-accreditation grants
- general capacity-building grants.

The main objective of the SHRA is to regulate and support the social housing sector to accelerate the delivery of social housing stock through the investment programme.

In 2012/13, the SHRA was allocated R2,1 billion for the rental programme.

### Thubelisha Homes

Thubelisha Homes was established as a non-profit, special-purpose vehicle to create appropriate housing stock for the Servcon Housing Solutions portfolio.

The institution ceased operations in July 2009. In 2009/10, Thubelisha Homes began implementing a closure plan.

The project management of mega projects was transferred to the HDA and the staff offered employment opportunities with other housing institutions, provincial departments of human settlements and the Department of Human Settlements. Voluntary severance packages were offered to staff members who were not interested in the available employment offers.

During 2010/11, Thubelisha Homes continued reconciling the project accounts of outstanding contracts and resolving all outstanding legal matters. The outstanding annual reports have been compiled and produced.

## International relations

There has been visible participation in the African Ministerial Conference on Housing and Urban Development (AMCHUD). South Africa was the AMCHUD Secretariat for the last six years, handing over to Kenya at AMCHUD 4 in Kenya in April 2012.

The department has a Memorandum of Understanding with the Netherlands on housing cooperation.

## Conclusion

South Africa faces a growing challenge in providing all citizens with access to suitable housing. Despite significant achievements in housing projects, some challenges remain in broadening and sustaining access to the housing market, and ensuring that houses form part of integrated and sustainable human settlements.

Realising the right of every citizen to a home involves far more than the delivery of a subsidised house. Safe, secure shelter in healthy and integrated settlements is more often an immediate objective for a household than full home ownership.

The key challenge facing national housing policy has therefore shifted from a focus on building houses, although many are required, to correcting failures in the housing market that keep many South Africans from realising their rights. The long-term aim of housing policy is to enable all households to participate in the housing market in ways that meet their changing needs.

Innovations in housing finance, subsidy mechanisms and institutional arrangements is required to find appropriate responses to changing circumstances in the housing sector.

Allowing some large municipalities to experiment with alternative approaches to housing policy implementation, even if only on a medium-term pilot basis, is likely to inform and stimulate the ongoing refinement of public housing policy to meet changing market conditions and household needs.

The department's service-delivery priorities include upgrading well-located informal settlements, and providing proper services and land tenure to 500 000 households by 2014.

The department also plans to increase the rate of affordable rental housing delivery to at least 20 000 units per year. It furthermore plans to set aside 6 250 ha of well-located public land for low-income and affordable housing, accommodating approximately 400 000 units by 2014.

The department will accelerate provision and upgrading of bulk infrastructure networks to prioritised settlements by 2014, and will accommodate people whose salaries are too high to get government subsidies, but earn too little to qualify for a normal bank mortgage. It will also involve other departments in the processes.

## Acknowledgements

*A Review of the UUDP's Support to the South African Housing Sector*, published by the German Technical Cooperation
Department of Human Settlements, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Servcon
Thubelisha Homes
Rural Housing Loan Fund
*Sowetan Live*
The National Housing Code
*The Sowetan*
*The Star*
*Pretoria News*
*Times Live*

*http://allafrica.com*
*http://housingnc.ncape.gov.za*
*www.dhs.gov.za*
*www.eumunicipaloutreach.org.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.info.gov.za*
*www.pmg.org.za*
*www.propertyscene.co.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.servconhousing.co.za*
*www.thehda.co.za*

## Suggested reading

Bank, LJ. 2011. *Home Spaces, Street Styles: Contesting Power and Identity in a South African City.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Bieber, J. 2010. *Soweto.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Bonner, P & Nieftagodien, N. 2012. *Ekurhukleni: The Making of an Urban Region.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Feinstein, M. 2011. *Cape Town: Up Close & Personal.* Cape Town: Struik.
Le Roux, M & Ommundsen, L. 2012. *Mitchell's Plain: A Place in the Sun: The Story of Mitchell's Plain as Told by its People 1974 – 2011.* Cape Town: Mikateko Media.
Murray, MJ. 2011. *City of Extremes: The Spatial Politics of Johannesburg.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Nieftagodien, N & Gaule, S. 2012. *Orlando West, Soweto: An Illustrated History.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Pieterse, E (ed). 2010. *Counter Currents: Experiments in Sustainability in the Cape Town Region.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Schenck, R, Louw, H & Nel, H. 2010. *Introduction to Participatory Community Practice.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Worden, N (ed). 2012. *Cape Town Between East and West: Social Identities in a Dutch Colonial Town.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

# International Relations and Cooperation

South Africa is a multifaceted, multicultural and multiracial country that embraces the concept of ubuntu. Meaning "human-ness", ubuntu is reflected in the idea that South Africans affirm their humanity when they affirm the humanity of others.

This approach has played a major role in the forging of a South African national consciousness and in the process of democratic transformation and nation-building.

The philosophy also translates into an approach to international relations that respects all nations, peoples and cultures. It recognises that it is in South Africa's national interest to promote and support the positive development of others.

The country's foreign policy is, therefore, guided by the values of ubuntu and the commitment to mutually beneficial partnerships with Africa and other countries of the world.

The foundations and strategic perspective of the foreign policy were derived from a long-standing history, ideology and values that embrace, among other things, the spirit of internationalism and the rejection of colonialism and other forms of oppression.

South Africa occupies a unique position in Africa and plays an important role as a peacemaker on the continent. At the end of January 2012, South Africa handed over the rotating chairmanship of the United Nations Security Council (UNSC). During its brief tenure, South Africa focused on strengthening cooperation between the UNSC and the African Union Peace and Security Council (AUPSC). A UN resolution in this regard was unanimously adopted.

Within the multilateral system, South Africa continues to work for global political and socio-economic stability and security. The country promotes development, security, human rights and international law through its participation in international forums, such as the UN and its various agencies.

South Africa's international relations policy therefore recognises that to achieve a better life for all, development and security are best addressed through adequate attention to all global threats facing humanity. In this regard the

organs and principal bodies of the UN system are of major importance for the maintenance of global peace and stability.

## Legislation

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation derives its mandate from, among others, the following legislation:

- The Foreign States Immunities Act, 1981 (Act 87 of 1981), regulates the extent of the immunity of foreign states from the jurisdiction of the South African courts and provides for matters connected therewith.
- The Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001), provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, of heads of states, special envoys and certain representatives of the UN and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and certain people. Provision is also made for immunities and privileges pertaining to international conferences and meetings. It also enacts into law certain conventions and provides for matters connected therewith.
- The African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001), establishes an African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development.
- International agreements (multilateral and bilateral): International agreements concluded by the Republic of South Africa in terms of sections 231(2) and 231(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

South Africa is leading the process of developing a new United Nations (UN) Development Assistance Framework 2013 – 2017. This is done in collaboration between the country's UN partners, national departments, provincial governments and civil society. The framework will ensure that all assistance from UN agencies operating in South Africa will be aligned with the country's own identified national priorities.

## Budget and funding

The Medium Term Expenditure Framework allocation for the 2012/13 financial year was R5 116 591 of which R1 265 310 was allocated to Administration for developing overall policy and managing the department. R2 802 589 was allocated to International Relations and Cooperation to promote relations with foreign countries, and to participate in international organisations and institutions in line with South Africa's national values and foreign policy objectives.

R223 134 was allocated to Public Diplomacy and Protocol Services to communicate South Africa's role and position in international relations in the domestic and international arenas and to provide protocol services. R825 558 was allocated to International Tansfers for funding membership fees and transfers to interntional organisations.

## Foreign policy

In striving to promote South Africa's national interest in a complex and fast-changing world, the mandate of the Department of International Relations and Cooperation is to formulate, coordinate, implement and manage the country's foreign-policy objectives.

The principles underpinning the department's foreign policy are the country's commitment to:

- Africa in world affairs
- economic development through regional and international cooperation
- the promotion of human rights
- the promotion of democracy
- upholding justice and international law in the conduct of relations between nations
- international peace and internationally agreed-upon mechanisms for the resolution of conflict.

Since 1994, the international community has looked to South Africa to play a leading role in championing the values of human rights, democracy, reconciliation and transformation.

South Africa has risen to the challenge and plays a meaningful role in the region, on the continent and the world.

South Africa, therefore, accords central importance to:

- its immediate African neighbourhood and continent
- working with countries of the South to address shared challenges of underdevelopment
- promoting global equity and social justice
- working with countries of the North to develop a true and effective partnership for a better world
- doing its part to strengthen the multilateral system, including its transformation, to reflect the diversity of nations, and ensure its centrality in global governance.

## South-South cooperation

South Africa pays dedicated attention to partnerships, which other key southern-hemisphere (South) countries have with Africa such as the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation, Africa's comprehensive partnership with India, and the Korea-Africa Forum.

South Africa's government spares no effort in strengthening the progressive forums of the South such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), G77+China, Africa-South America Summit and the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP). These forums have demonstrated that they are trusted allies and partners in South Africa's aim for a better world and Africa.

## North-South cooperation

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation serves as the focal point for North-South dialogue, engaging key global economic institutions such as the World Trade Organisation, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development and the World Intellectual Property Organisation.

To achieve this objective, South Africa ensures that the development agenda remains part of the focus of key economic forums, particularly the annual G8 Summit and World Economic Forum meetings.

## Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa's policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies. In this regard, the department continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security, particularly to countries in Africa.

As part of its continued and strong commitment to multilateral disarmament and non-proliferation, the department finalised a host country agreement with the AU in 2012. By the agreement, South Africa would host the African Commission on Nuclear Energy (Afcone) in terms of the African Nuclear-Weapon-Free Zone Treaty, otherwise known as the Treaty of Pelindaba.

Afcone will ensure compliance with the undertakings of member states under the treaty and will also encourage regional and subregional programmes for cooperation in the peaceful uses of nuclear science and technology. Ambassador Abdul Samad Minty was elected as the first chairperson of Afcone.

The department also participated in the Nuclear Security Summit in Seoul in March 2012, through Ambassador Minty. South Africa conveyed its position and progress made on nuclear security. The summit was held within the context of a global commitment to achieve a world free from all weapons of mass destruction, including nuclear weapons and provided a forum to raise awareness and to support the work of existing bodies on nuclear security, especially the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA).

As a designated member of the board of governors of the IAEA, South Africa also con-

tinued its constructive participation in the IAEA General Conference and the IAEA board of governors, South African nuclear experts also continued their participation in numerous IAEA technical meetings that hold potential benefits not only for the nuclear industry in South Africa, but also for accelerated economic growth on the African continent.

Regarding conventional weapons, including small arms and light weapons, South Africa continued to actively participate in UN efforts related to the Anti-Personnel Mine Ban Convention, the Convention on Cluster Munitions, the Certain Conventional Weapons Convention, the UN Programme of Action on Small Arms and Light Weapons and efforts aimed at establishing an arms trade treaty.

## Role players

### Arican Union (AU)

The AU emerged from the Organisation of African Unity (OAU), which was established in 1963 with a charter signed by 32 countries in Addis Ababa. The OAU, which was officially disbanded in July 2002 by its last chairperson, former South African President Thabo Mbeki, was replaced by the AU with 51 members who pledged to work for closer political integration and unity among African countries.

The AU was developed along the lines of the European Union (EU) and has 10 commissioners overseeing departments including political affairs, agriculture and peace and security. Its founding charter mandates it to work for "democracy, human rights and development", while it also promotes international cooperation, investment in the continent and sends peacekeepers to trouble spots in Africa.

South Africa continues to support the AU at multiple levels, key among which is South Africa's annual assessed contribution as one of the five largest member states. In addition, South Africa continues to host and support the Pan-African Parliament; the South African Chapter of the AU Economic, Social and Cultural Council; and the Pan-African Women's Organisation.

The AU has made notable progress towards the political and economic integration of the continent. This includes:

- establishing the AUPSC, which is responsible for the resolution of conflict, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction and development in conjunction with the UN
- adopting a common defence policy that, among other things, talks to the establishment of an African Standby Force, comprising the five AU regional brigades (Central, Northern, Western, Eastern and Southern regions)
- establishing the Human and Peoples' Rights Court
- implementing the Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa and the Declaration on Gender Equality
- implementing the Protocol on the Court of Justice.

The eight existing regional economic communities, which include the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and the Economic Community of West African States, have begun to determine time lines to achieve free-trade agreements and customs unions.

In February 2012, President Jacob Zuma travelled to Benin for a meeting of the AU heads of state and government. The meeting focused on, among other things, implementation of the decisions of the AU summits, explor-

South Africa presented its second report to the 13th Session of the United Nations Universal Peer Review Mechanism Working Group in Geneva in May 2012. The Universal Periodic Report is a unique process, which involves a review of human rights records of all 192 United Nations Member States every four years.

The report was warmly received by many member states, who commended South Africa for its commitment to human rights and improving the lives of its citizens, as well as the delivery of basic services such as housing, health and education.

South Africa was also praised for its leading role in the UN Human Rights Council, especially regarding the rights of gay, lesbian, bi-sexual, transgender and intersex persons.

ing mechanisms for capacity building within the AU, continental economic integration and political unity.

In July 2012, South Africa's Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma was elected the first female head of the AU Commission.

In September 2012, the fourth Ordinary Session of the Conference of the AU Ministers of Youth Affairs was attended by AU ministers responsible for youth development, senior government officials and young people. The Minister in The Presidency for Performance Monitoring and Evaluation, Mr Collins Chabane, represented South Africa.

The conference was held under the theme *Africa delivers as one for youth development.*

The outcome of the conference fed into the 20th Assembly of the AU and informed the strategic focus on youth for the next AU Commission Strategic Plan 2012 – 2017.

### AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC)

South Africa plays an important role in efforts to bring about peace and stability on the continent.

The AUPSC is the organ of the AU in charge of enforcing union decisions. Members are elected by the AU Assembly to reflect regional balance within Africa, as well as a variety of other criteria, including capacity to contribute militarily and financially to the union, political will to do so, and effective diplomatic presence at Addis Ababa.

The AUPSC entered into force in December 2003, after being ratified by the required majority of AU member states. It is made up of 15 member states and is responsible for the resolution of conflict, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction and development in conjunction with the UN.

South Africa ended its term in the AUPSC on 1 April 2012 in line with the principle of rotation among members of the southern region.

On relinquishing its seat in the council, South Africa emphasised its commitment to continue contributing to the resolution of peace and security challenges in Africa.

### AU regional economic communities

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies.

Regional economic communities are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future regional economic communities, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

## New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of Nepad and the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), and hosts the Nepad Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand, Gauteng.

The peer review process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of Nepad.

In April 2012, South Africa hosted the APRM Focal Points meeting in Durban. The APRM Focal Points are ministers or high-level government officials who report directly to their respective heads of state or government.

The purpose of the meeting was to discuss the operationalisation of the newly adopted Operating Procedures for the APRM and con-

sider the Revised Country Self-Assessment Questionnaire. The Operating Procedures were unanimously adopted by the 16th Summit of the APRM Forum in January 2012.

Nepad remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the EU-AU Strategic Partnership, Forum for Africa-China Partnership, the Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8), the Tokyo International Conference on African Development, the NAASP and the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

Through Nepad, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, information and communications technology, science and technology, infrastructure and education has brought improvement to the quality of life for millions of Africans.

The 14th session of the AU in 2012, decided to integrate Nepad into the AU and established the Nepad Planning and Coordinating Agency (NPCA) as a technical body of the AU. This is an important step towards accelerating Nepad's implementation.

The NPCA will focus on the implementation of regional integration programmes and projects. The AU/Nepad African Action Plan for 2010 to 2015 is a master plan for concrete projects that will serve as a catalyst for the development of the continent.

## Southern African Development Community (SADC)

The SADC developed from the Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC), which was established in 1980. It adopting its current name during a summit meeting in Windhoek, Namibia in August 1992.

Before 1992, the aim of SADCC was to forge close economic cooperation with southern African countries excluding South Africa, to bolster their economies to reduce their dependence on the South African economy.

From 1992, when the organisation became SADC, its mandate changed to the following:

- establishing an open economy based on equality, mutual benefit and balanced development
- breaking down tariff barriers
- promoting trade exchanges and mutual investment
- realising free movement of goods, personnel and labour service
- achieving the unification of tariffs and currencies
- establishing a free trade zone.

The initial member states were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa became a member after 1994.

In July 2012, ministers from the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation convened in Pretoria, Gauteng for their 14th meeting, which charted a way forward for the region.

In June 2011, 26 African countries signed an agreement to create a free trade area that covers more than half of Africa.

By June 2014, nearly 60% of South Africa's economy is expected to be a single free trade area, covering the SADC, the East African community and the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa.

The Free Trade Area Agreement is part of

On 9 January 2013, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Ebrahim Ebrahim, received the prestigious Pravasi Bharatiya Samman Award from Indian President Sri Pranab Mukherjee, in Kochi, India.

The Indian government presents the annual award to individuals of Indian origin living outside India, who are of exceptional merit in their fields and who have contributed to the growth and prestige of India.

India celebrates Pravasi Bharatiya Divas (Non-resident Indian Day) on 9 January every year to mark the contribution of the overseas Indian community in the development of India.

The date was chosen to commemorate the return of Mahatma Gandhi from South Africa to India in 1915.

the SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations within southern Africa through trade. These broader SADC efforts continue to be supplemented and complemented by developments within the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) membership and the elevation of regional integration efforts.

The overall objectives of Sacu is to enhance intra-Sacu trade through improved infrastructure and industrialisation. To this end, Sacu members have developed a work programme on priority areas.

Angola is the current Chair of the SADC after taking over from Namibia in 2011. Mozambique will take over from Namibia, while South Africa hands over the Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation to Tanzania.

## United Nations (UN)

South Africa was one of the 51 founding member of the UN in 1945. Since then, UN membership has grown to 192 states. After being suspended in 1974, owing to international opposition to the policy of apartheid, South Africa was re-admitted to the UN in 1994 following its transition to democracy.

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance.

South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global development agenda and address under-development social integration, full employment and decent work for all and the eradication of poverty globally.

Through participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law.

### United Nations Security Council (UNSC)

Twelve years after re-admittance to the UN, South Africa was honoured to be endorsed by the AU and subsequently elected with an overwhelming majority to serve as a non-permanent member of the UNSC for the 2007/08 period. South Africa made use of the opportunity to promote the African Agenda of peace, security and development.

South Africa was honoured to once again serve as a non-permanent member for the 2011/12 term, which started in January 2011.

Another notable achievement was the establishment of an AU-UN High-Level Panel to explore the possibility of enhancing the predictability, sustainability and flexibility of financing for AU peace operations, a factor that remains the most important constraint that limits Africa's capacity to resolve its own conflicts.

African countries have been pushing for the reform of the UN. Leaders such as President Zuma have also called for stronger cooperation between UNSC and the AU in the prevention and management of conflicts in Africa especially after the 2011 conflict in Libya.

### UN Economic and Social Council (Ecosoc)

In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly (UNGA) to the 47-member Ecosoc. It is one of the UN's principal organs alongside the UNSC and the UNGA.

South Africa completed its two-year non-renewable, non-permanent membership of the UNSC on 31 December 2012 and immediately assumed membership of Ecosoc on 1 January 2013. South Africa last served in Ecosoc in 2004 to 2006.

Ecosoc is a premier organ of the UN responsible for economic and social development matters of the world.

Membership of Ecosoc will provide South Africa with an opportunity to be located at the centre of the debate on the global development agenda, including the acceleration of the implementation of the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs).

### UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco)

South Africa rejoined Unesco after the advent of democracy in 1994, following its withdrawal in 1956.

South Africa is an active participant in key

Unesco governance structures such as the General Conference (consisting of all member states) and the World Heritage Committee, and has previously served on the executive board.

Since its return to Unesco, South Africa has also ratified a number of Unesco conventions including the Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (July 1997), Convention Against Discrimination in Education (March 2000), the International Convention Against Doping in Sport (November 2006) and the Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions (December 2006).

South Africa also acceded to the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict with Regulations for the Execution of the Convention (December 2003). National interaction with Unesco's various areas of work is coordinated through the South African National Commission for Unesco, whose secretariat is hosted by the Department of Basic Education.

### UN-South Africa Strategic Cooperation Framework (UN SCF)

In 2012, South Africa and the UN Country Team in South Africa embarked on protracted negotiations to draft and finalise the UN Development Assistance Framework, also known as the SA-UN SCF, for the period 2013 – 2017.

The UN SCF defines areas of development cooperation between the South African government and the UN, based on the government's national priorities and objectives.

Negotiations led to the identification of the following four broad areas of collaboration: inclusive growth and decent work, sustainable development,

human capabilities, and governance and participation.

The final UN SCF will be the overarching framework that will inform the operational activities of all the UN funds, programmes and specialised agencies in South Africa that make up the UN Country Team in South Africa.

### World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body.

South Africa also takes part in the WHO's Regional Committee for Africa which convenes annually after the WHA to both reflect on the decisions taken at the WHA and to plan for the following year's WHA.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and making decisions on key issues regarding global and public health.

### Group of 20 (G20)

South Africa served as co-chair of the G20 Development Working Group during 2012. The country promoted the development agenda in its engagements within the G20, including the implementation of G20 decisions that are aimed at limiting the impact of the crisis on developed and developing countries and preventing the occurrence of similar crises in future.

In June 2012, President Zuma, supported by

Among the BRICS countries, South Africa spends the highest percentage of gross domestic product (GDP) on education (6,8%), followed by Brazil at 4,3%.

This was revealed in the 2013 BRICS joint statistical publication, released in March 2013, at the Fifth BRICS Summit in Durban, by Statistics SA, together with the respective statistical agencies of Brazil, Russia, India and China.

The publication contains 16 chapters, including on population, living standards, the economy, economic sectors, the environment and tourist arrivals.

The publication also reveals that South Africa had the highest tourist arrivals in 2011 – at over 8,3 million, followed by India with 6,3 million arrivals in the same year.

South Africa is ranked third when it comes to GDP per capita – at $7 790 (in 2011), behind Russia ($14 015) and Brazil ($11 463), and ahead of China ($6 091) and India ($1 440).

the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, and South Africa's G20 Sherpa, Ambassador George Nene, attended the seventh annual G20 Leaders' Summit, held in Los Cabos, Mexico.

South Africa committed to invest US$2 billion of its foreign exchange reserve assets in additional resources as part of an international initiative pioneered by the G20 countries to boost the resources of the International Monetary Fund (IMF) to enable it to better support struggling economies in times of crisis.

The key outcomes agreed to by the G20 leaders at the Los Cabos Summit in Mexico included joint efforts to strengthen global economic stabilisation and recovery, financial stabilisation of the IMF, adoption of a jobs action plan, and greater commitment to fight climate change. Leaders also reaffirmed their commitment to implement in full the IMF quota and governance reform package agreed to in 2012 at the Seoul Summit in South Korea.

### Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa (BRICS) trade alliance

South Africa's membership of BRICS is based on three objectives, namely:

- advancing national interests
- promoting regional integration programme and related continental infrastructure programmes
- partnering key players of the South on issues related to global governance and its reform.

In September 2012, Cabinet approved the draft BRICS Strategy. The strategy is to guide the engagement of South Africa by identifying objectives and opportunities within the group of member countries. It unpacks the three levels of engagements at a domestic, regional and international level.

Cabinet further approved an Inter-Ministerial Committee to provide direction on the preparation for hosting the fifth BRICS Summit in South Africa in March 2013.

### India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) trade alliance

IBSA continues to play its unique role as a body bringing together three democracies of the South from three continents.

The realisation of a trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues, and are substantial emerging economies within their subregions.

Apart from promoting South-South dialogue, IBSA also fosters inter-regional cooperation.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on three levels, namely: heads of state and government, government-to-government and people-to-people cooperation.

In June, 2012, South Africa, India and Brazil signed an agreement which proposes the creation of a tripartite IBSA Working Group on Decent Work, which will meet at least once a year at the margins of the International Labour Conference.

The Working Group on Decent Work is expected to promote the exchange of views and experiences in the area of decent work and promote South-South cooperation initiatives for the benefit of developing countries, including through partnerships with different stakeholders.

### Indian Ocean Rim-Association for Regional Cooperation (IOR-ARC)

The Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Ebrahim Ebrahim, attended the 12th Meeting of the Council of Ministers of the IOR-ARC in October 2012, in India.

South Africa is one of the founding member states of the IOR-ARC, which was launched in Mauritius in March 1997. There are 19 Indian IOR member states.

The objectives of IOR include promoting the sustained growth and balanced development of the region and of the member states, and creating common ground for regional economic cooperation. This also includes formulating and implementing projects for economic cooperation relating to trade facilitation and lib-

eration, promotion of foreign investment, academic, scientific and technological exchanges, tourism and the development of infrastructure and human resources.

The meeting of the Council of Ministers saw India completing its first year as chair of the IOR-ARC.

## Commonwealth

The Commonwealth of Nations, an association of former colonies of the United Kingdom (UK), is defined as a voluntary association of independent sovereign states consulting and cooperating in the common interest of their people and in the promotion of international understanding and world peace.

Its membership is diverse, spanning the six continents, encompassing all major faiths, and including both developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

The Commonwealth represents one third of the world's population and more than a quarter of the world's countries. Commonwealth countries share a commitment to democracy, freedom, peace, the rule of law and opportunity for all.

South Africa is a founding member of the Commonwealth, but was expelled in 1961 owing to its apartheid policies. However, the country was readmotted to the organisation in 1994, after the first democratic elections.

In June 2012, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Marius Fransman, participated in a meeting of the Commonwealth Ministerial Task Force in London.

The Ministerial Task Force was established in October 2011 and comprises Australia, the Solomon Islands, Barbados, Canada, Belize, India, Malaysia, Nigeria, Rwanda, the Seychelles, South Africa and the UK.

## Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

The NAM, with its 120 member states, is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role in NAM deliberation and meetings ever since.In May 2012, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, attended the Ministerial Meeting of the NAM Coordinating Bureau held in Sharm El Sheikh, Egypt in preparation for the XVI Summit of the Heads of State and Government of NAM.

Deputy Minister Fransman attended the NAM XVI Summit, which was held under the theme *Lasting Peace Through Joint Global Governance* in Tehran, Iran, from 26 to 31 August 2012.

The Islamic Republic of Iran will chair the movement for the period 2012 to 2015. South Africa's intervention highlighted the challenges being faced by the movement. These are reform of the UN, including the UNGA and the UNSC; the situation in the Middle East, in particular the plight of the Palestinian people; and the situation in Syria.

During the summit, South Africa also participated in the meeting of the NAM Committee on Palestine.

## African, Caribbean and Pacific states

South Africa assumed full membership of the African, Caribbean and Pacific group of countries in 1996. It became a qualified member of the Lomé Convention in 1997, and of its successor, the Cotonou Partnership Agreement, signed in Cotonou in Benin in June 2000.

In September 2012, South Africa made further strides in strengthening ties with its contemporaries across the continent, the Caribbean and the European community when Cabinet approved the ratification of the second revision of the Cotonou Partnership Agreement between the African, Caribbean and Pacific states.

One of the key aspects of South Africa's membership of the African, Caribbean and Pacific group of states is its active participation in the three joint political organs, namely the Council of Ministers, the Joint Parliamentary Assembly and the Committee of Ambassadors.

South Africa participates in dialogue on important issues such as peace-building,

conflict resolution, respect for human rights, democratic principles and the rule of law. South Africa regularly participates in African, Caribbean and Pacific States summits, Council of Ministers' meetings, trade ministers' meetings and the African, Caribbean and Pacific Forum on science and technology.

## International relations

### South Africa and Africa

South Africa regards Africa as the centrepiece of its foreign policy and remains committed to promoting the African agenda, particularly regional peace, security and stability, as the key determinants for socio-economic development on the continent.

Through the African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund, the department has in 2011/12 supported various initiatives in Africa aimed at realising these objectives.

One of the projects that were supported through the fund include a grant of R15 million to the International Atomic Energy Agency for the improvement of veterinary laboratory capacities in Côte d'Ivoire, Burkina Faso, Senegal, Mali, Ethiopia, Kenya, Tanzania, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Botswana, Zambia, Mozambique and Namibia.

Another project was funded with R13,5 million towards an International Diplomatic Training Programme at the department's Diplomatic Academy, which benefitted South Sudan, Sudan, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Burundi, Rwanda, Mauritius and the Comoros.

R5 million was allocated towards South Africa's participation in the SADC and AU observer missions to monitor elections in the Seychelles, Zambia and the DRC.

South Africa has engaged in peacekeeping operations and peace-building measures in support of the African Agenda, and has been active in a mediation and/or facilitation role in countries such as Burundi, the DRC, Sudan, Ethiopia-Eritrea, Côte d'Ivoire, Madagascar and Zimbabwe.

South Africa also helped some countries on the continent to set up institutions, such as the Independent Electoral Commission, while participating in election-observation missions, establishing functional civil services and using South Africa's experience in post-conflict and reconstruction and development programmes.

South Africa responded to a call made by Mali, Niger, Mauritania and Chad in the Sahel region in the wake of the humanitarian crisis facing them and donated products and materials that were directly requested by these countries.

## Relations with southern Africa

### Angola

South Africa and Angola continue to work together in maintaining peace, stability, regional integration and the promotion of the SADC Agenda. Both countries are still part of respectively the SADC Troika and the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Troika.

Angola is one of South Africa's major trading partners in Africa with almost 90% of Angolan exports to South Africa being petroleum-related products.

In July 2012, South Africa and Angola, through the Regional Spatial Development Initiative Programme (RSDIP) and the Industrial Development Institute of Angola (IDIA), have signed an agreement on technical cooperation that will stimulate infrastructure development in Angola.

RSDIP is the Department of Trade and Industry's spatial development initiative based at the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA). It is tasked with identifying infrastructure and industrial development opportunities in the SADC region.

In 2012, South Africa also played a meaningful role as part of the SADC Observer Mission during the Angola general elections.

In January 2013, President Zuma visited Angola to review progress in various areas of bilateral cooperation with his counterpart President Jose Eduardo Dos Santos aimed at strengtheing relations with Angola.

### Botswana

South Africa and Botswana enjoy strong historical, economic, social, political and neighbourly relations, which were deepened during South Africa's struggle for liberation.

Botswana's President Ian Khama visited South Africa in October 2010. President Zuma reciprocated with a state visit to Botswana in August 2012, during which the two countries reviewed progress in various areas of bilateral cooperation.

Strong economic ties already exist between the two countries and South Africa remains Botswana's major trading partner. South African companies have a major presence in Botswana and are involved in various sectors, including mining, housing, food and beverages, construction, retail, hotels and leisure, banking and medical services.

South Africa and Botswana signed an agreement establishing the Bi-National Commission (BNC) in August 2012 replacing both the Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation Agreement and the Joint Permanent Commission on Defence and Security. The BNC provides a legal and institutional framework for further cooperation in identified strategic areas. The BNC will assist in elevating the existing cordial bilateral relations between South Africa and Botswana.

### Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC)

Over the past few years, the DRC has evolved as one of South Africa's growing and leading trade partners in the region.

The two countries cooperate in projects covering fields such as the security sector reform, infrastructure development, capacity and institutional building, humanitarian and social matters

In October 2012, President Joseph Kabila Kabange visited South Africa for the Eighth Session of the BNC between South Africa and the DRC, where a wide range of bilateral, regional and international issues were discusssed.

A cooperation agreement between PetroSA and COHYDRO was also signed to establish cooperation in the activities of pre-exploration, exploration, development and production of hydrocarbons for the benefit of both countries.

### Lesotho

Bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Lesotho includes trade and investment, security, energy, transport, agriculture, tourism and water.

With South Africa being Lesotho's only neighbour, the economies of the two countries are interdependent. South African companies have a significant presence in Lesotho and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, retail, hotels and leisure, banking, and medical servic

The two countries recently agreed on the construction of Phase 2 of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project. The project has been in operation for over 20 years and supplies South Africa with about 780 million cubic meters of water per year. When fully operational, Phase 2 of the project will substantially increase the volume of water supplied to South Africa.

In October 2012, Lesotho's Prime Minister Motsoahae Thomas Thabane paid an official visit to South Africa in the context of promoting the African Agenda, strengthening bilateral relations between the two countries and increasing trade and investment.

### Malawi

When South Africa established formal diplomatic relations with Malawi in 1967 under the previous government, it was the first time such relations were established with an independent African country.

In May 2007, a Joint Commission for Cooperation Agreement was signed to establish a structured framework for bilateral cooperation between the two countries. The first session was held in June 2008 in Blantyre and the second in Pretoria in September 2012.

Malawi's President Joyce Banda paid two visits to South Africa shortly after taking office in April 2012, indicating a desire to increase bilateral interaction.

In 2011, Malawi was South Africa's ninth-

largest export destination in Africa and seventh within the SADC region. Major South African companies have a presence in Malawi.

In 2012, South Africa agreed to extend a loan of US$35 million to Malawi to help with the availability of fuel in that country, following a meeting between President Zuma and Malawian President Banda.

### Mozambique

Relations between South Africa and Mozambique have their historic origin as far back as 1928 when South Africa and Portugal entered into a convention which regulated labour, transport and commercial matters between South Africa and the then Portuguese colony of Mozambique.

Since the advent of democracy in South Africa in 1994, and peace in Mozambique, the two countries have strengthened their relations in especially the area of economic cooperation and investment.

In July 1994, they entered into the Agreement for a Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation resulting in the implementation of multi-billion rand economic projects, including the Maputo Development Corridor and the trilateral Spatial Development Initiative with Swaziland.

South Africa's mines have over many decades employed substantial numbers of Mozambican miners, resulting in the repatriation of deferred payment of salaries, which formed a valuable source of income for the Mozambican economy.

### Namibia

The economies of South Africa and Namibia are interlinked and South Africa remains one of Namibia's major trading partners.

Namibia imports 80% of its consumables from South Africa. South African companies have a large presence in Namibia and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, hotels and leisure, banking, and medical services.

South Africa and Namibia enjoy close cooperation in a number of areas. This was further enhanced by the upgrading of the Heads of State Economic Bilateral Meeting to a fully fledged BNC in November 2012. The BNC, coordinated by the respective ministries of international relations, is the main instrument used for the coordination of strategic cooperation in various fields of mutual interest.

In November 2012, Namibian President Hifikepunye Pohamba paid a two-day state visit to South Africa to discuss key priority areas such as trade and investment, energy, public works, defence and security, water and environment, transport, science and technology, and agriculture.

### Swaziland

The Kingdom of Swaziland and South Africa share common borders and have very strong common cultural links that date back to pre-colonial times. Formal relations between South Africa and Swaziland date back to 27 December 1984 at trade representative level. Since South Africa's re-entry to the Commonwealth, relations have been conducted at high-commissioner level.

Both countries are members of key sub-regional, regional and international organisations, including the Sacu, the SADC, the AU, the Commonwealth and the UN.

A bilateral agreement between Swaziland and South Africa provides a mechanism for the two countries to cooperate in areas of mutual benefit in ensuring that the healthy relations are maintained and further developed.

### Tanzania

South Africa established formal diplomatic relations with Tanzania in 1994, immediately after attaining its freedom. The bilateral relations have been characterised by high-level interaction between the two countries aimed at consolidating and strengthening political, economic and social cooperation.

President, Jakaya Mrisho Kikwete paid a state visit to South Africa in July 2011, when an agreement on the establishment of a BNC was signed, thereby transforming the existing Presidential Economic Commission (PEC).

South Africa is one of the top 10 major investors in Tanzania and accounts for approximately 10% of total investment in Tanzania. South African exports are concentrated predominantly in the areas of manufacturing, including machinery, mechanical appliances, paper, rubber products, vehicles, iron and steel, services and technology.

In July 2012, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe visited Tanzania to participate in the OR Tambo Annual Educational Tour. The purpose of the tour was to carry forward the legacy of the Solomon Mahlangu Freedom College that stands as a heritage institution embodying much of South Africa's history in exile.

The Solomon Mahlangu Freedom College is primarily known as an educational institution that was established by the African National Congress (ANC) to cater for the educational needs of South Africa's young people who were forced to live in exile in the years of the liberation struggle.

### Zambia

South Africa and Zambia maintain solid bilateral relations cemented during the period of the struggle against apartheid.

Formal relations were established in May 1992 with the opening of representative offices. South Africa opened its office in Lusaka in October 1992, while Zambia reciprocated in June 1993. Full diplomatic relations were established on 10 May 1994. Upon South Africa's return to the Commonwealth, relations with Zambia have been conducted at the level of high commission.

There is solid economic cooperation between the two countries as evidenced by the presence of several South African companies in Zambia. Improved cooperation in a variety of areas such as air services and infrastructural development present economic opportunities to the South African private sector and parastatals.

Since 2009, Zambia has ranked consistently as a third destination of South African exports in the SADC region.

In 2012, the Department of Trade and Industry participated with 18 South African companies in the Copperbelt Agriculture, Mining and Commercial Show held anually in Kitwe, Zambia. The department and South African companies started participating in the show in 2009.

### Zimbabwe

South Africa and Zimbabwe have a common and long history of regional affiliation and cultural ties. The people of Zimbabwe have played a significant historical role in support of South Africa's liberation struggle against apartheid.

In 1980, the apartheid government severed official diplomatic ties with Zimbabwe when it gained independence. However, in 1994, the bilateral relations between South Africa and Zimbabwe were normalised, with the establishment of full diplomatic relations. Since then, numerous official visits have taken place between leaders of the two countries.

Zimbabwe is one of South Africa's main trade partners in Africa and several South African companies are operating in Zimbabwe in sectors such as mining, tourism, agriculture, banking, manufacturing and retail.

In 2011, South African exports to Zimbabwe amounted to approximately R15,5 billion, placing Zimbabwe among the country's top five trading partners.

### Uganda

Relations between South Africa and Uganda date back to the time of the struggle against apartheid when Uganda provided support to and solidarity with the South African liberation movement.

Bilateral cooperation between the countries include trade and investment, defence and security, agriculture, water and environmental affairs, social development, public works and science and technology.

In November 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane co-chaired the inaugural session of the South Africa-Ugandan Joint Commission for Cooperation with the Minister of Foreign Affairs of Uganda, Mr Sam Kutesa.

The countries signed an agreement on

water and environmental resources, as well as memoranda of understanding on transport and defence cooperation respectively.

In view of the country's solid economic performance, Uganda is regarded as an important trading partner in East Africa. In 2011, South African exports to Uganda amounted to R1,26 billion and imports from Uganda to R50,98 million.

South African companies have a large presence in Uganda and are involved in various sectors such as construction, retail, hospitality, banking, insurance, information technology, communications, and energy.

### Kenya

South Africa and Kenya occupy key roles in their respective regions on the continent. The two countries re-established official relations in 1992 after a break of 29 years.

The South African diplomatic mission, originally started during November 1991, was accorded diplomatic privileges and immunities on 8 May 1992. Relations were upgraded to full diplomatic status on 12 April 1994.

In December 2012, South Africa and Kenya formed the South Africa Kenya Business Association, to reduce the trade deficit between the two countries. Two years previously, they signed an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation and a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on agriculture.

### Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia were revived in 1995, when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa. The two countries have already entered into a number of bilateral agreements to establish a regulatory framework to facilitate political, economic and social interaction.

An agreement on the avoidance of double taxation, as well as a general cooperation agreement between South Africa and Ethiopia was signed in March 2004. The umbrella agreement provides for the establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission that will meet every two years.

Relations between the two countries received a boost when they met for their second Joint Ministerial Commission in Ethiopia in April 2012. Trade between the two countries is standing at R302 million and is growing.

### Eritrea

South Africa and Eritrea established diplomatic relations in March 1995, and both countries have already established embassies in each other's capitals.

Exports to Eritrea from South Africa in 2010 amounted to R202,983 million, while imports from Eritrea amounted to R1,044 million.

A South African business delegation visited Eritrea in July 2012, while Minister Nkoana-Mashabane hosted her Eritrean counterpart Osman Saleh Mohammed in August 2012 in Cape Town. They discussed issues of mutual interest, as well as political developments on the continent.

## Indian Ocean islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with countries in the Indian Ocean islands remain strong.

Bilateral relations have been strengthened since 1994, especially in trade and investments, culture, sport and recreation. There has also been progress in finalising the General Cooperation Agreement, as well as agreements in such areas as education, scientific and technical cooperation, shipping and maritime activities, environment and tourism, as well as social development.

### Madagascar

Deputy Minister Fransman played a prominent role as Special Envoy of the President in Madagascar, especially during South Africa's term as chair of the SADC Organ Troika on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation.

One of the positive developments was the signing of a road map to guide Madagascar in its return to constitutional normalcy. South Africa handed the chair of the Troika over to Tanzania on 16 August 2012.

In March 2012, South Africa handed over

humanitarian aid to Madagascar in response to the devastation caused by the recent cyclone Giovanna and tropical storm Irina.

### Comoros

South Africa and the Comoros have had official relations since 1993. South Africa, as the AU-mandated coordinator of the countries of the region on the Comoros, is facilitating and closely monitoring the transition process.

Bilateral relations were strengthened with the signing of the General Cooperation Agreement in June 2012.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation also hosted the launch of the Donor Roundtable for Comoros in September 2012.

### Mauritius

Relations between South Africa and Mauritius were formalised in 1992 with the establishment of representative offices in both countries. Full diplomatic relations were established in 1994. Since South Africa's return to the Commonwealth, relations have been conducted at the level of high commission.

Key bilateral agreements have been signed between the two countries and are being implemented. These include the Cultural Agreement, the Agreement for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and Fiscal Evasion, an MoU on Economic Cooperation, an MoU on Cooperation in the Area of Social Development, the Agreement on Bilateral Cooperation in the Areas of Sport and Recreation and the Agreement for the Promotion and Reciprocal Protection of Investments.

### Seychelles

After many years of one-party rule in the Seychelles, President James Michel is making great strides to enhance democracy in the country. Both the previous presidential elections in May 2011 and parliamentary elections in September 2011 were declared free and fair by the respective SADC election observer missions.

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with Seychelles. South African companies involved in the construction of luxury hospitality resorts in Seychelles have invested more than US$6 billion in this sector, with South Africans representing the bulk of the buyers.

## Relations with central Africa

### Gabon

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Gabon were established in 1992. A legal framework was created through the signing of a cooperation agreement, and further agreements have since been signed.

Gabon served as a non-permanent member of the UNSC from 2011 to 2012.

### Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Diplomatic relations between São Tomé and Príncipe and South Africa were established in May 1994.

South Africa and São Tomé share the same values, especially a dedication to constitutional democracy and good governance.

Relations between the two countries were strengthened in September 2011, when Deputy President Motlanthe renewed the bilateral relations and solidarity between them.

### Republic of the Congo

South Africa formalised diplomatic relations with the Republic of the Congo (also known as Congo-Brazzaville) in 1993, and the two countries still enjoy sound bilateral relations.

The two countries have agreements regarding economic cooperation, maritime transport, and arts and culture, which build on important work already underway in areas such as health and defence.

South Africa is also keen to participate in the development of the agricultural sector in the Republic of the Congo.

Following the explosion of an ammunition dump in Brazzaville in March 2012, a payment of approximately €11 million was made towards the Republic of the Congo from the African Renaissance Fund for emergency relief. This assistance was widely publicised

in the Republic of the Congo, and favourably received by the country's people.

### Equatorial Guinea

Diplomatic relations between Equatorial Guinea and South Africa were established in May 1993.

In February 2013, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Ms Elizabeth Thabethe, visited Equatorial Guinea to explore business opportunities and increase trade and investment.

Targeted sectors included agro-processing, infrastructure, electro-technical, and capital and mining equipment. Minister Thabethe was joined by a business delegation comprising representatives from 13 South African companies. The visit was a follow-up to a state visit by President Teodore Nguema Mbasogo to South Africa in 2011, where the two countries sought to establish and strengthen bilateral ties.

### Cameroon

Diplomatic relations between the republics of South Africa and Cameroon date back to April 1994.

South African companies that have invested in Cameroon include MTN Cameroon, Tiger Brands Chococam, Safmarine, SAA, Multichoice and Blue Finance. A South African company, BrobonFinex, invested in the Cameroon tea estates when they were privatised in 1999.

Cameroon is a member of the AU, has adopted Nepad programmes and subscribes to the MDGs. In pursuit of South Africa's regional economic integration and developmental agenda for the African continent, Cameroon has been identified as a strategic partner.

### Central African Republic (CAR)

South Africa has enjoyed full diplomatic relations with the CAR since August 1993.

In January 2013, 400 South African National Defence Force (SANDF) personnel were deployed to the CAR as part of South Africa's efforts to bring about peace and stability in the region. The SANDF assisted with capacity-building of the CAR Defence Force and also assisted the country with the planning and implementation of the disarmament, demobilisation and reintegration processes.

### Chad

Official relations between South Africa and the Republic of Chad were established in October 1994. South Africa has a representative office in N'djamena with the South African High Commissioner to Yaoundé, Cameroon, being accredited to Chad on a non-residential basis.

In May 2012, South Africa donated R1 million in response to a request from the International Organisation for Migration in Chad for financial assistance for the humanitarian needs of the Chadian returnees fleeing from Boko Haram in Nigeria.

The African Renaissance Fund also supported a project proposal for food relief to the government of Chad to the value of R20 million, which included maize, sorghum, fortified milk, palm oil and pearl millet.

### Rwanda

Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and Rwanda in May 1995. Cooperation focuses on the post-conflict reconstruction of Rwanda and has extended to the coordination of Nepad on the continent.

In October 2012, South Africa's envoy to Rwanda, George Twala launched the South Africa-Rwanda Business Round Table, which will serve as a forum to promote trade initiatives between the two economies.

During its inaugural seating in Kigali, Ambassador Twala hosted a three-hour interactive meeting in which South African and local investors interacted on possible business prospects in either country.

### Burundi

Since the establishment of diplomatic relations between South Africa and Burundi in June 1995, the two countries have enjoyed excellent relations. In July 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane represented President Zuma at the 50th anniversary of Burundi's independence celebrations. Burundi gained its

independence from Belgium on 1 July 1962.

South Africa's involvement in Burundi is currently focused on strengthening bilateral relations, with a strong emphasis on Burundi's post-conflict reconstruction and development efforts, assistance with the establishment of a truth and reconciliation commission and investigations regarding socio-economic and infrastructure development opportunities.

## Relations with North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa

### Algeria

South Africa and Algeria enjoy excellent relations and have developed a strategic partnership since the establishment of the Presidential BNC in 2001. In May 2010, substantial progress was made during the fifth BNC in various areas of mutual interest, including defence, science and technology, energy and mining, arts and culture, youth, sports and health. The sixth session was expected to take place towards the second half of 2012 or early in 2013.

### Western Sahara

There is good cooperation over the long-standing international dispute of the Western Sahara, including collective support for the AU and UN multilateral efforts in search of an equitable, peaceful and lasting solution to the conflict between the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic and the Kingdom of Morocco.

South Africa remains involved with the issue of the status of Western Sahara and will continue to support the peace efforts of the AU and the UN on that protracted conflict. To this end, South Africa continues to render political support, as well as humanitarian assistance to the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic through the African Renaissance Fund.

The President of the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic visited South Africa for the Global African Diaspora Summit in May 2012.

### Egypt

Since the normalisation of diplomatic relations in 1994, a Joint Bilateral Commission was established in 1995 and the eighth session was held in South Africa in March 2010. Internal political developments in Egypt during 2011 temporarily prevented the ninth session from taking place.

The election in June 2012 of Dr Mohamed Morsy as Egypt's first democratically elected civilian president was welcomed and South Africa continues to support the ongoing democratic and constitutional processes in the country.

In March 2012, Deputy Minister Ebrahim visited Egypt to consolidate bilateral relations between the two countries. South Africa has reaffirmed its commitment to working with Egypt in the country's progress towards democratic rule.

South Africa views Egypt as a strategic partner in Africa at both bilateral and multilateral levels. The two countries have entered into more than 25 bilateral agreements, among which is an MoU on Economic Cooperation signed in August 2009.

The signing of the MoU has led to the creation of investment opportunities for South African businesses in Egypt.

### Tunisia

Relations between South Africa and Tunisia remain cordial and there is a mutual interest in improving trade between the two countries. Cooperation in the areas of health, social development, science and technology, culture and sports has strengthened significantly over the years. South Africa also continues to support the democratic transitional processes in Tunisia.

South Africa is engaging the new leaderships in Tunisia, Egypt, and Libya with a view to strengthening bilateral relations and promoting cooperation on continental and global issues. Among other things, South Africa is ready to share with these countries its experience in transitional justice and constitution-making.

### Libya

Since the 2011 conflict in Libya, South Africa's main thrust for engagement has been at a

multilateral level. As a member of the AUPSC, South Africa was mandated to form part of the AU High Level Panel on Libya to find a peaceful solution to the Libyan conflict.

In December 2011, the Minister of State Security, Dr Siyabonga Cwele, visited Libya and offered South Africa's assistance with the post-conflict reconstruction and development process in the country. The offer was accepted and in February 2012, a delegation of senior officials met in Tripoli to assess and determine South Africa's assistance.

### Morocco

South Africa's official recognition of the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic in September 2004 has strained relations with the Kingdom of Morocco. Morocco subsequently downgraded its representation to the level of a Chargé d' Affaires en titre and South Africa reciprocated. Since then the status quo remains unchanged.

South Africa has maintained a principled position in UN, AU and other international forums on the right to self-determination of the Saharawi people as enshrined in the UN Charter.

### Mauritania

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Mauritania were established in January 1995.

The South African ambassador to Senegal is accredited to Mauritania. The two countries enjoy cordial relations and recenlty signed an MoU on Economic Cooperation.

In March 2012, South Africa was in consultation with Mauritania to assess the country's emergency humanitarian requirements.

South Africa, through the African Renaissance Fund, provided humanitarian assistance to the value of US$4,5 million in the form of cereal to Mauritania following the effects of drought in the Sahel region and the influx of refugees from Mali.

### Côte d'Ivoire

South Africa participated in the peaceful resolution to the political stalemate following the disputed presidential elections held in December 2010 in Côte d'Ivoire. South Africa supported the resolution of the AU taken in March 2011 that President Ouattara is the winner of the elections.

Deputy President Motlanthe attended the inauguration of President Ouattara in May 2011. South Africa has also participated in discussions on Côte d'Ivoire at the UNSC and has supported its resolution on the extension of the mandate of the UN Special Operation in Côte d'Ivoire and the French forces that support it until 13 July 2013.

In accordance with the Bilateral Air Services Agreement between South Africa and Côte d'Ivoire, South African Airways have re-introduced its services to Abidjan with effect from 17 August 2012.

The President of the National Assembly of Côte d'Ivoire, Guillaume Kigbafori Soro attended the ANC Centenary celebration in Bloemfontein in January 2012 while he was Prime Minister of Côte d'Ivoire.

South Africa is committed to working with the government of Côte d'Ivoire in its quest for national unity and reconciliation.

In January 2013, North West Premier Thandi Modise lead a delegation of the provincial government scheduled to meet with ministers from the Côte d'Ivoire delegation, which included the Ministers of the Promotion of Youth, Sport and Recreation, Alain Michel Lobognon and Tourism Roger Kacou.

### Sudan

South Africa and the Republic of the Sudan established diplomatic relations in 1994. In May 2006, the two countries signed an agreement establishing a joint bilateral commission. The commission provides the two countries with a legal framework to cooperate on issues relating to security, economic, political, social and other matters of mutual interest.

South Africa has, since the signing of the Comprehensive Peace Agreement in 2005, been actively supportive of AU Post-Conflict Reconstruction and Development (PCRD) projects throughout Sudan.

South Africa plays a key role in supporting peace in the Sudan through PCRD projects conducted under the umbrella of the AU Ministerial Committee on PCRD of the Sudan, which South Africa currently chairs.

President Zuma visited Sudan in July 2011 when the countries signed an MoU on Agricultural Cooperation. South Africa continues to support the AU negotiations between Sudan and South Sudan over post-independence issues through bilateral engagements with both Sudan and South Sudan.

### South Sudan

South Sudan gained independence in July 2011, following a referendum to break away from the North. President Zuma attended the independence celebrations of South Sudan in July 2011.

South Africa and South Sudan signed an agreement establishing bilateral relations in September 2011. The agreement is expected to lay the basis for the conclusion of other agreements, particularly economic and trade-related frameworks, aimed at promoting two-way trade and investment between South Africa and South Sudan.

The two countries have subsequently upgraded the missions in their respective capitals to fully fledged embassies. More than 1 600 government officials from South Sudan have been trained by South Africa to date as part of a capacity-building programme within the context of the AU Post-conflict Reconstruction and Development (PCRD) .

South Africa's ongoing support to the AU negotiations between Sudan and South Sudan over post-independence issues was illustrated by the various engagements with senior Sudanese and South Sudanese officials to discuss the negotiation process.

### Somalia

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane invited Somali's Foreign Minister, Abdullahi Haji Hassan Mohamed, to visit South Africa in March 2012 to discuss ways of strengthening cooperation. The two countries subsequently signed an agreement on the establishment of diplomatic relations. This agreement marked the beginning of a process of increased cooperation between the two countries in line with a commitment from South Africa to support Somalia with capacity-building.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane announced that South Africa would set aside funds to provide capacity- and institution-building, socio-economic support, and specified training in key government sectors.

South Africa also pledged an amount of R100 million towards projects that would support the post-conflict reconstruction and development of Somalia.

In January 2013, South Africa pledged its support for Somalia's new government and the country on its road towards a prosperous and stable democracy.

In September 2012, the African Union Commission Chairperson and former South African Minister of Home Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, received the United Nations' South-South Award for Global Leadership. The second Annual South-South Awards Ceremony took place in New York during the High-Level Segment of the 67th Session of the UN General Assembly.

The event, which was hosted by the Prime Minister of Antigua and Barbuda, attracted more than 20 serving and former heads of state.

Following the success of the 2011 event, which saw the award going to the President of Tanzania among others, the 2012 award focused on e-government and tourism.

### Liberia

South Africa and Liberia established formal diplomatic relations in January 1997. The Liberian government established a resident mission in Pretoria in October 1997, while the South Africa government opened its resident embassy in Monrovia in October 2010.

South Africa is considering draft agreements on general cooperation, trade, the avoidance of double taxation, protection of investment and a draft MoU on economic cooperation.

It is expected that agreements of this nature

will substantially strengthen political, economic and social cooperation between the two countries.

### Nigeria

Nigeria is considered one of South Africa's most important partners in Africa in pursuing the vision of African renewal. As two of the strongest economies in Africa, cooperation between the two countries is pivotal to the growth of the continent.

In May 2012, Deputy President Motlanthe hosted the Vice-President of the Federal Republic of Nigeria, Mohammed Namadi Sambo, on the occasion of the Eighth Session of the BNC between South Africa and Nigeria within the context of consolidating the African Agenda.

In November 2012, *The Financial Times* and Brand South Africa provided the Nigerian High Commission with a platform for dialogue on trade and investment. The purpose of the gathering was to discuss current and future trade and investment relations between the two countries, and to identify areas of opportunity for South African companies in Nigeria.

Nigeria had a non-permanent seat on the UNSC for the period 2011 to 2012.

### Ghana

Diplomatic relations were established between Ghana and South Africa in 1994. The two countries have agreements in the areas of mining, defence, taxation, investment and aviation.

The third meeting of the South Africa-Ghana Permanent Joint Cooperation Commission, which was co-chaired at ministerial level, took place in 2012.

The Permanent Joint Cooperation Commission was preceded by a meeting of senior officials to develop action plans for the implementation of the following MoUs and agreements between South Africa and Ghana:

- MoU on cooperation in the field of information and communications technology (ICT)
- MoU on economic and technical cooperation
- MoU on cooperation in the field of tourism
- MoU on cooperation in the fields of oil and gas
- Agreement on the waiver of visa requirements for holders of diplomatic and official or service passports
- Agreement on defence training and technical cooperation.

### Burkina Faso

South Africa and Burkina Faso established non-resident diplomatic relations in May 1995. In 2006, South Africa established a diplomatic mission in Burkina Faso.

The two countries are working on a draft MoU on Economic and Technical Cooperation; and a draft Agreement between the Chamber of Commerce and Industry of Burkina Faso and Business Unity South Africa.

### Benin

Since diplomatic relations were established between Benin and South Africa in May 1994, the two countries have maintained good bilateral relations.

A South African delegation from the Department of Defence visited Benin in April 2012 to inaugurate the Joint Defence Committee. The next session of the Joint Defence Committee is scheduled for 2014 in South Africa.

The Department of Trade and Industry led a business delegation to Benin during February 2012, when the two countries inaugurated the Joint Trade and Investment Committee. Aerosun, the IDC and Transnet are involved in projects in Benin.

Transnet is investigating the possibility of participating in maritime transport and railway line projects, as well as port management.

Aerosun and Acsa are involved in the refurbishment of the International Airport of Cotonou, while the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) is participating in hotel construction in Benin.

South Africa and Benin are in the processes of twinning the Port of Cotonou with the Port of Ngqura, whereby Transnet will assist with building capacity and efficiency in the Port of Cotonou. An important aspect of this project is the provision of rail equipment that will help

move minerals from inland Benin to the ports.

In May 2012, President Zuma visited Benin for the meeting of the AU Heads of State and Government Ad-hoc Committee on the election of the members of the AU Commission. The election took place during the summit in Malawi later in 2012.

In September 2012, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Elizabeth Thabethe, visited Benin with the aim of increasing trade and investment between the two countries.

### Republic of Togo

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997, and the two countries maintain good bilateral relations. Togo does not have a resident embassy in South Africa, or any accredited ambassador to Pretoria.

The South African ambassador to Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire is accredited on a non-residential basis to Togo.

President Zuma's Special Envoy, Minister Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, visited Togo in October 2011.

### Cape Verde

South Africa and Cape Verde established diplomatic relations in 1994. South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is accredited as the country's non-resident ambassador to Cape Verde, while the Cape Verdean ambassador to Angola is accredited to South Africa as non-resident ambassador.

Bilateral discussions on a General Co-operation Agreement, establishing a Joint Commission for Cooperation, were started during late 2012 and was expected to be signed in early 2013.

### The Gambia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and The Gambia were established in August 1998. South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is accredited to The Gambia as non-resident ambassador, while the Gambian ambassador to the AU in Addis Ababa is accredited to South Africa as non-resident ambassador.

South Africa and The Gambia maintain honourary consuls and The Gambia is examining the possibility of opening an embassy in Pretoria in the near future.

### Guinea-Conakry

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Guinea were established in February 1995, and both countries maintain resident embassies in their respective capitals.

Following a state visit to Guinea in July 2006, South Africa pledged substantial developmental assistance to Guinea through the African Renaissance Fund.

Subsequently, social developmental projects in the sectors of food security, sanitation and hygiene, infrastructure maintenance and development were implemented.

The Project to Improve Rice and Vegetable Production is widely regarded as highly successful. This project is a trilateral arrangement between South Africa, Vietnam and Guinea.

Other projects, under consideration are focused on matters such as electricity stabilisation, cleaning of the capital and electoral assistance.

### Guinea-Bissau

South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Guinea-Bissau in February 2008. South Africa is a member of the Country-Specific Configuration on Guinea-Bissau with the UN Peace-Building Commission.

As part of this group, South Africa strives to mobilise the international community to contribute to the rebuilding of that country, in both political and economic terms.

The two countries were engaging in various activities to accelerate bilateral interaction when the April 2012 coup d'etat in Bissau led to the suspension of Guinea-Bissau from the AU. Until Guinea-Bissau is readmitted to the AU, all bilateral engagements are suspended.

### Mali

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Mali were established in 1994 with Mali subsequently establishing an embassy in Pretoria in

December 1995. A South African embassy was established in Bamako in November 2002, and the first South African ambassador to Mali was appointed in November 2003.

A meeting of senior officials took place in November 2011, but the accelerated engagement process created by this meeting was interrupted by the March 2012 coup d'etat.

Mali has been suspended by the AU and, until Mali is readmitted, all bilateral engagements are suspended. Nonetheless, South Africa provided R70 million in emergency humanitarian assistance to Mali during 2012. In March 2012, the South African Embassy in Bamako closed owing to unrest in that country.

### Senegal

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Senegal were established in May 1994. Bilateral relations between the two countries are based mainly on the Senegalese government's strong support for the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad, and its strong commitment to promoting democracy and good governance.

Methods to deepen and accelerate bilateral relations between the two countries are being examined, and will be finalised during the Joint Commission of Cooperation that will be held on the eve of the next state visit by President Zuma to Dakar.

### Sierra Leone

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Sierra Leone were established in August 1998.

The South African High Commission in Accra, Ghana, is accredited to Sierra Leone on a non-residential basis, while the Sierra Leonean ambassador in Addis Ababa is accredited to South Africa on a non-residential basis. In 2011, both countries appointed honourary consuls on a reciprocal basis.

In April 2010, South Africa committed financial support to bolstering healthcare services, supplied by a contingent of Cuban doctors and medical experts in Sierra Leone, through the African Renaissance Fund.

The project is expected to run over a period of three years and it is aimed at reinforcing and consolidating South-South cooperation and stengthening relations with Sierra Leone.

### Niger

in November 2011, President Mahamadou Issouffou visited South Africa to consult with President Zuma in.

In 2012, South Africa provided aid to help Niger overcome its drought, food and nutritional insecurity by providing 877 tons of fertiliser, 5 000 litres of biopesticides as well as 12 000 protection kits for workers applying pesticides.

Additionally, South Africa provided 11 000 tons of animal feed for cattle and goats, nine million doses of vaccine PPR for livestock, 103 500 tons of food grains, millet and sorghum and nutritional provisions for children and pregnant women, to cater for approximately 22 000 people.

## Relations with Asia and the Middle East

### The People's Republic of China

South Africa is China's largest trading partner in Africa and the bilateral trade volume accounts more than a quarter of China-Africa trade.

In March 2012, Chinese President Hu Jintao visited President Zuma on the sidelines of the Nuclear Security Summit in Seoul. They used the meeting to discuss the development of China-South Africa ties, exchange views on improving cooperation between the two countries and discuss South Africa's new infrastructure plan. China has vast experience in infrastructure-build and was a strategic partner through the conclusion of the Beijing Declaration, which the two had signed in August 2010.

According to the Beijing Declaration, China and South Africa will work together to improve the structure of bilateral trade by encouraging the trade of high value-added manufactured goods and increasing China's investment in South Africa. The two sides will continue to deepen their cooperation in infrastructure

development, including the construction of roads, railways, ports, power plants, airports and housing.

In July 2012, President Zuma visited China to further strengthen relations between the two countries. The visit took place within the context of the Comprehensive Strategic Partnership concluded between South Africa and China in August 2010.

President Zuma also attended the opening ceremony of the fifth Forum on China-Africa Cooperation (FOCAC). The FOCAC is a collective consultation and dialogue mechanism between China and African countries launched in 2000.

China and African countries have pledged to ensure the full implementation of the proposals enshrined in the Beijing Action Plan 2013 – 2015 of the FOCAC.

South Africa assumed co-chairmanship of the FOCAC partnership from Egypt, on behalf of the African side, for the next six years. The forum is one of the most strategic partnerships between Africa and its development partnerships. The sixth Ministerial Conference of the FOCAC will be held in Johannesburg, South Africa in 2015.

## Central and East Asia

### Japan

In 2012, Japan and South Africa celebrated 102 years of official relations.

Japan is South Africa's third-largest trading partner with the two countries cooperating in various fields such as training and skills development.

In March 2013, Deputy Minister Fransman led a South African delegation to the fifth Tokyo International Conference on African Development in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

The conference is a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan that was launched in 1993 to serve as a consultative forum for development assistance to Africa.

### Republic of Korea

Formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Republic of Korea were established in December 1992. Increasingly the focus of the bilateral relationship is on economic and business links.President Zuma travelled to Seoul, in March 2012 to participate in the two-day Nuclear Security Summit, which was a follow-up to talks held in Washington in April 2010.

The main purpose of the Seoul Nuclear Security Summit was to review the progress made since the first summit and to focus on facilitating national measures and international cooperation on nuclear security.

During his visit to Seoul, President Zuma held bilateral talks with his counterparts, including President Lee Myung-bak on issues of mutual interest.

In September 2012, Deputy Minister Ebrahim visited Seoul, where he co-chaired the sixth Policy Consultative Forum with the Republic of Korea Vice Minister Ho-young Ahn.

The forum takes place within the context of promoting the already important bilateral relations and strengthening strategic cooperation between the two countries. It seeks to enhance cooperation in the energy sector, coordinate skills development and training programmes and initiatives, improve cooperation in the multilateral arena, and increase trade and investment.

The Republic of Korea is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia, while South Africa is the Republic of Korea's largest trading partner in Africa. Trade between the two countries encompasses a wide variety of products ranging from minerals to sophisticated high-technology electric products.

### Democratic People's Republic of Korea

South Africa established diplomatic relations with the Democratic People's Republic of Korea in August 1998.

Currently, the South African ambassador to China is also accredited to the Democratic People's Republic of Korea's Capital, Pyongyang, while the Democratic People's Republic of Korea established an embassy in Pretoria in 2002.

## Central Asia

There is no South African representation in Uzbekistan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, and Kyrgystan, but the South African ambassador in Turkey is accredited to each of these countries on a non-resident basis.

Kazakhstan and South Africa established diplomatic relations in March 1992. The South African Embassy in Kazakhstan was opened in December 2003 in Almaty, and was later relocated to Astana in February 2008.

In January 2012, Mr Shirish Soni was appointed Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary of the Republic of South Africa to the Republic of Kazakhstan.

### Turkey

In February 2012, South Africa and Turkey signed a declaration to boost relations in areas such as infrastructure development, mining and energy, trade and economic relations.

Relations between South Africa and the Republic of Turkey were further strengthened when Deputy President Motlanthe visited Ankara in June 2012, culminating in the establishment of a BNC between the two countries.

The commission will meet every two years and will be co-chaired by the two countries. It will address cooperation between South Africa and Turkey in the fields of politics, economics, trade, defence, security, agriculture, minerals, energy, education, tourism, sport and environment.

South Africa's major exports to Turkey comprise mineral products, base metals, machinery and mechanical appliances, electrical equipment, chemical and allied products, vehicles, aircraft, iron and steel, organic chemicals, ores, slag and ash.

## South Asia

South Africa's economic strategy is strongly focused on deepening trade and investment linkages with the South, particularly with countries that offer potential for future growth and where synergies and complementaries in product and technologies exist.

In south Asia, South Africa enjoys cordial relations with India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Afghanistan and the Maldives.

### India

In many respects, South Africa and India share a common vision on a range of global issues and domestic challenges, including the need to address the challenges of poverty, underdevelopment, deepening democracy, protecting human rights and reforming institutions of global governance.

In addition to bilateral cooperation, South Africa and India cooperate on the multilateral level in pursuit of common objectives in institutions and organisations such as the UN, the NAM, the India-Africa Forum, IBSA and BRICS.

South Africa's trade relations with India have flourished since the establishment of full diplomatic relations in 1993. Trade statistics with India continue to reflect the potential that exists for expanding the commercial relationship.

In the context of south Asia, India – South Africa's strategic partner – is by far the largest trading partner of South Africa. In 2011, trade stood at R53,7 billion, with exports from South Africa totaling R24,4 billion and imports from India in the region of R29,2 billion.

South Africa's main exports to India include coal, gold, diamonds and phosphates, while South Africa's main imports include pharmaceuticals, textiles and clothing, spices, machinery and metal products. In the past decade,

South Africa and India are set to reach US$15 billion in trade ahead of their targeted 2014 deadline. India is one of South Africa's top 10 export countries, and is among the top five import countries for South Africa. South African exports to India increased by 21% between 2002 to 2011, while imports from India grew by 28%.

Indian companies that have invested in South Africa include TATA (automobiles and hotels), Mahindra (automobiles), and Sahara Computers.

In the last eight years or so, a number of South African companies, including Sasol, FirstRand, Old Mutual, Acsa, Shoprite, South African Breweries and Nandos, and recently Sanlam, have entered the Indian market.

South Africa's trade with India has increased by 669%.

### Pakistan

Pakistan and South Africa enjoy cordial, bilateral relations. In November 2012, Deputy Minister Ebrahim undertook a working visit to Pakistan, where he addressed the Minister of State for Foreign Affairs, Nawabzada Khan.

South Africa views Pakistan as an important role-player in the international arena and South Africa welcomes the strengthening of democracy in Pakistan. South Africa engages Pakistan via the Joint Commission, the most recent of which was held in mid-2011.

South Africa has identified additional avenues of cooperation regarding law enforcement issues, an Extradition Treaty, an Agreement on Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters, an MoU on Cooperation in Combatting the Illicit Trafficking in Narcotics, Drugs, Psychotropic Substances and Precursor Chemicals.

### Sri Lanka

In March 2012, South Africa and Sri Lanka deepened their relations when Minister Nkoana-Mashabane hosted that country's External Affairs Minister, Gamini Lakshman Peiris for talks in Pretoria.

Bilateral trade between Sri Lanka and South Africa has seen a steady increase in growth in both exports and imports. Between January and December 2011, South Africa's exports to Sri Lanka amounted to R268 million and imports from Sri Lanka amounted to R194 million.

The South African private sector is also becoming involved in Sri Lanka's expanding economy. An example is the announcement of Sun International's US$800 million investment in a new hotel venture in Sri Lanka.

Since the end of the protracted civil war in Sri Lanka in May 2009, South Africa has promoted the need for a meaningful and inclusive political settlement, which will be best achieved through broad consultation and dialogue among all the people of Sri Lanka.

South Africa has also offered to share its experiences in nation-building and reconciliation with Sri Lanka. The end of the civil war has led to opportunities for the exploration of trade and investment cooperation, including the tourism industry.

### Banglasdesh and Nepal

Bangladesh offers many opportunities to South Africa in the areas of rural development, microfinancing, agriculture and textiles. Bangladesh also offers a substantial market for South Africa products.

Although still undergoing a democratic transformation process, for which the drafting of a new Constitution is central, Nepal also offers South Africa opportunities for cooperation. In addition to trade, South Africa has offered to share its experiences in nation-building and reconciliation with Nepal.

## South-East Asia

Strengthening South-South relations remains an important pillar of South African's foreign policy, especially in Asia, a region that has surpassed the EU as the country's biggest trading partner.

South Africa has resident diplomatic missions in six of the 11 countries in South-East Asia, namely Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, Thailand and Vietnam.

The remaining five countries – Brunei Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao PDR, Myanmar and Timor-Leste – are covered on a non-residential basis. Only three out of the 11 countries in the region – Brunei Darussalam, Cambodia and Lao PDR – do not have resident missions in South Africa.

South Africa's bilateral trade with the 11 countries in the region has been growing consistently over the past 16 years, reaching R64,7 billion in 2011.

Throughout 2011, South Africa has worked closely with countries such as Thailand, Vietnam and Indonesia to address some of the impediments to market access experienced by a number of South African exporters, particularly in the area of agriculture and agro-processed products.

### Thailand

In August 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane attended the UN Climate Change Conference in Thailand.

Following the conference in Bangkok, the Minister paid a courtesy call on the Prime Minister of Thailand, Yingluck Shinawatra, and held bilateral talks with her Thai counterpart, Dr Surapong Towichukchaikul, reviewing the scope of relations between South Africa and Thailand and identifying possible further areas of cooperation to deepen and strengthen bilateral relations.

In 2011, Thailand was South Africa's biggest trading partner in the region with trade reaching almost R20 billion, followed by Malaysia (R16,5 billion), Indonesia (R11,6 billion) and Singapore (R10,9 billion).

### Indonesia

Relations with Indonesia date back to the country's pre-1994 support for the anti-apartheid movement. In October 2012, South Africa and Indonesia agreed to enhance bilateral cooperation and will conduct a joint study to explore trade opportunities.

The agreement includes market access and import regulation, the designation of ports of entry for imports of fresh produce, the introduction of an import licensing regime for imports of horticultural products and sectoral cooperation such as trade promotion and capacity-building for small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs), with particular interest in jewellery design and special economic zones.

Indonesia proposed cooperation under the New Asia-Africa Strategic Partnerships (NAASP) framework. Under this cooperation, Indonesia will work with South Africa to assist other countries in Africa as a form of solidarity.

The NAASP has been co-chaired by South Africa and Indonesia since its establishment in 2005. Both countries are active members of important organisations such as the NAM and the G20, and as such they are working together closely in promoting the ideals of South-South cooperation.

### Malaysia

South Africa's political and economic relations with Malaysia are growing, marked in particular by substantial Malaysian investments in South Africa and continuing offers to train South Africans in a variety of fields. Relations with the Philippines are warm and cordial, with bilateral trade growing annually and substantial South African investment in the country's gold mining and food and beverage sectors.

### Singapore

Political relations with Singapore are warm and substantive, with a steady exchange of high-level visits over the years.

Being well-known as a centre of excellence, Singapore makes a significant contribution to capacity building and human resource development in South Africa through the Singapore Cooperation Programme.

### Vietnam

Political relations with Vietnam are strong, with a substantial exchange of high-level visits between the two countries over the past few years, as evidenced by the visit to Vietnam by Deputy President Motlanthe in October 2010 and the return visit to South Africa in May 2011 by the Vietnamese Vice-President, Mrs Nguyễn Thi Doan.

The protection of South Africa's wildlife, particularly the rhino, has been high on the agenda of discussions with Vietnam.

South Africa and Vietnam have agreed to strengthen their relations and cooperation, especially in politics, economy, science and technology, culture and education.

In August 2012, progress was made at the second meeting of the South Africa-Vietnam Partnership Forum, where the entire scope of bilateral relations between the two countries was reviewed and strengthened. Discussions between the two countries took place in the ambit of the bilateral agreement concerning the establishment of an Inter-Governmental Partnership Forum for Economic, Trade, Scientific, Technical and Cultural Cooperation, which was concluded between the two countries in 2004.

The two countries expressed their shared concern on illegal trafficking, particularly around rhino horns, and agreed to work together to address the issue of protecting endangered species.

Other areas of cooperation would include water affairs and justice matters, specifically further negotiation with the aim of concluding an agreement on an extradition treaty.

### Brunei-Darus-Salam, Cambodia,Lao PDR, and Tomor-Leste

South Africa's relations with Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao PDR and Myanmar are cordial and friendly. Political relations with Timor-Leste are cordial and friendly.

### Myanmar

During September 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane undertook a one-day working visit to the Republic of the Union of Myanmar – the first visit by a South African government minister to that country.

The objective of the visit was to join the international community in welcoming the democratisation process and political reform in Myanmar. Minister Nkoana-Mashabane used the occasion to express the South African government's support for a peaceful, prosperous and democratic Myanmar, as the country continues to address its positive political transformation in an inclusive manner.

Like the rest of the international community, South Africa welcomed the political reform process underway in Myanmar and supported all efforts aimed at opening up the political space for participation by all the people of Myanmar through the political parties of their choice.

In this regard, South Africa has offered to share its experience in national reconciliation with Myanmar, during the historic visit to Nay Pyi Taw by Minister Nkoana-Mashabane in September 2012.

### Philippines

At the end of September 2012, Deputy Minister Ebrahim paid a working visit to the Philippines to strengthen relations with that country, in the areas of trade, investment, tourism and culture.

The South African government established formal diplomatic relations with the Philippines in November 1993.

The Philippine Embassy in Pretoria was established in June 1994. South Africa, in turn, established an embassy in Manila in December 2004.

Relations between South Africa and the Philippines are strong both on the bilateral and multilateral levels. Both countries are influential in organisations of the South, including the NAM and the G77+China.

A Memorandum of Agreement on the establishment of a bilateral consultative forum was signed between the two countries.

On the economic front, efforts have been undertaken by both countries to enhance bilateral trade and commercial relations.

In January 2013, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation hosted the inaugural meeting of the South Africa-Philippines Bilateral Consultative Forum.

The meeting came after the signing of the agreement between the two countries on the sidelines of the 67th session of the UNGA in September 2012, in New York, USA.

The forum serves as an instrument for structured bilateral consultations with the aim of advancing cooperation between the two countries.

## Australasia and the Pacific islands

### Australia

South Africa and Australia have a history of productive cooperation across a range of sectors and issues, including fisheries protection, mining, law enforcement, sport, tourism, education and training (in fields such as ICT, public administration, mining and resources management), defence relations and customs cooperation.

Australia is the sixth-largest export destination for South African goods. The majority of goods exported from South Africa to Australia are finished goods. Exports of high quality passenger motor vehicles, mainly BMW 3 Series,

Mercedes and Volkswagen, head the list.

The number of Australian tourists who arrived in South Africa by December 2011 stood at 103 506.

With its renewed focus on Africa, Australia has committed to work together with the African continent to address challenges of development in areas such human resource development, mining and resources management and infrastructure development.

In September 2012, Australia hosted the Africa-Australia Infrastructure Conference that was aimed, among other things, at exploring new business opportunities and strengthening cooperation in infrastructure development on the African continent.

South Africa and Australia have also worked closely together for the benefit of third countries (e.g. Zimbabwe) in areas such as sanitation and revenue collection.

South Africa and Australia work closely together at a multilateral level in organisations and institutions such as the Commonwealth (particularly on those issues that affect the African continent), the UN and the Cairns Group.

### New Zealand

Historically, the political relations between South Africa and New Zealand go back many years during the anti-apartheid movement in which New Zealand played a leading role in that part of the world.

At a bilateral level, South Africa and New Zealand enjoy close cooperation in business, tourism, agriculture, disarmament, fisheries, environmental protection, and indigenous people and human rights issues.

In sport, South Africa and New Zealand have strong ties – especially in rugby and cricket, but in recent years also soccer.

In 2009 and 2010, South Africa hosted the Confederations Cup and the FIFA World Cup™, respectively in which the New Zealand national soccer team, the All Whites, participated.

In September 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe visited New Zealand to attend the opening ceremony of Rugby World Cup. During this visit, South Africa and New Zealand signed the Films Co-Production Agreement.

The two countries enjoy productive cooperation at a multilateral level. Both countries are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote the southern hemisphere's views in international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation.

The two countries also enjoy a close working relationship within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Indian Ocean fisheries, and interact regularly within the context of the World Trade Organisation and the Cairns Group.

### Fiji

Diplomatic relations with the Republic of the Fiji Islands were established in November 1994 and the two countrties have since enjoyed cordial and friendly relations.

In July 2011, the Prime Minister of Fiji, Mr Frank Bainimarama, accompanied by the Minister of Foreign Affairs and International Cooperation of Fiji, Ratu Inoke Kubuabola visited South Africa to officially open the High Commission of Fiji in Pretoria.

## Relations with the Middle East

South Africa's relationship with the Gulf States has deepened significantly since the mid-1990s. Not only is the Gulf the source of more than half of South Africa's crude oil requirement but it has also become a major market for South African products, a source of investment and home to a sizeable South African expatriate community.

### United Arab Emirates (UAE)

South African companies have made a major contribution to the development of the UAE economy and over 200 of them have representative offices in the UAE.

The potential for greater interaction between the two countries is enhanced through the 56 weekly flights between South Africa and the UAE. South Africa and the UAE have signed five bilateral agreements, which provide the framework for cooperation.

### Iran

South Africa and Iran have enjoyed positive bilateral engagements since the re-establishment of diplomatic relations in May 1994.

In 1995, South Africa and Iran established a JBC to allow for a high-level review of existing bilateral relations and to consider ways in which these could be expanded.

The JBC, chaired by South Africa's Minister of International Relations and Cooperation and Iran's Minister of Economic Affairs and Finance, meets alternatively in South Africa and Iran biannually. The JBC is regarded as one of South Africa's most successful and longest-running bilateral mechanisms. Several South African companies are involved in major projects in Iran.

### Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised during a visit by former President Nelson Mandela in November 1994. Two missions were established in the Kingdom during March of 1995: an embassy with a chargé d' affaires in the capital Riyadh and a consulate-general in the commercial capital of Jeddah.

The consulate-general is also responsible for looking after the needs of South African pilgrims performing Hajj and Umrah duties in the holy cities of Makkah al Mukarramah and Medina al Munawarra.

Saudi Arabia is a fellow G20 member and remains South Africa's largest supplier of crude oil.

### Qatar

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the State of Qatar were established in 1994, strengthened by official visits to Qatar by former presidents Nelson Mandela and Thabo Mbeki, as well as by visits of several Cabinet ministers.

The Emir of Qatar, Sheikh Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani, paid a state visit to South Africa in May 2002, which led to South Africa opening an embassy in Doha, the capital of Qatar, in September 2002.

Qatar opened its embassy in Pretoria in January 2003.

In January 2012, President Zuma visited Qatar it promote peace in North Africa with a specific focus on Libya.

Further cooperation between South Africa and Qatar, as well as peace and the security situation in the Middle East dominated the talks with the Emir of Qatar, Sheikh Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani.

In terms of trade relations, Qatar has traditionally enjoyed a healthy trade surplus, primarily due to its export of crude oil and petrochemicals to South Africa.

### Kuwait

South Africa and Kuwait concluded diplomatic relations in 1995. Kuwait opened an embassy in Pretoria in 1996 and South Africa reciprocated in 1998.

Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made major multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the JSE Stock Exchange.

### Oman

In March 2012, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, Dr Lindiwe Sisulu, signed a defence cooperation memorandum with Oman's Minister of Defence, Sayyid bin Saud bin Harib al-Busaidi.

The MoU, signed at the Castle in Cape Town, includes an agreement on technical cooperation, an agreement to share lessons around peacekeeping operations and the sale of military hardware to Oman by South Africa.

Oman was the first country in the Gulf to acquire military hardware from South Africa, and Dr Sisulu encouraged her counterpart for Oman to continue doing so.

The signing of the agreement follows the state visit by President Zuma to Oman in November 2011.

Oman and South Africa have enjoyed good relations since 1995. In 2002, an Embassy was

established in Muscat and in 2003, the Oman Embassy was set up in Pretoria.

### Iraq

Iraq established diplomatic relations with South Africa in August 1998.

In November 2012, the Minister of Trade and Industry, Dr Rob Davies, and his Iraqi counterpart, Khairullah Hasan Babakr, signed an agreement aimed at strengthening economic ties between the two countries by exploring trade potential in various sectors.

Trade between South Africa and Iraq was valued at R197 million in 2011.

In 2013, the Department of Trade and Industry sent a delegation to Iraq comprising government officials and the private sector on an International Trade Initiative.

The department undertook to seek ways to assist Iraqis with the challenge of obtaining South African visas, as there is no embassy in Iraq. Iraqi citizens get their visas in Jordan.

Trade relations between South Africa and Iraq was generally conducted through intermediaries and it was envisaged that from the signed agreement, a guideline to trade directly would be formulated.

### Syria

The situation in Syria remains fragile. In April 2012, the South African government welcomed the entering into effect of the ceasefire arrangement in Syria.

South Africa supports the call made by the Joint Special Envoy regarding the urgent deployment of a UN Observer Mission to verify and monitor the ceasefire. South Africa, as a non-permanent member of the UNSC, is participating in discussions on a resolution authorising the deployment of the UN Advanced Monitoring team.

South Africa's approach is that the UNSC should adopt a balanced resolution providing the necessary support for the Joint Special Envoy's efforts.

### Arab-Israel peace process

South Africa supports peace between Israel and the Arab world, which must involve an end to the illegal occupation by Israel of Arab land, namely in Palestine, Syria and Lebanon, which has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region over the last six decades.

South Africa does not have a policy aimed at boycotting Israel, but discouraged people from visiting Israel because of the latter's continued occupation of Palestinian land.

A joint media briefing was held in August 2012, following the second meeting of the South Africa-Vietnam Partnership Forum that was co-chaired by Deputy Minister Ebrahim and his Vietnamese counterpart, Le Luong Min, to discuss the issue of continued occupation.

## Relations with the Americas

### United States of America (USA)

Formal relations between South Africa and the USA go back as far as 1789, when the USA opened a consulate in Cape Town. Cordial relations between the two countries deteriorated during the apartheid years and in 1986, the US Congress introduced wide-ranging sanctions against South Africa in terms of the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986. However, with the launch of South Africa's democratisation process in 1990, relations gradually improved, and were normalised with South Africa's first fully democratic elections in April 1994.

Since then, numerous state visits by leaders of the two countries have served to strengthen bilateral relations between them.In July 2012, Deputy President Motlanthe concluded a working visit to the US, where he attended the International AIDS Conference in Washington DC.

In August 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane hosted the US Secretary of State, Ms Hillary Clinton, for the second meeting of the South Africa-US Strategic Dialogue.

The inaugural South Africa-US business summit took place at the same time to strengthen economic cooperation between the two countries. The US is South Africa's third-largest trading partner and a significant

investor. In turn, South Africa remains the US's largest trading partner in Africa, with exports totalling US$7 billion in 2011 – up by 30% compared to 2010.

The US increasingly recognises South Africa's growing influence in world affairs such as its membership of BRICS and its influential role in the AU.

Recent initiatives:

- the signing of a US$2-billion declaration of intent between the Export-Import Bank of the USA and South Africa's IDC to provide credit guarantees to stimulate development of South Africa's renewable energy sector
- the establishment of a Global Disease Detection Centre in South Africa, co-directed by the USA Centre for Disease Control and South Africa's National Institute for Communicable Diseases
- the USA Agency for International Development (USAID) credit guarantee facility which will make up to R1,2 billion (US$150 million) available to more than 300 SMMEs and help create over 20 000 jobs in South Africa;
- the launch of the School Capacity Innovation Program (SCIP), a new R60-million (US$7,5-million) public-private partnership between USAID, the ELMA Foundation and JP Morgan. SCIP was designed in collaboration with the Department of Basic Education to improve teacher quality
- the launch of the US$500-000 Opportunity Grants Program, which will help disadvantaged South African students cover expenses to study in the USA
- a R5,2-million (US$650-000) USAID programme for judicial management and leadership projects that raise awareness of sexual and gender-based violence
- representatives of both governments met in August 2012 to identify mutual areas of interest and strengthen opportunities for cooperation on cyber issues. The United States/South Africa Strategic Dialogue endorses the establishment of a Cyber Working Group as a platform to discuss and take these issues forward.

### Canada

Canada was strict in its application of sanctions against apartheid South Africa, but relations normalised fully in 1994 with the country's first democratic elections. A state visit by then President Nelson Mandela to Canada in September 1998 cemented the good relationship that had developed between the two countries.

Canada has supported South Africa's re-entry into a broad range of multilateral organisations and the two countries consult regularly on important multilateral issues.

Relations between South Africa and Canada are conducted largely within the framework of the annual consultations. This is the primary forum in which issues of mutual interest and concern receive specific focus. The last consultations were held in Ottawa, Canada, in November 2010.

The growth in regular high-level visits in both directions serves to cement and expand the mutually beneficial interaction in all spheres.

Canada's official development assistance to South Africa under the Country Development Programming Framework has three main programme themes, namely strengthening South Africa's service-delivery mechanism; regional cooperation; and mainstreaming (gender, HIV, AIDS and environment). Between 2008 and 2013, Canada's official development assistance to South Africa amounts to R250 million.

The Country Development Programming Framework was due to end in late 2008 but was extended to 2011.

Canada has a long-standing and wide-ranging track record of constructive engagement, both on bilateral and multilateral levels, on the African continent; ranging from peacekeeping and development aid to foreign direct investment.

### Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

In November 2012, Cabinet approved the state's entering into a treaty with Mexico on the extradition and mutual legal assistance in criminal matters. The treaty is to provide for more effective cooperation between South Africa and Mexico in the fight against crime and to provide for the extradition of fugitives between the two countries.

The treaty aims to improve effectiveness of the law enforcement authorities of both countries in the investigation, prosecution and prevention of crime through cooperation and mutual legal assistance in criminal matters.

## Latin America and the Caribbean

### Latin America

The developing countries in Latin America continue to play an important role in international political bodies and formations such as the NAM, the G20 (Brazil and Mexico), BRICS (Brazil), IBSA (Brazil) and the UN. South Africa shared an important platform with countries from the region (Brazil and Colombia) in the UNSC as non-permanent members from 2011 to 2012.

The region had an estimated combined population of 572 million and a total GDP of US$5,4 trillion in 2011. It hosts important global players and bilateral partners such as Brazil (the world's sixth-largest economy with a GDP of US$2,44 trillion), Cuba and Mexico. By the end of 2012, Brazil was expected to surpass France as the fifth-largest economy in the world.

South African business has extensive interests in the region, including SAB Miller, AngloGold Ashanti, Naspers, Denel, Sasol, PetroSA. These relate to exports of capital equipment, intermediary goods and investments as well as a growing presence of South African companies of the service sector establishing in the region.

South Africa's bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean continue to advance the development agenda of the South, and strengthen cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, interregional and multilateral levels. In this regard, the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American and Caribbean countries is of particular importance. South Africa has observer status in Caricom and acts as the region's voice in the G20.

High-level delegations from Latin America and the Caribbean attended the Global African Diaspora Summit hosted by South Africa in May 2012.

Diplomatic interaction with countries in the region was carried out in close alignment with South Africa's domestic strategic priorities.

High level interactions were achieved with like-minded countries in areas of climate change.

### Brazil

Brazil remains a significant player in the multilateral context, particularly regarding the interests of the South. With its like-minded approach to a number of significant issues affecting the developing world, it remains a strategic partner for South Africa. Brazil and South Africa agree on the issue of the reform of the UNSC and the Bretton Woods institutions.

The presidents of South Africa and Brazil met regularly to discuss issues of mutual interest. South Africa maintained the view that the Rio+20 Conference, which took place in Brazil, was sure to keep the issue of sustainable development as a top priority on the agenda of the UN and the international community.

In March 2012, South African enterprises showcased their abilities and experiences gained over the course of hosting the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ at the Investment and Trade Initiative that took place in Brazil.

The importance of promoting these platforms is to showcase the prospects for trade and investment in South Africa, its capabilities and accomplishments in foreign markets. As Brazil's economy continues to flourish, so does their need for resources from Africa, providing a new impetus to the history of African growth.

This was the third investment and trade initiative to be hosted by the Department of Trade

and Industry in Brazil. The initiative, which focuses on South Africa's FIFA World Cup™ legacy, was led by the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Ms Thandi Tobias-Pokolo. It included 45 South African companies from the built environment, construction, aerospace, rail and marine, manufacturing, agro-processing, services and electro-technical sectors.

The aim of the initiative was to foster bilateral partnerships and opportunities for urban development, tourism and economic development of FIFA World Cup™ host cities in 2014.

### Argentina

Cooperation between Argentina and South Africa continue apace in various fields, such as agriculture, forensic anthropology, and biotechnology. An MoU in the Field of Arts and Culture was signed between the two countries.

In November 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane hosted her Argentine counterpart, Foreign Relations and International Trade Minister, Hector Timerman, who was in South Africa for the two-day third session of the South Africa-Argentina BNC.

The links between South Africa and Argentina are strategic and they involve crucial long-term interests.

Moreover, the two countries both wanted to expand their value chains and increase employment, thus profiting from the economies of scale that enlarged markets offer.

In 2011, Argentine exports to South Africa amounted to US$1,08 billion, representing a 23% growth in comparison to 2010. In turn, imports from South Africa totalled US$205 million, a 45% increase in the same period.

### Chile

Political relations between South Africa and Chile remain sound. The Joint Consultative Mechanism continues to serve a constructive purpose in the ongoing political dialogue between the two countries at bilateral, regional and multilateral levels.

In July 2012, multilateral cooperation and regional developments formed part of discussions between South Africa and Chile during the fourth Joint Consultative Mechanism meeting between representatives of the two countries. Two agreements on the avoidance of double taxation and an MoU on the establishment of a Joint Trade and Investment Commission were signed.

The meeting also discussed a number of other areas, including the possibility of a dialogue regarding a preferential trade agreement subject to concurrence with Sacu, science and technology and academic exchanges in the tertiary education sector.

Exports to Chile include minerals, chemical fertilisers, sulphate, insecticides and fruit. Imports from the South American country include chemicals. Exports to Chile in 2011 were at R604 083 and imports from Chile at R834 622. It was also decided to explore further academic collaboration between the countries, in particular the University of South Africa.

### Venezuela

South Africa and Venezuela have embassies in each other's capitals and enjoy good relations. South Africa is seeking new opportunities in Venezuela including among others cooperation in the oil and gas sector.

Two senior officials' meetings were held between South Africa, Mexico and Venezuela in line with existing BNCs between them.

### Colombia and Ecuador

The South African Embassy in Caracas, Venezuela is responsible for the Republic of Colombia and the Republic of Ecuador. Colombia and Ecuador are experiencing growing interest from South African companies primarily relating to the mineral resources sector.

### Panama

South Africa established full diplomatic relations with the Republic of Panama on 10 January 1995. The Government of Panama opened an Embassy in Pretoria in August 2000.

In April 2012, bilateral relations between South Africa and Panama were strengthened

when Panama's Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Francisco Alvarez de Soto, visited the country at the invitation of Deputy Minister Fransman.

This was the first high-level bilateral visit from Panama to South Africa since full diplomatic relations were established in January 1995.

The visit focused on the strengthening of political and economic relations between the two countries providing impetus to South Africa's already solid bilateral and multilateral relations with Panama, a prominent maritime country and a hub for trade with strong economic growth.

The Panama Canal is one of the world's most important and strategic maritime passages, benefitting global freight circulation and economic activities in Latin America and the Caribbean.Panama opened an embassy in Pretoria in August 2000.

South Africa is non-residentially represented in Panama from Lima, Peru, with an honorary consulate in Panama.

## The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The majority of the inhabitants of the Caribbean are of African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent.

South Africa's endeavour in conjunction with the AU and Caricom to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda and protection of small island states.

### Cuba

Cuba remains a strategic partner of South Africa and the region. Several South African medical students have already graduated from Cuban medical faculties under the South Africa-Cuba medical study programme.

Discussions are underway to grow the current 80 bursaries offered by Cuba significantly to increase the number of qualified medical practitioners in South Africa. Currently several hundred Cuban specialists are deployed in South Africa, rendering professional services in the fields of public health, human settlements, public works and social development.

In February 2012, South Africa and Cuba signed a R350-million Economic Assistance Package Agreement geared towards helping that country improve its food security. The total package to the island nation is three-pronged, with the first portion being a R40-million grant for the purchase of seeds by Cuba.

From this amount, Cuba is expected to use R5 million to buy seeds in South Africa. The remaining R35 million can be used by Cuba for the purchase of seeds from any other country.

The second part of the agreement is a R100-million solidarity grant. The third portion is a R210-million credit line which will go out in two tranches of R70 million and R140 million. This is a loan facility with the R70 million being made available to Cuba immediately.

### Jamaica

South Africa established non-resident diplomatic relations with Jamaica in September 1994. In August 2012, President Zuma paid a state visit to Jamaica and attended the island's 50th anniversary of independence celebrations.

The visit also served to enhance bilateral relations, to recognise the role Jamaica played during South Africa's struggle for emancipation and to celebrate Jamaica's achievements as an independent, stable constitutional parliamentary democracy.

A number of draft agreements and MoUs were negotiated between both countries. These are in the fields of sports and recreation, science and technology, defence and security, social development and culture, bilateral air services and public works.

The Jamaican and South African govern-

ments have waived visa requirements for all South African and Jamaican passport holders to enable nations from each side to enter the country for a period of up to 90 days without the necessity of visas.

This provision facilitates the smooth movement of South Africans and Jamaicans who are engaging in music, education, and sports, among other things.

## United Kingdom (UK) and Northern Ireland

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK are rooted in the long history shared by the two countries and are extensive and multi-faceted, covering fields as diverse as science and technology, development cooperation, promoting trade and a rules-based international system.

The UK was ranked South Africa's fifth-biggest export trading partner globally and its second-biggest export trading partner in Europe in 2011. South African exports to the UK in 2011 were R28,8 billion and imports were R29,1 billion, giving a total of R57,9 billion.

There is a healthy flow of investment in both directions. The UK is recognised as the foremost source of foreign direct investment into South Africa, while South African companies have equally made large investments in the UK.

The UK is by far South Africa's most significant source of (non-African) tourists, a position it has not relinquished for the past 15 years. Total tourism from the UK in 2011 was 420 483 visitors. Frequent high-level visits in both directions underline this strategic relationship.

In February 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane had a bilateral meeting with the Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs of the UK and Northern Ireland, Mr William Hague.

South Africa and the UK are looking to increase economic and trade ties by focusing on exporting high-value-added goods to Britain.

In April 2012, the Princess Royal, Princess Anne, visited South Africa and met with Deputy President Motlanthe in Pretoria. The visit was part of the celebrations marking the Queen's 60 years on the throne. Princess Anne visited a number of non-governmental organisations she supports, such as Save the Children and the St John's Ambulance Service.

In July, 2012, Deputy Minister Ebrahim hosted the UK Parliamentary Under-Secretary of State at the Foreign and Commonwealth Office responsible for Africa, Mr Henry Bellingham, for bilateral discussions on issues of common concern, including recent developments in Africa and the Middle East.

The meeting took place within the context of strengthening North-South relations and consolidating the African Agenda.

## Republic of Ireland

The Republic of Ireland was the only EU member country that did not have full diplomatic relations with South Africa until the dawn of democratic South Africa.

The establishment of diplomatic relations with Ireland was announced in October 1993 and the Irish Embassy was opened in Pretoria in 1994. The South African Embassy in Dublin was opened in 1995.

The third meeting of the South Africa-Ireland Partnership Forum was held in Cape Town on 15 November 2012. Co-chaired by Deputy Minister Fransman and the Irish Minister of State for Trade and Development, Mr Joe Costello, the Partnership Forum is the structured bilateral mechanism between South Africa and Ireland, which was established in 2004.

The parties discussed political, economic and social developments in South Africa and Ireland, as well as in Africa and Europe.

## Relations with Europe

### European Union (EU)

South Africa has strong cultural and historical links to the EU.

The EU is by far South Africa's most important development partner, providing for about 70% of all external assistance funds. South Africa is also the EU's largest trading partner in Africa.

South Africa's exports to the EU are growing and the composition of these exports is becoming more diverse with South Africa gradually moving from mainly commodity-based products to a more diversified export profile that includes manufactured products.

South Africa's primary exports to the EU are fuels and mining products, machinery and transport equipment, and other semi-manufactured goods.

EU exports to South Africa are dominated by machinery and transport equipment, chemicals and semi-machinery products.

South Africa, while part of the African Caribbean Pacific group of countries, is not party to the same preferential trade arrangements granted to the African Caribbean Pacific countries under the Cotonou Agreement.

The Cotonou Agreement is the most comprehensive partnership agreement between developing countries and the EU. It is the framework for the EU's relations with 79 countries from Africa, the Caribbean and the Pacific.

South Africa joined the Economic Partnership Agreement (the trade pillar of the Cotonou Agreement) negotiations as part of the SADC-group in February 2007.

South Africa's trade relations with the EU are governed by the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement concluded with the EU in 1999.

## Benelux countries

The Benelux countries (Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg) remain important trade and investment partners of South Africa, and major providers of tourism.

South Africa enjoys close political relations with the Netherlands and Belgium, and engages in substantial and fruitful cooperation partnerships with these countries, contributing significantly to South Africa's national priorities.

The focus on establishing trilateral cooperation to promote peace and security with special emphasis on initiatives in support of capacity-building in the Great Lakes Region, continued with the Belgian government, which takes a keen interest in South and southern Africa, and the Great Lakes Region, particularly the DRC.

There is a regular exchange of views between South Africa and Belgium, as well as the Netherlands on the issues and complicated processes necessary to find durable solutions to the conflicts in the region.

### Belgium

In June 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane met with her Belgian counterpart, Mr Didier Reynders, Deputy Prime Minister and Foreign Minister of Belgium for a bilateral meeting.

Relations between the two countries are strong and dynamic, covering a number of areas that are important to South Africa's national development objectives.

Since 1994, Belgium has allocated substantial resources to South Africa in the form of official development assistance.

This support has covered areas such as health, ports management and logistics, education, rural development and further education and training.

### The Netherlands

The Dutch government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. A large number of bilateral agreements have been signed and high-level bilateral ministerial meetings are held regularly.

### Luxembourg

Bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors, remain strong between Luxembourg and South Africa.

## German-speaking countries

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the German-speaking countries cover various issues, including investment and trade, science and technology, defence, culture, the environment, tourism, sport, development cooperation and energy.

### Germany

Some 600 German companies have set up operations in South Africa and employ a total workforce of over 90 000.

The German-South African Year of Science event, an initiative between the Department of Science and Technology and Germany's Ministry of Education and Research, is aimed at stimulating the development of more local South African innovations.

The two countries' relations in science and research stretch back to 1996 when they signed a science and technology cooperation agreement which led to a joint research fund to support research and development projects.

Germany also helped to set up the Southern African Science Service Centre for Climate Change and Adaptive Land Management – a joint initiative between Germany, South Africa and several neighbouring African countries to address the challenge of climate change.

In May 2012, Deputy President Motlanthe visited Germany to promote North-South cooperation and strengthening existing relations.

Germany has become one of South Africa's most important trading partners within the EU and was ranked the fourth-largest export destination for South Africa in the world.

In 2012, there were about 700 German-owned companies or subsidiaries of German companies in South Africa. Overall, South Africa's exports to Germany have been showing an upward swing over the five-year period ending in 2011.

### Switzerland

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland have continued growing since 1994. As a result of democratic changes in South Africa, Switzerland decided to grant South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

### Austria

Besides engaging the Austrian government at a national level in support of development programmes, increased economic involvement and support for the African Agenda, provincial partnerships with key Austrian provinces have also resulted in increased business ties and commitments to support training programmes for South African students.

Closer cooperation in the field of renewable energies is expected to intensify in future.

## Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic countries – Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden. Flowing from the strong grassroots support in these countries for democratisation in South Africa, relations have been established in virtually every field at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government.

There has been close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of Nepad and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa. This was reinforced through the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in June 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

### Denmark

Denmark was a very strong supporter of the anti-apartheid struggle and a major force in sanctions and disinvestment. In addition, Denmark has always had a very active development cooperation programme with South Africa, which was transformed into official assistance from 1995.

As part of the country's 2009 – 2013 programme, more than R7 billion is disbursed to projects ranging from water, energy, education, and governance, the South African Police Service, business support, and the fight against HIV and AIDS. In addition, Denmark remains a strong supporter of Nepad and African development.

### Norway

South Africa is committed to deepening political, economic and trade relations with Norway. Existing strong bilateral relations with Norway are based on historical ties from the liberation movements during the struggle for democracy in South Africa and a common outlook on global issues.

### Finland

In May 2012, Deputy President Motlanthe visited Finland within the context of promoting North-South cooperation and strengthening existing relations.

## Mediterranean Europe

South Africa and the countries of Mediterranean Europe maintain excellent relations through several institutionalised mechanisms, such as the South Africa-France Political Dialogue, South Africa-Spain Advisory Committee and various commissions on trade and industry; health; education; arts and culture, science and technology; and sport.

These countries are among South Africa's top trading partners and remain large investors in the South African economy, providing capital inflow and thousands of jobs.

### France

France is a major trading and development cooperation partner and source of tourism for South Africa. Trade between the two countries was about R27,5 billion in 2010.

In February 2012, South Africa hosted the South Africa-France Forum for Political Dialogue in Pretoria to map a way forward on how to deepen political and economic relations between the two countries.

More than 170 French-owned companies or subsidiaries of French companies are operating in South Africa, accounting for 25 000 employment opportunities.

### Italy

In October 2012, the Minister of Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, attended an award ceremony in Milan, Italy. He noted that close to 55 000 Italian tourists visited South Africa in 2011.

In October 2012, Deputy President Motlanthe visited Italy where he met with Italian Prime Minister Mario Monti to review the scope of relations between South Africa and Italy and identify possible further areas of cooperation. The Deputy President addressed a business luncheon on South Africa's Infrastructure Development Programme and opportunities for investment.

The Deputy President also attended the 35th anniversary celebration of the solidarity pact between the City of Reggio Emilia and South Africa. It included an exhibition called Reggio Africa and the official opening of the Reggio Africa Archive, which hosts historical documents on Africa and particularly South Africa.

### Spain

Economic relations between South Africa and Spain have grown rapidly. Trade between the two countries have reached R19 billion, having doubled over the past few years.

In July 2012, the eighth Session of Annual Consultations between South Africa and Spain was concluded in Madrid. The discussions were co-chaired by Deputy Minister Ebrahim and his counterpart, the Secretary of State Gonzala De Benito.

### Greece

South Africa and Greece have strong cultural ties through the Hellenic community in South Africa, which has played a positive and constructive role in the reconstruction and development of this country. The Hellenic community in South Africa is estimated at 60 000 people.

Greece is the oldest and largest market for South Africa in the Balkan Region and has contributed to education and health programmes in South Africa.

In September 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane paid a working visit to Cyprus at the invitation of their Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Erato Kozakou-Markoullis.

During the visit, the MoU on Bilateral Political Consultations, and the Protocol to the Agreement on the Avoidance of Double Taxation and Fiscal Evasion were signed. This was the Minister's first visit to Cyprus.

## Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests.

The region is well endowed with strategic commodities and minerals that are of vital importance to South Africa's economy.

Co-operation in gas and oil and the peaceful use of nuclear energy can go a long way towards alleviating South Africa's energy needs.

### Czech Republic

In September 2012, the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Elizabeth Thabethe, visited the Czech Republic to co-chair the second session of the Czech-South Africa Joint Committee for Economic Cooperation.

The purpose of the meeting was to promote and strengthen trade, investment and economic cooperation between the two countries.

### Slovak Republic

The Deputy Minister also visited the Slovak Republic in September 2012 to co-chair the fourth session of the Slovak-South Africa Joint Council for Economic Cooperation with her counterpart, Pavol Pavlis.

They signed a joint protocol, which outlines the plan on further expanding bilateral trade and economic cooperation between South Africa and the Slovak Republic.

Total trade between South Africa and Slovakia increased consistently over the years.

In 2011, bilateral exchange of goods between the two countries amounted to R792 million, an increase of 14% compared to R720 million in 2010.

## Russian Federation

South Africa regards the Russian Federation as an important strategic partner and close bilateral and multilateral ties exist between the two countriesHistorical links between South Africa and the Russian Federation are strong. Direct contact between the former USSR and the ANC were established on a regular basis during 1963.

In the era of the USSR, the latter was one of the key supporters of the struggle for liberation in South Africa.

With the dissolution of the USSR, South Africa became the first African state to recognise the independence of the Russian Federation. Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and the Russian Federation in February 1992.

In November 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane travelled to Moscow for the 11th Session of South Africa-Russia Joint Inter-Governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation.

The Minister co-chaired the meeting with the Minister for Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation, Sergey Donskoy.

In February 2013, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane hosted the Minister Donskoy in Pretoria during an Joint Inter-Governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation co-chairpersons' meeting. The agreements under consideration are in the fields of agriculture; education; energy; fisheries; justice, mineral resources, science and technology, and transport.

## Conclusion

South Africa conducts its foreign policy against the background of an ever-changing political and economic environment. The global environment is characterised by major shifts in global political, economic, social and cultural dynamics that have an impact on different parts of the world.

These include the realignment of new economic powers, new media and social networks, innovation, environmental change, heightened demand for scarce resources and the changing nature of conflict and insecurity.

Africa is at the centre of South Africa's foreign policy and South Africa will continue to support regional and continental processes to respond to and resolve crises, strengthen regional integration, increase intra-African trade, and champion sustainable development and opportunities in Africa.

The strengthening of the AU and its structures is a strategic priority in deepening the continental integration process. South Africa will continue with efforts aimed at revitalising

Nepad as a strategy for socio-economic development on the African continent.

The integration of the SADC remains critical for the economic development of the region and for South Africa's global competitiveness. To this end, South Africa continues to support efforts aimed at ensuring political stability and economic viability through strengthening governance and institutional capacity within the SADC.

In advancing global peace and security, South Africa continues to play an active role in all aspects of disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control. The country will also continue to support the AU and UN initiatives to find just and lasting solutions to outstanding issues of self-determination and decolonisation on the African continent. To achieve this, both bilateral and multilateral branches will engage through structured mechanisms and intergovernmental forums.

The consolidation and strengthening of bilateral political and economic relations remains a strategic focus area. South Africa will continue to use structured bilateral mechanisms and high-level engagements to reinforce and expand cooperation in the political, economic, social and security spheres, for the purpose

## Acknowledgements

of contributing to the achievement of national priorities.
BuaNews
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2010*, published by National Treasury
Department of International Relations and Cooperation
*Department of International Relations and Cooperation Strategic Plan 2011 – 2014*
South African Government News Agency

*www.dfa.gov.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.iol.co.za*
*www.swazihighcom.co.za*
*www.thepresidency.gov.za*
*http://focus.rw/wp/2012*
*www.swazihighcom.co.za/*
*www.swazihighcom.co.za/*

## Suggested reading

Abegunrin, O. 2009. *Africa in Global Politics in the Twenty-First Century: A Pan-African Perspective.* Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Gruzd, S (ed). 2010. *Grappling with Governance: Perspectives on the African Peer Review Mechanism.* Johannesburg: Jacana.

Patel, S and Uys, T (eds). 2012. *Contemporary India and South Africa.* New Delhi: Routledge.

Research and Information System for Developing Countries. 2008. *Trinity of the South: Potential of India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Partnership.* New Delhi: Academic Foundation.

Saunders, CC, Dzinesa, GA and Nagar, D. 2012. *Region-Building in Southern Africa: Progress, Problems and Prospects.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Shearer, J. 2011. *Against the World: South Africa and Human Rights at the United Nations, 1945 – 1961*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Thomas, A. 2008. *U.S. Foreign Policy towards Apartheid South Africa, 1948-1994: Conflict and Interests.* New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

*Two Countries One Dream: The Challenges of Democratic Consolidation in Kenya and South Africa.* 2009. Rosebank: KMM Review Pub.

Vinson, RT. 2012. *The Americans are Coming! Dreams of African American Liberation in Segregationist South Africa.* Athens: Ohio University Press.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Mineral Resources

South Africa is known for its abundance of mineral resources. It is estimated to have the world's fifth-largest mining sector in terms of gross domestic product (GDP) value and its mining companies are key players in the global industry.

Accounting for a significant proportion of world production, South Africa's total reserves remain some of the world's most valuable, with an estimated worth of R20,3 trillion (US$2,5 trillion).

South Africa holds the world's largest reported reserves of gold, platinum group metals, chrome ore and manganese ore, and the second-largest reserves of zirconium, vanadium and titanium.

The Department of Mineral Resources is tasked with promoting and regulating the country's minerals and mining for transformation, growth and development. Its ultimate goal is to ensure that all South Africans derive sustainable benefit from the country's mineral wealth.

In March 2012, South Africa moved up 13 places to 54th out of 93 jurisdictions in the latest Fraser Institute 2011/12 Survey of Mining Companies, which ranks the world's most attractive regions for mining investment.

The survey is based on the opinions of mining executives representing 802 mineral exploration and development companies.

In his 2012 Budget Speech, the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, announced increased provision of resources to develop port and rail infrastructure, which is crucial to the mining industry. This added to the country's attractiveness as an investment destination.

## Legislation and policies

Some key legislation and policies relating to the Department of Mineral resources are:

- The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002). The promulgation of the MPRDA in 2004 introduced a policy of equal access to South Africa's mineral resources. This democratic mineral dispensation introduced the policy of socio-economic responsibility, which was to be achieved through the application of black economic empowerment policy by ensuring that the historically disadvantaged South Africans are brought into the mainstream of

By May 2012, the Department of Mineral Resources received more than 3 500 applications online via the South African Mineral Resources Administration Online System for prospecting rights, mining permits and mining rights. Aimed at ensuring transparency and end administrative blunders, the Ministry of Mineral Resources launched the system in April 2011.

mining. However, challenges experienced in the implementation of these policies resulted in the need to review the MPRDA, 2002. The objectives of the review are to:

- provide for a detailed consultation process
- support the beneficiation strategy
- streamline the licensing process to avoid delays and inefficiencies
- provide for enhanced punitive measures
- improve the current construct of the Act and to remove ambiguities, and provide clarity on the mining of associated minerals.

- The Mineral Health and Safety Inspectorate of the Department of Mineral Resources, established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act (MHSA), 1996 (Act 29 of 1996) as amended, is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mine workers and people affected by mining activities.
- The Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010) expands the functions of the Council for Geoscience (CGS) by:
  - mandating the CGS to be the custodians and curators of geotechnical information, to be a national mandatory advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure development, to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors and to add to the functions of the council
  - putting mechanisms in place to address problems associated with infrastructure development on dolomitic land
  - empowering the CGS to be the custodian of all geotechnical data to compile a complete geotechnical risk profile of the country
  - enabling the CGS to become the custodian of technical information relating to exploration and mining.
- The Mining Charter: The Broad-Based Socio-Economic Charter for the South African Mining Industry, known as the Mining Charter, was first published in April 2004. During 2010, the Department of Mineral Resources unveiled the revised Mining Charter 2010, which updates and expands upon a set of empowerment targets (originally set in the Mining Charter 2002), with emphasis on a target of 26% black ownership of the country's mining assets by 2014.

To ensure the efficacy of the beneficiation strategy, which was approved by Cabinet in June 2011, certain amendments to all relevant legislation will be effected. These include the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005), the Diamond Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 29 of 2005), and Section 26 of the MPRDA, 2002.

Five value chains were prioritised from the selected commodities in the strategy, namely:

- iron and steel: beneficiating iron ore, chrome, manganese, nickel and vanadium
- energy commodities: focusing on coal and uranium
- auto catalytic converters and diesel particulate filters: beneficiating platinum group metals
- pigment and titanium metal production
- jewellery manufacturing: to increase beneficiation of platinum group metals, diamonds and gold.

## Funding

The Department of Mineral Resources tabled a budget of R1 169 billion for the 2012/13 financial year, an increase of R130 million from the previous budget of R1 039 billion.

This increase was largely earmarked for research and development in the minerals and mining industry, through the Council for Mineral Technology and Research (Mintek) and the CGS.

The budget was allocated as follows:

- R239 million for administration
- R154 million for mine health and safety
- R180 million for mineral regulation
- R596 million for mineral policy and promotion.

Included in these figures is an amount of R560 million allocated for transfers and subsidies to departmental agencies, public and private enterprises.

The South African mining industry's total income in 2011, using quarterly unadjusted data from Statistics South Africa, was estimated at R489 billion. Expenditure was estimated at R484 billion.

Some R148,6 billion was spent on purchases and operating costs such as timber, steel, explosives, electricity, transport and uniforms; R88,7 billion was paid on salaries and wages for mine employees (slightly higher than the Department of Mineral Resources' estimate of R87 billion); R46,5 billion on capital expenditure; R38 billion on depreciation and impairments; and R17,2 billion paid on interest.

The mining industry also contributes to the national fiscus through royalties taxes, having paid R4,4 billion and R5,5 billion in 2010 and 2011, respectively.

It is important to dispel the myth that all mined products are exported in raw form with very little downstream beneficiation taking place locally. Nearly 100% of South Africa's cement and building aggregates are made locally and 80% of the country's steel is manufactured locally from locally mined iron ore, chrome, manganese and coking coal; using furnaces that are 95% powered by electricity from coal-fired power stations (the 20% imported steel is speciality steel products not made locally).

Over 30% of South Africa's liquid fuels are produced within the country from locally mined coal and 95% of electricity is generated in power plants that use locally mined coal. Most domestic chemicals, fertilisers, waxes, polymers and plastics are manufactured using locally mined minerals and coal and 13% of the world's platinum catalytic converters are made in South Africa.

## Role players

### Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority and facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector
- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and implementing a sector skills plan
- developing unit standards and qualifications for the sector
- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships and apprenticeship
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning
- disbursing grants from the skills development levy.

### Chamber of Mines

The Chamber of Mines of South Africa is a prominent industry employers' organisation. Its purpose is to advance, promote and protect the collective interests of its members.

Its mandate includes monitoring, investigating, analysing and considering matters of collective interest to its members and providing recommendations on the position to be taken.

Where appropriate, the Chamber of Mines represents its members and provides technical and expert assistance on matters affecting their collective interest.

For its members in the gold and coal sectors, the Chamber of Mines negotiates wages and conditions of employment with trade unions representing mining employees.

Members of the Chamber of Mines account for about 90% of South Africa's mining production by value and employ about the same percentage of the mining industry's labour force.

Some environmental issues affect the integrity of the industry. To tackle these, the chamber has, among other things, engaged in:

- liaising with biodiversity stakeholders to develop the Biodiversity Guideline that will be user-friendly for environmental managers within the mining industry
- facilitating the industry's involvement with government and other stakeholders to develop and implement the plan to manage the scourge of acid mine drainage
- supporting the development of best practices for mine water management through the Department of Water Affairs, such as the draft guideline on water conservation and water demand management.

## South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR)

The SADPMR regulates the diamond, platinum and gold industries and accelerates beneficiation in the jewellery industry.

The SADPMR's objectives are to:

- ensure that precious metal and diamond resources are exploited and developed in the best interests of all South Africans
- promote equitable access to and local beneficiation of precious metals and diamonds
- promote the development of precious metal and diamond enterprises
- advance broad-based socio-economic empowerment
- ensure compliance with the Kimberley Process Certification Scheme.

Its functions regarding diamonds include:

- implementing, administering and controlling all matters relating to the purchase, sale, beneficiation, import and export of diamonds
- establishing diamond exchange and export centres to facilitate the buying, selling, export and import of diamonds.

While the South African Diamond Board had an essentially regulatory role, the SADPMR has a promotional role as well.

Through administering licences and export approvals, the SADPMR ensures that local demand for diamonds and precious metals is catered for, and that there is growth in local beneficiation of diamonds and precious metals.

## Council for Mineral Technology and Research (Mintek)

Mintek is the national mineral research organisation, specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with the mineral resources industry and other research and development institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development and optimisation, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation that reports to the Minister of Mineral Resources.

About 30% of its annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract research and development, sales of products and services, technology licensing agreements, and joint-venture private sector companies.

## Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS was established in 1993 under the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993). The CGS grew from its humble beginnings in 1912 as the Geological Survey of the country to be recognised as one of the best geoscience institutions in the world.

The CGS is mandated to carry out systematic geological, geophysical, geochemical, marine geoscience, metallogenic and engineering geological mapping of South Africa. The council is also able to provide commercial geoscientific services.

The CGS participates in a variety of Southern African Development Community (SADC) projects aimed at promoting the economic development of the African sub-continent.

International cooperative projects that have been carried out, or are in progress, include geological mapping, geochemical and geophysical surveys, and the production of maps in many countries, either on a bilateral basis or collaboratively in the SADC region.

In December 2010, the Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010), was passed by Parliament. It is aimed at refocusing the objectives of the CGS to promote the search for and exploitation of any mineral in the country and

to act as a national advisory authority in the areas of geohazards and geo-environmental pollution.

### State Diamond Trader

The State Diamond Trader buys and sells rough diamonds to promote equitable access to and beneficiation of diamond resources. It is a state-owned entity that addresses distortions in the diamond industry and corrects historical market failures to develop and grow South Africa's diamond cutting and polishing industry.

The State Diamond Trader sells to approved customers through its application and approval process. The entity is eligible by law and proclamation to purchase up to 10% of the run of mines from all diamond producers in South Africa.

### African Mining Partnership (AMP)

The AMP, whose main function is to drive the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) mining initiatives, was established during the African Mining Minister's meeting in Cape Town in February 2004.

South Africa, as a major role player in this body, has played an important role as the Secretariat, in hosting as well as coordinating the affairs of the AMP.

The AMP has been successfully merged with the African Union Conference of Ministers Responsible for Mineral Resources Development during the last Plenary Meeting in February 2010, which was hosted by South Africa.

### African Diamond Producers' Association (ADPA)

ADPA is an intergovernmental organisation that seeks to strengthen the level of influence African diamond-producing countries have on the world diamond market. It implements policies, strategies and laws that assist the generation of diamond profits from foreign diamond mining companies to its member states.

The organisation was formed in November 2006 as a continental branch of the African Diamond Council, Africa's supreme diamond governing body.

The Department of Mineral Resources received Cabinet approval to participate in the ADPA in 2009. The ADPA has three organs, namely the Council of Ministers, Executive Secretariat and the Meeting of Experts. The Council of Ministers constitutes 18 African countries, 11 of which – including South Africa – are full members, while the remainder enjoy observer status.

For South Africa, membership of this association presents an opportunity to position itself strategically among diamond-producing countries in Africa. It could add significant impetus to diamond beneficiation initiatives and also boost its aim of becoming the beneficiation hub and gateway to Africa.

### Mining industry

The discovery of world-class diamond and gold deposits in the latter half of the 19th century laid the foundation for the emergence of South Africa from an essentially agricultural to a modern industrial economy. The mining industry subsequently covered a wide-ranging spectrum of minerals, in which South Africa has an exceptional geological/mineral endowment.

With significant resources of gold, uranium, chrome, manganese, platinum group metals, titanium minerals, vanadium, coal, limestone, vermiculite and zirconium, South African mining real estate remains attractive for development.

South Africa has significant known reserves and resources of mineral commodities, with almost 60 minerals being actively mined and prospects for exploitation of an additional two new minerals in the short to medium term. A large number of these known reserves were discovered using conventional exploration methodologies. For this reason, there still lies considerable residual potential for discovery of world-class deposits using modern exploration technology.

This is further supported by existing mining infrastructure, which enables investors to leverage maximum value from their investment while simultaneously contributing to socio-political improvement.

In 2011, the mining sector accounted for 8,8% of GDP. If the indirect multiplier and induced effects of mining are included, the overall contribution to GDP is closer to 18%. Real mining GDP of R99,4 billion in 2011 was still smaller than peak mining GDP of R105,4 billion achieved in 2007, just prior to the global financial crisis.

The mining sector real fixed investment, which rose strongly in 2007 and 2008 (up 31,3% and 27,5%, respectively) was hard hit by the global financial crisis and domestic constraints, and consequently only grew by 8,1% in 2011. Not only did the financial crisis hit prices, but domestic constraints including regulatory uncertainty, infrastructure constraints and other issues also affected investment by mining companies.

However, mining still accounted for 20% of private sector investment and 12,3% of total investment in the economy in 2011. The mining sector continued to be a key component of the Johannesburg Stock Exchange and accounted for 29% or R1,4 trillion of the All-Share Index at the end of 2011.

The total 2011 mining production decreased by 0,2%, with platinum group metals production up 1,6%, coal decreased by 0,2%, iron ore production decreased 1,4%, manganese production grew by 21% and diamond production decreasing by 21%. Gold production fell by 4,2%, a much slower rate of decline versus the 4,9% decline in production recorded in 2010.

South African mineral sales rose by 23% to R370,6 billion in 2011. This means that the value of mineral sales in nominal terms has exceeded the pre-crisis levels.

The improvement in mineral sales was driven by the 13,6% increase in the value of platinum group metals sales to R83,9 billion, the 22,3% growth in coal sales to R87,8 billion, the 30% rise in gold sales to R68,9 billion, the 44% rise in iron ore sales to R62,7 billion, and the 30% increase in chrome ore sales to R8,6 billion. In 2011, manganese sales decreased by 7% to R9,9 billion, from R10,7 billion in the previous year. Gold, platinum group metals, iron ore and coal accounted for 82% of South Africa's total mineral sales in 2011.

Total primary mineral sales exports increased by 25,8% to R282 billion in 2011. This accounted for 38% of South Africa's total merchandise exports.

In the past decade, the mining sector has contributed just over R1,9 trillion to both the country's GDP and export earnings, in real money terms.

BHP Billiton's Metalloys manganese smelter in Meyerton, south of Johannesburg, was unveiled in March 2012. The M14 furnace is currently the largest new investment in the manganese industry in the country and has expanded BHP's production capacity by 81 MVA. The furnace is designed to produce 120 000 kt of high-carbon ferromanganese per year.

## Job creation

Beneficiation is one of the components of the department's growth strategy, as it has the potential to create jobs and contribute to the economic development of the country.

To this end, Cabinet has approved the beneficiation strategy as well as two implementation plans for the five value chains. The remaining three value-chain implementation plans will be completed during the course of 2012.

The mining sector employed 513 211 people in 2012, compared to 498 906 in 2010. In 2012, the mining sector helped to create 1 353 383 jobs, which can be segmented as follows:

- 16,2% of the total formal non-agricultural employment in the country
- 514 760 jobs directly and 838 623 jobs indirectly in the industries that either supply goods and services to the mining sector, use mining products for downstream value addition, or are related to the spending multipliers from mining and mining employees in the economy
- given a dependency ratio of about 10 to 1, about 13 500 000 people were directly dependant on the 1 353 383 jobs created by the mining sector for their daily food.

## Mine health and safety

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate of the Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mineworkers or people affected by mining activities, by being responsible for implementing mine health and safety legislation.

The inspectorate was established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996, as amended, for the purpose of executing the statutory mandate of the Department of Mineral Resources to safeguard the health and safety of mine employees and communities affected by mining operations.

The activities of the inspectorate focus on achieving a safer and healthier mining industry for all. It works closely with industry and worker unions to reduce the incidence of mine accidents, with stakeholders committing themselves to continuously reduce fatalities by at least 20% a year.

This is to be achieved by reducing mining-related deaths, injuries and ill health through the formulation of national policy and legislation, the provision of advice, and the application of systems that monitor and enforce compliance with the law in the mining sector.

The inspectorate is also pursuing a strategy to eliminate silicosis and noise-induced hearing loss, also known as occupational deafness, by 2013.

By the end of October 2012, there had been 82 fatalities in the mining industry for the year, a 15% reduction on the 97 fatalities during the same period in 2011.

Although deaths resulting from fall-of-ground in mines decreased by about 19%, from 47 in 2010 to 38 in 2011, it remains the major contributor to fatalities. The number of mine injuries decreased by 15%, from 3 436 in 2010 to 2 918 in 2011.

In 2011, for the first time in five years, there were no mine-disaster accidents. A mine-disaster accident is a single event that results in the deaths of four or more employees.

## Small-scale mining in South Africa

The Department of Mineral Resources deems the role of small-scale mining critical in community upliftment, job creation and poverty alleviation.

The department's small-scale mining strategy provides a framework for creating a sustainable sector that is characterised by growth and development, and contributes to rural development, job creation and poverty alleviation through community-linked small, medium and micro-enterprise projects.

Small-scale mining projects that fall within the Presidential poverty nodes will receive special attention. The Department of Mineral Resources aims to identify and demarcate areas with mineral deposits and foster economies-of-scale by forming community clusters.

Small-scale mining projects and government-supported initiatives are also to be linked with financial institutions.

## Sustainable development

Mine environmental management forms an integral part of the management of mineral resources in South Africa. To manage the environmental impact of mining effectively, the department undertakes research, develops mine environmental policies, legislation and strategies, provides strategic guidance on mine environmental management, mine rehabilitation, water ingress, mine environmental legacies and sustainable development.

Environmental management in the mining sector seeks to reframe government's approach towards the sector's impact on the environment to ensure the security and good health of future generations.

All three pillars of sustainable development are considered by fostering integrated mineral

The inaugural Mining Lekgotla was held in June 2012 in Midrand, Gauteng. The two-day lekgotla brought together over 1 000 representatives of government, industry and labour to map a way forward on how to improve the global competitiveness of the South African mining industry and its contribution to the country's economy.

development that promotes social integration, and creating wealth while promoting responsible mining, as well as greening the mining industry.

Implementation of the mining sector strategy is a key priority aimed at growing the South African mining industry sustainably, while simultaneously transforming it meaningfully.

## Rehabilitation of mines

Rehabilitation of derelict and ownerless mines continues to be a key area of focus for the department, given the urgent and mammoth task at hand.

However, rehabilitation of mines is a costly exercise and only a certain number of sites can be rehabilitated every year, depending on the funds allocated to the programme.

To implement the strategy for the management of derelict and ownerless mine sites in 2012/13, the department has prioritised 12 projects for rehabilitation. Additional funds have been allocated to implement the strategy in 2013/14.

## Acid mine drainage

Acid rock drainage occurs as a result of reactions between sulphide minerals, oxygen and water, catalysed by bacteria. The mining of sulphide-rich materials exposes sulphide minerals to the elements, accelerating the natural process and forming acid mine drainage.

The sulphuric acid generated in these reactions can mobilise other components of materials, often resulting in high concentrations of toxic heavy metals in the rivers and streams that drain mining areas.

A budget of R225 million has been approved for 2011/12 and 2012/13 for the pumping and neutralisation of acid mine drainage in the Witwatersrand area.

A feasibility study for a long-term solution to address acid mine drainage associated with the East Rand, central and West Rand underground mining basins started in December 2011 and is expected to be concluded by mid-2013.

Concerted efforts are made to ensure that the mines are regularly monitored for compliance to their water-use licences. By March 2012, 58% of the 61 mines monitored were compliant, which is an improvement from 33% of the 43 mines monitored in 2010.

South Africa dominated global gold production in the 20th century and in one year – 1970 – accounted for 79% of the entire world's production. It is estimated that South Africa has produced some 40 000 tons of gold since the start of recorded history – about one third of the total worldwide.

There are 35 large-scale gold mines currently operating in South Africa, including the record setting TauTona mine, which extends 3,9 km (approximately 2,5 miles) underground. TauTona means "great lion" in Setswanan.

Cape Town plays host to the annual Indaba Mining Conference, one of the largest gatherings of mining stakeholders, which attracts nearly 10 000 people representing more than 1 000 companies.

## Mineral wealth

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 93% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium resources
- the Bushveld Complex is known for platinum group metals (with associated copper, nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium-iron ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources
- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings
- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon

- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

The bulk of the known mineral resources and reserves were discovered using conventional exploration methods, but the country still has significant potential for additional discoveries of world-class deposits, using modern exploration technologies.

South Africa has the world's largest resources of platinum group metals (87,7% of world total), manganese (80%), chromium (72,4%), gold (29,7%) and alumino-silicates. South Africa also accounts for over 40% of global production of ferrochromium, platinum group metals and vanadium.

It is the world's leading producer of chrome ore, vermiculite and alumino-silicates, and is among the top three producers of gold, manganese ore, titanium minerals and fluorspar.

The South African mining industry contributes 51,7% of world ferrochromium exports and 54% of alumino-silicates, and is one of the world's largest exporters of platinum group metals, gold and vanadium, and a significant exporter of manganese ore. Other important export commodities include ferro-manganese and fluorspar.

Although South Africa is probably the largest exporter of vanadium, gold and platinum group metals, it is not possible to rank it because of the unavailability of export data from other producing countries.

## Gold

In 2011, global gold production increased by 2,8% to 2 818 tons (t). The largest growth was seen on the African continent, with production in seven countries rising by four tons or more. South Africa retained its position as the fifth-largest contributor to global production, at 191 t (6,8% of the total). This is 2% lower than 2010 levels.

In 2011, the gold price rose to a record US$1 569 per ounce on the back of increased global uncertainty. The continued fragility of the global economy and debt overhangs in advanced economies, together with vulnerable housing and equity markets, continued to force policy makers in advanced economies to be cautious, which continued to support rising gold prices.

The Council for Scientific and Industrial Research announced in August 2012 that it had developed a process to manufacture titanium powder for industrial and medical applications. This is an important step forward for South Africa's drive to establish a new industry that will add value to locally mined titanium, instead of exporting it.

The gold mining sector remained a key contributor to the South African economy in 2011 and accounted for R68,9 billion in foreign currency earnings or 10,7% of total merchandise exports, and about 2% of GDP. Approximately 5% of production was sold locally at a value of R3,6 billion, while the balance of production (95%) was exported at a value of R65,3 billion.

In 2011, the local gold mining industry employed 145 561 people, with employees earning R20,9 billion in salaries and wages. The industry further invested R11,8 billion in capital expenditure in the country in 2011.

## Coal

The global coal production market was negatively affected by the natural disasters in Japan and Australia in 2011. South Africa was unable to fill the export gap from these regions, as it still experienced rail-capacity constraints.

In 2011, South African coal production decreased by 1,7% to 252,8 million (M) t. Total coal sales by value increased by 23% from 2010, to an amount of R87,8 billion. Approximately 72% of production was sold locally at a value of R37,3 billion, while the balance of production (28%) was exported at a value of R50,5 billion.

The coal sector accounted for 7,7% of merchandise exports in 2011, making it the fourth largest component after platinum group metals, gold and iron ore. Exports from the Richards Bay Coal Terminal increased to 65,5 Mt in 2011, but still short of its full potential at 91 Mt.

In 2011, the number of people employed in the local coal mining industry increased by 6%

to 78 580, with employees earning R16,1 billion in salaries and wages.

## Platinum group metals

The platinum group metals sector is one of the largest components of the South African mining sector, measured in GDP, export earnings and contribution to the economy.

In 2011, the platinum group metals industry generated R84 billion in sales, was responsible for 36% of the country's mining exports (17% of total merchandise exports) and had significant direct, indirect and induced multipliers into the rest of the economy, which made it a significant contributor to the fiscus.

The sector took strain in 2011. On the demand side, it experienced material surpluses of product and depressed demand, resulting in depressed prices.

On the supply side, the industry experienced high operating costs, which led to a significant portion of local producers being in a marginal position, given current prices.

The following challenges were identified:

- high cost structures of the platinum group metals mining sector
- platinum surplus as a result of weakness in the European market, further exacerbated by the increased availability of scrap and recycled metal
- low price of platinum group metals
- substitution of platinum by palladium
- declining competitiveness of the sector.

Stakeholders agreed to explore practical solutions to reduce costs and improve the viability of the sector, through strategic partnerships and a collective vision.

In 2011, South Africa's platinum group metals production increased marginally by 2,6% from 244,2 t to 250,6 t.

Platinum production increased by 4,7% to 151 t. South Africa accounted for 83,8% of primary rhodium production, 74,9% of primary platinum production and 34,8% of primary palladium production. Local production of platinum group metals in 2011 was essentially in line with 2010, despite a challenging environment.

The platinum group metals sector employed 194 479 people in 2011, an increase of 7% from 2010, with employees earning R30,5 billion in salaries and wages.

## Platinum

The global platinum market swung into oversupply of approximately 13,4 t in 2011.

Recycling rose by 12% to 62,2 t. Gross demand for platinum, excluding recycling, increased by 2% from 245,9 t to 251,8 t, due to heavy purchasing demand in the glass and petrochemical industries.

Platinum demand in heavy-duty diesels increased, but was offset by a drop in light-duty diesel vehicles and reduced buying from Japanese manufacturers.

Given that Europe is the South African platinum group metals mining industry's biggest market (accounting for 27% of global platinum demand), the sovereign debt crisis in the eurozone and the resulting recession in that region materially affected the local platinum group metals industry.

Jewellery demand remained strong at 77 t, up 2% from its 2010 levels.

The platinum price in 2011 averaged US$1 721 per ounce, trading about 7% higher than the 2010 average of US$1 611 per ounce. Platinum reached a high of US$1 887 in August, with a low of US$1 354 in December of the same year.

## Palladium

The global supply of palladium in 2011 remained at 228,9 t. Increased production from North America and Zimbabwe was off-set by a drop in sales from Russian state inventories.

South African palladium production decreased by 3% from 82,1 t in 2010, to 79,6 t in 2011.

Gross palladium demand, excluding recycling, decreased by 13% in 2011, to 262,8 t. A strong automotive sector, however, pushed up gross palladium demand by 8% to 187,6 t in 2011.

Gross jewellery demand decreased by 15% from 18,5 t in 2010 to 15,7 t in 2011.

The palladium price in 2011 averaged US$733 per ounce, trading about 39% higher than the 2010 average of US$526 per ounce. A deep sell-off in the exchange-traded fund market and the perception of weaker fundamentals caused the palladium price to fall from its highs of US$850 during the first three quarters of 2011, to trade at US$700 for the rest of the year.

## Rhodium

Despite a growth in demand, the rhodium market remained in surplus in 2011 by 0,4 t, as a result of higher supplies and recycling. A modest growth in demand was outpaced by a rise in supplies and higher volumes of metal recovered from scrap autocatalysts.

Total supply grew by 4% to 23,8 t, largely due to increased supplies from North America and Zimbabwe. South African rhodium increased by 1,4% to 19,9 t, from 19,7 t in 2010.

Gross demand for rhodium increased by 2,1% in 2011 to 28,2 t, due to capacity-building in the glass industry and investment in a new rhodium exchange-traded fund.

The first physically backed rhodium exchange-traded fund was launched by Germany's Deutsche Bank in May 2011, and attracted steady new investment (on aggregate) of 529 t for the year.

Gross autocatalyst demand decreased by 2% to 22,1 t due to lower output by Japanese car manufacturers. This was caused by the earthquake in Japan in March 2011, which vastly affected vehicle production and hence rhodium purchases for use in autocatalysts. Japanese manufacturers are the largest users of rhodium in gasoline after-treatment processes.

The rhodium price in 2011 averaged US$2 022 per ounce, trading about 18% lower than the 2010 average of US$2 458 per ounce. The rhodium price reflected weaker fundamentals, reaching a two-and-a-half year low of US$1 400 by the end of 2011.

## Chromite

In 2011, South Africa's chromite production decreased by 1,4% to 10,7 Mt. Domestic sales grew by 29% to R5,4 million from R4,2 million in the previous year, while export sales grew by 32% from R2,5 million to R3,2 million in 2011. Total sales increased by 30% to R8,6 million.

The sector employed 16 389 people, and paid R2,7 billion in salaries and wages.

In May 2012, the South African Chamber of Commerce and Industry introduced a new scale on which copper theft is measured – the Copper Theft Volume Indicator. According to the indicator, the amount of copper stolen in South Africa dropped from R27 million in April 2012 to R23 million in May 2012. This translates into 356 tons stolen in May 2012, almost 16% less than April 2012.

## Ferrous minerals

South Africa plays a significant role as a source of ferrous minerals. The country is the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and manganese ores, and a minor producer of ferrosilicon and silicon metal. Ferrous minerals are produced from some 32 mines and 23 ferroalloys smelters.

Over the last decade, increasing portions of the production of chrome, manganese and vanadium ore have been processed to value-added alloys in line with the drive for beneficiation, whereas the bulk of growth in iron ore production has been exported.

## Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company at the town of Phalaborwa in the Limpopo province, is South Africa's only producer of refined copper. Producing about 80 000 t per year, it supplies most of South Africa's copper needs and exports the balance.

Useful byproduct metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite and nickel sulphate as well as small quantities of gold, silver and platinum. Palabora's large block cave copper mine and smelter complex employs approximately 2 200 people.

Palabora also owns a nearby vermiculite deposit, which is mined and processed for sale worldwide. Vermiculite is a versatile industrial

mineral with hundreds of uses. Palabora is South Africa's leading copper producer. Located 360 km north-east of Pretoria, close to the Kruger National Park, Palabora is also a major source of vermiculite and baddeleyite (zirconium oxide).

In 2011, South African copper production increased by 7% to 89 300 t. Domestic sales grew by 25% to R3,9 million from R3,2 million in the previous year, while export sales grew by 24% from R1,2 million to R1,5 million.

The international copper spot price fell to an average of about R62 498 per metric ton in June 2012, from about R66 638 in May 2012, and about R69 564 in March 2012.

## Iron ore

In 2011, South Africa produced 58,1 Mt of iron ore, which was 1,2% lower than the previous year's total. Domestic sales decreased by 7% to 9,8 Mt, while export sales grew by 9% to 58,4 Mt. Local sales were valued at R4,2 billion, while export sales realised R58,4 billion.

Total iron ore sales grew by 44% overall to R62,7 billion, making iron ore the fourth-largest component of the South African mining industry by sales value. Iron ore exports accounted for 9% of total merchandise exports. In 2011, the sector employed 22 343 people and paid R6,5 billion in salaries and wages.

## Manganese

South Africa accounted for 24% of the global manganese production in 2011, followed by China (20%) and Australia (17%).

In 2011, local manganese production increased by 21% to 8,7 Mt. Of the total production, 6,8 Mt was exported at a value of R8,6 billion, while the balance was sold domestically at a value of R1,3 billion. The export sales value decreased by 5% compared to 2010. This was owing to a 19% drop in the price received per ton, from R1 560 to R1 265.

The sector employed 7 356 employees in 2011 (25% up from 2010), and paid a total of R1,3 billion in salaries and wages.

## Diamonds

The diamond industry continued to improve in 2011. With an estimated 75% of cut diamonds destined for North America, Japan and Europe, the growth in these regions has driven up demand, together with a higher demand in China and India.

Leading producers by value are Botswana (27%), Russia (19%), Canada (18%) and South Africa (12%). South African diamond production decreased by 20% from 8,9 million carats in 2010 to seven million carats in 2011. The value of rough diamonds produced rose significantly by 26% to approximately R14,4 billion.

In 2011, global diamond retail sales rose by 18% to US$70,8 billion, with the United States of America (USA) market accounting for 38%, Japan 8%, India 12%, China 11% and Hong Kong 2%.

The value of the diamond content in retail jewellery sales in 2011 appreciated by 29% to US$23,6 billion, with R22,6 billion from recently mined rough diamonds or inventories.

Hence, the balance of R1 billion in value, as estimated by the International Diamond Exchange, is from recycled diamonds, which represents approximately 4,4% of all polished diamonds sold at polished wholesale prices. Pipeline participants therefore need to bear this factor in mind, especially when estimating supply-and-demand trends.

The Kimberley Process Certification Scheme figures show that global production is not growing in volume, but that demand is driving up prices.

The International Diamond Exchange price index estimated diamond prices appreciating strongly by 17% in 2011. Even with the strong performance during 2011, polished diamond price gains remained in line with their long-term compound annual growth rate of about 4% annually.

Factors positively affecting diamond prices include:

- consumer demand growth in the USA, Chinese and Indian markets

- re-stocking of diamonds and diamond jewellery by retailers in virtually all markets
- higher rough diamond prices, which were passed along, in part, throughout the diamond pipeline.

In 2011, the number of people employed in the local diamond mining industry increased by 5% to 12 030, with employees earning R2,1 billion in salaries and wages.

## Industrial minerals

There are some 680 producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, of which almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are some 153 producers of clays (brick-making and special), 40 limestone and dolomite, 79 dimension stone, 28 salt and 20 silica producers. The bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

In 2011, South African aggregate sand production decreased by 0,6% to 52,3 Mt, though the sales value increased by 5% to R4 million. The sector employed 7 086 people and paid a total of R737 739 in salaries and wages.

## Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved, and along with them mineral deposits.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved. Ten of the more significant geological formations in South Africa are discussed below.

## Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is found south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga. The renowned Barberton Greenstone Belt, the largest of its kind in South Africa, contains remnants of original crust, dated at around 3,5 billion years old.

The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface. Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae. Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old. Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite and verdite are mined in the area.

## Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the Witwatersrand (Ridge of White Waters) are world famous. Nearly half of all the gold ever mined has come from the extensive Witwatersrand conglomerate reefs that were discovered in 1886, not far from Johannesburg's city centre. The Witwatersrand is the greatest goldfield known to mankind. More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the southwest, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates. These "gold reefs" were formed from gravels transported into the basin and reworked 2,75 billion years ago. The gold and uranium originated from a rich source in the hinterland.

It is estimated that the Karoo Basin contains 485 trillion cubic feet of gas – nearly 14 trillion $m^3$. In September, Cabinet approved the lifting of a moratorium on the exploration of this gas via hydraulic fracturing (fracking). While licences could be issued under certain circumstances, the task team suggested that:

- SKA South Africa work closely with the department to ensure that the project is not compromised
- ongoing research be carried out on the environmental impact of fracking
- new, better methods for exploration are developed.

## Bushveld Complex and escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km$^2$ and reaches up to eight kilometres in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, platinum group metals and vanadium.

This mega-complex was emplaced in a molten state about 2 060 billion years ago into pre-existing sedimentary rocks, through several deep feeder zones.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex can best be viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features the iconic Bourke's Luck Potholes, which have become a major tourist attraction. They are actually dolly tubs, a typical erosion form which erodes the rock of the riverbed forming tubs of various sizes resembling cylindrical rock sculptures. The area is also known for the magnificent Blyde River Canyon and the dolomite formation in which giant stromatolites bear witness to the 2,5-billion-year-old fossiled remains of vast oxygen-producing algae growth.

## Drakensberg Escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, reaching heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones. Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, which covers 243 000 hectares, has been declared a world heritage site. More than 40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

## Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and for their early dinosaur evolution. During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

## Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered "yellow ground" from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley. At increasing depths, less-weathered "blue ground" that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa's economic

and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

Kimberlite originates as magma from very deep below the surface, and typically occurs as small volcanic pipes and craters at the surface. Included within solidified kimberlites are fragments of deep-seated rocks and minerals, including rare diamonds of various sizes.

The Orange and Vaal rivers' alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

## Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth.

One such site is the Vredefort Dome, the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth. The Vredefort Dome is on the world heritage list. It lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

This spectacular and complex geological feature, measuring 70 km across, was caused by the impact of a 10-km wide asteroid some two billion years ago. Only a partial ring of hills remains of the dome, created by the rebound of rock below the asteroid's impact site. The original crater – now eroded – is estimated to have been between 250 km and 300 km in diameter.

The Vredefort structure comprises a core zone of granitic rocks, surrounded by a ring-like collar zone of younger bedded formations. Only the north-western portion of the structure remains visible. The south-eastern half was flooded by sediments of the Karoo Supergroup, which cover the Free State.

About 40 km north of Pretoria is a small bowl-shaped meteorite-impact crater, termed Tswaing. Just one kilometre in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite of about 50 m wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

## Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg Complex and National Park, located some 120 km north-west of Johannesburg in North West, is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world.

The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and volcanic breccias can be seen.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures created during the collapse of the volcano.

There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

## Cradle of Humankind

This world heritage site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover's Lake, all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research.

## Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

Table Mountain is arguably South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group, which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded about 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain

Group, which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak. Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.

## Conclusion

South Africa's mining sector has a current conservative in situ value estimated at US$2,5 trillion with an economically exploitable lifespan of 150 years. Starting from this premise, together with its social partners, organised labour, other state departments and business, the Department of Mineral Resources has developed a growth and transformation strategy that identifies binding constraints to the sector's growth potential.

The process not only unpacked the realistic growth potential of South Africa's mining industry, but also recognised factors responsible for poor performance and exposed key issues that hold back the growth, competitiveness and transformation potential of the sector.

This strategy contains a set of recommendations encompassing solutions that can realistically unleash the mining sector's real growth, employment and transformation potential to enable the sector to become a key growth industry for South Africa.

Beneficiation is one of the components of the growth strategy, since it has the potential to create jobs and contribute to economic development. With government's target of 16 million people employed by 2014 and considering that about 500 000 of the more than 13 million employed citizens work in the mining sector, growing and diversifying the mining and minerals sector is crucial to meeting employment targets. The beneficiation strategy, approved by Cabinet, entails the transformation of minerals to a higher value product, which can either be consumed locally or exported.

The mining industry's competitiveness to a large extent depends on the degree to which it adopts green technologies and sound environmental practices. The sector therefore needs to balance sustainability with growth. To this end, through the implementation of more stringent regulations, the industry has become safer, as well as more socially and environmentally conscious.

Companies are required to allow for environmental trust funds and rehabilitation of disturbed land. There is also a R70-million project in place to solve the legacy problem of acid mine drainage.

The department continues to emphasise the importance of mining operations being conducted in a healthy and safe environment. To achieve this, it will ensure that mines adopt a leading practice, as well as taking critical steps to enhance health and safety.

The Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 is being reviewed to strengthen enforcement provisions, reinforce penalties, provide clarity in certain definitions and expressions and effect amendments to ensure consistency with other laws, particularly the MPRDA, 2002.

The goal is ultimately to ensure maximum benefit from the country's mineral wealth to all South Africans, including the poorest of the poor.

## Acknowledgements

Chamber of Mines
Council for Geoscience
Department of Mineral Resources
Eskom
*Estimates of National Expenditure*, 2012
*Mid-Term Review of the Priorities of Government*
*Mineral Resources 2012/13 Medium-Term Expenditure Framework Strategy Plan*
*Mining Weekly*

*www.bullion.org.za*
*www.cef.org.za*
*www.globaldialogue.info*
*www.gov.za*
*www.hartrao.ac.za*
*www.miningweekly.co.za*
*www.murrob.com*
*www.sabcnews.com*
*www.sabinetlaw.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sasol.co.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.goldfacts.org*

## Suggested reading

Bond, P, Dada, R & Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate Change, Carbon Trading and Civil Society: Negative Returns on South African Investments.* Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Gibson, R. 2012. *Battlefields of Gold: How Gold Fields Fought for Survival and Won.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Machens, EW. 2009. *Platinum, Gold and Diamonds: The Adventure of Hans Merensky's Discoveries.* Pretoria: Protea Book House.

Masilo, P & Rautenbach, G. 2008. *Commentary on the Mine Health and Safety Act and Regulations.* Cape Town: Juta.

Mazema, HK et al. 2008. *A Pilot Study into Available Upstream Cleaner Production Technologies for the Petroleum Refining Industry to Meet the Requirements of the Waste Discharge Charge System.* [Gezina]: Water Research Commission.

Ndlovu, PF. 2012. *Diamond Law: Change, Trade and Policy in Context.* Cape Town: Juta.

*Rainmakers & Potstirrers. [2008-].* Sandton: Miningmx.

Royal Bafokeng Administration. Research and Planning Department. 2010. *Mining the Future: The Bafokeng Story.* Johannesburg: Jacana.

Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner Energy, Cooler Climate: Developing Sustainable Energy Solutions for South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Zhao, B et al. 2010. *Evaluation and Validation of Geochemical Prediction Techniques for Underground Coal Mines in the Witbank/Vryheid Regions: Report to the Water Research Commission.[Gezina]:* Water Research Commission.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Justice and Correctional Services

The responsibilities of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development are closely linked to those of the Department of Correctional Services. Both include ensuring a just, peaceful and safe society and both are involved in South Africa's criminal justice and court system.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is responsible for ensuring an accessible justice system that promotes and protects social justice, fundamental human rights and freedoms, thus providing a transparent, responsive and accountable justice for all.

In particular, the department leads government programmes to afford all citizens equal benefit and protection of the law and the realisation of the Bill of Rights. The department also exercises executive oversight in the provision of public defence for citizens from disadvantaged backgrounds.

The Department of Correctional Services is responsible for ensuring a just, peaceful and safe society by detaining inmates in safe custody, while maintaining their human dignity, developing their sense of social responsibility and promoting the general development of all inmates and people subject to community corrections.

South African law is a combination of different legal systems, with its origin in Europe and in Great Britain. Its foundation lies in Roman-Dutch law, which is itself a blend of indigenous Dutch customary law and Roman law. It was this legal system that prevailed in Holland during the 17th and 18th centuries and was introduced into and applied in South Africa after the southernmost tip of the Cape was settled by the Dutch in the 1600s.

When, at the end of the 18th century, the Cape was occupied by the British, Roman-Dutch law was retained and confirmed as the common law of the country. English, however, became the language of the courts and English legal procedures and the English law of evidence in both criminal and civil matters were introduced. As with any other country, the common law has been augmented by statutory law and many of the cases before the court are now concerned with their interpretation and application.

Because of the unique heritage of South African law, and the constitutional imperative to regard comparative law, foreign law is frequently consulted, not as binding but as persuasive authority.

Judicial decisions are themselves a source of law. The decisions of the court are binding on all lower courts.

## The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's mandate from the Constitution is twofold. On the one hand, it seeks to provide a framework for the effective and efficient administration of justice. On the other, it seeks to promote constitutional development through the development and implementation of legislation and programmes that seek to advance and sustain constitutionalism and the rule of law.

At the same time, the department also seeks to provide an enabling environment for the judiciary and constitutional institutions to exercise their constitutional powers and functions freely and independently.

### Legislation and policies

The department derives its statutory mandate from various pieces of legislation in the form of statutes and subordinate legislation. The department administers the Constitution and over 160 principal Acts.

The following are categories of functions, emanating from different legislative instruments relevant to the department:

- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the superior courts, magistrates' courts and special courts: the Constitutional Court Complementary Act, 1995 (Act 13 of 1995), the Supreme Court Act, 1959 (Act 59 of 1959), the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), and the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of judges and other judicial officers, the conditions of service, discipline and training: the Judges Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act, 2001 (Act 47 of 2001), the Judicial Service Commission Act, 1994 (Act 9 of 1994) as amended, the South Af-rican Judicial Education Institute (SAJEI) Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), and the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU); the conduct of criminal proceedings; the investigation of organised crime and corruption; and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means: the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998), the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), the Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996) and the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making: the Legal Aid Act, 1969 (Act 22 of 1969), the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973) and the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of masters of the high courts and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates: the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), and the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936).
- Legislation regulating the provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments: the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957).
- Legislation relating to the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights: the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (Paia), 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), and the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000) better known as the Equality Act, 2000.
- Legislation pertaining to the protection of vulnerable groups: the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), and the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998).
- Legislation providing support to Chapter-9 institutions: the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), and the Public Protector Act, 1994 (Act 23 of 1994).

- Legislation regulating management and control of public expenditure: the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).
- Legislation regulating operations in the public service: the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended.

The following Acts were promulgated in 2012, affecting the execution of the department's mandate:

- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 6 of 2012)
- Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 9 of 2012)
- Judicial Matters Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 11 of 2012)
- Repeal of Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012)
- Sheriffs Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 14 of 2012)

## Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy. It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect them.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of state.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- equality before the law and equal protection and benefit of the law
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life
- the right to human dignity
- the right to freedom and security.

Since 1994, and in keeping with the promotion of a human-rights culture, the focus is progressively shifting from an adversarial and retributive criminal justice system to that of a restorative justice system.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime seeks to consolidate the present legal framework in South Africa relating to the rights of and services provided to victims of crime, and to eliminate secondary victimisation in the criminal justice process.

The ultimate goal is victim empowerment by meeting victims' material or emotional needs.

## Budget and funding

A budget of R15 480 billion was allocated to the department for the 2012/13 financial year. Of this, R5 284 billion was earmarked for the Court Services Programme; R2 816 billion was allocated to the NPA and R1 814 billion to public entities and Chapter-9 institutions. Growth in 2012/13 was driven by increased provisions for appointments of judges and magistrates, the carry-through cost of salary increases, planned Information Technology (IT) upgrades and funding for the building of two high courts and other court infrastructure.

## Role players

### Legal Aid South Africa (Lasa)

Lasa provides legal aid or makes legal aid available to indigent people within the budget allocated to it by the State.

Its full-time legal staff is stationed at 64 justice centres, 13 high courts and 64 satellite offices countrywide. Lasa also makes use of "judicare", a system whereby lawyers in private practice are instructed to perform work in return for a set fee. Judicare is used in situations where there is conflict of interest, where specialist skills are needed and to maintain a mixed delivery system.

Lasa's achievements in 2012 included:

- Quality legal services were delivered in approximately 429 000 new legal matters, comprising 382 419 (89%) criminal and 47 060 (11%) civil matters.
- Children were assisted in 27 960 matters

(80% criminal and 20% civil). The number of matters decreased slightly in comparison to 2010/11.
- General advice services were rendered to 256 681 clients.
- A fully operational client call centre, which facilitated telephonic access of first-level legal assistance, led to 46 025 clients being assisted (18% of general advice matters).

Lasa continued to participate in the Case Backlog Courts Project by providing legal aid at district and regional backlog courts. It also maintained strong governance and financial management platforms that ensured a 10th unqualified audit with no matters of emphasis.

### Special Investigating Unit (SIU)

The SIU is an independent statutory body that is accountable to Parliament and the President. It was established by the President, conducts investigations at his request, and reports to him on the outcomes.

The SIU was created in terms of the SUI Act, 1996. The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry in that the President refers cases to it by issuing a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section 2 of the SIU Act, 1996 including:
- serious maladministration in connection with the affairs of any state institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any state institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property
- any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on state property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property
- corruption in connection with the affairs of any state institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has cause or may cause serious harm to the interest of the public or any category thereof.

The SIU can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it discovers during an investigation. For example, it can obtain a court order to:
- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts when the proper procedures were not followed
- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

The SIU litigates its cases in the Special Tribunal, a specialised court that deals specifically with its cases. This avoids some of the delays usually associated with civil litigation. The focus of the SIU is the public sector, but it also deals with private-sector accomplices. It can investigate private-sector matters that cause substantial harm to the interest of the public.

As the focus of the SIU is on civil litigation, it does not have the power to arrest or prosecute suspects. When it uncovers evidence of criminal activity, it hands a court-ready docket to the SAPS and/or the Hawks.

The SIU works closely with the NPA to ensure that prosecutions take place as soon as possible. It also works with the AFU in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

By February 2013, the capacity of the SIU had increased from 70 staff members to more than 600.

Between 2009 and the end of 2012, the President signed 34 proclamations directing the SIU to investigate allegations of corruption, fraud or maladministration in various government departments and state entities. Criminal investigations had been initiated against 203 accused people in 67 priority cases under investigation by the end of September 2012, with pre-trial proceedings initiated against 191 people.

Some 66 people under investigation were alleged to have received R5 million or more through corruption, and orders for the freezing of assets had been obtained against 46 people.

### South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC)

The SALRC is an independent statutory body, established by the SALRC Act, 1973, which advises government on law reform. The members of the SALRC are appointed by the Pres-

ident on the recommendation of the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development.

The SALRC is chaired by a judge and consists of members from the judiciary, legal professions and academic institutions. It conducts research with reference to all branches of South African law to make recommendations to government for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform of the law. This includes the following functions:

- repealing obsolete or unnecessary provisions
- removing anomalies
- bringing about uniformity in the law
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- making common law more readily available.

To achieve its objectives, the SALRC is drawing up a programme in which matters requiring consideration are included and submitted to the Minister for approval. Recent SALRC programmes included:

- statute law: establishing a simplified, coherent and accessible statute book
- statutory law revision: redundancy, obsoleteness and constitutionality of legislation
- reviewing the Interpretation Act, 1957 (Act 33 of 1957)
- arbitration
- family mediation
- family law and the law of persons
- custody of and access to minor children
- review of aspects of matrimonial property law
- Hindu marriages
- sexual offences: adult prostitution
- assisted decision-making for adults with impaired decision-making capacity
- prescription periods
- review of the law of evidence
- hearsay and relevance
- electronic evidence
- review of administration orders
- specific civil action in respect of consequential damages arising from hoaxes
- administration of estates
- review of witchcraft legislation
- multidisciplinary legal practices
- expungement of certain criminal records
- the practice of ukuthwala (child abduction and forced child marriages).

### National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa (NPA)

South African society post-1994 has been marked by profound political changes and the establishment of progressive legislation, policies and programmes that have served to lay the basis for a new society. Key milestones along the way have been the adoption of the Constitution in 1996 that outlined the formation of the NPA and Section 179 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, which created a single NPA.

Also vital within the criminal justice system was the formation of the Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions, established in 1998.

The Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions consists of deputy national directors and special directors of public prosecution who head the following specialised units:

- Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit (Soca)
- Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU)
- Priority Crimes Litigation Unit
- Office for Witness Protection.

In December 2012, Nomgcobo Jiba was appointed as acting National Director of Public Prosecutions.

In 2011/12, courts finalised 216 cybercrime cases, with a conviction rate of 87,5%. In this time, the Anti-Corruption Task Team also finalised 175 cases with charges of corruption involving 182 justice, crime prevention and security officials.

### National Prosecutions Service

A significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the National Prosecutions Service, the organisation's biggest unit. The National Prosecutions Service is headed by the deputy directors of public prosecutions. They head the respective regional jurisdictions, which are attached to the high courts of the country.

All the public prosecutors and state advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the directors of public prosecutions in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

### Office for Witness Protection

The Office for Witness Protection provides a support service to the criminal justice system by protecting threatened or intimidated witnesses and related people by placing them under protection, thus ensuring that they testify in criminal and other defined proceedings. The Office for Witness Protection has a proud record of no witnesses or family members in the programme being harmed or threatened since the office was established.

### Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU)

The AFU focuses on restraining and forfeiting the proceeds of crime or property used to commit crime. The unit has two major strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law
- build capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to have a real effect in the fight against crime.

The unit convicted 150 officials for corruption in 2011/12, a conviction rate of 73%. Assets worth R533,4 million were seized in 2011/12, bringing the total of seized assets over the past 13 years to R5 billion. About R150 million recovered by the unit were allocated from the Criminal Assets Recovery Account to the Anti-Corruption Task Team to intensify its investigative capacity.

### Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU)

Professor Ann Skelton, a South African advocate and the director of the Centre for Child Law at the University of Pretoria, was named one of three laureates of the 2012 World's Children's Prize in August 2012, in honour of her work over the past 25 years to protect the rights of children affected by the South African justice system.

The SCCU was established in 1999 as a pilot project to combat the deteriorating situation pertaining to commercial crime. The unit aims to reduce commercial crime by the effective investigation and prosecution of complex commercial crime.

The SCCU's mandate is to effectively prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

### Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

This specialist unit is mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. It was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director of Public Prosecutions. The primary function of the unit is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statute of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecution of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

### Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit (Soca)

Soca acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law. Soca aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children

- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence
- ensure access to maintenance support
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the Soca's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and gender-based violence is the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs).

TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high. These one-stop facilities are aimed at reducing secondary victimisation, improving conviction rates and reducing the cycle time for finalisation of rape cases.

Further, the TCCs ensure that service providers are available to a rape survivor in one location, rather than the victim being shuttled around through the criminal justice system.

The TCCs aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical-care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly way.

By July 2012, there were 52 operational TCCs in the country. In March 2013, Soca, in partnership with various state departments and USAID, launched the Increasing Services for Survivors of Sexual Assault Programme to enhance the role of the TCCs.

The project is supported by the roll-out of victim support rooms in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence. By April 2012, there were 803 police stations with victim support rooms nationwide. These rooms are used for interviews, taking statements and other consultations.

### The Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) units

The FCS units have been reintroduced in all 176 SAPS clusters across the country. There are currently 2 155 detectives placed at these units and they are issued with 1 276 vehicles. Previously, the FCS units consisted of only 1 864 detectives.

R49,5 million was provided to all provinces to capacitate the FCS units with resources. To date, the FCS units have achieved over 363 life sentences, with a conviction rate of 73% for crimes against women above 18 years old and 70,04% for crimes against children under 18 years old.

Some 479 trained detectives who had been transferred to other components and divisions within SAPS in the past have been placed back in the detective services environment. Six courses for training of detective commanders, in which 346 commanders were trained, were presented in the 2011/12 financial year.

### Rules Board for Courts of Law

The Rules Board for the Courts of Law may review existing rules of court from time to time on a regular basis with a view to efficient, expeditious and uniform administration of justice in the Supreme Court of Appeal, high courts and magistrates' courts. Subject to the approval of the Minister, it may enact, amend or repeal rules for the above courts.

The board is headed by a Constitutional Court judge and includes experts in procedural law drawn from the judiciary, legal profession and academic institutions.

Its mandate includes:

- improving and modernising the rules of courts in accordance with technological changes and constitutional imperatives
- addressing challenges to the constitutionality of specific rules and effecting amendments precipitated by such challenges
- simplifying the courts' rules to promote access to justice
- harmonising rules of superior and lower courts
- reviewing the civil justice system to address inadequacies
- conducting legal and comparative research to determine viable solutions
- stimulating discussion with role players and interested and/or affected parties in the process of amending rules
- unifying and harmonising rules, regulations and procedures to transform the courts and to make justice accessible to all.

On 27 April 2013 – Freedom Day – the Protection from Harassment Act come into effect. It is seen as a true testimony of the progress made in safeguarding the rights of all South Africans.

The new law makes it possible for people who believe they are being stalked, harassed via SMS, fax, telegrams and emails to approach the courts for relief. Those hiding behind anonymity to send offensive SMSes will be able to be traced because the Act compels service providers to give the addresses and ID numbers of offenders when asked to do so by courts. Once granted, interim protection orders come into effect immediately.

### Judicial Service Commission

The Judicial Service Commission selects fit and proper people for appointment as judges and investigates complaints about judicial officers. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the Judicial Service Commission publishes a notice giving details of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations. It shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews. Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The interviews are conducted in public, after which the commission deliberates and makes its decisions in private. Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the commission, appoints the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, and the president and deputy president of the Supreme Court of Appeal.

The President appoints other judges on the advice of the commission. In the case of the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

### Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against, judicial officers in the lower courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

In terms of the Magistrates Act, 1993, the Minister appoints a magistrate after consultation with the Magistrates' Commission. The commission also investigates grievances and complaints about magistrates and submits reports and recommendations to the Minister, who in turn tables them in Parliament.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments, misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity, grievances, salary and service conditions, and the training of magistrates.

### South African Board for Sheriffs

Sheriffs are officers of the court appointed to serve and execute court processes and court orders. Sheriffs serve and execute civil-court processes against payment of a fee in accordance with the tariffs determined from time to time by way of rules of courts made by the Rules Board for Courts of Law. The sheriffs are regulated by the South African Board for Sheriffs.

The sheriffs' profession is one of the institutions that requires attention in terms of transformation. Some of the policy initiatives undertaken by the department to transform the sheriffs' sector entail:

- drafting amendments to the sheriffs' regulations to establish objective criteria for the appointment of sheriffs
- developing and implementing progressive measures to ensure that communities living in underdeveloped areas have equal access to the services of a sheriff to enjoy the equal benefit and protection of the law as required by the Constitution
- modernising the criminal justice system
- implementing training and capacity-enhance-

ment programmes to establish an accountable and competent sheriffs' profession that respects and protects human rights and Batho Pele.

### South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC)

As the independent national human rights institution, the SAHRC was created to support constitutional democracy by promoting, protecting and monitoring the attainment of everyone's human rights in South Africa without fear, favour or prejudice.

The values of the SAHRC are integrity, honesty, respect, objectivity, the Batho Pele principles, and equality.

Each year, the SAHRC requires relevant organs of state to provide it with information on the measures taken towards the realisation of the rights contained in the Bill of Rights concerning housing, healthcare, food, water, social security, education and the environment.

The SAHRC has additional powers and functions prescribed by specific legislative obligations in terms of the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994; the Paia, 2000 and the Equality Act, 2000.

The commission has to:

- promote awareness of the statutes
- monitor compliance with the statutes
- report to Parliament in relation to these statutes
- develop recommendations on persisting challenges related to these statutes and any necessary reform.

The SAHRC is actively involved in ensuring the ratification of international and regional human-rights instruments by, among other things, advocating for the domestication of human-rights instruments.

At international level, the SAHRC is recognised by the United Nations (UN) Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights as an A-status national human rights institution. As an A-status institution, the SAHRC has adhered to the Paris Principles, which are the guiding principles that set out the nature and functioning of a national human rights institution. These principles emphasise the independent nature of national human rights institutions and guide the manner in which the SAHRC conducts its work. The principles state further that national human-rights institutions should:

- monitor any situation involving the violation of human rights
- advise government and Parliament on specific violations
- educate and inform on issues of human rights
- use their quasi-judicial powers where violations exist.

### Public Protector

Section 182 of the Constitution mandates the Public Protector to:

- investigate any conduct in state affairs, or in the public administration in any sphere of government, that is alleged or suspected to be improper or to result in any impropriety or prejudice
- report on that conduct
- take appropriate remedial action
- be accessible to all people and communities.

Eight Batho Pele principles were developed to serve as acceptable policy and legislative framework regarding service delivery in the Public Service. These service-delivery principles are aligned with the Constitutional ideals of:

- promoting and maintaining high standards of professional ethics
- providing service impartially, fairly, equitably and without bias
- using resources efficiently and effectively
- responding to people's needs; the citizens are encouraged to participate in policy-making
- rendering an accountable, transparent, and development-oriented public administration.

The eight Batho Pele principles are:

1. Consultation
2. Setting service standards
3. Increasing access
4. Ensuring courtesy
5. Providing information
6. Openness and transparency
7. Redress
8. Value for money.

The Public Protector has additional legislative powers contained in about 16 statutes. Among other things, it must resolve disputes or grievances involving the State through mediation, consultation, negotiation and any other remedies. It also has a mandate to enforce executive ethics, the Paia, 2000, the Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000), and the Prevention and Combatting of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004).

The only matters excluded from the mandate of the Public Protector are court decisions, judicial functions and matters outside the public sector.

The office of the Public Protector investigated 20 219 complaints in 2011/12 and 5 609 complaints carried over from the previous financial year, of which 16 509 were finalised.

### South African Judicial Education Institute (SAJEI)

The SAJEI Act, 2008 established the institute to provide independent judicial education for judicial officers.

The SAJEI is responsible for the formal training of magistrates and legal practitioners in this legislation and other areas of judicial work.

The purpose of the SAJEI is to promote the independence, impartiality, dignity, accessibility and effectiveness of the courts by providing judicial education for judicial officers.

In carrying out this function, the SAJEI is primarily directed and controlled by the judiciary. The institute provides education and training for aspirant and newly appointed judicial officers and ongoing legal education and training for experienced judicial officers.

The training of judges and magistrates began in January 2012, and by May the SAJEI had trained 666 judges and magistrates on various aspects of judicial work.

## Court services

### Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – that are subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court.

There are voluntary associations of advocates such as the General Council of the Bar and other formations of independent bars. There are four regional societies for attorneys, each made up of a number of provinces. A practising attorney is *ipso jure* (by the operation of the law) a member of at least one of these societies, which seek to promote the interests of the profession. The Law Society of South Africa is a voluntary association established to coordinate the various regional societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can appear in any court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's lower courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the superior courts.

Attorneys who wish to represent their clients in the High Court are required to apply to the registrar of a provincial division of the High Court. Such an attorney may also appear in the Constitutional Court. All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney, should a person not be qualified and accepted as an attorney yet. One of these is that people who intend to be admitted as attorneys, and who have satisfied certain degree requirements prescribed in the Act, are exempted from service under articles or clerkship. However, such persons must satisfy the society concerned that they have at least five years' appropriate legal experience.

State law advisers give legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the Minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

### Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of state at all levels of government.

The judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court binds all organs of state and people to whom it applies.

The Constitution provides for the following courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal
- high courts, including any High Court of Appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either high courts or magistrates' courts.

There are also special income tax courts, the Labour Court and the Labour Appeal Court, the Land Claims Court, the Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, divorce courts, small claims courts, "military courts" and equality courts.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the Supreme Court of Appeal and the high courts are an important source of law. These courts uphold and enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all state organs and all people.

The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and develop common law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of Rights.

The statistics of cases finalised by the lower courts in 2011/12 declined when compared to the outputs realised in 2010/11. Some 448 760 criminal court cases were finalised by all courts in 2011/12, slightly down from 460 791 in 2010/11. However, the average conviction rate in South Africa's courts for 2011/12 remained high and increased from 88,3% in 2010/11 to 88,8% in 2011/12.

### Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court, situated in Johannesburg, is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

In September 2011, Justice Mogoeng Mogoeng was appointed Chief Justice.

In 2011/12, the Constitutional Court received 123 new applications. In addition, three cases were awaiting direction (old and new applications), 97 matters were dismissed and 35 judgments were given.

### Supreme Court of Appeal

The Supreme Court of Appeal, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all matters other than constitutional ones. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the Supreme Court of Appeal, and 23 other judges of appeal. The Supreme Court of Appeal has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court. Justice Lex Mpati is the President of the Supreme Court of Appeal.

Decisions of the Supreme Court of Appeal are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

In 2011/12, 119 criminal appeals were enrolled and 83 were finalised; 222 new petitions were enrolled and 189 finalised. Addition-

ally, 601 civil appeals were enrolled, and 259 were finalised, 412 new petitions were enrolled and 427 were finalised.

### High courts

A high court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area. These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty.

Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

There are 13 high courts:

- the Eastern Cape High Court has four branches, located in Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, Mthatha and Bhisho
- the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein
- Gauteng has two high courts, one in Pretoria (North Gauteng) and one in Johannesburg (South Gauteng)
- KwaZulu-Natal also has two high courts, in Pietermaritzburg and in Durban
- the Limpopo High Court in Thohoyandou
- the Northern Cape High Court in Kimberley
- the North West High Court in Mafikeng
- the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town.

In 2011/12, high courts enrolled 27 804 new civil matters for trial and finalised 28 886 (which included settlements and withdrawals). The high courts received 104 884 new motion applications and finalised 82 431 matters.

In 2011/12, the high courts received 902 first-appearance criminal matters and finalised 1 130 cases, as opposed to 2010/11, when 1 039 first-appearance criminal matters were enrolled and 1 027 were finalised.

### Specialist high courts

The following specialist high courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- The Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng, which adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively.
- The Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng, which hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws.
- The Competition Appeal Court, situated in Cape Town, which deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal.
- The Electoral Court, situated in Bloemfontein, which sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes.
- The Tax Court, situated in Pretoria, which deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

### Labour and Labour Appeal Court

The Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court received 11 235 new cases in the 2011/12 financial year and finalised 6 553 matters. This included referrals from the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration, urgent applications and petitions.

### Land Claims Court

In 2010/11, the Land Claims Court enrolled 197 new matters and finalised 248 matters. In 2011/12, 187 new matters were enrolled (Act 22 of 1994, Act 3 of 1996 and Act 62 of 1997 matters). The court finalised 141 matters.

### Circuit local divisions

These itinerant courts, each presided over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically conduct hearings at remote areas outside the seat of the High Court designated by the Judge President of the provincial division concerned. This is with a view to enhancing access to justice.

### Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine regional court presidents and 351 regional court magistrates.

The regional courts by virtue of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 31 of 2008), adjudicate civil disputes. The

Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development, with effect from August 2010, established a court for each regional division for the purposes of adjudicating over civil disputes. In addition, the Minister appointed within each regional division the places (64 in total) of holding court for adjudicating civil disputes.

The divorce courts were subsumed under the regional-court divisions. The divorce court rules made under Section 10(4) of the Administration Amendment Act, 1929 (Act 9 of 1929) were repealed from 15 October 2010. The regional courts therefore started adjudicating divorce matters from 15 October 2010. This has addressed the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel to remote courts to get legal redress.

The Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 will, in the medium to long term, reduce the workload in the high courts. In this way, divorce and other family-law matters and civil disputes of an amount determined from time to time is within the jurisdiction of regional courts. This means that attorneys have the opportunity to represent their clients in matters where they ordinarily brief counsel, thus reducing the cost of litigation and increasing access to justice.

In 2010/11, the regional courts enrolled 75 428 new criminal cases (first appearances) and finalised 39 078 cases. In 2011/12, 68 211 new matters were enrolled and 40 242 matters were finalised. The regional courts managed to finalise 7% more matters compared to the previous year. This included old and new matters.

### Magistrates' courts

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development may divide the country into magisterial districts and create regional divisions consisting of districts.

The country is divided into 384 magisterial districts (18 subdistricts), 384 main magistrates' offices (18 detached courts), 90 branch courts and 235 periodical courts. The magisterial districts are still informed by the pre-1994 demarcations of the defunct self-governing states and South African territory. Processes are underway to align the magisterial districts in accordance with the constitutional dispensation.

In the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's *Strategic Plan 2013 – 2018*, 24 of the 90 branch courts were identified for rehabilitation into full-service courts by 2014. Of these 24 branch courts, 19 had been converted into full-service courts by 2012. Additional funding was being sourced to upgrade and convert the outstanding six branch courts by 2014, with half of these courts envisaged for completion in 2013.

This system has streamlined, simplified and provided uniform court-management systems applicable throughout South Africa, in terms of judicial provincial boundaries.

It has also facilitated the separation of functions pertaining to the judiciary, prosecution and administration; enhanced and developed the skills and training of judicial officers; optimised the use of limited resources equitably; and addressed imbalances in the former homeland regions.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act, 1993, all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service. The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary.

In addition, full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services.

The Ashton Magistrate's Court was opened in May 2012, with the Ntuzuma Magistrate's Court in KwaZulu-Natal, followed by the Palm Ridge Magistrate's Court in Gauteng in August 2012 and the Tsakane Magistrate's Court in Gauteng in March 2013. Six branch courts, namely Atteridgeville, Tsakane and Sebokeng in Gauteng, Secunda in Mpumalanga and Orkney and Stilfontein in North West, were expected to be proclaimed as full services courts by the end of 2012.

In 2010/11, district courts enrolled 800 896 new criminal cases (first appearances) and finalised 412 857 cases. In 2011/12, 748 231 new matters were enrolled and 400 991 final-

ised. District courts managed to finalise 2% more matters than the previous year. This included old and new matters.

### Small claims courts

Small claims courts were established to adjudicate small civil claims. They were created to eliminate the time-consuming adversary procedures before and during the trial of these claims. The limit of cases involving civil claims in these courts is R12 000.

In 2011/12, 118 889 litigants chose to use small claims courts to settle their disputes.

In June 2012, Gauteng became the first province to achieve "wall-to-wall" small claims court coverage in each of its 28 magisterial districts.

Most of the 23 small claims courts established in 2011/12 were in rural areas, including Botsabelo, Nongoma, Ingwavuma, Umbombo, Ganyesa, Bloemhof, Balfour, Mamelodi, Matatiele and Cala.

Some 79 Legal Aid South Africa practitioners joined the ranks of 1 370 small claims court commissioners. A further 25 were expected to join by the end of 2012.

Matters within small claims courts are presided over by commissioners who are usually practising advocates or attorneys, a legal academic or other competent person. The service is voluntary as commissioners are paid no fees.

In 2010/11, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development appointed 229 commissioners and 217 advisory board members to assist small claims courts.

Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. The commissioner's decision is final and there is no appeal to a higher court; only a review process is allowed.

The department has developed a national programme for re-engineering small claims courts, which aims to strengthen and roll out such courts to rural and peri-urban areas by pursuing the strategic objectives of:

- providing access for all, especially the poor and the vulnerable
- establishing systems and rules of court that are accessible and easy to understand
- providing trained administrative support staff
- attracting and retaining commissioners.

The department continues to strengthen the capacity of small claims courts. The improvement of the functioning of the small claims courts is a key priority area. Small claims courts constitute an inexpensive tool that was created to settle minor civil disputes in an informal manner.

The establishment of at least one small claims court in every magisterial district is part of the improvements proposed for the civil justice system. The department established 23 new small claims courts in 2011/12. Five additional places of sitting were also proclaimed for existing small claims courts. In 2011/12, 195 new commissioners and eight ad hoc commissioners were appointed, 185 advisory board members were appointed and 28 government notices were published. Eight small claims courts that had been inactive due to a lack of commissioners were revived by the appointment of new commissioners.

By April 2013, there were small claims courts in 248 magisterial districts, 66 more than in 2009. The department worked hard to ensure that the remaining 139 magisterial districts also benefit from using these courts to resolve civil disputes involving claims of less than R12 000.

### Equality courts

The right to equality is protected by law in the

The opening of the Soweto Small Claims Court at the Protea Magistrates' Court in Soweto in April 2013, was a significant milestone in the quest to ensure access to justice for all South Africans. The court, which will be used to settle minor civil disputes and claims between parties in an informal manner without representation by an attorney, forms part of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's commitment to establish a Small Claims Court in every magisterial district country-wide.

Gauteng is the first province to have a Small Claims Court in all of the magisterial districts.

Equality Act, 2000 and the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998). The two Acts work in synergy. The Equality Act, 2000 aims to:

- prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment
- promote equality
- eliminate unfair discrimination
- prevent and prohibit hate speech.

The Act also provides for:

- remedies for victims of any of the above
- compliance with international law obligations, including treaty obligations
- measures to educate the public and raise public awareness about equality.

The department is engaged in the Access to Justice and Promotion of Constitutional Rights Programme. This programme was developed under the framework of the joint European Union (EU)/South Africa Country Strategy Paper and National Indicative Plan, which set out South Africa's development strategy between 2007 and 2013 and identifies the areas to be funded by the EU.

The aim of the programme is to contribute to the promotion, protection and realisation of rights established in the Constitution through the following three key performance areas:

- improving access to justice
- raising awareness of rights
- strengthening participatory democracy.

### Traditional courts

There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) in traditional community areas in rural villages. The judicial functions of traditional leaders are regulated in terms of sections 12 and 20 and Schedule 3 of the repealed Black Administration Act, 1927 (Act 38 of 1927).

The Black Administration Act, 1927 was repealed by the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005 (Act 28 of 2005).

### Community courts

South Africa has established community courts on a pilot basis to provide speedy resolution of certain types of community offences. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

These courts seek to assist the country's court case backlog. Community courts are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses.

The business community and other civil-society formations have contributed significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Thirteen community courts have been established. Four are fully operational and were formally launched in Hatfield, Gauteng; and Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchells Plain and Cape Town in the Western Cape.

Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point) and KwaMashu in KwaZulu-Natal; Mthatha, Eastern Cape; Bloemfontein and Phuthaditjhaba in the Free State; Thohoyandou, Limpopo; Kimberley, Northern Cape; and Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia) in Gauteng.

Lessons from the pilot sites will assist in finalising the policy and legislative framework that will institutionalise community courts as a permanent feature of the judicial system.

### Courts for income-tax offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

Another Sars court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate's Office.

### Pilot sites for family courts

A family court structure and extended family advocate services are priority areas for the department. The establishment of family courts in South Africa was motivated by three broad aims, namely to:

- provide integrated and specialised services to the family as the fundamental unit in society

- facilitate access to justice for all in family disputes
- improve the quality and effectiveness of service delivery to citizens who have family-law disputes.

With the implementation of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 in August 2010, regional courts in South Africa also have jurisdiction to hear family-law cases, including divorce matters.

The department is developing a policy to prioritise family-law services, which include domestic violence, maintenance, divorce and children's court matters, in all courts.

### Criminal jurisdiction of the respective courts

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by district courts is limited to imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000.

A regional court can impose a sentence of not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

Any person charged with any offence committed within any district or regional division may be tried either by the court of that district or by the court of that regional division.

Where it is uncertain in which of several jurisdictions an offence has been committed, it may be tried in any of those jurisdictions.

A magistrate's court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A regional court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences.

Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

The sentencing of "petty" offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment.

Where a court convicts a person of any offence other than one for which any law prescribes a minimum punishment, the court may, at its discretion, postpone the passing of sentence for a period not exceeding five years, and release the convicted person on one or more conditions; or pass sentence, but suspend it on certain conditions.

If the conditions of suspension or postponement are violated, the offender may be arrested and made to serve the sentence. This is done provided that the court may grant an order further suspending the operation of the sentence if offenders prove that circumstances beyond their control, or that any other good and sufficient reason prevented them from complying with the conditions of suspension.

Deputy Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development, Mr Andries Nel, represented the South African Government in a meeting of ministers of justice/attorneys-general in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, on 14 and 15 May 2012.

South Africa joined other member states of the African Union in a meeting to discuss, among other things, the following topics:

- the draft Statute of the African Court of Justice and Human and People's Rights
- the draft Protocol to the Constitutive Act of the African Union Relating to the Pan African Parliament
- the draft model national legislation on universal jurisdiction the progress report of the Commission on the implementation of Assembly decision on the International Criminal Court.

## Areas of legislation

### Sexual offences

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 provides a legal framework to support an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such crimes.

The Intersectoral Committee for the Management of Sexual Offence Matters is a monitoring framework overseen by the most senior

government officials. The purpose of the structure is to eradicate the fragmented nature of service delivery.

The functions of this committee are to develop the National Policy Framework (NPF).

An operational intersectoral committee was established to support the work of the Intersectoral Committee of DGs at operational level.

These departments ensure that there are specialised services to support the victims of crime during court processes.

These include intermediary services, court-preparation services, forensic services, victim-friendly rooms and counselling, and are aimed at eliminating secondary traumatisation of victims.

The department has developed the National Register for Sexual Offenders, which was deployed in 195 courts.

In the past financial year, the Minister tabled the Sexual Offences National Policy Framework in Parliament. However, the gazetting of the NPF had to be stalled to allow the re-opening of the consultative process to include additional inputs from non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and other departments that were coopted as additional members of the Directors-General Intersectoral Committee on the Management of Sexual Offences. The amended policy framework was to be presented to the Interministerial Committee by the end of June 2012 before it being re-tabled in Parliament.

In showing commitment to the capacitation of specialised services in sexual offences, the department commits funds to the progressive procurement of audio-visual court equipment and the establishment of witness testifying rooms every year.

In 2011/12, 335 closed-circuit television cameras, 49 one-way mirrors, 225 child witness testifying rooms and 195 anatomically correct dolls had been supplied. These dolls were a single purchase made last year to assist child witnesses of sexual offences to testify in court with the demonstrative expression of their personal experiences using the dolls.

### National Register for Sex Offenders

The number of registered names of sex offenders on the National Register for Sex Offenders increased from 978 in 2010/11 to 2 340 in 2011/12. This figure clearly indicates a progressive increase in the registration of offenders.

In 2011/12, the Registrar received 39 684 purified names of historical convictions from the SAPS. This was the very first submission of historical convictions made to the Registrar, and is therefore considered to be a huge breakthrough in the registration of this data. Unfortunately, data from other sources that had been identified was not received. The historical data will be purified and captured to be used for vetting purposes and for the issuing of clearance certificates.

### Maintenance

The main objective of the Maintenance Act, 1998 is to facilitate the securing of maintenance moneys from parents and/or other persons able to maintain maintenance beneficiaries, mainly children, who have a right to maintenance.

Parents and/or guardians must maintain children in the proportion in which they can afford. Therefore, both parents and/or sets of families need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the child or children concerned.

The Integrated Case Management System (ICMS) that was piloted in 2010 in two provinces was expected to be rolled out to all the courts in 2011/12. The purpose of the process is to alleviate the issues of collating statistics on different templates and to introduce case flow and diary management of cases. The ICMS process will capture detailed information that will help in collating and analysing statistics accurately, and also assist with case-flow management.

Guidelines for maintenance officials, as well as for the judiciary, have been developed and distributed to all courts for proper and common implementation of the Maintenance Act, 1998. Training has been and will be provided to all officials coming into the system for proper

compliance with the obligations of the Maintenance Act, 1998.

TransUnion helps maintenance investigators to trace the whereabouts of beneficiaries and defaulters. The system has been decentralised and improved to also detect fraudulent usage. Every investigator coming into the system is trained. The Maintenance Turnaround Strategy was developed to improve the services of mainten-ance by introducing new systems for the next five years.

### Maintenance Turnaround Strategy: Project Kha Ri Unde

The department initiated Project Kha Ri Unde in 2010/11 as one of the subprojects of the Maintenance Turnaround Strategy. This is a three-year project aimed at reducing the turn-around times in service delivery from the entry point into the maintenance system up to the issuing of a maintenance order.

The following achievements were attained in 2011/12:

- One pilot court was identified in each province, namely KwaMhlanga (Mpumalanga), Thohoyandou (Limpopo), Umlazi (KwaZulu-Natal), Johannesburg Family Court (Gauteng), Phillipi (Western Cape), East London (Eastern Cape), Moretele (North West), Kimberley (Northern Cape) and Botshabelo (Free State).
- Physical resources at pilot courts were addressed and improved through the procurement of office furniture, computers, scanners and partitioning to ensure a sequential workflow in the maintenance value chain. The re-arrangement of offices and service points was effected mainly to ensure that all services are located in one area in an endeavour to be time-efficient in service delivery, especially when clients are referred from one point to another.
- The National Family Law Signage System was introduced at two pilot courts (KwaMhlanga and the Johannesburg Family Court) to help guide members of the public through the court building.
- Mediation services were introduced in the maintenance value chain to ensure the speedy finalisation of cases.
- The Lean Process Management System was introduced at Moretele Magistrate's Court. This system is intended to identify all the steps in the maintenance value stream for each service point, eliminate steps that do not create value so as to ensure speedy services, make the value-creating steps occur in tight sequence to ensure the smooth flow of services towards the client, and ensure that the value is specified from the client's perspective. This process is primarily aimed at eliminating waste and delays, while creating a client-centred approach to maintenance service delivery. The Lean Management System will be rolled out to the remaining pilot sites in 2012/13.

### Child protection and justice

The Child Justice Act, 2008 envisages the establishment of one-stop centres to streamline the process from arrest to the formal court process. The plan is to include all services, includes holding cells, assessment rooms, police services, probation services and a courtroom in one building so that parents and children will not need to travel. The Directors-General Intersectoral Committee on Child Justice recommended the establishment of one-stop child justice centres at the Matlosana Secure Care Centre in Klerksdorp and the Khayalethemba Centre in Buffalo City, Eastern Cape. The designation was not finalised during the period under review due to delays in the concurrence process.

In 2011/12, the department trained 190 child justice clerks. Three preliminary inquiries' workshops for the judiciary were also held to build and strengthen the judicial knowledge of the Child Justice Act, 2008.

At the last workshop, the Standard Form and the Uniform Procedure for Conducting Preliminary Inquiries were drafted and finalised for the approval of the Magistrates Commission. In addition, 306 intersectoral stakeholders were trained on the Child Justice Act, 2008 in various regions.

### Domestic violence

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is committed to supporting and promoting the rights of victims of domestic violence, especially women, children and the elderly, through the courts and criminal-justice processes. It also ensures that victims of such crimes are assisted through the Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP), led by the Department of Social Development, which aims to improve their circumstances and quality of life.

In 2009/10, the department finalised a review of the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 in courts; and submitted the findings to the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Development Committee, the VEP Task Team and the Portfolio Committee on Women, Children and People with Disabilities, which gave a mandate to the department to develop the JCPS Domestic Violence Strategy to link with the broader VEP.

The draft document was expected to be finalised in 2011/12. To achieve this, the JCPS Cluster mandated the department to chair a task team to draft the strategy.

Various government departments have put measures in place to facilitate the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998. For instance, resources have been made available for the following:

- developing policies and programmes
- outreach and education
- training
- the hiring of personnel
- establishing family court centres
- the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development launched and circulated guidelines in conjunction with and to support the judiciary in 2008, drafted by the Lower Court Management Committee. Recommended updates were discussed with the judiciary in 2010/11.

The Ndabezitha Project with the NPA trains traditional leaders and clerks of the court in domestic-violence matters in rural areas. This includes the development of a safety tool and intersectoral statistical tool by the NPA and the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.

| Indicator | Annual target | Annual performance |
|---|---|---|
| Anti-corruption, fraud and dishonesty | 190 | 156 |
| Maintenance (all staff) | 510 | 293 |
| Sexual offences training | 680 | 461 |
| Domestic violence training | 360 | 227 |
| Child law training | 545 | 532 |
| Service excellence | 735 | 612 |
| Foundational management | 270 | 333 |
| Quasi-judicial services | 2698 | 2355 |
| Master's training | 60 | 582 |

The department engaged in research methodology called the *10-Year Review of Implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998* aimed at taking stock of all initiatives and projects in courts and the criminal justice system to address the reduction and prevention of domestic violence.

Electronic forms and systems were developed and approved to be piloted at two magistrates' courts, after which they would be rolled out to all magistrates' courts service points to improve the handling of domestic-violence cases.

The Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011) is the first specific legislation to address sexual harassment in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The essence of the Act is to provide a quick, easy and affordable civil remedy in the form of a protection order for incidences of stalking. It expands on the harm caused to include not only physical harm but also mental, psychological and economic harm.

The legislation arose out of a SALRC investigation into the legal framework governing

stalking and domestic violence. The commission recommended that the law on stalking had to be tightened up. A key component of the Act is that it seeks to cover all forms of stalking, not just that involving people engaged in a relationship.

A protection order can now be issued instructing the harasser to cease harassment. If the harasser contravenes this order, he or she will be guilty of an offence.

The Act sets out how a complainant is to apply for a protection order and the procedure to be followed in granting one. The legislation also provides for the issuing of an interim protection order without the knowledge of the respondent, given certain conditions.

A warrant of arrest will be issued for the harasser when an interim or final protection order is granted. This warrant will only be enforced if the respondent does not comply with a condition of the order.

A victim of cyberstalking can apply to a court for an interim protection order even when the identity of the alleged stalker is unknown.

The law will also empower the police to investigate a stalker to identify the perpetrator even before a victim launches an application for a protection order.

### Human trafficking

The department developed the draft National Policy Framework on Trafficking in Persons, in conjunction with the JCPS Cluster departments, in 2011/12.

To ensure a structured, coordinated and victim-centred service system, the department, in consultation with the JCPS Cluster departments, developed and printed National Guidelines for Frontliner Staff on Human Trafficking.

These guidelines are intended to guide the intersectoral management of trafficking in persons cases, and will be launched in 2012/13.

The Prevention and Combatting of Trafficking in Persons Bill gives effect to the UN Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons (the Palermo Protocol). It focuses, among others, on the prosecution of people involved in human trafficking and provides for appropriate penalties. It also puts measures in place for protecting trafficking victims and providing them with assistance.

## Civil jurisdiction

Except when otherwise provided by law, the area of civil jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is the district, subdistrict or area for which the court was established.

The civil jurisdictional limits of magistrates' courts were increased for both liquid and illiquid claims to R100 000.

Unless all the parties in a case consent to higher jurisdiction, the jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is limited to cases in which the claim value does not exceed R100 000 where the action arises out of a liquid document or credit agreement, or R50 000 in all other cases.

Traditional courts may hear and determine civil claims arising from indigenous law and custom, brought before them by an African against another African within his area of jurisdiction.

In 2011/12, the department established 23 additional small claims courts, which enabled people to institute a civil claim to the value of R12 000 without the need for legal representation; and the proclaimed three courts (Mamelodi, Ntuzuma and Northam) as full-service courts to handle a wider range of cases, such as civil family matters.

In addition, the Extension of the Civil Jurisdiction Act, promulgated in 2010, made it possible for civil matters (such as divorce), which could only be heard at high courts, to be dealt with in one of the 62 regional courts. An analysis of the effectiveness of this effort is underway through the Civil Justice Review Project.

## Transforming the judiciary

The transformation of the judiciary remains one of government's key priorities. Through the efforts of the Judicial Service Commission, by mid-2012, of the 233 permanent judges appointed to superior courts across the country, 65 were women – 25 were black, eight coloured, 12 Indian and 20 were white.

Significant strides have been regarding the magistracy. Through the efforts of the Magistrates' Commission, during the same period, of the 1 694 magistrates, 42,8% were white, 40,8% African, 7,6% coloured and 8,8% Indian. Overall, 37,6% were female.

The departmental *Employment Equity Report* indicated that by the end of March 2012, 38% of senior management service members was female, against the prescribed target of 50%. In terms of people with disabilities, only 1,29% of the staff fell in this category, as opposed to the prescribed 2%.

Legislation enacted to advance the transformation of the judiciary and enhance access to justice includes:

- Renaming of the High Courts Act, 2008 (Act 30 of 2008), which removed the pre-1994 names used during apartheid
- Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008, which seeks to extend civil jurisdiction to regional courts
- Judicial Service Commission Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 20 of 2008), which establishes internal systems for judicial accountability
- Child Justice Act, 2008, which establishes a criminal justice system for children who are in conflict with the law.

Transformation of the legal profession includes making judicial services accessible to the poor, the uneducated and the vulnerable. This entails establishing a physical presence in rural areas and townships, offering affordable fees and providing speedy and empathetic services. It also entails facilitating access to all aspects and levels of the profession by aspirant lawyers, especially those from previously marginalised backgrounds.

The provision of alternative dispute-resolution mechanisms is another key aspect of transforming justice services, thus making justice more accessible and more affordable.

## State Legal Services

The purpose of this programme is to provide legal and legislative services to government, supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund, prepare and promote legislation and undertake research in support of this.

This programme is mainly aimed at transforming justice, the state and society. It deals with the following functions:

- constitutional development
- legislative development (including conducting legal research)
- the provision of legal advisory services to other organs of state (including Parliament)
- providing litigation services to protect the organs of state
- the provision of probate services
- administration of the Guardian's Fund
- regulation of insolvency and liquidation systems.

The State Legal Services Programme's objectives include:

- improving service delivery at the Master's Office service points
- increasing efficiency in the provision of services to beneficiaries of the Guardian's Fund, trusts, and insolvent and deceased estates
- promoting constitutional development and the strengthening of participatory democracy to ensure respect for fundamental human rights
- improving the provision of legal services to state organs
- improving the policy and legislative framework for the effective and efficient delivery of justice services.

The State Legal Services Programme is divided into the following subprogrammes:

- Legislative Development, the Law Reform Commission and the Rules Boards for Courts of Law prepare and promote legislation, conduct research and administer the Constitution.
- The Master of the High Court funds the Masters' offices, which supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates, trusts, curatorships and the Guardian's Fund.
- Litigation and Legal Services provides attorney, conveyance and notary public services to the executive, all state departments,

parastatals and other government bodies through the Office of the State Attorney, and provides legal support to the department and the ministry.
- State Law Advisers provides legal advisory services to the executive, all state departments, parastatals and autonomous government bodies.

### Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court serves the public in respect of:
- deceased estates
- liquidations (insolvent estates)
- registration of trust's, tutor's and curator's administration of the Guardian's Fund (minors and mentally challenged persons).

The Master's Office has five main divisions, which are all aimed at protecting the financial interests of people whose assets or interests are, for various reasons, being managed by others.

As part of the turnaround strategy in the Master's Office, special focus has been placed on training frontline officials. The Master's Office is currently also investigating methods to deliver a more efficient and effective service to the public through the Internet.

### Justice College

The Justice College is a training branch of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. It has a range of training interventions that target magistrates, prosecutors, masters of the High Court, family advocates, court interpreters, legislative drafters, registrars of the High Court, clerks of the court, court and area court managers, management and administration personnel and other legal professionals.

The Justice College was accredited as a learning institution in 2009. The purpose of accrediting the Justice College is to convert and/or align its training material to existing or new unit standards pitched at the appropriate National Qualification Framework levels.

### Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

This is achieved by monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing in court during the hearing of the application or trial, and providing mediation services in respect of disputes over parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance.

The sections of the Children's Act, 2005 that came into operation on 1 July 2007, have expanded the Family Advocate's responsibilities and scope of duties, as the Act makes the Family Advocate central to all family-law civil litigation. Furthermore, litigants are obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation, and unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation at all.

In addition, children's rights to participate in, and consult on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched, and the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

### Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC)

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the *Government Gazette.* The TRC made recommendations to government regarding reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses experienced during the apartheid years. Four categories of recommendations were approved by government in June 2003 for implementation, namely:
- final reparations
- TRC-identified victims
- symbols and monuments
- medical benefits and other forms of social assistance
- community rehabilitation:

The TRC Unit, located within the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, was established in 2005 to monitor, coordinate and audit the implementation of the TRC's recommendations. The unit works closely with the President's Fund Office, which is located in the Office of the Chief Financial Officer.

Since the end of April 2011 (at which point 875 beneficiaries remained to be traced and paid), the department has renewed its efforts to trace the outstanding beneficiaries. The database of the South African Social Security Agency, as well as physical searches, coordinated by the regional offices, was used for this purpose.

The department also embarked on an advertising campaign in the *Daily Sun*, *Isolezwe*, *Cape Argus* and *The Star* newspapers. In addition, tracing outstanding beneficiaries was included as a feature on the *Final Verdict* television series and aired on SABC 2.

A number of initiatives have been embarked on throughout the years to trace the outstanding beneficiaries. These included door-to-door searches conducted by the regional structures of the Government Communication and Information System and enlisting the services of a professional tracing agency.

The TRC identified 21 769 people as victims of human-rights violations. Of the 875 outstanding beneficiaries at the end of April 2011, 435 living beneficiaries or their rightful next-of-kin in the case of deceased beneficiaries were paid by May 2012. Some 219 payments were made to living beneficiaries and 216 were made to the rightful next-of-kin of deceased beneficiaries.

This contributed to about 16 837 beneficiaries being traced and an amount of R541 million being cumulatively paid from the President's Fund. This means that 440 of the 16 837 beneficiaries who applied and were approved for reparation remain to be paid.

## Child justice

### Children's Act, 2005

The Department of Social Development is the lead department for the implementation of the Children's Act, 2005. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's main responsibility is towards children's court operations relating to the Act.

As the Children's Act, 2005 emphasises the effective implementation by all organs of state in an integrated, coordinated and uniform manner, the Members of the Implementation of the Children's Act, 2005 Working Group was established in 2010 to address challenges the department faced in implementing the Children's Act, 2005. Two meetings in the latter part of 2010 brought about the creation of the Children's Act, 2005 Training Reference Group, which was launched in 2011/12. It assists in ensuring that key stakeholders are sufficiently versed in the Children's Act, 2005, and the challenges it presents.

The department developed a child-friendly "Frequently Asked Questions" (FAQ) link on its website. The FAQ serves as a resource point for the public and will be updated frequently. The FAQ also includes links to the websites of the Department of Social Development's and the South African Social Security Agency. In addition, the department created an email address, *children@justice.gov.za*, which the public may use to contact the department on issues relating to children.

The Children's Court is the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's principal legal mechanism to intervene and assist children who are in need of care and protection. To gather statistics from the children's courts, the department developed the Children's Court Monitoring Tool. Data about matters coming to court relating to children in need of care is gathered monthly.

Section 14 of the Children's Act, 2005 states that every child has the right to bring a matter to the Children's Court. This means that every Children's Court can serve as a direct entry point for a child to seek help and protection. Children's courts have been rendered highly accessible through the Act. Children's courts must be child-friendly and conducive to the participation of the child.

### Child Justice Act, 2008

In April 2010, South Africa implemented the Child Justice Act, 2008, as part of an ongoing effort to promote and protect the constitutional rights of children in conflict with the law. The Act provides special measures for children in conflict with the law, designed to break the cycle of crime and restore in these children a lifestyle that is law-abiding and productive.

The National Policy Framework was tabled in Parliament in June 2010, and published in August 2010. The remarkable decline in the number of children awaiting trial in prisons marks a further success in the implementation of the Act. The number of children between the ages of 14 and 17 who were in prison and awaiting trial dropped from 502 in April 2010 to 298 in December 2010.

The department further established governance structures to ensure the effective intersectoral implementation of the Act. The Directors-General Intersectoral Child Justice Committee was established to give strategic direction in the clusteral implementation of the Act. The National Operational Intersectoral Child Justice Committee was established to give technical support to the Directors-General Intersectoral Child Justice Committee.

Nine provincial child justice forums are coordinating and monitoring the implementation of the Act at provincial level.

## Restorative justice

Restorative justice is a response to crime that focuses on the losses suffered by victims, holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused, and building peace in communities.

As defined by the JCPS Cluster, the restorative-justice concept is an approach to justice that aims to involve the parties to a dispute and others affected by the harm (victims, offenders, families concerned and community members) in collectively identifying harms, needs and obligations by accepting responsibilities, making restitution and taking measures to prevent a recurrence of the incident. This may be applied at any appropriate stage after the incident.

Alternative dispute resolution is defined as the disposal of disputes outside formal court proceedings. The processes and mechanisms may or may not include the restorative-justice approach.

Restorative justice strategies, programmes and processes in the criminal justice system are in place to try and heal the harm caused by the crime or offence, from a holistic point of view, for the victim, the offender and the community concerned, which will lead towards rebuilding broken relationships and encouraging social justice and social dialogue.

Any restorative justice option, which may include but not be limited to victim-offender mediation or a family-group conference, is always voluntary for the victim involved. Therefore, such programmes and/or strategies will not be forced upon the victim of any crime or offence.

In 2011/12, 10 600 cases were converted to alternative dispute resolutions, against a target of 7 600. Where restorative justice has been found to be effective, such as child justice, the department will continue to hold dialogue and share experiences. In the period under review, a workshop was held with traditional leaders, as well as a national conference on restorative justice, to grow awareness and share best practice on diversion programmes and restorative justice.

## Court performance

The subbranch Court Performance of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring processes and systems
- introducing case-flow management that facilitates efficient and effective court and case management
- developing and facilitating the implementation of a court-management policy framework
- evaluating the quality of services and performance within the courts
- facilitating the development of uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance.

The Directorate: Court Efficiency's key priorities include:

- facilitating integrated case-flow management with stakeholders
- supporting the implementation of the Re Aga Boswa (meaning "We are renewing") and Court Capacitation projects
- facilitating the implementation of multi-lingualism in courts and developing indi-genous languages in line with constitutional imperatives
- facilitating the securing of standardised transcription services for courts across all regions, rendering case-management business intelligence support to information system management in the development of IT tools and systems, and supporting initiatives for the effective management of court records.

The directorate assists in court capacitation initiatives, namely:

- the UN Office on Drugs and Crime Court Integrity Project
- upgrading five pilot courts, namely Pretoria, Thembisa, Nelspruit, Mkobola and Kimberley with notice boards, flat-screen television sets and DVD players
- providing integrity training to 120 departmental, 15 NPA and 15 judicial officers
- conducting audits on the management of court records
- facilitating activities on the Court Capacitation National Centre for State Courts Project in consultation with all other stakeholders such as chief directors and regional heads
- engaging human resources and the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority and securing learnership programmes for court interpreters (R4 million)
- engaging in legislation development and finalising the legislative and operational framework for implementing and institutionalising the lay assessor system.

The number of criminal court cases finalised by all courts in 2011/12, namely 448 760, is slightly down from 460 891 in 2010/11. However, the average conviction rate in South African courts for 2011/12 remains high and has increased from 88,3% in 2010/11 to 88,8% in the past financial year.

### Integrated Case-Flow Management Framework

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is developing an enhanced version of the case-flow management framework for implementation by all stakeholders.

In the process, participants from other partner organisations will make meaningful contributions on the issues and blockages affecting the proper implementation of case-flow management in the court environment.

Efforts to eradicate such blockages will be proposed by adopting workable solutions. These include:

- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain case-flow management at all courts
- establishing judicial leadership and case-flow management buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of case-flow management forums
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of case-flow management governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts' environment
- maintaining the case-flow management concept (guidelines, plans, governance, reporting and systems).

Systems that support case-flow management in the courts include the ICMS. This system spans all disciplines of cases administered in the justice environment.

The ICMS draws on several core modules to perform basic functions such as information warehousing, case numbering and document scanning. The specific functionality for each court and office are then built on these foundations.

The following offices have started experiencing the benefits of the ICMS:

- ICMS Civil is deployed in all lower courts and 13 high courts
- ICMS Criminal is deployed in all lower courts
- ICMS Small Claims is used in all small claims courts and designated lower courts
- ICMS Masters has been introduced in all 14 Masters' offices and all 402 service points.

In November 2012, the Brandvlei Youth Correctional Centre in the Western Cape was awarded second place at the finals of the 2012 Centre for Public Service Innovation Annual Public Sector Innovation Awards.

The centre's radio project, which seeks to develop offenders' life and technical skills, was a finalist in the category for Innovative Use of Information Communication Technology for Effective Service Delivery.

The project, dubbed Basic Radio, competed with 11 other government departments.

The further development of the ICMS Masters System is in progress. This aims to create a Paperless Estate Administration System for the Master's Office. The first two modules regarding the administration of deceased estates were finalised in 2011/12 and have been tested in the Pretoria Master of the High Court Office and Atteridgeville Magistrate's Court. The successful implementation of the Paperless Estate Administration System will relieve work pressure on Master of the High Court officials, and also curb the possibility of fraud and documents getting lost.

This system will computerise the administration process in deceased estates, as all documentation will be scanned and stored electronically. Interested parties will be able to view all relevant information at any given time on the Master of the High Court's portal, available on the website.

### Case-flow workshops

Sixteen civil case-flow management workshops were held for the regional court divisions, targeting both regional court magistrates and administration support personnel. Some 280 regional court magistrates, as well as 322 clerks of civil courts, registrars and assistant registrars, were capacitated through these workshops.

The workshops dealt with the impact of civil jurisdiction on case-flow management in the regional courts, and empowered the participants to manage court and case-flow management.

### Audio-Visual Remand System

The Video Remand Solution has been implemented at 47 courts and 22 correctional facilities. In 2011/12, 4 061 cases were remanded through the Audio-Visual Remand System. The development in this area of support to case flow management for the courts has brought about a significant improvement in the movement of cases through the use of technology.

### Case-Reduction Backlog Project

The JCPS Cluster departments have introduced the case backlog reduction intervention, which is aimed at reducing the number of backlog cases in the regional and district courts, providing additional capacity to the backlog priority sites. The aim of the backlog intervention is to ensure that the inflow of the number of new cases is balanced by the number of matters concluded. The project deliverables have been integrated into the outputs of the JCPS Cluster Delivery Agreement.

In 2011/12, the number of cases on the backlog decreased to 34 926. From the inception of the backlog reduction intervention in November 2006 until the end of March 2012, 59 232 criminal cases were removed from the regional and district court rolls and processed by these additional backlog courts.

The department provided resources in the form of infrastructure, court personnel, the judiciary, magistrates and budget in support of the prosecution and judiciary to remove these cases off the backlog roll.

## Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP)

This programme aims to improve services rendered to victims of crime.

The NPA has court-preparation officials on contract who provide support to crime victims and especially abused children, in preparing them for court proceedings.

The Victims Charter Project engaged NGOs and community-based organisations (CBOs) on the initiation of a capacity-building project for 2011/12. This will focus on training for NGOs and CBOs on the Victims Charter to influence

a change in perception of the criminal justice system among NGOs and CBOs, in line with Outcome 3 of the National Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement, namely that all people in South Africa are and feel safe.

The department appointed intermediaries in regions to assist child witnesses in presenting evidence in court.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime is expected to go a long way towards assisting crime victims and contributing to interdepartmental and cluster coordination and cooperation.

## Integrated Justice System

The Integrated Justice System aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and, ultimately, rehabilitation of offenders. Further issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The need for strategic alignment of cluster activities has also been raised at a series of governmental meetings and forums.

The benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services
- the effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS Cluster has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

## International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development are to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other states/bodies/institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign states to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements. The chief directorate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African states, especially within the SADC.

The chief directorate coordinates human-rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union.

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison on international legal matters with SADC states
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with other international bodies, such as the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
- interacting with foreign states outside the SADC region
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human-rights treaties, including report-writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

In 2011/12, the Directorate: International Legal Relations (Africa and South) received 131 requests for extradition and mutual legal assistance in criminal matters. Of these requests, 32 had to be returned to the respective states, as the requests did not comply with South Africa's domestic law. Some 99 valid requests were processed and channelled to the NPA and/or Interpol for execution.

Owing to the number of departments and/or institutions involved in the execution of extra-

dition and mutual legal assistance requests, and taking into consideration that diplomatic channels are followed to transmit documents, delays are experienced from time to time.

Provisions are, however, now included in extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements to provide for direct communication between central authorities. The department is also in consultation with embassies to provide foreign states with a clear indication of the requirements of extradition and mutual legal assistance requests in an attempt to reduce the number of invalid requests received.

The drastic reduction in the turnaround time for the processing of these requests should be a clear indication to the rest of the world that South Africa will neither be a safe haven for fugitives nor a breeding ground for transnational organised crime.

### International Criminal Court (ICC)

South Africa was one of the proponents of the negotiation and adoption of the Rome Statute of the ICC in 1998, creating the first permanent international criminal tribunal to combat impunity for the most serious crimes of concern to the international community, namely crimes of genocide, crimes against humanity, war crimes and the crime of aggression.

South Africa promulgated the Implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002). The Act provides for a framework to:

- ensure the effective implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC in South Africa
- ensure that South Africa conforms with the obligations set out in the statute
- address the crime of genocide, crimes against humanity, war crimes and the crime of aggression
- address the prosecution in South African courts of people accused of having committed crimes in South Africa and beyond the borders of the country in certain circumstances
- deal with the arrest of certain people accused of having committed crimes and their surrender to the ICC in certain circumstances
- enhance cooperation between South Africa and the ICC
- negotiate extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements with other countries and international bodies.

## Department of Correctional Services

The Department of Correctional Services strives to contribute to a just, peaceful and safe society by detaining inmates in safe custody, while maintaining their human dignity, developing their sense of social responsibility and promoting the general development of all inmates and people subject to community corrections.

The department is further committed to contribute to reduce re-offending through offender management and rehabilitation intervention as well as to add to social re-integration of offenders through management of non-custodial sentences and parole.

### Legislation and policies

The department is compelled by the Constitution to comply with the following rights in terms of the treatment of offenders:

- equality
- human dignity
- freedom and security of the person
- right to healthcare services
- children's rights
- right to education
- freedom of religion
- rights to humane treatment and to communicate and be visited by family and next of kin.

The department is further mandated by the following legislation: Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998); Correctional Services Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 25 of 2008); and Criminal Procedure Act (CPA), 1977 (Act 51 of 1977).

Section 63A, Chapter 28 and Section 299A of the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 are of particular importance to the department.

Section 63A of the CPA, 1977 provides for a procedure in terms of which the court may, on application by a head of a correctional centre and if not opposed by the Director of Public

Prosecutions concerned, order the release of certain accused on warning in lieu of bail or order the amendment of the bail conditions imposed by that court on the accused.

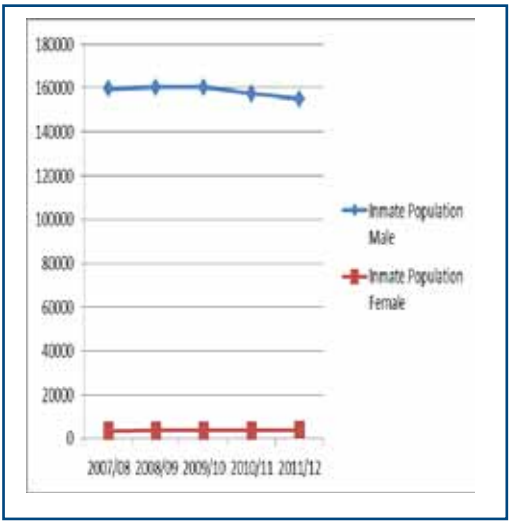
Section 63A also forms the basis of a protocol between JCPS Cluster departments to encourage the use of this provision to assist accused who do not pose a danger to society to be released from detention in circumstances where the bail set by the court cannot be afforded by the accused or his or her family.

Chapter 28 of the CPA, 1977 deals with sentencing and the entire chapter is applicable to the department's mandate. Offenders must be detained in accordance with the sentences handed down under this chapter.

The granting of parole and the conversion of sentences to correctional supervision is also done in accordance with this chapter, read together with the Correctional Services Act, 1998.

Section 299A of the CPA, 1977 regulates victim involvement in the decisions of parole boards.

In 2012, the Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 5 of 2011) was tabled in Parliament.




## Role players

### Portfolio Committee on Corrections

Both houses of South Africa's Parliament, the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces, do much of their work through committees made up of members from all parties.

The committee system enables work to be done efficiently, allows greater time for debate, increases participation of members of Parliament and provides a forum for direct presentation of public views.

The role and mandate of Portfolio Committees are to facilitate public participation, promote cooperative government, exercise oversight on the Executive, state departments and bodies they are responsible for, and on international relations as well as pass legislation. The Department of Correctional Services has a similar body and it keeps the department in check with regard to the humane treatment of offenders and the fair labour practice for its workforce, among other pressing matters.

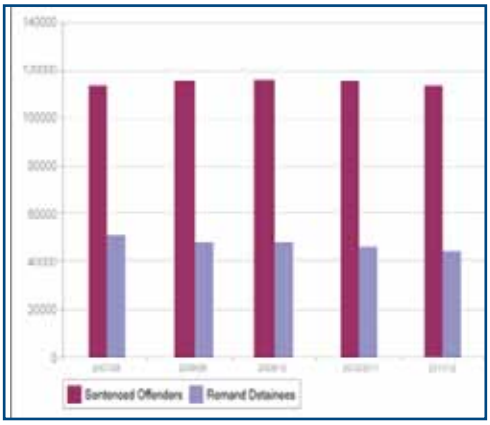
### National Council for Correctional Services

The National Council for Correctional Services is a statutory body with the primary aim of guiding the Minister of Correctional Services in developing policy relating to the correctional system and the sentence-management process.

The council serves as the recommending institution to the Minister in relation to parole decisions for offenders sentenced to life imprisonment. It also serves as the parole-review mechanism and meets as the Correctional Supervision and Parole Review Board.

### Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services

The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services was established in 1998, with the statutory objective to facilitate the inspection of correctional centres so that the inspecting judge may report on the treatment of inmates and on conditions in correctional centres. The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services is an independent office.




### Medical Parole Advisory Board

A newly established Medical Parole Advisory Board was appointed on 23 February 2012 to look into all seriously and terminally ill inmates who have submitted reports requesting to be released on medical grounds. The Medical Parole Advisory Board was established with a view to strengthen the general policy on parole and correctional supervision. The Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011 provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision. It lays the legislative basis for management of remand detainees and regulates detention in police cells by stipulating that no inmate may be detained in police cells for a period exceeding seven days.

### Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

The Correctional Supervision and Parole Board is responsible for dealing with parole of non-lifers and supervision matters. There are 53 correctional supervision and parole boards countrywide. These boards are composed of a chairperson and vice-chairperson (appointed by the Minister), a correctional official and two additional community members. The boards have the authority to make decisions on parole except in the following cases:

- decisions regarding the placement of offenders who have been declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of the CPA, 1977 are referred back to court for a decision
- offenders who were sentenced to life imprisonment are referred to the Minister of Correctional Services for a decision
- recommendations regarding the conversion of a sentence that was imposed in terms of Section 276 A(3) of the CPA, 1977 into correctional supervision are referred to a court for a decision

## Programmes and projects

### Service Delivery Improvement Plan (SDIP)

The department identified four key services to form the basis of the SDIP for 2009/10 to 2013/14. These are integrated into the department's strategic and operational plans. Regions report quarterly on:

- improving access of service providers and other stakeholders to correctional centres
- improving telephone and switchboard etiquette at all service points
- managing the payment of bail and fines at correctional centres
- improving the scheduling of visits to offenders to support family ties between offenders and their families.

Each year the department honours officials who excel in their tasks and go beyond the call of duty to ensure that quality service is delivered through the annual National Corrections Excellence Awards

The Department of Correctional Services was also part of the development of the *Training Manual on Innovation* at the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy, in collaboration with the Centre for Public Service Innovation.

### The Gallows Memorial

The Gallows Memorialisation Project at the Pretoria Central Prison was initiated to honour those political prisoners who were hanged and serve as a reminder to future generations not to take their freedom for granted.

It comprises a memorial and a museum, which includes the death row block housing the gallows where an estimated 130 political prisoners were hanged between 1961 and

1989. As part of the museum, the chapel at the gallows was renamed the Steve Biko chapel, in memory of all those who died in detention. There is also a garden of remembrance. A roll of honour with the names of all the political prisoners can be seen at the entrance to the gallows.

### Special remission of sentences

On 27 April 2012, the State President granted a special remission of sentence to certain categories of offenders, parolees and probationers as part of the celebration of Freedom Day.

The remission of sentence in question was undertaken over a 10-week period from 30 April 2012 until 6 July 2012. In the 10-week period, 19 695 offenders were released from correctional centres, of which 9 387 were conditional (serving non-custodial sentences) (48%) and 10 308 (52%) unconditional (sentences expired). Some 25 338 probationers and parolees were released unconditionally from community correctional centres within weeks one to three when the release process was finalised. The number of actual releases is 4 483 (21%).

The application of the Special Remission of Sentence 2012 had an impact on case loads at community correctional centres. The average caseload of 68 652 probationers/parolees in March 2012 decreased by 22 551 (33%) to 46 101 on 13 May 2012, when the release of offenders on special remission of sentence from correctional centres ended. From May 2012, the case load increased by 7 044 (15%) to 53 145 in July 2012, as a result of the admission of offenders from correctional centres into the system of community corrections. The case load in July 2012 stood at 15 507 (23%), lower than the average recorded in March 2012.

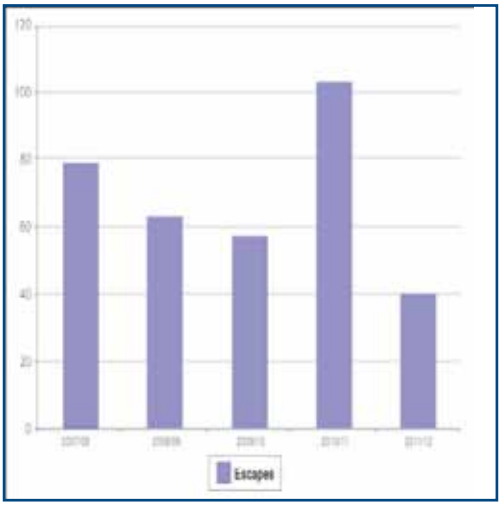
The number of sentenced offenders decreased by 12 436 (11%) from 114 038 in April 2012 to 101 602 in July 2012. The number of inmates decreased by 14 563 (9%) from 160 251 in April 2012, to 145 688 in July 2012 (influenced by the number of admissions [remand detainees and sentenced offenders] at correctional centres). The average population rate decreased by 12,33% (from 135,63% on 30 April to 123,30% by July 2012).

Against 45 033 offenders/probationers/parolees that were released, 101 had re-offended. At least 22 of the alleged re-offending group have been sentenced (all committed economic crimes).

### Operation Vala

Operation Vala (meaning “close”) is a 50-day special festive-season security plan. It was launched in 2006 to deal with security pressures and escapes experienced in the festive season.

The campaign plan includes: tightening security, limiting offenders’ externally focused activities to essential services only, curtailing goods and products brought to facilities by families and friends, conducting impromptu searches to eliminate illegal substances and maintaining appropriate staffing levels as informed by local threat assessments by heads of correctional centres and area commissioners. Without security, no rehabilitation can take place. The department adopted a minimum security standards policy with six key pillars, namely personnel, technology, information, operational, physical and management supervision of security.



The Department of Correctional Services announced that from April 2013, it would be compulsory for every inmate to complete Adult Basic Education and Training levels 1 to 4. This forms part of the department's view that key to rehabilitation is empowering offenders with skills to function effectively in society upon their release, and to ensure that offenders are actively involved in productive activity while they serve their sentences.

During the past six years, correctional centre schools have been achieving an above 90% average matric pass rate. Currently, 991 offenders are studying towards post-matric or higher education and training qualifications, 4 042 towards Further Education and Training college programmes (including electrical engineering, civil engineering, mechanical engineering and marketing) and 3 853 towards skills development programmes (including basic business skills training and entrepreneurship).

## Operation Funda

Operation Funda (meaning "learn") is one of the Department of Correctional Service's flagship projects, launched by the Minister in January 2011 to enhance offenders' access to education and training to equip them for effective and sustainable social re-integration.

It came into being after the Minister raised concerns about the number of inmates serving life sentences considered for placement on parole who were incarcerated as juveniles for serious crimes, and had not had access to or used the opportunity to empower themselves.

Young people between the ages of 18 and 25 constitute 69% of the offender population. There are 13 dedicated youth facilities nationally, but for years there was only one full-time school doing the National Curriculum Statement Programme – the Usethubeni Youth Centre in Durban-Westville Correctional Services.

Of the many young inmates that should be eligible for studying full-time, Usethubeni catered for about 30 inmates a year.

In 2011, three additional full-time schools doing the National Curriculum Statement Programme were launched in the Voorberg, St Albans and Kuthama Senthumule correctional centres.

## Mother and baby units

The mother and baby units are separate cells built for mothers incarcerated with babies in correctional centres to allow the child as close to normal an existence as possible.

The Department of Correctional Services launched two mother and baby units in August 2011 as part of celebrating Women's Month. The two facilities were launched in Cape Town and Durban, respectively. Two more facilities were established in Gauteng and the Eastern Cape in 2012. The vision is to develop and design child-focused and child-friendly units across the department's six regions.

The idea is to allow children as close to normal an existence as possible even if this is under the conditions of incarceration of the mother, while at the same time providing rehabilitation programmes in a centre that enhances their capacity to care for their children.

These facilities were also launched in response to the Child Justice Act, 2008. The Act created an imperative for the department to treat children incarcerated with their mothers in a humane manner. It called for a revisit to the department's programmes, particularly those designed for women with children. These ideals resulted in the mother and baby units. The facilities cater for children up to two years, after which they are released to a legal guardian chosen or recommended by the mother.

The department, through its Imbeleko Project, facilitates a soft landing for children older than two years whose mothers do not have proper family structures. It also has accredited childcare facilities to which some of these children are released.

## Imbeleko Project

The Imbeleko Project places children of two years of age and above within sustainable family structures outside correctional facilities. The objectives of the project are aligned with those of the UN Convention on the Rights of the

Child and the Child Justice Act, 2008. The first phase of the Imbeleko Project was rolled out across all regions. This entailed the creation of a safe, humane and friendly environment for mother-child interaction.

The implementation of the first phase created an opportunity for the department to create partnerships with other stakeholders in working together. It focused on what happens to a child released from a child-friendly mother and baby unit after reaching the limited two years.

It also creates a harmonious environment between social workers from the welfare department and those from the department to continuously track the progress of the child who has to maintain contact with the mother through the foster parents.

It calls for a continuous interaction among the baby, mother and the foster parent well before the child is given away. This also calls for the department to review its visitation policies to allow the new foster parent enough time to build trust with the mother as well as to develop a bond with the baby in question.

### Halfway House Pilot Project

The halfway houses offer an opportunity to offenders who meet all the requirements to be placed on parole but do not have fixed addresses that can be monitored to which they can return to in communities. Halfway houses reduce such offenders' potential to re-offend because they are given a second chance to experience a home-like environment. A halfway house is considered as the final part of an offender's rehabilitation process. The first pilot project was officially launched with seven young parolees aged between 18 and 25 in February 2012, in Naturena, Soweto. It was named Victory House.

The halfway house programme will be rolled out to all the department's six regions. The regions would be required to budget for the halfway houses within their respective regions. This will be informed by the successful evaluation of the pilot halfway house as it will provide critical input.

### Sanitary Dignitary Project

The Department of Correctional Services launched a pilot project to establish low-volume sanitary napkin manufacturing to enhance self-sufficiency. From the onset it was evident that information from local suppliers on the manufacture of sanitary napkins was scarce and closely guarded by the market stakeholders.

After intensive research, the department managed to procure machinery for the Eastern Cape region to kickstart the project. The name of the project is Letshadi Boitumiso ("female pride").

The project was piloted at East London Medium C Female Centre. A suitable site inside the centre was identified and upgraded and machinery was installed. The necessary application to the SABS for approval was done and the SABS manual was received to manufacture sanitary napkins according to SABS specifications.

In 2012, 10 maximum security offenders underwent training and participated in the project, along with three officials. The department finalised the process of re-categorising rehabilitation programmes, which resulted in 30 development programmes, 26 correctional programmes and two care programmes.

### Offender labour

Offenders continue to be awarded opportunities to participate in community development projects by providing offender labour. In an effort to enhance the use of the available resources, the Department of Correctional Services has engaged various stakeholders to involve offenders in mainstream activities that could lead towards poverty alleviation within communities.

The aim is to formulate a relationship with other government departments and stakeholders, so that they consider offenders as an available workforce that can be used as some sort of reparation and payback to the communities they have offended.

The department has developed a draft concept document on the use of offenders in meaningful work activities. The involvement of

offenders in community projects or activities is of fundamental import-ance in their rehabilitation and reintegration process.

### Electronic monitoring

In an effort to deal with overcrowding at correctional facilities and to minimise the possibility of violation of parole conditions, a pilot project on the electronic monitoring of parolees and probationers was implemented in February 2012. The pilot involved 150 parolees, including 70 lifers who were on parole.

The project is meant to ensure that certain categories of offenders serve their sentences in the community to alleviate overcrowding in correctional facilities.

The electronic monitoring of parolees and probationers will also alleviate challenges of parolees absconding from the system of community corrections while also reducing the risk of recidivism. This system will reduce the workload for guarding, enhance effective use of correctional supervision, promote the confidence of various partners and the public for the effective utilisation of alternative sentencing options, and adress the challenges of overcrowding.

### Automated Fingerprint and Identity System (Afis)

The Department of Correctional Services initiated the roll-out of Afis in correctional centres around the country. By 2011, facilities for capturing and storage of fingerprint data had been installed at 145 sites.

In 2012, it was decided that it was not feasible to use the Department of Home Affairs' Afis database, as offenders do not necessarily provide the Department of Correctional Services with their identity numbers upon admission. Trying to match a fingerprint on the database without an ID number would, therefore, result in a full scan of more than 50 million records stored in the database. As a result, the department's Automated Personal Identity System, which was developed through the Inmate Tracking Project, was implemented at 32 correctional centres and 99 community corrections offices. This will eventually interface with the Department of Home Affairs' database to verify the identity of offenders.

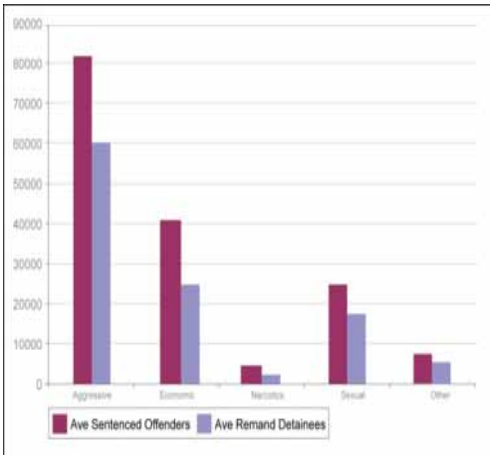
## Operational structure of correctional facilities

### Inmates profile and statistics

For 2011/12, the inmate population was on average 158 790. Since 2009/10, there has been a slight decrease annually in the male inmate population: from 160 280 in 2009/10 to 157 345 in 2010/11 to 155 032 in 2011/12. Conversely, there was a slight increase in the female inmate population, from 3 562 in 2010/11 to 3 758 in 2011/12.

The average number of sentenced offenders in 2011/12 was 112 748, while remand detainees numbered 46 062. Between 2007/08 and 2009/10 there was an increase of 2 432 in the sentenced offender population, a growth of 0,71%. In the same period, there was a decrease of 1 424 in the remand detainee population, a decrease of 0,97%.

Compared to 2010/11, 2011/12 saw a decrease of 2 716 in the sentenced offender population, a decrease of 1,2%. In the same period, the downward trend regarding remand detainees continued with 2 363, a decrease of 1,7%. Compared to the 2010/11 financial year, there was thus a decrease of 2,9% in the inmate population.



However, at the same time for that period there was an increase of 1 756 offenders sentenced to life imprisonment, an increase of 8,3%. Thus, while the inmate population has decreased with 2,9% since 2010/11, only the category of inmates sentenced to life imprisonment increased.

Some 729 sentenced child offenders were admitted and 564 children were released in 2011/12. This is 165 fewer releases than admissions. After considering the admissions and releases, there were 740 sentenced children in the department's facilities by the end of March 2012.

### Parole boards

The interim case management committees structures were established in all centres in accordance with Section 42 of the Correctional Services Act, 1998.

In March 2012, the Minister of Correctional Services held a national work session for correctional supervision and parole boards and case management committees in Pretoria Management Area to improve their functioning.

The Incarceration Framework was replaced through the Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011. In addition, the Medical Parole System has been included in the regulatory framework and operationalised.

In 2011/12, 175 members of parole boards and case management committees attended a one-week training session and another 185 attended a follow-up session of two days. By the end of 2012, 53 parole boards have been approved.

In 2011/12, 76,1% parolees did not violate their parole conditions, while the number of victims who made representations at parole sittings increased from 253 in 2010/11 to 684 in 2011/12.

### Prison capacity and overcrowding

In March 2012, there were 243 correctional facilities with an approved bed capacity of 118 441 in the department. In the course of the year some of these were temporarily closed either as the centre or as a section, resulting in an available bed space for the financial year of 118 154.

Of the 243 correctional centres, there were 156 centres with a bed capacity of up to 500 beds, with a combined capacity of 27 837 beds.

Of these, 112 correctional centres had a bed capacity less than 250, which represents 13 214 approved bed spaces; and 44 centres had a bed capacity of 250 to 500 beds, which represented 14 626 approved bed spaces.

There were 61 centres in the capacity group 500 to 1 000 beds, with a combined capacity of 42 502 beds; and 11 centres with a capacity of 1 000 to 1 500, which accounted for an approved bed space of 13 705. Lastly, there were 15 centres (13 plus two private prisons) with a capacity of over 1 500 beds, which represented 34 397 approved bed spaces.

Overcrowding in correctional centres continues to pose a challenge, affecting how the department functions and influencing its service delivery.

The department succeeded in keeping the level of overcrowding within the target of 36% for the 2011/12 financial year, at 35,95%.

The department manages overcrowding through the transfer of offenders between centres and through releases resulting from sentence conversions. The construction of new centres should furthermore alleviate the pressure put on facilities and staff.

The intersectoral Management of the Awaiting Trial Detention Project involves all the departments in the criminal justice sector. There are continued efforts to encourage the judiciary to use the Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2008 with a view to reduce overcrowding.

The department conducted an analysis of cost and resource efficiency of the various size correctional centres, as well as benchmark research. The resulting recommendations were that the optimal size for correctional centres is a capacity for 1 371 beds. Going forward, infrastructure planning will be informed by a strategy to optimise the size of facilities. To this end the Department is considering two models for ideal size of facilities.

- Model 1: Correctional centres should in principle not cater for a capacity less than 500 inmates.
- Model 2: Correctional centres should ideally cater for between 1 000 and 1 500 inmates.

In 2011/12, the Brandvlei Correctional Centre Project was completed, resulting in an additional 346 bed spaces.

### Escapes

In relation to mitigation of security risk, the focus is on ensuring that violence and escapes are reduced to facilitate the rehabilitation of inmates. Escapes have been down-managed from 106 in 2010/11 to 41 in 2011/12.

This down-management of escapes in 2011/12 is a continuation of the trend that existed before the mass escape episode in 2010/11, which distorted the good work the department has done regarding the down-management of escapes.

### Remand detention

The department has showed improvement in the following areas: reduction of escapes, reduction of overcrowding and improved conditions of detention, offender involvement in correctional programmes and the finalisation of the review of medical parole legislation and regulations.

There has also been significant progress with establishing a Remand Detention System to the extent that the position for Chief Deputy Commissioner: Remand Detention was filled with effect from 1 June 2012.

The Minister of Correctional Services gazetted the establishment of 26 remand detention facilities countrywide and another 109 correctional centres, which are authorised to accommodate remand detainees in dedicated sections or units and in which the head of centre must determine such section or unit.

Audio-Video Remand intends to fast-track and reduce the transporting of remand detainees going to courts every day. Phase 1 of the project was implemented in 21 correctional centres that are linked to 46 courts in 2011/12.

### Review of the criminal justice system

The involvement of the department in the review of the criminal justice system has resulted in the development of two draft protocols among all the JCPS Cluster role players to enable the department to put into operation sections 49E and 49G of the Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011, the draft *Protocol on the Maximum Incarceration Periods for Remand Detainees* and the draft *Protocol on the Referral of Terminally Ill or Severely Incapacitated Remand Detainees to Court.*

An effort has also been undertaken to review the protocol on procedure to be followed in applying Section 63A of the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977, the so-called Bail Protocol, to further the use of this provision, whereby a court could order the release on warning instead of bail or the amendment of bail conditions for accused who have been granted bail but who cannot afford to pay the amount granted and as a result remain in correctional facilities.

The Risk Management Framework was reviewed and approved in 2011/12, to ensure alignment with the Public Sector Risk Management Framework published by National Treasury in April 2010. The 2011/12 Risk Assessment Process, which evaluated and rated the significant risk in the Department, resulted in a refined risk register, and mitigation strategies will focus going forward on the top prioritised risks.

In 2011/12, the Department of Correctional Services reviewed the Logic Model which had been developed in 2006/07 and approved the Refined Logic Model that maps the outcomes that the Department contributes towards achieving the impact that people in South Africa are and feel safe in line with the Strategic Outcome 1.

### Development and care of offenders

The 2012 achievement with regard to the number of offenders with correctional sentence plans is 93,9% against the set target of 70%. Participation in Correctional Programmes was recorded at 239%.

The Department of Correctional Services continues to donate products to disadvantaged communities from time to time to help alleviate poverty. From April 2011 to March 2012, inmates at correctional centre farms and abattoirs produced more than 6,3 million litres of milk, 583 000 kg of red meat, 1,7 million kg of pork, 1,1 million kg of chicken, 1,5 million dozen of eggs, nine million kg of vegetables and 652 000 kg of fruit.

In addition to what is already being produced in correctional facilities, the department is liaising with the Department of Basic Education to use offender labour to build schools, and supply furniture to schools.

Some 65% of eligible offenders had access to adult education. Eight instead of the target of six schools have been registered as full-time schools and this will allow more offenders to participate in formal education programmes. The targets for offenders participating in Further Education and Training college programmes and participation in agricultural programmes were also exceeded.

The department identified three facilities to be converted and/or upgraded to special facilities for female offenders at Pretoria, Emthonjeni and East London. Business cases are currently being processed.

## Conclusion

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development will continue to prioritise service delivery in relation to its core functions in different programmes.

As part of this modernisation process, the department will continue to put effort into developing ICMSs and other initiatives in key priority areas, which include improved services in the offices of the masters of the High Court, improved maintenance services, and improved governance and administration towards an unqualified audit.

The department undertook to strengthen the legislative framework in which the justice system operates. In this regard, the Constitution 17th Amendment Act has been finalised and the Superior Courts Bill was approved by the National Assembly. The Legal Practice Bill, on the other hand, is being considered by Parliament. These endeavours are aimed at consolidating the outstanding aspects relating to judicial reform, and rationalising the courts and the legal profession with a view to establishing a judicial system suited to the requirements of the Constitution.

The department has published a discussion document on the transformation of State Legal Services, and part of this effort includes improved management of litigation against the State.

In the 2013/14 financial year, efforts will be put in place to appoint a Solicitor-General, who will oversee all legal services of the state, and assist in improving the quality of services offered to the State.

The Department of Correctional Services remains committed to place humane and safe detention and rehabilitation at the centre of service delivery. In doing so, the department strives to promote corrections as a societal responsibility, contributing to enhanced public safety and reducing re-offending.

In this regard there is a close link with government's Outcome 3, namely that all people in South Africa should be and feel safe. The strategic focus of the department is situated in four key deliverables, namely

- reducing the average length of time in remand detention
- increasing the number of offenders in rehabilitation programmes
- increasing the number of victims who participate in parole hearings
- increasing the number of parolees without parole violations.

The department is also committed to turning around service delivery. A priority is to gear all its activities to serve a rehabilitation mission that ensures, through delivery of relevant programmes, that the people who leave correctional centres have appropriate attitudes and competencies enabling them to successfully integrate back into society as law-abiding and productive citizens.

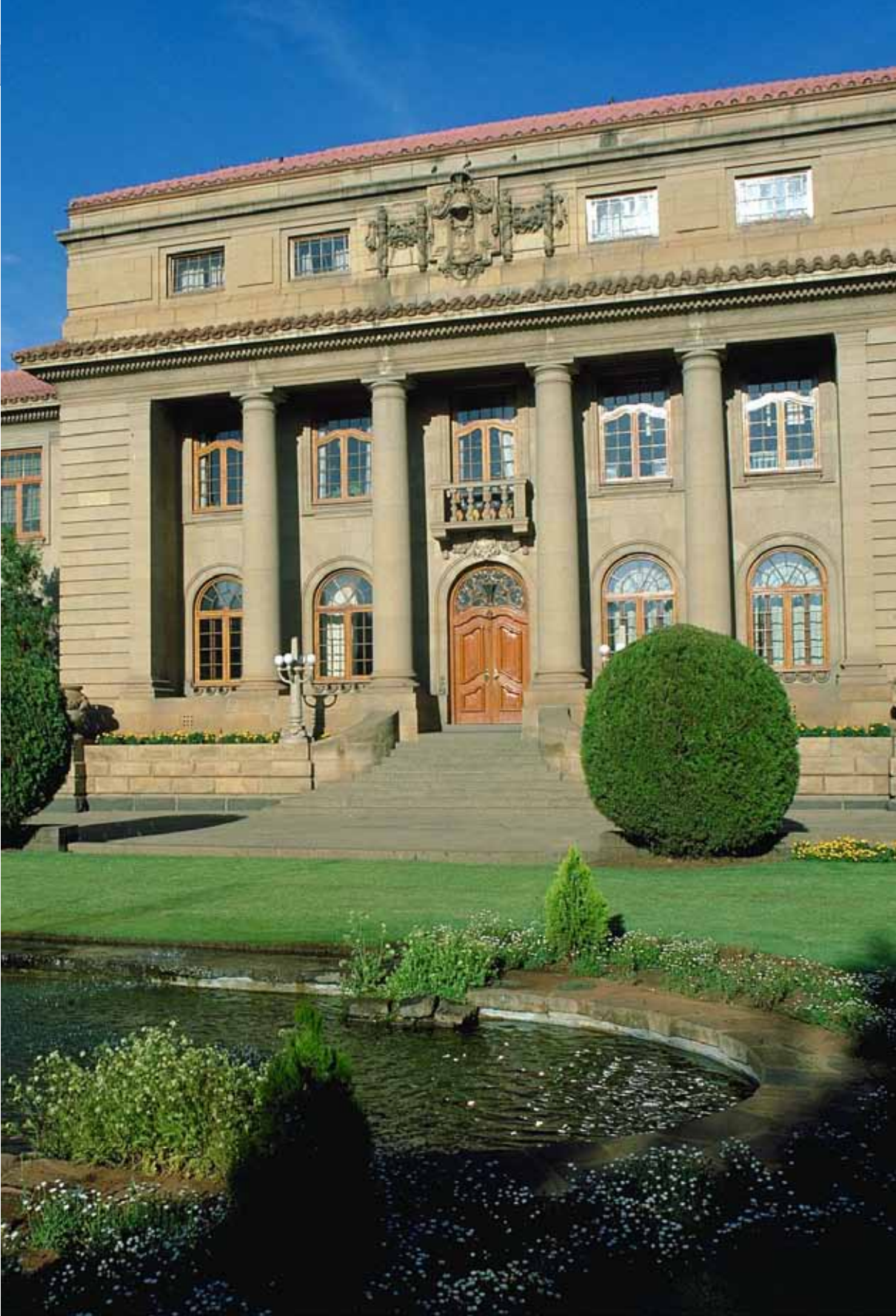
## Acknowledgements

*Beeld*
Budget Vote, 2011
Department of Correctional Services
Department of Justice and Constitutional Development
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2011,* published by National Treasury
South African Law Reform Commission

*www.constitutionallyspeaking.co.za*
*www.dcs.gov.za*
*www.fm.co.za*
*www.genderlinks.org.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.idasa.org.za*
*www.publicprotector.org*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.southafrica.info*

## Suggested reading

Anderson, AM, Roos, R & Dodd, A. 2012. *Everyone's Guide to South African Law.* 3rd ed. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Davis, D & Le Roux, M. 2013. *The Judiciary in the Eye of the Storm.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Du Plessis, W & Humby, T. 2012. *Introduction to Law and Legal Skills in South Africa: Jurisprudence.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
Hoexter, C. 2012. *Administrative Law in South Africa.* Claremont: Juta.
Kemp, G. 2012. *Criminal Law in South Africa: Criminal Justice.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
Liebenberg, S & Quinot, G. 2012. *Law and Poverty: Perspectives from South Africa and Beyond.* Cape Town: Juta Law.
Lubbe, HJ. 2013. *Successive and Additional Measures to the TRC Amnesty Scheme in South Africa: Prosecutions and Presidential Pardons.* Intersentia.
Malherbe, K & Sloth-Nielsen, J. 2012. *Labour Law into the Future: Essays in Honour of D'Arcy du Toit.* Cape Town: Juta Law.
Moses, J. 2012. *Parole in South Africa.* Claremont: Juta.
Scott, H. 2013. *Unjust Enrichment in South African Law: Rethinking Enrichment by Transfer.* Hart Publishing.
South Africa. 2012. *The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa: 1996: Reflecting the Law as at 20 February 2012.* Cape Town: Juta Law.
Taljaard, R. 2012. *Up in Arms: Pursuing Accountability for the Arms Deal in Parliament.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Vundla, P. 2013. *Doing Time.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Woolman, S & Bilchitz, D (eds). 2012. *Is This Seat Taken? Conversations at the Bar, the Bench and the Academy About the South African Constitution.* Pretoria: PULP.



# Police, Defence and Intelligence

The task of maintaining the safety and security of society is critical to the success of all government's programmes. Law enforcement services in South Africa fall under the Department of Police, which is responsible for policy determination, direction, and overall execution of the department's mandate in relation to relevant legislation.

The National Police Commissioner answers directly to the Minister of Police. Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:

- Civilian Secretariat for Police
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
- South African Police Service (SAPS)
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority.

The SAPS is South Africa's principal law enforcement body and is responsible for preventing, combatting and investigating crime to maintain public order, protect and secure the inhabitants of the country and their property, and to uphold and enforce the law.

Some municipalities, such as Cape Town, Johannesburg, Durban and Pretoria, have their own local police units, tasked mainly with road security and local law enforcement.

The primary objective of the Department of Defence is to defend and protect South Africa, its territorial integrity and its people in accordance with the Constitution and the principles of international law regulating the use of force.

The main duties of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) are currently sea and land border protection, and peacekeeping on the African continent.

The Department of State Security is responsible for providing government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and wellbeing of its people. This enables government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

On 12 June 2012, President Jacob Zuma announced the appointment of a new National Commissioner of Police and the first women in South Africa to hold this position, Riah Phiyega.

## Department of Police

The Department of Police has named 2012 as *The Year of the Detective* and directed their energies to 10 priorities during the 2012/13 financial year, namely:

- transforming the police, particularly regarding aspects, units or specialised areas that remained untransformed in terms of race and gender
- harmonising the information and communication technology (ICT) sector within the SAPS
- ensuring that the pace at which new police stations are built is accelerated, especially in rural areas and townships; and ensuring committed personnel and improved systems and operations
- strengthening of crime intelligence, as well as improvements in detective services
- strengthening Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences units
- curbing rhino poaching; the review of the White Paper on Safety and Security; skills-focused recruitment; strengthening oversight on police; and improving forensic science laboratories.

### Legislation and policies

In 2012/13, the review of the *White Paper on Safety and Security* was expected to be finalised. During 2011/12, the SAPS made concerted efforts on strengthening civilian oversight of the police through the reform of the former Independent Complaints Directorate.

By 2011/12, these reforms had been processed. The task will not only be on ensuring delivery of this oversight bodies but also the review of the *White Paper for Safety and Security* and subsequent overhaul of the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995).

In December 2011, the Civilian Secretariat for Police Bill was passed into an Act, the Civilian Secretariat for Police Act, 2011 (Act 2 of 2011).

The IPID Act, 2011 (Act 1 of 2011), strengthens the oversight of the police actions by stipulating that the National Commissioner has to move on the IPID's findings by initiating disciplinary proceedings and must report regularly on the progress or matters referred to police management. Under the new Act, police must also report to the IPID any matter falling under the scope of investigation of the directorate.

The SAPS Act, 1995 requires that the National Commissioner develop a one-year plan that sets out the priorities and objectives of policing for the next financial year.

A national workshop was hosted in 2012 to address challenges experienced in implementing the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998), and to ensure compliance with the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), and the Service Charter for Victims of Crime.

In 2011/12 the SAPS implemented the initial phase of the new Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009 (Act 6 of 2009).

The Government Security Regulator relates to national key points evaluated in compliance with the National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980).

The Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster announced in February 2012 that a Cybersecurity Policy Framework would be tabled before the Cabinet during 2012. In addition, it said that the finalisation of specific cybercrime plans would be a target in 2012. Police have put in place operational measures

2012 was declared *The Year of the Detective*; with a focus on 10-point priority deliverables:

- transformation of the South African Police Service
- smart policing to enhance the Criminal Justice System building new police stations
- policing public service delivery better
- strengthening crime intelligence capacity
- fighting violence against women and children
- skills-focused recruitment as opposed to volume-based recruitment
- improving forensic science laboratories
- reviewing the *White Paper on Safety and Security*
- strengthening oversight on those who police the police.

to deal with cybercrime management. Several cases had been prosecuted by the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), while others were under investigation.

The need for everyone using a cellphone to register their SIM card with the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002), was one of the ways meant to combat cybercrime. By February 2012, about 37 million SIM cards had been registered in accordance with the new legislation. This reduces the possibility for criminals using cybertechnology to plan and execute crime, increasing the chances of their detection and enhancing the quality of evidence which will be presented before the court during trial.

The cluster, led by the SAPS, had already begun to intensify cooperation with police services in the region and with Interpol to fight crime syndicates, including cybercriminals.

The Comprehensive Rural Safety Strategy to enhance safety and security levels, accessibility to policing and service delivery was launched for communication and roll-out to all rural areas during 2011. The strategy is based on four pillars:

- improving and enhancing service delivery at local level
- enhancing cooperation and coordination among all role players
- improving community safety awareness in rural areas
- rural development.

A pilot project to assess the operational concept of the strategy was implemented at Harrismith in the Free State and Tsolo in the Eastern Cape; and thereafter for roll-out during 2012/13 to other identified priority police stations where a high tendency of incidents, such as stock theft, are experienced.

As part of the integrated approach adopted in the Rural Safety Strategy, the SAPS support the Comprehensive Rural Development Plan lead by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.

A partnership was formed with farmers and-workers unions such as Agri-SA, the Transvaal Agricultural Union, the National Emergent Red Meat Producers Organisation, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, the Department of Agriculture, Fisheries and Forestry, as well as organised agriculture. Meetings with role players from the above-mentioned civil organisations and government departments are held on a quarterly basis to discuss crime affecting rural communities and to establish an integrated approach in addressing the challenges facing rural communities.

During 2011/12, the Anti-Corruption Task Team that was specifically established to investigate public sector corruption in terms of Output 5 of the Government Delivery Agreement, arrested 38 suspects for fraud and corruption amounting to R212 528 988 and seized assets totalling R150 million.

## Budget and funding

Expenditure increased from R41,6 billion in 2008/09 to R58,6 billion in 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 12%. This was driven mainly by increased expenditure in compensation of employees to provide for additional capacity and improved conditions of services.

Over the medium term, expenditure is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 6,6%, primarily due to:

- the investment in capital infrastructure and technological enhancements, especially in the forensic and investigative functions
- additional capacity for the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation
- the upgrading of information technology network
- the review and modernisation of the criminal justice system to create an integrated criminal justice environment.

The budget for 2012/13 for the Department of Police is R62,5 billion. For 2012/13, the department planned on visible policing at more than 40% of the budget to enable police stations to institute and preserve safety and security, provide for specialised interventions and the policing of South Africa's borders.

To increase access to communities by building, upgrading and improving police stations, 16 police facility projects were completed in 2011/12. This included a new police station in Hebron, Western Cape and a new 10111 Centre in East London, Eastern Cape.

In addition to this, the SAPS completed 52 capacity projects in terms of basic services, which include 19 police stations that were provided with electricity or generator units, 16 police stations that were provided with water and 33 police stations that were provided with sanitation.

Building of new police stations relates to service delivery within SAPS and government's priority to ensure that the pace of building new police stations is accelerated. In 2012/13, the management of the police finalised its strategic and operational plan, which was expected to give impetus in achieving this goal.

## South African Police Service (SAPS)

The mandate of the SAPS is derived from the Constitution. The objectives of policing are:

- preventing, combatting and investigating crime
- maintaining public order
- protecting and securing the inhabitants of South Africa and their property
- upholding and enforcing the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all the people in South Africa.

In January 2012, Corruption Watch was launched. It is a civil society institute formed to enable South Africans to report and confront corrupt activity in the public and private sectors. Corruption Watch's work includes a website (*www.corruptionwatch.org.za*) and an SMS hotline (45142) to receive reports of corruption, as well as a pledge which people can sign online.

The website will be a repository of stories from the South African public, a secure portal for evidence-based whistle-blowing activity. The organisation can also be reached via Twitter and Facebook. All personal particulars will be kept confidential.

The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat anything that may threaten the safety and security of any community
- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community
- ensure offenders are brought to justice
- participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.

The National Commissioner heads the SAPS. The executive legal officer, chief operations officer, five deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and nine provincial commissioners (under whom the provinces fall) report to the National Commissioner.

By August 2012, the number of police stations countrywide had increased to 1 130. In 2011/12, the SAPS' personnel complement increased from 193 892 to 199 345. It expanded its human resource capacity by filling 1 452 Public Service Act, 1994 personnel posts and 5 824 Police Service Act, 1994 personnel posts consisting of 5 020 entry level trainee posts, 297 legal administration officer posts, 498 posts for forensic services and nine pilots.

The detective capacity as in March 2012 was 23 701 (head count) consisting of general investigations (19 448), specialised investigations (4 226) and support (27). Specialised investigations include family violence, child protection and sexual offences, stock theft, vehicle identification, cross-border and international vehicle crime investigations.

## Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)

The IPID, which replaced the Independent Complaints Directorate in April 2012, was established to strenghten the fight against corruption and human rights abuses by police.

The IPID is responsibilities include ensuring independent oversight over the SAPS and the municipal police services, conducting independent and impartial investigations of identified criminal offences allegedly committed by SAPS members and the municipal police services, and making appropriate recommendations.

In addition to the department's current seven offices, three new ones will be set up in 2013/14 – in Ladysmith (KwaZulu-Natal), Port Elizabeth (Eastern Cape) and KwaMhlanga (Mpumalanga). A further six offices will be set up in 2014/15 in Worcester (Western Cape), Vereeniging (Gauteng), Klerksdorp (North-west), Kroonstad (Free State), Bela Bela (Limpopo) and Springbok (Northern Cape).

The additional R36 million allocated to IPID for the next financial year – bringing the total budget to R196 million – will help the department to employ more investigators. By 2012, the directorate had 139 investigators.

## Functions

### Visible policing

Visible policing is regarded as a line-function division of the SAPS, specifically responsible for:

- combatting crime through crime operations
- providing for the activities at police stations
- combatting crimes in the railway environment
- dealing with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children and community-based crime prevention
- providing a rapid-response service in respect of crimes in progress
- providing police dog and mounted services
- rendering a specialised services by hostage and suicide negotiators and police divers
- eradicating the proliferation of illegal firearms for the availability and use in crime and violence
- ensuring effective compliance and enforcement of liquor control legislation to address serious and violent crime as well as contact crime in South Africa.

In 2011, the department introduced a new policy for Public Order Policing. In 2012/13, the management of police was tasked to ensure the policy is effectively implemented throughout the country.

In 2012/13, more than 18 000 police officers across the country were trained in the Victim Empowerment Programme, child justice, human rights, domestic violence and the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007. For this, R1,7 billion was budgeted for all forms of training interventions.

In September 2012, a strategy to combat and reduce robberies at small business had been finalised. Through the Civilian Secretariat of Police, there was expected to be engagement with relevant parties to ensure the implementation of the strategy.

### Crime prevention

South Africa has seen an overall decrease in serious crime. Police crime statistics for the period 1 April 2011 to 31 March 2012, which were released in September 2012, witnessed a decline in all seven categories of contact crime (this refers to murder, attempted murder, sexual offences, assault with grievous bodily harm, common assault, aggravated robbery and common robbery). These crimes decreased by 3,5%.

There was a 3,1% decrease in murders; attempted murder declined by 5,2%; assault with grievous bodily harm by 4,2% and common assault by 3,4%.

Car-hijacking declined by 11,9%; cash-in-transits dropped by 37,5%; bank robberies decreased by 10,3%; ATM bombings decreased by 34,6%; aggravated robbery decreased by 1,4%; robbery with aggravating circumstances decreased by 12%; common robberies decreased by 4,6%; house robberies by 1,9%, business robberies had increased by 7,5%; the sexual offences ratio decreased by 3,7%; and there was a 2% decrease in burglary at residential premises.

Looking more broadly than the criminal justice system, 56 suspects with illegally obtained assets of more than R5 million were investigated, 26 of whom had appeared in court. Assets worth R580 million of 19 individuals had been restrained.

In 2011/12, 28 163 policing actions were conducted, focusing on a number of priority

areas to address the incidence of priority crime (trio crime, contact crime, contact-related crime, crimes dependent on police action for detection, property-related and other serious crime).

These actions included 54 748 roadblocks and 2 189 965 stop-and-search operations. More than 1,6 million arrests were made, compared to 1,4 million in 2010/11. These arrests included 836 144 arrests for priority crime compared to 688 937 in 2010/11.

In 2011/12, 66 572 vehicles were stolen and robbed in South Africa, and 30 437 vehicles were recovered. Recoveries include vehicles stolen or robbed during previous years, which could be identified by means of primary and secondary identifiers; 3 164 recovered vehicles that could not be identified were compacted.

During 2011/12, 133 478 arrests were made for drug-related crimes during policing actions, 30% more than in 2010/11.

Cannabis remains the most prevalent illicit drug used in South Africa, since it is the most easily accessible drug and is cultivated in South Africa. Mandrax is the second most commonly used illicit drug.

Between April 2011 and March 2012, the SAPS seized more than 137 000 kg of cannabis and 630 589 cannabis plants. Some 127 680 Mandrax tablets, 44 kg of cocaine and 107 kg of crystal methamphetamine (Tik) were also seized as well as other drugs such as whoonga, nyaope, heroine, ecstasy and LSD.

During the investigation of organised crime cases, more than 17 000 kg of cannabis, 21 kg cocaine, 38 kg of crack cocaine, 1 632 472 Mandrax tablets, 2 381 ecstasy tablets, 198 kg of heroin and 62 g of crystal methamphetamine were confiscated; 481 arrests were made in relation to these drug seizures; and 16 clandestine drug laboratories were detected and dismantled, culminating in the arrests of 30 suspects.

### Interdepartmental initiatives

In 2011, the department re-established the Family, Child and Sexual Offenses Unit. Crime against women and children is a priority for the SAPS and therefore Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences units (FCS) have been reintroduced in all 176 SAPS clusters countrywide. By May 2012, there were 2 155 detectives placed at these units and they were issued with 1 276 vehicles. Previously, the FCS units consisted of only 1 864 detectives.

An additional amount of R49,5 million was provided to all provinces to capacitate the FCS units with resources. Between April 2011 and January 2012, the FCS units achieved over 363 life sentences, with a conviction rate of 73% for crimes against women above 18 years old and 70,04% for crimes against children under 18 years old.

Some 17 314 out of 21 100 detectives were trained in detective-related courses. A further 2 161 detectives were expected to be trained on the basic detective course during 2012/13.

Some 479 trained detectives that had been transferred to other components and divisions within SAPS in the past have been placed back in the detective services environment. Six courses for training of detective commanders in which 346 commanders were trained, was presented during 2011/12.

During 2011/12, 845 SAPS members were trained in the Sexual Offences First Responders Course, aimed at first responders to sexual offences; 2 720 members were trained in the Domestic Violence Learning Programme to ensure that service delivery by SAPS mem-

The anonymous tip-off service Crime Line contributed to 3 000 arrests and more than R41-million in seizures of stolen and counterfeit goods and drugs since it was started five years ago. 80% of the tip-offs were drug-related. The system had contributed to the arrests of criminals wanted for crimes such as ATM bombings, possession of illegal firearms and ammunition, and making illegal electricity connections. At least 16 800 illegal connections and acts of meter tampering had been thwarted in cooperation with Eskom's Operation Khanyisa initiative.

The public can report crime by sending an SMS to 32211, or online at *www.crimeline.co.za*.

bers to the community complies with the Domestic Violence Act, 1998; 1 678 members were trained to deal with vulnerable children; 1 191 members were trained in the national Victim Empowerment Programme to sensitise police officials to the needs of crime victims; and 903 members were trained in the Human Rights in Policing Programme.

Victim support rooms are used for the consultation of victims of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence, interviews and statement-taking. At the end of March 2012 there were 925 victim support rooms nationwide.

### Partnership policing

Community policing is a concept that guides police-management styles and operational strategies. It emphasises the establishment of police-community partnerships and a problem-solving approach responsive to the needs of the community. It is based on the assumption that the objectives of the SAPS can only be achieved through the collaborative effort of the SAPS, other government institutions, the organisations and structures of civil society, and individual citizens.

Police/community partnerships have been structured by means of community policing forums (CPFs), with the aim to promote the local accountability of the police and enlist the cooperation of communities with the SAPS. CPFs at police stations serve as the most critical instrument to ensure that the SAPS engage and cooperate with the communities. By the end of March 2012, 1 122 functioning CPFs had been established at police stations.

### Sector policing

Sector policing is an operational policing tool adopted in terms of the community policing approach of the SAPS. It provides for practical policing approaches to compliment community participation in accordance with policing needs and community requirements, and is aligned with community structures. By March 2012, sector policing had been rolled out to 1 056 police stations countrywide.

### Reservists

As part of cooperative police-community relations, reservists are being used to support the SAPS in combatting crime. The reservist system provides for the active involvement of the community in policing and supports a solution-oriented approach.

In support of the recruitment of those reservists who meet the requirements to serve as permanent members of the SAPS, 1 264 reservists were appointed in terms of the SAPS Act, 1995 and 27 in terms of the Public Service Act, 1994 between 1 April 2011 and 31 March 2012.

The personnel strength of the Reserve Police Service was 51 927 reservists at the end of March 2012.

In 2011/12, 1 641 reservists were trained. In addition, short skills programmes on topics such as the administration of community service centres, crime investigation, crime prevention and street survival were presented to improve the skills and knowledge of reservists in performing policing duties.

### Crime Stop and Primedia Crime Line

Crime Stop consists of a range of call centres responsible for collecting information on criminal activity from the public. When phoning 08600 10111, members of the public are assisted by trained interviewing specialists to pass on information about criminal activity to the SAPS.

From 1 April 2011 to 31 March 2012, 2 562 SMS tips and 1 063 web tips were received, which led to 109 positive cases. Some 182 arrests were made and goods to the value of R593 184 were seized as a result of this initiative.

Crime Line is a groundbreaking initiative that allows members of the public to make anonymous SMS tip-offs on suspected crimes at any time of the day. Since its launch in 2007, it has been instrumental in the arrests of some of the country's most wanted criminals, including suspected robbers and ATM bombers.

It provides the public with a practical way to help in the fight against crime.

Police cooperation between South Africa and Italy was strengthened following discussions between the Minister of Police, Mr Nathi Mthethwa, and Italian Interior Minister Annamaria Cancellieri in April 2012.

The two ministers signed an agreement on police cooperation between the two countries at Parliament, Cape Town. The agreement includes cooperation on trafficking in transnational organised crime, drug trafficking, human trafficking, firearm trafficking, terrorism as well as crowd management and event security.

## Emergency response services

The SAPS's emergency services respond to crimes in progress and provide services through K9 units, mounted units, hostage and suicide negotiation, police divers and uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad.

In 2011/12, 11 077 203 calls were received by the 20 SAPS 10111 call centres – 13,8% or 1 342 702 more calls than in 2010/11. There has been an increase in non-police-related calls (an estimated 76% or 8 391 862 compared with 70,9% or 6,9 million ), which included hoax calls, nuisance and abusive calls, emergency service enquiries, road directions, legal advice relating to domestic violence or other personal-related matters.

Attending of complaints in terms of reaction time to comply with the vision and mission statement of the SAPS improved for serious complaints in progress from 21,43 minutes in 2010/11 to 19,13 minutes in 2011/12. The reaction time for serious complaints that already occurred improved from 28,58 minutes to 24,44 minutes compared to 2010/11 and for other complaints an improvement from 25,48 minutes to 22,26 minutes were noted. The reaction time is calculated as the time (in minutes) from the date and time a complaint is registered until the date and time the police arrive at the crime scene.

## Railway Police

The Railway Police has been re-established within South Africa to police the railway environment, which covers about 30 000 km of rail lines and transports approximately 571 837 million passengers annually. A total of 3 308 members are deployed in the railway environment.

The functions of the Railway Police include:

- a visible policing service to address the safety of commuters on trains
- conducting of crime prevention and crime combatting operations within the rail environment
- vice within the rail environment.

Railway Police are operational in the Western Cape (Cape Town, Retreat, Philippi and Bellville), Gauteng (Pretoria, Belle Ombre, Mabopane, Saulsville, Denneboom, Johannesburg, Krugersdorp, New Canada, Stretfort, Germiston, Springs and Kempton Park), Eastern Cape (East London, Mount Ruth and Swartzkop) and KwaZulu-Natal (Durban, KwaMashu, Cavendish, Re-Union and Escombe).

There are five national mobile train units strategically placed in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. These units are actively involved in policing the long-distance passenger and freight rail across the country. They are also involved in cross-border operations, disruptive operations and act as a rapid response to the rail environment.

Arrests were made by railway police members within and outside the rail environment and these were effected during daily deployments and operations. Some 39 925 arrests were made, which included 1 107 contact crimes, 133 contact-related crimes, 952 property-related crimes, 3 312 crimes detected as a result of police action and 34 421 other crimes.

The SAPS also provide a reactive policing service at all Gautrain rail stations and on the trains within the Gautrain rail network.

## Firearms and Liquor Control

Firearms and Liquor Control addresses the abundance of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. It also ensures compliance and effective enforcement of firearms, liquor and second-hand goods control legislation.

The SAPS is responsible for issuing competency certificates, individual and business firearm licences, renewals of existing firearm licences, and authorisations to declare such people fit and proper to possess firearms. People seeking firearm licences are compelled to undergo competency testing and obtain a competency certificate before being granted a firearm licence.

From 1 April 2011 to 31 March 2012, the SAPS received 125 388 new firearm-related applications. Of these, 98 417 or 78,5% of applications were finalised by the end of March 2012.

The accreditation of business entities, associations and organisations is integral to the implementation of firearm-control legislation in South Africa. There were 152 additional institutions that were accredited during 2011/12, which brought the total of all accredited institutions to 2 088 as at the end of March 2012, compared to 1 936 at the end of March 2011.

During 2011/12, 8 744 stolen or lost firearms whose serial numbers could be linked to firearm owners in South Africa were recovered. Over 10 000 arrests were made for illegal possession of firearms during law-enforcement operations.

Specific procedures are in place for legal firearm owners to surrender firearms and ammunition voluntarily to the SAPS for destruction. In 2011/12, 4 876 legal firearms and 57 599 legal rounds of ammunition were handed in voluntarily. During 2011/12, 119 810 firearms were destroyed.

From 1 April 2011 to 31 March 2012, 1 096 694,944 litres of liquor (including 60 313,264 litres of home-brewed beer) were confiscated by the SAPS. During the same period, 92 929 identified unlicensed/illegal liquor premises were closed down, including 91 665 illegal liquor outlets and 1 264 illegal liquor manufacturers.

A multidisciplinary National Non-Ferrous Metals Crime Combatting Committee and nine provincial committees were also established to focus on the proliferation of copper-cable thefts and related crimes. Investigations into non-ferrous metals focused primarily on the theft of copper cables (electricity and rail cable). Organised Crime Investigation units succeeded in arresting 220 suspects and securing 46 convictions for crimes relating to the theft and possession of non-ferrous metals.

### Operational Response Services

Operational Response Services provides for specialised interventions and polices South Africa's borders. This division is regarded as a line-function division of the SAPS specifically responsible for:

- maintaining public order
- conducting medium-to-high and high-risk operations
- stabilising volatile situations
- preventing cross-border crimes
- providing a diplomatic policing service.

The responsibility to respond to and stabilise medium-to-high-risk incidents falls within the broader tactical environment. This tactical capability comprises the:

- Special Task Force. The three units deal with hostage situations, interventions to combat urban and rural terror, organised crime, serious and violent crime incidents and crimes against women and children, protection and VIP assistance and search and rescue operations. In 2011/12, the task force intervened in 249 extreme situations.
- National Intervention. The four units deal

In January 2012, the Minister of Police, Mr Nathi Mthethwa, held a two-day strategic planning meeting to discuss the allocation of resources and the training of police officers. The meeting was also attended by the Deputy Minister of Police, Ms Maggie Sotyu, the National Commissioner of Police, Riah Phiyega, and all South African Police Service (SAPS) station commanders, cluster commanders, provincial commissioners and top management within the SAPS. The meeting also examined and audited the all-round performance of the SAPS, and paid attention to issues such as partnerships with communities, and reviewed and improved the various strategies and plans that are geared towards effective crime reduction.

with interventions in serious and violent crime incidents, escorting dangerous criminals, safeguarding VIPs and big events, and providing specialised operational support to stations and other government departments. During the period under review, National Intervention conducted 1 909 interventions.

- Public Order Police. The functions of these units are crowd management, responding and stabilising violent and unruly protest actions and maintaining public order. During 2011/12, 11 938 crowd-related incidents were recorded, including 10 744 peaceful incidents such as assemblies, gatherings, meetings and demonstrations. Violence erupted in 1 194 unrest-related incidents such as labour disputes and dissatisfaction with service delivery, leading to 3 543 arrests.
- Tracking Team. This unit is responsible for tracking the most wanted and dangerous suspects for serious and violent crimes. The Tracking Team focuses on the effective and speedy tracking of all the most wanted suspects for whom warrants of arrest were issued for identified serious crime categories such as rape, serial killings, gang-related crimes, as well as serious and violent crimes. During 2011/12, the tracking teams arrested 733 suspects who were wanted for various serious crimes, including murder, aggravated robberies, ATM bombings and sexual-related offences.

In October 2012, President Jacob Zuma bestowed medals on military veterans who distinguished themselves prior to 1994 in the quest for democracy in South Africa.

The medal parade, honouring members of Umkhonto we Sizwe, was held at the Waterkloof Air Force Base in Pretoria. More than 500 former members of the Umkhonto we Sizwe Luthuli detachment – first generation of members who joined around 1961 and 1962 when Umkhonto we Sizwe was established – received medals in the category of platinum, gold and bronze for bravery, merit, campaigns and commemorative.

### Mobile Operations

Mobile Operations is responsible for safeguarding valuable and/or dangerous government cargo of significant material or monetary value or quality, as well as cargo that could cause danger, risk or harm such as explosives and ammunition, nuclear material, firearms and drugs. This entails secure escort duties to the South African Reserve Bank. Duties are also rendered to the Koeberg nuclear plant, the National Energy Corporation of South Africa, Denel, the South African Bank Notes Company, Parliament, Government Printing Works, SAPS Financial, Supply Chain Management and the Forensic Science Laboratory Service. A 100% safe delivery rate was achieved for the 221 cargos protected.

The SAPS's 35 helicopters and 12 aeroplanes flew 7 730 hours. This included 6 383 operational hours, which were flown exclusively for crime-related matters such as call-outs, crime prevention operations, assistance to foreign countries and special forces.

### International assistance

The SAPS renders specialised policing services to neighbouring countries, including peacekeeping missions and cross-border operations. In 2011/12, 13 members were deployed to the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), four to Zambia, 134 to Darfur (Sudan), 16 to South Sudan and 60 to Equatorial Guinea.

### Border Policing

Border Policing provides policing and security at ports of entry. The functioning of border policing relates to the effective, efficient and economical management of policing and security within the border environment, which is air, land and sea borders.

These include nine seaports (inclusive of one dry port), 10 international airports and 53 land ports. The smaller slipways/harbours and airstrips are policed by the relevant police stations of that specific area. To enhance national security and territorial integrity, the SAPS conducted 4 430 planned crime prevention and combatting actions at ports of entry.

These operations and day-to-day activities contributed to various arrests and seizures. 6 535 roadblocks, 81 047 vehicle patrols, 35 air patrols, 105 554 foot patrols, 2 873 borderline patrols, 1 364 farm visits, 4 283 vessel patrols and 9 365 perimeter inspections formed part of these actions, among others. Some 25 421 arrests were made at ports of entry in 2011/12.

Based on the 2009 Cabinet decision to return the function of borderline control back to the SANDF, borderline bases on the Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Free State (Fouriesburg and Ladybrand), KwaZulu-Natal and Eastern Cape (Maluti and Lundeansnek) borders were handed over to the SANDF up to the end of March 2012. Himeville and Upper Tugela on the KwaZulu-Natal and Lesotho border were to be handed over to the SANDF in 2012/13.

### Detective Services

Detective Services is responsible for maintaining an effective crime-investigation service. It investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime.

During 2011/12, 1 134 355 charges for serious crime were detected, 249 879 case dockets were court-ready and convictions for 307 580 charges were achieved. Some 158 870 charges reported for crimes against women above 18 years were detected and 36 545 case dockets were court-ready, while 45 186 reported charges for crimes against children under 18 years were detected, and 18 418 case dockets were court-ready.

A project was initiated to identify experienced detectives who had left the detective service environment as a result of transfers and promotions. By March 2012, 479 detectives had been redeployed.

Detective court case officers were placed at selected courts where large volumes of cases are handled to screen new court cases for completeness, ensure that dockets are brought to courts and that investigating officers comply with instructions of public prosecutors. In 2011/12, 139 detective court case officers were placed at 109 courts in all provinces.

In October 2012, Cabinet approved the submission of the draft Dangerous Weapons Bill to Parliament. The Bill is expected to repeal the previous Dangerous Weapons Act, 1968 (Act 71 of 1968), which was in operation in the former Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei homelands.

Detective service centres were introduced at the larger stations to have trained detectives available on duty at police stations at all times.

The FCS units have been re-established in all 176 SAPS clusters. The number of FCS detectives increased by 291, from 1 864 in 2010/11 to 2 155 in 2011/12. Between April 2011 and March 2012, the FCS units secured over 363 life sentences, with a conviction rate of 73% for crimes against women and 70% for crimes against children.

Since 2008, 82 stock theft units were established. In 2011/12, livestock valued at R189 415 900 were recovered.

### Specialised investigations

The Directorate for Priority Crime Investigations (DPCI), known as the Hawks, investigates cases relating to organised crime, serious and violent crime, commercial crime and corruption.

In 2011/12, the DPCI received 45 743 new cases. 35 307 charges were referred to court for the first time, 2 955 charges were withdrawn and 952 charges were unfounded.

During this time, the DPCI arrested 8 309 individuals and secured 5 561 convictions. Regarding organised crime, they arrested 2 820 and secured 884 convictions.

In the fight against organised crime, the Hawks arrested 50 of the country's most wanted criminals, as well as 20 rhino poachers in 2011/12.

The Organised Crime Investigation units within the DPCI are responsible for the prevention of a cross-sector of organised-crime-related activities including illegal drugs, plundering precious metals and diamonds, smuggling firearms and weapons, human trafficking, money laundering, specific violent

The Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation, better known as the Hawks, has declared the fight against rhino poaching an operational priority and has established a national task team to specifically deal with this crisis. To address the illicit market for rhino horns, South Africa is engaging with certain countries in South East Asia to enhance law enforcement cooperation.

In 2012, 633 rhinos were killed for their horns. The Kruger National Park lost 395 rhinos to poaching during 2012, with another three killed on the first day of 2013. North West, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo collectively accounted for the loss of 197 rhinos in 2012.

crime, smuggling or stealing non-ferrous metals, vehicle-related crime, endangered species and crimes against the State.

To address the threat of serious organised crime, these units conducted project-driven investigations against 88 criminal groups consisting of 631 targets. Some 46 of these projects were successfully terminated, culminating in the arrest of 165 suspects.

During ad hoc investigations, 3 415 arrests were made and 876 convictions were secured for specific violent crimes such as the hijacking of cars and trucks, cash-in-transit robberies, bank robberies, ATM bombings, house and business robberies. In addition, 314 people were arrested for the illegal purchase, theft and possession of uncut diamonds and unwrought precious metals.

Various cross-border operations were conducted during which 303 vehicles were impounded, 46 firearms were seized, 174 suspects were arrested for various crimes (including illegal immigrants) and 139 kg of cannabis was seized.

### Criminal records and forensic sciences

The function of the Criminal Record Centre is to identify and confirm any previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated by the SAPS.

During 2011/12, the Criminal Record Centre received 1 211 598 crime-related fingerprint enquiries for possible identification and/or confirmation. Of these, 1 137 423 previous conviction reports were generated within 20 days of receipt and 576 569 were first offenders.

In total, 1 018 829 commercial searches (non-criminal-related enquiries) were also received for processing.

The forensic science laboratory renders a support service to investigating officers by analysing any physical evidence that is collected from various crime scenes. Throughout 2011/12, the forensic science laboratory received 320 729 entries for analysis.

Some 323 388 entries were analysed, including entries from previous financial years, of which 248 202 were analysed within 28 working days from the total amount finalised, including ballistic evidence, scientific and chemical substances, biological material, such as DNA analysis and questioned documents.

The department continued to grow forensic capacity in response to the expected escalation in exhibits received.

At least 800 forensic analysts were employed in 2012/13 to capacitate the country's forensic science laboratories.

More crime scene management service stations have been established, especially to reach rural communities where such services were previously difficult to access.

The launch of a state-of-the-art forensic laboratory in Cape Town in July 2012 helped police to fight crime more smartly. The new centre, which serves the Western Cape and several districts in the Northern Cape and Eastern Cape, replaced the old forensics centre in Delft, and is one of four forensic laboratories in the country (with the others in Port Elizabeth, Pretoria and Durban). The division achieved a criminal conviction rate of 94% in 2011/12.

### Crime intelligence

This division of the SAPS is responsible for centralised intelligence and for managing, coordinating and analysing information gathering. It also provides technical-intelligence support to the operational components of crime intelligence and, where necessary, to other operational divisions of the SAPS. Through

its various national and provincial linked components, Crime Intelligence has established coverage throughout the country, extending to station level.

Cooperation with foreign law-enforcement agencies is done through platforms such as Interpol and the South African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation. This extends the range of crime intelligence beyond the national borders.

In 2011/12, 49 019 cluster and ad hoc operations – police investigation and intelligence-gathering techniques, which include the detection, investigation, uncovering and prevention of criminal conduct and police investigations not part of a registered undercover or network operation – were conducted.

Some 110 033 profiles, 137 228 intelligence analysis reports, and 82 680 station and cluster crime threat analysis reports were compiled. Some 281 886 statistical reports (descriptive reports based on crime statistics for a specific area and time period) were also compiled.

### Protection and security services

The VIP Protection Service provides for the protection of the President, Deputy President, former presidents and other identified VIPs while in transit.

During 2011/12, the unit provided protection to 17 presidential, 78 national and 119 provincial dignitaries; 143 foreign dignitaries, including heads of state visiting South Africa; 298 major and/or special and provincial events, including protection to the Conference of the Parties hosted in December 2011 in Durban; the African National Congress Centenary hosted in January 2012 in Bloemfontein; and 144 584 South African VIP movements within and outside the borders of South Africa.

Static guard services protects VIPs and their property, and other identified government buildings. The unit conducted 95 344 protection operations to protect 28 installations and/or government buildings and 109 presidential and national ministerial residences.

Strategic installations were audited in terms of the minimum physical security standard guidelines at national and provincial government departments. During 2011/12, 138 strategic installations were audited and 171 national key points were evaluated.

## Department of Defence and Military Veterans

The SANDF's main objectives are:

- the defence and protection of South Africa, its people and important national interests
- the safeguarding of South Africa and its people through aspects such as border safeguarding, supporting the SAPS and fulfilling South Africa's treaty obligations
- the defence contribution to South Africa's international agenda and the promotion of regional and continental peace and stability
- supporting civil authority in times of crisis, need or turmoil, and the defence contribution to South Africa's developmental priorities
- the civil control over defence and the accountable use of defence resources.

The SANDF has a defensive orientation and a non-threatening posture in accordance with the *White Paper on National Defence of the Republic of South Africa*.

### Legislation and policies

The Department of Defence derives its mandate primarily from Section 200(2) of the Constitution. The mandate is given substance by the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002) as amended; the General Regulations; the *White Paper on Defence (1996)*, the *Defence Review (1998)* and delegated legislation.

In 2012/13, new military policies came into effect on:

- adjusting salaries of soldiers
- providing free preschools, crèches and primary school care
- converting training into academic qualifications
- providing suitable accommodation
- developing a housing allowance scheme
- establishing the Military Ombudsman.

The individual values pursued by members of the Department of Defence in support of the Defence mandate are:

In October 2012, during the 70th commemoration of the Battle of El Alamein in Egypt, the SANDF participated in a full-scale special tribute to the South African soldiers who perished during World War II at El Alamein.

More than 1 200 South African soldiers, both black and white, took part in the battle from 23 October to 4 November 1942, under the old Union Defence Force banner during the second battle of El Alamein code-named "Lightfoot". This battle was among the most decisive battles of the World War II campaigns.

- discipline
- transparency
- excellence through leadership
- honesty and integrity
- accountability
- fairness
- teamwork.

The National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC) was established by the National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002), to ensure compliance with government policies in respect of arms control and to provide guidelines and criteria to be used when assessing applications for permits.

The NCACC's Policy for the Control of Trade in Conventional Arms was promulgated in January 2004.

National conventional arms-control regulations, published in May 2004, deal with applications for permits and the list of dual-use goods, technologies and munitions that are subject to control.

The Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999 (Act 17 of 1999), came into effect in February 2001. The Minister appointed a chairperson and members of the Advisory Board on Military Veterans' Affairs from nominations received from recognised military veterans' organisations. The President is designated as the Patron-in-Chief of all military veterans in terms of the Act.

Legislation that will govern military veterans had been gazetted and came into force in April 2012. Regulations that would govern the implementation of the Act were drafted in 2012.

The Military Veterans Act, 2011 (Act 18 of 2011) enjoin the Department of Military Veterans as part of its legislative mandate, restore the dignity and memorialise the sacrifices of those who sacrificed their lives for the benefit of democracy and freedom in South Africa.

## Defence Strategy

In the medium to long term, the Department of Defence and Military Veterans will execute its mandate to:

- defend and protect South Africa, its sovereignty, its territorial integrity, its national interests and its people in accordance with the Constitution and principles of international law regulating the use of force
- contribute to freedom from fear and want, including the promotion of human security, both nationally and internationally
- contribute to a better life for the people of South Africa.

While emphasising its obligation, the department embraces government's initiatives and priorities to alleviate poverty and underdevelopment. The department's support to these government initiatives requires that:

- defence capabilities are enhanced and maintained
- peace, security and confidence-building in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region and the rest of the continent are promoted through constructive dialogue aimed at nurturing sound defence diplomatic relations and projecting South Africa's foreign policy principles and objectives
- the government's policy to resolve conflicts peacefully through recognised international instruments and mechanisms be supported by deploying the SANDF in international peace missions
- the government's diplomatic engagements are supported through participation in multilateral institutions such as the SADC, the African Union (AU) and the United Nations (UN).

## Military strategy

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the *White Paper on Defence* (1996), the *Defence Review* (1998) and the National Security Strategy.

The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the UN Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself. This self-defence aims at protecting the country and its territorial integrity. The military strategic objectives of the SANDF are the following:

- enhancing and maintaining comprehensive defence capabilities
- promoting peace, security and stability in the SADC region and on the continent
- supporting the people of South Africa.

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. This approach allows for wartime and peacetime missions to direct the Peacetime Strategy for Force Preparation, and to guide joint, interdepartmental, inter-agency and multinational force preparation as well as force employment during times of conflict. The missions include:

- countering a conventional, unconventional or non-conventional threat or attack
- peace-support operations
- health support
- defence diplomacy
- special operations
- support to other government departments
- disaster relief and humanitarian assistance
- presidential tasks.

The military strategic concepts describe the procedures to be followed to meet military strategic objectives, namely:

- providing mission-essential training
- establishing a mission-trained force
- selective engagement where possible
- strategic positioning.

The SANDF's capabilities constitute the means of the strategy and consist of:

- command and control, communications, computers, information, intelligence, infrastructure, reconnaissance and surveillance capabilities
- light mobile capability
- conventional warfare capability
- effective and appropriate support capabilities.

## Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), South African Air Force (SAAF), South African Navy (SAN) and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing combat-ready defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and operational requirements. Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Some examples of group system/formations established by the different services are:

- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – air capabilities within the Air Command
- SAN – fleet command
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

A group system or formation's specific geographical location depends on where its combat and support units are concentrated.

The preparation and employment of the SANDF is supported by the management of finances as well as the acquisition, maintenance and disposal/retirement of human resources, finances, logistic supplies and information systems, and which are administered by internal controls within the business rules derived from the applicable resource regulatory framework.

## Budget and funding

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans' budget allocation for 2012/13 was R37,5 billion. It is expected to grow by 6,5% to R39,9 billion and reach R42 billion in 2013/14.

Changes to the baseline over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period include R749,2 million for borderline control, R23 million for the establishment of the Office

of the Military Ombudsman and R600 million for the completion of the Strategic Defence Procurement Programme.

The department spent R1,8 billion on estate management that was transferred to the Department of Public Works.

## Functions

### Peace support operations

The role of the SANDF in promoting peace and security in the region and the continent necessitated the enhancement of the SANDF's peacekeeping capability, including its Forward Deployment Capability. The SANDF continued to participate in the UN Peace Support Operation in the DRC, the UN/AU hybrid Peace Support Operation in Sudan and the provision of training to the armed forces of the Central African Republic. The SANDF was tasked to execute counter-piracy operations in support of the Mozambican Defence Force in the Mozambique Channel. In addition, the SANDF had five general military assistance operations in the Central African Republic, South Sudan, Tanzania, Equatorial Guinea and the DRC.

### Border safeguarding

Effective border management is part of the government's crime-prevention strategy, which deals with cross-border crimes and poaching. The SANDF works closely with the SAPS and other government departments on this.

As part of the SANDF troop deployment, operations were being conducted to combat cross-border crime, stock theft and illegal grazing and rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park.

During 2012, the troop deployment had led to the confiscation of contraband, including cigarettes and liquor, to the value of R3,1 million. In addition, 763 kg of dagga and 315 kg of copper had been confiscated and 23 stolen vehicles and nine weapons recovered. Some 5 210 undocumented people were apprehended and 212 criminals arrested.

South African soldiers, posted on the border with Mozambique to conduct border security patrols, apprehended 22 poachers and confiscated 19 hunting rifles and AK-47s between April 2011 and March 2012. The soldiers had also shot and killed 11 poachers in that period.

The soldiers had initially been posted on the South African-Mozambican border as part of government's strategy to secure South Africa's borders, but were later assigned to anti-rhino-poaching units in the Kruger National Park.

The last phase of the borderline control strategy was rolled out in 2012, when soldiers were sent to patrol the border with Lesotho.

Since the first deployment of SANDF troops along the country's borders in April 2010, 11 SANDF companies had been stationed on the borders with Zimbabwe, Swaziland, Mozambique and Lesotho. A further four companies were to be deployed on the borders with Botswana and Namibia in 2013/14.

### Defence acquisition

Defence acquisition focused on acquiring new equipment and upgrading existing equipment, in 2012/13.

Specific technology programmes are also in place to ensure the retention of the required technology base for effective local participation in scheduled acquisition programmes, in addition to applying these technologies to optimise the remaining life of existing equipment. Defence science, engineering and technical expertise focus on the strategically essential requirements of the SANDF.

In October 2012, the South African Post Office paid tribute to the 11 Field Postal Unit of the SANDF by issuing a set of commemorative stamps. The stamps were launched on World Post Day, which is observed on 9 October each year.

The 11 Field Postal Unit is dedicated to providing an efficient field postal service to the SANDF and its members, wherever they may be deployed, during operations and large-scale field exercises. The unit is fully operational in Africa and is the only reserve unit that has been deployed continuously since the first South African troops were deployed in central Africa during 2001.

Examples include:
- SA Army Infantry Fire System (60 mm Long-Range Mortar)
- SA Army Intelligence Battlefield Surveillance and Mobile Processing System
- SA Army Artillery Target Engagement System
- Ground-Based Air Defence System
- Development of the Rooivalk Combat Support Helicopter
- Electro-Optical Sensor on the Cessna C-208
- Development of the A-Darter Infra-Red Missile
- Four Gripen fighter aircraft arrived in September 2012, bringing the total delivered in South Africa to 26
- SAN's Submarine Capability
- Precision Guided Munitions
- Sonar Technology
- Support Technology.

## Organisational structure

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans adheres to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence and the Defence Secretariat.

While the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the Joint Standing Committee on Defence ensures that the Executive Authority (the Minister) remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the department.

### Secretary for Defence

The Secretary for Defence manages the Defence Secretariat and is the accounting officer of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans.

As head of the department, the Secretary for Defence is responsible for advising the Minister regarding defence policy through:
- enhancing civil control through briefings to the parliamentary committees having oversight over the department and the Minister over the department
- providing the Chief of the Defence Force with comprehensive instructions
- monitoring compliance with policies and directions issued by the Minister to the Chief of the Defence Force
- disciplining of, administrative control over and managing employees, including their effective use and training.

### Chief of the SANDF

The Chief of the SANDF is appointed by the President of South Africa. His or her duties include:
- advising the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on any military, operational and administrative matters
- complying with directions issued by the Minister
- formulating and issuing policies and doctrines
- exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions
- directing, managing and administrating
- executing approved programmes of the defence budget
- employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation
- training the armed forces
- maintaining defence capabilities
- planning contingencies
- managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

Various divisions within the SANDF have specific responsibilities and capabilities. These include among others:
- The Joint Operations Division provides and employs defence capabilities, including an operational capability to conduct all operations, as well as joint, interdepartmental and multinational military exercises.
- The SA Army provides prepared and supported landward defence capabilities.
- The SAAF provides prepared and supported air defence capabilities.

- The SAN provides prepared and supported maritime defence capabilities.
- The SAMHS provides prepared and supported health capabilities and services.
- The Defence Intelligence Division provides a defence intelligence and counter-intelligence capability.
- Joint Logistic Services, a subprogramme of the General Support Programme, provides logistic services.
- The Command and Management Information Systems Division is a subprogramme of the General Support Programme and provides command and management information and related services.
- The Military Police Division is a subprogramme of General Support that provides military policing capabilities and services.
- The Military Skills Development System will, through professional education and training, result in all young officers being in possession of a Bachelor's Degree by the time they are promoted to the rank and level of major by 2020. Joint Senior Command and Staff Programme graduates will attain a postgraduate diploma or Honours Degree that paves the way for Executive National Security Programme graduates to obtain Master's degrees. These degrees will be awarded through institutions of higher education accredited by the Council of Higher Education.
- The National Youth Service is intended to play a key role in dealing with the consequences of youth unemployment and to the national goal of poverty alleviation. The service does not offer training for military engagement, but will draw on the potential of military training to promote discipline, self-esteem, confidence and a sense of belonging to the national community. The aim is to train 20 000 recruits though this programme in 2012.

## Defence Reserve Force

In terms of the South African Defence Strategy 2010 to 2030 and the SANDF Military Strategy 2007, the role of the reserve forces is to be in a state of predetermined readiness and provide the following capabilities:

- augmenting the regular forces as key elements within the core force
- providing the bulk of the growth force and contributing to the ongoing operations conducted by the SANDF
- supplementing peace-support operations
- providing certain specialist skills.

At the end of 2011/12, the Reserve Force strength was 26 851, of whom 15 316 reservists were called up during the year – the highest call-up since 1994.

In 2012, various tertiary institutions implemented the University Reserve Training Programme. The first group of 56 students completed basic military training in January 2012 in the Free State.

In September 2012, more than 28 countries showcased their different aircraft's capabilities at the seventh Africa Aerospace and Defence Air Show at the Waterkloof Air Force Base in Pretoria.

It is Africa's largest exhibition of air, sea and land capability and attracted thousands of foreign tourists, as well as local visitors.

The show featured both aerobatic and static displays, as well as national pavilions from India, Russia, Turkey, Italy, Germany, Belgium, China, the United States of America, the United Kingdom, Romania, Pakistan and Brazil.

## Maritime safety and security

Amid a dramatic increase in piracy, South Africa may have to amend its maritime laws if it decides to supply any foreign commercial vessels that carry armed security guards and dock at its ports. Under current maritime laws, it is illegal to have armed guards aboard commercial vessels.

In April 2012, naval delegates from 38 African countries and those bordering the Indian Ocean debated the ethics around such a move at the Third Indian Ocean Naval Symposium hosted at the Cape Town International Convention Centre. Some European countries had been considering placing security, including marines, on board commercial vessels

because of the increase in piracy in the Indian Ocean. South African commercial vessels do not have on board security, and security is supplied by the SAN through its various patrol vessels.

Crimes in the Indian Ocean had become unacceptable, with the number of hostages taken by pirates rising from 186 worldwide in 2006 to 1 016 in the Indian Ocean around Africa alone in 2010.

Africa is particularly vulnerable since it is reliant on the oceans, with about 90% of trade carried by sea. In Tanzania, 57 attacks had been experienced from February 2011 to February 2012. Africa's response to the increase in piracy needs to be tailored to particular complexities in each country and address specific land-based problems which fuelled piracy.

### Other defence commitments

The department's other commitments include:

- achieving a reasonable level of military diplomacy by:
  - placing and managing defence attachés
  - establishing and maintaining bilateral and multilateral agreements
  - participating in the activities of the defence structures of multinational organisations such as the UN, the AU and SADC (especially in the Interstate Defence and Security Committee)
- meeting the international obligations of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans in line with international agreements, which may include search-and-rescue and hydrography
- provide healthcare for the President and Deputy President.

### Military veterans

The SANDF dedicated 2012 to its military veterans. In 2012, it celebrated the 50th anniversary of Umkhonto we Sizwe.

The department had been providing health services to older military veterans since 2010 and about 2 500 military veterans on the department's database to receive health benefits.

The department assisted the umbrella body for military veteran associations to set up the Military Veterans Appeal Board and the Military Veterans Advisory Council across the country.

Significant strides have been made by the Department of Military Veterans to reshape and address the plight of military veterans.

### Facilities, land and environment

In 2012, the department conducted an audit of the 450 000 ha of land that it owns, so that the land could be put to productive use, together with the private sector.

The land has been held in trust by the Department of Public Works, and the Department of Defence had been in talks with the Department of Public Works to get it to transfer the land to the Department of Defence.

The Department of Defence was discussing with private-sector providers as well as banks to help finance and put up new accommodation for servicemen.

## Role players

### National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC)

The NCACC is a committee of ministers, of which the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member. The NCACC oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade. It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, after which the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications. Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as international relations and cooperation or trade and industry.

The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, where after the NCACC makes the final decision. An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and

guidelines of the NCACC. The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the Joint Standing Committee on Defence.

### Defence Force Service Commission

The Defence Force Service Commission was established in terms of the Defence Amendment Act, 2010. Its functions include making recommendations to the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans concerning improvements to salaries and service benefits of members of the SANDF.

In May 2012, Cabinet appointed 10 commissioners to the Defence Force Service Commission whose responsibility it is to advise the Minister on the conditions of service of soldiers.

### South African Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association (AMD)

AMD's primary objective is to represent the South African industry in matters of mutual interest in pursuit of profitability, sustainability and responsible corporate citizenship.

The association is acknowledged as the only trade association of South Africa's Defence Industry (Sadi), and is mandated by its members to promote and champion the collective interests of the industry. It comprises a cluster of leading companies in the South African private and public sector that supply defence materiel, products and services.

AMD member companies supply products and services to the Department of Defence, government organisations and other contractors, both locally and internationally, in the defence and security market place.

As Sadi is one of the cornerstones of a stable and growing South African economy, the AMD is responsible for ensuring that a world-class, indigenous defence industry capability is maintained in a sustainable manner.

AMD's involvement in international marketing includes:

- co-hosting Africa Aerospace and Defence
- co-publishing the Sadi Directory
- negotiating the structuring of export incentives and the sponsorship of international trade show pavilions.

Within an emerging Defence Industry Support Framework, the Department of Defence, in collaboration with Armscor and the AMD, will continue to provide effective support to enable Sadi to exploit export opportunities within the South African political and legal context. The services provided range from information sharing on possible opportunities to facilitating the provision of defence personnel, facilities and equipment for use by Sadi in demonstrations for export purposes.

The AMD, through its membership, is strategically well positioned and capable of supporting the government in achieving its AU and New Partnership for Africa's Development objectives.

### Castle Control Board

The Castle Control Board, as a public entity, has the mandate to manage and protect the Castle of Good Hope on behalf of the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans, having the ultimate ownership responsibility for the Castle of Good Hope. While it is overseen by the Department of Defence, the Castle Control Board generates its own revenue.

### Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor)

Armscor is a statutory body established in terms of the Armaments Development and Production Act, 1968 (Act 57 of 1968), and continues its existence through the Armscor Limited (Ltd) Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003), and the Armscor Ltd Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 16 of 2005).

Armscor's mandate is to assist the Department of Defence and Military Veterans in the following matters:

- to be a nodal centre for acquisition
- disposal of equipment
- decision support to defence matériel requirements of the department
- conduct the defence technology, research, development, analysis, tests and evaluation requirements
- custodian of defence matériel intellectual property, including an asset register.

On 22 February 2013, the Department of Defence and Military Veterans celebrated their Armed Forces Day at the Lucas "Masterpieces" Moripe Stadium in Atteridgeville west of Pretoria. This parade was also the 96th anniversary of the fateful sinking of the *SS Mendi*.

It was held in honour of the men and women who have served and have fallen in the line of duty in service of the country.

Local residents and foreign dignitaries were treated to an air display by the South African Air Force and a parade by the different Arms of Service of the Defence Force.

The Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for Armscor. The management and control of Armscor reside with a board of directors, while its day-to-day management is handled by a management board. The Department of Defence has an oversight role and allocates funding from the fiscus to the corporation.

Armscor's acquisition role pertains to all the actions that need to be taken to satisfy the need for materiél, facilities or services intended for client use or in support of client requirements.

The acquisition role can be broadly divided into the following four categories:

- system acquisition management
- procurement management
- product systems management
- technology acquisition management.

In addition, Armscor also performs:

- quality assurance
- Defence Industrial Participation Programme
- management of strategic facilities.

The management of strategic facilities is vested in a subsidiary company, Armscor Business (Pty) Ltd. To fulfil its mandate, Armscor Business is structured into three groups, namely:

- Defence Science and Technology Institute
- Test and Evaluation Facility
- Defence Support.

### Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a commercially driven holding company, with equity of varying degrees in several defence and aerospace subsidiaries and associated companies.

With its focus on the military aerospace and landward defence domains, Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act, 1973. Its defence capabilities, however, date back more than 70 years when some of Denel's first manufacturing plants were established.

During 2011/12, Denel secured over R5 billion orders to be delivered over the next five years. The R700-million capitalisation of Denel Aerostructures will allow the company to prepare itself for the serial manufacturing phase of the A44M programme, which started in 2012/13.

In 2012, Denel delivered the last six fully certified and combat-ready Rooivalk helicopters to the SANDF.

Apart from being original equipment manufacturers in certain product categories, Denel businesses are also engaged in the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of the SANDF's defence systems and equipment. As such, they provide the SANDF with the cost-effective ways to undertake its role in peacekeeping and peace-support missions beyond South Africa's borders.

Twenty-two of the 26 new Gripen combat aircraft were operational in April 2012. By the end of 2012, the SAAF had already received all 26 Gripens from Swedish manufacturer Saab and the aircarft were stationed at the Makhado Air Force Base in Limpopo.

During the same month, an air force delegation participated in a multinational flying exercise, Operation Lion Effort, in Sweden.

The first group of student fighter pilots of the Gripen Fighter Weapon School is expected in late 2013. The SAAF base in the Overberg in the Western Cape is to be the training ground for the new recruits.

The first full-motion helicopter flight simulator to arrive in Africa will be used by pilots of the SAAF as part of their training programme.

Located at aerospace manufacturer Denel's facility in Bonaero Park in the east of Johannesburg, the second-hand simulator was acquired by Eurocopter Southern Africa, and was previously used by the Swiss Air Force, originally commissioned there in 1993.

In September 2012, Denel and Airbus Military signed a new agreement with revised terms for manufacturing aircraft components on the A400M, in a development that will contribute significantly to Denel's financial turnaround.

The relationship between Airbus and Denel takes the country another step towards the growth of a fully fledged South African aerospace industry. Government has also demonstrated its confidence in the future of the company through a capital injection of R700 million in 2012.

Of the approximately 2 500 hours available for use by air forces on the simulator, the SAAF will use 1 000 per year.

The simulator is designed to train pilots and flight engineers operating Eurocopter's AS332 Super Puma and certain compatible machines, including the SAAF's Oryx medium-utility helicopter, manufactured by Denel.

In September 2012, the seventh Africa Aerospace and Defence Exhibition was held at the Waterkloof Air Force Base in Pretoria. Denel Aviation and Russian Helicopters, a leading global designer and manufacturer of helicopters, signed an agreement to create a helicopter servicing hub in Africa.

It has already partnered with Brazil in developing the A-Darter air-to-air-missile, with production scheduled to start at the end of 2014.

Also included in its range of precision-guided products and missile systems are the Umkhonto-IR air defence missile systems, the Ingwe and Mokopa anti-armour missile systems, precision-guided munitions and the Raptor 2 stand-off weapons.

Denel Dynamics has the unique ability to offer turnkey armed surveillance unmanned aerial vehicles.

Through a range of high-end skills-development programmes, Denel aims to retain engineers, technicians and scientists for the industry. These programmes include:

- Denel Centre for Learning and Development
- Denel Youth Foundation Training Programme
- engineering bursary schemes and internships
- school-outreach programmes.

## Department of State Security

In June 2012, the Department of State Security completed the last phase of the restructuring process of the State Security Agency (SSA), which was established in 2009.

The mandate of the SSA is to provide government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of its people. This enables government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

The SSA comprises:

- the Domestic Branch (formerly the National Intelligence Agency or NIA)
- the Foreign Branch (formerly the South African Secret Service or SASS)
- the Intelligence Academy (formerly the South African National Academy of Intelligence or Sanai)
- National Communications, which includes the former National Communications Centre, Office for Interception Centres and Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd.

The SSA focuses on the matters of national interest including terrorism, sabotage, subversion, espionage and organised crime.

The number of requests from international counterparts was expected to increase to 220 over the MTEF.

The SSA was allocated R3 897,8 million in 2012/13.

### Legislation and policies

The SSA is governed by the foillowing legislation and policies:

- Constitution of South Africa
- Proclamation: *Government Gazette 32566*
- Intelligence Services Act, 2002 (Act 65 of 2002)
- *Ministerial Notices No 32576*
- Intelligence Services Regulations 2003, *Government Gazette No 25592*
- National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994)
- Intelligence Services Oversight Act, 1994 (Act 40 of 1994)

- *White Paper on Intelligence* (1994)
- Protection of State Information Bill, November 2011
- Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001)
- Regulation of Foreign Military Assistance Act, 1998 (Act 15 of 1998)
- Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002)
- SAPS Act, 1995
- Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001)
- RICA Act, 2002
- Auditor-General Act, 1995 (Act 12 of 1995).

## Functions

### Domestic branch

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 defined the primary functions of the NIA as being to gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee (NICOC)
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department and without delay to transmit such intelligence that constitutes departmental intelligence to the relevant department
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence responsibility and for this purpose to conduct and coordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information regarding counter-intelligence to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- inform the President of any such threat
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

In view of these functions, the NIA's responsibilities include:

- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) domestic security situation to identify and report to the policymaker or executive departments any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- performing a reactive monitoring role in tracking events when a threat/crime has been identified or a crisis has already arisen, without duplication of the role of the other executive departments; the purpose of this monitoring role is mainly to enhance investigation and prosecution by providing tactical information and intelligence to enforcement and prosecution institutions and to decide the extent and the implications of threats or potential threats to the national security and the safety
- providing an integrated multi-analytical strategic projective assessment of patterns, trends and of security relevant issues, to provide strategic early warning and to enhance the NIA's support and involvement in policy formulation.

### Foreign Branch

The Foreign Branch (formerly the SASS) is a national intelligence structure established by the Intelligence Service Act, 1994 (Act 38 of 1994) and whose continued existence is provided for in the Intelligence Services Act, 2005 (Act 65 of 2005).

Since September 2009, the SASS has changed in status and is now a government component of a principal national department called the SSA as per the Presidential Proclamation of 11 September 2009. The Act that will regulate the affairs of the SSA is in the process of being formulated.

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 defines the functions of the SASS as being:

- gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people and to supply intelligence relating to any such threat to NICOC
- instituting counter-intelligence measures

within the service and, in consultation with the service, counter-intelligence measures outside South Africa
- gathering departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department, and without delay to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to the NICOC.

In view of these functions, the SASS is responsible for the following:
- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) foreign environment to identify and report to the policymaker any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- providing the Executive with developments in the foreign environment that are likely to have an impact on the image, territorial integrity as well as the security of South Africa and its citizens
- advice on the opportunities that exist in the external environment that should be exploited to enhance South Africa's national interest, be it in the political, economic, social or international relations sphere
- advice on security threats against personnel, interests, strategic installations and assets of South Africa abroad
- conducting security screening investigations on its personnel as well as those of other departments identified for posting abroad.

## Intelligence Academy

The former Sanai, now the Intelligence Academy under the SSA, was established in terms of the Intelligence Services Act, 2002 with a mandate to provide quality intelligence training to the members of the Intelligence Community.

Sanai was formally launched in February 2003, and immediately assumed its challenging role of producing intelligence officers who not only understand South Africa's national security paradigm, but can also carry out their duties within the values and ethical principles demanded from each officer.

The Sanai campus (Mzwandile Piliso Campus), located in Mahikeng, is named after the late Mzwandile Piliso, a veteran intelligence officer, who played an important role in a non-statutory intelligence body that served the liberation movements.

## National Communications

The National Communications Branch of the SSA comprises Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec), the National Communications Centre and the Office for Interception Centre (OIC). Comsec and the OIC are externally focused as they render services to the organs of state.

In 2012/13, the department continued its project of integrating its intelligence technology platforms to improve service delivery. The storage capacity for the lawful intercepts was upgraded, which resulted in a faster and more efficient monitoring system. The product distribution network and the Internet Protocol Interception System were prioritised in 2012/13.

The department was in an advance stage of developing the National Security Strategy and the National Interest Doctrine. The NICOC Task Team has developed the draft National Security Strategy. As part of the strategy the department identified dual-use technologies that have security and commercial applications as a priority.

## Comsec

Comsec was established in 2002 as a private company – Civillian Intelligence Community – with the primary purpose of ensuring that critical electronic communications of the state are secure and protected.

Through presidential proclamation in 2009, Comsec was pronounced a government component, effectively transferring its ICT functions to the SSA. Its functions include:
- protecting and securing electronic communications of national importance against security threats

In February 2012, Cabinet approved the National Cybersecurity Policy Framework. The framework outlines policy positions intended to address national security threats in cyberspace; combat cyber warfare, cyber crime and other cyber ills; and develop, review and update existing substantive and procedural laws to ensure alignment. It will also build confidence and trust in the secure use of ICT.

- conducting periodic analysis of the state of ICT security and advising the Minister of such analysis
- identifying and providing security to the critical electronic communications infrastructure of organs of state.

Comsec offers the following ICT security services:

- managed security services
- secure communications
- risk management and assurance services

### Office for Interception Centre

The OIC was established in terms of the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002.) The OIC provides a centralised interception service to law enforcement agencies involved in combatting threats to national security.

Interception was previously conducted independently by the Law Enforcement Agency, which may have resulted in duplication of work and resources. The formation of the OIC centralises interception activities and paves the way for improved management of interception in an effort to increase efficiency, minimise duplication of resources and costs, and regulate and control the interception environment.

### Vetting

Part of the SSA's objective is to be able to conduct vetting for all government departments in a user-friendly and speedier manner, in line with its counter-intelligence mandate that ensures that the department creates conditions of security, which enable government and key state entities to do their work.

By May 2012, 19 vetting field units were established in the departments of international relations and cooperation, tourism, agriculture, forestry and fisheries, correctional services, environmental affairs, the South African Reserve Bank, the South African Revenue Service, the NPA and the State Information Technology Agency.

As part of the vetting mandate; the department prioritised the training of security managers across government departments. During 2011/12, 22 security managers were trained and in 2012/13 another 30 were trained.

### Border Management Agency

As part of the SADC region, South Africa continues to be confronted by the problems of illegal migration, other transnational organised crimes and human smuggling. The business case for the establishment of the Border Management Agency by 2014 was processed by the Cabinet Committee in 2012.

### Securing special events

During 2011/12, the department successfully secured several major events which included the 123rd International Olympic Committee Meeting, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change and the African National Congress' centenary celebrations.

## Conclusion

The mandate bestowed on the SAPS to lead in the fight against crime and corruption is a key element of government and affects every aspect of South African society.

The SAPS has achieved many successes in the recent past, despite some challenges. The way forward is not only to build on those successes, but to embark on a new, forceful course of action. A number of specific priorities will therefore be pursued in future.

The SAPS' ability to respond to the challenges will be enhanced through the focused developing of specialised, properly resourced, technologically advanced, adequately skilled and well-managed capacities, including visible policing, priority crime investigations, crime

intelligence and the Criminal Record and Forensic Science Service.

The SAPS' strategic efforts will include the mobilisation of all sectors of society in the fight against crime through the establishment of partnerships that will benefit policing and the communities they serve.

With its core objective of providing for the defence and protection of South Africa, as well as its territorial integrity and its people, the SANDF's responsibilities go hand-in-hand with those of the SAPS.

During the past year, various operations to protect the country's land, sea and air borders have continued to yield positive results, with increased quantities of illegal weapons, contraband and drugs having been confiscated at the borders.

Some members of the SANDF, working in conjunction with other law enforcement agencies, have been deployed at the Kruger National Park to protect rhinos against poachers. During the financial year, its Operation Rhino nabbed 27 suspected poachers.

Through its border safeguarding operation – Operation Corona – the SANDF arrested 371 criminals, confiscated over R13 million in contraband and recovered 64 stolen vehicles at the country's borders.

The SANDF is also deployed in UN and AU missions to keep peace, secure property and protect local populations.

Looking forward, the priorities of the Department of Defence for the coming period are to include a stronger focus on the border-safeguarding function, the enhancement of the SANDF's landward capabilities, the consolidation of the SADC's Maritime Security Strategy, furthering government's job creation agenda, enhancing the SANDF's peacekeeping formation and revitalising the reserves component.

The Department of State Security will continue to ply its trade guided by the theme *Working Together to Build a Safer Nation in a Secure World*. It has entered the last phase of its restructuring process and is now better prepared to support government to achieve the outcomes of ensuring that all people in South Africa are and feel safe, creating a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa and world.

## Acknowledgements

BuaNews
*Department of Defence Strategic Plan 2010*
Denel
*Development Indicators, 2009*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2010*, published by National Treasury
Secretariat for Safety and Security
South African National Defence Force
South African Police Service (SAPS)
*SAPS Annual Report 2009/10*

*www.army.mil.za*
*www.cdpsp.mil.za*
*www.dfac.mil.za*
*www.dod.mil.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.intelligence.gov.za*
*www.nia.gov.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sapa.org.za*
*www.sass.gov.za*
*www.secdef.mil.za*
*www.wikipedia.org*

## Suggested reading

Cartwright, J. 2012. *Where's the Chicken? Making South Africa Safe.* Kenilworth: Mercury.
Faull, A. 2010. *Behind the Badge: The Untold Stories of South Africa's Police Service Members.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Hendricks, C & Musavengana, T (eds). 2010. *The Security Sector in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
Hornberger, J. 2011. *Policing and Human Rights: The Meaning of Violence and Justice in the Everyday Policing of Johannesburg.* Abington: Routledge.
Landau, LB (ed). 2011. *Exorcising the Demons Within: Xenophobia, Violence and Statecraft in Contemporary South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Montesh, M & Basdeo, V. 2012. *Police Reform in the New Democratic South Africa.* Routledge.
Piper, L. 2011. *'To Serve and to Protect': the Inkathagate Scandal as told to Laurence Piper by Brian Morrow*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Retief, H. 2011. *Byleveld: Dossier of a Serial Sleuth.* Cape Town: Umuzi.
*To Spy or Not to Spy? Intelligence and Democracy in South Africa*. 2009. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
Wiener, M. 2012. *Killing Kebble: An Underworld Exposed.* Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan South Africa.
Williams, D. 2012. *Springboks, Troepies and Cadres: Stories of the South African Army, 1912 – 2012.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Rural Development & Land Reform

The creation of the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform in 2009 marked the first time ever that a government department was dedicated to the social and economic development of rural South Africa. The department is committed to ensuring that South Africans in rural areas enjoy the same benefits as their urban cousins regarding the human rights and basic dignity guaranteed by the Constitution.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform deals with land reform; access to land use; management and transformation of land relations; and all other matters related to the hopes and lifestyles of those who live on the land and who depend on the land for their livelihoods.

The department's key priorities are:

- rolling out the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) to all rural municipalities
- improving productivity in land reform projects through effective implementation of the Recapitalisation and Development Programme (RADP)
- expediting the finalisation of land claims
- improving corporate governance and ensuring enhanced service delivery
- implementing proper change management and innovation strategies
- enhancing the efficiency of information management systems.

The CRDP is aimed specifically at reducing poverty by creating vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities.

To achieve this vision, the department defined its role and mission as being that of facilitating integrated development and social cohesion through partnerships with all sectors of society.

One of the department's most important strategic objectives is agrarian transformation.

The agrarian transformation strategy is aimed at:

- social mobilisation to enable rural communities to take initiative
- sustainable settlements with access to basic services and economic opportunity; meeting of basic human needs; and infrastructure development

- establishment of cooperatives and enterprises for economic activities; wealth creation; and productive use of assets
- non-farm activities for strengthening of rural livelihoods
- leadership training, social facilitation and familiarity with CRDP objectives; and socio-economic independence
- skills development and employment creation for youth, women and people living with disabilities
- democratisation of rural development, and participation and ownership of all processes, projects and programmes by rural communities
- coordination, alignment and cooperative governance by local municipalities, traditional councils, provincial government and rural communities
- participation of non-governmental organisations including faith-based organisations, community-based organisations and other organs of civil society
- social cohesion and access to human and social capital.

## Legislation and policies

Eleven pieces of legislation was submitted to Parliament by December 2012; and 10 policy instruments were developed, including a policy on communal land tenure and a review of the Land Management and Administrative System.

The department also started work on a restitution performance review. All this is aimed at sharpening service-delivery capacity.

The Communal Property Associations (CPAs) Act, 1996 (Act 28 of 1996) is meant to enable communities to form juristic persons, to be known as CPAs, to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed to by members of a community in terms of a written constitution; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

The *Green Paper on Agrarian Transformation, Rural Development and Land Reform* was gazetted by May 2011, followed by a White Paper to be submitted to Cabinet

The Green Paper focuses on seven key areas, namely:

- a vision for land reform
- principles underlying land reform
- current challenges and weaknesses: rationale for change
- an improved trajectory for land reform (including institutions to support land reform)
- the strategic thrust for land reform
- land reform experiences elsewhere
- challenges and constraints.

When the Green Paper was published in 2011, it comprised six work streams, which are aligned to the thematic areas, which are a three-tier land tenure system; Office of the Valuer-General; Land Rights Management Board; Land Management Commission; communal tenure; and legislative amendments.

The Green Paper is underpinned by the following three key principles: deracialisation of the rural economy for shared and sustained growth; democratic and equitable land allocation and use across gender, race and class; and strict production discipline for guaranteed national food security. The engagement on the *Green Paper on Land Reform* was completed by the end of March 2012.

The purpose of the restitution programme is to provide equitable redress to victims of racially motivated land dispossession, in line with the provisions of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994).

The Legislative Amendments and Communal Tenure Working Group was constituted to consider legislative amendments linked to the Green Paper. The group was tasked with focusing on the amendments of the CPA Act 1996, Restitution of Lands Rights Act 1994, and Review of the Communal Land Rights Act, 2004 and related judgement.

The Legislative Working Group decided to combine with that on Communal Tenure because of legislative amendment of the CPA Act and legislative development to replace the Review of the Communal Land Rights Act, 2004. Specialist studies and analysis were further required on appropriate land holding entities and their relationship with traditional and local authorities.

## Budget and funding

Government has put aside more than R28 million to restructure and fund 13 unproductive land reform farms in North West.

The department projected an estimated total expenditure of R8 877 566 000 for the 2012/13 financial year. It allocated R1 096 223 000 to administration, which included the National Rural Youth Service Corps (Narysec) Youth Programme budget; R562 367 000 to Geospatial and Cadastral Services; R934 824 000 to Rural Development; R3 billion to Restitution; and R3 234 152 000 to Land Reform.

## Role players

### National Reference Group

National reference groups is an inclusive structure that represents varied interest groups ranging from beneficiaries, organised agriculture and civil society to academics and experts on land and agrarian issues. National reference groups constituted five working groups in respect of policy proposals made by the department in the Green Paper, namely the Land Management Commission; Land Rights Management Board and committees; Office of the Land Valuer-General; Three-Tier Tenure System; and Legislative Amendments and communal tenure.

### Geospatial and cadastral services

The component of National Geospatial Information is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geospatial information services.

In an effort to provide access to geospatial information (maps) to visually impaired people, the National Geospatial Information component will produce a Braille atlas for each province over the next three years. Limpopo will be prioritised.

This component will continue its map literacy and map awareness training for adults and support to educators and school learners to promote the use of geospatial information. Priority will be given to rural communities.

Aerial imagery is a significant source of geospatial information and a record of the land at that time. It is necessary to "refresh" the aerial imagery regularly to record the changes taking place.

National Geospatial Information acquires aerial imagery annually. The CRDP sites have been prioritised.

The branch will also assist in creating orderly and sustainable rural settlements by ensuring alignment and harmonisation of rural development plans to existing planning frameworks, including provincial growth and development strategies and integrated development plans.

The department has considered the adverse impact that disasters have on rural areas and the lives of rural people and included in its strategy a disaster management component, which, together with other sector departments, will coordinate responses to rural disasters.

### Cadastral surveys management

The Cadastral Surveys Management branch aims to provide efficient cadastral survey management services and cadastral information services in support of land delivery and development.

The programme is responsible for:

- regulating the Surveyor-General's (SG) offices
- examining and approving all surveys for the registration of land and real rights

Government is facilitating opportunities for women in rural, peri-urban and informal settlements to participate in green-economy projects such as solar energy, water purification, agriculture, construction, waste management and tourism.

The Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities also facilitate financial support and training for female farmers and female co-operatives, together with national and international partners, particularly the United Nations (UN) Development Programme, UN Women and the UN Populations Fund. In addition, the department is also empowering women in construction in collaboration with the departments of human settlements and public works by facilitating opportunities for women to enter the alternative construction technology field.

- maintaining cadastral survey records
- archiving all cadastral surveys
- compiling, maintaining and revising maps of property boundaries
- providing cadastral advisory and spatial information services.

SG offices have been decentralised to seven of the nine provinces. They are responsible for the examination and approval of all land surveyed in the country as depicted on diagrams, general plans and sectional plans prior to registration at the Deeds Registration Office.

The branch is also the sole custodian of cadastral information.

Cadastral information preserved and maintained at the offices of the SG assists the department in its analysis and planning of rural development initiatives. The officers also facilitate state land surveys and identify unsurveyed and unalienated state land.

Cadastral Surveys, together with Deeds Registration, deals with the land administration system by improving access of SG offices to the majority of the population in all the provinces, as well as improving the multimedia lodgement facility that was implemented in 2008.

Through its training unit, professional land surveyors, survey technicians and pupil survey officers will continue receiving training and development.

About 88% of the National Spatial Data Set was completed in 2010/11. The examined and approved diagrams, general plans and sectional plans which have been archived assisted in the updating of the National Spatial Data Set.

## Deeds registration

There are 10 deeds registries in South Africa whose core responsibility it is to:

- register real rights in land
- maintain a public land register
- provide registration information
- maintain an archive of registration records.

The deeds registries are in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Nelspruit, Pietermaritzburg, Kimberley, Vryburg, Mthatha and King William's Town. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 (Act 95 of 1986).

To take deeds-registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. This project entails establishing a deeds registry in Polokwane, Limpopo.

The Deeds Registry is open to any member of the public to access information regarding the following:

- the registered owner of a property
- the conditions affecting such property
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property
- the purchase price of the property
- rules of a sectional title scheme
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds
- a copy of a sectional title plan
- township-establishment conditions
- information relating to a property or deed.

Deeds registration has progressively introduced e-Cadastre, which is aimed at improving cadastral surveys management and deeds registration as well as the consolidation of data stores.

By 31 March 2011, a total of 904 928 deeds and documents had been registered in the 10 deeds registries countrywide.

As far as the e-Cadastre Project is concerned, the enterprise architecture investigation, which is aimed at consolidating cadastral surveys and deeds registration data stores, has been concluded. Digital scanning of the microfilm records has commenced.

## Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR)

The aim of this commission is to resolve restitution claims within the target period through negotiated settlements that restore land rights or award alternative forms of equitable redress to claimants.

In 2012, 480 restitution land claims were being litigated in court. In 2012/13, 260 claims were settled, 249 of which were for financial compensation, and one for the restoration of land comprising 18 855 hectares and benefiting 5 154 households. This performance exceeded the projected target of 133 claims.

The intentions of the CRLR are to:

- facilitate access to land by victims of racially motivated land dispossessions that took place under the previous government
- alleviate poverty through sustainable development on restored land as well as improved livelihoods
- foster the rights of vulnerable groups in terms of ownership and participation in economic activities
- foster national reconciliation and stability.

People dispossessed of a land right after 19 June 1913, in terms of racially discriminatory laws and practices, are entitled to restitution of that right or equitable redress.

All claims are against the State, and no one may be deprived of property except in terms of law of general application.

The restitution process is implemented in line with the provisions of Section 25 of the Constitution, which places emphasis on equitable redress.

The commission has been rationalised to create better synergy with, and clearer lines of accountability to the department, in its day-to-day operations. The core of the commission, being the Chief Land Claims Commissioner (the CLCC), the Deputy Land Claims Commissioner and the Regional Land Claims Commissioner remain within the ambit of the founding legislation.

In the provinces, restitution support personnel have been placed under the Public Service Act. Responsibility for restitution support services has been formally delegated to them by the CLCC. Restitution Support Chief Directors have taken charge of these delegated responsibilities, and report directly to the CLCC.

This realignment is starting to produce benefits, such as:

- reduced timelines in the finalisation of land claims
- strengthened capacity of the legal division, and a reduction of court orders resulting in emergency settlement of claims which had a negative effect on the budget
- 95% completion of the process of introducing an electronic data system to capture and process land claims.

Since 2009, the commission has spent R4,8 billion to acquire 368 483 ha of land for restoration.

During 2011/12, the CRLR settled 30 claims and five claims for financial compensation were finalised to the value of R36 938 242. These were for the communities of Delportshoop, Warrenton, Vioolsdrift, Gatlhose (Lohatlha), Griekwastad, Ga-Segonyane and Phokwane Mixed Location. There are two phased claims for land restitution to the value of R12,7 million for the Gong-Gong and Wedberg communities.

The Regional Land Claims Commission in the Northern Cape expected nine new claims to be settled during 2012/13, to finalise 20 backlog claims and also settle 10 phased claims. This should leave a total of 153 outstanding claims in the Northern Cape. Since 1994, 561 252,35 ha of land has been approved for land restitution, of which 471 827 ha had already been transferred to the claimants.

The total 2012/13 allocation for the Regional Land Claims Commission Northern Cape is R39 613 000 and R180 686 000 for the capital allocation.

## Programmes and projects

Having learnt from the pilot projects, the department introduced two programmes in rural development:

- Animal and Veld Management Programme, focusing on fencing and animal handling facilities; stock water dams and boreholes; mechanisation; dip tanks; soil rehabilitation; crop storage facilities; and fire breaks. The aim of this programme is to increase production in communal areas and state land. This year, 60 rural communities throughout the country will benefit from this programme.

- The River Valley Catalytic Programme, which was started along the Tugela River in KwaZulu-Natal and the Mbashe River, as part of the Nelson Mandela Legacy Bridge in the Eastern Cape. The project is aimed at developing agricultural land along river banks, and is linked to agro-logistics infrastructure, including roads and processing plants. In partnrship with the provincial Department of Agriculture, the programme will bring into production approximately 1 500 ha of land. It will also continue to support the work of the Masibambisane Rural Development Initi-ative, spearheaded by the President.

Initiatives to revitalise rural towns and villages, which started in 2010, will continue. In 2012, the department completed a sports stadium and recreation facilities in Jacobsdal in the Free State.

It also started work on the construction of a multi-purpose facility in the village of Masia in Limpopo, offering services such as a computer lab, amphitheatre, cultural village, sports facilities, an auditorium, a library and administration offices.

The department also focused on the provision of sanitation, early childhood development centres, improved health facilities and information and communications technology (ICT) infrastructure in Amajuba and Abaqulusi district municipalities in KwaZulu-Natal. The Narysec Programme identified 800 young people for training from these municipalities.

Access to information and communication services is crucial to unlocking economic and educational opportunities in rural areas.

To this end, the department continues to roll out the I-school programme in partnership with Apple and the Department of Science and Techno-logy; the roll-out of digital doorways, and ensuring the establishment of ICT centres in at least five wards throughout the country.

In terms of scaling up rural development in the 23 prioritised districts, a national multi-sectoral team worked with these district municipalities towards ensuring that at least one catalytic project per district is started during 2012/13.

## Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP)

The CRDP is premised on three phases: Phase One, which has meeting basic human needs as its driver; Phase Two, which has large-scale infrastructure development as its driver; and Phase Three, with the emergence of rural industrial and credit financial sectors, which is driven by small, micro and medium enterprises and village markets.

The creation of decent work and sustainable livelihoods lies at the heart of the CRDP. The programme commits itself to ensuring that at least one person in each rural household is employed for a minimum period of two years.

To ensure sustainability, communal ownership, and effective contribution towards the overall objectives of developing rural areas, the department entered into social compacts with communities, as well as contractual relationships with unemployed community members.

The strategic objective of the CRDP is to facilitate integrated development and social cohesion through participatory approaches in partnership with all sectors of society.

This is done by:

- contributing to the redistribution of 30% of the country's agricultural land
- improving food security of the rural poor
- creating business opportunities
- decongesting and rehabilitating overcrowded former homeland areas
- expanding opportunities for rural women, youth, people with disabilities and older people.

Under the CRDP, 2 447 household food gardens have been established in the CRDP sites during 2012.

By January 2013, CRDP 2 656 beneficiaries were skilled and capacitated in technical enterprise development trade; 52 councils of stakeholders have been established as representative community forums; CRDP has been rolled out to 157 rural wards; 143 698 poor households were profiled to assess their needs; 692 km of fencing was erected in the CRDP wards; and 96 km of roads were upgraded.

The community of Muyexe, an impoverished rural township in the Giyani District of Limpopo, reaped several benefits through the programme:

- 330 houses have been built
- boreholes have been equipped
- a water purification plant has been set up, underwritten by the Development Bank of South Africa
- internal water reticulation has been established
- 275 sanitation units have been provided
- a community centre with a post office, clinic, satellite police station, drop-in centre and sports stadium have been built
- the local school was renovated and more classrooms and ablution facilities were added
- a new early childhood development centre with solar lighting was also constructed.
- two village viewing areas enable the community to view major sporting events
- an I-school Africa Rural Development Programme at the secondary and primary school offers learners an opportunity to interact and forge skills in the use of new technology
- solar powered street lights are to be provided in Muyexe, Gonono and Dingamanzi.

Other communities also benefited under the programme:

- In Mkhondo in Mpumalanga,100 households were assisted with solar units. The local school was also renovated and boarding facilities were built.
- In Riemvasmaak, in the Northern Cape, 100 household gardens were established.
- In Vredesvallei in the Northern Cape, a one-hectare community garden was established; 22 livestock farmers were provided with grazing camps; a 37-km water pipeline was completed and solar lighting was provided to 100 households; two clinics have been constructed and are operational; and cattle-handling facilities and fencing have been completed.

The CRDP was extended to other communities including Schmidtsdrift in the Siyanda District, Heuningvlei in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District and Renosterberg in the Pixley Ka Seme District.

In the Ngaka Modiri Molema District, in the North West, a community of 800 people benefitted from a project in which they received 40 pregnant Bonsmara heifers to improve the quality of livestock for an enterprise development project and 12 Bonsmara bulls for breeding purposes. In addition, nine cooperatives in the district received 200 goats and seven rams.

In KwaZulu-Natal, 780 households in Msinga received electricity. Bulk water infrastructure is also benefitting 720 households under the Ndaya Water Scheme.

The Malenge Irrigation Scheme in KwaZulu-Natal, consisting of 199 beneficiaries, received assistance in resuscitating production. They are producing vegetables and grain crops on 280 ha of land.

A total of 50 ha of dry beans have been planted at Nhlahleni in KwaZulu-Natal, while 200 ha of maize and sunflower production was established for 120 beneficiaries.

In the Free State, crèches, a school and clinics were built in Diyatalawa and Makholokoeng. Three hydroponic tunnels were erected for intensive tomato production in Makholokoeng.

Another success of the CRDP was the 258 vegetable gardens constructed in Mhlonto in the Eastern Cape. At least 15 of these gardens are selling to local retail shops. In Idutywa and Alice, 600 ha of maize were planted and two agri-parks were established.

The department contributed to the increased number of households with access to sanita-

In November 2012, Cabinet approved a policy to establish the office of the Valuer-General, which will be responsible for valuing land nationwide. The Office of the Valuer-General will be an independent institution to assist with the valuation of land, ensuring proper market value of land without relying solely on the private sector, and keeping records of the value of land.

It will be an independent statutory body, aimed at facilitating the effective collection of better land market information and more effective regulation of the property valuation industry.

tion by 10%, 10,45% access to electricity, 4% accesses to clean water, distributed 39 331 rainwater harvesting tanks and constructed 37 km of water pipeline in North West. Bulk water and sanitation infrastructure have been constructed in KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West. Rain-water harvesting tanks have been distributed throughout CRDP sites.

## Communal Property Association (CPA)

The CPA Act 28, 1996 is aimed at enabling communities "to form juristic persons, to be known as CPAs, to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed to by members of a community in terms of a written constitution; and to provide for matters connected therewith".

In November 2012, government held a two-day CPA workshop to discuss the Act and explore ways in which communal land located in rural areas could benefit those who live on it by unlocking the underlying mineral wealth.

The workshop formed part of the department's ongoing consultation process with all its stakeholders to create a deeper understanding of one of government's key priority areas – rural development.

The department used the platform to establish various national reference groups, with the first meeting held early in January 2013.

During 2011/12, the Mhlongamvula CPA in Mpumalanga planted 400 ha of summer crops (200 ha of soya beans and 200 ha of maize). The crops resulted in a total income of R3,04 million. The project also resulted in 18 people being employed and provided with tractors and other farming implements. Two vegetable enterprises were also established as a result of the Master Gardener Training Programme.

In the Dr RS Mompati District, 40 pregnant Bonsmara heifers were procured to improve the quality of livestock for two enterprise development projects, for the benefit of a CPA consisting of 500 people and a trust consisting of 60 people.

## National Rural Youth Service Corps (Narysec)

Narysec is a youth skills development and employment programme aimed at empowering rural youth from each of the 3 300 rural wards in the country. The objective of Narysec is to recruit and develop rural youth between the ages of 18 and 35 to provide community service in their communities. Participants are contracted for 24 months following their recruitment.

Narysec was launched in 2011 as part of the National Youth Service with an initial 7 900 participants, of which about 4 500 have either received or are in the process of completing training in various skills.

The Narysec Programme is aimed at complementing the department's job-creation model, which targets and ensures that at least one person per household in the rural areas where the CRDP is piloted, gets a job, which is linked to skills development.

Skills development is mainly in the construction sector. However, an important component of the training is aimed at instilling values such as discipline and patriotism and to equip candidates with life skills and awareness of their rights. Successful applicants undergo an intensive training programme, based on needs identified and approved by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. Candidates receive a monthly stipend for the duration of the programme.

After completion of the two-year training programme, they are redeployed in their communities.

The long-term strategic objectives of the programme are to:

- reduce youth unemployment in rural areas
- increase literacy and skills among rural youth
- increase disposable income of youth in rural areas through employment and entrepreneurial opportunities
- reduce dependence on transfers from family members working in urban areas.

Through the programme, the department has taken on board more than 11 000 young people from rural areas throughout the country and

has helped over 4 000 of them to get theoretical training at Further Education and Training colleges.

Working in conjunction with the Department of Higher Education and Training through the National Skills Development Fund, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform secured an additional R190 million for 2012/13 to increase enrolment to 15 000 participants.

## Land Reform Programme

The principles which underpin the new approach to sustainable land reform are:

- deracialisation of the rural economy
- democratic and equitable land allocation and use across gender, race and class
- strict production discipline for guaranteed national food security.

During 2012/13, the Land Reform Programme provided access to over 320 000 ha of agricultural land at a cost of R2,7 billion.

Strategic support was provided to 416 new emerging farmers through recapitalisation in addition to the existing 595 farms that were supported at a cost of R1,2 billion. Work started to revitalise eight irrigation schemes, namely Ncora and Keiskamma Hoek in the Eastern Cape; Taung in North West; Vaalharts in the Northern Cape; Nkomazi in Mpumalanga; and Tugela Ferry, Nsuze and Bululwane in KwaZulu-Natal.

The department also revived the Butterworth abattoir and tannery to assist local communal livestock farmers to become part of the red meat value-chain.

A total of 823 300 ha were acquired and redistributed since 2009. Of this, 7 000 ha had been allocated to provide the core estate for the Cradock Bio-ethanol Project in the Eastern Cape. The project will be implemented in partnership with the departments of trade and industry, economic development, rural development and land reform, agriculture, forestry and fisheries, energy and the provincial departments of agriculture.

Smallholder support programmes are being reviewed and a smallholder plan is being developed. These plans are supported by some agro-processing programmes, including soya bean processing, canning, biofuels, furniture, and food processing industries, as well as small-scale maize milling in rural areas.

Other developments include the launch of the Zero Hunger Programme and the Aquaculture Programme. Zero Hunger creates opportunities for the smallholder sector to grow by opening up institutional markets for their benefit, such as through the School Nutrition Programme, hospitals and clinics.

As part of the implementation of the National Climate Change Response Policy, long-term adaptation scenarios are developed to determine which sectors may be climate sensitive and to develop response strategies.

### Recapitalisation and development

In February 2012, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform announced plans to launch the RADP Strategy.

The aim of this strategy is to recapitalise poor and previously disadvantaged and underproducing farms, which were secured for emerging farmers through the Land and Redistribution for Agricultural Development Strategy. The intention with the initiative is to increase agricultural production, guarantee food security and job creation and graduate small-scale farmers to commercial farmers.

The department has committed itself to recapitalise more than 1 000 deserted and unproductive farms nationally. The model is designed in such a way that a farm will be funded under close supervision of the department to ensure sustainability going forward.

Strategic partners have been selected within the commercial farming community to ensure the success of the programme.

Farms that had made progress under its RADP include sugar cane farms in KwaZulu-Natal; red meat farms in the Free State, North West and the Northern Cape; poultry enterprises in North West, Gauteng and Mpumalanga; and citrus farms in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo and the Western Cape.

Of the 4 000 water-use licences granted in early 2012, 1 658 will help to contribute to rural

development, including afforestation and agricultural development.

Other departments assisted enterprises based in rural areas, such as the Department of Trade and Industry expanding its support to agro-processing for rural areas in sectors such as maize milling; the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries introducing a complementary agro-processing strategy; and the Department of Science and Technology's continued support to a range of aquaculture and agro-sector projects that make use of new technologies.

Assistance was also provided to small and micro enterprises in rural areas to offer a simplified environment impact analysis process, as part of the Industrial Policy Action Plan.

## Conclusion

The fundamental focus of the department's initiatives is to continue improving the lives of people living in rural areas. This is done through the agrarian transformation of societies, thus laying a solid foundation for food security, food sovereignty and economic development in general.

While the implementation of the CRDP in all nine provinces has started to bear results in terms of meeting basic human needs and improving infrastructure and enterprise development, the pace of service delivery needs to be increased, particularly in the 22 poorest districts.

The department will therefore fast-track rural development programmes aimed at expanding agricultural production by small-scale farmers, extending core infrastructure to rural areas, increasing jobs and skills, and revitalising rural towns.

Programmes will be implemented to increase access of previously disadvantaged people to land, to redress tenure insecurity, and to provide restitution for the dispossessed. To this end, the department is paying special attention to policy and legislation.

Extensive public consultations with various stakeholders have been held regarding the *Green Paper on Land Reform* and the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Bill, which seeks to transform land administration, with clear proposals to achieve equity, integration and sustainability in spatial planning.

The Green Paper, which has already been approved by Cabinet, intends to bring drastic changes to the implementation of land reform and overhaul South Africa's rural areas into vibrant, equitable and sustainable communities.

The need to instil national identity, shared citizenship and autonomy-fostering service delivery are the primary reasons why government must continue to invest in the transformation of land relations, systems and patterns of land control and ownership.

All programmes of the department will therefore be guided by the principles of equity, equality and allocation of resources in a gender-responsive way. To give effect to this, the department is paying particular attention to the land rights needs and interests of women, children and older people.

## Acknowledgements

*Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, Annual Report 2011/12*
*Pretoria News*
*www.info.gov.za*

## Suggested reading

Alden, C. 2009. *Land, Liberation and Compromise in Southern Africa*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Bloom, J. 2009. *Rising Tide: How Freedom of Responsibility Uplifts Everyone*. South Africa: South African Institute of Race Relations.

Changuion, L & Steenkamp, B. 2012. *Disputed Land: The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652 – 2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boekhuis.

Gibson, JL. 2009. *Overcoming Historical Injustices: Land Reconciliation in South Africa.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa.* Bellville: PLAAS, School of Government, University of the Western Cape.

Kepe, T & Ntsebeza, L. 2012. *Rural Resistance in South Africa: The Mpondo Revolts After Fifty Years.* Cape Town: UCT Press.

Walker, C, Bohlin, A, Hall, R & Kepe, T. *Land, Memory, Reconstruction, and Justice: Perspectives on Land Claims in South Africa.* 2010. Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press.

Nelson, F (ed). 2010. *Community Rights, Conservation and Contested Land: The Politics of Natural Resource Governance in Africa.* London: Earthscan.

Setumu, T. 2011. *His Story is History: Rural Village Future Through the Eyes of a Rural Village Boy.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Walker, C. 2008. *Landmarked: Land Claims and Land Restitution in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Jacana Media.

Yanou, MA. 2009. *Dispossession and Access to Land in South Africa: An African Perspective.* Mankon, Bamenda: Langaa Research & Publishing CIG.

E BEYO
EARTH

# Science and Technology

South Africa's science and technology sector is filled with examples of competence and excellence. The country has a respected and world-class science and technology community that, over many decades, has pioneered globally significant and successful new ideas, techniques and technologies.

These include the complex techniques to produce fuels and useful chemicals from raw coal, pioneering steel production, the extreme engineering and chemistry required to extract minerals from the deepest mines in the world, medical expertise that not only saw the country pioneering the world's first heart transplant, but makes South Africa-trained doctors in demand – and working – all over the world. In recent years, South Africa has developed a thriving space science industry and by 2020, the country is expected to be playing a leading role in the world of astronomy.

In 2012, the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Organisation announced that South Africa and Australia would share the hosting of the most advanced scientific project in the world, thus firmly cementing South Africa's position as a major player on the world's science and technology stage. Once completed, the SKA will be the world's biggest telescope.

According to the SKA Organisation, the two biggest components – about 70% of the facility – will be built in Africa, while one will be built in Australia. Among the many benefits for South Africa, the SKA is set to attract scientists and engineers from around the world to our shores; many leading researchers have already joined up to use our facilities. The SKA, which will be one of the biggest single global science projects the world has ever seen, will also contribute towards skills development, job creation, and economic growth.

The MeerKAT Array is currently taking shape in the Karoo and will be the largest and most sensitive radio telescope in the Southern Hemisphere until the SKA is completed around 2024.

As the government body responsible for the science and technology sector, the Department of Science and Technology is tasked with developing, coordinating and managing the National

System of Innovation (NSI) that will bring about maximum human capital, sustainable economic growth and improved quality of life.

In this context the department is tasked with ensuring greater coordination and integration, as well as better management of all government-funded science and technology institutions, and to provide a holistic overview of public expenditure on science and technology.

The department funds basic research at universities and public entities, including science councils, so that they can train scientists, engineers and technologists and produce publications and patents.

Almost 60% of the department's R4,4 billion budget is spent on public entities. Of the overall research and development spend, the greatest portion is on the natural, medical and health sciences.

## Legislation

The Department of Science and Technology is governed by the following legislation, among others:

- Intellectual Property Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development (IPR) Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008): This Act provides for the more effective use of intellectual property emanating from publicly financed research and development, through the establishment of the National Intellectual Property Management Office (Nipmo), the Intellectual Property Fund, and offices of technology transfer at institutions.
- Technology Innovation Act, 2008 (Act 26 of 2008): Intended to promote the development and exploitation, in the public interest, of discoveries, inventions, innovations and improvements, and for that purpose establishes the Technology Innovation Agency (TIA).
- South African National Space Agency (Sansa) Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008): This Act establishes the Sansa to promote space science research, cooperation in space-related activities, and the creation of an environment conducive to the development of space technologies by industry.
- Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act 27 of 2003): This Act establishes the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions, and legislates the registration of professional natural scientists, natural scientists-in-training, natural science technologists and natural science technologists-in-training.
- National Research Foundation (NRF) Act, 1998 (Act 23 of 1998): Establishes the NRF to promote basic and applied research, as well as the extension and transfer of knowledge in the various fields of science and technology.
- National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci) Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997): Establishes the Naci to advise the Minister of Science and Technology on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives.
- Africa Institute of South Africa (Aisa) Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001): Establishes the Aisa to promote knowledge and understanding of African affairs by encouraging leading social scientists to act in concert and across all disciplines, and by collecting and disseminating information on African affairs.
- Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Act, 2008 (Act 17 of 2008): Provides for the continued existence of the HSRC, which carries out research that generates critical and independent knowledge relative to all aspects of human and social development.
- The Scientific Research Council Act, 1988 (Act 46 of 1988): Refers to the activities of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), one of the leading scientific and technological research, development and implementation organisations in Africa, which undertakes directed research and development for socio-economic growth in areas including the built environment, defence, the environmental sciences, and biological, chemical and laser technologies.
- Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007): Provides for the preservation and protection of areas in South Africa

that are uniquely suited to optical and radio astronomy, and for intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas.

The Department of Science and Technology is the custodial coordinator for the development of the NSI and influences this system through key strategies such as the National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS) and the Ten-Year Innovation Plan (TYIP). The latter, particularly, seeks to contribute to the transformation of the South African economy into a knowledge-based economy, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge will lead to socio-economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour. NRDS Policy Framework.

## Policy mandate

The Department's major policy documents are the *White Paper on Science and Technology (1996)*, the 2002 NRDS, the *New Strategic Management Model for South Africa's Science and Technology System (2004)* – with its Policy on Governance Standards for Science, Engineering and Technology Institutions and Framework for the Development of a National Science and Technology Expenditure Plan – and the 2007 TYIP.

In 2002, Cabinet approved the National Research and Development Strategy as the basis for the NSI. The Research and Development Strategy requires performance and responses in three key areas, namely enhanced innovation; providing science, engineering and technology human resources and transformation; and creating an effective government science and technology system.

The White Paper laid the foundations for an NSI. The core vision was to "harness the diverse aspects of science and technology through the various institutions where they are developed, practised or utilised".

A prime objective of the NSI was "to enhance the rate and quality of technology transfer from the science, engineering and technology sector by the provision of quality human resources, effective hard technology transfer mechanisms, and the creation of more effective and efficient users of technology in the business and government sectors".

In April 2012, South Africa and Germany launched the German-South African Year of Science in Cape Town. There are roughly 600 German companies in South Africa, constituting ideal places for graduates to get solid on-the-job training and experience.

The White Paper also set out the institutions to be established to promote the development of a well-functioning NSI. These were to be the national Ministry and Department of Science and Technology, the National Advisory Council on Innovation, the NRF, the Innovation Fund, and national research facilities managed by government.

### National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS)

The NRDS is aimed at being a key enabler of economic growth alongside other strategies, such as the Human Resource Development Strategy, the Integrated Manufacturing Strategy and the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

The NRDS is indicator-based and rests on three pillars, namely:

- innovation
- science, engineering and technology; human resources and transformation
- creating an effective government science and technology system.

The NRDS has established:

- a new set of technology platforms, including biotechnology; information technology; technology for advanced manufacturing; technology for and from natural resource sectors; and technology for poverty reduction
- a new set of science missions in areas in which South Africa has an obvious geographic advantage, such as astronomy; human paleontology and biodiversity; as well as in areas in which South Africa has a clear knowledge advantage, such as indigenous knowledge and deep mining.

National Science Week was celebrated from 30 July to 4 August 2012. Under the theme *The Role of Science and Technology in Economic Development*, activities took place at more than 89 sites, including science centres, across South Africa. The Department of Science and Technology distributed educational material such as science, engineering and technology career awareness information to help learners plan their careers.

### Ten-Year Innovation Plan (TYIP)

The TYIP is aimed at assisting to establish a knowledge-based economy for South Africa, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge lead to economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

The missions and platforms under the NRDS were expanded under the TYIP to include "grand challenges" in space science and technology, energy security, human and social dynamics in development, global change, and the bio-economy.

The responsibility for addressing the grand challenges is spread across many government departments.

The TYIP also set long-term goals based on the grand challenges it identified. They included:

- becoming one of the top three emerging economies in the global pharmaceutical industry, based on innovative use of South Africa's indigenous knowledge and rich biodiversity
- deploying satellites that provide a range of scientific, security and specialised services for all spheres of government, the public and the private sector
- achieving a 25% share of the global hydrogen and fuel cell market with novel platinum group metal catalysts
- becoming a world leader in climate science and responding effectively to the multiple challenges associated with global and climate change
- meeting the 2014 millennium development goal to halve poverty.

The department has set indicators for each of these goals.

## Funding

The Department of Science and Technology was allocated R16,6 billion over the 2012 Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF), of which R4,96 billion was for 2012/13. Of the total budget for the 2012/13 financial year, R2,6 billion or 53% was allocated to public entities, as follows:

- Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf): R13 million
- Aisa: R33 million
- CSIR: R737 million
- HSRC: R214 million
- NRF: R1 070 million
- Sansa: R95 million
- TIA: R455 million.

Of the remainder, R1,94 billion was allocated to department-directed projects (implemented by institutions that perform research and development) and R397 million to the running costs of the department. The allocations to public entities rose from R2,6 billion to R2,9 billion between 2012/13 and 2014/15, at an annual average growth rate of 5%.

For the first time since 1994, the Department of Science and Technology had a spending category for science and technology in the national Budget Review. This set out government's total financial commitment to all science and technology institutions. The proposed allocation was R10,7 billion in 2012/13, which was just over 1% of national expenditure.

## Donor funding

The department received official development assistance (ODA) from Australia, Canada, the European Community, Finland, United States Agency for International Development (USAID) and Japan. Below is a brief summary of the science and technology activities supported by the ODA partners.

### Australia

Australia has committed to regional support for the development and implementation of a science and technology policy training initiative for senior Southern African Development Community (SADC) officials, as well as for the

development of an SADC Science, Technology and Innovation Implementation Framework for Climate Change Response. The policy training is progressing well and the first training programme will commence in October 2012. The Science, Technology and Innovation Implementation Framework for Climate Change Response was completed. The total amount committed was R3 124 595.

## Canada

The Epidemiological Modelling and Analysis in South Africa initiative includes financial support to the South African Centre of Excellence (CoE) in Epidemiological Modelling and Analysis of approximately R20 million over five years. The project aims to develop, in partnership with Statistics Canada and the World Health Organization, innovative quantitative methods to support a more integrated, evidence-based national response to HIV/AIDS (and major related diseases such as tuberculosis).

The project was initiated in November 2008 and was presented at the annual consultation between South Africa and Canada. The Director-General of the Canadian International Development Agency complemented the programme as a strategic intervention and said that more such initiatives should be considered.

The Canadian government has committed R6,892 million over three years (R2,498 million per year) for South Africa's participation in the Grand Challenge Canada call for point-of-care diagnostics to improve healthcare and life expectancy among South Africans.

## European Union (EU)

Approximately R70 million was received by the South African NSI through the participation of South African researchers in the EU Framework Programme, including projects that are managed directly by Department of Science and Technology (CAASTNet, ESASTAP, INCONTACT, AeroAfrica EU and IST Africa).

The EU has allocated a total of €30 million to support the Department of Science and Technology in its poverty alleviation initiatives over a period of three years. This allocation will see the department supporting, among other things, the use of scientific innovation to provide sustainable water service delivery in rural areas, and the use of information and communication technologies (ICT) to develop and empower rural communities through employment creation and human capacity development.

## Greece

SAccess assists EU researchers by identifying and highlighting the available opportunities for research collaboration through participation in South Africa's national research and innovation programmes. R300 000 was received from Greece.

## Finland

The South Africa Finland Partnership (SAFIPA) was aimed at narrowing the digital divide by introducing interventions to help South Africa become an inclusive knowledge society with a strong ICT brand, reflecting research excellence and demonstrating improvements in quality of life and economic competitiveness. The Finnish contribution to this programme was R30 million over three years, disbursed at R10 million per year. The project was successfully closed in 2011/12.

The Finnish-South African Partnership Programme (BioFISA) is a three-year programme that is jointly funded by the Finnish government and the Department of Science and Technology to build biosciences research capacity in Southern Africa. The programme is managed by the Southern Africa Network for Biosciences (SanBio), and the programme office is based at the CSIR. SanBio, which is also supported by New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), manages the funded projects in all biosciences nodes in Southern Africa.

The programme receives R30 million over three years, disbursed at R10 million per year.

## United States of America (USA)

Ongoing support was provided by the USAID for two regional capacity development initi-

atives. The Potato Culture Project in Malawi is progressing well. Additional funding was provided by USAID for the procurement of a generator for the laboratory, as the unreliable electricity in the area was affecting the project negatively.

The SADC Risk and Vulnerability Atlas Capacity Development project will be completed early in the current financial year.

A new call was posted by USAID and the Department of Science and Technology was successful with three additional proposals. These proposals include another round of funding for the SADC Risk and Vulnerability Atlas Capacity Development, based on the good results achieved during the first phase, and two projects with Mozambique, one on aquaculture and another on joint research around the impact of pollution in the Oliphant's River on the health of communities living around the river.

### France

France has committed another R14,850 million over three years (R4,95 million per annum) for the extension of the French-South African Institute of Technology (F'SATI) Scientific Director contract.

### Japan

In respect of productivity training to increase the employability level of science and technology graduates, the technical assistant placed at the Department of Science and Technology at R1,7 million, was transferred to the Department of Higher Education and Training, as the pilot of the initiative was completed under the Department of Science and Technology leadership and the roll-out to other higher education institutions is the Department of Higher Education and Training's responsibility.

Volunteers were placed in Limpopo, the Eastern Cape and North West to support science centres with developing teaching material for science and mathematics education and to develop exhibitions to systematise the newly developed exhibitions to ensure knowledge gain by science centres.

Hitachi scholarships for two South African electrical engineers are valued at approximately R900 000. The total investment from Japan through ODA to Department of Science and Technology initiatives in 2011/12 amounted to approximately R17 million through in-kind and grant contributions.

## Role players

### Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

ASSAf was inaugurated in May 1996 by former President and patron of the Academy, Nelson Mandela. It was formed in response to the need for an academy of science congruent with the dawn of democracy in South Africa – activist in its mission of using science for the benefit of society.

The mandate of the academy encompasses all fields of scientific enquiry and it includes the full diversity of South Africa's distinguished scientists.

ASSAf is the official national academy of science in the country and represents the country in the international community of science academies.

Since its inception, ASSAf has grown remarkably from a small, emergent organisation to a well-established academy.

### Africa Institute of South Africa (Aisa)

Aisa was first established in 1960 as a non-profit organisation. Today it is a statutory body following the Aisa Act, 2001. Aisa's mandate is to produce knowledge aimed at informing sustainable political and socio-economic development in Africa. Its vision is to be an indispensable African voice on African Affairs, and its 2011 – 2015 research agenda is to seek solutions for Africa's developmental challenges.

Through its annual training programme that educates students from universities in research methodologies, Aisa has contributed to fostering a new generation of research specialists.

The institute has also been able to produce some of the finest research on contemporary

South Africa is conducting trials involving unused parts of the television frequency spectrum to provide low-cost broadband internet. Aimed at ascertaining the feasibility of the technology, the trials were funded by Google in partnership with the Tertiary Education and Research Network of South Africa and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research.

Television white spaces are unused spaces in the television spectrum that can be used for broadband. They offer the potential to improve internet connectivity. The trials are challenging since TV white spaces is an uncharted area and the supporting technologies are not readily available.

African Affairs by field research every year throughout Africa. This means that all research output is based on first-hand empirical evidence.

Aisia has also become involved in community outreach programmes by providing maps and other resources to under-privileged schools in rural areas. The institute has undertaken to promote knowledge creation as a fundamental part of development and growth for Africa. As such, it aims to encourage research as a career choice for young people as they leave school.

## Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)

The CSIR is one of the leading science and technology research, development and implementation organisations in Africa. The CSIR's main site is in Pretoria, while it is represented in other provinces of South Africa through regional offices.

The CSIR transfers the knowledge generated through research activities by means of technology and skilled people. The generation and application of knowledge reside at the core of the CSIR. This takes place in domains such as biosciences; the built environment; defence, peace, safety and security; materials science and manufacturing; and natural resources and the environment.

Emerging areas of research include areas of science, explored by the CSIR, that could be unique to local circumstances or successful internationally and need to be established for local competitiveness. Examples include nanotechnology, synthetic biology and mobile autonomous intelligent systems.

The CSIR houses specialist research facilities of strategic importance for African science. These include ICTs; laser technology; and space-related technology.

Research and development activities include intellectual property (IP) management, technology transfer (for commercial gain as well as for social good), knowledge dissemination and impact assessment.

Consulting and analytical services include forensic fire investigations, food and beverage analysis, environmental testing, engineering forensics, wire rope testing, mechanical testing, fire and explosion tests, sports technology and analysis, and project management.

## Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The HSRC conducts large-scale, policy-relevant, social-scientific projects for public-sector users, non-governmental organisations and international development agencies. This is done in partnership with researchers globally, but specifically in Africa. The HSRC serves as a knowledge hub to bridge the gap between research, policy and action; thus increasing the impact of research.

The HSRC's six multidisciplinary research programmes are:

- Education and Skills Development
- Economic Performance and Development
- Population Health, Health Systems and Innovation
- HIV and AIDS, sexually transmitted infections and tuberculosis (TB) (including the Africa-wide research network SAHARA)
- Democracy, Governance and Service Delivery
- Human and Social Development

The council's centres are the Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators; and the Centre for the Study of the Social and Environmental Determinants of Nutrition.

The HSRC Press is South Africa's only open-access publisher and is committed to the dissemination of high-quality, social-science research-based publications, in print and electronic form. HSRC Press publishes the research output of the HSRC as well as externally authored works.

## National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci)

Naci advises the Minister of Science and Technology on the role and contribution of innovation (including science and technology) in promoting and achieving national objectives, namely to:

- improve and sustain the quality of life of all South Africans
- develop human resources for science and technology
- build the economy
- strengthen the country's competitiveness in the international sphere.

The membership of Naci is broadly representative of all sectors and is constituted in a manner that ensures a spread of expertise and experience regarding:

- national and provincial interests
- scientific and technological disciplines innovation
- the needs and opportunities in different socio-economic fields
- research and development in all sectors.

## National Research Foundation (NRF)

The NRF was established following a system-wide review conducted for the then Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology. The new entity incorporated the functions of the research funding agencies that were previously servicing various sections of the research community, namely the former Centre for Science Development of the HSRC and the former Foundation for Research Development that included several national research facilities.

As an independent government agency, the NRF promotes and supports research in all fields of knowledge. It also conducts research and provides access to national research facilities. The NRF provides services to the research community, especially at higher education institutions and science councils, with a view to promote high-level human capital development. The NRF aims to uphold excellence in all its investments in knowledge, people and infrastructure.

The NRF consists of three divisions namely: Risa, which constitutes the research support and promotion agency of the NRF; Saasta, which provides and manages cross-cutting activities that advances science and technology into various communities in South Africa; and the national research facilities that undertake research in specific research fields.

Through Risa, the NRF:

- invests in knowledge, people and infrastructure
- develops the workforce, particularly previously disadvantaged men and women, to help all researchers unlock their full creative potential
- facilitates partnerships and knowledge networks
- supports and provides science and technology information to guide and steer strategic decisions.

Through Saasta, the NRF:

- steers young minds towards careers in science and technology
- interacts with the public on science, engineering and technology issues
- communicates the advances of science and technology to the public.

Sunward Park High School in Boksburg is the first public school in South Africa to transform learning into a fully digital platform.

The Deputy Minister of Basic Education Enver Surty officially launched an E-learning Project in March 2013. The project was piloted in September 2012 under the guidance of Deputy Principal Enoch Thango, in partnership with MIB Technologies. Learners from grades 8 to 12 started using this digital platform at the beginning of the 2013 school year. A comprehensive portal with learning and teaching resources is available to them. They just log onto the school portal and download the specific textbooks for etheir grade and subject.

Through the national research facilities, the NRF:

- provides access to unique technologies, research methods and information
- provides state-of-the-art research platforms
- offers access to networking opportunities and international collaboration.

The NRF aims to contribute to the knowledge economy in South Africa by attaining at least 1% of global research and development output by 2015.

In 2012, the department aimed to increase support for national research facilities and the provision of research equipment. Some R525 million was allocated to national research facilities and R125 million for research equipment. The Minister of Science and Technology also mandated the NRF to increase support for emerging researchers and consider strategies for supporting women researchers.

## South African National Space Agency (Sansa)

Sansa was created to promote the use of space and cooperation in space-related activities while fostering research in space science, advancing scientific engineering through developing of our human capital and provide support to industrial development in space technologies.

The objectives of SANSA are to:

- promote the peaceful use of space
- support the creation of an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology
- foster research in space science, communications, navigation and space physics
- advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies and capabilities through human capital development outreach programmes and infrastructure development
- foster international cooperation in space-related activities.

## Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)

The TIA was established with the objective of stimulating and intensifying technological innovation to improve economic growth and the quality of life of all South Africans by developing and exploiting technological innovations.

Its core business objective is to support the development and commercialisation of competitive technology-based services and products. The agency primarily uses South Africa's science and technology base to develop new industries, create sustainable jobs and help diversify the economy. It invests in the following technology sectors: advanced manufacturing, agriculture, industrial biotechnology, health, mining, energy and ICT.

TIA was formed through merging seven Department of Science and Technology entities previously tasked with supporting and promoting innovation in the country. These entities included the Innovation Fund, Tshumisano Trust, Cape Biotech Trust, PlantBio Trust, LIFElab, BioPAD Trust, and the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy.

The agency seeks to achieve its mandate by providing financial and non-financial support to its stakeholders, namely science councils, public entities, higher education Institutions, private research institutions and entrepreneurs.

## National Intellectual Property Management Office (Nipmo)

Nipmo was established in mid-2011 in terms of the IPR Act, 2008 to promote and manage the objects of the Act. These include the identification, disclosure and statutory protection, and management and commercialisation of the intellectual property referred to it by a recipient of public research and development funds. Nipmo has been set up as an interim office within the Department of Science and Technology as a sub-programme within Programme 2 – Research Development Innovation, pending its establishment as a government component within a two-year time frame.

Nipmo aims to ensure that recipients of funding from a government funding agency assess, record and report on the benefit to society of intellectual property emanating from publicly financed research and development.

Recipients must protect intellectual property emanating from publicly financed research and development from appropriation and ensure that it is available to the people of South Africa. A recipient must identify commercialisation opportunities for intellectual property emanating from publicly financed research and development.

## Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is the principal agricultural research institution in South Africa. It conducts fundamental and applied research with partners to generate knowledge, develop human capital, and foster innovation in agriculture by developing technology and disseminating information. It also commercialises research results.

The ARC's functions are carried out through 11 research institutes whose activities are grouped under five divisions:

- field crops (grain and industrial crops)
- horticulture
- animal production and health
- natural resources and engineering
- technology transfer.

The ARC is also responsible for maintaining national assets and undertaking programmes or rendering services that are required from time to time by the department and other stakeholders.

## Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with industry and other research and development institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development and optimisation, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation, which reports to the Minister of Minerals and Energy. About 35% of the annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract research and development, sales of products and services, technology licensing agreements, and joint-venture private-sector companies. Mintek has about 780 permanent staff members, more than half of whom are scientists, engineers and other technical research and development specialists.

The Department of Mineral Resources granted Mintek R90 million over the 2011/14 period for the rehabilitation of derelict and ownerless mines in South Africa.

## Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC is an independent statutory body that coordinates health and medical research activities throughout South Africa. The MRC's objectives are:

- promoting health and quality of life of the population of South Africa
- performing such functions as may be assigned to the MRC by or under the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991).

The MRC is a science council and therefore also a science, engineering and technology institution.

## Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS is the legal successor of the Geological Survey of South Africa, which was formed in 1912 by the amalgamation of three former surveys, the oldest of which – the Geological Commission of the Cape of Good Hope – was founded in 1895.

The Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 12 of 2010), amends the Geoscience Act, 1993 to mandate the CGS to be the custodians

South African microbiologist, Prof. Leon Dicks, and a research team from Stellenbosch University has applied modern technology and science to develop a revolutionary dressing to treat burn wounds. The new dressing is the first of its kind and will reduce the risk of secondary infections.

The dressing offers a solution to antibiotic resistance, using antimicrobial peptides and nanofibres. The dressing also releases antimicrobial peptides slowly over several days, which means it only has to be changed once a week. By altering the nanoparticles, the dressing becomes part of the new skin and supports the healing process.

of geotechnical information; to act as a national advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure and development; and to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors.

### South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS is a statutory body that operates as the national institution for the promotion and maintenance of standardisation and quality in connection with commodities and the rendering of services. The SABS:

- publishes national standards, which it prepares through a consensus process in technical committees
- provides information on national standards of all countries as well as international standards
- tests and certifies products and services to standards
- develops technical regulations (compulsory specifications) based on national standards, and monitors and enforces compliance with such technical regulations
- monitors and enforces legal metrology legislation
- promotes design excellence
- provides training on aspects of standardisation.

To maximise its service delivery to the industries it serves, the SABS aligned its activities with seven different industry sectors, each housing the whole range of the SABS services pertinent to a particular industry.

This change ensures easy access to products, faster reaction and turnaround times, and the creation of centres of knowledge excellence that will be easily available to clients.

The seven industry sectors are:

- chemicals
- electrotechnical
- food and health
- mechanical and materials
- mining and minerals
- services
- transportation.

## Other scientific and research organisations and structures

### Eskom

Eskom's Technology Services International group is a multidisciplinary industrial laboratory and consulting organisation. It undertakes testing, investigation studies, project management, engineering services and applied research for Eskom and other customers.

### Sasol

Sasol's culture of innovation began in the 1950s when it developed its unique blend of coal gasification and Fischer-Tröpsch (FT) technology for its original coal-to-liquids operations at Sasolburg. It has since evolved these operations into fully fledged research and development facilities that form the heart of the Sasol technology research and development group. Focused FT research and development in the 1980s and 1990s led to the development of the low temperature FT Sasol Slurry Phase process used at Sasolburg, and the high-temperature Sasol Advanced Synthol™ process used at Secunda.

Sasol Technology's Fuels Technology Division carries out work concerning fuels, lubricants, heating-fuel and road-binding material, research and development, and new product formulation and testing.

In addition, Sasol opened the Sasol Fuels Application Centre (SFAC), a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust emission testing and research facility in Cape Town. The SFAC enables Sasol to conduct sea-level engine and emission tests in line with international standards.

In October 2011, the Department of Science and Technology and Sasol ChemCity launched a plant oils and extracts facility in Tzaneen, Limpopo, in an effort to create sustainable livelihoods in the area. The Nkowankowa Demonstration Centre will run a R13,9-million development project over the next three years, extracting various fruit and plant oils with a view to establishing their viability in the cosmetics sector.

## ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is a global steel-maker, with an industrial presence in 27 countries. It is the leader in all major global markets, including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging. The group is a leader in research and development and technology, holds sizeable captive supplies of raw material, and operates extensive distribution networks.

## National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS forms a national network of integrated pathology laboratories throughout the country that use common laboratory management systems and transport networks to facilitate the transport of specimens, referral of tests to reference laboratories, and delivery of results.

The NHLS has 265 laboratories and employs about 6 500 people. Their activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services; research, teaching and training; and producing sera for anti-snake venom, reagents and media. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the Department of Health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

Research conducted by the NHLS covers a wide spectrum of activities in all pathology disciplines. Grants in support of research are made by the MRC, the Cancer Association of South Africa, the South African Sugar Association, Poliomyelitis Research Foundation, pharmaceutical companies, private donors and a number of overseas institutions, among others. A large part of the research programme is financed by the NHLS itself from the earnings of its laboratory services.

## Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER at the University of Stellenbosch, Western Cape, is an independent economic research organisation. It renders a service to organisations ranging from small one-person businesses to policy-makers at the highest level of government.

## National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analyses of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

## Institute for Economic Research on Innovation (Ieri)

Ieri was established as a public-good research organisation with a core competence in the analysis of systems of innovation. Its mandate is to provide research, capacity-building and community engagement in this field of study. Its tasks involve:

- conducting research on the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- contributing thought-leadership on the relationship between knowledge and development across economic, social and political domains
- building capabilities and competencies in the understanding of the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- focusing across local, provincial, national, regional and international geographies.

## Institute for Security Studies (ISS)

The ISS works towards a stable and peaceful Africa characterised by sustainable development, human rights, the rule of law, democracy, collaborative security and gender mainstreaming.

The ISS realises this vision by:

- undertaking applied research, training and capacity-building
- working collaboratively with others
- facilitating and supporting policy formulation
- monitoring trends and policy implementation

- collecting, interpreting and disseminating information
- networking on national, regional and international levels.

### South Africa's National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi)

Sanedi was established in 2012 through the merger of the South African National Energy Research Institute and National Energy Efficiency Agency.

The Department of Science and Technology and the Department of Minerals and Energy are joint custodians of Sanedi and assist in providing political and strategic focus for the company.

The institute is entrusted with the coordination and undertaking of public interest energy research, development and demonstration. As such, it is responsible for enabling and implementing the energy technology roadmaps which support long-term energy policies developed by the Department of Energy.

### Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines.

The committee is a statutory tripartite subcommittee of the Mine Health and Safety Council. It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

### National Agricultural Research Forum (Narf)

The NARF coordinates agricultural research and development within the national agricultural research system. It also provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development matters. Biannual meetings are held to debate and agree on research needs, programmes and budgeting. Efforts are made to ensure that the bulk of research serves the needs of small-scale producers.

Research initiatives have been integrated into the various industries in line with the overall objectives of each agricultural sector.

### Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC was established in 1971 following a period of water shortages. The WRC is responsible for:

- promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water research and development
- establishing water-research needs and priorities
- stimulating and funding water research according to priority
- promoting the effective transfer of IT
- enhancing knowledge and capacity-building within the water sector.

The WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water-use and waste management
- water-use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water-use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities and the transfer of technology.

### Institute for Water Research (IWR)

The IWR is a multidisciplinary research department of Rhodes University. Its main objective is to contribute to sustainable water-resource management in southern Africa.

This is achieved through scientific research into the structure and function of aquatic ecosystems; the application of research through specialist consultancy services; tertiary-level teaching and training; capacity-building for community development; and service on national and international management and policy-making committees.

### South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi)

Sanbi's biodiversity research comprises collaborative programmes set up to promote and catalyse knowledge about biodiversity.

The broad scope of research includes the origins, composition and functioning of biodiversity, its conservation and sustainable use, ecosystem services, and biodiversity responses to major drivers such as climate change. The research is organised into three divisions:

- Applied Biodiversity Research
- Biosystematics Research and Biodiversity Collections
- Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation.

### Coastal and marine research

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research. The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

## National research facilities

The seven national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the NRDS.

### South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its prime function is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility and by promoting astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa.

Researchers and physics students at the University of Johannesburg (UJ) are now part of a team of more than 400 scientists and scholars from 90 universities and laboratories across 19 countries on six continents, working to unveil the mysteries of the high-energy universe. In March 2013, UJ became the newest member institute of NASA's Fermi-LAT gamma-ray space telescope mission. The telescope orbits planet Earth every 95 minutes, building up deeper views of the universe with every circuit. Since non-thermal, relativistic particles are responsible for both gamma-ray and radio emission, Fermi-LAT science is complementary to the science of the Square Kilometre Array Radio Telescope (SKA), which will be hosted by South Africa.

The SAAO contributes to the future development of South Africa through the creation and dissemination of scientific knowledge, through the provision of research infrastructure, and through providing an interface between science and society.

It is also responsible for managing the operations of the South African Large Telescope (Salt).

### Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

The HartRAO is a radio astronomy observatory located in a natural bowl of hills at Hartebeesthoek just south of the Magaliesberg mountain range, Gauteng, South Africa, about 50 km west of Johannesburg. It is a national research facility run by South Africa's NRF and is the only major radio astronomy observatory in Africa.

HartRAO is mainly used for continuum radiometry, spectroscopy, pulsar timing and interferometry but also works together with radio telescopes on other continents as well as the orbiting radio telescope HALCA (or the Highly Advanced Laboratory for Communications and Astronomy) to perform Very Long Baseline Interferometry (VLBI).

### South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab)

Situated in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape,

Saiab is an internationally recognised centre for the study of aquatic biodiversity. Saiab runs a number of large, interdisciplinary and multi-institutional programmes. The research facility is directed at fish taxonomy, systematics, genetics, phylogeography, biology, ecology, ethology, conservation, and fisheries management.

### South African Environmental Observation Network (Saeon)

Saeon is a research facility that establishes and maintains nodes (environmental observatories, field stations or sites) linked by an information management network to serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that will provide for incremental advances in our understanding of ecosystems and our ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

The core research programme will strive to distinguish between anthropogenic and natural change as well as to unravel the relations between social change and ecosystem change.

### National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

Inspired conservation of wildlife through understanding, knowledge and connection, as the vision and mission statements, reflect a commitment by the NZG to bridge the gap between nature and humanity through the provision of a platform on which humanity can gain knowledge about, cultivate a better understanding of and connect with nature in general, but wildlife in particular.

### iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences

iThemba LABS is a multidisciplinary facility aiming to become the leading African organisation for research, training and expertise in accelerator-based science and technologies. The infrastructure is based at two sites, namely in the Western Cape, on Old Faure Road, and in Gauteng, on the campus of the University of the Witwatersrand.

## Research areas

### Biotechnology

South Africa's research institutions and universities are conducting biotechnology research to increase production of crops suited to local conditions, enhance crop nutritional value and improve preservation and processing methods resulting in novel and improved food products.

Research is being conducted into understanding the nutritional components of food indigenous to South Africa, with the aim of making those with a high nutritional value available and accessible to most people.

Within the biotechnology space, South African researchers are doing the country proud. This is especially true in the area of tuberculosis research, where local researchers are working closely with national institutes of health in drug discovery and development of new potential drugs. The work being conducted at the University of Cape Town and at the CoE for Biomedical Tuberculosis Research, at Stellenbosch University and at the National Health Laboratory Services, are world class.

South Africa is classified as one of the 14 mega-biotech countries in the world, and the only one in Africa. These countries have a special responsibility to ensure that the potential impact of genetically modified organisms on human or animal health and on the environment; together with their probable socio-economic impact; are carefully measured, assessed and estimated before they are released, thus ensuring a favourable risk-benefit ratio.

The objective of the Department of Science and Technology, as stated in the Biotechnology Strategy, is to establish a sustainable and competitive biotech industry, which will result in the development of safe and beneficial products.

The biotechnology sector is attracting a fast-growing portion of research and development funding. South Africa is also committed to developing biotechnology in Africa.

Other initiatives include the establishment of biotechnology regional innovation centres

(Brics), namely the Biopad, Cape Biotech, LIFElab and the Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre. Brics were created as instruments for implementing the National Biotechnology Strategy, and cover a wide spectrum of subdisciplines in biotechnology. These include human and animal health, biopharmaceuticals, industrial bioprocessing, mining biotechnology, bioinformatics and plant biotechnology. TIA has absorbed the Brics and will significantly expand on the innovation development portfolios.

The Department of Science and Technology has launched the Public Understanding of Biotechnology Programme to ensure a clear and balanced understanding of the scientific principles, related issues and potential of biotechnology, and to stimulate public debate around its applications in society.

## Biosafety

The aim is to make South Africa one of the top three emerging economies in the world in terms of the pharmaceutical, nutraceutical, flavour, fragrance and biopesticide industries by 2018.

Biosafety relates to the avoidance of risk to human and animal health, safety and prosperity, and to the environment, when researching, developing and commercialising the products of modern biotechnology.

The vision of Biosafety South Africa is to support innovation in biotechnology by ensuring the development of safe and sustainable biotechnological products. It promotes the biosafety of biotechnological products through the delivery of value-adding services and investment in strategic biosafety research.

Biosafety South Africa has:

- established firm collaborative partnerships with various international role players in biosafety, including the International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology, the Biosafety Resource Network of the Donald Danforth Plant Science Centre and Nepad's African Biosafety Network of Expertise
- developed and commissioned a wide range of strategic biosafety research projects and committed more than R5 million over the 2011 to 2013 period to strategic biosafety research
- established new capacity in South Africa for biosafety research by investing in research groups that had not previously undertaken any biosafety research, and funded 11 postgraduate bursaries.

In the delivery of the National Biotechnology Strategy, the Department of Science and Technology has set up the necessary instruments to drive biotechnology's commercialisation, a series of technology platforms to enable biotechnology development, and a range of capacity development initiatives to ensure there is human capital for the growing sector.

## Astronomy and the Square Kilometre Array (SKA)

South Africa continues to promote high-technology investment to ensure that local researchers and students are able to participate in international astronomy.

As a region, southern Africa is already internationally recognised in the area of astronomy. The region has major astronomy facilities that include the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt) in the Northern Cape and the HESS gamma-ray telescope in Namibia.

Salt was launched in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape. This multimillion-rand project involving Germany, Poland, the USA, New Zealand and the United Kingdom (UK), is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

In May 2012, the SKA Organisation announced that South Africa and Australia were to jointly host the SKA.

SKA South Africa is joining IBM and the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy (Astron) in a four-year collaboration to research extremely fast but low-power "exascale" computer systems. These systems are aimed at developing advanced technologies for handling the massive amount of data that will be produced by the SKA.

As part of this collaboration, South African scientists will be involved in exploring new computer architectures, developing advanced algorithms for radio astronomy imaging, and developing rugged microservers capable of handling harsh desert conditions.

Despite the dual site approach, the majority of the SKA – the full dish array and the dense aperture array – will be built in Africa. The core, i.e. the region with the highest concentration of receivers, will be constructed in the Northern Cape about 80 km from the town of Carnarvon (the same site where the MeerKAT is being constructed). The sparse aperture array (low-frequency array) will be built in Western Australia.

South Africa has already demonstrated its excellent science and engineering skills by designing and starting to build the MeerKAT telescope – as a pathfinder to the SKA. The first seven dishes, KAT-7, are complete and have already produced its first pictures. MeerKAT is attracting great interest internationally – more than 500 international astronomers and 58 from Africa submitted proposals involving MeerKAT once it is complete.

The technology being developed for MeerKAT is cutting edge and the project is creating a large group of young scientists and engineers with world-class expertise in the technologies which will be crucial in the next 10 to 20 years, such as very fast computing, very fast data transport, large networks of sensors, software radios and imaging algorithms.

Since 2005, the African SKA Human Capital Development Programme has awarded close to 400 grants (2012) for studies in astronomy and engineering from undergraduate to post-doctoral level, while also investing in training programmes for technicians.

Astronomy courses are being taught as a result of the SKA Africa Project in Kenya, Mozambique, Madagascar and Mauritius (which has had a radio telescope for many years) and are soon to start in other countries.

Immediate benefits are in the form of research and development opportunities during the design phase. Scientists from universities across the continent have an opportunity to participate in the design of SKA novel technologies and instrumentation.

The construction phase of the SKA will generate localised direct benefits in the form of jobs, procurement and sourcing of local materials in each of the partner countries. A combination of these benefits will contribute to improvement in the sub-Saharan gross domestic product (GDP).

In addition to the immediate or short-term benefits, there are numerous long-term benefits accruable to the general community at large. Owing to the scientific nature of the project, the main benefit will be the improvement of the skills base and access to top international research facilities and networks which, in turn, will boost output of scientific publications.

In addition, the SKA science provides opportunities for the development of new algorithms and underlying mathematics for manipulating large datasets, new imaging technologies and techniques and new ICT skills beyond what is currently available. These are essential skills, which may be applied in other productive sectors of the economy.

The African Ministerial Council on Science and Technology recognised the SKA as a flagship project. The whole of the Northern Cape, excluding Sol Plaatje Municipality, has been declared an astronomy advantage area for optical and radio-astronomy purposes in terms of Section 5 of the Astronomy Geographic Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007).

Five new research chairs dedicated to the SKA project were created at leading South African universities and filled by international astronomers and cosmologists, with funding for 15 years committed to these.

Some of the SKA's African partners are doing valuable work building new telescopes or converting redundant satellite telecommunication antennae to establish what will be known as Africa's VLBI network.

VLBI is significant for imaging cosmic radio sources, or for applications in astrometry. It can also be used to map the movements of the Earth's tectonic plates precisely. When used in conjunction with other economically beneficial facilities such as global positioning systems, VLBI networks can improve the accuracy of surveying and mapping in a country.

For this reason, South Africa is assisting Ghana with the construction of a radio tele-

scope using a communications antenna that was acquired by the Ghanaian Government. The radio telescope is expected to boost post-graduate research and teaching programmes in radio astronomy.

## Nanotechnology

Nanotechnology, unlike other technologies, can find applications in virtually all areas of human life. In spite of it being in its beginning stages, some of the known issues related to nanotechnology suggest a wide spectrum of potential societal impact. For a society to switch from a merely passive, observational role to one of active participation, public discourse about nanotechnology must be encouraged.

Known as "the technology of the very small" (that is about 1/80 000 of the diameter of a human hair), nanotechnology comprises a wide range of technologies, techniques and multidisciplinary research efforts for application in a range of cross-cutting industries and activities. These include aerospace, the manufacturing and automotive industries; energy conversion, storage and distribution; the hydrogen economy; chemicals; electronics and information processing; as well as biotechnology and medicines.

The Department of Science and Technology has stepped up investment in emerging research areas in general and the National Nanotechnology Strategy in particular. Two nanotechnology innovation centres were established at the CSIR and Mintek. The two nano innovation centres have a budget of R134 million over the current MTEF.

In 2011, the department acquired a world-class, R30-million high-resolution transmission electron microscope that was expected to be be commissioned in the latter part of the year.

The state-of-the-art electron microscope, one of just 15 in the world and the first in Africa, is housed in the new R120-million Centre for High-Resolution Transmission Electron Microscopy (HRTEM) at Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University in Port Elizabeth.

The Japanese-made instrument is the most powerful high-resolution microscope in Africa, enabling scientists to analyse materials down to atomic level, and making the university a new continental hub for nanoscience research.

The analytical attachments of the instrument make it very versatile, with applications ranging across fields as diverse as materials engineering, metallurgy, chemistry, zoology, geology and botany.

The HRTEM was established in collaboration with the NRF; the departments of science and technology, and higher education and training; and Sasol.

The National Nanotechnology Strategy focuses on nanotechnology in the area of health as one of its goals. This is the Mintek nano centre's speciality. It has already developed prototype point-of-care diagnostic tools for diseases such as TB and malaria.

In addition, there are several flagship projects in some of the country's nanotechnology development programmes. In particular, there is the nanotechnology-based TB drug-delivery system, a project led by the CSIR.

The project seeks to address the challenges of the current TB treatment regimen, with the ultimate goal of reducing the frequency and quantity of dosages. This will also reduce the cost of treatment. Through this project, existing TB drugs will be encapsulated into a biodegradable nano-polymer for slow release in the system.

By March 2011, the CSIR and the project team had successfully encapsulated all four first-line TB drugs in a nano-polymer using a technology they patented. With the project conducting clinical trials, prospects for success are looking good. The novelty of the project and its commendable progress saw the team receiving several awards, including a grant from the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation.

As far as safety is concerned, South Africa has embarked on processes for the establishment of a nanotechnology risk-identification-and-mitigation research platform.

## Palaeosciences

The palaeosciences are areas in which South Africa has a geographical advantage, owing

to the quantity and diversity of finds within its national borders.

The South African Strategy for the Palaeosciences (2011) identifies the field of palaeosciences as inclusive of the disciplines of palaeontology, palaeo-anthropology, archaeology, and related disciplines. These are the scientific disciplines that tell the story of life on Earth, including the story of humankind.

Research in the palaeosciences has profound relevance to all people, and is central to the recent emphasis on heritage development by the South African Government. There is without doubt no other country that has such a complete, endless terrestrial rock record covering the Carboniferous, Permian, Triassic and Jurassic periods documenting a climatic shift from glacial polar conditions to subtropical desert. The Karoo Sequence Studies hold clues to understanding both the end-Jurassic and end-Permian extinctions.

Targeted interventions and their systematic introduction aimed at strengthening research capacity in the palaeosciences "to generate a dynamic research environment and create the maximum intellectual vibrancy within these disciplines" are thus a priority for the Department of Science and Technology and the country as a whole.

Mandela 27 is a multimedia project that will bring the tales of Robben Island to life digitally. The project aims to highlight the social events that influenced change in South Africa and Europe during the former South African president's 27 years in prison.

Launched at Cape Town's Gateway to Robben Island, it will draw on cultural links between South Africa and Europe during the apartheid era.

Mandela 27 partners are the Robben Island Museum, Britain's Coventry University, the EU's Cultural Programme, Belgium's Creative Stories Project, and Elderberry, a content developer. Most of the stories will be told through an interactive website with a map interlinking events of activism in South Africa and Europe. The game and other digital components will be ready by February 2014, while the cell will start travelling in May 2014.

One such intervention is the establishment of a CoE in Palaeosciences that integrates palaeontology, palaeo-anthropology, archaeology and related disciplines to create interdisciplinary research and develop the necessary human capital.

Although the CoE will focus on existing institutional excellence, capacity has been rapidly diminishing in South African research areas such as invertebrate palaeontology, micropalaeontology, palynology (including pollen and phytolith analysis), taphonomy and geochronology (which includes isotope analysis and palaeoscience conservation).

These areas need to be strengthened. The CoE in Palaeosciences will also address these research areas and methodologies to ensure their continuity.

The NRF has therefore called for proposals from all publicly funded research institutions and higher education institutions to host the Department of Science and Technology-NRF CoE in Palaeosciences. The host institution will collaborate with other South African public research institutions in pursuance of the objectives of the CoE.

## Information and communication technology (ICT)

The Department of Science and Technology is leading the implementation of the national ICT Research Development and Innovation (RDI) Strategy. Its main purpose is to create an enabling environment for the advancement of ICT RDI in South Africa.

South Africa's research capacity in the ICT field has become a strong competitive advantage. Since the beginning of 2011, the Department of Science and Technology has announced targeted partnerships with global ICT companies including SAP, Microsoft, and Nokia. These companies invested over R15 million in kind and cash in the department's ICT research and development programme in 2011/12, which was matched by departmental funds. In 2012/13, the department provided more funding to leverage increased direct international support for ICT research and

innovation. It also announced a partnership with IBM and Astron.

The ICT RDI Strategy aims to achieve a marked increase in advanced HR capacity, promote world-class research and build robust innovation chains for the creation of new high-tech ICT small enterprises. Implementing the strategy demands partnership involving government, the private sector, higher education institutions and science councils.

The Meraka Institute of the CSIR manages and coordinates the implementation of the strategy. An important envisaged outcome is a vibrant, sustainable and innovative indigenous ICT industry that addresses a significant portion of the country's ICT needs and attracts investments by overseas-based multinational ICT corporations in RDI and manufacturing facilities and resources in South Africa.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), Sanren and the Very Large Databases are the three pillars of cyberinfrastructure that the Department of Science and Technology supports. Hosted by the University of Cape Town and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC was the first of its kind in South Africa and is making scientific supercomputing a reality for South Africa.

It supports a diverse base of researchers and scientists, and facilitates the collaboration and multidisciplinary approach needed to solve complex computational problems, advancing South Africa's research capabilities in areas such as advanced manufacturing, space science and research into infectious diseases.

The high-speed computational infrastructure has 50 terabytes of storage space and 160 computer nodes (640 processors) in a clustered architecture. It has a peak performance of around 2,5 teraflops per second.

Sanren, which is responsible for the roll-out of a high-speed broadband network to all academic and research institutions in the country, was awarded a private electronic communications network licence exemption under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005).

A major project for Sanren is the national backbone network, which aims to connect all major metros in the country with a 10 gigabyte per second link. Phase 1 of this project was completed in November 2011, linking Salt in Sutherland and the proposed SKA site with Cape Town.

In 2011/12, Sanren was extended to 107 institutions. In 2012/13, R78 million was allocated to extending connections to rural sites, including the final six higher education institutions that were unconnected. On completion, the network will reach about 200 sites, both nationally and internationally.

The overall network architecture will consist of a national backbone connecting Durban, Pretoria, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and East London; with metro rings in Johannesburg, Tshwane, eThekwini and Cape Town.

Researchers from South Africa's CSIR developed the world's first injectable medicine from a tobacco plant – an antidote for rabies which could change the way the deadly viral disease is treated worldwide.The new liquid antidote, RabiVir, is made from the leaves of the *Nicotiana benthamiana* plant, a cousin of the commercial cigarette tobacco plant *Nicotiana tabacum*.

Through genetic engineering, antibodies known to work against rabies were introduced to the *N. benthamiana* tobacco variety.The product is a collaborative effort of CSIR scientists, the World Health Organization (WHO), Kentucky Bioprocessing and MAPP Biopharmaceuticals.

## Indigenous knowledge systems (IKS)

In November 2004, Cabinet adopted an Indigenous Knowledge System Policy to serve as a guide for the recognition, understanding, integration and promotion of South Africa's wealth of indigenous knowledge resources. One of the areas of action identified by the policy is the protection of indigenous knowledge and the holders of such knowledge against exploitation. This includes ensuring that communities receive fair and sustained recognition and, where appropriate, financial remuneration for the use of this knowledge

The indigenous knowledge of many com-

munities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles.

Traditional songs and languages, clothing, architecture, foods, motifs, daily rituals and mythological epics contain local survival information. Moreover, the diversity of indigenous cultures provides unique insights into how to live harmoniously within nature.

By sharing indigenous stories of vulnerability and adaptation, people learn how communities share ideas on how ancestral wisdom is being incorporated into climatic adaptation strategies. By cherishing the value of indigenous knowledge, people can discover how best to adapt to a changing climate.

The Department of Science and Technology has three IKS priorities.

- The development of a regulatory environment for the protection of IKS.
- The development of the National Recordal System for the collection, recording, documenting, storage and management and dissemination of IKS in communities in the nine provinces of the country. Until orally transmitted and rapidly disappearing indigenous knowledge is recorded, it will be difficult to protect. The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge. In addition to the establishment of IKS documentation centres in KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo, an IKS documentation centre was also expected to be established in the Moruleng area by the end of 2011. The department aims to have established IKS documentation centres in all the provinces by 2013.
- Applied research, specifically bio-prospecting activities. An example would be how, with funding from the NRF, the MRC is developing the Moritela Tshwene Tea Project near Zeerust in the North West, with the aim of producing a nutritional herbal tea for the commercial market.

The Department of Science and Technology has put in place validation systems within its science system to ensure that indigenous knowledge products are safe and backed by the best science in the world. To give further impetus to these critical initiatives, the department has set aside a dedicated fund to support research into indigenous knowledge.

Two indigenous knowledge research chairs have been awarded as part of the country's Research Chairs Initiative (SARChI). The first was awarded to the University of KwaZulu-Natal for work in the field of traditional medicines. The second was awarded to Walter Sisulu University. These two chairs represent significant injections into the development of national research capacity in IKS.

The Department of Science and Technology also established an indigenous knowledge studies CoE at the universities. The centres will play a defining role in generating highly qualified HR capacity in IKS.

## Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world. The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology Group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce. It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry is able to make use of various developments overseas. Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal, and the underground envir-onment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The more important ones are the:

- Anglo American Corporation of South Africa (applied metallurgy, processing of precious metals, base metals and coal)
- Agricura (synthesis and testing of veterinary remedies, insecticides, herbicides and entomology)

- Cullinan Holdings (refractories and electrical porcelain)
- De Beers Industrial Diamond Division (manufacturing and application of synthetic diamonds and other super-hard material)
- Johannesburg Consolidated Investment Company (metallurgy, mineralogy, chemistry and chemical engineering)
- National Chemical Products (chemistry, microbiology and animal nutrition)
- Metal Box Company of South Africa (corrosion mechanisms and microbiology)
- Tellumat (development of electronic instruments)
- Rembrandt Group (development and improvement of tobacco and liquor products)
- South African Pulp and Paper Industries (wood technology, paper manufacturing and water treatment)
- Standard Telephones and Cables South Africa (long-distance transmission of information and lightning protection).

## Natural-resource development

South Africa's fluorspar chemicals sector has enormous economic potential. The Department of Science and Technology has implemented a fluoro-chemicals development programme targeting human-capital development, new business formation and novel processes and products. A multipurpose fluorination pilot plant was completed and launched in 2012.

The department secured a commitment of R60 million for the period 2013 to 2015 from the competitiveness fund announced by the Minister of Finance in 2012.

This enabled it to increase the companies on its register by a further 50 companies by the end of 2012/13, with an additional 100 planned by the end of 2014/15.

By May 2012, the department had invested close to R108 million in titanium initiatives. Activities included the commercialisation of a novel process for low-cost production of titan-ium powder. Researchers were able to produce kilogramme quantities of titanium powder.

The next stage – 2 kg/hour production of the powder – is expected to be achieved through the creation of a titanium powder pilot plant at the CSIR in Pretoria. Over the next three years, the department will allocate more than R100 million for the titanium initiative, R50 million, which will come from the economic competitiveness fund.

## Human-capital development

The Department of Science and Technology's Human Capital and Science Platforms Subprogramme conceptualises, formulates and implements programmes aimed at developing and renewing science, engineering and technology human capital to promote knowledge generation, protection and exploitation.

Early in 2011, about 272 interns graduated from the Department of Science and Technology and the NRF Internship Programme. Since 2006, almost 750 interns have been hosted by various Department of Science and Technology institutions, including science councils, national facilities and museums. By 2011, R29 million had been invested in the programme, with a further R45 million earmarked for the next three years.

At the sixth Science Centre World Congress in Cape Town in September 2011, the Minister of Science and Technology, Ms Naledi Pandor, announced the establishment of 26 science centres across South Africa. The centres are seen as vital to developing human capital and strengthening the country's science and technology culture.

In September 2011, the South African Young Academy of Science was launched. The academy is intended to facilitate and enhance the participation of young scientists in the mainstream research and development across all disciplines and to provide young scientists with the opportunity to use their knowledge to address South Africa's socio-economic challenges. The SARChI is proving to be an effective instrument for developing human capital. In 2008/9, the department spent R100 million on the SARChI programme; in 2012/13, this rose to R302 million.

In 2011/12, the department fulfilled its target of 62 new chairs: The NRF issued a call for 60 new chairs, while the department's Swiss counterparts agreed to creating two joint South African/Swiss research chairs. By May 2012, there were 152 SARChI chairs. The NRF established an additional 25 postdoctoral fellowships, each worth R180 000 a year, for three years.

International science cooperation can be seen in the growth of the number of internally co-authored publications, particularly after 2004, and of citations, according to Science Watch. Papers co-authored with the USA rose from 1 700 to nearly 5 000 between 1994 and 2008. South Africa is strong in several fields, including Computer Science, Environment/ Ecology, Space Science, Immunology and Clinical Medicine.

In May 2012, Minister Pandor announced a one-year science and technology graduate internship programme in partnership with the Da Vinci Institute and the TT100 companies, to give young graduates work experience and the opportunity to learn entrepreneurship skills from successful technology companies.

The initial intake comprised 50 interns. The department allocated R110 million in the 2012 to 2014 period to the programme, drawing on the R9,5 billion economic competitiveness package announced in the Budget in February 2012. In 2012 and 2013, it allocated R15 million in each year, and R80 million in 2014/15.

In March 2013, the South African National Space Agency (SANSA) and the Russian Federal Space Agency (Roscosmos) signed the Radio-Astron Space Satellite Agreement. Coinciding with Russian President Vladimir Putin's visit to the country to attend the 5th BRICS Summit, the agreement paved the way for the two countries to work together on the development of science and space technologies.

In 2006, the South African and Russian governments signed an agreement to cooperate on the exploration and use of outer space for peaceful purposes.The RadioAstron satellite was launched by Roscosmos on 18 July 2011. It carries a radio telescope that will obtain images and coordinates of various radio-emitting objects.

In 2012, ASSAf made significant strides in increasing access to online journals and the visibility of South African research. The implementation of SciELO (Scientific Electronic Online), South Africa's open-access platform, provided free access to South African scholarly journals. By May 2012, there were 22 journals on the platform, with plans to grow to 180 journals. Statistics showed that the site was visited over 1 000 times a day, with over half the visits from outside Africa. Between May 2009 and May 2012, the South African Journal of Science had nearly 130 000 articles downloaded.

## International cooperation

The Department of Science and Technology is not only entrusted with the overall coordination of national research and innovation initiatives in South Africa, but is also responsible for overseeing and facilitating South Africa's international scientific and technological cooperation.

The International Cooperation and Resources Programme of the Department of Science and Technology is tasked with facilitating and nurturing bilateral scientific cooperation with countries in Africa, Europe, the Americas and Asia. The same programme nurtures multilateral scientific cooperation with the African Union, the United Nations system, donor agencies and foundations, global research infrastructure projects, and multinational companies, as well as focused strategic partnerships, such as with the EU.

The department currently has three international offices, located at South Africa's diplomatic missions in Tokyo, Moscow and Brussels, dedicated to promoting cooperation with Japan, the Russian Federation and the EU.

The Department of Science and Technology has also seconded an official to the secretariat of the SADC in Gaborone, Botswana, and has in the past seconded an official to the African Union Commission in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

However, the Department of Science and Technology does not have exclusive responsibility for matters related to science diplomacy;

it works closely on matters of mutual interest with its sister departments, such as the Department of Trade and Industry, the Department of Environmental Affairs, and the Department of International Relations and Cooperation and its network of diplomatic missions abroad.

Many of South Africa's national science councils or other public-funded research and technology organisations also have dedicated teams working on international cooperation. These include the NRF, which is responsible for the implementation of international science and technology cooperation agreements.

As with other aspects of government action, the coordination of various engagements, and the activities of these actors, is enabled through various interdepartmental forums and clusters. The science diplomacy agenda, thus, comprises multiple initiatives, but all target strategic national priorities.

The South African science diplomacy agenda comprises and has achieved success in three areas:

- diplomatic efforts to promote international scientific cooperation
- international scientific cooperation to address political and economic developmental goals related to foreign policy
- the science content of topical international relations issues and the diplomatic effort required to deal with them.

## African Network on Drugs and Diagnostics Innovation (Andi)

Launched in 2011, Andi is based in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia at the UN offices of the Economic Commission for Africa. Its board agreed that five regional hubs were to be created to support regional research initiatives, with South Africa offering to host the southern hub.

Andi evaluated African research initiatives on drugs and diagnostics, and identified 35 CoEs throughout Africa that were to receive priority attention. Fifteen of these centres are in South Africa.

All the centres are tasked with researching responses to the most intractable health burdens of the continent, from malaria and tuberculosis to river blindness. Many of these are diseases of the poor and invisible; their researchers do not receive funding or intellectual support from established agencies – Andi aim is to reverse this.

It provides support to innovation in quality water provision that is community-led and -based through various agencies. It supported the development and use of new energy-efficient and attractive construction materials through the CSIR-led infrastructure innovation programme – 410 houses were built in Kleinmond, creating an integrated suburb.

It supports rural-based poverty alleviation initiatives in Limpopo, the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. Another facet of Andi is the Ketlaphela/Lonza initiative, launched early in 2012. This project aims to build a plant to manufacture active pharmaceutical ingredients for antiretroviral (ARV) production.

The departments of science and technology, trade and industry, economic development and health collaborated on this initiative, which aims to secure a significant proportion of the ARV market for local producers.

In December 2012, governments meeting at the UN Climate Change Conference (COP18) launched a new commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol, as well as agreed on a firm timetable to adopt a universal climate agreement by 2015. They also agreed on a path to encourage response to climate change, endorsed the completion of new institutions and agreed on ways and means to deliver scaled-up climate finance and technology to developing countries.

The Kyoto Protocol, the only existing and binding agreement through which developed countries commit to cutting greenhouse gases, has been amended so that it continued as of 1 January 2013. The length of the second commitment period will be eight years.

## Conclusion

South Africa is blessed with rich resources and immense possibilities, and in recent years there has been unprecedented activity in the world of science and technology. But to take full advantage of these opportunities, the

country needs more young people to follow science-based careers. The Department of Science and Technology therefore continues to employ Science and Maths olympiads and competitions to identify and nurture talented young people.

South African universities train more and more scientists each year, with whose help the country will be able to spend R45 billion on research and development by 2014, thus reaching its target for gross expenditure on research and development of 1,5% of gross domestic product.

Over the past decade, research and development expenditure has grown five-fold from R4 billion to R21 billion. There are now some 14 000 scientists, engineers, technologists, technicians, managers and other technical staff directly involved in research and development.

A total of 60 new research chairs were awarded to various institutions of higher learning throughout South Africa during the 2011/12 and 2013/14 MTEF. This increased the number of research chairs in South Africa to 154.

During the past financial year, the TIA has also made great progress in taking stock of all the projects in the institutions it inherited and has been able to identify many marketable products from research that was in incubation.

In addition, the department has strengthened its interaction with business leaders of companies that invest substantially in science and technology.

South Africa has made a commitment to reduce greenhouse gas emissions. The Department of Science and Technology has therefore established research programmes based at various universities, focusing on solar and wind energy, as well as on biofuels. To this end, two new research chairs have been established for biofuel research.

However, the most pioneering work is taking place in the area of hydrogen and fuel cell development, which is potentially the clean fuel of the future. Most hydrogen fuel cells use catalysts made of platinum group metals, which is good news for South Africa as the country has more than 75% of the world's known platinum reserves. This advantage, together with an increased focus on research, places South Africa in a strong position to seize the opportunities offered by a future hydrogen economy.

Food security and access to clean water remain among government's top priorities – the department is therefore also focusing on using science and technology to ensure that existing water supplies are clean and is playing an active role in ensuring food security into the future.

To this end, seven of the 60 new research chairs initiated by the department will serve the areas of rural development, food security and land reform, bringing the total of such chairs to 10.

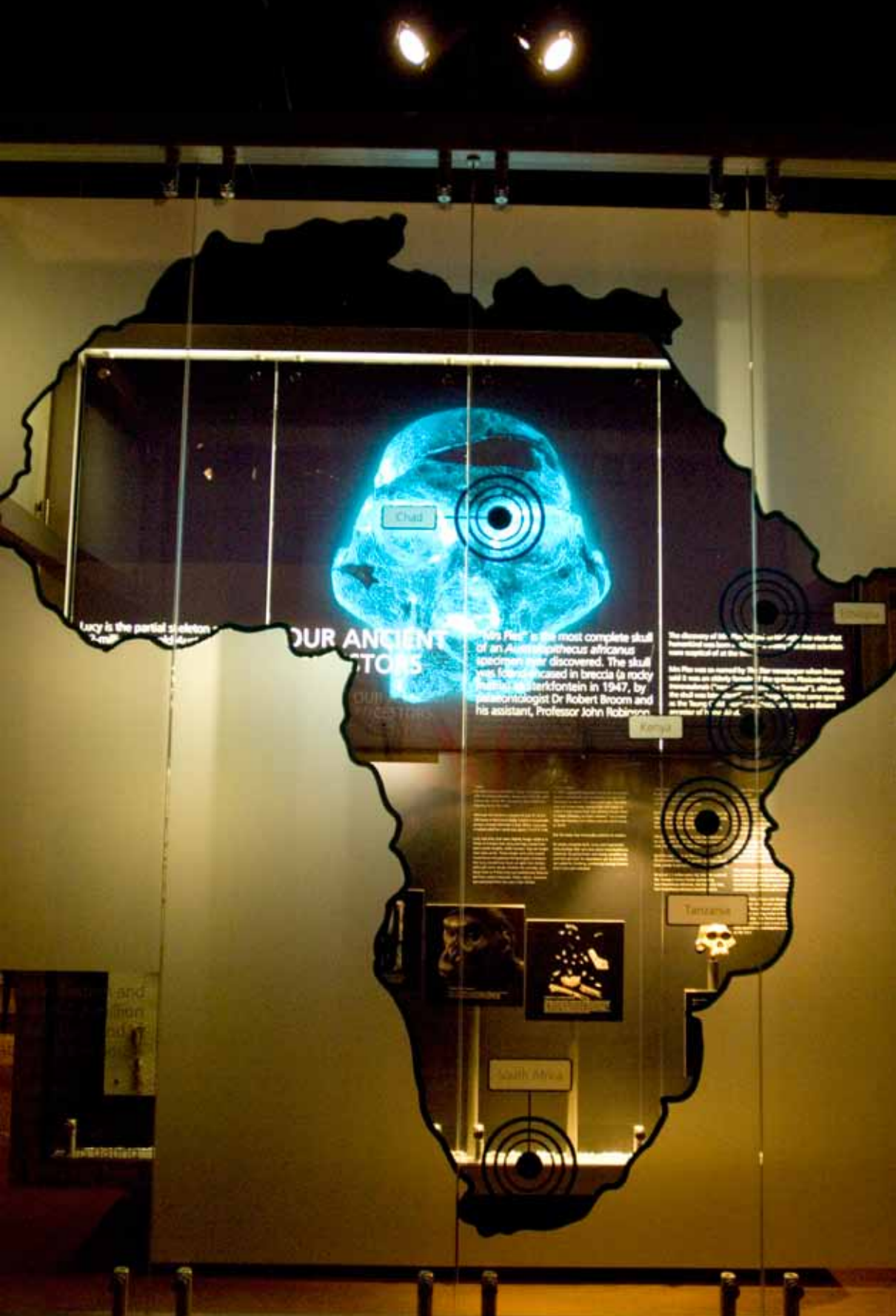
## Acknowledgements

South African Government News Agency
Council for Geoscience
*Department of Science and Technology, Annual Report 2010 – 2011*
*Department of Science and Technology, Strategic Plan 2011 – 2016*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2010*, published by National Treasury
Human Sciences Research Council
Medical Research Council
National Health Laboratory Service
*National Research Foundation, Business Plan 2010 – 2013*
Water Research Commission

*www.ai.org.za*
*www.arc.co.za*
*www.acwr.co.za*
*www.csir.co.za*
*www.dst.gov.za*
*www.eskom.co.za*
*www.geoscience.org.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.hlls.ac.za*
*www.iss.co.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.co.za*
*www.mintek.co.za*
*www.mrc.ac.za*
*www.naci.org.za*
*www.ru.ac.za*
*www.saao.ac.za*
*www.sabs.co.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.saimm.co.za*
*www.sanbi.org.za*
*www.saneri.org.za*
*www.sasol.co.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.tlabs.ac.za*

## Suggested reading

Hughes, C. 2012. *Flowers in the Sky: A Celebration of Southern African Starlore.* Somerset West: C Hughes.
Huigen, S. 2009. *Knowledge and Colonialism: Eighteenth-Century Travellers in South Africa.* Leiden: Brill.
James, W. 2010. *Nature's Gifts: Why We Are the Way We Are.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Landman, K, Hunter, T & Jackson, J. 2012. *An Introduction to Engineering Surveying.* Cape Town: Juta.
Phahlamohlaka, J (ed). 2008. *Community-Driven Projects: Reflections on a Success Story: A Case Study of Science Education and Information Technology in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
*Southern African Steel Construction Handbook.* 2010. Johannesburg: South African Institution of Steel Construction.


Chad
Kenya
Tanzania
South Africa

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Social Development

Access to social security is a human right. Towards the fulfilment of this right, the Department of Social Development continues to develop and implement an array of programmes that not only protect South Africans against poverty, but also build and strengthen community capacity for self-reliance.

The department's efforts are inspired by its vision of building an inclusive society, based on the full integration of all its members, where children are cared for and protected; the disabled are supported to overcome their activity limitations; and the elderly are still meaningfully engaged in the affairs of their communities.

Therefore, besides social assistance, the department also focuses on providing poor and vulnerable people, particularly young people and women, with the support they need to unleash their potential to achieve sustainable livelihoods.

Together with other government departments, the department is working on job creation strategies targeted at the poor, with the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) being a vital component of its combined efforts to create decent employment opportunities. During the past financial year, the department coordinated and directly contributed to the creation of more than 152 109 job opportunities in the social sector, thereby exceeding the annual target of 132 000.

Promoting and protecting the rights of older people and children form the basis for the future development of the country. This is facilitated through intergenerational solidarity and activities that will enable society to rely increasingly on shared skills, experience and wisdom.

Social Development Month, celebrated in October each year, seeks to create greater public awareness of the Department of Social Development's programmes and services to tackle socio-economic challenges. These include poverty, HIV and AIDS, social exclusion, child protection and substance abuse. The theme for 2012 was *Working together to enhance community capacity to fight poverty, unemployment and inequality.*

The Department of Social Development initiated a campaign called *Taking the Department of Social Development to Communities* to foster partnerships between government and community organisations.

Through this campaign, the department will train 580 community development practitioners and 300 community-based organisations on community development and stimulate developmental initiatives in 100 communities. It also partnered Soul City, Seriti Institute and the South African Broadcasting Corporation to launch a 10-part series called *Kwanda Talk* in June 2012.

These collective efforts are also helping to create solidarity and promote social change and social justice, which will contribute towards nation-building efforts.

## Budget

Expenditure increased from R76,1 billion in 2008/09 to R104,3 billion in 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 11,1%, mainly as a result of an extension of the child support grant to 18 years and the equalisation of the old age grant at 60 years. These grants, which use more than 9% of the budget in each financial year, are where the department focuses its spending over the medium term, to boost the income of poor households that suffer the brunt of unemployment, poverty and deep inequalities that persist in South African society.

The number of social grant beneficiaries increased from 13,1 million in 2008/09 to 15,6 million in 2011/12. Over the medium term, expenditure for the payment of social assistance grants is expected to increase to R122 billion, at an average annual rate of 7,9%, to provide for inflation-related increases to the grant values of the individual social assistance grant types. Government plans to pay social grants to 16,8 million beneficiaries by the end of March 2015.

In 2012/13, the department expects to transfer R6,2 billion to the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) to manage and administer the payments of social assistance grants to beneficiaries; R166,3 million to the National Development Agency (NDA); R256 million for social work bursaries; and R45,6 million for the loveLife programme.

Transfers to departmental agencies are expected to increase from R6,5 billion in 2011/12 to R7,3 billion in 2014/15, at an average annual rate of 3,9%. Transfers, however, increased at a rate lower than inflation over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period, due to efficiency savings.

## Legislation and frameworks

The department derives its mandate from the following legislation, among others:

- Advisory Board on Social Development Act, 2001 (Act 3 of 2001)
- Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005)
- Children's Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007)
- Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978)
- Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002)
- National Welfare Act, 1978 (Act 100 of 1978)
- NDA Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998)
- Non-Profit Organisations (NPO) Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997)
- Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)
- Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992 (Act 20 of 1992)
- Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act, 2008 (Act 70 of 2008)
- Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991)
- Sassa Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004)
- Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008)
- Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978).

The Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004) has been amended to streamline the resolution of disputes and disagreements about social grants and grant applications between beneficiaries and Sassa. Previously, all disputes had to be referred to the Independent Tribunal.

In terms of the Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 5 of 2010), beneficiaries and other applicants may now ask Sassa to reconsider the relevant decision before appealing to the tribunal. All applications for appeal

must now show that they have gone through the reconsideration process at Sassa. The Act also provides for the appointment of the Independent Tribunal in a way to be prescribed by regulation, and contains a number of technical amendments and corrections.

## Role players

### Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities

The Ministry for Women, Children and People with Disabilities came into being in May 2009. Its mandate is to advance, develop, promote and protect the rights of women, children and people with disabilities through mainstreaming, lobbying, advocacy, awareness raising, empowerment and monitoring compliance in government and all relevant sectors.

The department is therefore responsible for the effective coordination, monitoring and evaluation of the programmes that are aimed at empowering and upholding the rights of women, children and people with disabilities.

In fulfilling its mandate, the department works with other government departments, provinces, municipalities, civil society and the private sector.

The platform created by the department has enabled the women, children and people with disabilities sectors to articulate their concerns, needs and challenges, while several key commitments have been made by government to redress these challenges. In addition, it allows participants to reflect on innovative solutions to the economic and social challenges faced by these vulnerable sectors of South African society.

### National Development Agency (NDA)

The NDA is tasked with supporting the work of civil society in key areas of concern according to the mandate of the Department of Social Development. It is an important partner in the department's efforts to promote early childhood development (ECD) by using its grants to strengthen the capacities of ECD community service organisations.

The organisations will similarly support the department's efforts to reduce violence against women and children by providing key support to the gender-based violence sector.

Its key strategic objectives are:

- granting funds to civil society organisations (CSOs) for meeting the developmental needs of poor communities
- strengthening the institutional capacity of organisations for long-term sustainability
- proactively sourcing funds for achieving its development objectives
- promoting consultation, dialogue and the sharing of developmental experiences to enrich the debate about and influence of developmental policies
- developing strategies for collaboration with local community-development trusts, foundations, government clusters and CSOs.

NDA programmes include funding, capacity-building and research, policy dialogue and impact assessment.

In 2011/12, the NDA disbursed R83 million to projects and approved 53 projects to the value of R78 million. The agency also invested R10,2 million in building capacity of CSO working in the sector of the ECD, vulnerable groups and rural development.

These capacity-building interventions are geared towards ensuring that recipients of grant funding are not only given money to start and run their projects, but that they are empowered with the necessary skills to ensure sustainability beyond NDA funding.

Its mandate includes:

- advancing youth development through guid-

The Child Support Grant reaches 10,6 million children up to the age of 18. In May 2012, the Department of Social Development launched a study examining both the quantitative and qualitative impact of the grant. By law, the grant is linked to regular school and clinic attendance, but these provisions are not always met.

The department has signed a protocol with the Department of Basic Education to confirm school enrolment and attendance of children who receive child support and foster care grants.

ance and support for initiatives across sectors of society and spheres of government
- embarking on initiatives to advance the economic development of young people
- developing and coordinating the implementation of the Integrated Youth Development Plan and Strategy
- guiding efforts and facilitating youth economic participation, empowerment, education and training
- initiating programmes aimed at combatting crime, substance abuse and social decay among the youth
- promoting youth interests generally and particularly those of young people with disabilities.

February 2012 saw the launch of the Ithubalentsha Micro Enterprise Programme, which provides young aspirant and established entrepreneurs with training, mentorship, micro-enterprise finance, market linkages and access to business opportunities.

The programme seeks to address the barriers faced by young entrepreneurs through five key areas: identification and technical training, entrepreneurship training, micro-enterprise finance, business mentorship and business opportunities and market linkages.

In July 2012, 10 youths each from South Africa and France participated by working as volunteers in non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and community-based organisations (CBOs) in the two countries through a partnership between the National Youth Development Agency (Nyda), Service Civique (a French institution responsible for voluntary civic service) and loveLife.

Nyda's achievements in 2012 included the following:
- 106 147 youths received non-financial interventions
- R97,2 million in loans were disbursed through micro finance, group, and small and medium enterprises (SMEs) lending
- 33 975 loans were issued to micro-enterprises, groups and SMEs
- 73 920 jobs were created
- 7 516 business support consultancy vouchers were issued to youths
- business opportunities worth R193,7 million were sourced and accessed by youths
- 138 990 youths served their communities through participation in the National Youth Service Programme
- 205 Nyda information dissemination and access points were in use.

Through the National Rural Youth Services Corps, 2 500 youths were granted workplace training and 70 were enrolled at the agricultural college to study animal production.

About 1 000 learners were placed on discipline training with the Department of Defence, while others were completing theoretical training at Further Education and Training colleges.

**Grants per month, 2012**

| Grant type | Amount |
|---|---|
| Old Persons | R1 200 |
| Old Persons (Over 75) | R1 160 |
| Disability | R1 140 |
| War Veterans | R1 160 |
| Foster Child Care | R 770 |
| Care Dependency | R1 140 |
| Child Support | R 280 |
| Grant-in-Aid | R 260 |

Source: South African Social Security Agency
[according to new rates]

## South African Social Security Agency (Sassa)

Sassa's core business is to administer, finance and pay social security transfers. The agency is required to:
- develop and implement policies, programmes, standard operating procedures and systems for an efficient and effective social assistance benefits administration system
- deliver innovative and cost-effective services to beneficiaries and potential beneficiaries through multiple access channels
- pay the right grant to the right person at the right time and place.

Sassa ensures the provision of comprehensive social security services against vulnerability and poverty within the constitutional and legislative framework.

The agency's key functions include the effective management, administration and payment of social assistance, as well as:

- the processing of applications for social assistance, such as social grants, grant-in-aid and social relief of distress
- the verification and timely approval of grant applications
- the management and reconciliation of grant payments to eligible beneficiaries by contractors
- the marketing of social assistance
- quality service assurance by ensuring compliance with norms and standards, and fraud prevention and detection.

## Central Drug Authority

The Central Drug Authority's key functions are:

- giving effect to the National Drug Master Plan
- advising the Minister of Social Development on any matters affecting the substance and drug abuse environment
- promoting measures relating to the prevention and combatting of the abuse of drugs.

## Advisory Board on Social Development

The Advisory Board on Social Development's key functions include:

- advising the Minister on all matters related to social development
- identifying, promoting, monitoring and evaluating policy, legislation and programmes regarding social development
- facilitating dialogue with and the participation of civil society.

## South African Council of Social Service Professionals

The South African Council of Social Service Professionals is a statutory body that promotes and ensures ethical behaviour and attitudes on the part of all social service professionals. These include social workers, social workers in private practice, social auxiliary workers, community development workers and practitioners, probation officers, assistant probation officers, child and youth care workers, youth workers, ECD practitioners and care workers, including community-based personal care workers.

The council's business is conducted within the framework of the following principles:

- promoting and maintaining a high standard of professional ethics
- promoting efficient, economic and effective use of resources
- being development-oriented
- providing services impartially, fairly, equitable and without bias
- responding to people's needs and encouraging participation in its policy-making
- being accountable
- fostering transparency by providing the public with timely, accessible and accurate information
- good human resource management
- being broadly representative of the South African people, with employment and personnel
- employing management practices based on ability, objectivity, fairness and the need to redress the imbalances of the past to achieve representation.

## National Action Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS

The National Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS is a multisectoral structure made up of government departments, CSOs, development agencies and donor organisations. It is a formal structure used for collaborative planning and decision-making concerning issues pertaining to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS.

It has a steering committee initiated through consultations between government departments, civil society and NGOs, and is currently composed of representatives of government and civil society. The committee is chaired by the Department of Social Development, and co-chaired by a nominated member from civil society.

### Relief boards

Four relief fund boards were established in terms of Section 16 of the Fund-Raising Act, 1978.

- Board of the Disaster Relief Fund: The key functions of the board are to assist people, organisations and bodies that suffer damage or loss as a result of a disaster.
- Board of the Refugee Relief Fund**:** The key functions are to assist refugees as the board may deem fair and reasonable.
- Board of the State President's Fund: This board's functions are to assist victims of any act of terrorism in respect of their medical treatment and rehabilitation, and assist such victims and their dependants during any financial hardship or financial distress caused directly or indirectly by any act of terrorism.
- Board of the Social Relief Fund: The key functions of the board are to make funds available to organisations capable of assisting people with psychosocial challenges, and rendering such social distress relief to victims of violence.

### Non-profit organisations (NPOs)

The NPO Directorate of the Department of Social Development was established in terms of the NPO Act, 1997 to administer the Register of NPOs in South Africa.

The Register of NPOs is a voluntary registration facility that enhances the credibility of the registered NPO as it reports to a public office. Registration promotes effective, efficient and accountable management within the sector. To strengthen the capacity of NPOs, the department will continue to build their capacity and monitor their compliance to legislation.

During 2011/12, the department received 18 488 new applications for registration from CBOs for NPO registration status. The NPO database increased from 44 222 NPOs in March 2007 to 84 996 at the end of March 2012.

In 2011, Minister and members of executive council (MinMec) approved a policy on the financing of NPOs. This new policy will be implemented on an incremental basis, which started in 2012/13 to ensure that NPOs deliver on both statutory welfare services and developmental priorities of government.

To improve communication between government and civil society on matters of mutual concern, the department hosted a civil society summit in August 2012.

The department's support to CBOs includes:

- the development of guidelines for CBOs
- 220 CBOs and 152 community development practitioners have been trained on these guidelines
- hosting the Inaugural Summit for the Professionalisation of Community Development in October 2011.

CBOs and NPOs are integral to the success of community development.

One of the functions of the department is to monitor all registered NPOs in terms of their compliance to the NPO Act. The compliance rate has improved by 26%. Training was provided to 1 200 NPOs and CBOs. Further plans to strengthen the sector include:

- increasing the number of staff in the department who deal with registrations
- increasing the number of road shows to provide information and listen to challenges faced by the sector.

## Programmes and projects

### Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is a nationwide programme under the auspices of government and state-owned enterprises. It is aimed at drawing significant numbers of unemployed people into productive work, accompanied by training, to increase their capacity to earn an income.

The EPWP is divided into four sectors, namely infrastructure, environment, social and non-state. In the Social Protection and Community Development (SPCD) Cluster. the EPWP focuses mainly on ongoing programmes such as home-/community-based care, ECD as well as community and tourism safety projects.

## Early Childhood Development (ECD) Programme

The Department of Social Development is the lead government department for services to children under the age of four. In terms of the Children's Act, 2005, the department's responsibility is to manage the registration of ECD sites, monitor their functionality and impact, and provide a subsidy for children in need.

The department held a successful ECD conference in the Eastern Cape in March 2012. The aim was to consolidate a shared understanding of the importance of ECD among various role players within government, as well as its partners in civil society, academia, UN agencies and the ECD caregivers and practitioners.

By June 2012, 870 834 children had access to ECD programmes, which is an increase of 22 834 children from birth to five years old having access to ECD programmes since February 2012. The department also ensured that 412 ECD programmes comply with the norms and standards. A further 407 partial care facil-ities are also registered.

ECD registration enables government to provide subsidies for children from needy families, provide project funding and ensure the standardisation of norms and standards.

The provision of comprehensive ECD services improves the country's human capital and reduces intergenerational poverty.

An awareness campaign was launched to promote the importance of ECD as part of nation-building. A national conference with all ECD stakeholders was held to take stock of progress made on ECD delivery and promote the provision of quality ECD services.

A declaration on ECD was adopted by all stakeholders and translated into a Plan of Action approved by Cabinet to:

- develop a country strategy
- harmonise ECD policies across sector departments
- deal effectively with infrastructure provision
- strengthen coordination and integration
- build the necessary capacity
- ensure the inclusion of excluded and marginalised groups.

In April 2012, the Department of Social Development launched the Food for All Campaign as a measure to address incidents of extreme hunger and malnutrition. This is also a vehicle to restore the dignity of many South Africans, including children, who experience hunger and malnutrition.

There has been notable progress in the number of registered ECD centres and children benefitting from services. By January 2013, there were 19 261 registered ECD centres, 846 970 children were receiving ECD and partial care services, and 979 ECD programmes were complying with the norms and standards.

## War on Poverty Campaign

The *Diagnostic Overview 2* (December 2010) issued by the National Planning Commission stated that widespread deep poverty constrained human development and economic progress.

Per capita income and employment fell by about 4% and one million formal and informal jobs were lost between the last quarters of 2008 and 2009.

The War on Poverty Campaign, which was first piloted in 2008/09, targets service delivery to poor households and monitors household progression out of extreme poverty.

Government identified 1 128 of the most deprived municipal wards, where an estimated three million households comprising an estimated 15 million people live in extreme poverty. The campaign is being rolled out to cover all the identified wards by 2014.

As part of the campaign, government will increase the resources required to address the plight of farm workers who are without homes or fixed addresses, and those who are unable to access government services.

Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe visited Douglas in the Siyancuma Municipality, Northern Cape, to monitor progress made in the War on Poverty Campaign and listened to commun-ity members' concerns, which included challenges to accessing government services.

Young people were mostly concerned about the levels of unemployment and lack of service delivery and infrastructure in their communities, such as water, roads, schools and clinics.

### Anti-Poverty Strategy (APS)

Government finalised the APS after consulting the National Anti-Poverty Civil-Society Colloquium in December 2009 and the National Economic Development and Labour Council (better known as Nedlac) during 2010.

This strategy seeks to capacitate and empower households and communities to take themselves out of poverty with the help of government and its social partners, through the creation of economic opportunities, investment in human resources and the provision of income security and the social wage. The APS, which has been presented to Cabinet's SPCD Cluster, will dovetail with existing macro-economic instruments such as the New Growth Path, the Industrial Policy Action Plan 2, as well as efforts such as those arising from the Job Creation Business Summit hosted by President Jacob Zuma in March 2010 and government's Programme to Support Pro-Poor Policy Development.

The APS is expected to see government using short-term employment schemes, enterprise development and a series of public-investment schemes to address the challenge of unemployment, which was exacerbated by the global economic crisis. Cabinet also resolved to establish an infrastructure commission and job creation commission.

### Sustainable Livelihoods Programme

This programme develops and provides support for the implementation of programmes, strategies and tools for sustainable livelihoods, and manages service-delivery partners. It aims to create an enabling environment for empowering the poor and vulnerable through the promotion of and support for community development work, strengthening institutional arrangements, and dialogue with civil society.

In August 2012, the Department of Justice urged beneficiaries of maintenance grants to obtain bank accounts so that they can receive the money due to them faster. To enhance service delivery, the department initiated an electronic payment system where maintenance grants are paid directly into beneficiaries' bank accounts. The system has been deployed in 135 courts and 102 000 beneficiaries are now receiving their grants within 24 to 48 hours after identification of deposits within the third-party funds.

## Social security and assistance

South Africa's social assistance programme has expanded from covering just 2,7 million people in 1994 to over 16 million in 2012. About 2,9 million are older people, while 11,5 million are beneficiaries of the child support grant.

Social grants are government's most effective poverty alleviation programme. The Department of Social Development conducted a comprehensive impact evaluation study of the child support grant, which affirmed its importance as an instrument for social protection.

The child support grant is effective in increasing educational outcomes, reducing the likelihood of illness, adolescent absences from school and sexual activity, particularly when the grant is received in early childhood. By March 2012, South Africa had about 15,6 million social grant beneficiaries and the number is expected to grow to 16,8 million in three years. More than 10 million of these are children.

In 2012, the department completed a study into the option of changing social grants into family benefits instead of individual benefits.

In March 2012, the first stage of re-registering all social grant beneficiaries was started. More than 15 million social grant beneficiaries in the country were re-registered for their grants. The first phase targeted the re-registration of Sekulula clients and new approved applicants.

Sekulula refers to a debit-card based transactional account that allows government grant recipients access to grants electronically at ATMs or point-of-sale devices. During the process, the beneficiaries were issued with a temporary Sassa-branded biometric magstripe card.

The second stage started in June 2012, where a permanent Sassa-branded biometric magstripe card was issued. During the second phase, existing eligible beneficiaries, including bank beneficiaries and children, were enrolled on the new biometric-based payment system at Sassa pay points, local offices and designated sites.

Sassa conducted home visits during this period to accommodate beneficiaries over 75 years old and bedridden beneficiaries at institutions such as hospitals.

The move to re-register the beneficiaries forms part of Sassa's bid to rid the system of corruption and to ensure that social grants are paid to the right people.

With the new system, beneficiaries will be able to use their smart card anywhere in the country.

Beneficiaries of the child support grant were required to bring their babies, along with their birth certificates, for re-registration. The child's fingerprints were taken to verify his or her identity.

As from April 2012, pensioners received R1 200, while foster care grants increased by R30 to R770 and the child support grant to R280.

## Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008)

The amendment of the Social Assistance Act, 2004, saw men aged 63 to 64 qualifying for and receiving social-assistance grants for the first time.

The Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 seeks to:

- introduce a new definition of disability
- provide a mechanism for Sassa to review its decisions when a beneficiary is not satisfied with the outcome
- enhance the appeals process.

The passing of the amendment enables the department to distinguish between permanent and temporary disability, and people with chronic illnesses. The Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 facilitates a process that allows social-grant applicants and beneficiaries to be treated with fairness, dignity and respect.

The Act provides for applicants and beneficiaries to request Sassa to review its decisions to expedite resolution of disputes and avert unnecessary and costly litigation.

The Act also provides for applicants and beneficiaries to appeal against a decision of the agency and the appointment of the Independent Tribunal.

The tribunals are a key part of the administrative justice process and make it possible for applicants and beneficiaries to present their grievances. If their claims have merit, the process allows them to obtain simple and speedy resolution of their cases.

## Social security reform

The ultimate goal of social development is to engender self-reliance and social cohesion. While appropriate social-security provisioning plays a critical role in addressing the basic needs of the poorest of the poor, it is only meant to be a temporary measure.

Government recognises that empowering people, particularly women, to strengthen their own capacities is a main objective of development and its principal resource. With this goal in mind, the department has begun piloting various initiatives that will enable poor communities to become architects of their own development.

Regarding social-security reform, the policy on mandatory retirement provisions was approved by the Inter-Ministerial Committee (IMC) on Social Security Reform and is pending Cabinet approval.

Other initiatives include the assessment tool for children with disabilities, and work on the Social Relief Policy and Social Relief Bill.

The Social Relief Policy and Social Relief Bill seek to create a new institutional and legal framework and delegation of responsibilities to provinces to ensure timely humanitarian relief in the event of sudden contingencies

Various evaluative research findings confirmed that the provision of social grants to vulnerable individuals and households not only

In 2012/13, the Department of Social Development allocated R256 million for the Social Work Scholarship Programme. Since 2007, more than 5 000 social workers have been trained through this programme. The department started engaging veteran social workers to mentor the newly qualified social workers to ensure dignified service delivery.

reduces the occurrence of hunger and extreme poverty, but also facilitates household access to basic services and economic opportunities.

Voluntary savings represent the continuation of additional voluntary, private retirement savings and insurance arrangements for those who can afford it. One of the main challenges towards the future is to extend coverage of voluntary savings to the informal sector.

As part of the comprehensive social security reform proposals, the SPCD Cluster also completed a draft no-fault policy for the Road Accident Fund. In a related development, and as part of government's continued effort to protect people against vulnerability and other contingencies of life, the cluster, led by the Department of Social Development, will fast-track the development of a coherent policy on social relief of distress.

The second pillar of the social security system is social insurance, aimed at preventing poverty. The goal is to introduce a statutory contributory social security framework, which will include a basic retirement benefit element to ensure that, after a lifetime of working, people can retire and live out their last years in dignity.

The Department of Social Development made the following progress during 2012:

- In Mookgophong in Limpopo, 118 backyard gardens were established to assist with malnutrition.
- In Phomolong in Limpopo, 67 household food gardens were established during Mandela Day celebrations in July 2012. Other interventions included the allocation of dry seeds for planting for identified malnutrition cases and the handing out of food parcels.
- Almost 100 older people benefitted from the establishment of the Mookgophong Service Centre, where people undertake laundry, knitting and gardening services to generate income.
- There are 300 vulnerable households that benefitted from poverty reduction programmes such as bush clearing and receiving a monthly stipend, initiated by the EPWP in Mookgophong.
- A social crime prevention campaign reached about 650 community members of the Tjakastad area in Mpumalanga.
- In Devon in Gauteng, a bakery project is operating under the management of eight women. The NDA allocated R1 million to fund Hlwayela Project and Poultry Farming.
- In the Eastern Cape, the Esigwalini Food Production Project serves as one of the means to alleviate the effects of poverty and unemployment in the Eastern Cape. Three villages benefitted from this project and it makes vegetable and maize crops accessible. Located next to the Umtata River, which serves as a source for water, Esigwalini has rich soil suitable for farming.

### Dealing with corruption

Sassa's continued commitment to relentlessly uproot fraud and corruption in the administration and payment of grants has yielded positive outcomes. Since its inception, Sassa's collaboration with the Special Investigating Unit has seen a reduction in fraud and corruption.

The department's national facilities to combat fraud and corruption in the social security system comprise:

- a toll-free national security fraud hotline (0800 60 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week
- an e-mail address (*fraud@socdev.gov.za*) as well as a free-call fax-service number (0800 61 10 11).

## Job creation and alleviating poverty

In responding to the recent economic downturn, government resolved to undertake and implement several measures to curb and

minimise its impact. The Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF) provides a safety net to those affected by the economic downturn. The fund has provided relief to 705 856 unemployed people between April 2011 and March 2012. R5,6 billion was spent for this purpose.

Several initiatives, including the training of workers, which equip them to enter the labour market, were also initiated. Some of the job creation initiatives included the Productivity South Africa Social Plan aimed at saving jobs. Funding was also made available for the training of artisans.

Training takes place in cooperation with the Sector Education and Training Authorities (Setas). In implementing the scheme, the Minister of Labour approved two training initiatives in 2011/12 for the 2012/13 period.

Collaboration between the UIF and the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC), saw more than 16 000 jobs created and more than 18 000 work opportunities saved. The Compensation Fund also increased pension benefits from R277 860 to R292 032. The 5,1% increase translates into R900 per month. Maximum compensation funeral benefits increased from R13 050 to R13 716.

The Road Accident Fund (Transitional Provisions) Bill was tabled in Parliament and was referred to the Portfolio Committee on Transport and the Select Committee on Public Services in June 2012.

The Bill seeks to provide for transitional measures regarding certain categories of third parties whose claims were limited to R25 000 under the Road Accident Fund Act prior to 1 August 2008.

Government is committed to improving its efforts at ensuring food security for all in the country, starting with vulnerable households and communities. To this end, households have been assisted in establishing 4 776 food gardens to produce their own food, thus participating in their own development.

The Food Banks Programme, which is part of the Zero Hunger Strategy, is an important channel through which vulnerable people access food. Between January and March 2012, the Food Banks Programme distributed about 3,8 million meals. They reached approx-imately 320 000 beneficiaries a month working through 1 600 agencies composed of NGOs and CBOs.

The department also developed a training and mentoring programme for home CBOs. In line with the recommendations of a comprehensive evaluation report, the National Institute for Community Development and Management was appointed to review the seven existing modules. The training material was expected to be registered with the Health and Welfare Seta in 2011/12.

In November 2012, the Department of Social Development in partnership with the United Nations (UN) Population Fund published the *State of the World Population Report.* The report was released globally on the same day under the theme *By Choice, Not By Chance: Family Planning, Human Rights and Development*.

The report looks at key issues relating to the achievement of the UN's millennium development goals that speak to child health and maternal health, with a specific focus on family planning. The report highlights that every year thousands of women die unnecessarily from unintended and often unwanted pregnancies; and looks at how children's health is compromised when mothers' pregnancies are not adequately spaced.

## HIV and AIDS support

The National Strategic Plan on HIV, AIDS, Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) and Tuberculosis (TB) 2012 – 2016, which addresses the social drivers and social impact of HIV and AIDS, is a key component of the department's fight against the spread of HIV and AIDS.

As part of its contribution to the National Strategic Plan for HIV, AIDS and STIs 2007 – 2011, the Department of Social Development continued funding the National Association for People Living with HIV and AIDS (Napwa). Napwa provides care through counselling and support groups, focusing on the promotion of positive living, treatment and nutrition support.

The Department of Social Development has also developed a framework for an integrated and coordinated response to HIV and AIDS.

The framework includes sourcing reliable research and information; providing social protection to those infected and affected, especially children; protecting children's rights; providing services; special programmes such as the Home-/Community-Based Care Programme; empowering women; and capacitating officials to deal with HIV and AIDS.

Partnerships with other government departments, NGOs, CBOs, faith-based organisations (FBOs), the business sector, volunteers and international agencies underpin the department's response to HIV and AIDS.

Several care and support strategies and programmes for vulnerable groups affected by HIV and AIDS and other diseases were developed and implemented. These programmes fall under the Home- and Community-Based Care Programme, which involves the provision of comprehensive social services in the context of communities, families and individuals.

The department also facilitated and monitored the implementation of a national action plan for orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS. The plan was implemented by four reference teams.

A draft framework on psychosocial support to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS was developed and aligned with the Southern African Development Community Framework.

The department remains a committed member of the South African National AIDS Council, which is an ideal platform to drive the message of social behaviour change with respect to HIV and AIDS and building HIV-competent communities. It participates in the ongoing HIV Counselling and Testing Campaign, ensuring that all people undergoing testing receive appropriate counselling and support.

## HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

The expansion of the NPO loveLife's Groundbreaker Partnership Programme aims to strengthen the loveLife Mphintshi Initiative by linking it to the EPWP and the prevention programme in relation to home-/community-based care and support.

In September 2012, Cabinet noted the fourth United Nations Population Fund Country Programme of Support: 2013 – 2017, and supported its implementation. The programme's goals include the reduction of poverty and inequality by supporting interventions to improve the quality and use of sexual reproductive health services, including maternal health, family planning and linkages to HIV prevention. It also supports programmes that are responsive to emerging population dynamics, with emphasis on women in urban informal settlements and rural women, as well as adolescents and unemployed young people.

The HIV and AIDS Youth Programme's services now reach marginalised and vulnerable youth in rural areas. It focuses on preventing the spread of HIV and AIDS among young people.

## HIV and AIDS advocacy, awareness and outreach

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection. The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure
- communication
- rights
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS.

It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments
- discrimination against the infected and affected.

The programme aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

## Care and support partnerships

The Department of Social Development continues to strengthen its partnerships with national

and international organisations involved in the fight against HIV and AIDS.

The department chairs the National Action Committee for Children made Vulnerable by HIV and AIDS, which is a multisectoral team comprising government, FBOs, CBOs, civil society, the business sector, the United Nations (UN) Children's Fund (Unicef) and Save the Children. Its focus is on the care and support of orphans and vulnerable children.

The department has also strengthened its partnership with churches and other FBOs, the business sector, volunteer organisations and individuals, to assist with poverty relief, HIV and AIDS, and social grant registration programmes.

## Social crime prevention

### Probation services

The Department of Social Development is implementing the Probation Services Act, 1991, as amended. At national and provincial levels it provides early intervention services and prevention programmes to offenders and victims of crime.

The National and Provincial Probation Service Coordinators' Forum meets regularly to deal with service-delivery issues pertaining to children awaiting trial, especially their removal from correctional facilities.

Provinces have increased the number of diversion programmes to ensure that children are diverted from the Criminal Justice System. One such centre is the Mangaung One-Stop Youth Justice Centre in the Motheo District in the Free State.

Home-based supervision is proving to be a successful programme for high-risk children or children in conflict with the law. It is a cost-effective manner of bringing about behavioural changes in these children. The parents are co-responsible for dealing with their children to achieve the desired changes. Different programmes can be used during home-based supervision.

The assistant probation officer is responsible for supervision but the probation officer remains the case manager. Regular consultations should take place between the probation officer and the assistant probation officer to achieve the best results.

Overcrowding in prisons remains a concern. The national office and provinces have developed an action plan to ensure that children do not await trial in prisons.

The focus of the action plan is to provide secure-care facilities.

### Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP)

In 2010/11, a final report on developing legislation for victim-support services was completed. A costing model for a VEP was developed, aimed at standardising victim empowerment services and funding. Costing models were also developed for programmes involving older people, children, people with disabilities, social crime and substance abuse. It is aimed at promoting standardisation across the provinces.

Generic indicator sets were piloted at 18 sites in three provinces. The pilot phase was conducted in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West; and the second in the Western Cape, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal.

A training-needs assessment was conducted to determine the sector's capacity-building needs. Trauma counselling was identified as a priority, and the department responded by facilitating trauma-counselling training in various government departments and CSOs. A total of 1 800 officials were trained, significantly exceeding the target of 1 400. A draft mentoring and coaching model was also developed. Four provinces were nominated to test the model, and 78 government officials and CSOs were trained.

The strategy for engaging men and boys in achieving gender equality, with a special focus on the prevention of gender-based violence, was implemented in all nine provinces. Additional workshops were held for social workers and service providers to implement the strategy.

A shelter strategy was also implemented country wide. Workshops were held to train

social workers to implement the strategy, focusing on how to render services to abused women at shelters, and ensure that their services adhere to the minimum standards set out in the Victim's Charter.

Through its partnerships with the Government of Denmark, Unicef, the United States Agency for International Development and RTI International as an implementing partner, government established 35 Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs) throughout the country.

TCCs are one-stop facilities that have been introduced as a vital part of South Africa's Anti-Rape Strategy, aimed at reducing secondary trauma for the victim, improve conviction rates and reduce the cycle time for finalising cases.

This project is led by the National Prosecuting Authority's Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit, in partnership with various donors, as a response to the urgent need for an integrated strategy for prevention, response and support for rape victims.

TCCs operate in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high. They are also linked to sexual offences courts that are staffed by prosecutors, social workers, investigating officers, magistrates, health professionals, NGOs and the South African Police Service.

National Children's Day is celebrated annually in South Africa on the first Saturday of November. It is a day to reflect on the progress that has been made in realising and promoting the rights of children.

South Africa has more than 18 million children – this represents more than a third of the population.

One of the key rights of all children is the right to education. Census 2011 results, which were released in October 2012, indicate that significant progress has been made in educating our children.

According to the results, the proportion of children with no schooling has halved over the period between 1996 and 2011. There is also a significant increase in the enrolment of children from pre-school to primary and high school, and up to tertiary level. The proportion of children who go on to complete matric has also increased significantly from 16% in 1996 to 29% in 2011.

### *National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime*

*The National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime* was launched during the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign in December 2004. It is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

### National Family Policy

The Department of Social Development is tasked with implementing the National Family Policy and provides training in family-preservation services, marriage preparation and enrichment, parenting/primary care-giving and families in crisis to service providers in the area of family services.

In May 2012, the Department of Social Development released the *Green Paper on Families*, which emphasises the need for all to build strong families that protect the most vulnerable members of society.

The Green Paper, which was approved by Cabinet in 2011 for public engagement, aims to shift the focus of government services from targeting individuals to focusing more on responding to their needs as members of families.

The purpose of the Green Paper is to provide a platform for all South Africans to engage and exchange views on how to build stable families.

It also seeks to address some of the challenges faced by individuals in families, including the abuse of women and children, the elderly and people with disabilities.

Through the *Green Paper on Families*, the department also seeks to:

- reaffirm the relevance of a family as a critical unit in society
- maximise the participation and commitment of all sectors in strengthening family life
- ensure balance between work and family life
- ensure that families have access to services
- strengthen families so that they are able to take care of their children.

### Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

In 2011, the Department of Social Development hosted a Biennial Anti-Substance Abuse Summit. Research papers presented at the summit show that drug and alcohol abuse are linked to ill health and social disorders. They also indicate that alcohol intoxication is associated with death as a result of injuries, with increased risky sexual behaviour, and that approximately 65% of murders in South Africa are associated with social behaviour largely fuelled by alcohol abuse.

In 2012, the IMC on Anti-Substance Abuse consolidated its legislative review initiatives, focusing on banning alcohol advertising, raising the age limit for alcohol consumption from 18 to 21 years, closing down all illegal shebeens and those located near schools and places of worship.

The IMC heightened its public awareness efforts, working with loveLife, Soul City and other social partners to highlight the social costs associated with the harmful use of alcohol. The Department of Social Development, as part of this effort, will intensify the fight against substance abuse by strengthening the Ke Moja Campaign to target all vulnerable groups. Ke Moja, meaning "No thanks, I'm fine" (without drugs), is jointly sponsored by the Department of Social Development and the UN Office for Drug Control.

## Children and youth

South Africa has acceded to and signed the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child, the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child and other related conventions and protocols. The aim is to provide care and protection to all children, guided by international and national legal frameworks.

The national guidelines to protect and care for children include the Constitution, the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983), as amended, the *White Paper for Social Welfare (1997)* and the Children's Act, 2005, as amended. Section 137 of the Children's Act, 2005 proposes new protection measures for child-headed households.

International Women's Day, celebrated on 8 March 2012, was the 101st International Women's Day. It placed a strong emphasis on empowering rural women, with the aim of bringing an end to hunger and poverty worldwide.

The 56th session of the United Nations Commission on the Status of Women, which opened in February 2012, focused on the theme of empowerment of rural women and their role in poverty and hunger eradication and sustainable development.

South Africa, too, has prioritised the empowerment of rural women through the mainstreaming of gender as part of a Comprehensive Rural Development Programme.

This section defines children from child-headed households, provides for appointing an adult to supervise a child-headed household and allows children in child-headed households to access social grants and other material assistance.

Services and community-based care services are rendered to enable orphans to continue living with their siblings in their parental homes.

Statutory services rendered to these households include:

- Therapeutic counselling to help family members deal with personal problems, difficulties and traumas.
- Adult supervision to provide the child-headed household with regular care and guidance from a responsible adult. The adult supervisor lives in her or his respective home, but provides constant supervision over the family. This is an out-of-court arrangement, but the social worker is expected to provide overall supervision.
- Poverty relief and other material assistance, such as food parcels as a temporary intervention until a permanent intervention can be provided.

In 2011/12, the number of children benefitting from child and youth care services increased significantly, and more than 23 000 children were placed in foster care, bringing the total to more than 536 000. A major outcome of gov-

ernment's adoption awareness campaign was an increase in the number of adoption cases, with about 1 620 registered in the course of the year. Some 194 of these were intercountry adoptions.

## Childcare legislation

The Children's Act, 2005, sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children; defines parental responsibilities and rights; and provides for matters such as children's courts, adoption, child abduction and surrogate motherhood.

The Act also:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoption
- prohibits child abduction and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- recognises certain new offences relating to children
- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register that records all people found unsuitable to work with children.

It also lists all people found by the Children's Court and criminal courts to be unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register, however, is not open to the public, and all requests for information must be directed to the Department of Social Development.

The Children's Amendment Act, 2007 provides for:

- the partial care of children
- ECD
- protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care
- child and youth care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- certain new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without the consent of the parents or guardian
- the discipline of children.

## Child Labour Programme of Action (CLPA) Report

In September 2012, Cabinet approved the CLPA Report.

The CLPA is South Africa's roadmap to the prevention, reduction and eventual elimination of child labour, which affects an estimated one million children in the country. It serves to focus and guide the efforts of an array of government departments and civil society groups, including business organisations, labour federations and organisations serving the interest of children.

The key elements of the CLPA include targeting the implementation of government and other stakeholders' programmes and policies on poverty, employment, labour and social matters more effectively in areas where the work children do has serious negative effects on them.

The CLPA will also promote new legislative measures against the worst forms of child labour and strengthen national capacity to enforce legislative measures. It is aimed at increasing public awareness and social mobilisation against the worst forms of child labour.

## Childline South Africa

Childline offers a 24-hour toll-free crisis line (08000 55 555) to children and families across South Africa. The line provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information.

Childline is an NPO that works collectively to protect children from all forms of violence and

A survey done by the Department of Public Service and Administration showed that at the end of 2012, the public service, with 39 government departments, employed 5 127 people with disabilities. This represented 0,38% of a total workforce of 1 340 410 employees.

A total of 2 106 (or 41,07%) out the 5 127 were female, while 82 people with disabilities were employed at senior management services levels, and a further 206 were in middle management.

In 2000, government set a target of 2% representation of people with disabilities employed by the public service.

create a culture of respect for children's rights in South Africa.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- a crisis line
- child rights and education
- training of volunteers
- training of other professionals who work with child protection and children
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families
- court preparation of child witnesses
- networking and coordination
- advocacy.

Programmes delivered through the national office are:

- training and education
- analysis of law and policy
- lobbying and advocacy
- networking and coordination.

## People with disabilities

South Africa acknowledges the importance of international cooperation in support of national efforts towards the implementation of the UN Convention on the Rights of People with Disabilities (UNCRPD) and its optional protocol to improve the living conditions of people with disabilities in every state, particularly in developing countries.

South Africa has acceded to, or ratified, most of the African regional and international human-rights instruments in the area of economic, social, cultural, civil and political rights. The Constitution requires that particular attention be given to relevant international laws and comparable international standards and experiences.

The Department of Social Development aligned its policy on disability with the UNCRPD in 2007, which enables the department to ensure that the rights of people with disabilities are fully protected and promoted.

There is increased self-representation of people with disabilities in Parliament, provincial legislatures and in local government. There is a deputy minister with a disability and 17 members of Parliament with disabilities. In the Constitutional Court, there is a judge with a disability.

People with disabilities are also represented in institutions such as the Human Rights Commission, the Commission on Gender Equality and Nyda. Government departments and provinces are setting up disability policies and targets for mainstreaming service delivery to people with disabilities.

South Africa has also made strides in improving access to health and social services for people with disabilities. The free healthcare policy for people with disabilities includes the provision of assistive devices.

Welfare services are also being streamlined to reach people with disabilities wherever they are through home-based care, rehabilitation and family-support programmes.

Skills development and employment opportunities for people with disabilities are also priorities.

The target is for at least 4% of skills development expenditure to be used to train people with disabilities, and that 2% of the workforce in the public and private sector should be people with disabilities.

In line with its mandate of mainstreaming and oversight, the Department for Women, Children and People with Disabilities ensures that each government department commits to clear milestones towards the attainment of 2% employment equity for people with disabilities and be held accountable for this target.

Casual Day, South Africa's annual fund raising project for people with disabilities, raised a record amount of R22 million during the 2012 campaign, a 10% improvement on the previous year.

Casual Day is the flagship project of the National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities (NCPPDSA), an NPO mandated to improve education, inclusivity, accessibility and social integration for persons with disabilities.

Casual Day is the lifeblood of its national beneficiaries that include Epilepsy SA, SA Federation for Mental Health, Deaf Federation SA, SA National Council for the Blind and Disabled People SA, each of which also participate in raising funds from sticker donations, and sales of caps and shirts.

Casual Day 2013 takes place as usual on the first Friday of September, in continued partnership with the six main beneficiaries and 300 participating organisations dedicated to advancing the rights of and rendering services for persons with disabilities.

The IDC, in partnership with the Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities, through its Transformation and Entrepreneur Scheme, committed over R200 million towards the women empowerment fund and R50 million for people with disabilities.

Government also encourages the private sector to continue employing people with disabilities, using the skills development programmes available in the country to invest in training people with disabilities.

Transport remains a major barrier limiting participation of people with disabilities in social, educational and economic activities.

The Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities and the Department of Transport are working together to ensure that the public-transport strategy and initiatives respond to the transport needs of people with disabilities and integrate disability considerations.

The department also focuses on improving access to education for learners with disabilities through the promotion of the inclusive-education policy. Government is promoting integration of children with special needs into mainstream schools while acknowledging that children with severe disabilities still need special schools.

Government is auditing the status of all special schools to inform appropriate interventions to enhance the learning environment for children in these schools.

## Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind, and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa.

Blind SA's main focus is to improve the quality of life of all South Africa's visually impaired people by empowering them through education. Its objectives are to:

- protect and promote the interest of people with visual impairment
- enable all visually impaired to reach their optimal potential through independence development
- care for and protect the rights of those who due to circumstances beyond their control are unable to do so themselves.

Orientation, mobility and skills development to blind and newly blinded people is an important aspect of the work undertaken by Blind SA. The organisation provides, among others, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training – writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

## The South African Braille Authority

The South African Braille Authority (Saba) was established in May 2012 as an NGO. Its purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa. These standards relate to development and maintenance of Braille codes; production of quality Braille; the teaching of, access to and promotion of Braille; Braille examinations; and many other Braille-related matters.

Through Saba, South Africa is a member country of the International Council on English Braille (ICEB). ICEB membership enables South Africa to stay abreast of and participate

in international Braille-related matters. Many individuals belonging to Saba constituencies play important roles in ICEB structures.

## The South African National Council for the Blind

The South African National Council for the Blind is the coordinating body for over 100 member organisations throughout South Africa. These organisations span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted people.

The South African National Council for the Blind comprises four core business areas, namely Social Development, the Bureau for the Prevention of Blindness, Education and lastly fund raising and public relations. These divisions run efficiently with the help of Finance, Administration and Logistics and Governance and Project Services. To combat as much as 80% of avoidable blindness, the council regularly undertake tours with its mobile eye care clinics to rural areas for eye screening, referrals and to perform cataract removal operations.

The South African National Council for the Blind provides entrepreneurial training, adult basic education and training, and facilitates skills training such as computer literacy and call centre programmes through its Optima College.

## Support for the deaf

South Africa's national organisation for the deaf is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA), formerly the South African National Council for the Deaf, which was established in 1929. DeafSA has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa.

Two other national organisations for the deaf are Deafblind South Africa and SHHH South Africa, the South African organisation for the hard of hearing.

An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use South African Sign Language. As sign language has grown in South Africa – particularly baby sign language – an NPO, Sign Language Education and Development, has been formed to promote sign language. Signing with hearing babies and children is being promoted through the Signsational Kids website.

South Africa has a long-established deaf education system. Statistics indicate that there are more than 40 schools for the deaf in South Africa. They include:

- De la Bat School (run by the Institute for the Deaf)
- Fulton School for the Deaf
- Kutlwanong School for the Deaf (Rustenburg)
- Kwa Thintwa School for Hearing Impaired
- St Vincent's School for the Deaf (Johannesburg)
- Vuleka School for the Blind and Deaf

The Institute for the Deaf, Worcester operates Deaf College South Africa, which trains deaf people for jobs. In addition, the Bible College for the Deaf in Gauteng trains people to work in deaf ministry.

The University of the Witswatersrand in Johannesburg has a Centre for Deaf Studies. The centre offers programmes in deaf education and focuses on teaching, research and community service.

Among other services, the National Institute for the Deaf provides services for multiple disabled deaf, runs two deaf churches and provides audiological and mental health services.

A Deaf Child Centre at the Department of Paediatrics and Child Health, University of Cape Town, provides preschool education and community services. This centre also focuses on deafness research.

The Carel du Toit Centre, based in Cape Town, provides early childhood auditory-oral education. In addition to providing auditory education services, the centre also engages in community outreaches, helping families with hearing-related needs and more practical needs such as food.

A similar centre is the Eduplex in Pretoria. The Eduplex provides auditory-oral preschool and primary school educational services, teaching hearing and deaf together. Plus, the Eduplex provides training to prospective teachers, audiologists and therapists.

## Older people

The growth of the ageing population in South Africa has followed global trends. It is projected that the country's population of older people will exceed 8% by 2014. Within the framework of the Constitution, the Older Persons Act, 2006 is intended to ensure that the rights, dignity and independence of older people are upheld.

Replacing the Aged Persons Act, 1967 (Act 81 of 1967), the Older Persons Act, 2006 deals with the plight of older people by establishing a framework for the empowerment and protection of older people and the promotion and maintenance of their status, rights, well-being, safety and security. It provides for older people to enjoy quality services while staying with their families for as long as possible.

Chapter 3 of the Act deals specifically with the development of community-based care and support programmes. These fall into two broad categories, namely prevention and promotion. This ensures the independent living of older people in the community; and home-based care, which ensures that frail older people receive maximum care within the community through a comprehensive set of integrated services.

The Act further recognises the wisdom and experience of older people and the need to protect their knowledge and skills; and promotes their active role and participation in community affairs. To improve services for senior citizens, the department completed an audit of 58 high-risk residential facilities for older people in the Western Cape, Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal.

In October 2011, the department supported a successful Older Persons Forum conference, which resolved, among other things, to establish provincial and local structures to promote participation by members in all matters that affect them.

To celebrate the annual International Day of Older Persons on 1 October, President Jacob Zuma hosted a number of the country's older citizens, as well as dignitaries such as the Minister for Social Development, Ms Bathabile Dlamini and her deputy, Ms Maria Ntuli, at the Sefako Makgatho Presidential Guest House in Pretoria.

The President made use of the opportunity to encourage society to reflect on the contribution of older people to society in general and to galvanise communities to provide care and support to elderly people in need of care. International Day of Older Persons was designated on 14 December 1990 by the United Nations General Assembly.

## Training and skills development

### Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The Department of Social Development set aside R256 million in 2012/13 for a scholarship programme to train more social workers. The department committed to train 10 000 child- and youth-care workers in the next three years in collaboration with the National Association of Child Care Workers. The intention behind this initiative is to reach out to as many child-headed households as possible.

The Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers addresses the needs of social workers in the public and private sectors. It includes the following key components:

- increasing human resources by recruiting and retaining social workers
- promoting the education, training and development of social workers
- improving the quality of social-work services
- strengthening governance structures within the social-service professions
- promoting occupational safety standards within the workplace
- improving service conditions for social workers
- marketing and promoting social-work services and programmes.

The implementation of the strategy remains vital to the realisation of the goals of the Department of Social Development.

To this end, the department is implementing the Occupation-Specific Dispensation for Various Categories of Social Worker in the Public Service. This will create better remuneration packages.

### Professionalising community development

The Council for Social Service Professions was established in terms of the Social Service Professions Act, 1978.

The key functions are:

- protecting and promoting the interests of the professions, in respect of which professional boards have been or are to be established and to deal with any matter relating to such interests
- advising the Minister on matters affecting the professions in respect of which professional boards have been established
- controlling and exercising authority regarding all financial matters relating to the council and the professional boards
- assisting in the promotion of social services.

### Social work scholarships

As part of its efforts to develop skills and empower the youth, the Department of Social Development invited Grade 12 learners to apply for social-work scholarships. In 2011, the department had 4 735 students in its programme at various institutions of higher learning.

While recruiting, preference is given to deserving learners in rural areas, including those from child-headed households, those living in places of safety, dependants of war veterans and learners in no-fee schools

## Conclusion

Government and its social partners are committed to identify and respond to community needs, to act together by mobilising all sectors of society to respond to social ills, and to let go of outdated values and paradigms. This will open the way for the Department of Social Development to chart a new development path in partnership with those who strive to ensure a better life for all.

Looking to the future, the department will continue to focus on expanding its social protection measures to save lives and reduce levels of deprivation through community development, welfare services and social grants.

Social grants play a vital role in improving access to food in households that are most likely to experience hunger. The social assistance system now supports 15,3 million South Africans, and continues to be the largest budget responsibility of the department.

The department will also continue to support social security reform proposals aimed at introducing a mandatory pillar of social insurance to provide for retirement, disability and survivor benefits, especially for children and widows left in destitution.

Additional efforts will focus on youth development through leadership camps, skills development, bursary programmes, and the profiling of child-support grant primary caregivers. This will facilitate the potential entry of economically active youths into the labour market.

To prevent people from falling into deeper poverty and reduce their vulnerability to poverty, the Department of Social Development will also focus on anti-substance abuse campaigns aimed at prevention by educating the public on the dangers of abusing substances.

Introducing policy reforms that will bring coherence to government's approach to alcohol and illicit drugs will constitute part of government's long-term strategy for dealing with the scourge of substance abuse. This will go a long way towards reducing social ills and crime expressed in the form of domestic abuse and violence, especially against children, women, people with disabilities and older people.

## Acknowledgements

*Annual Report 2011/12*, The Department of Social Development
*Annual Report 2011/12*, The Presidency
*Annual Report 2011/12*, The South African Social Security Agency
*Department of Social Development Strategic Plan 2010 – 2015*
*Estimates of National Expenditure 2012*, published by National Treasury
National Development Agency
State of the Nation Address 2013

*www.childline.org.za*
*www.dsd.gov.za*
*www.info.gov.za*
*www.polity.org.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sapa.org.za*
*www.sassa.gov.za*
*www.thegremlin.co.za*

## Suggested reading

Daniel, J, Naidoo, P, Pillay, D & Southall, R (eds). 2011. *New South Africa Review 2: New Paths, Old Compromises.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Hansen, TB. 2012. *Melancholia of Freedom: Social Life in an Indian Township in South Africa.* Princeton: Princeton University Press.
Holtzhausen, L and Gxubane, T 2012. *Criminal Justice Social Work: A South African Practice Framework.* Claremont: Juta.
Meskell, L. 2012. *The Nature of Heritage: The New South Africa.* Walden, MA: Wiley-Balckwell.
Mwaniki, M. 2012. *Multilingualism and the Public Sector in South Africa.* Bloemfontein: Sun Press.
Scheub, H. 2010. *The Uncoiling Python: South African Storytellers and Resistance.* Athens: Ohio University Press.
*Rising from the Ashes: Practical Explorations in Rehabilitation and Social Re-Integration in the Prisons of Zululand.* 2012. Pinelands: Criminal Justice Initiative of Open Society Foundation for South Africa.
Stoffberg, H, Hindes, C and Muller, L (comp). 2012. *South African Landscape Architecture: A Compendium.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Swart, I *et al.* 2010. *Religion and Social Development in Post-Apartheid South Africa: Perspectives for Critical Engagement.* Stellenbosch: SUN Press.
Swartz, S. 2010. *iKazi: The Moral Ecology of South Africa's Township Youth.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Visser, M & Moleko, AG. 2012. *Community Psychology in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.

073
RICA
ERKE

# Sport and Recreation

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) is the national department responsible for sport in the country. Aligned with its vision of an active and winning nation, its primary focuses are on providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; managing the regulatory framework; and providing funding for different codes of sport.

The right to play and to participate in sport has been embodied in United Nations (UN) instruments such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Convention on the Elimination of all forms of Discrimination Against Women. It is recognised as a right, which all governments should make available to their people.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

In line with these constitutional imperatives, the SRSA has been assigned the powers and functions to develop and implement national policies and programmes regarding sport and recreation in the country.

The SRSA aims to maximise access, development and excellence at all levels of participation in sport and recreation to improve social cohesion, nation-building and the quality of life of all South Africans.

The SRSA's goals include:

- leading the process of sport transformation, asset development and equity in sport and recreation
- ensuring that school sport is offered in all schools in South Africa
- ensuring that institutional mechanisms are in place that provide equal access at all levels of participation in sport and recreation
- contributing to social cohesion and employment opportunities through mass mobilisation in sport and recreation
- contributing to a healthy lifestyle through the provision of recreation programmes
- instituting a funding model to enable the effective implementation of sport and recreation programmes
- ensuring that high-performance systems are in place that will enable more athletes, coaches, technical officials and adminis-

Nkululeko Apleni represented South Africa at the Japanese Shotokan Karate World Championships in Mexico City in July 2012. He was crowned the Karate World Champion, brought home a silver medal and was ranked second best karateka in the world.

trators to reach national and international standards that will contribute to an improvement in South Africa's international rankings
- improving governance and the delivery of sport and recreation by means of effective and efficient administrative support systems and adequate resources
- supporting a well-governed sports community through the development of national policies and guidelines for sport and recreation in the country
- using the potential of sport and recreation to achieve government priorities through cooperation with identified international, national, provincial and local government departments.

## Legislation and policies

In terms of the National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 18 of 2007), the Minister of Sport and Recreation has the legislative powers to oversee the development and management of sport and recreation in South Africa.

The main responsibility of SRSA is to develop national policies and guidelines for sport and recreation in the country.

The key implementers are provinces and municipalities as well as the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc), sports federations, and other agencies.

In addition to the above, cognisance must also be taken of the fact that SRSA embarked on a legislative process to amend its primary Act, namely the National Sport and Recreation Act, 1998 (Act 110 of 1998 as amended) extensively. It is foreseen that the amendment Act will be promulgated during 2013/14.

The Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act 2010 (Act 2 of 2010), was drafted as a result of the Ellis Park Soccer tragedy and the subsequent findings of the Ngoepe Commission of Enquiry. The *White Paper on Sport and Recreation* was amended in 2011.

Two public entities are administered and controlled by the department.

Boxing South Africa was established in terms of the South African Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001).

The South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), which was established in terms of the SAIDS Act, 1997 (Act 14 of 1997) as amended, are controlled and administered by the department.

The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 29 of 1999), guides all financial activities of SRSA. The Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), regulates the conduct of business in the public service.

In 2012/13, the department planned to table the following Bills:
- The South African Boxing Repeal Bill, which provides, among other things, for:
  - dissolving the Boxing Commission
  - repealing the South African Boxing Act, 2001
  - ensuring that its assets and liabilities as well as staff are transferred to Boxing South Africa in its transformed capacity as an association not-for-gain in terms of the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008).
- The South African Combat Sport Bill, which provides, among other things, for:
  - the regulation, control and general supervision of combat sport in South Africa
  - the effective and efficient administration of combat sport in the country
  - the recognition of both amateur and professional combat sport
  - the outlawing of dangerous combat sport
  - building synergy between professional and amateur combat sport to ensure the effective and efficient administration of combat sport in the country.
- The Fitness Industry Bill, which provides, among other things, for:
  - the accreditation of fitness establishments
  - the registration of fitness professionals.

## Budget and funding

The department's total budget allocation for 2012/13 was R848,4 million, an increase of R45,7 million from 2011/12.

R525 million was allocated to the Mass Participation Programme, which made up 62% of the total budget.

The school-sport budget within the SRSA increased from R27,3 million in 2011/12 to R42,6 million.

The Sport Support Services Programme increased by R25 million; from R162 million to R187,3 million.

The budget of the International Liaison directorate saw a decrease of R26,6 million, mainly owing to the adjustment budget received in 2011/12 for value-added tax refunds on 2010 FIFA World Cup™ tickets.

Compensation of employees was slightly above the inflation increase, mainly due to additional staff in the school-sport component.

The budget increased from R79,9 million in 2011/12 to R91,9 million in 2012/13.

In 2012/13, the department set aside R470 million to the Mass Participation Programme conditional grant, which was allocated as follows:

- R211 million to school-sport programmes (45% of the grant)
- club development and community hubs received R106 million, respectively, at 23% each.

The remaining budget was allocated for compensation of employees in provinces working on the Mass Participation Programme projects and district academies of sport.

*The Guinness Book of World Records* has recognised South Africa's famous ultra-marathon, the Comrades, as the event with "the most runners in an ultra-marathon".

In 2012, 19 524 runners had entered the race, made up of 15 176 men and 4 348 women.

In November 2012, South Africa's Comrades Marathon Association received a special award at the 30th anniversary gala of the Association of International Marathons and Distance Races in Athens, Greece. The Comrades Marathon was honoured for being the oldest marathon and ultra-marathon on the African continent.

In 2012/13, the SRSA committed to dedicating all its resources in support of the National Sport and Recreation Plan (NSRP) to ensure the development of athletes from talent identification to the elite levels. For this purpose, starting in 2012, funding to national federations was divided into two tiers: guaranteed and conditional, with the conditional funding being outcome-based. This forms part of a four-year funding drive to reach the goals of Vision 2020.

## Role players

### South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc)

Sascoc is the controlling body for all high-performance sport in South Africa.

The SRSA and Sascoc cooperate closely on issues of mutual importance, and the SRSA also provides funding to Sascoc, for instance in the preparation of elite athletes for international events.

It is the national coordinating macro-body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa, including team presentation, and must consult with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

Sascoc represents Team South Africa for all multicoded sport participating in international games, such as the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games and All-Africa Games.

In November 2011, Sascoc and the SRSA launched a coaching framework initiative as a development scheme set to strengthen the country's sport programmes by educating and training coaches, and creating structures to improve coaching. As a result athletes will receive world-class mentorship, while sports officials and administrators will also benefit.

### South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS)

The SAIDS is the national anti-doping organisation, funded by SRSA. Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance, in the interest

South African heavy-vehicle drivers scooped five awards at the 28th World Professional Drivers' Championships held near Rustenburg in August 2012. Vishnu Naidoo came first in the rigid category, Simon Motsepe was first in the bus category, while Lettah Mokhutswane, one of only two female entrants, came third in this category. In the group category, Team South Africa received four awards.

of the health and well-being of sportspeople.

The SAIDS is responsible for developing anti-doping policy and implementing a national anti-doping programme across all South Africa's sporting codes.

The SAIDS is certified in terms of the International Organisation for Standardisation 9001:2000 standards in compliance with the International Standard for Testing. This is the internationally recognised benchmark for quality assurance and excellence, and represents world best-practice in doping control in sport.

The SAIDS' key focus areas are:

- Doping control: The institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme on South African athletes competing at regional, national and international levels. The SAIDS also conducts in- and out-of-competition doping controls on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations.
- Education: The SAIDS provides education, information and awareness for all its target groups, namely athletes; coaches; parents; sports organisations; members of the medical, pharmaceutical and sports-science professions; tertiary-education institutions; and the public. Information on national and international anti-doping issues can be accessed at *www.drugfreesport.org.za*.
- Research: The SAIDS conducts sociological research into the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective doping-control and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. The SAIDS collaborates closely with counterparts worldwide to achieve international harmonisation and the improvement of standards and practices in doping control. South Africa is a member of the International Anti-Doping Arrangement and of the Executive Committee of the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations.

## Boxing South Africa

Boxing South Africa's intention is to ensure effective and efficient administration of professional boxing in South Africa; to create synergy between professional and amateur boxing and to promote interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters, trainers and officials and Boxing South Africa.

It also considers applications for licences from all stakeholders in professional boxing. It sanctions fights; implements the relevant regulations; and trains boxers, promoters, ring officials, managers and trainers.

## World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to coordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa.

This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

South Africa continues to serve as the African representative on the Executive Committee of WADA.

## National sport federations

The various sporting codes in South Africa are governed by their own federations and associations. These include:

- Aero Club of South Africa
- AFL South Africa
- Amateur Fencing Association of Southern Africa
- Anglers and Casting Federation of Southern Africa

- Archery South Africa
- Athletics South Africa
- Badminton South Africa
- Baseball Union of Southern Africa
- Basketball South Africa
- Bowls South Africa
- Boxing South Africa
- Bridge Federation of Southern Africa
- Canoeing South Africa
- Chess South Africa
- Clay Target Shooting Association of South Africa
- Confederation of Cue Sport South Africa
- Cricket South Africa
- Cycling South Africa
- Dance Sport Federation of Sport South Africa
- Darts South Africa
- Deaf Sports Federation of Southern Africa
- Federation Bocce
- Fitness Sport Aerobics Federation of Southern Africa
- Handball Federation of Southern Africa
- South African Sports Association for the Intellectually Impaired
- Judo South Africa
- Jukskei South Africa
- Karate South Africa
- Korfball Federation of South Africa
- Lifesaving South Africa
- Majorette and Cheerleading Association South Africa
- Martial Arts and Games Committee of South Africa
- Masters Sports Association of Southern Africa
- Mind Sports South Africa

In January 2012, at the age of 19, Nzuzo Mnikathi became the youngest black man to ever reach the South Pole. Mnikathi travelled the 111 km on skis in six-and-a-half days as part of the Unlimited Child South Pole Expedition that aimed to raise awareness of the need for early childhood education in South Africa.

Unlimited Child runs crèches for underprivileged children in the Valley of a Thousand Hills near Durban in KwaZulu-Natal. The organisation was looking for an ambassador for their projects' underprivileged children.

- Modern Pentathlon Association of South Africa
- Motorsport South Africa
- National Amateur Bodybuilding Association of South Africa
- National Horseracing Authority
- National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa
- National Boxing Organisation of Southern Africa
- Netball South Africa
- Orienteering Federation of Southern Africa
- Parachute Association of South Africa
- Physically Disabled Association
- Powerlifting Federation of South Africa
- Powerboat South Africa
- Ringball South Africa
- Roller Sport South Africa
- Rowing South Africa
- Sascoc
- Scrabble South Africa
- Sheep Shearing Federation of Southern Africa
- Shooting Sport Federation of South Africa
- Snooker and Billiards South Africa
- Snow Sports South Africa
- Squash South Africa
- Soaring Society of South Africa
- Softball South Africa
- South African Amateur Fencing Association
- South African Bodyboarding Association
- South African Deep Sea Angling Association
- South African Figure Skating Association
- South African Fly Fishing Association
- South African Football Association
- South African Gold Panning Association
- South African Golf Association
- South African Gymnastics Federation
- South African Hang Gliding and Paragliding Association
- South African Hockey
- South African Ice Hockey Association
- South African National Archery Association
- South African National Equestrian Federation
- South African Polo Association
- South African Practical Shooting Association
- South African Rugby Union

The Top School League initiative was launched in March 2012, along with the Magnificent Wednesdays Project. The latter involved the expectation that learners in all the schools in South Africa would practise a sport every Wednesday in preparation for competing in the national sport leagues.

- South African Sailing
- South African Shore Angling Association
- South African Tennis Association
- South African Underwater Sports Federation
- Surfing South Africa
- Swimming South Africa
- Table Tennis Board of Southern Africa
- Taekwondo Federation of South Africa
- Tenniquoits Board of South Africa
- Tenpin Bowling Association of South Africa
- Transplant Sports Association of South Africa
- Triathlon South Africa
- Tug of War Federation of South Africa
- University Sport South Africa
- Volleyball South Africa
- Water Ski Federation of Southern Africa
- Weightlifting Federation of Southern Africa
- Wrestling South Africa
- Wushu Federation of Southern Africa

## Programmes and projects

The SRSA continued to play a critical role in fostering social cohesion, nation-building and bridging aberrations in gender, geography, race and religion.

This work contributed towards transformation and also job creation, social development, health, crime prevention, rural development, economic growth and tourism.

The department rendered services to the sports sector through its line function programmes, namely Sport Support Services, Mass Participation, International Liaison and Events and Facilities. Financial support was provided to 50 national federations, two non-governmental organisations (LoveLife and Sascoc) and two public entities.

The aim of this key service was to stimulate the development, promotion and management of sport and recreation in South Africa.

Furthermore, sports equipment was provided to 41 clubs, 77 coaches were trained in basic sport science and medicine, 18 gymnasium instructors were trained as fitness instructors and 1 461 sub-elite athletes received scientific and medical support.

The department involved 28 008 participants who took part in sports projects such as the Indigenous Games, Golden Games, Outreach Projects and Magnificent Fridays.

Sport and indigenous games equipment were provided to various communities.

Toolkits on sport for development were made available and training on the toolkit was conducted for more than 100 hub coordinators and volunteers countrywide.

### National Sport and Recreation Plan (NSRP)

The NSRP was adopted at the National Sport and Recreation Indaba in November 2011. It is the product of a structured process of more than 10 months of consultation and robust debates with a diverse and representative sport and recreation stakeholders.

The NSRP seeks to reposition the department's functional efficiencies, accelerate service delivery, enhance organisational excellence and inject new performance energy; while capitalising on the renewed commitment by all stakeholders in sport and recreation to transform and improve sport and recreation.

Furthermore, it provides the basis for the SRSA's 20-year strategy to reposition South Africa to use sport and recreation as catalysts for socio-economic transformation.

The NSRP is an eight-year sustainable implementation plan for the sport and recreation policy framework as captured in the *White Paper on Sport and Recreation.*

While it is envisaged that the White Paper will remain relevant until 2019, the NSRP will be closely monitored annually to identify any hindrances that may impact negatively on implementation and will be reviewed in its totality in 2020.

It is important to note that the NSRP was further adopted by Cabinet as an integral part

of the Programme of Government and was being costed in 2013 to ensure its successful implementation.

Once costed and implemented, the NSRP will give South Africa a clear indication on how many jobs it will create to fight unemployment and poverty.

## School Sport Programme

The South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), guarantees all learners' access to physical education and sport programmes.

To this end, the SRSA and the Department of Basic Education signed a Memorandum of Understanding for the delivery of physical education and sport programmes in all the country's schools through the School Sport Programme. This programme is the bedrock of the department's development strategy and the cornerstone of the NSRP.

Its aim is to ensure that all learners in South Africa are provided access to an organised and structured system of sport that offers opportunity for mass participation, talent support and high performance.

The programme also seeks to increase access to school sport, increase the country's athlete base, improve the talent pool and South Africa's performance in international sports.

The programme is underpinned by physical education, top school leagues and the Youth Olympics.

In February 2012, the Department of Sport and Recreation launched a National Sports Volunteer Corps (NSVC) to recruit, recognise and use the experience, expertise, passion for sport and the goodwill of some of the country's national sporting legends. These legends will be used as coaches, talent identifiers, technical officials, sport administrators and sport and recreation facility managers.

In May 2012, the SRSA and the National Distribution Agency on Sport and Recreation were expected to finalise an allocation of R200 million towards the School Sport Programme.

In 2012, the SRSA planned on integrating 16 sporting codes and indigenous games into the school sport system.

## *I Play Fair – Say NO! to Doping* Campaign

In 2011, SAIDS launched the *I Play Fair – Say NO! to Doping* Campaign to spread the message of ethics, fairplay and anti-doping in sport. SRSA supports the campaign.

The campaign, targeting professional and amateur athletes across the country, provides education about banned substances and runs actual doping tests. SAIDS' latest statistics show that there has been more than a 100% increase in positive tests for doping over the last two years.

The number jumped from 19 in 2009/10 to 50 in 2011. More than 2 000 athletes were tested each year.

In August 2011, SAIDS announced a new mobisite and an innovative iPhone application, which brings people the most up-to-date drug information. It is aimed at ensuring the country's athletes avoid using banned substances unwittingly. Athletes can download the application free and get quick access to the list of banned and permitted substances in sport.

The campaign was kickstarted at the 2012 Cape Argus Cycle Tour, with the Minister of Sport and Recreation, Mr Fikile Mbalula, leading an *I Play Fair* celebrity cycling team.

The team also participated in other mass sport events such as the 94.7 Cycle Challenge and the SpecSavers Ironman, to give the campaign's message prominence. Minister Mbalula also declared 18 June as *I Play Fair* Day.

In 2011/12, the SAIDS' efforts to keep sport clean included 2 348 urine samples, 59 blood tests and 62 erythropoietin or EPO tests.

In April 2013, the *I Play Fair – Say NO! to Doping* Campaign for the South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), won a gold PRISM award in the public sector category.

SAIDS' *I Play Fair* education and awareness campaign around drug-free sport has catapulted doping issues into the mainstream and has raised the awareness and profile around doping and drugs in sport.

South Africa became the first African country to host the Basketball Without Borders NBA Programme in August 2012, providing many young players with an opportunity to participate in the sport for the first time. The programme promoted basketball while also searching for talent in Africa and giving young Africans the opportunity to meet some of their favourite players.

### International Rugby Board (IRB) Keep Rugby Clean Campaign

The International Rugby Board is committed to keeping the game of rugby free of doping.

This commitment includes a rigorous testing programme combined with an extensive anti-doping education and awareness campaign.

Keep Rugby Clean has appointed several international players to join the fight against doping. Among them are South African Sevens star, Cecil Afrika and Springbok, Bryan Habana.

As role models these dedicated individuals let their natural abilities shine on the field and along with the IRB hope to raise the profile of anti-doping within the rugby community so future generations can continue to enjoy the game in a doping-free environment.

The IRB undertook 1 542 in- and out-of-competition controls across IRB tournaments and events in 2012, including the HSBC Sevens World Series, Rugby World Cup 2015 qualifiers, men's and women's tests and age-grade rugby.

The programme saw 21 anti-doping cases, equating to 1,36% of the IRB's entire programme.

While 2012 rugby figures published by WADA are still pending, 2011 saw more than 6 000 tests undertaken in rugby worldwide by national anti-doping agencies, unions and the IRB combined with 53 violations.

The IRB also remains committed to blood testing across its portfolio of events and has conducted 482 tests since its debut at the Rugby World Cup 2007 in France.

The IRB also focused on increased educational programmes in 2012, including the delivery of *Keep Rugby Clean* awareness campaigns at IRB age-grade and Sevens events to more than 1 000 players during the year.

### *ThinkSport Journal* Project

The *ThinkSport Journal* of the SRSA was launched in November 2012.

The journal is a structured response to the instruction by the National Sport and Recreation Indaba to continue the intellectual debates and discussions about issues affecting sport and recreation.

It also provides an opportunity for continued positive intellectual dialogue on the course of transformation of sport and recreation in South Africa.

### *Little Green Book* Project

In November 2012, the SRDSA launched the *Little Green Book*. This project is the department's contribution to recognise the country's prominent sportspeople who have contributed immensely in profiling sport inside and outside South Africa.

It will contain names and categories of those South African sportspersons who are recognised by millions of South African people as people of honour in society who are active in different aspects of sport activism, both in South Africa and globally.

## Major events

### Olympic Games

South Africa finished the 2012 London Olympic Games as Africa's best performing country, placed 24th on the medals table.

With three golds, two silvers and one bronze medal, the London Olympics, held in July and August 2012, were South Africa's most successful Games since the country was readmitted to the Olympic fold at the 1992 Barcelona Olympics.

Government, together with the National Distribution Agency for Sport and Recreation and the business sector, invested around R31 million in the preparations for the success of Team South Africa. Among the great performances of the 2012 Olympic Games was Chad le Clos'

victory in the 200-m butterfly. He came from behind to beat Michael Phelps, the winner of the most Olympic gold medals in history in his signature event – and in which he has been unbeaten for a decade.

Le Clos later added a silver medal in the 100-m butterfly and went on to be named the South African Sports Star of the Year in November 2012.

South Africa had managed just a single silver medal at the 2008 Olympics in Beijing, but 2012 was a far better year for the country.

Cameron van der Burgh set the ball rolling with some wonderful performances in the 100-m breaststroke.

He was the only swimmer to go under 59 seconds in the semi-finals, setting an Olympic record of 58,83 seconds in doing so.

In the final, Van der Burgh raised the bar even higher, winning convincingly in a world record time of 58,46 seconds.

South Africa's third gold medal was every bit as unexpected as the one won by Le Clos.

The men's lightweight fours rowing team of Matthew Brittain, Lawrence Ndlovu, John Smith and James Thompson raced to a stunning victory at Eton Dornay after being in fourth place at the three-quarter mark, with 500 m to go. This was a first ever rowing gold for Africa at the Olympics.

The team's performance later earned them the World Rowing Male Crew of the Year Award at the World Rowing Awards.

They were also named Team of the Year at the South African Sports Awards.

Caster Semenya rediscovered her form in time to make an assault on the Olympic 800-m title. She finished in the silver medal position with a finishing time of 1:57.23, her fastest of the season.

Bridgitte Hartley won South Africa's only bronze medal in the women's K1 500-m canoe sprint. She came from fifth at the halfway mark – almost one and a half seconds behind the leader – to claim a podium place.

It was the first sprint canoe medal for the country in 18 Olympic Games.

## Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games London 2012 followed the close of the Olympic Games in August and September 2012.

South Africa's Paralympians won 29 medals – eight gold, 12 silver and nine bronze.

The standards in London were hugely improved since Beijing in 2008, with 251 world records being broken in only 11 days.

Natalie du Toit brought the curtain down on her career by winning three gold medals and one silver to take her career total for the Paralympics to 13 gold and two silver medals.

Charl Bouwer also showed his speed in the pool, winning the men's T13 50-m freestyle gold.

In athletics, Oscar Pistorious stormed to victory in the men's T43/44 400 m; Fanie van der Merwe won the T37 100 m gold; South Africa's T42/46 relay team set a world record in capturing gold; and Ilse Hayes won the women's T13 long jump.

## Africa Cup of Nations (Afcon) 2013

South Africa has once more proved that it is a destination of choice for major sporting events after hosting a successful Afcon 2013, held from 19 January to 10 February 2013.

The three-week tournament concluded at Johannesburg's National Stadium, with Nigeria being crowned champions of Africa for a third time after beating their West African neighbours Burkina Faso 1-0 in the final.

## All-Africa Games

The 10th All-Africa Games took place in September in Maputo, Mozambique, which featured 20 sporting disciplines in which 53 countries took part.

South Africa claimed first position and 16 medals – five gold, six silver and five bronze – at the 2012 World Gold Panning Championships at Pilgrim's Rest in October. Gold medals went to Bianca Brower, Morele Keabetswe, The Tigers three-person team, Albie Nyschen and Mia Mason. South Africa is the youngest member of the World Gold Panning Association's 20 members.

Disabled events also featured in swimming and athletics.

Team South Africa finished first on the medals table, with 62 gold medals, 55 silver and 40 bronze, totalling 157 medals.

The next All-Africa Games will be held in 2015 in Brazzaville in the Republic of the Congo.

## South African Sports Awards

The SRSA and Sascoc created the South African Sports Awards to honour the country's sports stars in local and international sports events.

In 2012, swimming star Chad le Clos was crowned the Sport Star of the Year. He was named Newcomer of the Year in 2011. As Sports Star of the Year Le Clos won R1 million and a new BMW.

Cricketer Vernon Philander, after a sensational start to his test career, in which he became the second fastest player to 50 wickets ever, won the Sportsman of the Year trophy.

The Sportswoman of the year award went to Caster Semenya, who won a silver medal in the 800 m at the London Olympic Games.

The Team of the Year went to the Olympic gold medal winning men's coxless lightweight fours combination of Sizwe Ndlovu, Matthew Brittain, John Smith and James Thompson for their stirring victory at Eton Dornay. Their win at the Olympics was the first rowing gold for Africa in the history of the Games.

Rowing won two further awards as Rowing South Africa president Wimpie du Plessis was named Administrator of the Year and the sport was named Federation of the Year.

The Coach of the Year award went to Joseph Mkhonza, who led Banyana Banyana to a place at the Olympics for the first time ever. Places at the Olympic Games were open to only two African teams.

Paralympic great Natalie du Toit, who retired after the London Paralympics, where she was South Africa's leading medal winner, was named Sportswoman of the Year with Disability.

Oscar Pistorius, who competed at both the Paralympic and Olympics, where he made the semi-finals of the 400 m, was named Sportsman of the Year with a Disability.

The Newcomer of the Year Award went to Western Province and Stormers' flanker, Siya Kolisi.

Former Springbok legend, Joost van der Westhuizen was one of six recipients honoured with the Steve Tshwete Lifetime Achievement Award at the South African Sports Awards in Sandton.

The other honourees were: Petrus Molemela (life president of Bloemfontein Celtic soccer club); the late Sewsunker "Papwa" Sewgolum (golf); sports administrator Sam Ramsamy; Petrus "White Hair" Molemela (football); and Sally Little (golf).

## National Indigenous Games

The 2012 National Indigenous Games Festival, which is organised annually by the SRSA, took place at the Tshwane Events Centre from 23 to 25 March 2012. Eight of the nine provinces participated in all the codes.

SRSA will focus on formalising structures and profiling the games to become a brand of its own and as competitive as other mainstream sports.

The games played included *khokho, intonga, ncuva, morabaraba, diketo, drie stokkies, kgati, dibeke* and *juskei,* all of which are indigenous to South Africa and played in various parts of the country.

The 2012 Tour de Free State, a five-day tour backed by world cycling's governing body, the Union Cycliste Internationale (UCI), took on extra significance in its second year when it became the only Olympic qualifying road race for women in Africa.

The success of the inaugural Tour de Free State in 2011 opened the door for the second running of the annual event to be featured as a UCI 2.1 WE race by the UCI, making it an Olympic qualifier.

Besides being the first ever UCI women's road cycling tour in South Africa, the tour, which ran from 23 to 27 May 2012, was also the last opportunity for nations to increase their national rankings before the UCI's 31 May deadline for qualification for the London Olympic Games in July/August 2012.

The Games also provide recreational activities for young children and families.

### National Sports Volunteer Corps (NSVC)

The SRSA launched the NSVC Programme on 13 February 2012 in Kempton Park.

Sports legends, former athletes and players have shown enthusiasm and interest and have pledged their support for this programme.

The NSVC Programme's objectives include:

- recognising and use the experience and expertise of sports legends, former players, athletes, coaches and administrators to develop young talent at schools and sports clubs
- supporting teachers to coach children at school and identify talent in the school sport environment
- supporting national federations that do not have reach in all 52 demarcated regions
- providing training and development opportunities for former athletes and players who would like to become coaches, administrators and technical officials
- providing opportunities for further study and international exchange programmes for unemployed graduates of sport science and sport management
- training former athletes in life skills, comprehensive wellness programmes and business skills such as financial management and public speaking.

## Sporting achievements in 2012

### Archery

South Africa took a total of 30 medals – 14 gold, 11 silver and five bronze – at the 2012 World Field Archery Championships held in the coastal town of Miramar, Argentina in November 2012.

The South African delegation of 50 members, consisting of 21 Protea archers and 19 South African National Indoor and Field Archery Association archers, formed part of the 200 archers represented by 15 countries in this international field archery tournament.

Jakkie Flemming, Kayla Venter and Jarrod de Klerk shot new world records (field round) in their respective competing divisions.

Flemming bettered the world record held by a fellow South African since 2004.

On the third day, 13 of the South African archers managed to shoot a perfect full score of 560/560 for the animal 2D paper round.

On the day, Kayla Venter shot another new world record.

The South Africans kept their lead in the top three ranking archers of each style they competed in for the next two days of the tournament with Fernando Rueda Jnr, Kayla Venter and Tertius Loots shooting another three new world records on days four and five of the competition.

This meant seven new world records for the South Africans.

South Africa also obtained first and second positions in the Team Style competition in the Adult Male Freestyle Unlimited, the Adult Male Bowhunter Unlimited and Adult Male Longbow divisions.

In December 2012, South African compound archer, Danelle Wentzel, won the Indoor World Cup Stage 1 in Singapore. She was subsequently named World Athlete of the Week by the World Archery Federation.

### Athletics

In June 2012, the South Africa team received 24 medals at the African Championships in Benin – six gold, 10 silver and eight bronze.

In December 2012, the South African athletics team added 19 medals on the last two days of the Zone 6 Games in Lusaka, Zambia.

They won seven gold, eight silver and four bronze medals, to bring the total medal count for the week to 42, seven better than the previous best performance at the Games.

### Biking, mountain biking, cycling

Teenager Wade Young delivered an amazing performance to win the 2012 Roof of Africa, one of the world's foremost extreme motorbike enduros, defeating the world's number one rider in the format, Graham Jarvis, to take the

title. At 16 years of age, he was the youngest ever winner of the event in its 45-year history.

Greg Minnaar cemented his status as one of the all-time greats of downhill mountain biking during the course of 2012 by winning the *Union Cycliste Internationale* (UCI) World Cup in Pietermaritzburg.

He then raced to victory in the World Championships in Leogang, Austria.

Minnaar's record now includes three overall World Cup titles and two World Championship gold medals.

Burry Stander continued to excel in cross-country mountain biking, winning the UCI World Cup in Windham, New York, in the United States of America (USA).

He was second in the World Cup in Pietermaritzburg and narrowly missed out on an Olympic medal when he finished in fifth place.

Stander and Switzerland's Christoph Sauser were also successful in their defence of the Absa Cape Epic title in the beginning of April.

Cherise Stander made history by winning a stage of the 2012 Route de France, the women's version of the Tour de France.

Ashleigh Moolman-Pasio shone in the Giro d'Italia Internazionale Femminile, the toughest stage race in women's road cycling, by finishing in tenth place, becoming the first South African woman to make it into the top 10.

Robbie Hunter made history at the Giro d'Italia when his team won the time trial in Verona. This made him the first African to win a stage in all three Grand Tours.

Pietermaritzburg hosted the 2012 UCI World Cycling Tour Final and local cyclists produced some superb results, winning four world titles.

On the track, Nolan Hoffman flew the South African flag high at the 2012 UCI Track World Championships in Melbourne, Australia, winning silver in the 15-km scratch race.

## Boxing

International Boxing Organisation (IBO) supermiddleweight champion Tommy Oosthuizen was chosen as the 2012 SuperSport South Africa, Boxer of the Year.

In May 2012, Gary Player became the tenth recipient of the PGA Tour's Lifetime Achievement Award.

Created in 1996, it honours individuals who have made an outstanding contribution to the Tour over an extended period of time through their actions on and off the course.

The South African junior heavyweight title is vacant.

At international level, six South Africans fought for titles offered by the International Boxing Federation (IBF), eight for IBO belts, two for World Boxing Federation titles and one for a World Boxing Foundation belt.

South African boxers won 11 of these 17 fights.

Three were for IBF titles and the others were for belts offered by other organisations, including the IBO, World Boxing Federation and the World Boxing Foundation.

## Cricket

South Africa's national team, the Proteas became world leaders in the test arena after series victories over Sri Lanka, New Zealand, England and Australia.

Five players were selected for the World Test Team of the Year at the International Cricket Council (ICC) Awards, underlining how good the year under coach Gary Kirsten had been.

The series victory over England in England to claim the ICC Mace as the number one team in the world was particularly special, as was the win over Australia in Australia to retain it.

There were some exceptional performances from individuals. Leading the way was Hashim Amla with 311 not out against England at The Oval, the first ever triple test century by a South African. He is now considered one of the biggest stars of the game.

In the same match, Graeme Smith scored a century in his 100th test, making him only the seventh man to achieve the feat, while Jacques Kallis, who tallied 182 not out in an unbroken partnership of 377 with Amla, finally began to get the credit he deserves as he continued rolling along while Australia's Ricky Ponting and India's Sachin Tendulkar saw their form slip.

Dale Steyn, Morne Morkel and Vernon Philander came to be universally recognised as the best pace bowling attack in the game. In an extraordinary first season with the national team, Philander captured 50 wickets in only seven tests and was named the South African Cricketer of the Year.

South Africa also lifted the Hong Kong Sixes title, thumping defending champions Pakistan by 37 runs in the final.

## Canoeing, rowing

South Africa's men's lightweight fours rowing team – Matthew Brittain, Lawrence Ndlovu, John Smith and James Thompson – raced to a stunning victory at the London Olympic Games.

It was a first ever rowing gold for Africa at the Olympics. The team was subsequently named World Rowing Male Crew of the Year at the World Rowing Awards. They were also named Team of the Year at the South African Sports Awards.

Bridgitte Hartley won South Africa's only bronze medal in the women's K1 500-m canoe sprint. It was the first sprint canoe medal for the country in 18 Olympic Games.

Hank McGregor dominated the South African National Marathon Championships in June, winning the K1 for a sixth time and then teaming up with Grant van der Merwe and winning the K2.

In July 2012, Peter Lambert made history by becoming the first South African to win the Diamond Skull Race at the Henley Royal Regatta on the river Thames in London, United Kingdom (UK).

Giniel de Villiers, who finished third overall and first in the class for petrol-engined 4x4 vehicles in the 2012 Dakar Rally, received the Bridgestone/Guild of Motoring Journalists Motor Sportsman of the Year Award for 2012, at a function in Johannesburg in February 2013.

Driving a South African-built Toyota Hilux in the all-South African Imperial Toyota team's first attempt at the world's longest and toughest motor race, the former South African touring car, off road champion and 2009 Dakar Rally winner scored his fourth Dakar podium in five races.

South Africa bagged a double at the Avon Descent Canoe marathon in Western Australia, with McGregor and Van der Merwe win the race overall and Abby Adie and Hillary Pitchford taking the women's title.

## Golf

In 2012, Ernie Els won the Open Championship at Royal Lytham and Saint Annes and was nominated for the 2013 Laureus World Comeback of the Year Award.

Branden Grace started the year ranked 265th in the Official World Golf Ranking and rose as high as 34th place after winning four titles on the European Tour.

Grace is the only man to achieve this the year after he qualified for the tournament.

His victories came in the Joburg Open and Volvo Golf Champions in South Africa, the Volvo China Open and the Alfred Dunhill Links Championship in the UK.

Louis Oosthuizen enjoyed a strong year, playing consistently well, finishing it ranked fifth in the world.

His results included victories in the Africa and Malaysian Opens and a runner-up finish in the US Masters after a playoff.

At the 2012 Thailand Golf Championship, Charl Schwartzel set a tournament record score of 25-under-par 263 and won by a massive 11 shots over 2012 Masters' winner Bubba Watson and Thailand's Thitiphun Chuayprakong.

South Africa's prominence in the golf world and the success of the country's players was underlined in November when it was awarded six events on the 2012/13 European Tour, more than any other country.

## Hockey

In January 2012, the Proteas played a five-test series against Spain in South Africa.

The first game was a draw, Spain won the second, and the Proteas won the third and fourth, before drawing the final game to take the series 2-1.

In February, the Proteas played in an Olympic qualifying tournament.

They beat Poland 2-1 in their first match, and then beat the Ukraine 2-0, with Pietie Coetzee scoring her 233th goal in 236 tests.

They drew their third game against Italy 1-1 before beating India 3-1 in the final, thereby qualifying for the 2012 London Olympic Games.

In May, they played an unofficial test against Great Britain, losing 5-1.

They then played a five-test series against Scotland, drawing the first test 2-2, won the second 2-1, before taking an unassailable lead after beating Scotland 4-2 in the third test. They won the final test 4-1, sealing a 4-0 test victory.

They followed the Scotland Tour with the Investec London Cup in June, beating Great Britain 3-1 but losing 1-0 to Germany. In the semi-final match, they drew 2-2 with The Netherlands, before losing out on a penalty shootout for the final.

South African captain Marsha Marescia was named Player of the Tournament.

## Horseracing

Horse racing is a popular sport in South Africa, with regular racing taking place at various venues in the country. In South Africa the sport has a long and rich history that can be traced back to 1797! The first recorded race club meeting took place five years later in 1802.

The National Horse Racing Authority previously operated under the name of The Jockey Club of South Africa, which was founded in 1882. acing in South Africa is controlled by two bodies: Phumelela Gaming and Leisure Limited, and Gold Circle. Phumelela controls racing in the Free State, Northern Cape, Eastern Cape and Gauteng, while Gold Circle has the reins in the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

There are three major races that stand out above the rest, one in each of the three biggest cities in the country. The Summer Cup, the J & B Met and the Vodacom July (also known as the Durban July) which was first run in 1897 at its present home, Greyville.

Netball is the most popular women's sport in South Africa and the second biggest sport overall in the country. Sport and Recreation South Africa is developing a professional netball league, involving 10 clubs spread across South Africa with the intention of establishing a netball premier league in 2013. A professional league will give top players the opportunity to play regular games at a very high level. Government is looking for sponsors for the clubs, who will employ the players. This will mean that top players, like in other professional sports, will be able to devote their time to their game.

## Motorsport

In January 2012, South Africa's team Imperial Toyota – Giniel de Villiers and co-driver Dirk von Zitzewitz – continued the country's fine tradition in the Dakar Rally in Lima, Peru with a remarkable performance for a first-time outfit.

It marked the third time the pair had finished on the podium in the Dakar. Previously, they won the event in 2009, and finished as runners-up in 2010.

Theirs was also the first petrol-powered vehicle to make it onto the podium since 2009.

There was also a strong finish for the Toyota-powered buggy of Mark Corbett and Francois Jordaan.

Reigning South African Volkswagen Cup champion, Kelvin van der Linde, recently got his international motor sport career off to a fast start by emerging as the fastest driver after a two-day test at the Oschersleben circuit in Germany, in preparation for the 2013 Volkswagen Scirocco R-Cup Championship.

## Netball

In May 2012, the SRSA announced a flagship project to professionalise netball in South Africa. Netball is the most popular women's sport in South Africa, with more than two million active participants.

Despite the lack of a professional netball league, South Africa – with a pool of only 50 non-professional players – ranked fifth in the world in May 2012. To broaden the pool of netball players, the SRSA and Netball South Africa hosted an annual quad-nation netball tournament called the Netball Diamond Challenge, which included South Africa, Botswana, Uganda and Malawi, in August 2012.

The department announced plans to launch a full professional netball league in April 2013. This should ensure that Netball SA will have approximately 220 full-time professional and elite players to select to the national team.

The SRSA also committed to work closely with Netball South Africa to bid and host the Netball World Cup in 2019.

In April 2012, the South African netball team played a triangular series against Botswana and Singapore. They assured their place in the final by a 62-32 victory over Singapore and then sealed the series when they beat Botswana 56-36.

The Proteas travelled to the West Indies in June for a three-match test series against Jamaica. The hosts won the first test 63-48 and the second 61-46, before the South Africans claimed their first victory over Jamaica in 45 years with a 56-49 final score.

The team subsequently beat Ireland 61-37 in the opening test of the Netball Challenge at the Good Hope Centre in Cape Town. South Africa lost their opening match against New Zealand in the Quad Series by 63-27.

The World University Netball Championship was held in Cape Town in July. South Africa went unbeaten in the group stages, and then beat the USA 93-14. They defeated Namibia in the quarter-finals by 67-26. A closely fought 41-39 victory over Jamaica booked their spot in the final, where they lost 53-49 to Great Britain.

In August 2012, the Proteas beat Malawi in the final of the inaugural Diamond Challenge in Pretoria, Gauteng.

## Rugby

Rugby is one of South Africa's big three sports, alongside soccer and cricket. The Springboks are the national rugby team and traditionally one of the sport's international powerhouses.

The highlight of the Springboks' 2012 season was an unbeaten tour of the Northern Hemisphere. The Boks beat Ireland 16-12, Scotland 21-10 and England 16-15.

South African Rugby Player of the Year Bryan Habana, the leading test-try scorer in Springbok history, received the International Rugby Players Association award for Try of the Year for a five-pointer he scored against New Zealand in Dunedin.

Another highlight for South African rugby in 2012 came from the junior ranks as South Africa scored a victory over four-time defending champion New Zealand in the final to lift the IRB Junior World Championships in Cape Town.

In Super Rugby, South Africa provided three of the six playoff teams. The Stormers topped the log and were joined by the Sharks and Bulls in the playoffs. The Sharks, though, went on to make the final where they were beaten by the Chiefs.

## Running

Endurance running is a popular sport in South Africa and is widely supported. It is highlighted by two ultra-marathons, namely the Comrades Marathon and the Two Oceans Marathon. Both marathons are world-renowned and attract large numbers of participants from across the world. The Comrades Marathon takes place in KwaZulu-Natal and the Two Oceans in the Western Cape.

In 2012, for the first time in 15 years, the first and second positions in the Comrades Marathon were secured by South Africans.

Ludwick Mamabolo won the race in a time of 5:31 and Bongumusa Mthembu from Pietermaritzburg came in second position with a time of 5:32.

Elena Nurgalieva took the women's title in her fastest Comrades run of 6:07:12.

Stephen Muzhingi of Zimbabwe won the 2012 Old Mutual Two Oceans Marathon in a time of 3:08.

Elena Nurgalieva of Russia was the first woman home, claiming her fourth Old Mutual Two Oceans Marathon title. Her twin sister, Oleysa, did not compete in 2012, but the second place was still claimed by a Russian, in the form of Natalia Volgina.

## Soccer

As they did in 2011, the South African national women's football team, Banyana Banyana,

stole the limelight from their male counterparts in 2012. Their year was highlighted by a first ever appearance in the Olympic Games.

One of only two African representatives in the elite 12-team field, South Africa was also in the toughest group, which included World Cup holders Japan, world number four Sweden and world number seven Canada.

While Banyana Banyana failed to win any of their games, they showed improvement through the course of the competition. They fell 4-1 to Sweden in their first game, but the goal scored from 45 m out by Portia Modise was a pearler, possibly the best goal of the Olympic Games.

In their second match, Canada, who would go on to win the bronze medal after losing to the USA in the semi-finals in extra time, ran out 3-0 winners.

Saving their best for last, Banyana held Japan to a goalless draw in their last outing. The World Cup champions went on to claim silver after going down to the USA in the final.

Buoyed by their Olympic experience, Banyana next set their sights on the Confederation of African Football's African Women's Championship.

After a loss to hosts Equatorial Guinea in their opening match, South Africa defeated Senegal 1-0 and then romped to a 4-1 victory over the Democratic Republic of Congo to progress to the semi-finals.

That set up a semi-final showdown with defending champions Nigeria, the dominant team on the continent since the advent of the African Women's Championship, and a team that Banyana had never beaten.

Earlier in 2012, however, the teams had shared draws home and away, which gave them hope of breaking Nigeria's hold over them.

A goal from central defender Janine van Wyk secured Banyana the victory they sought and put the team through to the final of the tournament, where they once again faced Equatorial Guinea, who had won the tournament previously when they also hosted it in 2008.

Once again, playing at home proved the charm for Equatorial Guinea. They scored a goal late in the first half and went on to add three more as South Africa failed to rise to the occasion in the title-deciding contest.

Coach Joseph Mkhonza efforts were, however, recognised during the tournament when he was named the South African Coach of the Year at the South African Sports Awards.

Prolific striker Portia Modise went on to be nominated for the African Women's Footballer of the Year Award.

It was a less than satisfactory year for the national men's team, Bafana Bafana. They began the year in 56th place, but dropped to 84th in November.

The national under-20 team, Amajita, provided cause for optimism with their performance in an eight-nation tournament held in Cape Town in June 2012. The teams that took part in the event had won 11 under-20 World Cup titles between them.

The team took eventual champions Brazil to a penalty shootout in the semi-finals. They went on to finish third after defeating Japan from the spot.

In pool play, five-time World Cup winners and eventual runners-up, Argentina, beat South Africa 3-1. Amajita responded by downing 2009 FIFA Under-20 World Cup™ winners Ghana 2-0 and then defeated Nigeria 1-0.

## Surfing, surfski, sailing

In January 2012, Hank McGregor paddled his way into the history books by becoming the first canoeist to win three back-to-back K1 titles in the Global Trader Drakensberg Challenge, while defending women's champion Abby Adie came second in her division.

In November 2012, three of South Africa's greatest tennis players, Wayne Ferreira, Cliff Drysdale and Frew McMillan, were among the varied international recipients of the ITF's Davis Cup Commitment awards.

Ferreira and Drysdale were both consistently ranked among the top 10 players in the world.

Doubles specialist McMillan was in the forefront when South Africa won the Davis Cup for the only time in 1973, when India refused to compete in the final for political reasons.

Defending champions Andy Birkett and Jason Graham won the Unlimited Dusi canoe marathon title in February 2012. McGregor and Len Jenkins finished second, with Thulani Mbanjwa and Sbonelo Zondi in third.

The three-day event covers 120 km and is raced between Pietermaritzburg and Durban on the Umsindusi and Umgeni rivers. It is one of the largest canoe marathons in the world, and regarded as one of the toughest.

South Africa finished third out of 17 nations at the inaugural International Surfing Association World Stand Up Paddle (SUP) and Paddleboard Championships in Lima, Peru in February.

The South Africans won medals in seven of the 10 individual categories, plus the team relay and the overall team standings.

Anna Notten won silver medals in both the short (5 km) and marathon (18 km) women's paddleboard races. She also participated in Team South Africa's bronze medal effort in the team relay.

Bridgette van Aswegen collected a bronze medal in the women's marathon SUP race and a copper medal for fourth in the women's technical (short course) SUP race.

Ryan Butcher won two medals in the men's paddleboard disciplines, earning a bronze in the short race and a copper in the marathon.

Former South African junior surfing star, Penny Stemmet took bronze in the women's SUP surfing final.

South African longboard surfing champion Justin Bing ended ninth in the men's SUP surfing category, with South African SUP champion Ivan van Vuuren finishing 11th overall.

The Bertish brothers, Chris and Greg, placed 12th and 16th respectively in the marathon SUP race, and ninth and 20th in the technical SUP race. South Africa's relay team, comprising Notten, Van Aswegan, Butcher and the Bertish brothers came in third in the relay.

Three-time Dusi champion, Andrew Birkett, won the Unlimited Non-Stop Dusi on debut in March 2012. Under-23 stars Kwanda Mhlope and Lance Kime placed second, while Robyn Kime won the women's title, also in a K1, setting a new record.

In March 2012, South African sheep shearer Mayenzeke Shweni became the world champion blade shearer at the World Shearing Championships held in Masterton, New Zealand. Shweni's team-mate, three-time champion Zweliwile Hans, finished second in the blade shearing division. Shweni and Hans are full-time shearers from Sterkspruit in the Eastern Cape. Wool shearers from 25 countries competed for the world crown in the hand and blade shearing events at the biennial competition. Sheep shearing is recognised in South Africa as a national sport and the Sheep Shearing Federation is affiliated to the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee.

The Unlimited Non-Stop Dusi takes place over one day instead of the traditional three days of the Unlimited Dusi.

Teenager Bianca Buitendag scored 16,65 out of a possible 20 in the final to win the women's event in the CHIKO Pro Junior surf event at Mereweather beach in Newcastle, Australia in March 2012. In April, she came first in the Bréti Girls Pro Junior at Les Dunes in Brétignolles-sur-Mer, France.

Jordy Smith placed fifth in the Rip Curl Pro Bells Beach at Bells Beach, Australia in April.

In May 2012, Oscar Chalupsky won the 53-km Molokai World Championships surfski race in Hawaii when he raced to his 12th victory in the event at age 49.

## Swimming

South Africa has a proud record of excellence in swimming and boasts a number of Olympic medal winners. These include among others, Penny Heyns, Roland Schoeman, Ryk Neethling, Lyndon Ferns, Chad le Clos, Cameron van den Burgh, Natalie du Toit and Charl Bouwer.

The objective of Swimming South Africa as the governing body of aquatics in South Africa, is to encourage the practice of aquatic disciplines for all in South Africans with the purpose of promoting swimming as a life skill through training programmes; providing healthy exercise to South Africans of all ages and races; recruiting recreational swimmers to compete in the various competitions; and promoting competition and athlete development to the highest level.

Apart from South Africa's excellent performance in the pool during the London Olympics, Chad Ho rewrote the history books of the aQuelle' Midmar Mile. He became the first man to capture three consecutive Midmar titles when he produced a clinical and dominating display, finishing in a time of 18 minutes and 48 seconds, well ahead of a second placed Troyden Prinsloo (19:09) and Italian Federico Colbertaldo (19:24).

The Midmar Mile, which attracted 17 000 entries in 2012, is the world's largest open-water swimming event. Later in the year, it was voted into the International Marathon Swimming Hall of Fame. The event's name will be permanently inscribed on the Sea Goddess, the official trophy for the International Marathon Swimming Hall of Fame.

### Tennis

In March 2012, the Northwest University in Potchefstroom hosted the African Junior Championships for under-18s.

Ilze Hattingh won both the single and the doubles title, beating fellow South African Madrie le Roux in the singles final before teaming up with her to win the doubles final.

Wayne Montgomery and Matthew Rossouw won the boys' doubles title.

Team South Africa was named the best under-18 junior tennis nation in Africa by the Confederation of African Tennis and the International Tennis Federation.

This status was confirmed at the African Junior Tennis Championships held in Cairo in April. This tournament caters for the under-14 and under-16 age groups.

Hattingh again won both the single and doubles titles for the under-16 group, teaming up with Theresa van Zyl to win the doubles title.

Calvin Jordaan won the boys' under-14 singles title.

Also in March 2012, Kevin Anderson won the Delray Beach International Tennis Championship.

In May, the South African wheelchair tennis team played in the BNP Paribas World Team Cup in Seoul, South Korea.

The men's team of Evans Maripa, Sydwell Mathonsi, Marshall Marsh and coach Gerald Stoffberg won promotion to the elite World Group 1 of the game when they took silver in the men's open competition, while Kgothatso Montjane went undefeated in the women's singles.

In June, South Africa's wheelchair tennis champion, Lucas Sithole, won the Korean Open title, making him the world's eighth-ranked player.

## Conclusion

Over the medium term, SRSA will develop a single governance framework for recreation to strengthen the delivery of recreation programmes. It is envisaged that these programmes will not be institutionalised, but will be community initiatives driven by educational and public promotional campaigns.

In addition, SRSA will also prioritise federations and ensure that such federations are capacitated to optimally deliver their programmes to realise the SRSA's vision of an active and winning nation.

Factors influencing the prioritisation of a federation will include among others:

- the promotion of mass participation
- an existing strong presence with a national footprint
- the ease of roll-out in terms of affordability and sustainability
- the promotion of equity principles, redress and transformation.

The following federations have been classified as priority federations for school sport following an initial assessment conducted in 2012: football, netball, rugby, cricket, athletics, hockey, swimming, tennis, table tennis, basketball, gymnastics, softball, volleyball, goalball, boxing, chess and indigenous games (*morabaraba, ncuva, dibeke, kgati, jukske*i, *khokho, diketo* and *iintonga*).

A federation to receive intensive support will be selected each year. In 2012, additional assistance was rendered to netball, as the most popular women's sport in the country. The assistance provided focused on establishing a

netball premier league which to be launched in 2013.

Basketball was also a beneficiary in 2012, and this federation will be prioritised in 2014. The national basketball league, after being launched in March 2013, will kick off in September 2013. In 2013, tennis is earmarked to benefit from additional support with the revival of the Soweto Tennis Open being a prioritised event for April 2013.

Looking at the way forward, SRSA will continue to establish links between the internal workings of SRSA, provincial sport and recreation departments and Sascoc, as well as sport federations and civil society at large.

## Acknowledgements

*Beeld*
*Pretoria News*
*Sowetan*
Sport and Recreation South Africa
South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
SRSA Annual Report 2011/12
SRSA Annual Performance Plan 2013 - 2014
*The Star*

*www.aspworldtour.com*
*www.drak.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.iol.co.za*
*www.keeprugbyclean.com*
*www.news24.com*
*www.sa2010.gov.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sanifaa.org.za*
*www.sapa.org.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.sport24.com*
*www.supersport.com.*
*www.superswimmer.co.za*
*www.speedo.co.za*

## Suggested reading

Alegi, P & Bolsmann, C. 2012. *South Africa and the Global Game: Football, Apartheid and Beyond.* Routledge.
Matfield, V. 2011. *Victor: My Journey.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.
Odendaal, A, Reddy, K & Samson, A. 2012. *The Blue Book: A History of Western Province Cricket, 1890–2011.* Auckland Park: Fanele.
*The Race to Transform: Sport in Post-Apartheid South Africa.* 2010. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Roberts, C. 2011. *No Normal Sport in an Abnormal Society: Struggle for Non-Racial Sport in South Africa: From Apartheid to Sports Unity.* Cape Town: Havana Media.
*Sport and Recreation South Africa. 2011. Strategic Plan, 2011–2015.* Pretoria.
*Sport versus Art: A South African Contest.* 2010. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Van der Berg, W. 2012. *The Extraordinary Book of South African Rugby.* Johannesburg: Penguin.
Van der Merwe, S & Smith, S. 2012. *Supervan and I: The Memoir of SA's Greatest Driver and His Alter Ego.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Van Reenen, R. 2012. *From Locker Room to Boardroom: Converting Rugby Talent into Business Success.* Cape Town: Zebra press.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Tourism

South Africa's status as a premier global leisure destination is firmly established. The country has the capability and the means, the welcoming culture, the diversity and the scenic beauty that the world's travellers are looking for when they choose a destination.

In addition, South Africa's tourism sector is emerging as one of the most important pillars of the country's economy in terms of growth and competition with other emerging world economies. This industry contributes significantly towards creating employment, growing the economy and developing entrepreneurs. It presents opportunities for self-employment, contributing to rural and urban development and foreign exchange earnings.

The purpose of the Department of Tourism is to be a catalyst for tourism growth and development in South Africa, as well as drive the National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS), which was adopted in 2011.

To this end, the department has established an International Tourism Management Branch to provide strategic, political and policy direction for the development of South Africa's tourism potential throughout the world.

Furthermore, public and stakeholder participation has been concluded, and the draft Tourism Bill has been developed as a legal framework and introduced in Parliament.

During the last five years, South Africa has outpaced the growth of all competitor locations in the leisure arrivals category. Foreign direct spend in rand terms has grown faster than arrivals, with an 11% per year growth rate.

International tourist arrivals in South Africa grew by 10,2% year-on-year to almost 9,2 million in 2012, more than double the global average of around 4%. In 1993, South Africa received a mere 3,4 million foreign visitors. By 2012, the figure had grown by 300% to 13,5 million visitors, of which 9,2 million were tourists.

Europe remained the highest source of overseas tourists to South Africa in 2012, with arrivals growing by 9,5% year-on-year to 1 396 978 tourists, and the United Kingdom (UK) holding its position as South Africa's biggest overseas tourism market: 438 023 UK tourists travelled to South Africa in 2012, a 4,2% increase from 2011.

The United States of America (USA) was South Africa's second biggest overseas market, with the numbers up by 13,6% to 326 643 tourists, followed by Germany in third place, up 13% to 266 333 tourists. France, up 16% to 122 244 tourists in 2012, is now South Africa's fifth biggest overseas market.

The biggest growth in 2012 came from Asia and South America, driven by large increases in arrivals from South Africa's BRICS partners Brazil, Russia, India and China. Since 2009, arrivals from China have more than tripled, while arrivals from Brazil and India, respectively, have more than doubled.

China became South Africa's fourth biggest overseas market at 132 334 tourists last year, up 55,9% on 2011 figures, while Indian arrivals grew by 18,2% to 106 774 visitors, and Brazilian arrivals grew by 44,7% to 78 376 visitors.

Africa remained the pillar of South Africa's tourism economy, with growth from the continent up by 8,5%.

From an African continental perspective, Nigeria and Tanzania were two of the continent's biggest growth markets during the past financial year, with tourist arrivals from these two countries growing by 37,5% and 45,8%, respectively.

Business tourism has also increased, especially since the establishment of the country's first South African National Convention Bureau (SANCB) as a business unit under South African Tourism (SAT). For the next five years, South Africa has already secured over 200 international conferences, which are estimated to attract 300 000 delegates and provide an economic boost of more than R1,6 billion.

Foreign tourists spent a total of R76,4 billion in South Africa in 2012, up 7,6% on the total foreign direct spend in the country in 2011.

In June 2012, CNNGo, the travel wing of CNN International, listed Cape Town as one of the World's 10 Most Loved Cities, alongside cities such as Barcelona, New York, Paris, San Francisco, Montreal and Tokyo. According to CNNgo, Cape Town was chosen because of its "sweet harbour, nice architecture, weather, lovely waterfront shopping and the wonder of wonders, Table Mountain." Tourism contributes over 10% to the region's gross domestic product. During 2012, there was a 14% increase in international tourism arrivals at Cape International Airport.

## Legislation and policies

The Department of Tourism operates under the following legislation and policies.

- The Tourism Bill 2012 was presented to the Portfolio Committee in February 2013. The Bill's provides for the development and promotion of sustainable tourism for the social, economic and environmental benefit of South African citizens. With that in mind, the Bill boasts five key objectives, namely:
  - promoting the practice of responsible tourism
  - providing for the effective marketing of South Africa, both domestically and internationally
  - promoting quality tourism products and services
  - promoting the growth and development of the sector
  - effective intergovernmental relations in developing and managing tourism
- The Tourism Act, 1993 (Act 72 of 1993) provides for:
  - promoting tourism to and in South Africa
  - regulating and rationalising the tourism industry
  - implementing measures aimed at the maintenance and enhancement of the standards of facilities and services hired out or made available to tourists
  - coordinating and rationalisating the activities of people who are active in the tourism industry
  - establishing a board with legal powers
  - authorising the Minister of Tourism to establish a grading and classification scheme in respect of accommodation establishments
  - authorising the Minister to establish schemes for prescribed sectors of the tourism industry
  - registering tourist guides

- prohibiting any person to act for gain as a tourist guide unless he has been registered as a tourist guide in terms of the Act
- authorising the Minister to make regulations.

## Budget and funding

The NTSS seeks to increase tourism's total direct and indirect contribution to the economy from R189,4 billion in 2009 to R318,2 billion in 2015 and R499 billion in 2020.

To ensure the achievement of the sector's targets, the department will support the implementation of the NTSS and work towards increasing the number of foreign arrivals from 9 933 966 in 2009 to 12 068 030 by 2015, and increasing the number of domestic tourists from 14 600 000 in 2009 to 16 000 000 by 2015.

The department's spending focus over the medium term is on increasing the number of tourists from other African countries.

Expenditure increased from R1,2 billion in 2008/09 to R1,3 billion in 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 1,7%, mainly due to allocations for the refurbishment of an office building acquired in 2011/12, and for the implementation of the Tourism 2010 Plan, which enabled South Africa to meet its obligations to FIFA.

These allocations also explain the growth in spending on goods and services, which increased from R75,5 million to R127,7 million between 2008/09 and 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 19%.

Over the medium term, expenditure is expected to increase to R1,6 billion at an average annual rate of 7,7%. This increase is mainly due to an additional allocation of R218 million for SAT to expand tourism from Africa.

The department received additional allocations of R4,7 million in 2012/13, R5,1 million in 2013/14 and R5,6 million in 2014/15 for improved conditions of service. A Cabinet-approved baseline cut of R1,3 million in 2012/13, R667 000 in 2013/14, and R831 000 in 2014/15 was also made.

Between 2012/13 and 2014/15, R29,6 million was allocated for spending on consultants to provide support to the department's internal audit unit.

During 2011/12, the Department of Tourism developed the Heritage and Cultural Tourism Strategy, as well as the Rural Tourism Strategy. The former aims to mainstream heritage and cultural resources into the ambit of tourism, thereby enhancing the country's competitive edge as a tourist destination. The Rural Tourism Strategy will in turn focus on ensuring a more even geographic spread of tourism, with more emphasis on supporting tourism growth in rural areas in particular, with more rural community involvement.

## Role players

### South African Tourism (SAT)

SAT is mandated to market South Africa internationally as a preferred tourism destination, to maximise the economic potential of tourism for the country and its people.

SAT encourages the trade to take domestic tourism seriously; to target products, experiences and marketing campaigns at domestic tourists and to creatively manage products and services to meet the specific consumer needs of domestic tourists.

The It's Here, Vaya Mzansi Campaign is an industry-wide campaign that relies on collaboration and partnership from the wider industry for success and to grow domestic leisure travel to meet targets.

Its website, *www.vayamzansi.co.za*, offers more than 100 special offers and leisure deals to domestic tourists. They include experiences across South Africa that offer excellent value for money.

SAT has partnered with more than 50 tourism companies in South Africa to create discount vouchers ranging from tour-operator services, accommodation and experiences including wine-tasting, canopy tours and hiking.

### Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP)

TEP is a non-profit company that facilitates the growth, development and sustainability

of small tourism businesses. This is achieved through a number of products and services that provide hands-on, step-by-step support and guidance, ultimately leading to improved product quality, operational efficiency and market reach.

In 2012/13, 25 South African beaches were awarded Blue Flag status. The Blue Flag is a voluntary eco-label awarded to approximately 3 650 beaches and marinas in 46 countries across Europe, South Africa, Morocco, Tunisia, New Zealand, Brazil, Canada and the Caribbean for excelling in safety, cleanliness, water quality, provision of amenities and maintenance of environmental standards.

The following South African beaches received Blue Flag accreditation:

Eastern Cape
- Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Kariega Beach, Kenton-on-Sea
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- Robberg 5 Beach, Plettenberg Bay

KwaZulu-Natal
- Lucien Beach, South Coast
- Marina/San Lameer Beach, South Coast
- Ramsgate Beach, South Coast
- Trafalgar Beach, South Coast
- Umzumbe (Pumula) Beach, South Coast

Northern Cape
- McDougalls Bay Beach, Port Nolloth

Western Cape
- Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
- Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town
- Clifton 4th Beach, Cape Town
- Grotto Beach, Hermanus
- Hartenbos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
- Kleinmond Beach, Kleinmond
- Llandudno, Cape Town
- Lappiesbaai Beach, Stilbaai
- Mnandi Beach, Cape Town
- Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
- Santos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town
- Witsand Beach, mouth of the Breede River
- Silwerboom Beach, West Coast

The Blue Flag Programme is owned and run by the non-government, non-profit organisation the Foundation for Environmental Education.

Funding for TEP's Small Tourism Business Development interventions is provided by the National Department of Tourism as well as the Business Trust, the Tourism Micro Enterprises Support Fund (a sister company that provides funding specifically for the support of micro enterprises), global financial services company Credit Suisse, and the Eastern Cape Development Corporation.

In 2011/12, TEP trained over 3 500 tourism individuals, assisted small tourism businesses to create over 5 000 jobs and increased their revenue by just under R500 million.

## Tourism Indaba

The Tourism Indaba is an annual event that takes place in Durban. It is one of the largest tourism marketing events in Africa and one of the top three events of its kind in the world. It showcases a wide variety of Southern Africa's best tourism products, and attracts international visitors and media from across the world.

More than 13 000 delegates from around the world attended the event in 2012. Approximately 1 800 exhibitors showcased new products reflecting the latest global trends in tourism, while representatives of influential industry stakeholders with more than 200 international hosted buyers were guests at the event.

The 2013 Tourism Indaba was a four-day event, from 11 to 14 May 2013.

## Meetings Africa

Meetings Africa is an annual exhibition that serves as SAT's marketing platform to expose local and international buyers to the range of services and products in southern Africa's MICE (meetings, incentives, conference and exhibitions) industry.

It is the biggest business-to-business tourism exhibition on the African continent. The 2012 event introduced the industry to the SANCB, an entity that provides a strategic and operational platform from which to boost the country's business tourism global competitiveness.

The bureau is central to South Africa's ambition to leverage the global opportunities to

remain Africa's number one host of meetings and conferences.

The bureau has set a 2012/13 target of supporting at least 30 bids for new international meetings, with a potential of 18 000 delegates and R162 million in direct economic spend.

Meetings Africa 2013 saw a record number of hosted buyers and brisk business, as well as regional cooperation to grow Africa's share of the global business events market. Almost 9 000 meetings were held over the two days and 2 884 delegates attended.

There were 300 international, regional and local buyers in attendance, 30% more than last year. The Indian market was best represented from a buyer perspective. There were more than 30 buyers from India, 20 from the USA and Canada, 13 from China, nine from Brazil, and eight from Germany and Russia, respectively.

There were also buyers from Argentina, Australia, Belgium, the Czech Republic, France, Hungary, Lithuania, the Netherlands, Norway, Pakistan, the Philippines, Poland, Spain, Sweden, the United Arab Emirates, the UK and the Ukraine.

## Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Education and Training Authority (Theta)

Theta is the sector education and training authority (Seta) established under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), for the tourism, hospitality and sport economic sector.

The National Tourism Careers Expo is a forum where young people from high schools, Further Education and Training colleges and universities are exposed to existing professional and career opportunities that exist within the tourism sphere. This programme was initiated in 2008, also as a response to the gaps identified in the 2007 Tourism Skills Audit. This intervention is also prudent in exposing the tourism industry to the host of skills that exist among young people of this country that the industry could harness and benefit from. The third expo was held in September 2012 in East London in the Eastern Cape.

Theta comprises the following chambers:

- hospitality
- conservation and tourist guiding
- sport, recreation and fitness
- tourism and travel services
- gaming and lotteries.

Every chamber has its own committee that helps Theta to identify industry needs.

As a Seta, Theta's main function is to contribute to raising skills, or bringing skills to the employed or those wanting to be employed in their sector. This is done by ensuring that people learn skills that are needed by employers and communities.

## Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA)

In June 2012, the Minister of Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, announced the appointment of the new Awards Committee of the TGCSA.

The committee is responsible for overseeing the implementation and management of the TGCSA's grading system, South Africa's only officially recognised system for the star-grading of accommodation establishments.

Establishments are assessed according to the type of accommodation they provide. There are currently nine types of establishments:

- formal service accommodation (hotels, lodges)
- self-catering
- backpacker and hostelling
- caravans and camping
- meetings, exhibitions and special events.

About 1 160 properties have entered the tourism sector as lodges, guest houses or hotels after complying with TGCSA standards.

## Tourism Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter Council

In May 2009, the Tourism Sector Charter was gazetted as a Section 9 sector charter of the BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), giving it the same legal status as the BBBEE Codes of Good Practice.

The Tourism BBBEE Charter Council's roles include:

- providing guidance on sector-specific matters effecting BBBEE in entities within the sector
- compiling reports on the status of BBBEE within the sector for the Minister and the BEE Advisory Council
- sharing information with sector members, approved accreditation agencies and the Minister pertaining to BBBEE in the sector.

In September 2012, Minister Van Schalkwyk appointed the new members of council.

## Programmes and projects

### National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS)

The vision of the NTSS is to position South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations globally by 2020.

The overall goal of the strategy is to drive the tourism economy, enhance visitor experiences, position South Africa as a destination of choice and sustain good governance in the industry.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are arrivals, gross domestic product (GDP) and job creation. In the area of job creation, the tourism sector is working towards creating 225 000 jobs by 2020.

As part of the broader perspective of the National Tourism Sector Strategy, the National Department of Tourism launched the Sommelier Programme in November 2012. Also known as wine stewarding, sommelier is a much sought-after skill in the culinary world. The department has invested an amount of R11 million and appointed the Cape Wine Academy to present a 12-month training programme for 200 previously unemployed youths between the ages of 18 to 34 years in the following courses:

- Wine Service
- Preliminary Wine
- Certificate Wine
- Front of House
- Marketing
- Wines of the World.

The Department of Tourism hosted a Local Government Tourism Conference in February 2013 at the Sandton Convention Centre in Johannesburg under the theme *Tourism Development: Why Local Government Matters*. The purpose of the conference was to provide a platform for dialogue among public and private sector tourism stakeholders, including leadership, to engage, share information on tourism developments and challenges at the local government level.

To achieve all of this, the NTSS focuses on domestic tourism, with the intention to increase the number of domestic trips from 30,9 million in 2009 to 54 million by 2020.

Regional tourism is also be targeted, with South Africa looking to take advantage of markets such as outbound tourists who have not been tapped into in the past.

This strategy represents the department's commitment to intelligent planning and policy formulation. It was developed over a two-year period in close collaboration with local and provincial government, an advisory panel of top industry minds, representatives of various professional bodies, academia, tourism marketing agencies, civil society and the broader public.

The NTSS is a document that the entire sector is committed to and includes coordinated and credible targets. The strategy rests on three pillars, namely:

- driving the tourism economy
- enhancing visitor experiences
- ensuring sustainability and good governance in the industry.

### Tourism Support Programme (TSP)

The TSP is a reimbursable cash grant designed to support setting up tourism-related businesses. A key objective is to spread tourism investment across South Africa, while job creation is also a priority. It was introduced in 2008 and is set to end in 2014. A grant of between 15% and 30% of investment costs for start-up and expansion is offered. So far, 545 applications have been approved with an incentive value of R1,1 billion.

Originally managed by the Department of Trade and Industry, the TSP was transferred to the Department of Tourism from April 2013 in line with the Industrial Policy Action Plan 2011/12 – 2013/14. This means that the Department of Tourism will in future also develop and implement an incentive that is better aligned with the current strategic priorities of the tourism sector.

## Hospitality Youth Initiative (HYI)

The Hospitality Youth Initiative is aimed at helping unemployed youth to find meaningful employment in the hospitality industry at entry level. The programme targets unemployed youths between the ages of 18 and 35, with a matric qualification.

The programme, which started in 2010, initially took in 300 youths for training.

It is divided into two phases. The first phase provides an intensive one-month theoretical training course for entry into the hospitality industry. Training focuses on communication, life skills, customer care, leadership, and HIV and AIDS management.

On completion of the first phase, learners are placed in tourism establishments where they receive on-the-job training with internationally accepted standards as laid down by the hospitality industry. At the end of the training, bene-ficiaries receive certificates of competence and can be absorbed by hospitality establishments.

## National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements

In February 2012, the Deputy Minister of Tourism, Ms Tokozile Xasa, launched the National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements in Johannesburg.

The requirements are aimed at improving and maintaining service levels at all service touch points in the tourism value chain, as well as guiding the sector to achieve the NTSS's objective of positioning South Africa as one of the top 20 global tourism destinations.

Previously the tourism value chain in South Africa did not have integrated standards and norms, and this contributed to inconsistencies in service levels. Research conducted in 2009 identified inconsistent service levels and a lacking culture of complaining about poor service as critical challenges in the sector. The Service Excellence Requirements will provide a yardstick that will be used by all tourism service providers in the value chain to deliver quality service and experiences that equal or surpass world standards.

The South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) developed the standards on behalf of the tourism sector and benchmarked them against international requirements. The requirements have four key focus areas namely marketing, products, delivery of service, and monitoring and evaluation.

The Deputy Minister also introduced a National Service Excellence campaign under the theme *Excellent Service Starts with Me*. The campaign is aimed at creating awareness and educating consumers and tourism product owners about the requirements. It was rolled out in the nine provinces from July 2012.

## National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism (NMSRT)

Responsible tourism is a tourism management strategy in which the tourism sector and tourists take responsibility to protect and conserve the natural environment, respect and conserve local cultures and ways of life, and contribute to stronger local economies and a better quality of life for local people.

In October 2012, South Africa won 32 awards in the 2012 World Travel Awards for Africa. These included Durban's International Convention Centre being named Africa's leading conference centre.

South African Airways was named Africa's leading airline as well as leading airline economy class. Johannesburg's OR Tambo International Airport was voted the leading airport, Durban the leading port, and the Blue Train the leading luxury train on the continent.

Cape Town was voted Africa's leading beach destination.

It includes providing better holiday experiences for guests and good business opportunities for tourism enterprises. The concept of responsible tourism is gaining ground as a newly emerging and growing trend worldwide.

The National Department of Tourism, in partnership with tourism stakeholders and the private sector, particularly accreditation agencies, developed the NMSRT. Prior to the development of the NMSRT, there were various schemes certifying the sustainability of tourism businesses using different sets of criteria.

By developing a single set of standards to be applied throughout South Africa, the different sets of criteria that were used for certifying the sustainability of tourism businesses has been brought together. The draft NMSRT, developed through a consultative process with the wider tourism sector role players, was approved by the SABS in 2011. South Africa has thus taken the lead within the continent by publishing a set of national minimum standards that are aligned to international standard ISO/IEC 17011.

The NMSRT comprise 41 criteria, divided into four categories, namely:

- sustainable operations and management
- economic criteria
- social and cultural criteria
- environmental criteria.

## Imvelo Awards

Imvelo means "nature" in South Africa's Nguni languages. The Imvelo Responsible Tourism Awards were initiated to coincide with the World Summit on Sustainable Development, held in South Africa in 2002. They recognise tourism and hospitality businesses that make a real, measurable and sustained contribution to responsible tourism.

The awards are in line with the responsible tourism guidelines for the South African hospitality industry and the United Nations (UN) World Tourism Organisation's (UNWTO) code of ethics. Imvelo is also supported by the Heritage Environmental Rating Programme. The Federated Hospitality Association of Southern Africa is the custodian of Imvelo. The main Imvelo partners for 2012 are Absa, the Department of Tourism, the Department of Water Affairs, Eskom, the Industrial Development Corporation and Don't Waste Services.

The overall winner in 2012 was Riverside Sun Resort, while the group winner was Sun International Zambia and the independent winner was Ulusaba Private Game Reserve.

The Chairman's Award is independent of the other awards and may be awarded to any organisation or individual making a meaningful contribution to responsible tourism. The winner in this category was Mavuso Msimang, chairperson of the Tourism Business Council of South Africa, who is heading up a government project to address the issue of rhino poaching in South Africa.

## Tourism Month

Tourism Month is an annual celebration held in September to focus on the importance of tourism to South Africa's economy.

In 2012, South Africa adopted the UNWTO's theme for World Tourism Day on 27 September, namely *Tourism and Sustainable Energy: Powering Sustainable Development*. The Department of Tourism led the celebrations with a number of events.

The strategic objectives of Tourism Month include:

- raising awareness of travel and tourism within the country, with focus on the less visited local destinations
- promoting geographic spread
- celebrating and generating awareness of the enormous contribution domestic tourism contributes to the economy and to job creation
- entrenching a culture of domestic tourism through strategic activities designed to engage South Africans to travel their own country. These include campaigns such as the Vaya Mzansi campaign.

## Vaya Mzansi

The NTSS has identified domestic tourism as a critical element, not only in reaching the job creation targets set by government, but, in doing so, also developing a sustainable and

reliable basis on which future tourism growth can flourish. The Vaya Mzansi campaign, which was launched in 2012, aims to provide more affordable and accessible tourism experiences for the domestic market.

This is effectively supported by the campaign *Whatever You're Looking For, It's Right Here in South Africa*, which was launched in May 2012. It is aimed at increasing domestic tourism's contribution to 60%, of the overall tourism sector contribution to the GDP, by 2020.

The strategy also addresses issues of geographic spread and seasonality, to increase the number of first-time domestic holiday travellers, the number of leisure travellers, as well as the number of domestic holiday trips from four million in 2009 to nine million in 2020.

In 2011, domestic tourism contributed about R20 billion to the national economy. In the first quarter of 2012, more than five million domestic trips were recorded in South Africa, injecting R5,2 billion to the economy.

## International tourism

SAT recognises that the world scenario has been changing since the 2009 global financial crisis, as South Africa's core market of European travellers has significantly decreased. As a result, SAT has been shifting focus to other markets, such as India, China and Brazil.

SAT also increased efforts throughout continental Africa by opening regional hubs, as Africa is becoming an important source of tourism to South Africa. SAT opened up hubs in Nigeria and Ghana to serve the West African market, in Kenya to serve the East Africa market, and in the Democratic Republic of the Congo to serve Central Africa. This strategy offered a positive return on investment.

SAT's five-year plan contains five different programmes, aimed at:

- increasing international arrivals, focusing on regional Africa
- promoting global visibility of the South African brand
- ensuring delivery of quality experiences using global best-practice grading systems
- ensuring quality execution of approved business plans and budgets
- providing the human resources, systems and structures to support the execution of SAT's business plans and budgets.

In an effort to make South Africa a most preferred tourism brand by 2014, obtaining at least a 79% brand awareness, SAT looked at three criteria: brand knowledge, brand journey, and conversion of positive brand awareness to sales.

SAT introduced a new grading system for universal accessibility in 2011, and 800 establishments have already been certified as universally accessible. SAT aims to grade 9 000 properties by 2016/17.

The popular Tjing Tjing Rooftop Bar in Cape Town came in fourth on *Condé Nast Traveler*'s list of Best New Bars in 20 Cities worldwide, it was announced in the international magazine's July 2012 issue.

## Guidelines for international tourists

Every international traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued. If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas are issued free of charge.

Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas.

Passport-holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow-fever belt in Africa and the USA, and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Remote areas in KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo are low-risk malaria areas and standard precautions should be taken.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20. VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, roads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor cars – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

South African Airways, as well as a number of international airlines, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa. Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country.

The tourist-accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and bed-and-breakfast establishments.

## Tourist guiding

Tourist guides are among the first and last contact people for tourists. All 11 200 tourist guides in South Africa are brand ambassadors.

Government recognises that tourist guiding is an ideal entry point into the sector, particularly for previously disadvantaged groups. Therefore, it will be pursuing a developmental approach to law enforcement and local community participation, particularly in areas rich with natural, cultural and historical resources.

The department aims to create awareness among consumers, product owners and aspirant tourist guides to ensure that there is compliance with the law. Illegal guiding is not only a crime, but could also destroy the country's brand.

## Tourism niche markets

### Adventure tourism

Adventure tourism in South Africa is a thriving niche market. The country's diverse terrain, together with an ideal climate for outdoor activities, makes it perfect for activities such as climbing, surfing, diving, hiking, horseback safaris, mountain biking, river rafting – and just about any other extreme activity, all of which is supported by dedicated operators.

South Africa offers some of the best and most diverse rock climbing, as well as abseiling opportunities in the world. Those who prefer rivers have a choice of trips ranging from mostly scenic to Grade 5 white water rafting. Opportunities to practice the art of canyoning – known as "kloofing" in South Africa – with both self-guided and escorted trips are also available.

For those who want to take to the skies, there are more than 100 listed paragliding or hang gliding launch sites, as well as numerous lesser known sites. There are also many opportunities for helicopter rides, balloon flights, aerobatics, skydiving and microlight flights.

Thousands of kilometres of hiking trails wind around the country in desert, forest, mountain or coastal terrain, many with mountain bike trails adjacent.

In addition, South Africa offers a wide variety of horse trails through vineyards, on the beach, in the mountains, and for the more adventurous there are also horseback safaris in big game reserves.

The 216-metre Bloukrans bridge on the border of the Eastern and Western Cape offers the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

### Business tourism

South Africa remains in the top 15 long-haul business-events destinations in the world and is the premier business-events destination in Africa.

The business events industry was identified as an important component in helping to reach the NTSS's target of 15 million international arrivals by 2020.

Government recognises business events tourism as an area with significant growth potential and has therefore established the first SANCB to further promote growth in the conferencing industry.

The SANCB is tasked with coordinating national bidding, undertaking research and collaborating with city and provincial convention bureaus and the business events industry to present a united front for destination South Africa.

For the next five years, South Africa has already secured over 200 international conferences that are estimated to attract 300 000 delegates and an additional R1,6 billion to the economy.

In 2011, South Africa had 392 000 business travellers, of which 140 000 attended conferences and meetings.

## Cruise tourism

The Department of Tourism aims to help position the tourism sector in such a manner that its economic benefits become a reality to all South Africans.

The department is exploring ways to ensure that South Africa increases its global competitiveness such as identifying and further developing niche markets.

The department works closely with the cruise line industry to ensure that packages and excursions are developed and that passengers are encouraged to visit the country's shores, enjoy what it has on offer and inspire other travellers to visit South Africa.

## Cultural tourism

Heritage and cultural tourism is the fastest emerging competitive niche within domestic and international tourism markets. This category accounts for 40% of international tourism.

A new strategy to promote heritage and cultural tourism was launched by Minister Van Schalkwyk in March 2012.

The Tourism Greening and Climate Change Programme initiated by the Department of Tourism aims to promote efficient use of natural resources.

The department in partnership with Eskom, the departments of environmental affairs and of water affairs, conducted resource efficiency and tourism greening workshops in 2011/12 to educate and create awareness of resource efficiency within the tourism sector.

The Department of Trade and Industry, together with stakeholders in the sector, also developed a National Tourism and Climate Change Response Programme and Action Plan to ensure that the tourism sector responds effectively to the challenge of climate change.

The reduction of greenhouse gas emissions through the implementation of energy efficiency measures is a major focus of the sector's Climate Change Response Programme. A brochure on tourism and climate change has been developed to create awareness for industry role players.

The strategy is aimed at guiding the integration of heritage and cultural resources into mainstream tourism. It is set to stimulate sustainable livelihoods through heritage and cultural tourism products and to diversify the tourism sector and raise awareness of heritage and cultural resources.

In developing the National Heritage and Cultural Strategy, the tourism department engaged with a range of stakeholders in the heritage and cultural fields, as well as the tourism and private sectors and local communities.

## Medical tourism

South Africa has emerged as a medical tourism destination of choice for travellers from other African countries, as well as further afield; and the industry is proving to be a market with extensive growth potential.

In a move designed to showcase South Africa's high-quality facilities and services for health, wellness and medical care to foreign markets, the Medical Tourism Association of South Africa launched a web portal in collaboration with a number of stakeholders at the Medi-Clinic Morningside in February 2012.

Medical tourism, or the process of seeking medical treatment in another country, is a fast-growing source of income. It covers both elect-ive procedures and specialised operations such as joint replacement and spinal fusion.

Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also provide organ transplants, cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery, and dentistry.

## Nature-based tourism

South Africa's fauna and flora and variety of landscapes have enormous recreational value and attract several million tourists each year.

Protected natural areas serve not only to maintain biodiversity, but sustainable visitor access to these areas adds economic, recreational and aesthetic value to that which is being conserved within their borders. It also helps to preserve a wealth of traditional indigenous knowledge related to biodiversity, which is in itself a tourism resource.

South Africa boasts 19 national parks, as well as numerous private game farms and nature reserves. Three of the country's eight UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) world heritage sites are natural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are the Cape Floral Region, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, the Vredefort Dome, and the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park.

Birding is experiencing fast growth and interest both internationally and locally. South Africa's national birding organisation – Birdlife South Africa – boasts a membership of more that 8 000 and has 40 branches nationwide.

South Africa's popularity as an avi-tourism destination is due to the large number of birds, endemic species and major bird habitats.

## Rural tourism

The Department of Tourism's National Rural Strategy is aimed at creating a community-driven bed-and-breakfast operation, catering for international and domestic tourists.

South African Airways (SAA) launched two new mobile applications (apps) allowing customers to access their travel information on the go. The two new apps are available on iOs or Android mobile phones and tablets and allows customers to view their booking information, check in for a flight, find the status of their checked-in luggage and view information on flights, lounges and destinations.

Passengers can also search for information on special fares, view Voyager status and miles, use a currency converter, or get an updated 10-day forecast of the weather at any destination to which SAA flies.

Travellers can download the newly developed mobile apps – which became operational at the end of March 2013 – from the Apple App Store and Google play stores, respectively.

The department also aims to create a platform to develop opportunities for rural development and to create an enabling environment for rural tourism development to stimulate job creation.

This strategy is also in line with the NTSS, which highlights the issue of seasonality and geographic spread as challenges that make it difficult to spread the benefits of tourism.

In supporting the geographic spread of tourism with more emphasis on supporting tourism growth in rural areas and enhancing the supply of rural tourism products, the department will focus more weight towards supporting tourism in rural areas, with the involvement of rural communities.

The department, through its Expanded Public Works Programme budget, has allocated R20 million for the third phase of the project.

In growing the country as a destination of choice, the Department of Tourism has developed the Culture and Heritage as well as the Rural Tourism strategies.

Culture and heritage products are the fastest emerging competitive niche products in the domestic and international markets.

South Africa's competitiveness improved from 66th to 55th out of 139 countries that are rich in natural and cultural resources.

Sustainable development will be achieved if the beneficiaries or people, whose land, culture and natural resources are used for tourism, benefit from such use in a meaningful way.

## Sports tourism

It is estimated that sports tourism contributes more than R6 billion to the South African tourism industry. More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sports events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals.

There are numerous world-class sporting events on South Africa's calendar every year, such as:

- the annual Cape Argus Cycle Race, which caters for 35 000 people riding and pushing their bikes over a 109-km course
- the Midmar Mile in KwaZulu-Natal, in which 18 000 swimmers participate annually
- the Comrades Marathon.

In September 2013, the third annual Sports Events & Tourism Exchange (SETE) will be hosted in Durban to outline the implementation of the Sport Tourism strategy that was adopted at the 2012 conference.

SETE 2013 is also taking a proactive move to strategically align Africa as a whole, as the arena that has the potential and capabilities of hosting international events, sporting teams (especially during their winter months for training purposes) and also to use the time wisely when travelling to an African country by experiencing all the tourism offerings available.

## Township tourism

In February 2012, Deputy Minister Xasa kicked off government's plans to raise the profile of township tourism by taking a tour of Umlazi in the eThekwini Municipality. Government wants to capitalise on job creation opportunities that lie in this sector.

Township tours have the potential to showcase South Africa's culture and heritage and the Department of Tourism wants packages to be developed to achieve that goal.

Government wants to capitalise on job creation opportunities that lie in this sector. In 2009, tourism contributed around R189 billion to the GDP and provided 500 000 jobs. Domestic tourism, if elevated adequately, could bolster job creation.

## Wine tourism

Wine tourism is growing fast worldwide and plays an especially important role in South Africa with its centuries old reputation for making high-quality wine. South Africa's wine tourism has been rated the best-developed in the world by *International Wine Review*, one of the world's most influential opinion formers on wine.

The country's vineyards are mostly situated in the Western Cape near the coast. Winelands stretch from the rugged mountains and multi-directional slopes of the coastal region to the open plains of the Klein Karoo, where viticulture – the study of grape cultivation – takes place mainly in the verdant riverine valleys.

All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme. Production is divided into official regions, districts and wards. There are five principle demarcations – Coastal, Breede River Valley, Little Karoo, Olifants River and Boberg, covering 21 districts and 61 wards. Stylistically, South African wines fit somewhere between Old World and New World.

As the tourism sector works towards positioning South Africa as one of the world's top 20 travel destinations by 2020, key stakeholders in wine and tourism united to present the country's first specialist wine tourism exhibition, Vindaba, in September 2012.

Held in Cape Town, Vindaba targeted local and international travel trade as well as wine, travel and lifestyle media.

The initiative represents a partnership between Wines of South Africa, SAT, the wine routes, Cape Town Tourism, Cape Town Routes Unlimited and the Western Cape Department of Finance, Tourism and Economic Development.

Table Mountain National Park won the Best Performing Park award at the prestigious South African National Parks (SANParks) Kudu Awards ceremony held at Gallagher Estate in Midrand in November 2012. These awards recognise SANParks staff members and parks throughout the country for their exceptional performance during the year and their efforts in customer service excellence with various categories under the Chief Executive Awards.

Table Mountain National Park performed exceptionally well in the core functions of conservation, constituency building and tourism development, including the implementation of a Visitor Safety Plan to reduce crime.

## Regional tourism

### Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province's unmatched natural beauty, famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and rich cuisine make it one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also South Africa's most developed tourism region.

The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other industry. One in 10 employees in the Western Cape earns a living in the tourism industry, and it contributes more than R25 billion to the provincial economy.

### Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town, which lies at the foot of the magnificent Table Mountain, centres on the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront. A working harbour, the V&A offers everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, and a variety of restaurants, to theatres, live music and museums.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the official New Seven Wonders of Nature, following a lengthy international public voting process. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery. Also worth a visit are historical buildings in the Bo-Kaap and District Six.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour, including trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

Newlands is home to the renowned Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden. In October 2011, *National Geographic* named the botanical garden as one of the world's best picnic spots. Summer sunset music concerts at the garden are held on Sunday evenings during the summer months, from late November until early April. The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch on the slopes of Table Mountain was built of granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, Prime Minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896. The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100-ha reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailors' friend, Able Seaman Just Nuisance, stands at Jubilee Square.

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and sea-bird sanctuary. The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds.

Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfers' paradise and host to an international windsurfing event. Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area, with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

The Monkey Town Primate Centre is home to over 200 individual primates and is located east of Somerset West on the N2.

Strawberry-picking in Cape Town on the Mooiberge Strawberry Farm is available in season, which begins in November.

## Cape winelands

The Cape winelands, including the former Breede River Valley, are close to Cape Town. The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

Stellenbosch, the oldest town in South Africa, is also known as the "Eikestad" (City of Oaks). Various historical walks delight visitors. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country. The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the middle-19th centuries.

The Stellenbosch Toy and Miniature Museum houses a collection of 1:12 scale miniatures such as room boxes, miniature houses, antique dolls, cars and cuddly toys.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. Supervised pony and cart rides for children are available on the lawns of the Spier Estate. There is also a horse-carriage tour and equestrian centre for older children.

The Cheetah Outreach is an education and community-based programme, created in January 1997 on land proved by the Spier Wine Estate, to raise awareness of the plight of the cheetah and to campaign for its survival.

The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel, which was built in 1992, commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. Originally known as Oliphantshoek, it was renamed after

South Africa's wine tourism has been rated the best-developed in the world by *International Wine Review,* one of the world's most influential opinion formers on wine.

Wine tourism is growing fast worldwide and plays an especially important role in South Africa with its century old reputation for making high-quality wine.

It is estimated that wine tourism now generates an annual income in excess of R5 billion (US$590 million), while also being a major job creator. Wine exports from South Africa stood at 350 564 774 litres in 2011, with Europe as its biggest buyer.

the arrival of Huguenots who were predominantly French. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate their arrival in 1688. In April each year, the region hosts the South African Cheese Festival.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the Vignerons de Franschhoek Wine Route.

Butterfly World, one of the more unique attractions of the Western Cape winelands, consists of a tropical garden in a 1 000-$m^2$ greenhouse. This luxuriant paradise makes the free-flying exotic butterflies feel right at home. The butterfly park is located at the crossroads of the Paarl, Stellenbosch and Wellington wine routes, near Klapmuts.

The Giraffe House Wildlife Awareness Centre is on 15 hectares (ha) situated between Klapmuts and Stellenbosch. Focusing mainly on African wildlife, Giraffe House provides a place for people to enjoy a picnic in the fresh air, while experiencing and learning about animals and conservation.

Drakenstein Lion Park was established in 1998 as a sanctuary for lions born in captivity. The park comprises 50 acres of sprawling lion habitat.

Jonkershoek Nature Reserve, which includes the smaller Assegaaibosch Nature Reserve, lies near Stellenbosch. The reserve comprises the Jonkershoek Mountains and portions of the upper Jonkershoek Valley. The reserve stretches over 9 800 ha and its rugged terrain is ideal for hiking. Assegaaibosch is much smaller and is suitable for shorter walks and picnics.

On Le Bonheur Estate visitors can experience guided croc-pond tours, which lead across open dams via ramp-ways. Over 1 000 crocodiles are housed in these dams. Visitors have an opportunity to touch a baby crocodile, and during summer months, witness a feeding.

Paarl lies between the second-largest granite rock in the world and the Du Toit's Kloof Mountains. It is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos vegetation supports a number of south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and the orange-breasted sunbird.

The Afrikaanse Taalmonument (Language Monument) is on the slopes of Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum (Language Museum) is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa Mountains on its eastern border. Apart from three renowned cooperative wineries, there are also several prestigious wine cellars on historic Huguenot farms with Cape Dutch homesteads. More than 90% of South Africa's vine-cutting nurseries are in Wellington. The town is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers did in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Open Air Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

Ceres, named after the Roman goddess of fruitfulness, is the largest deciduous-fruit-producing region in South Africa. Tours are offered at various fruit farms. The area also offers several 4x4 trails, horse-riding, mountain-biking and abseiling.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and can sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 Trail and the Ochre San Rock Art Trail is a must for nature lovers. De Doorns lies in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Situated on the Breede River, Bonnievale features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, as well as bird watching and river boating.

Known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses", Robertson is one of the most beautiful areas in South Africa. Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, delectable fruit and radiant roses, Robertson produces connoisseur-quality wines and is also known for its thoroughbred horses.

Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Klein Karoo and set in a fertile valley. Relax in the healing waters of the

Avalon Springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by well-known cartoonist TO Honiball.

The area also offers several hiking trails, game-viewing drives, guided cultural tours and excellent rock climbs.

The picturesque village of Gouda is known for the Parrotts Den Pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor boasts a variety of charming thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area.

Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies the picturesque town of Rawsonville, known for its award-winning wines. Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the beautiful Slanghoek Valley, with its lush vineyards and panoramic views, or relax in the mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

## Garden Route

The popular Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of South Africa's southern coast, incorporating the picturesque stretch of coastline which includes the towns of Mossel Bay, George, Wilderness, Sedgefield, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay and Nature's Valley – each with its own charm and attractions. Named for its lush greenery and the vast Tsitsikamma Forest, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River.

Whale watching attracts tourists at Witsand and Port Beaufort from June to November.

The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-bike trails.

Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish-traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skin-care products.

Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The St Blaize Trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern Cape coastline. PetroSA's Information Centre informs visitors about the production of synthetic fuels from Mossel Bay's offshore gas fields. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.

Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

George is a historically significant location, with features such as the Slave Tree. Located just outside the Old Library, it was planted in 1811, when George was laid out. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the Southern Hemisphere.

George is popular among golfers and is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses.

Visitors can board the Power Van at the Outeniqua Transport Museum, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus. The Big Tree at Woodville, an Outeniqua yellowwood, is estimated to be around 850 years old. It is located about 40 km outside of George in the direction of Knysna.

The George Airport, the Outeniqua Pass, the railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo. Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests. Birdwatchers flock to the Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species.

Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse-riding, hiking, angling and bird watching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird. Over 200 species can be found in the abundant fynbos and forest settings.

Knysna is also famous for its delectable home-grown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival, a celebration of the good life, has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape.

An eclectic mix of art galleries showcase the diversity of talent in the area.

There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale watching, black-water tubing, hiking, and forest and cycling trails.

The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

At 216 m, the bungee jump from the Bloukrans River Bridge on the border between the Western and Eastern Cape is the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

## Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the largest bird in the world – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit.

Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town. The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in the town annually. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the remarkable Cango Caves, a series of spectacular subterranean limestone caverns.

Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the 30-cave wonderland boasts magnificent dripstone formations. Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp.

Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while

The Northern Cape's central Karoo district, with its "quiet skies", is ideal for astrological research, which not only draws researchers to the area, but also tourists.

Astrological tourism has already created good economic spin-offs at Sutherland, the site of the Southern Hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope (Salt).

Two Sutherland entrepreneurs rehabilitated the conservation land around the Salt facility, which has now become the site of guided tours and accommodation venues have flourished in recent times. A satellite visitors' centre will be built in the township of Schietfontein.

the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public. The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69-m waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Klein Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest water-wheel in the country, the Old Watermill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

## Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones.

This ancient, fossil-rich land, which is five times the size of Great Britain, is also home to the richest desert flora in the world.

In the Central Karoo, visitors will find the largest variety of succulents found anywhere on Earth. Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, the late Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. The Karoo National Park on the town's doorstep, is home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum. Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village devastated by floods about a century after it was established, is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg Mountains. It is the ideal place to sample a great variety of Karoo cuisine. See examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s, and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (white lightning). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg Mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Today, Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57 km long (but two-hour-drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

## West Coast

The West Coast is a region of outstanding beauty and contrast. The solitary coast's cenic beauty is challenged only by rich culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela Current's cold waters. During April every year, Lamberts Bay has the Crayfish and Cultural Festival.

The area is not only a birder's paradise, but every year migrating whales also visit the coastal waters from July.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant display of colour.

The Swartland region is known for its undulating wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities.

Further north, visitors encounter the fertile Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with its wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars. The entertainment venue Evita se Perron is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top performances by South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walk-about.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Bird watching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-bike trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan, a popular holiday destination, is home to the West Coast National Park. An internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, the park attracts thousands of visitors each year. The oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were also discovered here.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to a variety of seabird species.

Saldanha is a water sport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the *SAS Saldanha* Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Fishing (snoek in season), hiking and whale- and bird watching opportunities also draw many visitors.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide, while Lamberts Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a popular tourist attraction.

It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other sea birds. Visitors can also watch southern right whales here from July to November.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation. The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town.

Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February). The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape. The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders.

At Velddrif/Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bokkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River.

Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa. The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. The world-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-Op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa.

The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features, among other things, 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites, and an arts and crafts market. Annually, scores of sky-diving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days.

The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveldhuisie is a recently built example of a typical Sandveld dwelling. There are several recognised mountain-biking, walking and hiking trails, a sky-diving club and canoeing opportunities.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories and the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt.

Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersport enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

South African tourist attractions now also include a rooibos tea safari, exclusive to the Cederberg region of the Cape West Coast. Elandsberg Eco Tourism, a tour operator and accommodation provider based at one of the region's largest tea plantations, offers one-hour guided tours of a rooibos tea farm in a safari vehicle.

The Groenkol Rooibos Tea Estate, where the tours take place, is unique in that all aspects related to the production of rooibos tea are done on the estate – from growing the seedlings through to the final packaging and marketing.

South Africa produces some 15 000 to 20 000 tons of rooibos tea a year, with 6 000 tons being consumed locally and the balance being exported. In South Africa, rooibos tea occupies approximately 17% to 20% of the available shelf space.

Wuppertal, which is well-known for its rooibos and buchu production, has added one more attraction to its tourism offerings – the Cederberg Donkey Cart Route.

The project entails a three-day tour through the Cederberg Mountain area and Heuningvlei with accommodation facilities for overnight visitors.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit Co-Operative.

The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest cooperative wine cellar under one roof in the Southern Hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a panoramic view of the ocean.

Klawer was named after the wild clover growing in the area. During the flower season, the area is a riot of colour. The Doring River features hiking trails and opportunities for river-rafting.

Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-ton deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924.

Bird watching, mountain-biking, day walks, hiking and 4x4 trails abound. The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for history enthusiasts.

## Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa, just over an hour's drive east of Cape Town, lies a fertile area surrounded by mountains and sea, called the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooi Els. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin off Africa.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by the Unesco in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg Mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort, famous for the best land-based whale watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area.

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale watching. The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach. Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services. The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum. The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also has the Audrey Blignault Museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999.

The Agulhas National Park, a ruggedly beautiful coastal plain, was proclaimed in September 1999. The park started as a four-hectare portion of land at the southern tip and has grown through the additions of 36 portions, bringing the area of the park to 20 959 ha.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters are cleaved into the Indian and Atlantic oceans. The wrecks of some 130 seafaring craft – yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, and even modern-day fishing trawlers – have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the Southern Hemisphere.

Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several oxwagons. For outsiders, it was named after the Arniston, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony.

The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture. The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species.

Known for its world-class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance.

Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wild-flower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the Southern Hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845 and was declared a monument in 1994. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

In November 2012, South African National Parks' (SANParks) newest attraction, Mokala National Park in the Northern Cape, added two important properties, Lilydale and Valschfontein, as part of its expansion programme.

With the inclusion of the two properties, Mokala now covers 28 151 hectares. This achievement was marked with a fence-cutting ceremony on 8 November 2012 at the Valschfontein section of the park.

Mokala National Park was established in 2007 as an alternative to the Vaalbos National Park, which was the subject of a land claim. The event marked the realisation of a commitment from SANParks to the Northern Cape Government at the time of the land claim and subsequent loss of the Vaalbos National Park.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve boasts an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas. The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

## Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, warm sunny climate, friendly people and hospitality, the Northern Cape is a province with a rich culture heritage.

### Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors. The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective. Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works. The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Paterson Museum near the Kimberley Airport houses a replica of a Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syn-

dicate at Alexandersfontein. A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley. A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

In October 2011, the first ever Maloof Money Cup World Skateboarding Championships was held in Kimberley. In 2012, the city also hosted the second Maloof Money Cup World Skateboarding Championships.

In February 2012, the Mittah Seperepere Convention Centre was opened in Kimberley. This facility, which has a capacity of 2 500 seats indoors and 3 500 seats in the open-air arena, is set to be the main instrument to drive business tourism to the province. By November 2012, 25 events had already been confirmed.

A short distance from Kimberley is the mining town of Barkley West, which, owing to its proximity to the Vaal River, attracts many water-sports enthusiasts and anglers.

Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park. The park is not only home to large raptors, but is also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

## Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors have the opportunity to view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Tswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water a day.

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman features the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built, and several other historic buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible. The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use.

Explorer David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.

The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters. Another marvel is the Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, which features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

## Green Kalahari

The Roaring Sands site on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop is a popular tourist attraction. Its high sand dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Eleven waterwheels are still used today along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas.

In March 2012, the first ever Green Kalahari Canoe Marathon was staged over a distance of 99 km lasting three days and attracted 45 paddlers.

Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River.

At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest. The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town.

Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

In August 2012, the Kalahari Desert Speed Week was held at Hakskeen Pan, 200 km north of Upington. This was the first ever annual Speed Week Club event in Africa for vehicles and motorcycles. The Mier area, in particular, continue to attract world-wide attention as the Bloodhound Supersonic Car and Haakskeen Pan are being prepared for the onslaught to break through the unimaginable 1 600 km (1 000 miles) per hour mark.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 $m^2$ of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two million-hectare sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah, and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

The names of various landmarks within the park reflect its long history as a crossroads of many cultures, which have included the San, the Mier, the Huguenots and the Scottish at various times.

The park is an important element of the first phase of the Transfrontier Conservation Area 2010 Strategy, which is a priority of the Southern African Development Community.

## Namaqualand

The indigenous people of the Namaqualand region are the Namas. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf.

Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert. The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they appeared. The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy this show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

After diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay was known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade.

Established as a small-vessel harbour and railway junction in 1954 for the copper-mining industry, Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve is open only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4 trail, as well as several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.

## Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns.

The town features one of the country's last working horsemills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norvals-pont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery. Colesberg has bred many of the country's top merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town, which is steeped in history, also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which took place from 1899 to 1902.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof was built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam. Today, it is a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom Hydroelectric Power Station situated within the dam's wall.

Victoria West is home to the Apollo Theatre, the only Art Deco period theatre in the Southern Hemisphere. Up until 2009, it was world famous for playing host to an annual film festival.

The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

The Steve Biko Heritage Centre in the Eastern Cape, which was opened in November 2012, is intended to educate the public about Biko's leadership and his contribution to freedom and democracy. It will also contribute to tourism and poverty eradication through the development of cultural industries and to utilise heritage as a tool for fostering social cohesion.

The heritage centre in Ginsberg, near King Williams Town, was built through a partnership between the Department of Arts and Culture and the Department of Tourism. The opening of Steve Biko Centre marked 35 years since the black consciousness leader died in police custody in 1977.

## Hantam Karoo

Near the small town of Brandvlei lies Verneukpan, where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood. The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface. Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of well-known Afrikaans author and poet NP van Wyk Louw, is known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's (SAAO) observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland.

From Monday to Saturday, the SAAO offers two guided tours a day and two night tours a week. Day tours entail a guided walk through the visitors' centre adjacent to the telescope sites on the mountainside and a guided tour of selected telescopes, including the Salt.

During night tours, visitors can view interesting objects in the sky through two dedicated visitors' telescopes. Booking is essential.

Tankwa Karoo National Park, on the southern border of the Northern Cape, 70 km west of Sutherland, offers panoramic views, and is home to a host of animals, birds and insects. It encompasses the Succulent Karoo Biome – an internationally recognised hotspot and the world's only arid hotspot – which stretches 116 000 km² from the southwestern Cape into southern Namibia.

Tankwa's landscape offers vivid seasonal contrasts of coloured wild flowers and stark desert, set against the backdrop of the Roggeveld Escarpment to the east, Klein Roggeveld to the south and the Cederberg to the west. Its extensive desert plateaus is also ideal for viewing game such as gemsbok, Cape mountain zebra, springbuck and bustards.

## Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see. This central region is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

### Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The national museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad Skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring, about 50 km north of Bloemfontein.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War from 1899 to 1902. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's Game Reserve is a unique attraction. Naval Hill is the biggest game reserve that is completely surrounded by a city.

Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events not to be missed is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.

The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis is also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

### Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand. The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of events in the area.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie is worth a visit.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa. Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry.

The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State and receives hunters in autumn and winter.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite resting place for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

## Thabo Mofutsanyana

Snow-capped mountains and beautiful scenery provide a backdrop to this pristine area.

The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees, when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State", owing to its exceptionally beautiful scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area. Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti Mountains. One can also explore the magnificent mountain scenery by bike.

The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork.

Ficksburg is known for its cherry and asparagus farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

Rosendal, surrounded by the Witte Mountains, celebrated its centenary in 2011.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its impressive sandstone cliffs and rock formations, is a popular holiday destination. A vulture restaurant allows visitors to observe these scavengers closely. San paintings can also be viewed.

The Highlands Route follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south. San caves and rock art are some of the main features of the route.

The bird watching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Ramsar sites are wetlands of international importance designated under the Ramsar Convention.

## Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem, which lies on the banks of the Jordaan River, was founded by the Voortrekkers in the 1840s. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game. The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m "flat mountain", is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain. Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing. An open-water swimming race takes place there annually.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits Festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings.

Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum, using life-size models, depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated close by.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer.

Parys, situated on the banks of the Vaal River, offers tourists a tranquil river retreat.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It is the only world heritage site in the Free State.

It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 bird types and a variety of small mammals. Various hiking and mountain-bike trails are also on offer.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game that has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

## Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the Indian Ocean coastline makes the province most attractive to tourists and water sports enthusiasts.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

### Amatola mountain region

The Amatola Mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart, where troutfishing, hiking, riding and bird watching are among the attractions. The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth, which has earned the name "Friendly City", is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. The Isuzu National Sailing Week is held annually in April in the waters of Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be both a monument to South Africa's struggle against

apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

The city boasts various scuba-diving sites. Visitors can also visit Bay World with its oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba; bird watching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-bike and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of the Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

## Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region, once known as the "Trans-kei homeland", is the home of a major section of the Xhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of former President Mandela. In the city of Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure. The museum is a collection of heritage sectors spread across three locations: Qunu, Mveso and Mthatha.

A display reflecting the life and times of Mandela can be found at the Bhunga Building section of the Nelson Mandela Museum in Mhatha. Mandela has received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

The alignment of the N2 national route along the Wild Coast will help open up investment opportunities in this area.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors.

To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa call this place Izi Khaleni ("Place of Thunder"). During high tide, the waves move through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

## Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history.

The Owl House in Nieu-Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance, and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, a gigantic circular impact that is of major scientific importance.

To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and today their population stands at about 300.

Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

## N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art. Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Barkly East, Rhodes, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp and Queenstown.

## Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sun-drenched beaches.

Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints", because of the more than 40 churches found in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and craftspeople fuse in a celebration of creative energy.

Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest postbox in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by both tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve boasts abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the legendary frontier wars located in the area.

East London, which forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality, is South Africa's only river port city, was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The city's own waterfront development, Latimer's Landing, is situated on the banks of the Buffalo River.

The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The East London Museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit spectacular fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles.

There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

## Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word "tsitsikamma" is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tse-tsesa" meaning clear, and "gami" meaning water.

South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure-seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests criss-crossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, after which the Otter Trail is named. Another popular adventure is a black-water tubing experience on the Storms River.

## Limpopo

Limpopo is a land of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed. The present tranquillity of the province belies a turbulent past, to which many monuments and museums attest. Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

## Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve boasts one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves.

The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection. The Makapansgat Caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site.

In May 2012, a rare butterfly, the Waterberg Copper (*Erikssonia edgei*), which was thought to have gone extinct almost 30 years ago, was rediscovered by a lepidopterist, Mark Williams, at Bateleur Nature Reserve north-west of Bela-Bela in the Waterberg district of Limpopo. Thanks to the pristine conditions and favourable habitat, this is currently the butterfly's only known location in the world. It was last seen in the only known colony, west of Modimolle, in the early 1980s.

The Makapansgat Caves and limeworks near Mokopane represent an archaeological site of global importance.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing eco-tourism areas in the country. The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino outside of the Kruger National Park and the KwaZulu-Natal parks.

Bela-Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures. Modimolle is the region's main town.

## Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, and preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. It is ideally located near the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland.

Zion City at Moria, near Polokwane, is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Polokwane offers a variety of museums and art galleries, including among others, the Bakone Malapa Museum, the Polokwane Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic Museum.

### Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

### Mopani district

The Lekgameetse Nature Reserve in the northern foothills of the Drakensberg is part of the Cloud Mountain Biosphere. This 18 000-ha nature reserve is well known for its abundant butterflies in every colour of the rainbow.

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species *Encephalartos transvenosus*, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, was opened to guided groups in June 1997. This followed seven years of archaeological excavations, which brought to light the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

### Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve and enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog. The Inyaka Dam at Bushbuckridge is also worth a visit.

## North West

North West is blessed with several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors.

A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, situated in the transition zone between the Kalahari and the Lowveld. Home to the Big Five, the park offers a wide variety of accommodation, is close to popular attractions such as Sun City and only a two/three-hour drive from Johannesburg.

The park has an area of approximately 550 km², making it the fourth largest park in South Africa, with an abundance of animals, and over 300 bird species.

### Central district

The historic route of Mafikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while

In August 2012, Domestic Tourism in North West received a boost when the Minister of Tourism, Marthinus van Schalkwyk, launched the new tourism initiative, Harties Cableway, which spans the majestic Hartebeespoort Dam and Magaliesberg mountains. The Harties Cableway offers visitors panoramic views of the beautiful surrounds, as well as various recreational and educational facilities.

writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mafikeng Museum.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails.

Ottosdal is situated in the centre of the North West and was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Koranna-fontein in 1913 and named after its owner, GP Otto. Ottosdal is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found and mined.

The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province. Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuil. San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

In the Garden of Remembrance are graves of soldiers killed during the war. The Old Farmhouse that was built in 1910 houses a unique African collection. The Old Water Mill that was built around 1860 is a national monument.

The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42,2-km, 21,1-km,10-km races and a 5-km fun run.

## Eastern district

Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting. The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is situated on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The De Wildt Cheetah Breeding and Research Centre specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species. Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

There are several golf courses in the area.

## Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. In July 2005, the World Heritage Committee declared the Taung Skull Fossil Site an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site. This region is popular with adventure seekers – especially those who enjoy the 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

## Rustenburg district

The Pilanesberg National Park supports more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. A hot-air balloon ride, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available. The reserve boasts the second largest elephant population in South Africa and guests are assured of sighting not only the Big Five but also the elusive cheetah and endangered wild dog. The Royal Madikwe clinched the title of the World's Best Luxury Game Lodge 2011.

Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, watersport and an artificial sea. There are various hiking trails in the region.

The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

## Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River. The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

## Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – "The Place Where the Sun Rises" – epitomises every traveller's dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Attractions range from game viewing and bird watching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and cultural villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

Ndebele bead work and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld and the different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history and cultures.

Plans are underway to give the Lowveld's Panorama a facelift in 2013. A R44-million emergency fund has been set aside to upgrade a number of nature reserves throughout the province. These include the Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve, Manyeleti Reserve, Loskop Dam Nature Reserve and Songimvelo Reserve. The Blyde River Canyon will enjoy preference with renovations starting as soon as possible at the Bourke's Luck Potholes, God's Window, the Three Rondawels, Lowveld Views and River Falls.

## Nelspruit

Nelspruit is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld. The Nelspruit Historical Trail is an hour-long route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Nelspruit on a chartered route called the "Valley of the Olifants Route". Rovos Rail's trains also travel to Nelspruit.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Nelspruit Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala Caves and the PR Owen Dinosaur Park.

The tranquil town of White River to the north of Nelspruit, is well known as an artists' haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park. The town also boasts an orange winery. Rottcher Wineries have taken advantage of the area's prime production of oranges to make a truly unique wine, which has been a hallmark of the area for over 50 years.

## Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water.

The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini.

God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon. The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the

most popular in the country. A number of other hiking trails are also available.

The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a quaint historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is situated in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age. The Lydenburg Heads, human-like masks dated to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit. In August 2012, Sabie was named as *Rapport* and *Kwela*'s Town of the Year 2012.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities.

This area was the setting for *Jock of the Bushveld*, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold mining.

The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago. The Pilgrim's Rest Festival is held every December.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

## Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly-fishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major draw card.

The meander also offers numerous other activities.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game watching, boating and fishing.

Many hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

## Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village, near Middelburg.

## Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology.

The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossoms in late summer lures visitors to this region.

## Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the inimitable San paintings embossed in some rocks.

The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, con-

structed in the village of Mbuzini. The year 2006 saw the 20th anniversary of Machel's death in an aircraft crash.

While they are in this region, visitors have the opportunity to visit Swaziland and Mozambique, which are nearby.

### Grass and Wetlands

Grass and Wetlands is a paradise, with its variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface.

There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20-km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

## Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the commercial powerhouse of the country, but its offerings are not limited to commerce and industry. Anchored by the cities of Johannesburg and Pretoria, Gauteng provides plenty in the way of entertainment through its network of upmarket shopping malls, casinos, street markets, theatres, restaurants, museums and parks.

Gauteng is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets.

Although Gauteng is the most populated, built-up and industrialised province, it still boasts some natural areas offering a variety of leisure activities such as day hikes, picnic spots and sports activities.

These include the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (Heidelberg); Braamfontein Spruit Trust, The Wilds on Houghton and the Klipriviersberg Nature Reserve in Johannesburg; the Kloofendal Nature Reserve and Walter Sisulu Botanical Gardens (in Roodepoort); and the National Botanical Garden, Smuts House Museum, and Freedom Park in Pretoria; as well as the Tswaing Crater Trail.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation. Dinokeng attractions continue to grow.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km$^2$ and is a popular venue for watersports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Vanderbijlpark was built during the late 1940s by the then Iron and Steel Corporation to accommodate its employees.

The Sterkfontein Caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old.

The broader Cradle of Humankind site consists of 47 000 ha, with numerous caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a world heritage site.

Forty per cent of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils.

A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area, and work is ongoing.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

The South African National Railway and Steam Museum at Randfontein Estates Gold Mine outside Krugersdorp houses some of the country's old steam locomotives, a diesel-electric locomotive, and more than 50 vintage passenger coaches. Train rides are offered once a month.

A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami, near Johannesburg.

Visitors to Roodepoort can go on walks and trails through the Kloofendal Nature Reserve, or enjoy a picnic or a show at the popular Kloofendal Amphitheatre. The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden boasts a 70-m-high waterfall and a breeding pair of black eagles.

Forty kilometres north of Pretoria lies a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of an impact crater left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater is similar in size to the well-known Barringer Meteor Crater in Arizona, in the USA. The crater walls at Tswaing were originally about twice as high as they are today.

There is a museum adjacent to the crater. A path leads from the museum to the crater, along the rim, and down to the central lake. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. Many turn-of-the-century houses still stand. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

## Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

There is also a display of old prescription books and dictionaries used by pharmacists.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg.

Here visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and a host of places of historic interest.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown, the arts precinct of Johannesburg. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Four hop-on hop-off open-top tour buses started operating in Johannesburg in January 2013. The bright red city sightseeing buses are a global brand. They already operate in Cape Town, and in 100 other countries.

The Johannesburg route starts at the Gautrain Park Station and proceeds to Gandhi Square, then City Hall, Roof of Africa at the Carlton Centre, the James Hall Transport Museum, the Apartheid Museum and Gold Reef City, the Mining District, the World of Beer, the Newtown Precinct, the Origins Centre at Wits University, and ends at Constitution Hill.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs. A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

The Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg gives visitors the opportunity to meet families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice.

The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold-rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid.

A team of curators, film-makers, historians, designers and architects assembled the exhibits on a seven-hectare site.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, and offers visitors the chance to view

the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block.

People once imprisoned at these facilities include Gandhi and Albert Luthuli, as well as the only woman to be executed in South Africa's history, Daisy de Melker.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

Fordsburg, a suburb on the western side of Johannesburg, often called the city's "Little India", has grown in recent times, its identity shifting and merging with the different customs and flavours that have made it a centrepiece in the cultural design of the city.

The South African Museum of Military History houses an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The South African Transport Museum in Heidelberg represents all aspects of South Africa's transport services.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. It is estimated that some 1 000 foreign tourists visit Soweto every day. Its tourism industry contributes about R143 million to Gauteng's GDP.

The two-bedroom house where former President Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown, Soweto is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955.

The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Petersen Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The museum was named after the young boy who was the first person to be shot dead by police on that day.

The Soweto Tourism and Information Centre offers comprehensive information to tourists, as well as facilities to book accommodation, tours and site guides in Soweto.

## Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings is found in the city, which is known as the "Jacaranda City" because of the many jacaranda trees that line its streets. When these are in full bloom in October, they cover the city in a lilac haze, providing spectacular views from the surrounding hills.

Church Square is built around a statue of Paul Kruger, president of the former Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history.

Once fully completed, the 35-ha site will comprise a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who have contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger.

Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include cow milking, butter- and candle-making, bread baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the Police Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument also has a museum and commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed. The monument receives about 200 000 visitors a year.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre. The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silver and porcelain. Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The Union Buildings celebrates its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It has since been the setting for the presidential inauguration of former President Nelson Mandela in 1994, as well as those of Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999, and 27 April 2004, and of Jacob Zuma on 9 May 2009. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene, south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family. A popular arts and crafts market is held here on certain Saturdays.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, large number of game including rhino and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is being restored by its residents and the National Cultural History Museum. To develop the project into a viable, living tourist village, the 50 families who live there have undergone tourist-guide and business training. It is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to the freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly-pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the Southern Hemisphere.

## KwaZulu-Natal

The garden province of South Africa, KwaZulu-Natal is a subtropical region of lush and well-watered valleys, washed by the warm Indian Ocean. One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Swaziland and Mozambique to the north.

It offers golden beaches and verdant nature reserves. Its western part is marked by the dramatic Drakensberg mountain range, with several peaks well over 3 000 m. The range has been awarded world heritage status for its dramatic natural beauty and the wealth of San Bushman rock art found in its caves – the richest concentration on the continent of Africa.

## Durban and surroundings

The city of Durban, overlooking Africa's busiest seaport, is warm and inviting. It is not only South Africa's domestic tourism leader, but is also highly popular among visitors from throughout Africa and the rest of the world who seek a unique blend of vibrance, sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement in a beautiful setting.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance.

There is a snorkelling trail and a tubing river around the park.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings.

Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbour.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the Southern Hemisphere. Daily tours are available.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile swimming event, the July Handicap horse-race and the Amashova-shova cycle tour, as well as the largest road race in the country, the Spar Mercury Ladies 10-km Challenge.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and contains rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Many varieties of birds, indigenous and exotic, inhabit walk-in aviaries.

The Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff houses the maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa.

## East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele Mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.

East Griqualand is home to the southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, plus the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

## North Coast

Year-round frolicking dolphins and impressive seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast". The larger humpback dolphins are also found here, but rarely seen.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give the region an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, Stanger, Darnall and Umdloti.

## Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th century king who established dominion here some 200 years before Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south.

The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of the largest game parks in South Africa and hosts the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is the venue for a new tourism and economic-development project. Known as "The Valley of Zulu Kings", the joint public-private

sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. A sculptured hilltop monument named Spirit of eMakhosini draws many tourists. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that will eventually support the Big Five of the animal kingdom.

At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried. Ulundi lies at the hub of the old Zulu nation. The KwaZulu Cultural Museum houses interesting displays relating to Zulu history and archaeology. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and is now being reconstructed. A tour provides the opportunity to observe Zulu building techniques and to experience the social life of the Zulu people. Work will begin on a R20-million multimedia centre, which will include first-rate audiovisual representations of Zulu history and culture.

Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The isiZulu word iSimangaliso – meaning "miracle" – has a rich historical context.

The iSimangaliso Wetland Park is one of the jewels of South Africa's coastline, with a unique mosaic of ecosystems – swamps, lakes, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands, coastal forests and grasslands – supporting a diversity of animal, bird and marine life.

It is South Africa's third-largest park, spanning 280 km of coastline, from the Mozambican border in the north to Mapelane south of the St Lucia estuary, and made up of around 328 000 ha of pristine natural ecosystems – including swamps, lake systems, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands and coastal forests.

St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and has five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and bird watching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. St Lucia is the only town in the world that is completely surrounded by a natural world heritage area.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo Mountains before serving as a natural boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km$^2$.

Bird watching and walks through the coastal forest are popular pastimes.

Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba-divers throughout the year, and, in summer, power boaters arrive for some of the best marlin fishing in the world.

## South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and a variety of fun activities and attractions for the whole family.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Prolific birdlife, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, inhabits the reserve, along with a variety of mammals. There is also a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward is known for its safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, birdlife and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Nature's annual extravaganza – the unforgettable Sardine Run – strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers wait for the game fish following the sardines to arrive.

## Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and game viewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts. Pietermaritzburg boasts various museums, including the Voortrekker Museum, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Bird watching, horse riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are situated in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles down 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabitated by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile attracts thousands of swimmers.

## Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered lammergeier (bearded vulture). The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was declared a world heritage site in 2001 and consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. The park is administered by Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife. Their trout hatcheries are located in the Kamberg Reserve area. There are also trout hatcheries at Cathedral Peak.

The Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The Swamp Nature Reserve close by attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge is located in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak and contains examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. Sani Pass may be a road, but the top section is only passable in 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup Hiking Trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest. Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is well worth a visit.

The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela Falls.

## Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa. The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and watersports can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Powerboating and carp fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Other interesting places to visit are Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions in Ladysmith include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, as well as local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

## Conclusion

Tourism as a labour-intensive industry has significant potential and capacity to grow the economy and to create jobs. It is, therefore, central to delivering on government's mandate of creating decent work, sustainable livelihoods and rural development.

To this end, the department's efforts are geared towards creating a conducive environment for the tourism sector to increase its direct contribution to the country's GDP and to increase the number of jobs directly supported by the sector.

From the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ experience, the department has learned that, going forward, it will be particularly critical to not only focus on convention and major-events tourism, but to enhance the capacity to bid for such events. In this regard, South Africa established the SANCB, enabling the development of a coordinated strategy on how best to promote, develop and take advantage of this growing market segment.

The tourism sector must also be able to provide quality, unique and diversified products and services. The department's interventions as far as product development is concerned will therefore still take into account geographic spread, affordability within the industry, and entrenching a culture of travel among South Africans.

To achieve its long-term goals and to position tourism as one of the six key sectors of economic growth, the department will draft a product development strategy for South Africa, as well as strategies for the development of niche tourism products.

To ensure the realisation of all the tourism development priorities, the department adopted the NTSS, which is aimed at positioning South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations globally by 2020.

The department also embarked on a process to review tourism legislation. This process highlighted a number of critical areas to be addressed to achieve sustainable tourism growth and development.

The department is expecting that by 2020, many leading world economies, including South Africa, would have implemented a system of e-visas that will improve security while also facilitating hassle-free travel.

## Acknowledgements

*Business Day*
*Business Report*
Department of Tourism, *Annual Report 2011/12*

*www.askzn.co.za*
*www.bizcommunity.com*
*www.butterflyworld.co.za*
*www.capenature.co.za*
*www.capetourism.org*
*www.cape-town.net*
*www.centralkaroo.co.za*
*www.cheetah.co.za*
*www.clarens.co.za*
*www.doorway.co.za*
*www.ectourism.co.za*
*www.ewn.co.za*
*www.freestateprovince.co.za*
*www.gauteng.net*
*www.giraffehouse.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.indaba-southafrica.co.za*
*www.iol.co.za*
*www.joburg.org.za*
*www.kzn.org.za*
*www.lebonheurcrocfarm.co.za*
*www.lionrescue.org.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*www.meetingsafrica.co.za*
*www.monkeys.co.za*
*www.mpumalanga.com*
*www.nbi.org.za*
*www.news24.co.za*
*www.northerncape.org.za*
*www.pilanesbergnationalpark.org*
*www.sa2010.gov.za*
*www.saao.ac.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sapfa.org.za*
*www.sasdi.co.za*
*www.sati-web.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.southafrica.net*
*www.soweto.co.za*
*www.spier.co.za*
*www.stelmus.co.za*
*www.tep.co.za*
*www.travel.iafrica.com*
*www.travelwires.com*
*www.tourismboard.org.za*
*www.tourismgrading.co.za*
*www.tourismnorthwest.co.za*
*www.visitmosselbay.co.za*
*www.visit-south-africa.co.za*
*www.wheretostay.co.za*
*www.zetler.co.za*
*www.zulu.org.za*

## Suggested reading

Brodie, N. 2010. *Inside Joburg: 101 Things to See and Do*. Craighall Park: Sharp Sharp Media.

Chhabra, D. 2010. *Sustainable Marketing of Cultural and Heritage Tourism*. New York: Routledge.

*Discover Cape Agulhas: The Southern Tip of Africa, Where the Atlantic and Indian Oceans Meet*. 2010. South Africa: Wiz Marketing, for Cape Agulhas Tourism.

George, R. 2011. *Marketing Tourism in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa.

Greenberg, L (ed). 2010. *Home Away: 24 Hours, 24 Cities, 24 Writers*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.

*Greenwood Guide to South Africa: Hand-Picked Accommodation*. Fourth edition. London: Greenwood Guides.

Hiscock, D. 2010. *Cape Town's Man-Made Wonder: Table Mountain Cableway, the First 80 Years*. Cape Town: Table Mountain Aerial Cableway Co.

Keyser, H. 2009. *Developing Tourism in South Africa; Towards Competitive Destinations*. Second edition. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.

South Africa. Department of Tourism. 2012. *Rural Tourism Strategy, April 2012.*

South Africa. Department of Tourism. 2012. *Domestic Tourism Growth Strategy, 2012 – 2020.*

Swanepoel, S. 2012. *Wine Tourism Handbook, South Africa: Enjoying Wine at the Source.* World Focus Media.

Tassiopoulos, D (ed). 2008. *New Tourism Ventures: An Entrepreneurial and Managerial Approach*. Cape Town: Juta.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Transport

An effective transport system is vital for the economic growth and social development of South Africa and, with goods and passengers moving more efficiently, it is a contributing factor for positioning the country as an attractive destination for investment.

The Department of Transport strives to lead the provision of an integrated, sustainable, reliable and safe transport system, by planning, developing, coordinating, promoting and implementing transport policies and strategies.

Although South Africa has a well-developed transport infrastructure with the rail and air networks being the largest in Africa, a great deal still needs to be done before the transport system will effectively meet all the country's transport needs.

Accordingly, government has unveiled plans to spend billions to improve roads, railways and ports.

The National Development Plan (NDP) proposes a number of strategic focus areas in transport infrastructure, which have to be addressed to achieve the ideals outlined for 2030. These areas involve:

- prioritising transport solutions that are safe, affordable and effective options
- focusing on transport as an entire network as opposed to individual transportation modes
- finding ways to become less dependent on transportation by improving spatial planning in cities so that people can live closer to areas of employment
- convincing South Africans to increase the use of public transport, thereby lowering carbon-intensive transportation mode usage, which will reduce the environmental, social and economic costs associated with transport.

## Funding

The budget allocation for the Department of Transport for the 2012/13 financial year totalled R39 billion, growing to R48 billion in 2014/15.

The bulk of this was allocated as follows:

- R10 billion to the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa), of which R5 billion was to go into the acquisition of the new rolling stock

- R18 billion to the management of roads, of which R8,8 billion was intended for the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral)
- R8,7 billion for the S'hamba Sonke Programme
- R10 billion to public transport, R5 billion of which was set aside for bus subsidies and the remaining R5 billion was earmarked for Bus Rapid Transport (BRT)-related projects and the Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP).

In his 2012 State of the Nation Address, President Jacob Zuma announced a massive infrastructure development to boost the country's economy, promote job creation and enhance South Africa's attractiveness to foreign investment. For the immediate future, transport infrastructure spending was boosted to R80 billion for 2013/14, from R66 billion in 2011/12. The spending was to be spread across the country, with both urban and rural areas expected to benefit from the creation of jobs and tourism opportunities.

## Legislation

The Department of Transport is guided by the following legislation and policies:

- The National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009), clarifies the concurrent roles and responsibilities of the different spheres of government in relation to public transport. It also consolidates public transport planning, service delivery, regulation and monitoring in the municipal sphere, establishes the national and provincial public transport regulators and enhances overall transport regulatory functions.
- The incorporation of the Shosholoza Meyl train service and the Autopax long-distance bus services into the Prasa has been finalised in the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Service Amendment Act 2008 (Act 38 of 2008). Autopax will continue to provide long-distance bus services that complement the long distance rail services provided through Shosholoza Meyl.
- The National Road Traffic Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 64 of 2008) and the Cross-Border Transport Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 12 of 2008) allow for better road traffic enforcement and improved cross-border regulation.
- The pilot project for the implementation of the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (Aarto) Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1998), a demerit point system for traffic offences, has been rolled out in the muni-cipal areas of Tshwane and Johannesburg. Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period, the system will be extended to all municipal areas following the establishment of the Road Traffic Infringement Agency (RTIA), which will administer the system.
- The Civil Aviation Act, 2009 (Act 13 of 2009), was promulgated to harmonise and rationalise safety and security legislation for aviation to ensure compliance with International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) standards.
- The Air Service Licensing Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 21 of 2008) addresses corporate governance issues relating to the Air Services Licensing Council. The department plans to implement the airlift strategy and improve aviation safety and compliance with the standards set by the United States of America (US) Federal Aviation Administration's international aviation safety assessment, and by the International Civil Aviation Organisation, an organ of the United Nations (UN).
- The Road Accident Fund (RAF) Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 19 of 2005) came into effect in August 2008 with the publication of regulations guiding, primarily, the assessment of injuries. The Act creates an equitable, affordable and sustainable system for victims of road accidents and their families. In November 2009, Cabinet approved the policy to provide benefits to road accident victims as a form of social security and to move away from the current fault-based systems.
- The RAF: No-Fault Policy for the proposed Road Accident Benefit Scheme was finalised. This will form part of the Comprehensive Social Security System and provide a more sustainable, affordable, equitable

and reasonable scheme. It will also further eliminate disparities regarding access to treatment and compensation.

## Role players

The Department of Transport has established 12 public entities to deliver on certain elements of government's operational activities, namely Airports Company South Africa (Acsa), Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS), the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA), Prasa, the Ports Regulator, the Railway Safety Regulator (RSR), the RAF, the RTIA, the Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), the South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), the South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa) and Sanral. These entities report to the Minister of Transport.

Commercial role players include Transnet, South African Airways (SAA) and SA Express (SAX).

### Airports Company South Africa (Acsa)

Acsa is majority-owned by the South African Government, with the Public Investment Corporation owning 20% and Black Economic Empowerment shareholders and employees holding the remainder. It operates South Africa's nine principal airports, providing airlines with world-class, secure infrastructure.

Acsa is the largest airports authority in Africa. Together, its airports handle more than 200 000 aircraft landings and 23 million arriving and departing passengers annually. The airports handle over 98% of the country's commercial air traffic.

It is estimated that South Africa's three major international airports, namely OR Tambo, Cape Town and King Shaka international airports, sustain about 300 000 jobs (direct and indirect) and that planned future developments, as a result of passenger and cargo growth, will result in the creation of some 150 000 new jobs over the next 10 years, provided the envisaged infrastructure development plans are realised.

For the past nine years, service standards have been benchmarked through the Airports Council International's Airport Service Quality Programme. There are currently 180 airports around the world taking part in this programme, ranging from Atlanta in the US (the largest) to Incheon and Malaysia's Kuala Lumpur (the most efficient). To date, Acsa airports have won 20 achievement awards for passenger satisfaction.

With road network of 16 170 km, South Africa has the longest network of roads of any African country. The drive from Musina in Limpopo in the north to Cape Town at the southern tip of Africa is a 2 000-km journey on well-maintained roads. While the Department of Transport is responsible for overall policy, road-building and maintenance is the responsibility of the South African National Roads Agency and the nine provinces and local governments.

### Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS)

ATNS provides safe, efficient and cost-effective air traffic management solutions and associated services on behalf of the state, in accordance with ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices and the South African Civil Aviation Regulations and Technical Standards.

ATNS is responsible for air traffic control in approximately 10% of the world's airspace and is the sole provider of air traffic, navigation, training and associated services within South Africa. ATNS trains air traffic controllers from South Africa, Africa and the Africa-Indian Ocean area.

### Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA)

The CBRTA was created to regulate cross-border road transport by providing an unsurpassed service through advising, facilitating and law enforcement. It plays a major role in promoting economic development within the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region through facilitating access to cross-border markets and improving the regulatory environment for trade and transport within the SADC region.

The Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa) is set to introduce an electric high-speed train fleet in 2015, which will offer faster journey times and greater reliability. Prasa has appointed Gibela Rail Transportation, a consortium that is led by French company Alstom, to manufacture the trains. Gibela was selected after a rigorous and thorough evaluation process, which involved executive managers at Prasa and transaction advisors from reputable firms throughout the world.

Cross-border road transport is regulated through multi- and bilateral road transport agreements, concluded with various SADC member states and in line with the stipulations of the SADC Protocol on Transport Communication and Meteorology.

## Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa)

Established in 2009, Prasa merged the operations, personnel and assets of the South African Rail Commuter Corporation, Metrorail, Intersite Property Management Services, Shosholoza Meyl and the long-distance bus company, Autopax (Translux and City-to-City). As part of the process of integrating these entities, the role of Intersite was redefined to more effectively support Prasa's new strategic direction and objectives.

Prasa's initial objective was to upgrade the existing passenger railway system to meet the challenges of a modern society. This meant implementing plans for the modernisation of the signalling, telecommunications systems, rolling stock and train operating systems.

More recently, Prasa has shifted its focus away from the stabilisation of commuter rail services towards implementing a major financial turnaround to ensure that it becomes a viable entity capable of delivering on its legal and public transport mandate. Other objectives include integrating individuals and communities, and enabling a better quality of life through access to socio-economic opportunities.

Acquisition of new rolling stock for Prasa has made headlines with the approval of the feasibility study by Cabinet and launch of the procurement process by the Minister of Transport in April 2012.

The accelerated rolling stock programme on Metrorail coaches resulted in 510 coaches delivered for the financial year, 60 coaches above target.

Progress on key infrastructure investment programmes such as the National Signaling Programme and Bridge City Extension is making good progress.

Passenger numbers on the commuter rail side have improved by 9,5% on 2010/11, mainly as a result of actions of Prasa Rail operations to ensure all revenues are collected.

Autopax passengers increased by 65% in 2010/11 as a result of more buses run during the year on mainly existing routes.

## The National Ports Regulator (NPR)

The National Ports Regulator was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005). Its primary function is the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA). The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints, and investigates such complaints.

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. Besides being the port landlord, it also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Based on the *White Paper on the National Commercial Ports Policy (2002)*, the vision for South African ports is to become a system of ports,

seamlessly integrated in the logistics network, that is jointly and individually self-sustainable.

## The Railway Safety Regulator (RSR)

The RSR oversees safety in the railway transport industry, through appropriate support, monitoring and enforcement, guided by an enabling regulatory framework, including regulations and safety standards. Over the medium term, the RSR will continue to strive to work towards an effective railway safety compliance regime.

## Road Accident Fund (RAF)

The RAF is a public entity that compensates victims of motor-vehicle accidents for bodily injuries and/or loss of financial support caused by the death of a breadwinner.

It derives its income from tax levied on petrol and diesel sold in South Africa. The role of the RAF is to reintegrate victims of road accidents into society from a health and economic perspective and protect wrongdoers and their families from financial ruin.

The RAF provides compensation for loss of earnings and support, general damage, and medical and funeral costs to victims of road accidents caused by the negligent or wrongful driving of another road user.

Since the promulgation of the RAF Amendment Act, 2005, compensation has been limited to earnings and loss of support. Compensation for pain and suffering is available only to the seriously injured.

In June 2012, Cabinet approved the RAF (Transitional Provisions) Amendment Bill, 2012 for debate in Parliament. The Bill seeks to provide for transitional measures in respect of certain categories of third parties whose claims were limited under the old Act and give effect to the Constitutional Court judgment of *Mvumvu vs the Minister of Transport*.

South African heavy vehicle drivers scooped five awards in various categories at the 28th World Professional Drivers' Championships.

The awards ceremony, hosted by the Road Traffic Management Corporation and the Department of Transport, was held at Sun City Resort near Rustenburg in August 2012. Vishnu Naidoo from KwaZulu-Natal, was number one in the Rigid category. In the Group category, Team South Africa managed to get four awards, while Finland, Germany and Switzerland took the other awards. South Africa, Finland and Germany scooped most of the awards.

## The Road Traffic Infringement Agency (RTIA)

The RTIA mandate is predicated on the objective of decriminalising road traffic infringements and dealing with them through administrative justice processes, thereby freeing the courts to deal with more serious crimes, including excessive speeding and driving under the influence.

The RTIA's objectives include:

- administering the procedures to discourage the contravention of road traffic laws and to execute the adjudication of infringements
- enforcing penalties imposed against people contravening road traffic laws
- providing specialised prosecution support services
- undertaking community education and community awareness programmes to ensure that individuals understand their rights and options.

## Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC)

The RTMC is responsible for coordinating road-traffic management across the three spheres of government. The core mandate of the corporation is to improve traffic-law compliance and reduce road fatalities.

In line with the UN millennium development goals (MDGs) and the Moscow Declaration on Road Safety, which calls for a Decade of Action for Road Safety, the corporation set itself goals over the medium term to reduce the road fatality rate by 25%. This objective would be achieved through, among others:

- enforcing driver and vehicle fitness requirements
- coordinating effective prosecution of moving traffic violations
- implementing the national traffic law enforcement code.

Cape Town was one of four cities short-listed for the prestigious 2012 Sustainable Transport Awards held in Washington in February 2012, with its non-motorised transport and bus rapid transit network MyCiti receiving an honourable mention. Cape Town received recognition for its 16-km bicycle lane, the longest continuous such lane in Africa.

The corporation also reviewed its strategic focus and developed a five-year strategic plan to improve financial management.

The RTMC will continue with the zero-tolerance approach against traffic offenders, while a comprehensive public media campaign and consultative programme are underway to educate the public about the Aarto Act, 1998.

The allocation of demerit points to infringers will be introduced on a national basis.

## South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA)

SACAA is charged with promoting, regulating and enforcing civil aviation safety and security standards. It performs administrative and oversight control over 11 827 registered aircraft, 2 040 licensed aircraft maintenance engineers, 564 air maintenance organisations, 303 air operating certificate holders, 200 aviation training organisations, as well as 15 595 male and 1 196 female pilots.

In 2012, there has been an increase to 123 accidents from 111 in 2011.

## South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa)

Samsa leads and champions South Africa's maritime interests as custodian and steward of maritime policy, vigorous promoter of the maritime sector and giving full and complete effect to our obligations for the benefit of all stakeholders.

Samsa's mandate can be divided into two broad and distinct outcomes: meeting UN conventions regarding safety and pollution at sea, and attending to nation's developmental challenges as they affect the country's maritime interests.

The first outcome is achieved by ensuring safety of life and property, as well as marine environmental protection, within the South African waters and beyond, through:

- search-and-rescue services
- salvage tug services to protect the marine environment
- port state control ship surveys
- coastal state control
- qualification and certification of seafarers.

## The South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral)

Sanral is responsible for the design, financing, maintenance, operation and rehabilitation of South Africa's national toll and non-toll roads.

Its functions include:

- being responsible for proclaimed national roads
- maintaining, upgrading, operating, rehabilitating and funding the national roads
- levying tolls to service toll roads
- managing concessionaires
- advising the Minister of Transport on road-related matters
- creating public value.

Sanral manages the following: 1 573 km of dual carriageway, 550 km of four-lane undivided roads; 14 047 km of two-lane, single roads; 1 288 km of toll roads; and 1 832 km of state toll roads.

The agency's Open Road Tolling (ORT) Project in Gauteng allows tolling without road users having to negotiate toll plazas.

The intelligent transport systems used in conjunction with the ORT will contribute to lessening congestion, improving road safety, reducing carbon emissions and limiting the impact of greenhouse gases on the environment.

Sanral's strategy of pursuing public-private partnerships (PPPs) has rendered substantial dividends. This policy is based on the reality that there are no "free" roads: they are either funded through general taxes or user fees. By applying the "user-pay" principle, a targeted portion of the national road network can be developed and expanded.

PPPs with Sanral's concessionaires – the N3 Toll Concession (Pty) Ltd (N3TC), the N1/N4 Bakwena Platinum Concession Consortium (BPCC) and the N4 Trans African Concessions (TRAC) – allow Sanral to reduce the cost of transport, provide a safer and more reliable road infrastructure, and build the economy of South Africa and its neighbours. To date, the concessionaires have financed capital work to the value of R5 159,7 million.

## Transnet Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by the South African Government.

It comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail
- Transnet Rail Engineering
- Transnet Port Terminals
- Transnet Pipelines
- TNPA.

In April 2012, Transnet announced the details of a R300-billion investment in infrastructure that is expected to create more than 1,5 million jobs, while making its freight rail division the fifth-largest in the world.

The lion's share of Transnet's R300 billion capital investment programme, R205 billion, will be spent on rail projects – R151 billion on freight rail – as the company pushed to increase freight rail volumes from about 200 million to 350 million tons by 2019, while increasing its market share of container traffic from around 79% to 92%.

A large-scale shift in freight transport from road to rail will also address costs, congestion and reduce carbon emissions.

Transnet's total contribution to employment is expected to increase by 54,8%, from 368 450 in 2011/12 to 570 263 jobs in 2018/19.

Transnet will implement a seven-year locomotive fleet procurement of unprecedented scale in South Africa's history, amounting to approximately R35 billion for 1 064 locomotives.

In July 2012, the arrival of a massive, custom-built pneumatic ship unloader at South Africa's largest exporting port in Richards Bay, KwaZulu-Natal, marked the start of port operator Transnet Port Terminals' seven-year equipment renewal project.

The unloader is only the seventh of its kind in the world, and its arrival signals the start of the Richards Bay Terminal's ambitious R3-billion equipment replacement programme to improve capacity, equipment reliability and service delivery.

In a bid to increase the number of individuals in the technical and engineering fields, as well as to aid in youth employment, TRF had by October 2012 a total of 700 high school pupils on board its Cadet Scheme. Through the scheme, Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) is sponsoring learners from Grade 10 to 12 who are performing well in school, particularly in Maths and Science. The students must have an average of 60% and above. TFR has committed to provide the learners with school uniforms, as well as to pay for tuition fees for both high school and tertiary education.

Once learners have completed their Matric, they go on to study at the University of Johannesburg through a partnership between the university and TFR. The scheme is mainly aimed at young girls and people with disabilities. Other than expos and visiting schools, the scheme is also looking at assisting out-of-school youth through the help of non-governmental organisations and information handed over by local municipalities.

In September 2012, Transnet started to test the longest manangese train from the new Thipi Borwa manganese mine at Kathu in the Northern Cape to the port of Port Elizabeth. The train of 18 diesel locomotives, four test cars and 208 freight cars loaded with manganese was 2,23 km long.

The train will use radio-distributed power technology, which is also used on the iron ore line between Sishen and Saldanha. The new siding at Tshipi is unique in that it has a long loop that can accommodate three trains with 122 cars each without blocking the main line. The siding was designed to last at least 60 years. The trip to Port Elizabeth is 1 085 km and 13 000 tons manganese ore was transported.

### South African Airways (SAA)

SAA is the leading carrier in Africa, serving 26 destinations across the continent, as well as major destinations within South Africa and internationally from its Johannesburg hub at the OR Tambo International Airport and is a member of the largest international airline network, Star Alliance.

SAA's core business is the provision of passenger airline and cargo transport services together with related services, which are provided through SAA and its four wholly owned subsidiaries: SAA Technical; Mango, its low-cost carrier; Air Chefs, the catering entity of SAA; and South African Travel Centre.

A new planned capital injection by government into SAA is part of a plan to make the carrier more competitive in routes to African countries. This will fund a new aviation strategy, which was submitted to Cabinet in June 2012. The strategy focuses on boosting services to the continent, thus boosting regional integration on the continent.

From 17 January 2012, operations started from Johannesburg to Kigali (Rwanda) and onwards to Bujumbura (Burundi). SAA's most recent addition to its African route network was the start of flights to Ndola, Zambia on 2 October 2013.

SAA launched the Johannesburg-Beijing route in January 2012, which is contributing to establishing South Africa as an aviation hub between South America and China, linking three of the five BRICS countries and connecting three continents.

The maiden flight for a new SAA service between Johannesburg to Cotonou, Benin took place in May 2012.

In December 2012, South African Airways won Airline of the Year Award, as well as Best Airline to Africa and Best Business Class White Wine, at *Global Traveller* magazine's annual awards gala in Los Angeles. The airline was praised as having the best product, service and on board amenities in the industry and for being a leader in the marketplace.

In April 2013, SAA received authorisation to fly new safety-enhancing and fuel-saving instrument departure and approach procedures. The approval, which is the first in Africa, paves the way for further developments that could enhance safety and increase operational efficiency throughout SAA's route network.

### SA Express (SAX)

SAX is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier established on 24 April 1994. Although the airline is operationally independent of SAA, its flights are incorporated within the strategic alliance with Airlink and SAA.

## Programmes and projects

### Road Transport Management System (RTMS)

The RTMS is an industry-led voluntary self-regulation scheme that encourages consignees, consignors and road transporters to implement a management system that preserves road infrastructure, improves road safety and increases productivity.

The system's key components are load optimisation, driver wellness, vehicle maintenance and productivity. It is designed to show transport companies how to take greater corporate responsibility for road safety.

A national RTMS steering committee is responsible for the promotion and administration of RTMS in South Africa. It comprises individuals representing major industries and aligned stakeholders within the country.

### National Transport Master Plan (Natmap)

The Department of Transport presented Parliament with the R750-million Natmap in 2010. It includes linking Johannesburg to Durban and Polokwane via rapid train networks; expanding the ports of Saldanha and Cape Town, doubling the Huguenot tunnel outside Paarl.

Part of Natmap is to form partnerships with the private sector to help fund the projects and lower the burden on taxpayers. Its mandate further includes:

The construction of South Africa's latest bus rapid transit (BRT) system started in the Pretoria in July 2012. The R2,6-billion Tshwane BRT system forms part of the city's revitalisation programme. The system will cover a total of some 80 km of bus lines, comprising 62 stations and will run from Mabopane in the north through the Pretoria CBD, past Menlyn and on to Mamelodi in the east. The system will include about 340 buses, some of which will be powered by gas.

Pretoria will be the fourth city in South Africa with a BRT system, joining Johannesburg, Cape Town and Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality.

- facilitating long-term and sustainable socio-economic growth
- promoting comprehensive integrated development planning
- acting as the infrastructure implementation/action plan of macro-scale projects for the whole country.

Natmap's goals include:

- maximising the use of existing infrastructure facilities
- developing future infrastructure facilities
- developing an up-to-date and accurate central land-use/transportation databank.

## Public Transport Strategy

South Africa is on its way to becoming the first country in Africa to have rapid public transport networks. Such networks will not only change the face of the country, but will boost economic development, job creation and tourism.

South Africa's public transport strategy, which comprises a multi-billion rand transport infrastructure plan, is set to entirely reshape travel in South Africa. At the core of the plan is a high-quality Integrated Mass Rapid Public Transport Network that includes rail, taxi and bus services. The strategy aims to accelerate the improvement in public transport by establishing integrated rapid public transport networks (IRPTNs), which will introduce priority rail corridors and BRT systems in cities.

The Public Transport Strategy is expected to improve public transport services for more than half the country's population.

The long-term goal of the strategy is to have 85% of a metropolitan city's population within one kilometre of the network, and provide a transport service that is clean, comfortable, reliable, fast, secure, safe and affordable.

Consolidated government transport improvements will amount to R80 billion in 2013/14.

As part of government's commitment towards rural development, the S'hamba Sonke Programme addresses road maintenance on secondary roads and rural roads, with particular emphasis on repairing potholes, using labour-intensive methods of construction and maintenance. R6,4 billion was set aside for this programme in 2011/12, R7,5 billion in 2012/13 and R8,2 billion for 2013/14, amounting to a total of R22,3 billion in the medium term.

## Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

eNaTIS is a system which provides for the registration and licensing of vehicles. It manages and records applications for and authorisation of driving and learner's licences.

It is also a law-enforcement tool used to ensure that the details of stolen vehicles are circulated and prevents irregular and fraudulent re-registration of such vehicles.

The system delineates the life cycle of a vehicle, from the factory floor to the scrap yard.

In September 2012, it became compulsory for all new motor vehicles and motor vehicles requiring a police clearance to be microdotted.

The Department of Transport and the South African Police Service (SAPS) would enforce the requirements through eNaTIS.

The registration of a motor vehicle introduced onto the eNaTIS by the manufacturer, importer or builder after September 2012 would only be allowed if the microdot information was loaded onto the system.

## S'hamba Sonke Road Maintenance Project

The S'hamba Sonke (meaning "Walking Together") Programme, launched in April 2011, is dedicated to the maintenance of roads. The

In May 2012, the Minister of Public Enterprises, Mr Malusi Gigaba, unveiled a plaque at the Salt River Engineering Works, the oldest railway plant in the Southern Hemisphere. The plant has been at the heart of South Africa's transport network since 1862. It is central to the maintenance facilities that support the Sishen-Saldanha iron-ore heavy-haul export corridor and the General Freight Business in the Western Cape.

objectives of the programme are to, among other things, allocate a sizable amount of budget for pothole repairs on a district-by-district basis, as well as the maintenance and upgrading of heavily trafficked rural transport corridors and ensuring access to public facilities.

Since the launch of the programme, the Department of Transport has created more than 13 280 jobs and spent more than R1,7 billion.

In 2011/12, the S'hamba Sonke Programme created 68 000 full-time employment opportunities. Between 2012 and 2014, another 50 000 employment opportunities are envisaged.

Through the project, 100 new contractors have created 6 500 jobs, benefitting co-operatives and companies owned by women, youth and people with disabilities.

The department allocated the project R75 billion for 2012/13 and R8,2 billion for 2013/14, amounting to R22,3 billion in the medium term.

## Rural Transport Strategy

The deep rural areas are still isolated from major road and rail routes. The Rural Transport Strategy, approved by Cabinet in December 2007, is promoting mobility in such areas.

Regarding the improvement of strategic roads and implementation of the Road Infrastructure Strategic Framework of South Africa, National Treasury and the Department of Transport have rolled out the provincial road maintenance grant of more than R22 billion.

Rural infrastructure contributes to job creation and improves the socio-economic needs of people in rural areas. It ensures access to schools, clinics and economic opportunities.

The Rural Access Improvement Programme is part of a comprehensive rural transport strategy for South Africa, which addresses challenges in rural development, such as:

- building bridges and non-motorised transport (NMT) facilities
- developing and implementing the IRPTNs for regular transport services
- developing and upgrading the airport network with a proper road-link infrastructure and services
- revitalising rural railway operations by expanding rail passenger services and freight operations to the rural areas.

Through the EPWP, the department aims to contribute to job creation by implementing labour-intensive projects.

## Non-motorised transport (NMT)

The promotion of NMT is mainly aimed at increasing transport mobility and accessibility, mainly in rural areas.

The Department of Transport has broadened its Shova Kalula ("Pedal Easy") Project into a more comprehensive NMT project that incorporates, among other things, cycling and animal-drawn carts. The project was first launched in 2001 and introduced in Limpopo in 2010.

The project forms part of government's action programme and is expected to contribute to its anti-poverty strategy and second-economy interventions. It is believed that these initiatives improve the mobility of and access to economic opportunities by rural communities.

The department aims to distribute a million bicycles countrywide by 2015, in line with the resolution and action plan of the African Ministers' Transport Summit held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, in 2005.

The Department of Transport has expressed interest in establishing a local bicycle-manufacturing plant to produce bicycles for the project. The Shova Kalula Project also incorporates micro-businesses, which sell, repair and maintain bicycles to ensure the sustainability of the project.

## Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

The TRP is an intervention by government to bring about safe, effective, reliable, affordable

and accessible taxi operations by introducing new taxi vehicles designed to undertake public transport functions in the taxi industry.

The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but also about how best operators can be assisted to benefit constructively in the industry through empowerment.

Through the introduction of the new taxi vehicles in the TRP, the government for the first time prescribed "compulsory safety and other requirements" to protect passengers, operators, pedestrians, motorists and other road users. The compulsory requirements are also meant to ensure passenger comfort.

Through the TRP, government has ensured the following changes:

- introduction of safety requirements for passengers
- comfort for passengers by insisting on the size and number of seats
- promotion of accessibility on the size and number of seats
- branding and colour coding of taxi vehicles so that legal taxis could be identified and differentiated from illegal ones, and also that members of the public can easily identify a taxi vehicle.

## Resources

### Roads

#### National roads

Government is responsible for overall policy, while road-building and maintenance is the responsibility of Sanral.

The Department of Transport continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe.

A new national roads plan was developed, acknowledging the importance of roads to the economy.

Between 2010 and 2015, R75 billion is to be used for road infrastructure, maintenance and upgrading; with an additional R3 billion budgeted for the EPWP access roads, all of which are attempts by government to alleviate traffic congestion.

In 2012, more than R500 million was spent in Gauteng on the construction and maintenance of roads. The R82 (the old Vereeniging Road) linking Johannesburg and Sedibeng, as well as William Nicol Drive, were upgraded. The construction of the K154 was undertaken, stimulating development in the rural parts of south Sedibeng.

As part of rural development, roads in five rural development nodes – Magaliesburg, Winterveld, Hammanskraal, Rust de Winter and Bantu Bonke – had been upgraded.

#### Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under Sanral or local governments. The Department of Transport assists provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

#### Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns is the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

#### Toll roads

The toll road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the national road grid. Some 1 832 km of these toll roads are managed by Sanral.

In its endeavour to continue with the expansion and maintenance of the comprehensive national road network, Sanral will continue with the selective expansion of the toll road network.

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of national roads have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

The Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, announced a special appropriation of R5,8 billion to Sanral for its Gauteng Freeway Improvement Project (GFIP) in efforts to reduce the toll motorists will pay for use of the highways. Government aimed to reduce the R20-billion

debt to be paid through the toll system and enable a further discount for regular users of the freeway.

In April 2012, Cabinet appointed a committee to be chaired by the Deputy President to coordinate all work around the GFIP. Other members of the committee include the ministers of transport, finance, public enterprises, and performance monitoring and evaluation in The Presidency; and the Director-General in The Presidency.

This committee was mandated, among other things, to move with urgency to ensure that Sanral's financial stability was not affected in any way. The committee assessed government's response to the North Gauteng High Court ruling that delayed the implementation of e-tolls and other related legal matters. It also met with appropriate stakeholders to find constructive solutions and consensus on the outstanding matters.

During the ongoing legal proceedings, government had to act responsibly, ensuring that it and the state-owned enterprises honoured their financial obligations timeously.

Government also had to ensure that nothing compromised its huge infrastructure programme, which is crucial for raising the level of South Africa's economic growth and for raising the standard of living of citizens, especially the poor and unemployed.

In August 2012, Cabinet approved the Transport Laws and Related Matters Amendment Bill, 2012 for submission to Parliament.

The Bill had been necessitated by the development of the GFIP, as well as future plans for the development of road infrastructure.

The second Congress of the African Association of Public Transport (UATP) took place in Johannesburg in October 2012. The UATP is an independent association that represents professionals in Africa in the field of public transport and the transportation of goods by road, rail, sea, air and water. This year's congress focused on bus rapid transit (BRT) systems as an adapted and sustainable solution for mobility in African cities.

## Rail

### Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80-km mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and OR Tambo International Airport. It was built to relieve the traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

The project was announced in 2000, before South Africa won the rights to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Government gave the go-ahead for the project in 2005, and construction began in 2006. In June 2012, the project was completed with the opening of the final section between Rosebank and Johannesburg Park Station.

In a survey conducted in 2012 by Catalyst Research, passengers had rated the service highly for train punctuality (94%), convenience (94%), value for money (93%), safety and security (92%), and cleanliness (92%).

Some 35% of passengers fall into the 35 to 49 year age bracket. About 20% are younger than 24 and the majority are women.

Less than three incidents of theft per million passengers had been reported since the start of operations between Hatfield in Pretoria and Rosebank in Johannesburg in August 2011. No contact crime, such as muggings, had been reported on the Gautrain. Over 400 security guards and 800 CCTV cameras keep a watchful eye over the entire system.

By April 2013, passenger figures were close to 50 000 people a day. That implicated that, with an average of 1,1 people per car in South Africa, there were almost 50 000 fewer cars on the roads per day.

## Aviation

South Africa's nine major airports are:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal
- Bloemfontein International in the Free State

- Port Elizabeth International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- East London Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape

Acsa handles more than 10 million departing passengers and 200 000 aircraft landings annually.

Aviation is well placed to continue its strong support of South Africa's trade, business and leisure tourism objectives. Together with SAA and SAX, the department drafted an African Aviation Strategy that was submitted to Cabinet in June 2012. The strategy is aimed at focusing the state-owned airlines on opportunities in the continent and on promoting regional integration.

The dual challenge of a depressed global economy and high fuel prices means that shareholder support for SAA to procure a modern and fuel-efficient fleet is vital if it is to remain competitive.

The department is working with the SAX Board to address the internal control challenges that the company is currently facing to restore public confidence in the company.

The airline has launched three new domestic routes and has further established a base at King Shaka International Airport from which the airline will play a catalytic role in continental trade and economic integration, supporting the Dube Trade Port industrial development zone as well.

In January 2011, the Department of Transport announced the approval and coming into effect of the National Airspace Master Plan (NAMP) 2011 – 2015. It provides a strategic view and direction of airspace organisation and management within South Africa, as well as the notion of performance-based transition planning at global, regional and local level. It has been compiled in accordance with the National Civil Aviation Policy, as amended, and is effective as of January 2011.

The objectives of the NAMP include::

- servicing the airspace in accordance with ICAO standards and recommended practices in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users and, particularly, the international community
- rationalising all managed airspace in accordance with ICAO standards and recommended practices in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users by a consultative process, strategically and tactically
- minimising all permanently prohibited, restricted and danger areas in accordance with ICAO standards and practices, and to facilitate the flexible use of airspace to the benefit of all users.

The NAMP will also guide the National Airspace Committee, established through the Civil Aviation Regulations, 1997, in the execution of its mandate, by providing measurable key performance areas, performance objectives, indicators and targets in contemplating amendments to airspace, procedures and infrastructure.

In November 2012, Transnet Freight Rail's (TFR's) first train service to transport hematite products from Swaziland to South Africa's Richards Bay started. The service is expected to stimulate job creation and add an estimated 1,2 Mt a year to the TFR's annual railings. It was designed to run seven trains a week.

### Airlift Strategy

Cabinet approved the Airlift Strategy in July 2006 to introduce effectively structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth for South Africa.

In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the county's growth by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry
- prioritising tourism and trade markets
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

In particular, the strategy supports the MDGs and the objectives of the New Partnership for Africa's Development to increase African connectivity and access through the accelerated

implementation of the Yamoussoukro Decision of 1999 on the liberation of intra-Africa air-traffic services.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

The strategy enhances the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronises the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply-side of air-transport services.

The department also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met. The Airlift Strategy is expected to promote the provision of adequate air-service capacity and infrastructure to cater for the projected growth in air movements within South Africa, and between South Africa and its key international partners.

### Airlines

Several domestic airlines, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies, operate in South Africa. SAA, British Airways (BA)/Comair, SA Express, SA Airlink and Inter-Air operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands.

In addition to serving Africa, SAA also operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East.

Other airlines operating in the country are Kulula and Mango. Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Airlink Swaziland, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al, Egyptair, Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

In May 2012, the South African Government welcomed the introduction of regular flights from Eritrea. Eritrean Airlines will fly to Cape Town International Airport and OR Tambo Airport four times a week.

In May 2012, the Eastern Cape Provincial Government handed over Mthatha Airport to the South African National Defence Force for a maximum of five years. It will be used for training, particularly by the South African Air Force. In return, the Ministry of Defence will help to construct a new runway to accommodate larger aircraft. This initiative forms part of the Mthatha Airport Upgrade Project, which is in line with the Blue Skyway Aviation Strategy of the Eastern Cape Provincial Government and the King Sabata Dalindyebo Presidential Intervention Project.

## Freight transport

### Ports

A major part of world trade depends on South Africa's coastal waters. The country is situated on a major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 million tons of crude petrochemical sea trade. This represents over 30% of the world's petrochemical production, on board over 5 000 tanker voyages of very large crude carriers per year.

The country's ports handle over 430 Mt of varied cargo types, carried on over 9 000 ship calls each year. The nine commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socioeconomic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

### Hub ports

The Port of Durban is a full-service general cargo and container port. It is the most conveniently situated port for the industrialised Durban/Pinetown and Gauteng areas and cross-border traffic.

The Port of Durban has developed into Africa's busiest multiservice port, handling up to 80 Mt of cargo, and on average, 4 000 ships a year.

### Multipurpose ports

The Port of Port Elizabeth, with its proximity to heavily industrialised and intensively farmed areas, has facilities for handling all commodities – bulk, general and container cargo. Being situated at the centre of the country's motor-vehicle-manufacturing industry, the port imports large volumes of containerised components and raw material for this industry. The bulk of exports comprises agricultural products. Apart from agricultural produce, manganese ore, motor-vehicle-industry-related products and steel are exported.

Located mid-way between Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, the Port of Mossel Bay has, in the past, specialised in serving the local inshore and deep-sea fishing industry, as well as limited commercial cargo. However, it now serves the oil industry as well as other client-oriented marine cargo. This port is the only South African port that operates two offshore mooring points within port limits. Both mooring points are used for the transport of refined petroleum products.

The Port of East London is situated at the mouth of the Buffalo River on South Africa's east coast, and is the country's only commercial river port. It boasts a large container terminal and grain elevator, and is the largest exporter of maize. With a world-class R80-million car terminal, the port has become one of the major motor-vehicle export and import terminals in South Africa.

## Pipelines

South Africa consumes about 25 billion litres of petroleum products a year.

Transnet Pipelines transports almost 50% of all refined petroleum products in the country for the emerging and major oil companies of South Africa. The Tarlton storage and distribution depot is a vital conduit in the supply of fuel to Botswana. Transnet Pipelines plans to enhance this service.

Transnet Pipelines transports all the crude requirements for the inland refinery at Natref, from where almost 70% of their refined products and 80% at Secunda are transported through the pipeline network to the final markets.

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines.

Investment is ongoing in the pipeline sector. Construction on a R5,8-billion fuel pipeline between the Mozambican Port of Matola in Maputo and Kendal in South Africa started in 2009. The 450-km pipeline transports up to 3,5 M$\ell$ a year and is expected to prevent potential fuel shortages in South Africa.

The pipeline facilitates the importation of petrol and diesel from Mozambique, which has extensive natural gas and coal reserves, but no oil reserves. Of the pipeline's total capacity of 3,5 M$\ell$ of fuel and diesel, a maximum of 1,5 M$\ell$ is diverted to Mbombela while the remainder is transported to Kendal.

More than 60% of South Africa's liquid-fuels demand lies within the Durban-Johannesburg Corridor. The Durban-Johannesburg Pipeline has become inadequate to transport the required volumes of petroleum products from the coast to the inland regions.

The old Durban International Airport (DIA) was handed over from Airports Company South Africa to Transnet to meet the demand for container capacity in Durban. Once transformed, the DIA will become home to 16 container berths, five automotive berths and four liquid-bulk berths. It is expected to create 20 000 direct and 47 000 indirect jobs during the construction phase. Once operationalised, it will employ 12 000 people directly and another 16 000 indirectly through the value chain of suppliers.

The multiproduct pipeline, which is under construction at a cost of R23 billion between Durban and Johannesburg, will be replacing the existing Durban-Johannesburg pipeline and is expected to increase capacity from 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres by December 2013.

## Freight

Africa's road access rate is only 34% compared with 50% in other geographical zones. Yet roads remain the dominant mode of transportation, accounting for more than 90% of passenger and freight transport in Africa, compared with around 50% of freight in Europe.

Government will also review its rail investment programme to accelerate the shift of freight transport from road to rail.

Transnet will invest about R63 billion in the freight rail system over the next five years. For its part, organised business will continue to promote greater use of rail freight by companies.

In August 2011, the Integrated Transport Planning Unit in the Department of Transport made a presentation to Parliament on *The Reduction of Freight Transportation by Road – A Shift Towards Rail*, which focused on, among other things:

- the challenges of transporting freight by both road and rail
- an analysis of the road and rail market share (with mostly the market share shifting to road)
- key freight corridors
- identified rail- and road-friendly commodities
- factors contributing to the decline of freight rail
- policy and strategic thrusts.

The Parliamentary Portfolio Committee on Transport, which requested the presentation, raised questions about interventions and solutions in addressing challenges caused by road in particular, which spill over to the deterioration of the rail market share, and current specific transport policies, strategies and implementation plans.

The Department of Transport has, in its efforts to address transport challenges, taken the following steps:

- the 2005 Cabinet-approved National Freight Logistics Strategy, which proposed an institutional arrangement for railways
- the draft Rail Branch Line Strategy, which seeks to capacitate the current challenges faced by the secondary rail network and allow private operators on this specific network, and subsequently competition
- the Natmap, which deals with a demand forecast model in relation to demand for both passenger and freight transport and the institutionalisation thereof
- the Road Freight Strategy, which recommends proposals on how to better manage the road freight environment such as through axle load mass limits, commodities that were identified as road friendly as well as those that are rail friendly
- the *Green Paper on Rail Policy* as a blueprint for railways (both passenger and freight in the country)
- a single transport regulator and related rail economic regulator, which seeks to regulate market access to the current rail network for private operators who would have an opportunity to operate on the secondary rail network.

In March 2012, President Jacob Zuma unveiled a state-of-the-art cargo terminal, a trade zone, an agrizone and associated property development at the Dube Trade Port in La Mercy, KwaZulu-Natal. The port, in which the King Shaka International Airport is located, has been operational for 22 months and the first phase has been completed. Included was the construction of the Cargo Terminal, Trade House, 29 South, Dube Square, Trade Zone and Dube City infrastructure, Agrizone and the information technology and telecommunications platform.

The establishment of an aerotropolis in the north of Durban, stretching from Umhlanga to Ballito, which will boost economic development and job creation on the north coast and take forward the campaign against poverty, unemployment and inequality, is envisaged for the port in the long term.

## Transnet Freight Rail (TFR)

TFR, the largest operating division of Transnet, has as its primary purpose the transportation of rail freight. Core freight activities account for about 95% of its revenue. It is a world-class heavy-haul freight rail company that specialises in the transportation of freight.

Transnet Ltd, operating and controlling South Africa's major transport infrastructure, is also responsible for ensuring that the country's transport industries operate according to world-class standards. Forming an integral part of the southern African economy, Transnet:

- moves 17% of the nation's freight annually
- exports 100% of the country's coal
- exports 100% of the iron ore
- 30% of the core network carries 95% of freight volumes
- has annual revenues of over R14 billion
- will, over the next five years, invest R35 billion in capital
- has 25 347 employees system-wide.

The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

Containers handled by South Africa's port would grow from 4,3 million to 7,6 million twenty-foot equivalent units (TEUs) – a TEU is the volume of a standard six-metre shipping container – while petroleum products conducted via pipelines would increase by over three billion litres to more than 20 billion litres by 2019.

The associated procurement programme would boost local industry, with about half of the R78 billion set aside for locomotives to be spent on local suppliers.

## Maritime

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It caters to a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The Department of Transport is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation, which Samsa controls on its behalf in terms of the Samsa Act, 1998.

The broad aim of Samsa is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships.

The Department of Environmental Affairs is responsible for combating pollution and uses Kuswag coast-watch vessels to perform this function. Samsa is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in London, with respect to:

- ship construction
- maritime training and training curricula
- watch-keeping
- certification of seafarers
- manning and operation of local and foreign ships
- maritime search-and-rescue
- marine communications and radio navigation aids
- pollution prevention.

Samsa has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, human resources, and information technology issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

Samsa is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. Numerous ships calling at South Africa's major ports are inspected, and those not complying with international safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation, Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are South Africa's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports, but also as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

South Africa signed an agreement to establish the subregional Maritime Rescue Co-ordination Centre (MRCC) in South Africa and subregional maritime subcentres in the

Comoros, Madagascar, Mozambique and Namibia, in 2007. South Africa also contributed R100 000 to be used in the operations of the International Maritime Security Fund.

## The South African Maritime Training Academy

The South African Maritime Training Academy at Simon's Town in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy. The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology.

Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology and the Durban Institute of Technology, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Training Centre for Seamen, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

Samsa is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the Department of Transport, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

As part of an initiative to reduce the vacancy rate of at least 45 000 jobs in the maritime industry, 12 Further Education and Training (FET) colleges across the country started to offer courses aimed at equipping young people for a career in the industry from 2013.

The FET colleges will meet at least 80% of the industry's skills demands, producing artisans such as riggers, welders and boiler makers. Between 1 200 and 1 600 students enter the maritime industry after completing their studies every year. But this total is not enough to meet the industry's immediate needs.

Africa's first-ever training vessel, the *SA Agulhas*, will go to Ghana, Abidjan in the Ivory Coast, before docking in Canary Wharf in London.

Through its involvement in the African Union, South Africa was leading the development of an integrated African Maritime Strategy.

On her way to London, the *SA Agulhas* will pick up 12 cadets to join the 51 already on board. The 12 cadets represent a myriad of cultures from Cameroon, Gambia, Ghana and the Ivory Coast.

## Public transport

In terms of the Constitution, legislative and executive powers in respect of public transport are a provincial competency. National government, however, is responsible for policy formulation, monitoring and strategic implementation.

The Department of Transport continues to administer subsidies for buses and other subsidised forms of public transport.

The department identified public transport as a key legacy project for the World Cup and beyond. This included world-class airports, upgraded train stations, refurbished coaches and luxury buses, taxis and IRPTNs such as the BRT System.

## Rapid public transport networks

Twelve cities in South Africa are involved in the implementation of rapid public transport networks. Polokwane, Rustenburg, Mbombela and Pietermaritzburg are some of the cities, in addition to the metros that are involved in the rollout of the rapid public transport infrastructure.

About R5 billion has been allocated in the 2012/13 financial year for this project.

Stimulated by the transport needs arising from the 2010 Soccer World Cup™, South Africa started to introduce BRT systems in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Mangaung, Nel-

The Freight Intra-Africa (FIA) South 2012 conference and expo was held in Pretoria in March 2012. The aim of the FIA is to highlight initiatives, projects and the role of the regions in the continent's development through effective transport solutions. The focus of the conference was on programmes that will fast-track Africa's cross-border transport networks by all transport modes (road, sea, rail and air) to facilitate trade and stimulate sustainable economic growth.

son Mandela Bay and the City of Tshwane. The City of Cape Town refers to its system as Integrated Rapid Transit, to emphasise its role in a broader system of public transport that involves more than just buses.

Rustenburg in the North West is the latest city to establish the system. The Rustenburg Rapid Transport Project was launched in 2011 to manage mobility and congestion within this medium-sized-city – and aims to satisfy the needs of all road users, including pedestrians, cyclists, public transport users and motorists.

South Africa decided to introduce BRT systems rather than other systems, such as light rail, because of the enormous infrastructure costs associated with such systems, and their lack of flexibility.

All the South African BRT systems will expand in phases over the next decade.

A particularly important dynamic in South Africa is how the system will integrate and include the minibus industry, since by law, public transport interventions need to involve existing operators.

The BRT systems are not seen as the final solution to public transport in South Africa, but will form part of an integrated system of different modes and linked to cycle ways and walkways as part of the NMT system that should also be developed.

## Infrastructure development

It is the mandate of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordination Commission (PICC) to oversee the implementation of infrastructure projects that stimulate social and economic growth.

South Africa's infrastructure plans include economic and social infrastructure that will unlock key mineral resources and exports. This infrastructure plan is coordinated by the PICC, which was established in September 2011, bringing together ministers, premiers and metro mayors under the leadership of the President.

A total of 43 major infrastructure projects will be implemented between 2012 and 2014, amounting to R845 billion of which R300 billion is in the energy sector and R262 billion in transport and logistics projects.

Plans for transport development include the acquisition of new commuter coaches by the Prasa. The acquisition of the coaches will be divided into two 10-year batches, with approximately 3 600 vehicles included in each batch.

The new fleet will be introduced over a period of 20 years while the existing fleet is being phased out. New depots with the necessary equipment to maintain a modern fleet will be built while the existing depots are retained to maintain the existing fleet.

It is estimated that over the 20-year duration of the new rail project, approximately 65 000 direct, indirect and induced jobs will be created.

The 2010 – 2050 Vision for the Durban-Gauteng Transport Corridor provides an integrated transport solution to the growing expansion requirements of the corridor, which will form the foundation for the establishment of a Southern African Regional Freight Corridor.

The work being done includes the expansion of ports, finalisation of rail and road projects; finalising the concept of the Harrismith Freight Logistics Gateway, Cato Ridge and Tembo-Springs.

The Port of Durban, the Durban-Gauteng Corridor, logistics hubs and terminals are project development components aimed at speeding up the transportation of goods.

The expansion of the iron-ore rail line between Sishen in the Northern Cape and Saldanha Bay in the Western Cape will create large numbers of jobs in both provinces. The iron-ore capacity on the transport-side will

increase capacity to 100 Mt per year, which will allow for the expansion of iron-ore mining over the next decade.

A major new south-eastern node will also be developed to improve the industrial and agricultural development and export capacity of the Eastern Cape region and to expand the province's economic and logistics linkages with the Northern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

In July 2012, South African Airways (SAA) won the SKYTRAX Best Airline in Africa Award for the 10th time in a row. It also received the Best Staff Service in Africa Award for the third time in succession, confirming that SAA's service and connections to 26 African destinations via Johannesburg, ranks among the best in the world.

The World Airline Awards are the global benchmark of airline excellence. Other accolades bestowed on SAA in 2012 include a four-star rating in February by SKYTRAX.

## Rail

The Department of Transport has embarked on a process of developing an all-encompassing national rail transport policy which will cover freight, long-distance passenger and commuter rail.

Prasa is at the forefront of government efforts to transform public transport in South Africa, with rail services forming the backbone of the network. Prasa's main responsibility is to integrate inter-modal facilities and services into public transport solutions that optimise the performance of the whole transport system.

The main thrust of the rail policy will focus on investment and new modern technology. It will address the regulatory framework required, particularly economic regulation, infrastructure and operations. It will also make proposals regarding the investment required to restore rail to its rightful place in the country's economy.

Through Prasa, the Department of Transport is embarking on a programme to invest in new rail rolling stock over a period of up to 20 years. The programme enables Prasa to procure new rolling stock and locomotives for the metro service and long-distance rail services.

R136 billion has been set aside to acquire about 7 000 new trains and to upgrade and modernise railway stations, creating around 65 000 new jobs in the process.

Of the total amount, R13 billion will be spent on infrastructure development and about R3 billion on the construction of new depots in Cape Town and Gauteng. The first new trains are expected by 2015. A further 500 to 600 new coaches per year will be delivered until 2032.

By 2020 existing logistics corridors are expected to be expanded upon and new corridors will have been established. A world-class export-orientated, rail manufacturing sector and 6 405 km of rail are expected to have been replaced for the general freight, coal and ore lines, increasing the rail network capacity by 149,7 Mt.

Long-distance commuter services such as the Moloto, Durban-to-Johannesburg and Durban-to-Gauteng corridors were identified for development.

The Durban-to-Gauteng Corridor is the busiest corridor in the Southern Hemisphere, both in terms of value and tonnage. It also forms the backbone of South Africa's freight transportation network.

## Ports

Transnet Port Terminals will spend R33 billion over the next seven years on upgrading and expanding South Africa's ports, as part of a massive state-led infrastructure drive aimed at boosting the country's economic growth.

The expansion projects will see major increases in the container-handling capacity of the ports in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal and Ngqura outside Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape.

Durban Container Terminal's Pier 1 will see its capacity grow from 700 000 to 1,2 million TEUs by 2016/17, while its Pier 2 capacity will expand from 2,1 million to 3,3 million TEUs by 2017/18.

The Ngqura Container Terminal, which has been earmarked as a trans-shipment hub, will be expanded from 800 000 to two million TEUs by 2018/19.

Container capacity is also being created in other terminals, such as the Durban Ro-Ro and Maydon Wharf Terminal, through the acquisition of new equipment, including mobile cranes and various infrastructure upgrades.

In March 2012, President Jacob Zuma officially opened the new multi-billion rand Port of Ngqura.

The port is said to be the deepest container terminal in sub-Saharan Africa and will accommodate the new generation of giant container ships that regularly visit the country's shores.

Given its positioning and size, the Ngqura Trade Port will go a long way in boosting South Africa's trade with other countries in the region and is expected to support the country's new growth path. The planning of the Ngqura has been integrated with that of the Coega Development Zone.

The bulk handling capacity at Ngqura, Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, and Saldanha in the Western Cape will also come in for major expansion.

R3,7 billion has been set aside for the ageing Richards Bay Terminal. Investments in mobile equipment, quayside equipment and weighbridges were fast-tracked for 2012/13. Safety-critical, environmental and legal compliance projects are also in the pipeline.

In addition, some R1,2 billion will be spent on creating new capacity, including new storage areas, at Richards Bay. Transnet is also pursuing the re-engineering of the port to create additional capacity for bulk products at the terminal.

Saldanha's iron-ore bulk facility, which has undergone significant expansion in recent years, will be further expanded, taking its capacity from 60 Mt to 82 Mt a year.

Additional manganese capacity will be created by relocating the existing 5,5 Mt a year export facility in Port Elizabeth to a new two-berth manganese facility at the Port of Ngqura, boosting capacity to 12 Mt a year from 2016/17.

## Safety of travellers

World-wide, roughly 1,3 million people die on the roads and 50 million sustain non-fatal injuries every year. In South Africa, 14 000 people die in road crashes annually. This amounts to almost R56 billion annually in lost revenue, medical costs, insurance and lost income.

The Zenani Mandela Road Safety Scholarship, launched in April 2011 by the Nelson Mandela Foundation and the Commission for Global Road Safety, will help young South Africans tackle the growing epidemic of death and injury on the country's roads. The announcement took place at the launch of the *Make Roads Safe, Time for Action* report of the Commission for Global Road Safety. The report makes a series of recommendations for the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020.

In March 2011, the Traffic Police National Intervention Unit (NIU) was established. The NIU is a specialised intervention force that was deployed to deal with any traffic situation in the country. It is a joint programme of the RTMC and Sanral.

The 231 traffic officers who comprise the NIU received special training in advanced driving, interpersonal communication, anti-corruption, dealing with diplomatic personnel, first aid and incident management. This unit is intensifying the policing of the national roads network.

The unit engages in joint operations with provincial traffic authorities, municipal/metro police, the SAPS, CBRTA, the Military Police and other relevant agencies such as the South African Revenue Service, and the departments of immigration and environmental affairs.

The NIU is deployed at roadside checkpoints, multi-disciplinary roadblocks, high-impact visibility patrols, unmarked patrols and alcohol test centres.

A significant part of the unit's work is to intervene in corruption-riddled traffic centres around the country. The unit is available for deployment in areas identified for special attention. These include national roads where enforcement is particularly weak, provincial hotspots and municipalities and villages with high incidences of road accidents.

## Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign has become an important part of the Department of Transport's road safety projects and awareness efforts, especially during critical periods for road traffic management such as Easter and the December holidays.

The Arrive Alive campaign is seen as a national effort by all South Africans to take hands in the promotion of road safety.

The main goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

## Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020. The UN General Assembly resolution proclaiming a Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 was tabled by the Government of the Russian Federation and cosponsored by more than 90 countries.

The initiative aims to save lives by halting the increasing trends in road traffic deaths and injuries world-wide.

As part of South Africa's contribution to this global initiative, efforts were focused on four key areas in 2012:

- fatigue or driver fitness
- drinking and driving
- use of seat belts
- pedestrian safety.

## Passenger rail safety

The National RSR Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for the setting up of the independent RSR, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport. The mandate of the RSR is to:

- oversee safety in railway transport, while operators remain responsible for managing the safety of their operations
- develop an appropriate regulatory framework through the development of regulations and standards for safe railway operations
- monitor and ensure safety compliance by conducting audits, inspections, safety assessments and occurrence investigations
- collect and disseminate information relating to safe railway operations
- promote the harmonisation of the railway safety regime of South Africa with SADC railway operations
- promote improved safety performance to support the use of rail.

In pursuance of this mandate, the RSR has, in collaboration with the railway industry and the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS), developed a series of standards to ensure a common and consistent approach to railway safety in areas such as safety management, technical and operational requirements, and management of human factors.

In May 2011, the SABS published the National Standard on Human Factors Management, which was developed to provide railway operators with the minimum requirements to manage human factors. The standard will be mandatory for all railway operators in South Africa. The standard is applicable to all employees undertaking safety-related work in the railway environment.

A key to the successful regeneration of the railway system in South Africa, and indeed the subregion, is the interoperability of the railways. This implies consistent standards and common usage of technology where railway infrastructure is used by more than one operator. The RSR and the railway industry continue to collaborate in developing the overarching broad technical and operating standards.

The need for harmonisation of safety standards within the SADC region is of strategic importance. The RSR is facilitating efforts to adopt and align the current railway safety standards by regional railway operators through the Southern African Railway Association (Sara).

In November 2012, Gauteng MEC for Roads and Transport, Ismail Vadi, officially opened the R600-million R55 dual carriageway stretching from Sunderland Ridge in Johannesburg to Laudium in Pretoria. The R55 serves as a principal link between Johannesburg and Pretoria West and connects the Mabopane and the N14/Krugersdorp freeways.

The R55 road project delivered 255 job opportunities for local community members. Of those employed in the project, 79 were women, 205 were youths and seven had disabilities.

Since the RSR's creation, there has been an increased awareness of safety in railways, improvements in safety management and accountability, and standardisation of safety management systems among railway operators in South Africa and regional railways operating into South Africa. The permit system employed by the RSR ensures the standardisation of safety management systems.

Through its Sara membership, the RSR plays a leading role in regional safety issues. The RSR played a central role in developing the Regional Safety Policy Framework and safety standards and in updating the *Handbook on the Transportation of Hazardous Materials by Rail*.

Since the reintroduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and at train stations.

## Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 Mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC).

Piracy constitutes a serious challenge to the development and stability of the SADC member states, given the importance of the region's international seaborne trade and its vital contribution to regional food-stocks and economic development.

The sea plays an important role in both the SADC's economy and international commerce and thus maritime security is essential for the SADC's continued economic and political stability.

The SADC, therefore, has both an international and regional responsibility to help promote good order at sea. Threats of piracy are of particular concern to the SADC, whose coastline and shipping lanes are extremely vulnerable to maritime crime. As the SADC's coastal area does not fall within patrol areas of the international anti-pirate forces, the SADC will have to take responsibility for its own maritime security.

The threat around the Horn of Africa and SADC waters detrimentally affects the SADC's trade and economy. Maritime security is a regional concern to all SADC member states. Both SADC coastal states and SADC landlocked states are equally dependent on maritime trade.

The SADC's Maritime Strategy entails a regional partnership with all member states contributing within their means. Not all member states necessarily have the essential maritime and military capabilities, but they still contribute in other ways. Some countries, for example, provide land-based equipment such as radar, as well as soldiers to patrol coastlines and islands.

The SADC has established robust rules of engagement for anti-piracy, which are largely consistent with those of other regions and task forces.

Regarding the legal framework, SADC member states are expected to:

- ratify or accede to international maritime conventions/treaties/regimes and the incorporation of these into their national law
- put in place comprehensive legal regimes at national level, consistent with international law, to prosecute pirates
- stop the practice of "catch-and-release" of pirates since it allows experienced pirates to execute more sophisticated acts of piracy
- strengthen and harmonise regional and domestic legal frameworks for arrest, await-

In April 2013, Safmarine received the South African Maritime Industry's Commitment to CS' Award for its pioneering Containers-in-the-Community Programme, which uses decommissioned shipping containers for community development purposes.

The award – which was presented to Safmarine by the South African Maritime Safety Authority recognise the efforts of those within the maritime sector who reached beyond their own structures to uplift, empower and skill others.

Safmarine's container programme started in the early 1990s, when the company decided not to sell its highly sought after second-hand containers, but instead to convert these 'boxes' into infrastructure for community development purposes.

Safmarine has received a number of awards for its pioneering Containers-in-the-Community Programme, among them the Lloyd's List Award for creativity of using containers and Education Africa's Presidential and Premier Education Award.

ing trail detention, prosecution and imprisonment or repatriation of pirates

- take responsibility for its own maritime secur-ity in cooperation with other regions, task forces, navies and role players.

The MRCC enables South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services. Various laden, very large crude-oil carriers have been assisted to safety, their cargo safely transferred by means of ship-to-ship transfers, and the affected vessels repaired or temporarily repaired to enable them to proceed to other ports for permanent repairs.

South Africa has a well-established Pollution Prevention Strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa acts in terms of the Indian Ocean Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of west Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

## Search and rescue services

The Southern African Search and Rescue (Sasar) has been in existence since 1957. It was formalised through the enactment of the South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue (SAR) Act, 2002 (Act 44 of 2002). The Act gave the organisation a statutory mandate to coordinate all SAR activities within South Africa's area of responsibility.

South Africa is responsible for a huge SAR area, representing about 10% of the globe and about 28,5 million km$^2$ in total. To manage this vast area, the South African area is divided into two SAR regions, namely the aeronautical and maritime SAR areas.

The aeronautical SAR region covers South Africa, Namibia, Swaziland, Lesotho and associated flight information regions. The maritime SAR area stretches about halfway between South Africa and South America on the western side, and about halfway between South Africa and Australia on the eastern side. It also borders on Namibia, Angola, South Africa and Mozambique on the northern side and then extends to the South Pole.

Relevant operational structures and substructures were established for Sasar to execute its mandate successfully.

The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre (ARCC) and the MRCC are the primary structures responsible for the execution of Sasar's statutory mandate. The ARCC and the MRCC are based at the ATNS and Samsa.

Search and rescue only works when several countries and all stakeholders collaborate across borders. This culture of collaboration dates back to 1959 when the Convention on International Civil Aviation first made provision for cooperation between states.

According to this provision, states will individually or in cooperation with other states, arrange for the establishment and prompt provision of search and rescue services within their territories to ensure that assistance is rendered to persons in distress.

Regional cooperation also uses scarce resources and helps nations to avoid duplicating efforts and facilities. Through this collabo-

ration, services are provided for poor states in a uniform way across a wide area. Collaboration also reduces the overall cost of search and rescue operations.

The SADC approached the ICAO and the IMO to fund the training requirements identified for the region. In collaboration with the Department of Environmental Affairs, the Department of Transport is also planning to create search and rescue capacity in the Antarctic region.

The Department of Transport, the South African National Defence Force, Telkom, Portnet, Samsa, SACAA, ATNS, SAPS, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, SAA and the Department of Cooperative Governance are members of Sasar and contribute their services and facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet (the national amateur radio emergency communication network) and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of Sasar.

The ARCC Centre is an operational facility of Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of search and rescue services and coordinates aeronautical search and rescue operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.

Delegates at a Fishing Safety Conference praised a South African negotiating team that helped seal an agreement that will provide added safety to tens of thousands of fishermen around the world.

A South African team, lead by Captain Nigel Campbell, helped to negotiate a compromise which led to the new agreement, after an impasse between Asian and European nations. The new agreement – the Cape Town Agreement of 2012 on Implementation of the 1993 Torremolinos Protocol – will go some way to bringing into effect the 1977 Torremolinos International Convention for the Safety of Fishing Vessels, which has yet to be ratified by International Maritime Organisation member states 35 years on.

The new agreement, which adds to a 1993 protocol on the 1977 convention, must still be ratified by member states.

## Conclusion

Over the past few years, government has made significant strides in developing and improving South Africa's transport system to serve as a catalyst for socio-economic development. While its efforts have seen a meteoric increase in the provision of a safe, reliable, efficient and affordable transport system, a great deal of work still needs to be done before the transport system will effectively serve all sectors of society.

Government has identified the need for reliable, economical and smooth-flowing corridors linking its various modes of transport, namely road, rail, air, seaports and pipelines. It has therefore embarked on far-reaching improvements to the country's transport system as part of its NDP.

However, the transport portfolio does not exist in isolation, but as an integral part of the economic and social fabric of the country. It is for this reason that the department's programmes and interventions are also aimed at stimulating the attainment of other national policy goals such as job creation and poverty eradication; redressing apartheid spatial development; local economic development and regional integration; the safety of all users of the different modes of transport; and skills development.

The vision of South Africa's NDP is that by 2030, investments in the transport sector will bridge geographic distances affordably, reliably and safely so that all South Africans can access previously inaccessible economic opportunities, social spaces and services. It will also support economic development by allowing the transport of goods from points of production to where they are consumed. This will aid in facilitating regional and international trade.

Transport in South Africa will also promote a low-carbon economy by offering transport alternatives that minimise environmental harm.

The NDP further envisages that by 2030, the state will oversee a transport system that will provide basic infrastructure where needed.

South Africa's transport plan will not be implemented all at once, but through a phased approach. Between 2010 and 2015, greater emphasis will be placed on asset management, increased use of existing assets, extending economic infrastructure through joint private and public projects, and expanding public commuter rail-transit services.

Over the long term, between 2016 and 2020, the focus will be on developing the transport system in step with evolving land-use changes, increasing urban density and improving economies of scale of transport modes.

From 2021 to 2025, the emphasis will be on increasing the transport system's energy efficiency and resilience, while 2026 to 2030 should see mid-life system upgrades, and retrofitting of transport systems to incorporate technological improvements.

## Acknowledgements

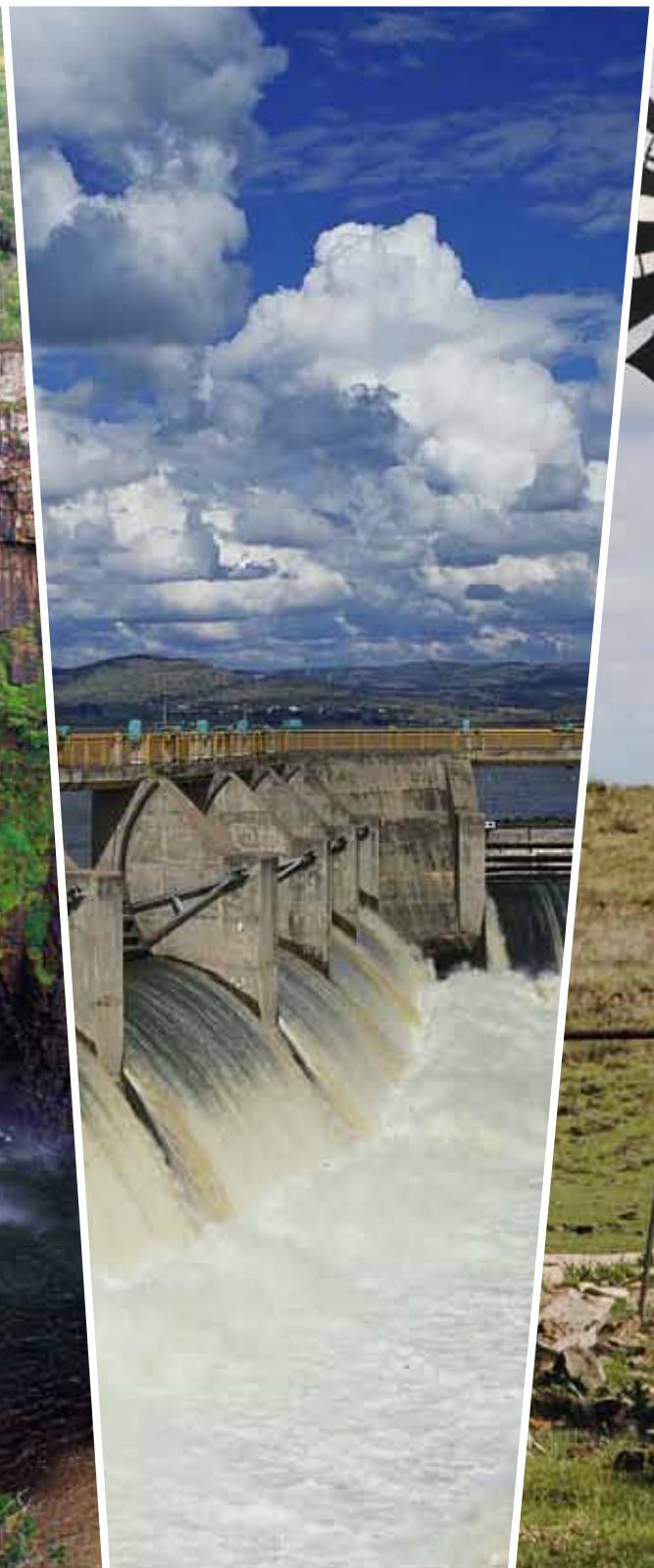
*Business Day*
Civil Aviation Authority
Department of Transport
*Die Beeld*
*Estimates of National Expenditure, 2011*
*National Household Travel Survey, 2003*
National Ports Authority of South Africa
*Pretoria News*
Road Accident Fund
Sabinet
*Sanral Annual Report, 2011/12*
Sapa
South African Rail Commuter Corporation
*Transnet Annual Report, 2011/12*
Transnet Freight Rail Limited

*www.allafrica.com*
*www.acsa.co.za*
*www.arrivealive.co.za*
*www.atns.co.za*
*www.capetown.gov.za*
*www.cbrta.co.za*
*www.enatis.com*
*www.engineeringnews.co.za*
*www.gautrain.co.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.iol.co.za*
*www.itweb.co.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*www.mg.co.za*
*www.news24.com*
*www.politicsweb.co.za*
*www.polokwane.org.za*
*www.ports.co.za*
*www.prasa.com*
*www.raf.co.za*
*www.rsr.org.za*
*www.sa2010.gov.za*
*www.saa.co.za*
*www.sagoodnews.co.za*
*www.samsa.org.za*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.sanral.co.za*
*www.shine2010.co.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.spoornet.co.za*
*www.tradeinvestsa.co.za*
*www.transnet.co.za*
*www.transport.gov.za*
*www.umdloti.org*

## Suggested reading

Louw, B. 2008. *The Gibson Brothers of the Red Star Line*. Welgemoed: JBZ Louw.
Rorke, WB. 2007. *Trek Airways: A South African Adventure*. London: Athena Press.
Ross, G. 2007. *The Romance of Cape Mountain Passes*. Cape Town: New Africa Books.
South Africa. Department of Transport. [2000]. [e-resource]. *Moving South Africa: A Transport Strategy for 2010: Report and Strategy Recommendations*.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13



# Water affairs

Water is at the heart of economic growth and forms the backbone of all social and economic development initiatives. However, factors such as climate change and increasing population growth result in an ever increasing demand for water and diminishing supplies.

While striving to ensure that all South Africans have access to clean water and safe sanitation, the water sector must therefore also promote effective and efficient water-resources management.

The Department of Water Affairs as the custodian of South Africa's water resources, leads the management of water resources, and is responsible for the formulation and implementation of policy governing this sector. The department also has an overriding responsibility for water services provided by local government.

With its vision of being dynamic and people-centred, the department is strategically positioning itself to ensure that the whole value chain, from “source-to-tap and waste-to-source” functions effectively.

The department is committed to ensuring that water is placed at the heart of all planning decisions made in the country, and that any decisions taken that rely on the steady supply of water, in terms of both quantity and quality, adequately take into account the availability of water.

While there is a need to expand the country's national infrastructure, water conservation and water demand management has been identified as a critical step to be implemented to give effect to reconciliation strategies.

All users and all sectors, including local government, therefore have to implement the necessary conservation and management measures. To this end, the department has been working with several municipalities on water conservation programmes to minimise water losses.

The department is also working closely with the agriculture, industrial and mining sectors to set water-use efficiency targets for their sub-sectors.

In addition, the department is increasing the exploitation of the country's groundwater resources, and intensifying projects on water recycling, as well as desalination of water in coastal areas.

South Africa is ensuring the security of its water supply with the completion of several major new water projects throughout the country by 2014. These include the Mokolo Augmentation Project to supply water to the planned Medupi Power Station in Lephalale in Limpopo, and the Mooi-Mgeni Transfer Scheme Project, which will include the construction of the Spring Grove Dam around eThekwini/Durban and Umgungundlovu in KwaZulu-Natal.

## Legislation

South Africa's Constitution and Bill of Rights enshrine the basic human right to have access to sufficient water and a safe and healthy environment. Government fulfils these rights through the Department of Water Affairs, assisted by specific legislation:

- The National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), ensures that South Africa's water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner, for the benefit of all people.
- The Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), prescribes the legislative duty of municipalities as water service authorities to provide water supply and sanitation according to national standards and norms. It also regulates water boards as important water service providers and gives the executive authority and responsibility to the Minister of Water Affairs to support and strengthen the capacity of municipalities to manage their own affairs, exercise their powers and perform their functions. The Water Services Act, 1997 places an obligation on the Minister to maintain a National Water Services Information System and to monitor the performance of all water services institutions.
- The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the promotion of water-related research through a Water Research Commission (WRC) and a Water Research Fund.
- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), makes provision for cooperative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that promote cooperative governance and procedures for coordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state.
- The National Water Policy is underpinned by three fundamental principles for managing water resources: equity, (environmental) sustainability and efficiency.

The department is responsible for policy development, regulation and oversight of sanitation provision. Currently, sanitation provision is governed by the Strategic Framework on Water Services (2003) and the Water Services Act, 1997.

The Department of Human Settlements also has a strong mandate regarding the provision of sanitation by driving a sanitation policy review process to clarify roles and functions regarding sanitation, to be completed during the 2012/13 term. It may also result in a legislative review.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of a general authorisation, have a statutory obligation to register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses of water that must be registered include:

- diversion of rivers and streams
- discharge of waste or water containing waste
- storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m³, or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission

- local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works
- controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

To further promote sustainable and equitable water resources management, the department has developed and continues to update a range of strategies for water management.

## Policies and strategies

### National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS)

The NWRS provides a roadmap on how water should be used, protected, conserved, distributed and managed for the benefit of all South Africans.

The second edition of the NWRS, gazetted in September 2012, is a culmination of a process of wide and extensive consultation by the department with experts in the water sector and stakeholders both in government and in the private sector.

The first edition, the NWRS-1, set out the blueprint for water resources management in the country for the first time. The NWRS-2 sets out the strategic direction for water resources management, with particular focus on priorities and objectives for the period 2013 to 2017.

The NWRS-2 is centred around the recognition of water as a basic human need, and an understanding of the critical role it plays in ensuring equitable socio-economic development. The NWRS-2 recognises the need to address equitable allocation of water resources, which has not as yet been fully realised.

### Water for Growth and Development (WfGD)

The WfGD framework sets the foundation and provides the necessary pointers for the review of the NWRS. It provides strategic guidance for supporting South Africa's requirements for economic growth and development. It includes both water resources and water services and places emphasis on the challenge of ensuring access to adequate potable water for all South Africans. It focuses on social and economic growth dimensions of water management within the environmental sustainability paradigm.

Although the WfGD framework was approved by Cabinet, it was never gazetted. The revised NWRS-2, however, has incorporated aspects of the WfGD that pertain to water resources management, as key core strategies.

**Major dams of South Africa**

| Dam | Full supply capacity ($10^6$ m$^3$) | River |
|---|---|---|
| Gariep | 5341 | Orange |
| Vanderkloof | 3171 | Orange |
| Sterkfontein | 2616 | Nuwejaarspruit |
| Vaal | 2603 | Vaal |
| Pongolapoort | 2445 | Pongola |
| Bloemhof | 1264 | Vaal |
| Theewaterskloof | 480 | Sonderend |
| Heyshope | 451 | Assegaai |
| Woodstock | 380 | Tugela |
| Loskop | 361 | Olifants |
| Grootdraai | 354 | Vaal |
| Kalkfontein | 318 | Riet |
| Goedertrouw | 304 | Mhlautze |
| Albert Falls | 288 | Mgeni |
| Brandvlei | 284 | Brandvlei |
| Spioenkop | 277 | Tugela |
| Mthatha | 253 | Mthatha |
| Driekoppies | 250 | Lomati |
| Inanda | 241 | Mgeni |
| Hartbeespoort | 212 | Crocodile |
| Erfenis | 207 | Groot Vet |
| Rhenosterkop | 204 | Elands |
| Molatedi | 22 | Groot Marico |
| Ntshingwayo | 198 | Ngagane |
| Zaaihoek | 192 | Slang |
| Midmar | 175 | Mgeni |

Source: Department of Water Affairs

## Raw Water Pricing Strategy

The National Water Act, 1998 makes provision for the three types of water use charges, namely:

- the water resource management charge
- the water resource development and use charge
- a charge for achieving equitable and efficient allocation of water.

The objective of the water pricing strategy is to promote financial sustainability and economic efficiency in water use. The Act also makes provision for financial assistance in the form of grants, loans or subsidies.

A sustainable water price in South Africa is one that will:

- reflect true costs (including infrastructure, management, operation and maintenance and environmental costs)
- incentivise efficient water use
- reduce pollution
- promote least-cost solutions to providing water
- achieve equity in terms of incorporating cost-sharing practices as needed
- enhance affordability for poor water users
- enhance the long-term viability of water institutions.

The 2013 review of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy will address the issue of water scarcity and how best to use water pricing as a tool for driving improved water-use efficiency without having a negative impact on small-scale or under-resourced water users.

## Institutional Realignment and Restructuring

The Department of Water Affairs initiated an Institutional Reform and Realignment Project in December 2010 with the purpose of establishing an appropriate institutional design for the sector and to facilitate its implementation through appropriate institutional reforms and realignment.

In line with its vision, the strategy separates policy-making, shareholding and regulation to ensure effective governance in the sector. It is also aimed at facilitating institutional integration to ensure that functions are allocated to institutions that are best placed to undertake them, to optimise the sector's capacity and to facilitate economies of scope and scale.

## National Groundwater Strategy

Groundwater is a strategic resource in many parts of South Africa, especially in rural areas. It also plays an important role in the supply of water to small towns and villages in the drier parts of the country. There is considerable potential for additional development of groundwater resources to augment existing resources. The need for improved groundwater management to ensure sustainable and efficient use of the resource was recognised in NWRS-1 and led to the formulation of a National Groundwater Strategy through which strategic actions are undertaken.

## Re-Use Strategy

In 2000, re-use of water (mainly water flowing back to rivers) already accounted for 14% of all available water. The return flows of urban areas to rivers are about 50% of the water being used.

Re-use could be significantly increased with re-use of return flows in coastal cities, where it would otherwise drain into the sea. In coastal cities, water re-use and desalination compete as two options for water conservation.

Re-use is becoming increasingly acceptable and feasible owing to increasing shortages, improved purification technology and decreasing treatment costs. For example, membrane

In February 2013, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, Ms Edna Molewa, published the *Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Guideline for Aquaculture* in South Africa, for public comment in the *Government Gazette*.

The guideline seeks to, among others, align the EIA process and environmental authorisations to the specific nature of aquaculture. It also seeks to identify and promote awareness of the potential positive and negative impacts associated with aquaculture and present measures of mitigation to the potential impacts of aquaculture.

technologies, also used for desalination of seawater, have become more affordable and have improved. The re-use of treated wastewater will have to be managed carefully to ensure public health safety.

Currently, about 280 million m³ a year of re-use is in a pre-feasibility stage and 15 million m³ is in a reconnaissance phase. The Department of Water Affairs has developed a water re-use strategy with the intent to encourage informed decisions relating to water re-use.

### Rainwater harvesting

The Department of Water Affairs supports a national rainwater harvesting programme, which has a narrow but important focus on the construction of above- and below-ground rainwater storage tanks by rural households for food gardens and other productive water uses.

Several municipalities are already using roof rainwater tanks for domestic purposes. These have been found to be particularly effective when used in conjunction with other water supply options. Although there are no hard figures yet on how many cubic millimetres per year rainwater harvesting can contribute, it is an option that can be implemented within a short timeframe.

eThekwini Municipality has piloted rainwater harvesting to supplement the water supply to 500 poor households in Inanda, Ntuzuma and KwaMashu in the greater Durban Metro and managed to save 10% on bulk water demand.

### Desalination Strategy

Desalination of seawater could potentially provide an unlimited resource of fresh water. It has become more attractive since the NWRS-1 because of improved technologies, decreasing costs and increasing water scarcity. However, the rising cost of energy may be a deterrent.

Like other infrastructure projects with potential environmental impacts, the planning for a desalination plant will have to undergo an environmental impact assessment in compliance with Nema, 1998. The Department of Water Affairs will ensure that desalination is considered as an option for meeting future water requirements, in particular in coastal cities where there is sufficient electricity for desalination. The target is not only to implement desalination in several locations in South Africa, but also to become an international knowledge centre in this particular field. The department has developed a supporting desalination strategy, which also includes desalination as a technology for treating water other than seawater for water re-use.

## Budget and funding

The current budget allocation is R8,8 billion, of which R2,5 billion is earmarked for the Regional Bulk Infrastructure Programme (RBIG), and R2,2 billion is earmarked for water resources infrastructure development and rehabilitation projects.

Spending by the department increased from R5,1 billion in 2008/9 to R9 billion in 2011/12 at an average annual rate of 20,6%. This was largely driven by the increase in expenditure on the development of bulk water infrastructure, which includes funds allocated for the construction of new dams and rehabilitation of existing bulk infrastructure.

Expenditure in the Water Sector Management Programme increased from R413,1 million in 2008/9 to R882,2 million in 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 28,8%. In this period, this was the department's fastest growing programme as it incorporates expenditure on the development of a long-term national strategy detailing South Africa's response to the challenges arising from acid mine drainage.

Between 2008/9 and 2011/12, expenditure in the Water Infrastructure Management Programme increased from R1,6 billion to R2,4 billion, at an average annual rate of 13,2%. This increase resulted from the increased transfer payments to water services authorities and water boards, which act as implementing agents on behalf of the department.

Expenditure on transfers and subsidies increased from R2,7 billion in 2008/09 to R3,5 billion in 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 9,2%, as a result of the development of bulk water infrastructure. This included funds

allocated for the construction of the De Hoop Dam and ancillary infrastructure such as distribution pipelines for the Nandoni Dam and the rehabilitation and repair of existing bulk infrastructure.

Over the medium term, expenditure is expected to grow from R9 billion in 2011/12 to R10,7 billion in 2014/15 at an average annual rate of 5,8%. The increase is mainly attributed to growth in the Regional Implementation and Support Programme, which is expected to increase from R4,8 billion in 2011/12 to R5,7 billion in 2014/15, at an average annual rate of 6,3%.

The department received additional allocations of R418,9 million for 2012/13, R647,2 million for 2013/14 and R940,9 million for 2013/14 as follows:

- R226,5 million, R266,3 million and R396,1 million over the next Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period for the construction of the De Hoop Dam's regional bulk distribution systems to connect to the national bulk distribution systems
- R60 million, R140 million and R200 million over the MTEF period for the Sedibeng District Municipality wastewater bulk infrastructure
- R95 million, R200 million and R300 million over the MTEF period for the OR Tambo District Municipality regional bulk water and wastewater infrastructure
- R25,4 million, R28,3 million and R31,6 million over the MTEF period for improvements in conditions of service for the department
- R12 million, R12,6 million and R13,2 million over the MTEF period for improvements in conditions of service for the water trading entity (WTE).

## Role players

### Water boards

The primary activity of water boards is to provide water services (bulk potable and bulk waste water) to other water services institutions within their respective service areas. They may perform other activities under conditions set out in the Water Services Act, 1997. In certain situations, the Minister of Water Affairs may direct water boards to amend their business plans to meet all the requirements of the Water Services Act, 1997.

The 12 water boards and their service delivery areas are:

- Amatola Water: Eastern Cape
- Bloem Water: Free State
- Botshelo Water: North West
- Bushbuckridge Water: Mpumulanga
- Lepelle Northern Water: Limpopo
- Magalies Water: North West and Gauteng
- Mhlathuze Water: KwaZulu-Natal
- Overberg Water: Western Cape
- Pelladrift Water: Northern Cape
- Rand Water: Gauteng, Mpumalanga, Free State and North West
- Sedibeng Water: Free State, North West and Northern Cape
- Umgeni Water: KwaZulu-Natal.

### Catchment management agencies (CMAs)

The main responsibilities of CMAs are to manage water resources at catchment level in collaboration with local stakeholders, with specific focus on involving local communities in the decision-making processes, in terms of meeting basic human needs, promoting equitable access to water, and facilitating social and economic development.

In essence, CMAs are service-delivery agencies and are listed in the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).

There are two CMAs in South Africa, namely the Breede-Overberg Catchment Management Agency and the Inkomati Catchment Management Agency.

### Water-user associations (WUAs)

WUAs are cooperative associations of individual water users who wish to undertake water-related activities at local level for their mutual benefit. They operate in terms of a formal constitution as set out in Schedule 5 of the National Water Act, 1998.

Currently, all irrigation boards are in the process of being transformed into WUAs to fall within the ambit of the National Water Act,

1998. Out of the 279 irrigation boards, 111 have been transformed into 59 WUAs. The remaining 168 irrigation boards will be transformed into WUAs in the next five years. In addition, 35 new WUAs have been established; most of these are focused on supporting resource-poor farmers.

### Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC plays a pivotal role in water research by establishing needs and priorities, stimulating and funding research, promoting the transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity-building in the water sector.

The commission provides support to the water sector and all its relevant institutions and partners. Over the medium term, it will focus on water resources management, water-linked ecosystems, water use and waste management, and water use in agriculture.

### Water Trading Entity (WTE)

The Department of Water Affairs is responsible for the regulation of water use in South Africa by ensuring that water is allocated equitably and used beneficially in the public interest, and is also required to create a register of all water users in the country.

The National Water Act, 1998 makes provision for cost recovery on services rendered by the department to water users. It is against this background that the department created the WTE within its administration.

The main function of the WTE is development, operation and maintenance of specific water resources infrastructure and managing water resources in specific water management areas.

### Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority

The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority is a state-owned entity specialising in project financing, implementation and liability management. It is responsible for the development of bulk raw-water infrastructure. It also provides an integrated treasury management and financial advisory service to the Department of Water Affairs, water boards, municipalities and other entities that are linked to bulk raw-water infrastructure. The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority is primarily responsible for off-budget projects.

### Komati River Basin Water Authority

The Komati Basin Water Authority was established in terms of a treaty between South Africa and Swaziland. The aim of the authority is to manage the water resources of the Komati River basin sustainably. The authority is responsible for financing, developing, operating and maintaining the water resources infrastructure in the basin, comprising the Driekoppies Dam in South Africa and the Maguga Dam in Swaziland.

### Water Tribunal

The Water Tribunal was established in 1998 to hear appeals against directives and decisions made by responsible authorities, CMAs or water management agencies about matters covered by the National Water Act, 1998, like the issuing of licences to use water. It is an independent body and can hold hearings anywhere in the country.

The WRC and the Judicial Services Commission recommend people to be members of the Water Tribunal, and the Minister of Water Affairs appoints them. The members have to be familiar with water management, engineering, law and other related matters, and they are given administrative support by the Department of Water Affairs.

## Resources

South Africa's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The total flow of all the rivers in the country amounts to about 49 200 million $m^3$ per year. This is less than half of that of the Zambezi River, the closest large river to South Africa. Groundwater plays a pivotal role, especially in rural water supplies.

The country's climate varies from desert and semi-desert in the west to sub-humid along the eastern coastal area, with an average rainfall of about 450 mm per year. This is well below

the world average of about 860 mm per year, while evaporation is comparatively high.

Water resources are unevenly spread across South Africa. The variable rainfall distribution and characteristics give rise to an uneven run-off and distribution of water resources, with more than 60% of the river flow arising from only 20% of the land area.

To compensate for the uneven spread of water resources and to manage floods and droughts, more than two thirds of the country's mean annual run-off are stored in dams. Most of the economically available yield from surface water resources has been fully developed and used, and opportunities for developing new and economic dams are few.

South Africa's inland water resources include 22 major rivers, 165 large dams, more than 4 000 medium and small dams on public and private land, and hundreds of small rivers.

However, owing to the predominantly hard-rock nature of South Africa's geology, there are few major groundwater aquifers that can be used on a large scale.

The poor spatial distribution of rainfall means that the natural availability of water is also highly uneven. This is compounded by the strong seasonality of rainfall over virtually the entire country, and the high within-season variability of rainfall, and consequently, of run-off.

As a result, stream flow in South Africa's rivers is at relatively low levels most of the time, with sporadic high flows occurring – characteristics which limit the proportion of stream flow that can be relied upon to be available for use, and which also have implications for water-related disasters such as floods and droughts.

To aggravate the situation, most urban and industrial development, as well as some dense rural settlements, have been established in remote locations away from large watercourses. As a result, the requirements for water already far exceed its natural availability in several river basins. Widespread and often large-scale transfers of water across catchment areas have, therefore, been implemented in South Africa.

Measures will also be introduced to ensure the most beneficial and efficient use of water from a social and economic perspective.

Provided that South Africa's water resources are judiciously managed and wisely allocated and used, sufficient water of appropriate quality will be available to sustain a strong economy, high social standards and healthy aquatic ecosystems for many generations.

South Africa depends mainly on surface-water resources for urban, industrial and irrigation water supplies in the country. In general, surface-water resources are highly developed over most of South Africa.

Groundwater is also extensively used, particularly in the rural and more arid areas, contributing to some 60% of newly serviced households since 1994.

In the northern parts of the country, both surface and groundwater resources are nearly fully developed and used. Some overexploitation occurs in localised areas, with little undeveloped resource potential remaining. The reverse applies to the well-watered south-eastern region of the country, where there are still significant undeveloped and under-used resources.

The total mean annual run-off of water in South Africa under natural (undeveloped) conditions is estimated at a little over 49 200 million $m^3$ per year, including about 4 800 million $m^3$ per year of water originating from Lesotho, and about 700 million $m^3$ a year originating from Swaziland, which naturally drain into South Africa.

Agricultural irrigation represents close to

IBM marked World Water Day on 22 March 2013 with the launch of a crowd-sourcing project to capture, share and analyse information about the water distribution system in South Africa.

The project, called WaterWatchers, is driven by a new smartphone application and SMS capability that will enable South Africans to report water leaks, faulty water pipes and general conditions of water canals. Every update will provide vital data points to an aggregated report to create a single view of the issues challenging South Africa's water distribution system. This WaterWatchers report will be made available to local municipalities, water control boards and other water system stakeholders once the data is filtered appropriately.

National Water Week 2013 was marked by the unveiling of the Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project (KWSAP) on 19 March. The R1,2 billion project, which was launched in Kriel in eMalahleni, was designed to resolve the water supply problems to Eskom's Duvha and Matla power stations in Mpumalanga.

The KWSAP augments the Komati Water Scheme from the Vaal Eastern Sub-system to help Eskom overcome its water supply challenges. The Matla power station reservoir will in turn also provide water to Kusile power station, which is under construction.

The interaction of the water resources of the Komati, Usutu and Vaal River systems provides a higher assurance of water supply to all Eskom's thermal power stations and other water users in the Mpumalanga area.

The KWSAP will be able to deliver an additional 57 million m³ of water per year to the Komati Water Scheme.

60% of the country's total water requirements, while urban requirements constitute about 25% as the second-largest user sector. The remaining 15% is shared by the other sectors (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

The total nett abstraction of water from surface water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m³ per year for the whole of South Africa, after allowing for the reuse of return flows. This represents about 20% of the total mean annual run-off of 49 200 million m³ per year (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply). A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

Early in 2012, The British Geological Survey and University College London published a report, *Quantitative Maps of Groundwater Resources in Africa*. According to this paper, maps indicate that the total volume of water in aquifers is more than 100 times the amount found on the surface and 20 times the fresh water stored in African lakes.

Southern Africa also has large hidden underground water reserves, with 12 to 15 aquifer systems, of which three are considered very important for the future.

In South Africa, a substantial resource lies in a massive dolomite aquifer system east of Johannesburg in Gauteng. This aquifer covers a vast area, extending from Springs and Brakpan east of Johannesburg; to Lenasia south of the city; Zuurbekom, Carltonville and Magaliesberg on the West Rand; Kuruman in the Northern Cape and even as far as parts of Botswana.

The Witwatersrand mining basin's aquifer storage capacity is about the size of Lake Kariba. Other countries such as Mozambique, Zambia, Zimbabwe, Namibia, Botswana and Ghana also have hidden aquifers.

## Dams and water schemes

In an attempt to adequately respond to demand and anticipate future demand, South Africa has built numerous large and medium-sized dams, and developed sophisticated inter-basin transfer schemes. The country now has more than 500 government-owned dams spread across all nine provinces. They range in storage capacity from a volume of 5 500 million m³ of water down to 0,2 million m³ of water.

South Africa currently uses about 10 200 million m³ of water per year from its major dams. This amount is about 20% of the total mean run-off volume of water South Africa receives a year. Evaporation accounts for a very high 8% loss of stored water resources (the hot climate contributes to this, as well as the large surface areas of many dams), and a further 6% is lost through various land-use activities. The majority of water consumption can be attributed to drinking, irrigation, electricity, mining processes and industrial processes.

The Department of Water Affairs follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes need to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water-demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs, while the

guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must also be followed.

Bulk infrastructure is a critical element of water-services infrastructure and an integrated part of water-services management.

Government has implemented key projects to augment South Africa's water resources. Some are discussed below.

- The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority has procured funding to implement the Mokolo and Crocodile River West Water Augmentation Project's first two phases with a cost of about R2 billion, to deliver water to Eskom's new Medupi power station and other industries in the area, as well as domestic water to the Lephalale Local Municipality. The first water delivery is expected in 2014.
- On the Mooi River in KwaZulu-Natal near Rosetta, a R2,2-billion contract was awarded for the construction of the 42 m-high Spring Grove Dam, with a storage capacity of 142 million $m^3$.
- R91,2 million was spent in 2011/12 to raise the Hazelmere Dam, to augment the water supply provided by Umgeni Water to KwaZulu-Natal's north coast.
- De Hoop Dam will deliver water for domestic and agricultural use in the Greater Sekhukhune, Waterberg and Capricorn district municipalities. The estimated cost of its construction is approximately R3,1 billion. This will deliver water to three million Limpopo residents.
- During 2011/12, the construction of a water conveyance system from the Vaal Dam to Secunda to augment the water supply to Eskom power stations and Sasol was commissioned, comprising abstraction works, a storage reservoir, a high-lift pump station and a 121-km pipeline.

In addition to the infrastructure development currently underway, planning and preparing for the construction of other dams and related infrastructure is also in progress.

These include:

- completion of the water treatment works and bulk distribution system from Nandoni Dam in Limpopo
- construction of a pipeline from the Flag Boshielo Dam to Mokopane and nearby communities
- completion of feasibility studies and designs for the Umzimvubu and Foxwood dams in the Eastern Cape
- construction of the bulk distribution pipelines and reticulation networks from the Jozini Dam in KwaZulu-Natal and the Groot Letaba Augmentation Project, comprising raising the Tzaneen Dam
- finalising plans for the construction of the N'wamitwa Dam and the associated water treatment plants and bulk distribution pipelines.

## Groundwater resources

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply (13%), represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

Owing to the lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts, two thirds of South Africa's surface area are largely dependent on groundwater. Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is also extremely important.

Through government's commitment towards meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered smallscale-user situation.

Groundwater also contributes a considerable portion to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act, 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is estimated at about 6 000 million $m^3$ a year, while some 4 000 million $m^3$ of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface-water flow annually.

## Managing and developing water resources

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water management areas, of which 11 share international rivers.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all current requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable-quality water.

To underscore its commitment to the pursuit of universal access to water, the department is investing in new infrastructure and maintaining and rehabilitating dysfunctional systems to ensure operational efficiency.

This commitment is particularly relevant regarding developing water infrastructure to meet the specific needs of different rural communities. Closely related to rural development is the need for mainstream support to local government to sustain the infrastructure underpinning efficient service delivery to communities.

Through the department's rural development programme, 3 100 farmers were issued with water licences, rehabilitated and upgraded infrastructure, operation and maintenance subsidies, rainwater tanks and bulk pipelines/ infrastructure in 2011/12. Some 14 768 rainwater harvesting tanks were provided.

## Managing water quality and waste water

To ensure compliance with minimum water quality norms and standards, the department started the annual Blue Drop and Green Drop assessments to guarantee that water and waste-water systems are managed according to set norms and standards.

The department has set a target of 99% compliance with drinking-water quality standards and 80% compliance with waste-water effluent standards.

Introduced in 2008, this incentive-based regulation system aims to improve municipal drinking-water quality and waste-water management.

Because of the scale and the magnitude of resources needed for the national certification programme, the Green Drop and Blue Drop programmes take place every second year, alternating with each other. In a programme's "gap" year, progress in the wastewater sector is

**Natural mean annual run-off and ecological reserve (million $m^3$ per year)**

| Water management | Natural mean annual run-off[1] | Ecological reserve[1,2] |
|---|---|---|
| Limpopo | 985 | 156 |
| Luvuvhu/Letaba | 1 185 | 224 |
| Crocodile West and Marico | 855 | 165 |
| Olifants | 2 042 | 460 |
| Inkomati [3] | 3 539 | 1 008 |
| Usutu to Mhlatuze [4] | 4 780 | 1 192 |
| Thukela | 3 799 | 859 |
| Upper Vaal | 2 423 | 299 |
| Middle Vaal | 888 | 109 |
| Lower Vaal | 368 | 48 |
| Mvoti to Umzimkulu | 4 798 | 1 160 |
| Mzimvubu to Keiskamma | 7 241 | 1 122 |
| Upper Orange | 6 981 | 1 349 |
| Lower Orange [5] | 502 | 69 |
| Fish to Tsitsikamma | 2 154 | 243 |
| Gouritz | 1 679 | 325 |
| Olifants/Doring | 1 108 | 156 |
| Breede | 2 472 | 384 |
| Berg | 1 429 | 217 |
| **Total** | **49 228** | **9 500** |

1) Quantities refer to the water management area under consideration only (water that originates or is required in that water management area).
2) Total volume given, based on preliminary estimates, impact on yield being a portion of this.
3) Includes Komati catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 517 million $m^3$/a).
4) Includes Pongola catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 213 million $m^3$/a).
5) Includes contributions from Senqu and Caledon rivers in Lesotho (mean annual run-off = 4 765 billion $m^3$/a).

Source: Department of Water Affairs

tracked and reported via the assessment of the cumulative risk status of treatment systems.

The department was honoured to receive international recognition in terms of Environmental Engineering Excellence for the Blue Drop and Green Drop Certification programmes from the American Academy for Environmental Engineers. This academy is affiliated to the International Water Association.

### Blue Drop Programme

South Africa's drinking-water quality matches best international practice and follows the guidelines set out by the World Health Organisation. As it involves a benchmark score of 95%, the Blue Drop certification is the recognition of exceptional performance, and should not be equated to a pass mark. It simply credits exceptional drinking-water quality.

The *National Blue Drop Water Quality Assessment Report* was released in May 2012. The number of systems where water safety planning is underway increased from 154 in 2011 to 579 in 2012. Some 269 of these risk management processes compare well with the expectations of the World Health Organisation.

In 2012, 98 of the country's municipalities were awarded Blue Status, up from 66 in 2011.

The average national Blue Status score jumped from 72,9% in 2011 to 87,6% in 2012. The scores have increased year on year since the first Blue Drop report was released in 2009, when municipalities notched up a national average of 51,4%.

Some 153 of South Africa's 287 municipalities and 931 water systems were audited for the 2012 report.

The top 10 municipal performers were:

- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality in Gauteng (98,95%)
- City of Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality in Gauteng (98,92%)
- Mogale City Local Municipality in Gauteng (98,79%)
- eThekwini Metropolitan Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal (98,77%)
- Tlokwe Local Municipality in North West (98,45%)
- City of Cape Town Metropolitan Municipality in the Western Cape (98,14%)
- George Local Municipality in the Eastern Cape (98,12%)
- Eden District Municipality in the Western Cape (98,12%)
- Bitou Local Municipality in the Western Cape (97,74%)
- Witzenberg Local Municipality in the Western Cape (97,63%).

Of the 98 municipalities that achieved Blue Drop certification, 38 were serviced by water boards and about 20 by the private sector.

The top-performing province was Gauteng with a score of 98,1%, followed by the Western Cape (94,2%) and KwaZulu-Natal (92,9%).

### Green Drop Programme

The Green Drop certification measures the performance of waste-water treatment works. The last publication, the *Green Drop Report* of June 2011, reported on municipal wastewater performance.

The results can be summarised as follows:

- 156 municipalities provided wastewater services via a network of 821 collector and treatment systems
- 14 of 33 systems retained Green Drop status
- 73% of the 821 systems were micro, small and medium-sized systems, while the remainder of 27% were large and macro-sized systems
- 33 systems were awarded Green Drop status in 2009
- 40 systems were awarded Green Drop status in 2011, up from 33 systems in 2010.

The *Green Drop Risk Profile Progress Report 2012* is the product of a "gap" year, whereby progress is reported in terms of the improvement or decline in the risk position of the particular wastewater treatment facility, as compare to the previous year's risks profile. The tool to collect, assess and report the risk profile is called the Green Drop Progress Assessment Tool (PAT) and all municipalities, public works and selected private works participated in PAT assessments from November 2011 to February 2012.

In October 2012, the Minister of Water Affairs, Ms Edna Molewa, launched the Rand Water Academy in Zuikerbosch, Vereeniging. The first group to be trained comprised 130 young graduates in the fields of science, artisanship, engineering and process control.

The 2012 report presented the current risk profile and a three-year trend analysis of treatment plants on three levels, namely system-specific, region-specific and national.

Some 153 municipalities and 831 plants were assessed in the *2012 Green Drop Risk Profile Progress Report.*

The overall progress on a nationwide scale can be summarised as follows:

- 440 plants showed progress by taking up lower-risk positions, while 323 plants digressed by taking up increased risk ratios, and 68 plants maintained their status of 2011
- The majority of plants were in moderate risk (241 plants) and low risk (225 plants), with 212 plants in high risk and 153 plants in critical risk space.

## Programmes and initiatives

### Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM)

The Department of Water Affairs, with the assistance of the Royal Danish Government, initiated a programme in 2000 to pilot IWRM approaches in three water management areas of South Africa: Crocodile West – Marico (mainly in the North West province), Mvoti to uMzimkulu (KwaZulu-Natal) and Olifants-Doorn (mainly in the Western Cape).

These water management areas were selected as they represent a cross-section of water resources conditions as well as water use conditions and user interests.

The IWRM requires intensive planning to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable management of water resources and for coping with conflicting demands.

The department developed two key strategic frameworks to guide it, namely the NWRS of 2004 and the Water for Growth and Development Framework of 2008. The strategy seeks to achieve reconciliation between available water resources with growing requirements.

### National Water Resources Infrastructure (NWRI) Programme

The NWRI ensures reliable supply of water from bulk raw-water resources infrastructure. The programme solicits and sources funding to implement, operate and maintain bulk raw-water resources infrastructure efficiently and effectively by strategically managing risks and assets.

Some augmentation projects were identified and prioritised for implementation by 2014. These include:

- emergency works in Mopani
- construction of the Nwamitwa Dam in the Groot Letaba Water Augmentation Project
- raising of the Tzaneen Dam in the Groot Letaba Water Augmentation Project
- the Mdloti River Development and raising of Hazelmere Dam
- the Mokolo from Crocodile River (West) Water Augmentation Project Phase 1
- the Nandoni Pipeline Project
- raising of the Clanwilliam Dam in the Olifants-Doorn River Water Resources Project
- phase two of the Olifants River Water Resources Development Project
- the Komati Water Augmentation Project
- phase two of the Mooi-Mgeni Transfer Scheme
- the Vaal River Eastern Sub-System Augmentation Project.

The NWRI Maintenance Programme ensures the availability of water supply for domestic use.

During 2012, the Department of Water Affairs, in partnership with the Department of Public Works, started a programme of using the services of retired engineers to mentor and coach young and prospective engineers in the department. In addition, the graduate recruitment programme has since its inception also played a role in recruiting a total of 240 graduate trainees; 35 of whom have been placed as candidates in various engineering positions.

The following progress was made in 2012:

- rehabilitation of nine out of 25 national dams was completed
- seven of 28 water conveyance projects were completed; measures were put in place to expedite the process to meet the 2014 targets
- following the process of verification to determine safety, health and environment, about 91 dams with a safety risk were classified
- a total of 195 dams were identified for safety risks.

## Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (RBIG) Programme

Regional bulk infrastructure is defined as the infrastructure required to connect water on a macro or sub-regional scale, over vast distances, with internal bulk and reticulation systems or any bulk infrastructure that may have an impact on water resources in terms of quality and quantity. The department is responsible and accountable for the management of funding, which is administered by the National Treasury.

During 2011/12, R1,785 billion was allocated and the expenditure as at 31 March 2012 was R1,739 billion, which represents 97,4% of the total budget. By March 2012, 25 projects were completed as part of the programme.

In 2011/12, five compared to the planned seven regional bulk infrastructure schemes were completed. In addition, 4 505 instead of the planned 1 210 job opportunities were created.

In 2012, the RBIG Programme continued construction of 55 bulk water-supply projects and 12 waste-water bulk infrastructure projects. These projects address the water supply needs of communities in 39 district municipalities.

The Dwarsloop-Acornhoek steel pipeline for the provision of water supply to nine rural communities with a total estimated population of 265 000 in the Bushbuckridge Local Municipality was expected to be completed by December 2012. Each community is being connected as the pipeline completion progresses with two communities already connected and receiving water. The total projected cost is R130 million.

In addition, the Nandoni Bulk Distributed System, including steel pipelines, is being constructed and is expected to be completed by 2013 at an estimated cost of R750 million.

The RBIG was allocated R2,597 billion in 2012, an increase that illustrated the infrastructure need, as well as the ability and capacity of the department and its entities to spend and deliver on these projects.

In the previous financial year, 173 625 people benefitted from completed projects. In 2012, it was expected that about 550 000 people would benefit.

## Strategic integrated projects (SIPs)

The Infrastructure Plan announced by President Zuma in February 2012, sets out a number of SIPs. Water infrastructure is critical for the SIPs, as well as for the development of industrial sectors as identified in the New Growth Path for South Africa.

These SIPs include:

- Mokolo and Crocodile River (West) Water Augmentation Scheme
- De Hoop Dam
- Mooi-Mgeni Transfer Scheme
- Hazelmere Dam
- Umzimvubu Dam
- Zalu Dam
- Foxwood Dam
- Nelson Mandela Bay Nooitgedacht Scheme.

## Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme

The Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme was established in 2005, after a large number of South Africa's dams were identified as being in need of rehabilitation. The programme ensures the continued structural and operational safety of the dams owned by the Department of Water Affairs.

The project has an estimated cost of R2,6 billion, of which R1,7 billion had been spent up to 2011/12 and R1,2 billion had been budgeted over the MTEF period. Given the nature of the project, only 942 short-term jobs will be created.

The department allocated approximately R370 million to the programme for 2012/13, with the aim of completing rehabilitation work at 25 dams.

As part of government's infrastructure development drive, R2,8 billion was allocated to the programme for the 2013/14 period, towards rehabilitating 315 reservoirs owned by the department.

## Support for resource-poor farmers

In accordance with the National Water Act, 1998 and regulations on financial assistance to resource-poor farmers, the Minister of Water Affairs may allocate assistance to those farmers who fulfil requirements as per regulations.

To ensure that water resources are protected, the regulations explicitly state that financial assistance may be granted and used only for activities that ensure water is protected, used, developed, conserved and managed in a sustainable and equitable manner.

In 2012, 4 174 resource-poor farmers were supported with access to water, compared to the planned 1 000.

## Rainwater harvesting

Rainwater harvesting enables people who live in areas where reticulation has not as yet been implemented to have access to water. The programme targets rural communities through the installation of tanks and awareness creation sessions.

An additional 8 068 compared to the planned 6 000 rainwater harvesting tanks were distributed to improve access to water and food production. Of the 8 068 rainwater harvesting tanks, 6 308 were for access to water supply and 1 760 were for food production.

## River health and interventions

The River Health Programme (RHP) is part of the National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme, which was initiated in 1994.

Based on the information obtained from the RHP, four compared to the planned two major rivers were rehabilitated:

- Buffalo River in the Eastern Cape
- Luvuvhu River in Limpopo
- Hart River in the Northern Cape
- Berg River in the Western Cape.

Two additional rivers in the Eastern Cape and Limpopo were also identified as flagship projects.

## Water Allocation Reform

The Water Allocation Reform Programme was launched in 2005, with the objectives of ensuring equitable access to water in eradicating poverty and promoting social and economical development. The programme's priorities are to meet the water needs of historically disadvantaged people, ensure their participation in water resources management and promote the beneficial and efficient use of water in the public interest.

Licences are required for storage and use of water, among other things. To facilitate availability of water for historically disadvantaged people, attention is also given to the allocation of water following principles of equity and sustainability. During 2012, 93 licences were issued to these people, which constitutes 52% of licences received during the year. A total volume of 52 million m³ of water was allocated to historically disadvantaged individuals. The allocation of water to these individuals is dependent on the number of applications received, and the process of validation and verification has improved the allocation of water.

## Accelerated Community Infrastructure Programme (ACIP)

In 2011, the Department of Water Affairs initiated the ACIP, which was allocated R83 million in the Cape Town, eThekwini and Nelson Mandela metros. This programme is a rapid intervention that seeks to focus on four key areas:

- community water and sanitation infrastructure
- water conservation and demand management
- waste-water infrastructure refurbishment
- drought intervention.

In 2011/12, 69 waste-water treatment plant refurbishment projects were implemented.

## Women in Water

The Women in Water Project aims to strengthen active participation of rural women in water resources management. Women identify water-related challenges in their communities and conceptualise ideas to implement them. They are registered for Women in Water awards. The national winners receive cash prizes which are used for further project development and implementation.

Some 309 households benefitted from this project. Twenty women-headed households, which includes girl-headed households from Mbangwane Village in Mpumalanga, were provided with rainwater harvesting tanks.

## Water Conservation and Demand Management

Although South Africa has been classified as a water scarce country, water from the source to the consumer is often lost as a result of inappropriate and inadequate asset management.

Lack of education on the part of the consumer also leads to inefficiency in the day-to-day use of water. The loss of water not only depletes the country's resources, but also reduces revenue to the water services authorities. The municipalities' revenue is lost due to leaking pipes, illegal connections and poor billing systems.

In terms of the water-use efficiency programme, 68 municipalities were supported in implementing water conservation and water demand measures to reduce water loss by 519 million $m^3$.

Measures to improve water use efficiency in the catchment areas were also undertaken and the volume of water loss was reduced to 32 million $m^3$.

## Enhanced Local Government Support Approach (Elgosa)

In March 2011, the Minister of Water Affairs signed off the Elgosa concept paper that sets out the overall framework within which the department provided support to local government. This has enabled the adoption of a structured approach to local government support and an improvement in linkages of activities impacting on local government across the water value chain.

The department established a rapid response unit to address poor performance of water and waste-water systems, which resulted in community protests in some cases.

The unit deals with proactive and reactive non-compliance cases of municipal service delivery. The specialists within the unit enable the department to intervene directly in high-risk operational situations, where the lives of the citizens and the environment are under threat as a result of water and waste-water treatments failures.

During 2011/12, the unit assisted municipalities in developing 36 business plans for waste-water treatment works, of which 24 were implemented. In addition, five waste-water risk abatement plans and seven water safety plans were finalised. Municipalities were also assisted in developing 18 water conservation and demand management strategies.

As a result of the success of unit, a decision was made to partner regional offices with water boards and decentralise the unit to each regional office.

## Freshwater Programme

Recognising the value and threatened status of South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, and the need to build competence and leadership in this area, the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) has established a programme focusing on freshwater biodiversity.

The Freshwater Programme aims to expand and consolidate the freshwater activities within Sanbi.

The Freshwater Programme focuses on supporting collaborative freshwater initiatives. These include Working for Wetlands, the National Wetland Inventory, National Freshwater Ecosystems Priority Areas Project, a wetlands mitigation banking scheme with the Grasslands Programme and coal-mining indus-

try, and water-related payments for ecosystem services pilot projects. Key to the programme's operation will be further development of strategic relationships with other organisations with shared objectives.

This includes the management of the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of water affairs, environmental affairs and agriculture, forestry and fisheries. Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

## Monitoring programmes

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs are monitored. The evaporation and rainfall station network comprises 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still in operation in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through the cellular short-message system. The data is updated daily on the department's website at *www.dwa.gov.za*.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges is in operation to monitor rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increasing drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The formal protection, restoration and rehabilitation of wetlands need to be strengthened through improvements in land-use planning, land and development management policies, as well as operational and regulatory means at national, provincial and local level.

The adoption of ecosystem-based approaches and aggressive implementation of the open-space planning and management programmes will add impetus to the protection of these systems and associated services, especially at local government level. Such implementation will require integrated approaches and the involvement of multiple sectors, particularly those dealing with human settlements, development and planning.

The Department of Water Affairs' Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Unit is also known as the Blue Scorpions. In 2011/12, they managed to reduce the unlawful use of water, as well as the dumping of agricultural waste, industrial sewerage, and abattoir waste along rivers, among other achievements.

In the Vaal River System they ensured drastic reduction in unlawful activities and loss of revenue to the department. The physical volume that was stopped amounts to 16,6 million $m^3$ a year. A total of 86 mines were audited, six mining operations were stopped for operating without water licences and five criminal charges were laid.

The Department of Water Affairs is also designing programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxiclogical quality status of the country's water resources.

## River Health Programme (RHP)

The *River Health Report* will be used for assessing the pattern of water quality. Generally, water quality is good in the upland regions and deteriorates downstream, particularly in areas affected by mining and urban development. Because of the longitudinal nature of rivers, poor water quality may extend far downstream of the source of pollutants.

The RHP was implemented in all nine regions, comprising 48 projects.

Products of the RHP have attracted wide attention and recognition, and provide strategic water-resource management information and training material for use in schools and universities, as well as in awareness creation.

To date, 1 008 jobs have been created through the Adopt-a-River Programme. In 2012, the department aimed to train 90 young women on basic water testing, who would then be twinned with the department's officials responsible for river health.

The implementation of resource-directed measures, such as ecological water requirements/reserve, the classification of water resources and the setting of resource quality objectives as part of water-use authorisations, also indicated a need for the massification of natural-resource management programmes. These include Working for Water (WfW), Working for Wetlands, Working on Fire, Working for Woodlands and Working for Energy, which are key components of the management of water quantity and quality in South Africa.

## National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems. It focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The rationale for initiating a biomonitoring programme is that the classic approach of monitoring only physical and chemical water-quality attributes was inadequate for generating information on the overall health of an aquatic ecosystem. Monitoring chemical attributes alone was found to be insufficient to detect, for example, the cumulative effects on aquatic ecosystems of extended exposure to multiple stressors.

Such stressors include habitat alteration, barriers that alter stream flow, water abstraction and alien species being introduced. Aquatic communities (for example, fish, riparian vegetation and aquatic invertebrate fauna), however, are adapted to live within a certain range of environmental conditions.

If healthy and diverse biological communities inhabit a watercourse, the watercourse as a whole is considered to be ecologically resilient and healthy. However, from an RHP point of view, a healthy water resource does not guarantee the fitness of that resource for domestic, recreational, industrial and agricultural use.

The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the department and other role players to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

## National Chemical Monitoring Programme

The National Chemical Monitoring Programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. Based on a report produced in 2002, the main water quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium-absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is due to high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments. Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly due to poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are especially prone to cholera outbreaks.

## National Toxicity Monitoring Programme

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme reports on the status of DDT (dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane) and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs.

## Education and awareness

The department's school-based water and

environmental education programme implemented in collaboration with the Department of Basic Education have achieved the following:

- Water and environment has been incorporated into the Curriculum Assessment and Policy Statement. Through the 2020 Vision Programme, the department reached 1 000 schools through the South African Youth Water Prize and Baswa Le Meetse projects in 2011.
- In 2012, it was expected to implement the Eco Schools Project in 17 schools. This is a three-year programme. It is anticipated that these schools will be model schools in terms of natural resource management.
- The national winners of South African Youth Water Prize Project participate in the annual Stockholm Junior Water Prize held in Sweden. Through the department's collaboration with the WRC and the Department of Science and Technology, it patents and develops the inventions developed by young people, and ensures piloting and implementation. The department also awarded bursaries to learners who were the national winners of this project to study for water-related careers.
- In partnership with mobile communications company MTN, the department provided 700 computers to the national winners of the Baswa Le Meetse Project.

### Youth development

The Department of Water Affairs implemented the following youth development projects:

- In 2011, the War on Leaks Project was launched in Mogale City in Gauteng. It is aimed at educating water users about the importance of repairing water leaks. The project educates the community on how to fix leaking taps and toilets, while creating job opportunities and skills development for the youth of the community. By mid-2012, 6 393 kilolitres of water had been saved in Mogale City. Some 40 people had been trained on how to fix leaking taps and toilets, logging, control valve operation and maintenance. The project covered 200 households and 21 schools.
- Sebenza Nathi is a partnership project with Rand Water, aimed at training unemployed graduates to address the scarce-skills challenge in the water sector. Through this project, the department trained 17 unemployed graduates as technicians who were placed in Lesedi, Merafong, Emfuleni, Midvaal and Randfontein municipalities. Through its learning academy, it awarded 494 bursaries over the past five years, with 82 graduate trainees appointed in the department.

### National Water Week

National Water Week is an awareness week campaign by the Department of Water Affairs to highlight the value of water, the need for sustainable management of this scarce resource and the role water plays in eradicating poverty and under-development in South Africa.

The campaign seeks to continue building on the ongoing awareness creation within the broader South African community.

In 2013, Water Week was observed from 18 to 24 March under the theme *Water is Life – Respect It, Conserve It, Enjoy It*.

National Water Week celebrations coincided with the UN General Assembly declaring 2013 as the United Nations International Year of Water Cooperation. The objective is to raise awareness, both on the potential for increased cooperation, and on the challenges facing water management in view of the increase in demand for water access, allocation and services.

The aim is to highlight water cooperation initiatives, as well as identify burning issues on water education, water diplomacy, transboundary water management, financing cooperation, national/international legal frameworks, and the linkages with the millennium development goals.

### Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

South Africa has signed cooperative agreements with a number of countries in the southern African region with which it shares water resources, such as:

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project
- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These cooperative agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

Four of South Africa's major river systems are shared with six immediate neighbouring countries, namely Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland and Zimbabwe.

In the area of shared river basins, South Africa continued to participate in joint water commissions to form part of Africa bilaterals with Botswana, on Joint Permanent Cooperation and with Mozambique regarding the breach of the Usuthu River, where a feasibility study was completed.

As President of the African Ministers Council on Water (AMCOW), South Africa made significant contributions towards the council's work through its strong leadership on the financial and staff regulations. South Africa provided leadership in the preparation of a triennial workplan, which has instilled donor confidence in AMCOW's programmes.

The Department of Water Affairs facilitated a workshop on water between South Africa and Japan, to share and exchange technical information and opportunities. This led to the signing of a joint resolution between South Africa and the Japan Ministry of Land, Infrastructure, Transport and Tourism to encourage and strengthen mutual cooperation in water management.

South Africa entered into a partnership with the World Economic Forum. The Strategic Water Partners Network was established, focusing on the water efficiency supply chain, with a focus on agriculture and water quality.

In June 2012, South Africa signed an agreement with the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), enabling the transfer of funds from the African Renaissance Fund to Randwater, which was appointed to implement projects in Lubumbashi and Likasi.

In August 2012, Cabinet approved a draft treaty between South Africa and the DRC for the development of the Grand Inga Hydro-electric Project on the Congo River.

The Inga Hydro-Electric Project could become the largest hydro-electric project in the world, and is expected to generate a massive 40 000 MW of electricity – more than the current electricity generation in South Africa.

## Conclusion

In just under 20 years, the percentage of people with access to clean and safe drinking water increased to 94,7% from 59%, an increase of 35,7%. The backlog now stands at 5,3%, or 710 000 households, compared with 3,9 million households in 1994.

However, while considerable progress has been made, many people are still without water and South Africa's fresh water resource is at its limit in many areas.

To be able to respond to developmental needs will require a dramatic change in the approach towards water governance.

To this end, the National Water Resource Strategy, which describes how water resources will be protected, used, managed and conserved, is being revised to reflect the existing state of water resources in the country. The department is also updating the Raw Water Pricing Strategy to enhance cost recovery from previously exempted sectors.

A high-level National Water Investment Framework for South Africa, which provides guidance on overall water investment requirements in the sector at national, regional and local level, has already been drafted. The department will build on the framework to formulate detailed plans.

Investment in water infrastructure remains a critical element if South Africa is to attain its developmental goals. First results from the

National Water Investment Framework indicate that at least R573 billion, of which R162 billion for water resources and R394 billion for water services, will be required over the next 10 years. Currently, only 42% of the need has been secured from various sources.

At least 25% of this is required for refurbishment. This implies an urgent increase in financing, which will require new and innovative funding mechanisms.

An investment of R2,23 billion has been made in regional bulk water infrastructure programmes during the 2012/13 financial year. This includes the construction of 43 regional bulk scheme projects, 27 of which are in the rural parts of the country and 16 in urban areas.

The department will continue working with the departments of environmental affairs and mineral resources to implement a process that will cover water-use licences, environmental impact assessment authorisations and waste licences with a view to later integrating further permits to streamline the regulatory processes.

During 2012, the department investigated how best to structure the economic regulation for the delivery of water services, as well as water resources.

Considering the scarcity of water in South Africa, the correct pricing of water, including the revision of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy, is an important issue.

An investigation was launched into the possible restructuring of water boards to fund and develop the necessary bulk water-services infrastructure, and to support municipalities, particularly those that require immediate intervention, including enabling the cross-subsidisation of and service delivery in particularly under-resourced rural areas.

Looking to the future, the Department of Water Affairs remains committed to using its budget, its human resources, and its skills to meet the water needs of all South Africa's people.

## Acknowledgements

*Beeld*
*Business Report*
*Delivery Agreements for Outcome 10*
*Department of Water Affairs Annual Performance Plan, 2011/12*
*Department of Water Affairs Annual Report, 2011/12*
*Department of Water Affairs Budget Vote Speech 2012/13*
*Department of Water Affairs Strategic Plan 2011 – 2014*
*Development Indicators, 2012*
*Estimates of National Expenditure, 2012*, published by National Treasury
*Green Drop Progress Report 2012*
*National Water Resource Strategy 2012*
Water Research Commission

*www.csir.co.za*
*www.dwa.gov.za*
*www.gov.za*
*www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com*
*www.sanews.gov.za*
*www.southafrica.info*
*www.southafricandams.co.za*

## Suggested reading

*Berg Water Project: Communication Practices for Governance and Sustainability Improvement.* 2010. Washington: World Bank.
Denison, J. 2009. *Indigenous Water Harvesting and Conservation Practices: Historical Context, Cases and Implications.* Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).
Haarhoff, J & Cassa, AM. 2009. *Introduction to Flood Hydrology.* Cape Town: Juta.
Ilemobade, AA. 2009. *Assessment of the Feasibility of Using a Dual Water Reticulation System in South Africa.* Gezina: WRC.
Movik, S. 2012. *Fluid Rights: Water Allocation Reform in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
*Productive Use of Domestic Piped Water for Sustaining Livelihoods in Poor Households.* Gezina: WRC.
*Review of Regulatory Aspects of the Water Services Sector.* 2009. Gezina: WRC.
Roux, DJ. 2009. *Enabling Effective Learning in Catchment Management Agencies: A Philosophy and Strategy.* Gezina: WRC.
Rust, U. 2009. *The Impact of Gender in the Rural Water Services Environment of South Africa.* Gezina: WRC.
*A Scoping Exercise to Investigate the Potential Need for, and Nature of, Water Trading in South Africa.* 2009. Gezina: WRC.
Swartz, CD. 2009. *A Planning Framework to Position Rural Water Treatment in South African for the Future.* Gezina: WRC.
Thompson, P. 2009. *The Development of a Generic Water Safety Plan for Small Community Water Supply.* Gezina: WRC.
*Upgrading Existing South African Filtration Plants to High Rate Filters. 2009.* Gezina: WRC.
Walker, C & Walker, A. 2012. *The Rhino Keepers: Struggle for Survival.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

# SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2012/13

# Addendum

## Abbreviations

**A**

| | |
|---|---|
| AARTO | Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences |
| ABC | Agricultural Business Chamber |
| ABC | Audit Bureau of Circulations |
| Abet | Adult Basic Education and Training |
| ABF | Annual Bilateral Forum |
| Absa | Amalgamated Banks of South Africa |
| AC | Advisory Committee |
| ACAP | Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels |
| ACE | Advanced Certificate in Education |
| ACEP | African Coelacanth Ecosystems Programme |
| ACIP | Accelerated Community Infrastructure Programme |
| ACP | African-Caribbean-Pacific |
| Acsa | Airports Company of South Africa |
| ACT | Arts and Culture Trust |
| ADEA | Association for the Development of Education in Africa |
| ADPA | African Diamond Producers' Association |
| ADS | Approved Destination Status |
| AEC | African Economic Community |
| AFB | Air Force Base |
| AfDB | African Development Bank |
| Afis | Automated Fingerprint Information System |
| AFU | Asset Forfeiture Unit |
| AG | Auditor-General |
| AG | Attorney-General |
| AGIS | Agricultural Geo-referenced Information System |
| AGOA | African Growth and Opportunity Act |
| Agri BEE | Agri Black Economic Empowerment |
| Agri SA | Agri South –Africa |
| AGSA | Auditor General of South Africa |
| AIDS | Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome |
| AIICT | Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology |
| AIP | Association of Independent Publishers |
| Aisa | African Institute of International Affairs |
| AMAA | African Movie Academy Awards |
| AMCEN | African Ministerial Conference on the Environment |
| AMCHUD | African Ministerial Conference on Housing and Urban Development |
| AMCOW | African Ministers Council on Water |
| AMD | South African Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association |
| AML/CF | Anti-Money Laundering and Combating the Financing of Terrorism |
| AMP | African Mining Partnership |
| ANA | Annual National Assessment |
| ANC | African National Congress |
| Andi | African Network on Drugs and Diagnostic Innovation |
| AP | Associated Press |
| APAC | Agricultural Produce Agents Council |
| APRM | African Peer Review Mechanism |
| APS | Anti-Poverty Strategy |
| APSW | African Public Service Week |
| AQA | Air Quality Act |
| AQMP | Air-Quality Management Planning |
| ARC | Agricultural Research Council |
| ARCC | Africa Regional Certificate Committee |
| ARDM | Agricultural Risk and Disaster Management |
| Aressa | Antarctic Research Strategy |
| ARF | African Renaissance Fund |
| Armscor | Armaments Corporation of South Africa |
| ART | antiretroviral treatment |
| ARV | antiretroviral |

| | |
|---|---|
| ASA | Advertising Standards Authority |
| Asean | Association of South-East Asian Nations |
| AsgiSA | Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa |
| ASIB | Aviation Safety Investigation Board |
| ASKAP | Australian Square Kilometre Array Pathfinder |
| ASP | African Stockpile Programme |
| ASRDC | Agricultural and Sustainable Rural Development Committee |
| ASSAF | Academy of Science of South Africa |
| Astron | Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy |
| ATA | Admission Temporaire/Temporary Admission |
| ATAF | African Tax Administration Forum |
| ATI | Agricultural Training Institute |
| ATM | Automated Teller Machine |
| ATM | African Traditional Medicine |
| ATM | AIDS, Tuberculosis and Malaria |
| ATNS | Air-Traffic Navigation Service |
| ATP | Agritourism Programme |
| AU | African Union |
| AUC | African Union Commission |
| AVR | antiretroviral treatment |
| AWCC | African West Coast Cable |
| AWHF | African World Heritage Fund |

**B**

| | |
|---|---|
| B&Bs | bed-and-breakfast establishments |
| BA | British Airways |
| BAA | Black Administration Act |
| Basa | Banking Association of South Africa |
| Basa | Business and Arts South Africa |
| BASIC | Brazil, South Africa, India and China |
| BBC | British Broadcasting Corporation |
| BBBEE | Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment |
| BCOCC | Border Control Coordinating Committee |
| BEAC | Banque d'Etats de l'Afrique Centrale |
| BED | Business and Entrepreneurial Development |
| BEE | Black Economic Empowerment |
| BEEAC | BEE Advisory Council |
| BER | Bureau for Economic Research |
| BioFISA | Finnish-South African Partnership Programme |
| Blindlib | South African Library for the Blind |
| Blind SA | Blind Workers' Organisation of South Africa |
| BLNS | Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland |
| BNC | Binational Commission |
| BNG | Breaking New Ground |
| BPO | Business Process Outsourcing |
| BPO&O | Business Process Outsourcing and Offshoring |
| Brics | biotechnology regional innovation centres |
| BRICS | Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa |
| BRT | Bus Rapid Transport |
| BSRP | Building for Sport and Recreation Project |
| Bt | billion tons |
| BTech | Bachelor's Degree in Technology |
| BWIs | Bretton Woods Institutions |

**C**

| | |
|---|---|
| CA | Council of Administrators |
| CA | Conservation Agriculture |
| Cabri | Collaborative African Budget Reform Initiative |
| CADF | China-Africa Development Fund |
| CAF | Confederation of African Football |
| CAPE | Cape Action for People and the Environment |
| Caps | Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement |
| CAR | Central African Republic |
| Cara | Criminal Asset Recovery Act |
| Caricom | Caribbean Community |
| CASP | Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme |
| CAV | Centurion Aerospace Village |
| CBD | Convention on Biological Diversity |
| CBE | Council for the Built Environment |
| CBOs | community-based organisations |
| CBRTA | Cross-Border Road Transport Agency |
| CC | Constitutional Court |
| CCA | Common Country Assessment |
| CCAMLR | Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources |
| CCCF | Comprehensive Country Cooperation Framework |
| CCD | Convention to Combat Desertification |
| CCMA | Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration |
| CCMT | Comprehensive Programme for HIV and AIDS Care, Management and Treatment |
| CCTV | closed-circuit television |
| CDA | Central Drug Authority |
| CDI | Cooperative Development Initiative |
| CDM | clean development mechanism |
| CDWs | community development workers |
| CEE | Commission for Employment Equity |
| CEF | Central Energy Fund |
| CEM | Council of Education Ministers |
| CEO | Chief Executive Officer |
| CESSM | Centre for Exercise Science and Sports Medicine |
| CF | Compensation Fund |
| CFC | Central Foreign Currency |
| CFCs | chlorofluorocarbons |
| CFG | Courier Freight Group |
| CFL | compact fluorescent lamp |
| CFM | case-flow management |
| CGE | Commission on Gender Equality |
| CGS | Council for Geoscience |
| CHE | Council on Higher Education |
| CHOGM | Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting |
| CHP | Comprehensive Housing Plan |
| CHPC | Centre for High-Performance Computing |
| CIO | Chief Information Officer |
| Cipro | Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office |
| Cirad | French Agricultural Centre for International Development |
| CIS | Cadastral Information System |
| CIS | collective investment schemes |
| CIT | corporate income tax |
| Cites | Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species |
| CJCP | Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention |
| CJS | criminal justice system |
| ClaRA | Communal Land Rights Act |
| CLPA | Child Labour Programme of Action |
| CMAs | catchment management agencies |
| CMS | Convention of Migratory Species |
| CNG | compressed natural gas |
| $CO_2$ | carbon dioxide |
| COEs | centres of excellence |
| Cofisa | Cooperation Framework on Innovation Systems between Finland and South Africa |
| Comsec | Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Limited |

| | |
|---|---|
| COP | Conference of the Parties |
| COPE | Congress of the People |
| Cosatu | Congress of South African Trade Unions |
| CPA | comprehensive peace agreement |
| CPA | Cotonou Partnership Agreement |
| CPA | Communal Property Association |
| CPA | Criminal Procedures Act |
| CPB | Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety |
| CPD | Continuing Professional Development |
| CPF | Community Policing Forum |
| CPI | Consumer Price Index |
| CPIDP | Construction and Industry Development Programme |
| CPIX | consumer price index, excluding mortgage costs |
| CPSI | Centre for Public Service Innovation |
| CRDP | Comprehensive Rural Development Programme |
| CRLR | Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights |
| CRUs | community residential units |
| CSD | Centre for Science Development |
| CSD | Commission on Sustainable Development |
| CSG | Child-Support Grant |
| CSIR | Council for Scientific and Industrial Research |
| CSOs | civil society organisations |
| CSP | Comprehensive Strategic Partnership |
| CSSDCA | Conference on Security, Stability, Development and Cooperation in Africa |
| CSTL | Care and Support for Teaching and Learning |
| CTL | coal-to-liquid |
| CWP | Community Work Programme |

**D**

| | |
|---|---|
| DA | Democratic Alliance |
| DBSA | Development Bank of Southern Africa |
| DDT | dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane |
| DFIs | development finance institutions |
| DG | Director-General |
| DLS | Denel Land Systems |
| DNA | Domain Name Authority |
| DNA | Designated National Authority |
| DRC | Democratic Republic of Congo |
| DPRK | Democratic People's Republic of Korea |
| DSM | demand-side management |
| DST | Domestic Tourism Strategy |

**E**

| | |
|---|---|
| EAAB | Estate Agency Affairs Board |
| EAP | Employee Assistance Programme |
| EC | European Commission |
| EC | Executive Council |
| EC | Enforcement Committee |
| ECC | Employment Conditions Commission |
| ECD | early childhood development |
| Ecosoc | Economic and Social Council |
| Ecowas | Economic Community of West African States |
| EDCCTP | European Developing Countries Clinical Trials Partnership |
| EEZ | Exclusive Economic Zone |
| EFT | Electronic Funds Transfer |
| EFTA | European Free Trade Area |
| EIAs | environmental impact assessments |
| EIAMS | Environment Impact Assessment and Management Strategy |
| EIB | European Investment Bank |
| Efta | European Free Trade Area |
| Elgosa | Enhanced Local Government Support Approach |
| ELRC | Education Labour Relations Council |
| eNaTIS | Electronic National Traffic Information System |
| eNCAt | eNews Channel Africa |
| EPWP | Expanded Public Works Programme |
| EU | European Union |
| EWS | Early Warning System |

**F**

| | |
|---|---|
| FAA | Federal Aviation Administration |
| Fabi | Forestry Agricultural Biotechnology Institute |
| FAIS | financial advisory and intermediary service |
| FAO | Food and Agricultural Organisation |
| FAQs | frequently asked questions |
| FAW | First Automobile Works |
| FBOs | faith-based organisations |
| FCIS | foreign collective investment scheme |
| FCOs | fishery-contol officers |
| FCS | Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences units |
| FDI | Foreign Direct Investment |
| FED | Forestry Enterprise Development |
| Fedusa | Federations of Unions of South Africa |
| FET | Further Education and Training |
| FFC | Financial and Fiscal Commission |
| FIC | Financial Intelligence Centre |
| FIFA | *Fédération Internationale de Football Association* |
| FIG | Foreign Investment Grant |
| FILDA | *Feira Internacional de Angola* |
| FINA | *Fédération Internationale de Natation* |
| FLISP | Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme |
| FM | Frequency Modulation |
| FNB | First National Bank |
| FNL | *Forces National de Liberatio*n |
| FOCAC | Forum on China-Africa Cooperation |
| Fosad | Forum of South African Directors-General |
| FPA | Fire Protection Association |
| FPB | Film and Publication Board |
| FPM | Fibre Processing and Manufacturing |
| FRD | Foundation for Research Development |
| F'SATI | French-South African Institute of Technology |
| FSB | Financial Services Board |
| FSD | Financial Surveillance Department |
| FSL | Forensic Science Laboratory |
| FSPs | financial services providers |
| FT | Fischer-Tröpsch |
| FTA | Free Trade Area |
| FTFA | Food and Trees for Africa |

**G**

| | |
|---|---|
| G8 | Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia |
| GBADS | ground-based air defence systems |
| GBH | grievous bodily harm |
| GCIS | Government Communication and Information System |
| GDP | gross domestic product |
| GDPR | gross domestic product per region |
| GDS | Growth and Development Summit |
| Gems | Government Employees Medical Scheme |
| GEPF | Government Employees Pension Fund |
| GEOSS | Global Earth Observation System of Systems |
| GET | General Education and Training |
| GETC | General Education and Training Certificate |
| GGR | Gross Gambling Revenue |
| GHG | greenhouse gas |
| GIS | Geographical Information System |
| Gito | Government Information Technology Officer |

| | |
|---|---|
| Gitoc | Government Information Technology Officers Council |
| GLTP | Greater Limpopo Transfrontier Park |
| GM | Genetic modification |
| GMOs | genetically modified organisms |
| GPA | Global Political Agreement |
| GPS | Global Positioning System |
| GRC | Gambling Review Commission |
| GPW | Government Printing Works |
| GRNP | Garden Route National Park |
| GSLWP | Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park |
| GTL | gas-to-liquid |
| GTTP | Global Travel and Tourism Programme |
| GWh | gigawatt-hour |

**H**

| | |
|---|---|
| ha | hectare(s) |
| HartRAO | Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory |
| HCT | HIV Counselling and Testing Campaign |
| HD | high definition |
| HDA | Housing Development Agency |
| HDIs | historically disadvantaged individuals |
| HE | Higher Education |
| Hedcom | Heads of Education Departments Committee |
| Hesa | Higher Education South Africa |
| HG | Higher Grade |
| HIV | human immunodeficiency virus |
| HMO | Hermanus Magnetic Observatory |
| HPCSA | Health Professions Council of South Africa |
| HR | human resources |
| HRD | human-resource development |
| HRDCSA | Human Resources Development Council of South Africa |
| HRDSSA | Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa |
| HRM | human-resource management |
| HRTEM | High-Resolution Transmission Electron Microscopy |
| HSDG | Human Settlements Development Grant |
| HSGIC | Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee |
| HSRC | Human Sciences Research Council |
| HYI | Hospitality Youth Initiative |

**I**

| | |
|---|---|
| IAEA | International Atomic Energy Agency |
| IBA | Independent Broadcasting Authority |
| IBC | International Broadcasting Centre |
| IBIS | Integrated Ballistics Identification System |
| IBO | International Boxing Organisation |
| IBSA | India-Brazil-South Africa |
| ICA | Infrastructure Consortium for Africa |
| ICAO | International Civil Aviation Organisation |
| Icasa | Independent Communications Authority of South Africa |
| ICC | International Cricket Council |
| ICC | International Criminal Court |
| ICEB | International Council on English Braille |
| ICFR | Institute for Commercial Forestry Research |
| ICMA | Inkomati Catchment Management Agency |
| ICMS | Integrated Case Management System |
| ICSU | International Council for Science |
| ICT | information and communications technology |
| ICV | infantry combat vehicle |
| ID | identity document |
| Idasa | Institute for Democracy in Africa |
| IDC | Industrial Development Corporation |
| IDP | Integrated Development Plan |
| IDZ | Industrial Development Zone |
| IEC | Independent Electoral Commission |
| IECs | integrated energy centres |
| IERI | Institute for Economic Research on Innovation |
| IFP | Inkatha Freedom Party |
| IFSNP | Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme |
| IGR | intergovernmental relations |
| IHL | International Humanitarian Law |
| IIC | International Investment Council |
| IIWTMP | Integrated Industry Waste Tyre Management Plan |
| IJS | integrated justice system |
| IKS | indigenous knowledge system |
| ILS | instrument landing system |
| IMC | International Marketing Council |
| IMC | Inter-Ministerial Committee |
| IMF | International Monetary Fund |
| Impact | International Multilateral Partnership Against Cyber Terrorism |
| IMS | Integrated Manufacturing Strategy |
| Inep | Integrated National Electrification Programme |
| INP | Integrated Nutrition Programme |
| IOC | International Olympic Committee |
| IOR-ARC | Indian Ocean Rim Association for Regional Cooperation |
| IOR | Indian Ocean Rim |
| IP | Intellectual Property |
| IPA | International Publishers Association |
| IPAP | Industrial Policy Action Plan |
| IPC | International Paralympic Committee |
| IPCA | International Prison Chaplaincy Association |
| IPP | Independent Power Producer |
| IPPC | International Plant Protection Convention |
| IRB | International Rugby Board |
| IRP | Integrated Resource Plan |
| IRDP | Integrated Residential Development Programme |
| IRPS | International Relations, Peace and Security |
| IRPTN | Integrated Rapid Public Transport Network |
| IRR | Institutional Realignment and Restructuring |
| ISHP | Integrated School Health Programme |
| ISO | International Standards Organisation |
| ISPs | Internet service-providers |
| ISUP | Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme |
| ISS | Institute for Security Studies |
| ISS | International social services |
| ISSET-Seta | Information Systems Electronic and Telecom Technologies Sector Education and Training Authority |
| IST | Innovation, Science and Technology |
| IT | information technology |
| Itac | International Trade Administration Commission |
| Itec | Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation |
| ITC | Information and Communication Technology |
| Ited | International Trade and Economic Development |
| iThembaLabs | iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences |
| ITS | intelligent transport service |
| ITU | International Telecommunications Union |

| | |
|---|---|
| IUCN | International Union for the Conservation of Nature |
| IWF | Isivande Women's Fund |
| IWR | Institute for Water Research |
| IWRM | Integrated Water Resources Management |

**J**

| | |
|---|---|
| JBC | Joint Bilateral Commission (for Cooperation) |
| JC | joint commission |
| JCBC | Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation |
| JCC | Joint Commission of Cooperation |
| JCPS | Justice, Crime Prevention and Security |
| JICA | Japanese International Cooperation Agency |
| Jipsa | Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition |
| JMC | Joint Ministerial Commission |
| JPC | Joint Permanent Commission |
| JPCC | Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation |
| JPCCDS | Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation on Defence and Security |
| JRMCs | joint route management committees |
| JSC | Judicial Service Commission |
| JSE | Johannesburg Stock Exchange |

**K**

| | |
|---|---|
| Kat | Karoo Array Telescope |
| KfW | Kreditstalt für Wiederaufbau [German Development Bank] |
| KLF | Komatiland Forests |
| km | kilometre |
| KM | Knowledge Management |
| KOAFEC | Korea-Africa Economic Conference |
| KPCS | Kimberley Process Certification Scheme |
| KRC | Kirstenbosch Research Centre |
| kWh | kilowatt-hours |

**L**

| | |
|---|---|
| l | litre |
| LAGs | liquids, aerosols and gels |
| Land Bank | Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa |
| LARP | Land and Agrarian Reform Project |
| Lasa | Legal Aid South Africa |
| LED | local economic development |
| LGSA | Local Government Strategic Agenda |
| LGTAS | Local Government Turnaround Strategy |
| LHWP | Lesotho Highlands Water Project |
| LIS | Library and Information Service |
| LPG | liquid petroleum gas |
| LRA | Labour Relations Act |
| LRAD | Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development |
| LSE | London Stock Exchange |
| LTMS | Long-Term Mitigation Scenario |
| LTPS | Land Transport Permit System |
| LTR | Land and Tenure Reform |

**M**

| | |
|---|---|
| $m^3$ | cubic metres |
| m | metre |
| M&E | monitoring and evaluation |
| Macufe | Manguang Cultural Festival |
| Mafisa | Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa |
| Mappp-Seta | Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority |
| MBR | Methyl Bromide |
| MCA | MultiChoice Africa |
| MCC | Medicines Control Council |
| MCLI | Maputo Corridor Logistics Initiative |
| MCM | Marine and Coastal Management |
| MCS | Movement Control System |
| MDB | Municipal Demarcation Board |
| MDC | Movement for Democratic Change |
| MDDA | Media Development and Diversity Agency |
| MDGs | millennium development goals |
| MDI | Home Ownership Mortgage Indemnity Guarantee Fund |
| MDR-TB | multidrug-resistant tuberculosis |
| MEC | Member of the Executive Council |
| MEFMI | Macroeconomic and Financial Management Institute of Eastern and Southern Africa |
| Mercosur | Southern Common Market (*Mercado Comun del Sur*) |
| MFMA | Municipal Finance Management Act |
| MFN | Most Favoured Nation |
| MFRC | Micro-Finance Regulatory Council |
| MFSA | Marketing Federation of South Africa |
| MHIC | Mental Health Information Centre |
| MHSA | Mine Health and Safety Act |
| MHSC | Mine Health and Safety Council |
| MHSI | Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate |
| Mice | meetings, incentives, conferences and exhibitions |
| Midem | Music Market International (*Marché International du Disque et de l'Edition Musicale*) |
| MIDP | Motor Industry Development Programme |
| MIG | Municipal Infrastructure Grant |
| MiningTek | Mining Technology Division |
| MinMec | Minister and MECs Forum |
| Mintek | Council for Mineral Technology and Research |
| MIT | Massachusetts Institute of Technology |
| MK | Umkhonto we Sizwe |
| Ml | million litres |
| MMM | MultiMarket Model |
| MMR | Maternal Mortality Ratio |
| MMSD | Mineral and Mining for Sustainable Development |
| MoU | Memorandum of Understanding |
| MPAs | marine protected areas |
| MPC | Monetary Policy Committee |
| MPRDA | Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act |
| MQA | Mining Qualifications Authority |
| MRC | Medical Research Council |
| MRCC | Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre |
| MST | Mathematics, Science and Technology |
| Mt | million tons |
| MTech | Master's Degree in Technology |
| MTEF | Medium Term Expenditure Framework |
| MTN | Mobile Telephone Network |
| MTSF | Medium Term Strategic Framework |
| MW | medium wave |
| MW | megawatt |
| MYIP | Multi-Year Implementation Plan |

**N**

| | |
|---|---|
| NAASP | New Asian-African Strategic Partnership |
| NAC | National Arts Council (of South Africa) |
| NACCA | National Action Committee for Children Made Vulnerable by HIV and AIDS |
| NACF | National Anti-Corruption Forum |
| NACH | National Anti-Corruption Helpline |
| Naci | National Advisory Council on Innovation |
| Nactu | National Council of Trade Unions |
| NAEHMP | National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme |

| | |
|---|---|
| Nafu | National African Farmers' Union |
| NFVSA | National Film, Video and Sound Archives |
| NaHSLI | National Human Settlements Land Inventory |
| NAM | Non-Aligned Movement |
| NAMC | National Agricultural Marketing Council |
| NAP | National Action Plan |
| NAP | National Anti-Corruption Programme |
| Napwa | National Association for People Living with HIV and AIDS |
| Nareg | National Reference Group |
| NARF | National Agricultural Research Forum |
| Narmco | National Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Committee |
| Narysec | National Rural Youth Service Corps |
| NBA | National Biodiversity Assessment |
| NBI | National Botanical Institute |
| NBS | National Biotechnology Strategy |
| NBSAP | National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan |
| NCA | National Credit Act |
| NCACC | National Conventional Arms Control Committee |
| NCC | National Communications Centre |
| NCHM | National Cultural History Museum |
| NCLIS | National Council for Library and Information Services |
| NCOH | National Centre for Occupational Health |
| NCOP | National Council of Provinces |
| NCPCF | National Community Policing Consultative Forum |
| NCPR | National Child Protection Register |
| NCR | National Credit Regulator |
| NCRF | National Community Radio Forum |
| NCPS | National Crime Prevention Strategy |
| NCS | National Curriculum Statement |
| NCV | National Certificate Vocational |
| NDA | National Development Agency |
| NDMC | National Disaster Management Centre |
| NDP | National Development Plan |
| NDPP | National Director of Public Prosecutions |
| Necsa | Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa |
| Nedlac | National Economic Development and Labour Council |
| Needu | National Education Evaluation and Development Unit |
| NEF | National Empowerment Fund |
| Nema | National Environmental Management Act |
| Nemba | National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act |
| Nemisa | National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa |
| NEMWA | National Environmental Management: Waste Act |
| Nepa | National Education Policy Act |
| Nepad | New Partnership for Africa's Development |
| NER | National Electricity Regulator |
| Neri | National Energy Research Institute |
| Nerpo | National Emergent Red Meat Producers Organisation |
| Nersa | National Energy Regulator of South Africa |
| NETSAFRICA | Network of Tuscan and South African Local Governments |
| NFAC | National Forests Advisory Council |
| NFSD | National Framework for Sustainable Development |
| NFVF | National Film and Video Foundation |
| NGB | National Gambling Board |
| NGOs | non-governmental organisations |
| NGP | New Growth Path |
| NHBRC | National Home-Builders Registration Council |
| NHC | National Health Council |
| NHF | National Health Fund |
| NHFC | National Housing Finance Corporation |
| NHI | National Health Insurance |
| NHLS | National Health Laboratory Service |
| NHRBC | National Home-Builders Registration Council |
| NHS | National Health System |
| NIA | National Intelligence Agency |
| NICOC | National Intelligence Coordinating Committee |
| NIPMO | National Intellectual Property Management Office |
| NIPP | National Industrial Participation Programme |
| NIRP | National Integrated Resource Plan |
| NIU | National Intervention Unit |
| NKC | National Khoi-San Council |
| NLB | National Lotteries Board |
| NLBs | national language bodies |
| NLDS | National Livestock Development Strategy |
| NLP | National LandCare Programme |
| NLSA | National Library of South Africa |
| NLUs | national lexicography units |
| NMC | Network Management Centre |
| NMMU | Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University |
| NMPP | New Multi-Product Pipeline |
| NMT | non-motorised transport |
| NMSRT | National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism |
| NNR | National Nuclear Regulator |
| NNP | New National Party |
| NP | National Party |
| NPA | National Prosecuting Authority |
| NPA | National Ports Authority |
| NPAES | National Protected Area Expansion Strategy |
| NPC | National Planning Commission |
| NPCA | Nepad Planning and Coordinating Committee |
| NPoA-Sharks | National Plan of Action for the Conservation and Management of Sharks |
| NPOs | non-profit organisations |
| NPR | National Population Register |
| NPT | Non-Prolifiration Treaty |
| NQF | National Qualifications Framework |
| NRDS | National Research and Development Strategy |
| NRF | National Research Foundation |
| NRGP | National Responsible Gambling Programme |
| NRMDP | National Red Meat Development Programme |
| NRTA | National Road Traffic Act |
| NSA | National Skills Authority |
| NSBA | National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment |
| NSBAC | National Small Business Advisory Council |
| NSDF | National Spatial Development Framework |
| NSDP | National Spatial Development Perspective |
| NSDS | National Skills Development Strategy |
| NSI | National System of Innovation |
| NSIF | National Spatial Information Framework |
| NSF | National Skills Fund |
| NSFAS | National Student Financial Aid Scheme |
| NSNP | National School Nutrition Programme |
| NSP | National Strategic Plan |
| NSRP | National Sport and Recreation Plan |
| NSVC | National Sports Volunteer Corps |
| NTSS | National Tourism Sector Strategy |
| Nurcha | National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency |

| | |
|---|---|
| NWCRU | National Wildlife Reaction Unit |
| NWIF | National Water Investment Framework |
| NWMS | National Waste-Management Strategy |
| NWRI | National Water Resource Infrastructure |
| NWRS | National Water Research Strategy |
| NYDA | National Youth Development Agency |
| NZG | National Zoological Garden |

**O**

| | |
|---|---|
| OBP | Onderstepoort Biological Products |
| ODA | Official Development Assistance |
| OHS | occupational health and safety |
| OIC | Office of Interception Centres |
| OIE | Organisation for Animal Health (*Office International des Épizooties*) |
| OMOs | Open-market operations |
| OPDs | official publications depositories |
| OSD | Occupation Specific Dispensation |
| OTB | Overberg Test Range |

**P**

| | |
|---|---|
| PAC | Pan Africanist Congress |
| Paia | Promotion of Access to Information Act |
| PAJA | Promotion of the Administrative Justice Act |
| Palama | Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy |
| PanSALB | Pan South African Language Board |
| PAP | Pan-African Parliament |
| Papu | Pan-African Postal Union |
| PAT | Progress Assessment Tool |
| PAYE | pay-as-you-earn |
| PCC | President's Coordinating Council |
| PCV13 | Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccine |
| PDIs | previously disadvantaged individuals |
| PFM | Participatory Forest Management |
| PFMA | Public Finance Management Act |
| PGDP | Provincial Growth and Development Plan |
| PGDS | Provincial Growth and Development Strategy |
| PGMs | platinum-group metals |
| PHC | primary healthcare |
| PHP | People's Housing Process |
| PIC | Public Investment Corporation |
| PICC | Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission |
| PIT | personal income tax |
| PJCC | Permanent Joint Commission for Cooperation |
| PLAs | provincial licencing authorities |
| PLAS | Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy |
| PMDS | Performance Management Development System |
| PNC on ISAD | Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development |
| PoA | Programme of Action |
| PooI | Pool for Open Innovation |
| PPPs | public-private partnerships |
| PPPFA | Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act |
| Prasa | Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa |
| PRC | Permanent Representatives Committee |
| PRC | People's Republic of China |
| PSC | Peace and Security Council |
| PSC | Public Service Commission |
| PSCBC | Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council |
| PSDF | Provincial Spatial Development Framework |
| PSeta | Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority |
| PTA | Preferential Trade Agreement |

**Q**

| | |
|---|---|
| QCTO | Quality Council for Trades and Occupations |
| QIDS-UP | Quality Improvement, Development, Support and Upliftment Programme |
| QLTC | Quality Learning and Teaching Campaign |
| QSAPE | Qualifying South African Production Expenditure |

**R**

| | |
|---|---|
| R&D | research and development |
| RAASA | Recreation and Aviation Administration South Africa |
| RAC | Regional Advisory Committee |
| RAF | Road Accident Fund |
| RAS | Registration Administration System |
| RADP | Recapitalisation and Development Programme |
| RBIG | Regional Bulk Infrastructure Programme |
| RCD | research capacity development |
| RDP | Reconstruction and Development Programme |
| REIPPP | Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme |
| RFSTP | Regional Food Security Training Programme |
| RHLF | Rural Housing Loan Fund |
| RHP | River Health Programme |
| Rica | Regulation of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Information Act |
| RoK | Republic of Korea |
| RPPO | Regional Plant Protection Organisation (for Africa) |
| RSR | Railway Safety Regulator |
| RTMC | Road Traffic Management Corporation |
| RTMS | Road Traffic Management Strategy |
| RTSB | Road Traffic Safety Board |
| RWH | rainwater harvesting |

**S**

| | |
|---|---|
| S&T | science and technology |
| SAA | South African Airways |
| SAAF | South African Air Force |
| SAAO | South African Astronomical Observatory |
| Saaqis | South African Air-Quality Information System |
| SA Army | South African Army |
| Saasta | South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement |
| Saats | South African Air Traffic System |
| Saba | South African Braille Authority |
| Sabap | Southern African Bird Atlas Project |
| SABC | South African Broadcasting Corporation |
| Sabca | Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment |
| Sabi | South African Biosystematics Initiative |
| Sabif | South African Bioinformatics Facility |
| SABS | South African Bureau of Standards |
| SABT | South African Ballet Theatre |
| SACAA | South African Civil Aviation Authority |
| Sacci | South African Chamber of Commerce and Industry |
| SACE | South African Council for Educators |
| Sacob | South African Chamber of Business |
| SACSSP | South African Council for Social Service Professions |
| Sacu | South African Customs Union |
| SADB | South African Diamond Board |
| SADC | Southern African Development Community |
| Sadi | South African Defence Industry |

| | |
|---|---|
| SADPMR | South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator |
| SADR | Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic |
| Saeon | South African Environmental Observation Network |
| Safcol | South African Forestry Company Limited |
| SAFIPA | South Africa-Finland Partnership |
| SAGNC | South African Geographical Names Council |
| Saha | South African History Archive |
| Sahara | Social Aspects of AIDS Research Alliance |
| Sahra | South African Heritage Resources Agency |
| SAHRC | South African Human Rights Commission |
| Saiab | South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity |
| SAIDS | South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport |
| SAJET | South African Judicial Education Institute |
| Salga | South African Local Government Association |
| SALRC | South African Law Reform Commission |
| Salt | South African Large Telescope |
| Samaf | South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund |
| Samas | South African Music Awards |
| SAMB | South African Mzanzi Ballet |
| SAMHS | South African Military Health Service |
| Samsa | South African Maritime Safety Authority |
| Samro | South African Music Rights Organisation |
| SAN | South African Navy |
| Sanac | South African National AIDS Council |
| Sanai | South African Academy of Intelligence |
| Sanap | South African National Antarctic Programme |
| Sanas | South African National Accreditation System |
| Sanbi | South African National Biodiversity Institute |
| Sanca | South African National Council on Alcoholism and Drug Dependence |
| SANCB | South African National Convention Bureau |
| Sancor | South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research |
| SANDF | South African National Defence Force |
| Sanedi | South African National Energy Development Institute |
| Sanef | South African National Editors' Forum |
| Saneri | South African National Energy Research Institute |
| SANParks | South African National Parks |
| Sanral | South African National Roads Agency Limited |
| Sanren | South African National Research Network |
| Sansa | South African National Space Agency |
| SAOBC | South African Ostrich Business Chamber |
| Sapca | South African Pest Control Association |
| Sapo | South African Port Operations |
| Sapo | South African Post Office |
| Sapp | Southern African Power Pool |
| SAPS | South African Police Service |
| Saqa | South African Qualifications Authority |
| SAR | search and rescue |
| SARB | South African Reserve Bank |
| SARChI | South African Research Chairs Initiative |
| Sars | South African Revenue Service |
| Sasa | South African Schools Act |
| Sasar | South African Search-and-Rescue Organisation |
| Sascoc | South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee |
| SASS | South African Secret Service |
| Sassa | South African Social Security Agency |
| Sasseta | Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority |
| SAT | South African Tourism |
| Sawen | South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network |
| Sawima | South African Women in Mining Association |
| Sawis | South African Wine Industry Information and Systems |
| SAWS | South African Weather Service |
| SAYAS | South African Young Academy of Science |
| SAX | South African Express Airways |
| SCA | Supreme Court of Appeal |
| SCCU | Specialised Commercial Crime Unit |
| SCI | Social Cohesion and Integration |
| SciELO | Scientific Electronic Online |
| Scopa | Standing Committee on Public Accounts |
| SCRHD | Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery |
| SDF | Spatial Development Framework |
| SDIP | Service-Delivery Improvement Plan |
| SDP | Strategic Defence Procurement |
| Seda | Small Enterprise Development AgencySefa Small Enterprise Finance Agency |
| SET | science, engineering and technology |
| Seta | Sector Education and Training Authority |
| SEZs | special economic zones |
| SFF | Strategic Fuel Fund |
| SFAC | Sasol Fuels Application Centre |
| SGB | School Governing Body |
| SHF | Social Housing Foundation |
| SHRA | Social Housing Regulatory Authority |
| SIP | Strategic Investment Programme |
| SIPs | Strategic integrated projects |
| Sita | State Information Technology Agency |
| SIU | Special Investigating Unit |
| SKA | Square Kilometre Array |
| Skep | Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme |
| SMEs | small and medium-sized enterprises |
| SMMEs | small, medium and micro-enterprises |
| Soca | Sexual Offences and Community Affairs |
| SOCs | state-owned companies |
| SOEs | state-owned enterprises |
| SpaceX | Space Exploration Technologies |
| SPCD | Social Protection and Community Development |
| SPS | Sanitary and phytosanitary measures |
| SPS | Soil Protection Strategy |
| SRSA | Sport and Recreation South Africa |
| S&T | science and technology |
| Stats SA | Statistics South Africa |
| STB | set-top box |
| STIs | sexually transmitted infections |
| STT | Securities Transfer Tax |

## T

| | |
|---|---|
| t | ton |
| TAU SA | Transvaal Agricultural Union of South Africa |
| TB | tuberculosis |
| TBCSA | Tourism Business Council of South Africa |
| TCCs | Thuthuzela care centres |
| TCTA | Trans Caledon Tunnel Authority |
| Tenet | Tertiary Education and Research Network of South Africa |
| TEP | Tourism Enterprise Programme |
| TFCAs | transfrontier conservation areas |
| TFR | Transnet Freight Rail |
| TGCSA | Tourism Grading Council of South Africa |
| Theta | Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority |
| TIA | Technology Innovation Agency |
| Tisa | Trade and Investment South Africa |
| TMNP | Table Mountain National Park |
| TRC | Truth and Reconciliation Commission |
| TRP | Taxi Recapitalisation Programme |
| TSP | Tourism Support Programme |
| TYIP | Ten-Year Innovation Plan |

**U**

| | |
|---|---|
| UAE | United Arab Emirates |
| UAVs | unmanned aerial vehicles |
| UCI | *Union Cycliste Internationale* |
| UEMP | Urban Environmental Management Programme |
| UIF | Unemployment Insurance Fund |
| UJ | University of Johannesburg |
| UK | United Kingdom |
| Umalusi | General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council |
| UN | United Nations |
| UNCCC | United Nations Convention on Climate Change |
| UNCCD | United Nations Convention to Combat Desertification |
| Unced | United Nations Conference on Environment and Development |
| UNCRDP | United Nations Convention on the Rights of People with Disabilities |
| UNDP | United Nations Development Programme |
| Unesco | United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation |
| UNFCCC | United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change |
| UNGA | United Nations General Assembly |
| Unicef | United Nations Children's Fund |
| Unisa | University of South Africa |
| UNODC | United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime |
| UNPFA | United Nations Population Fund |
| UNSC | United Nations Security Council |
| UNSG | United Nations Secretary-General |
| UP | University of Pretoria |
| USA | United States of America |
| Usaasa | Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa |
| USAID | United States Agency for International Development |
| USDG | Urban Settlements Development Grant |
| USO | universal service obligation |
| USSR | Union of Soviet Socialist Republics |

**V**

| | |
|---|---|
| V&A | Victoria and Alfred (Waterfront) |
| VAT | value-added tax |
| VCT | voluntary counselling and testing |
| VEP | Victim Empowerment Programme |
| VLBI | very long baseline interferometry |
| VOC | Dutch East India Company |

**W**

| | |
|---|---|
| WACS | West African Cable System |
| WAR | Water Allocation Reform |
| WEF | World Economic Forum |
| WfGD | Water for Growth Development |
| WHO | World Health Organisation |
| WiH | Women in Housing |
| WIO-LaB | West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project |
| WIPO | World Intellectual Property Organisation |
| Wits | University of the Witwatersrand |
| WMA | water management area |
| WRC | Water Research Commission |
| WRCC | World Radio Communication Conference |
| WRS | Water Resource Strategy |
| WSAs | water service authorities |
| WSDPs | water-services development plans |
| WSDSP | Workplace Skills Development Support Programme |
| WSSD | World Summit on Sustainable Development |
| WTE | Water Trading Entity |
| WTO | World Trade Organisation |
| WUAs | water-user associations |
| WWF | World Wildlife Fund for Nature |
| WWF-SA | World Wildlife Fund for Nature South Africa |

**X**

| | |
|---|---|
| XDR TB | Extreme Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis |

**Y**

| | |
|---|---|
| YiH | Youth in Housing |

**Z**

| | |
|---|---|
| Zanu-PF | Zimbabwean African National Union Patriotic Front |
| ZCC | Zion Christian Church |

## National government departments and organisational components

**Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries**
Website: www.daff.gov.za
Tel: 012 319 6000; Fax: 012 319 7135

**Arts and Culture**
Website: *www.dac.gov.za*
Tel: 012 441 3000; Fax: 012 441 3699

**Basic Education**
Website: *www.education.gov.za*
Tel: 012 357 3000; Fax: 012 323 9430

**Civilian Secretariat of Police**
Website: *www.nationalsecretariat.gov.za*
Tel: 012 393 2500; Fax: 012 393 2536

**Communications**
Website: *www.doc.gov.za*
Tel: 012 427 8000; Fax: 012 427 8016

**Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs**
Website: *www.cogta.gov.z*a
Tel: 012 334 0600; Fax: 012 334 0603

**Correctional Services**
Website: *www.dcs.gov.za*
Tel: 012 307 2000; Fax: 012 323 6088

**Defence**
Website: *www.dod.mil.za*
Tel: 012 355 6220; Fax: 012 347 7445

**Economic Development**
Website: *www.economic.gov.za*
Tel: 012 394 1006; Fax: 086 556 2052

**Energy**
Website: *www.energy.gov.za*
Tel: 012 406 8000; Fax: 012 323 5848

**Environmental Affairs**
Website: *www.environment.gov.za*
Tel: 012 310 3911; Fax: 012 322 2682

**Government Communications (GCIS)**
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*
Tel: 012 314 2911; Fax: 012 323 3831

**Health**
Website: *www.doh.gov.za*
Tel: 012 395 8000; Fax: 012 395 9019

**Higher Education and Training**
Website: *www.dhet.gov.za*
Tel: 012 312 5555; Fax: 012 323 0291

**Home Affairs**
Website: *www.dha.gov.za*
Tel: 012 406 2500; Fax: 086 512 7864

**Human Settlements**
Website: *www.dhs.gov.za*
Tel: 012 421 1311; Fax: 012 341 8513

**Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)**
Website: *www.ipid.gov.za*
Tel: 012 399 0000; Fax: 012 326 0408

**International Relations and Cooperation**
Website: *www.dirco.gov.za*
Tel: 012 351 0594; Fax: 012 328 7701

**Justice and Constitutional Development**
Website: *www.doj.gov.za*
Tel: 012 315 1111; Fax: 012 315 1749

**Labour**
Website: *www.labour.gov.za*
Tel: 012 309 4000; Fax: 012 320 2059

**Military Veterans**
Website: *www.dod.mil.za*
Tel: 012 671 1212; Fax: 012 671 1108

**Mineral Resources**
Website: www.dmr.gov.za
Tel: 012 444 3956; Fax: 012 341 2228

**National Treasury**
Website: *www.treasury.gov.za*
Tel: 012 315 5111; Fax: 012 315 5126

**Performance Monitoring and Evaluation**
Website: *www.thepresidency-dpme.gov.za*
Tel: 012 308 1902; Fax: 012 300 5707

**Presidency (The)**
Website: *www.thepresidency.gov.za*
Tel: 012 300 5200; Fax: 012 323 8246
and Tel: 021 464 2100; Fax: 021 461 2838

**Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy**
Website: *www.palama.gov.za*
Tel: 012 441 6000; Fax: 012 441 6030

**Public Enterprises**
Website: *www.dpe.gov.za*
Tel: 012 431 1000; Fax: 012 342 1039

**Public Service and Administration**
Website: *www.dpsa.gov.za*
Tel: 012 336 1183; Fax: 012 336 1831

**Public Works**
Website: *www.publicworks.gov.za*
Private Bag X65, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 406 1000; Fax: 012 272 8986

**Rural Development and Land Reform**
Website: *www.ruraldevelopment.gov.za*
Tel: 012 312 8911; Fax: 012 323 6072

**Science and Technology**
Website: *www.dst.gov.za*
Tel: 012 843 6300; Fax: 012 349 1037

**Social Development**
Website: *www.dsd.gov.za*
Tel: 012 312 7794; Fax: 012 312 7470

**South African Police Service**
Website: *www.saps.gov.za*
Private Bag X94, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 393 1000; Fax: 012 393 4147

**South African Revenue Service**
Website: *www.sars.gov.za*
Tel: 012 422 4000; Fax: 012 422 6848

**Sport and Recreation South Africa**
Website: *www.srsa.gov.za*
Tel: 012 304 5000; Fax: 012 323 8440

**State Security**
Website: *www.ssa.gov.za*
Tel: 012 427 4000; Fax: 012 480 7582

**Statistics South Africa**
Website: *www.statssa.gov.za*
Tel: 012 310 8911; Fax: 012 310 8500

**Tourism**
Website: *www.tourism.gov.za*
Tel: 012 444 6000; Fax: 012 444 7000.

**Trade and Industry**
Website: *www.thedti.gov.za*
Tel: 0861 843 384; Fax: 0861 843 888

**Traditional Affairs**
Website: *www.dta.gov.za*
Tel: 012 336 5824; Fax: 012 336 5952

**Transport**
Website: *www.transport.gov.za*
Tel: 012 309 3000; Fax: 012 328 3370

**Water Affairs**
Website: *www.dwaf.gov.za*
Tel: 012 336 6696; Fax: 012 336 8850

**Women, Children and People with Disabilities**
Website: *www.wcpd.gov.za*
Tel: 012 359 0071; Fax: 086 683 5502

**Parliamentary information**
**National Assembly**
Website: *www.parliament.gov.za*
Tel: 021 403 2595; Fax: 021 461 9462

**National Council of Provinces**
Website: *www.parliament.gov.za*
Tel: 021 403 2110; Fax: 021 461 9460

**Provincial governments**

**Eastern Cape**
Website: *www.ecprov.gov.za*
Tel: 040 609 6301; Fax: 040 635 1166

**Free State**
Website: *www.fs.gov.za*
Tel: 051 405 5799; Fax: 051 405 4803

**Gauteng**
Website: *www.gautengonline.gov.za*
Tel: 011 355 6000; Fax: 011 836 9334

**KwaZulu-Natal**
Website: *www.kwazulunatal.gov.za*
Tel: 033 341 3407; Fax: 033 394 4505

**Limpopo**
Website: *www.limpopo.gov.za*
Tel: 015 287 6000; Fax: 015 295 3840

**Mpumalanga**
Website: *www.mpumalanga.gov.za*
Tel: 013 766 1000; Fax: 013 766 2494

**Northern Cape**
Website: *www.northern-cape.gov.za*
Tel: 053 838 260; Fax: 053 838 2690

**North West**
Website: *www.nwpg.gov.za*
Tel: 018 387 3000; Fax: 018 387 3008

**Western Cape**
Website: *www.capegateway.gov.za*
Tel: 021 483 272; Fax: 021 483 3921

## Government structures and organisational components

**Agricultural Research Council**
Website: *www.arc.agric.za*
Tel: 012 427 9700; Fax: 012 342 2231

**Airports Company South Africa**
Website: *www.airports.co.za*
Tel: 011 723 1400; Fax: 011 453 9354

**Armaments Corporation of South Africa**
Website: *www.armscor.co.za*
Tel: 012 428 1911; Fax: 012 428 5635

**Auditor-General**
Website: *www.agsa.co.za*
Tel: 012 426 8000; Fax: 012 426 8257

**Central Energy Fund**
Website: *www.cefgroup.co.za*
Tel: 011 201 4700; Fax: 011 201 4820

**Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration**
Website: *www.ccma.org.za*
Tel: 011 377 6650; Fax: 011 834 7351

**Commission on Gender Equality**
Website: *www.cge.org.za*
Tel: 011 403 7182; Fax: 011 403 7188

**Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights**
Website: *www.ruraldevelopment.gov.za*
Tel: 012 312 9244; Fax: 012 321 0428

**Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities**
Website: *www.crlcommission.org.za*
Tel: 011 537 7600; Fax: 011 880 3495

**Competition Commission**
Website: *www.compcom.co.za*
Tel: 012 394 3200; Fax: 012 394 0166

**Constitutional Court**
Website: *www.constitutionalcourt.org.za*
Tel: 011 359 7539; Fax: 011 403 6524

**Council for Geoscience**
Website: *www.geoscience.org.za*
Tel: 012 841 1911; Fax: 012 841 1221

**Council for Mineral Technology**
Website: *www.mintek.co.za*
Tel: 011 709 4111; Fax: 011 793 2413

**Council for Scientific and Industrial Research**
Website: *www.csir.co.za*
Tel: 012 841 2911; Fax: 012 349 1153

**Council on Higher Education**
Website: *www.che.ac.za*
Tel: 012 349 3840; Fax: 012 349 3942
**Denel (Pty) Limited**
Website: *www.denel.co.za*
Tel: 012 671 2700; Fax: 012 671 2793

**Development Bank of Southern Africa**
Website: *www.dbsa.org*
Tel: 011 313 3911; Fax: 011 313 3086

**Eskom**
Website: *www.eskom.co.za*
Tel: 011 800 8111; Fax: 011 800 4299

**Film and Publication Board**
Website: *www.fpb.gov.za*
Tel: 011 483 0971; Fax: 011 483 1084

**Financial Intelligence Centre**
Website: *www.fic.gov.za*
Private Bag X177, Centurion, 00416
Tel: 012 641 6000; Fax: 012 641 6215

**Government Printing Works**
Website: *www.gpw.gov.za*
Tel: 012 334 4500; Fax: 012 323 0009

**Human Sciences Research Council**
Website: *www.hsrc.ac.za*
Tel: 012 302 2000; Fax: 012 302 2001

**Independent Communications Authority of SA**
Website: *www.icasa.org.za*
Tel: 011 566 3000/1; Fax: 011 566 4000/1

**Independent Electoral Commission**
Website: *www.elections.org.za*
Tel: 012 622 5700; Fax: 012 622 5784

**Independent Development Trust**
Website: *www.idt.org.za*
Tel: 012 845 2000; Fax: 012 348 0894

**Industrial Development Corporation**
Website: *www.idc.co.za*;
Tel: 011 269 3000; Fax: 011 269 3116

**International Marketing Council**
Website: *www.brandsouthafrica.com*
Tel: 011 483 0122; Fax: 011 483 0124

**Judicial Service Commission**
Private Bag X1, Constitutional Hill, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 838 2010; Fax: 011 649 0944

**Khula Enterprise Finance Limited**
Website: www.khula.org.za
Tel: 012 394 5560; Fax: 012 394 6901

**Land and Agricultural Bank of South Africa**
Website: www.landbank.co.za
PO Box 375, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 686 0500; Fax: 012 686 0718

**Land Claims Court**
Website: *www.law.wits.ac.za/lcc*
Tel: 011 781 2291; Fax: 011 781 2217/8

**Media Development and Diversity Agency**
Website: *www.mdda.org.za*
Tel: 011 643 1100; Fax: 011 643 1129

**Municipal Demarcation Board**
Website: *www.demarcation.org.za*
Tel: 012 342 2481/2; Fax: 012 342 2480

**National Advisory Council on Innovation**
Website: *www.naci.org.za*
Tel: 012 843 6511; Fax: 086 681 0144

**National Agricultural Marketing Council**
Website: *www.namc.co.za*
Tel: 012 341 1115; Fax: 012 341 1811

**National Archives of South Africa**
Website: *www.national.archives.gov.za*
Tel: 012 441 3200; Fax: 012 323 5287

**National Arts Council of South Africa**
Website: *www.nac.org.za*
Tel: 011 838 1383; Fax: 011 838 6363

**National Development Agency**
Website: *www.nda.org.za*
Tel: 011 018 5500; Fax: 011 403 2514/5

**National Economic Development Labour Council**
Website: *www.nedlac.org.za*
Tel: 011 328 4200; Fax: 011 447 2089

**National Empowerment Fund**
Website: *www.nefcorp.co.za*
Tel: 011 305 8000; Fax: 011 305 8001

**National Energy Regulator**
Website: *www.nersa.org.za*
Tel: 012 401 4600; Fax: 012 401 4700

**National Film and Video Foundation**
Website: *www.nfvf.co.za*
Tel: 011 483 0880; Fax: 011 483 0881

**National Film, Video and Sound Archives**
Website: *www.national.archives.co.za*
Tel: 012 441 3200; Fax: 012 323 5287

**National Gambling Board**
Website: *www.ngb.org.za*
Tel: 012 394 3800; Fax: 012 394 4800

**National Home-Builders' Registration Council**
Website: *www.nhbrc.org.za*
Tel: 011 317 0000; Fax: 011 317 0105

**National House of Traditional Leaders**
Tel: 012 395 4659; Fax: 012 395 4650

**National Housing Finance Corporation**
Website: *www.nhfc.co.za*
Tel: 011 644 9800; Fax: 011 484 6406

**National Lotteries Board**
Website: *www.nlb.org.za*
Tel: 012 432 1300; Fax: 012 432 1388

**National Nuclear Regulator**
Website: *www.nnr.co.za*
Tel: 012 674 7100; Fax: 012 663 5513

**National Prosecuting Authority**
Website: *www.npa.gov.za*
Tel: 012 845 6000; Fax: 012 804 7335

**National Research Foundation**
Website: *www.nrf.ac.za*
Tel: 012 481 4000; Fax: 012 349 1179

**National Youth Development Agency**
Website: *www.nyda.gov.za*
Tel: 011 651 7000; Fax: 011 805 9709

**Pan South African Language Board**
Website: *www.pansalb.org.za*
Tel: 012 341 9638; Fax: 012 341 5938

**Petroleum Oil & Gas Corporation of SA (Pty) Ltd**
Website: *www.petrosa.co.za*
Tel: 021 929 3000; Fax: 021 929 3144

**Public Protector**
Website: *www.publicprotector.org*
Tel: 012 366 7000; Fax: 012 362 3473

**Public Investment Corporation**
Website: *www.pic.gov.za*
Tel: 012 742 3400; Fax: 012 346 3276

**Small Enterprise Development Agency**
Website: *www.seda.org.za*
Tel: 012 441 1000; Fax: 012 441 2064

**South African Airways**
Website: *www.flysaa.com*
Tel: 011 978 1000; Fax: 011 978 3507

**South African Bureau of Standards**
Website: *www.sabs.co.za*
Tel: 012 428 7911; Fax: 012 344 1568

**South African Civil Aviation Authority**
Website: *www.caa.co.za*
Tel: 011 545 1000; Fax: 011 545 1465

**South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator**
Website: www.sadpmr.co.za
Tel: 011 223 7000; Fax: 011 334 8898

**South African Forestry Company Limited**
Website: *www.safcol.co.za*
Tel: 012 481 3500; Fax: 012 804 5133

**South African Human Rights Commission**
Website: *www.sahrc.org.za*
Tel: 011 877 3600; Fax: 011 484 7149

**South African Law Reform Commission**
Website: *www.salawreform.justice.gov.za*
Tel: 012 392 9540; Fax: 012 322 4406

**South African Local Government Association**
Website*: www.salga.net*
Tel: 012 369 8000; Fax: 012 369 8001

**South African National Parks**
Website: *www.sanparks.org*
Tel: 012 426 5170; Fax: 012 343 0153

**South African National Roads Agency Ltd**
Website: *www.sanral.co.za*
Tel: 012 844 8000; Fax: 012 844 8200

**South African Nuclear Energy Corporation**
Website: *www.necsa.co.za*
Tel: 012 305 4911; Fax: 012 305 3111

**South African Post Office Limited**
Website: *www.postoffice.co.za*
Tel: 012 401 7000; Fax: 012 401 7707

**South African Reserve Bank**
Website: *www.resbank.co.za*
Tel: 012 313 3911; Fax: 012 313 3929

**South African Tourism**
Website: *www.southafrica.net*
Tel: 011 895 3000; Fax: 011 895 3062

**Special Investigating Unit**
Website: *www.siu.org.za*
Tel: 012 843 0000; Fax: 012 843 8813

**Technology for Women in Business**
Website: *www.twib.co.za*
Tel: 012 841 4983; Fax: 012 841 4954

**Telkom SA Ltd**
Website: *www.telkom.co.za*
Tel: 012 311 3911; Fax: 012 323 6733

**Trade and Investment South Africa**
Website: *www.thedti.gov.za*
Tel: 012 394 3014; Fax: 012 394 4016

**Transnet Freight Rail**
Website: *www.transnet.net*
Tel: 011 544 9584; Fax: 011 544 9599

**Water Research Commission**
Website: *www.wrc.org.za*
Tel: 012 330 0340; Fax: 012 331 2565

## GCIS provincial offices

**Eastern Cape Provincial Office**
Private Bag X608, East London, 5200
Tel: 043 722 4903; Fax: 043 743 8174

**Free State Provincial Office**
PO Box 995, Bloemfontein, 9300
Tel: 051 448 4504; Fax: 051 430 7032

**Gauteng Provincial Office**
Private Bag X16, Johannesburg, 2000
Tel: 011 834 3560; Fax: 011 834 3621

**KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Office**
Private Bag X54332, Durban, 4000
Tel: 031 301 6787/8; Fax: 031 305 9431

**Limpopo Provincial Office**
PO Box 2452, Polokwane, 0700
Tel: 015 291 4689; Fax: 015 295 6982

**Mpumalanga Provincial Office**
PO Box 2856, Nelspruit, 1200
Tel: 013 753 2397; Fax: 013 753 2531

**Northern Cape Provincial Office**
Private Bag X5038, Kimberley, 8300
Tel: 053 832 1378/9; Fax: 053 832 1377

**North West Provincial Office**
Private Bag X2120, Mafikeng, 2745
Tel: 018 381 7071; Fax: 018 381 7066

**Upington Regional Office**
PO Box 2872, Upington, 8800
Tel: 054 332 6206; Fax: 054 332 6218

**Western Cape Provincial Office**
Private Bag X503, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 697 0923; Fax: 021 696 8424

**Parliamentary Office**
Private Bag X503, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 461 8145; Fax: 021 461 1446

**Thusong Service Centres**
Website: *www.thusong.gov.za*

**Eastern Cape**
**Burgersdorp Service Centre**
Commander Building, Burgersdorp
Tel: 051 653 0595; Fax: 051 653 0742

**Centane Service Centre**
20 Bell Ave, Centani
Tel: 047 498 1126; Fax: 047 498 1032

**Cofimvaba Service Centre**
Cnr High St & Bellair Ave, Cofimvaba
Tel: 047 874 0444; Fax: 047 874 0553

**Jansenville Service Centre**
77 Main Road, Jansenville; Tel: 049 891 0142

**KwaNophoui Service Centre**
Mtsila and Nguse Village Junction, Mt Frere
Tel: 039 254 5000; Fax: 039 254 0343

**Qunu Service Centre**
Qunu Village, Mthatha
Tel: 047 538 7017; Fax: 047 538 7017

**Silindini Service Centre**
Silindi Administrative Area, Silindi
Tel: 047 548 1803; Fax: 047 548 1078

**Sterkspruit Service Centre**
79 Main Road, Sterkspruit
Tel: 051 611 1335; Fax: 051 611 1335

**Tombo Service Centre**
Tombo Village, Port St Johns
Tel: 047 564 1152; Fax: 047 564 1145

**Tsilitwa Service Centre**
Sulenkama, Qumbu; Tel: 082 564 8890

**Viedgesville Service Centre**
Viedgesville Village, Mthatha
Tel: 047 538 9011; Fax: 047 538 9011

**Free State**
**Botshabelo Service Centre**
1230 Section E, Botshabelo
Tel: 051 532 6791; Fax: 051 532 6791

**Kopanong Service Centre**
398 Booysen St, Madikgetla, Trompsburg
Tel: 051 713 0189; Fax: 051 713 0192

**Mantsopa Service Centre**
Old Tribal Council Office, Tseki, Qwaqwa
Tel: 079 728 8654

**Namahadi Service Centre**
Charles Mopeli Stadium, Witsieshoek
Tel: 058 789 1147; Fax: 058 789 1147

**Phiritona Service Centre**
2264 Makoko Hlabane St, Phiritona
Tel: 058 852 1411; Fax: 058 852 1917

**Qalabotjha Service Centre**
1279 Gamede St, Qalabotjha, Villiers
Tel & Fax: 058 821 1127

**Tokologo Service Centre**
Malebogo Community Hall, Hertzogville
Tel: 053 421 9051; Fax: 053 421 9244

**Zastron/Mohokare Service Centre**
Cnr Parsegrouw & Vechtkop St, Zastron
Tel: 051 673 1671; Fax: 051 673 1082

**Gauteng**
**Alexandra Service Centre**
Cnr 8th Avenue & Roosevelt St, Alexandra
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

**Atteridgeville Service Centre**
1770 Komane St, Atteridgeville
Tel: 012 373 8856; Fax: 086 512 0928

**Bekkersdal Service Centre**
Cnr Godlo & Panyapanya St, Bekkersdal
Tel & Fax: 011 414 1888
**Boipatong Service Centre**
Cnr Mamelodi & Dr Nkomo St, Boipatong
Tel: 016 988 1960; Fax: 016 988 1962

**Boitshepiville Service Centre**
Stand 2013 Phase 2, Tshepiso; Tel & Fax: 016 988 1960

**Brandvlei Service Centre**
Stand 64, Ventersdorp Road, Brandvlei
Tel: 011 416 2107

**Daveyton Service Centre**
Daveyton Mall, Eiselen St, Daveyton, Benoni
Tel: 011 926 7121; Fax: 011 926 7171

**Diepsloot Service Centre**
Stand 381 Diepsloot West, Diepsloot
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

**Dobsonville Service Centre**
2332 Luthuli St, Dobsonville; Tel & Fax: 011 982 1200

**Duduza Service Centre**
1 Nala St, Duduza, 1496; Tel & Fax: 011 738 8516

**Ekangala Service Centre**
Section 4, Ekangala; Tel: 082 930 0267

**Eldorado Park Service Centre**
4064 Link Crescent Ext 5, Eldorado Park
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

**Eyethu Service Centre**
Cnr Nkosi & Matukane St, Rethabiseng
Tel: 012 805 0117; Fax: 012 805 0121

**Faranani Service Centre**
PO Box 70021, Tsakane 1550, Brakpan
Tel: 011 999 8086; Fax: 011 999 8046

**Ga-Rankuwa Service Centre**
Municipality Building, Zone 5, Ga-Rankuwa,
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

**Hammanskraal Service Centre**
Hammanskraal Skills Centre, Hammanskraal
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

**Hekpoort Service Centre**
PO Box 94, Krugersdorp
Tel: 011 951 2258; Fax: 011 660 6726

**Impumulelo Service Centre**
Municipal Building, Impumulelo St, Devon,
Tel: 017 688 0051

**Ipelegeng Service Centre**
1238 White City, Jabavu, Soweto; Tel: 083 417 7958

**Kagiso Service Centre**
8740 Kagiso Avenue, Kagiso Ext 12 ; Tel: 011 660 1105

**KwaThema Service Centre**
Nkosi St, Tornado Section, KwaThema
Tel: 011 741 2256; Fax: 011 736 7730

**Lord Khanyile Service Centre**
Cnr Freedom and Osizweni St, Ivory Park
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

**Mabopane Service Centre**
425 Mabopane Rd, Mabopane; Tel & Fax:012 711 3160

**Mamelodi Service Centre**
19864 Makhubela St, Mamelodi West
Tel: 012 805 0117; Fax: 012 805 0121

**Maponya Urban Mall Service Centre**
368 Maponya Mall, Soweto; Tel: 011 938 4257

**Mohlakeng Service Centre**
262 Ralerata St, Mohlakeng
Tel: 011 414 1072; Fax: 011 414 1888

**Muldersdrift Service Centre**
Plot 4 Rietfontein, Muldersdrift; Tel & Fax: 011 414 1888

**Munsieville Service Centre**
Next to Police Station, Munsieville; Tel: 083 584 6856

**Olievenhoutbosch Service Centre**
Tel & Fax: 012 799 5005

**Onverwacht Service Centre**
Onverwacht Library, Cullinan; Tel & Fax: 012 732 0564

**Orange Farm Service Centre**
15747 Orange Farm Ext 4, Orange Farm
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

**Orlando East Service Centre**
1425 Sofasonke St, Orlando East
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

**Poortjie Service Centre**
Next to Poortjie Taxi Rank, Johannesburg
Tel & Fax: 011 850 7493

**Rabie Ridge Service Centre**
Cnr Stilt & Korhaan St, Rabie Ridge
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

**Ratanda Service Centre**
Cnr Heidelberg & Boshoek St, Ratanda
Tel & Fax: 016 988 1960

**Refilwe Service Centre**
Metsweding Local Municipality; Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

**Sebokeng Service Centre**
88 Moshoeshoe St, Sebokeng
Tel: 016 988 1960; Fax: 016 988 1962

**Sicelo Shiceka Service Centre**
Sicelo Stadium, Meyerton
Tel: 016 988 1960; Fax: 016 988 1962

**Soshanguve Service Centre**
49 Nafcoc Shopping Centre Soshanguve
Tel & Fax: 012 799 5005

**Tarlton Service Centre**
8 Cecilia St, Tarlton; Tel: 011 414 1888; Fax: 011 414 1167

**Tembisa Service Centre**
238 Igqagqa Section, Tembisa
Tel: 011 999 4240; Fax: 011 942 4254

**Thokoza Service Centre**
8015 Khumalo St, Thokoza
Tel: 011 999 2200; Fax: 011 905 0186

**Vosloorus Service Centre**
1 Berry Maree Rd, Vosloorus; Tel & Fax: 011 899 4505

**Zithobeni Service Centre**
2237 Mothibe Drive, Zithobeni; Tel: 013 937 0133

**KwaZulu-Natal**

**Archie Gumede Service Centre**
1106 Zazi Road, Clermont; Tel: 031 311 2561/2

**Bhamshela Service Centre**
Noodsberg Rd, Ozwathin
Tel: 032 294 9176; Fax: 032 294 9075

**Bhomela Service Centre**
1106 Zazi Rd, Clernaville
Tel: 039 688 2272; Fax: 039 688 2279

**Driefontein Service Centre**
next to Tribal Court, Driefontein ; Tel: 083 537 7845

**Dududu Service Centre**
Ugu District Municipality, Dududu, Scottburgh
Tel: 039 974 0989; Fax: 039 974 0432

**Dukuza Service Centre**
Okhahlamba Local Municipality, Dukuza
Tel: 036 438 6102; Fax: 036 438 6136

**Ekuvukeni Service Centre**
F2748, Ekuvukeni; Tel: 034 261 1000; Fax: 034 261 2035

**Imbabazane Service Centre**
White Mountain Rd, Imbabazane
Tel: 036 353 0681; Fax: 036 353 6661

**Impendle Service Centre**
38 Ikhwezi Rd, Impendle; Tel & Fax: 033 996 0445

**Inhlazuka Service Centre**
Richmond Local Municipality, Inhlazuka
Tel: 031 781 1008; Fax: 031 781 1076

**Ixopo Service Centre**
40 Main Rd, Sisonke, Ixopo; Tel & Fax: 039 834 1599

**Jozini Service Centre**
Circle St, Jozini; Tel: 035 572 1292; Fax: 035 572 1266

**KwaMadlala Service Centre**
Ugu District, KwaMadlala
Tel: 039 688 2278; Fax: 039 688 2279

**KwaMdakane Service Centre**
8853 Nellie's Farm, Dannhauser
Tel: 034 305 9431; Fax: 034 314 3785

**KwaNzimakwe Service Centre**
Road D 1095, KwaNzimakwe
Tel: 039 688 2272; Fax: 039 688 2279

**KwaXolo Service Centre**
D 686 Road, Port Shepstone
Tel: 039 688 2272; Fax: 039 688 2279

**Lindela Service Centre**
Nxamalala, Lindela Village, Nkandla
Tel & Fax: 035 476 4241

**Malangeni Service Centre**
Malangeni Mission
Tel: 039 974 1061; Fax: 039 974 4148

**Mapumulo Service Centre**
Next to Post Office, Mapumulo
Tel: 032 294 9076; Fax: 294 9075

**Mbazwana Service Centre**
Main Rd, Sodwana Bay, Mbazwana
Tel: 035 571 0970; Fax: 035 571 0232

**Pietermaritzburg Service Centre**
242 Longmarket St, Pietermaritzburg
Tel: 033 897 6892; Fax: 033 342 5442

**Tugela Ferry Service Centre**
Main Rd, Tugela Ferry; Tel & Fax : 033 493 0282

**Ulundi Service Centre**
2 Ulundi Administrative Building, Ulundi
Tel & Fax: 035 870 0219

**Limpopo**

**Babirwa Service Centre**
Taueyatsoala Tribal Office, Babirwa
Tel: 015 505 5345; Fax: 015 571 5808

**Bophelong Service Centre**
5050 Sedibeng Ext 10, Bophelong
Tel: 016 986 3711; Fax: 016 986 0305

**Botlokwa Service Centre**
1154 Mphakane Village, Dwarsrivier
Tel: 015 527 1596; Fax: 015 527 1742

**Bulamahlo Service Centre**
PO Box 51, Shiluvane 0873; Tel & Fax: 015 355 4610

**Eldorado Service Centre**
PO Box 69, Raditshaba
Tel: 015 592 9900; Fax: 015 592 8019

**Festus Sengaka Mothudi Service Centre**
Ga-Ramokgopa Village, Ga-Ramokgopa
Tel: 015 291 4689; Fax: 015 295 6982

**Fetakgomo-Atok Service Centre**
Atok Bogalatladi Village, Ga-Nkwana
Tel: 015 622 8000; Fax: 015 622 8026

**Kgautswane Service Centre**
Kgautswane Village
Tel: 013 231 7515; Fax: 013 238 0122

**Leboeng Service Centre**
Leboeng Safety Centre, Burgersfort
Tel: 013 769 9026; Fax: 013 769 9201

**Lesedi Service Centre**
Khopo Village, Mopani, Tzaneen
015 307 8452; Fax: 015 307 8049

**Mabatlane Service Centre**
268 Paul Kruger St, Vaalwater
Tel: 014 755 3751; Fax: 014 755 3824

**Makhuva Service Centre**
PO Box 30, Phangweni, Giyani; Tel & Fax: 015 812 5602

**Makuya Service Centre**
Masisi-Makomve Road, Mutale; Tel & Fax: 015 962 5307

**Mapela Service Centre**
Mesopotamia Village, Mapela
Tel: 015 413 0002; Fax: 015 413 0023

**Mapodile Service Centre**
Eerstegeluk, Steelpoort
Tel: 072 185 2031; Fax: 086 620 4242

**Maruleng Service Centre**
75 Metz Village, Maruleng
Tel: 015 383 9944; Fax: 086 514 0997

**Mokwakwaila Service Centre**
Mokwakwaila Village; Tel: 082 904 5903

**Mtititi Service Centre**
Mtititi Village; Tel: 076 338 7328

**Relela Service Centre**
Mopani District, Relela Village; Tel & Fax: 015 355 3137

**Selwane Service Centre**
Selwane Village, Phalaborwa
Tel: 015 780 6300; Fax: 015 780 6421

## Mpumalanga

**Breyten Service Centre**
Cnr Grobler and Breytenbach St, Breyten
Tel: 017 861 3124; Fax: 017 861 3810

**Casteel Service Centre**
PO Box 2736, Acornhoek, 1370
Tel: 013 777 6014; Fax: 013 777 6113

**Daggakraal Service Centre**
260 Sinqobile Municipal Offices, Daggakraal
Tel: 082 684 4462

**Driefontein Service Centre**
57 Corner Store St, Driefontein; Tel: 076 309 0003

**King Mokhosonke Cluster Service Centre**
1 Engwenyameni, KwaMhlanga; Tel: 072 152 6652

**Louisville Service Centre**
Old Kangwane Offices, Louisville
Tel: 013 781 0659; Fax: 013 781 0659

**Marapyane Service Centre**
Marapyane Shopping Centre; Tel & Fax: 012 724 3812

**Matsamo Service Centre**
R570 Schoemansdal, Shongwe Mission
Tel & Fax: 013 781 0659

**Mbangwane Service Centre**
Mbangwane Rd, Ehlazeni; Tel & Fax: 013 781 0659

**Mmametlhake Service Centre**
Main Rd, Bamokgoko, Mmamethlake
Tel: 083 262 7085

**Moremela Service Centre**
Moremela Village; Tel: 072 901 5983; Fax: 086 561 2694

**Morgenzon Service Centre**
166 Sivukile, Main St, Morgenzon; Tel: 017 714 7719

**Mpuluzi Service Centre**
E 1340 Fernie B, Fernie ; Tel &Fax: 017 888 0300

**Sakhile Service Centre**
1029 Hlongwane St, Sakhile; Tel: 017 714 7719

**Siyathemba Service Centre**
5080 East St, Siyathemba, Balfour
Tel & Fax: 017 683 1031

**Tholulwazi Service Centre**
307 Shaka Maseko St, Leandra
Tel: 017 683 3027; Fax: 017 683 1311

**Thuthukani Service Centre**
New Denmark Hostel, Malungisani St
Tel: 082 828 1798 / 017 744 7719

**Wonderfontein Service Centre**
Portion 428, Nkangala; Tel: 013 246 7443

## Northern Cape

**Augrabies Service Centre**
PO Box 194, Augrabies, 8814
Tel: 054 332 6206; Fax: 054 332 6218

**Calvinia Service Centre**
304 Church st, Calvinia; Tel: 027 341 1216/027 341 1992

**Colesberg Service Centre**
PO Box 101, Colesberg, 9795
Tel: 051 753 0386; Fax: 051 753 2182

**Galeshewe Service Centre**
Cnr Matanzima & Letsholo st, Galeshewe
Tel: 053 872 1197;Fax: 053 872 2647

**Manne Dipico Service Centre**
62 Sparrow St, Pescodia, 8309
Tel: 053 873 1072; Fax: 053 873 1298

**Springbok Service Centre**
7 Van Riebeeck St, Springbok
Tel: 027 712 2461/027 712 1899

**Tlhokomelo Service Centre**
Matanzima St, Mankuwane, Kimberley
Tel: 053 872 2644/053 872 2647

**Upington Service Centre**
8 Basson St, Upington
Tel: 054 322 6206; Fax: 054 322 6218

**Vanzylsrus/Kgomotsego Service Centre**
33 Short St, Vanzylsrus
Tel: 053 781 0409; Fax: 053 781 0210

**North West**

**Bokamoso/Jerico Service Centre**
Jerico Main Road, Jerico; Tel: 012 318 9582

**Kgetleng Service Centre**
Erasmus St, Swartruggens, 2835
Tel & Fax: 014 544 0011

**Khutsong Service Centre**
Portion 1, Khutsong South, Carltonville
Tel & Fax: 018 783 9032

**Leretlhabetse Service Centre**
Lebotlwane Village
Tel: 012 716 1000; Fax: 012 716 1068

**Monakato Service Centre**
Monakato Village, Monakato
Tel: 014 554 8815; Fax: 014 554 8593

**Tshedimosetso Service Centre**
Boikhutso Village, Ventersdorp, 2710
Tel & Fax: 018 264 2332

**Tshidilamolomo Service Centre**
Tshidilamolomo, 2753
Tel: 018 361 0152; Fax: 018 361 0149

**Victor Tong Service Centre**
Morokweng Village, 8614; Tel & Fax: 053 761 0093

**Western Cape**

**Atlantis Service Centre**
1 Nottingham St, Sharwood Park, Atlantis
Tel & Fax: 021 572 1872

**Beaufort West Service Centre**
3 De Vries St, Rustdene; Tel & Fax: 023 415 3144

**Bitterfontein Service Centre**
Cnr Kok & Long St, Bitterforntein
Tel & Fax: 027 642 7344

**Bonteheuwel Service Centre**
Cnr Jakkalsvlei & Elder St, Bonteheuwel,
Tel: 021 695 5425; Fax: 086 512 5237

**Citrusdal Service Centre**
Bohemia St, Citrusdal; Tel & Fax: 027 921 2620

**Guga'sthembe Service Centre**
Washington St, Langa
Tel: 021 400 4573; Fax: 021 418 8221

**Hartebeeskraal**
1 Nottingham St, Sharwood Park, Atlantis
Tel & Fax: 021 572 1872

**Hawston Service Centre**
Church St, Hawston; Tel & Fax: 028 315 2784

**Ilingelethu Service Centre**
Ilingelethu Sports Field, Malmesbury
Tel: 022 486 4593; Fax: 022 486 4415

**Khayelitsha Service Centre**
Steve Biko Rd, Kayelitsha Mall
Tel: 021 360 1228; Fax: 021 361 4340

**Klipdrift Service Centre**
Eden District, George
Tel: 044 880 1174; Fax: 044 880 1165

**Laingsburg Service Centre**
Cnr Main & Third Ave, Goldnerville
Tel & Fax: 023 551 1899

**Langebaan Service Centre**
7 Antonio Sieni St, Langebaan; Tel & Fax: 022 772 2622

**Mbekweni Service Centre**
Simile St, Mbekweni; Tel & Fax: 023 345 2737

**Mitchell's Plein Service Centre**
Cnr Kilimanjaro & Berman St, Tafelsig,
Mitchell's Plein 7785; Tel: 021 397 2629;
Fax: 021 397 2890

**Murraysburg Service Centre**
23 Beaufort St, Murraysburg; Tel: 023 415 3144

**Oudtshoorn Service Centre**
3 12th Ave, Bongulethu, Oudtshoorn
Tel & Fax: 044 274 3087

**Riversdale Service Centre**
Van den Berg St, Riversdale; Tel & Fax: 028 713 3647

**Simunye Service Centre**
Xipula St, KwaNokuthula
Tel: 044 501 3134; Fax: 044 533 6993

**Swellendam Service Centre**
1 Vollenhoven St, Swellendam
Tel: 028 514 3732; Fax: 028 514 3334

**Thembalethu Service Centre**
Cnr Jeriko St & Sandkraal Rd, Thembalethu
Tel: 044 880 1711; Fax: 044 880 1712

**Unobuntu Service Centre**
Cnr Nketza and Mtwazi St, Zwelethemba
Tel: 023 348 2739; Fax: 023 345 1031

**Van Rhynsdorp Service Centre**
1 Nelson Mandela St, Van Rhynsdorp
Tel: 027 201 3300; Fax: 027 219 1917

**Vicky Zimri Service Centre**
Bohemia St, Citrusdal; Tel & Fax: 022 921 2620

**Vredendal Service Centre**
1 Bult Rd, Vredendal North, 8160
Tel: 027 201 3420; Fax: 027 213 1031

**Waboomskraal Service Centre**
Main Rd, Waboomskraal; Tel & Fax: 044 886 0040

**Zolani Service Centre**
Sithandathu Ave, Nyanga East
Tel: 021 386 8656; Fax: 021 386 1032

## Foreign representatives in South Africa

**Albania (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Witkoppen; Tel: 011 465 3871;
Fax: 011 465 3853

**Algeria (Democratic People's Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5074/5; Fax: 012 342 6479

**Angola (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 0049/50;
Fax: 012 342 7039

**Argentina (Republic of)**
Embassy: PretoriaTel: 012 430 3524; Fax: 012 430 3521

**Australia**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6000;
Fax: 012 342 8442

**Austria (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 452 9155; Fax: 012 460 1151

**Bangladesh (People's Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 343 2105/7;
Fax: 012 343 5222
**Belarus (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 430 7664; Fax: 012 342 6280

**Belgium (Kingdom of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 440 3201/2; Fax: 012 440 3216

**Benin (Republic of)**
Embassy; Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6978; Fax: 012 342 1823

**Bolivia (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Johannesburg; Tel: 011 883 3416;
Fax: 011 883 7126

**Botswana (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 430 9640;
Fax: 012 342 1845

**Brazil (Federative Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria,Tel: 012 366 5200; Fax: 012 366 5299

**Bulgaria (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 3720; Fax: 012 342 3721

**Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 6205; Fax: 012 346 6003

**Burundi (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 4881/3; Fax: 012 342 4885

**Cameroon (Republic of)**
High Commission:Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 0587;
Fax: 012 460 7942

**Canada**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 422 3000;
Fax: 012 422 3052

**Central African Republic**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 072 586 4700

**Chile (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 8090; Fax: 012 460 8093

**China (People's Republic of)**
Embassy: PO Box 95764, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 431 6500; Fax: 012 342 4244

**Colombia (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 0211/4; Fax: 012 342 0216

**Comoros (Union of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 0138; Fax: 012 342 0138

**Congo (Democratic Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 344 6475; Fax: 012 344 4054

**Congo (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5508; Fax: 012 342 5510

**Costa Rica (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Johannesburg; Tel: 011 486 4716;
Fax: 011 646 7514

**Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6913; Fax: 012 342 6713

**Croatia (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 1206; Fax: 012 342 1819

**Cuba (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 2215; Fax: 012 346 2216

**Cyprus (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5258;
Fax: 012 342 5596

**Czech Republic**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 431 2380; Fax: 012 430 2033

**Denmark (Kingdom of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 430 9340; Fax: 012 342 7620

**Djibouti (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Sandton; Tel: 011 719 9111; Fax: 011 884 7455

**Dominican (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 2463; Fax: 086 567 9613

**Ecuador (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria ;Tel: 012 346 1663; Fax: 012: 346 7082

**Egypt (Arab Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria ;Tel: 012 343 1590/1; Fax: 012 343 1082

**Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 9945; Fax: 012 342 6469

**Eritrea (State of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 333 1302; Fax: 012 333 2330

**Estonia (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Paarl; Tel: 021 913 3850;
Fax: 021 913 2579

**Ethiopia (Federal Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 3542; Fax: 012 346 3867

**Finland (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 343 0275; Fax: 012 343 3095

**France (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 425 1600; Fax: 012 425 1609

**Gabon (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 4376/7; Fax: 012 342 4375

**Gambia (The Republic of)**
High Commission: Sandton; Tel: 011 884 3710;
Fax: 011 883 5925

**Germany (Federal Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 427 8900; Fax: 012 343 9401

**Ghana (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5847/9;
Fax: 012 342 5863

**Greece (Hellenic Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 430 7351; Fax: 012 430 4313

**Guinea (Republic of)**
Embassy: PO Box 13523, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 7348; Fax: 012 342 7348

**Guyana (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Randburg
Tel: 011 789 9760; Fax: 011 789 9763

**Holy See (Nuncio of the Vatican)**
Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 4235/6; Fax: 012 346 1494

**Hungary (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria
Tel: 012 430 3020/30; Fax: 012 430 3029

**India (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5392/5;
Fax: 012 342 5310

**Indonesia (Republic of)**
Embassy: Tel: 012 342 3350/3; Fax: 012 342 3369

**Iran (Islamic Republic of)** Embassy: Pretoria
Tel: 012 342 5880/1; Fax: 012 342 1878

**Iraq (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 2048; Fax: 012 362 2027

**Ireland**
Embassy: PO Box 4174, Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5062;
Fax: 012 342 4752

**Israel (State of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 470 3500; Fax: 012 470 3555

**Italy (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 423 0000; Fax: 012 430 5547

**Jamaica**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 6667;
Fax: 012 366 8510

**Japan**
Embassy: Pretoria ; Tel: 012 452 1500;
Fax: 012 460 3800/1

**Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)**
Embassy; Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 8615; Fax: 012 346 8611

**Kenya (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 2249;
Fax: 012 362 2252

**Korea (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 2508/9; Fax: 012 460 1158

**Korea (Democratic People's Republic)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 991 8661; Fax: 012 991 8662

**Kuwait (State of)**
Embassy: Pretoria ;Tel: 012 342 0877; Fax: 012 342 0876

**Latvia (Republic of)**
Embassy: Johannesbuerg; Tel: 011 750 1600;
Fax: 011 447 0607

**Lebanon (Lebanese Republic of)**
Embassy: PO Box 941, Groenkloof, 0027;

Tel: 012 430 2130; Fax: 012 430 2238

**Lesotho (Kingdom of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 7648;
ax: 012 460 7649

**Liberia (Republic of)**
Embassy: PO Box 14082, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 2734; Fax: 012 342 2737

**Libya (State of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 3902; Fax: 012 342 3904

**Lithuania (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Johannesburg; Tel: 011 486 3660;
Fax: 011 486 3650

**Madagascar (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 0983; Fax: 012 342 0995

**Malawi (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 0146;
Fax: 012 342 0147

**Malaysia**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5990/3;
Fax: 012 430 7773

**Mali (Republic of)**
Embassy: PO Box 12978, Hatfield, 0028; Tel: 012 342
7464; Fax: 012 342 0670

**Malta (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Cape Town
7441; Tel: 021 430 5319; Fax: 021 430 5002

**Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 3578; Fax: 012 362 3304

**Mauritius (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 1283/4;
Fax: 012 342 1286

**Mexico (United Mexican States)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 1004; Fax: 012 460 0937

**Monaco (Principality of)**
Honorary Consulate: Cape Town; Tel: 021 702 0991/2;
Fax: 021 702 0993

**Morocco (Kingdom of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 343 0230/40;
Fax: 012 343 0613

**Mozambique (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 401 0300;
Fax: 012 326 6388

**Myanmar (Union of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 341 2556/7; Fax: 012 341 2553

**Namibia (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 481 9100;
Fax: 012 344 5998

**Nepal (Kingdom of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 2399; Fax: 012 346 0521

**Netherlands (The Royal)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 425 4500; Fax: 012 425 4511

**New Zealand**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 435 9000;
Fax: 012 435 9001

**Nigeria (Federal Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 0805;
Fax: 012 342 1668

**Norway (Kingdom of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6100; Fax: 012 342 6099

**Oman (Sultanate of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 8301; Fax: 012 362 6258
**Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 4072/3;
Fax: 012 362 3967

**Palestine (State of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6411; Fax: 012 342 6412

**Panama (Republic of)**
Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 0703; Fax: 012 346 7034

**Paraguay (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 347 1047; Fax: 012 347 0403

**Peru (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 440 1030; Fax: 012 440 1054

**Philippines (Republic of the)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 0451/2; Fax: 012 346 0454

**Poland (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 430 2631/2; Fax: 012 430 2608

**Portugal (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 341 2340/1/2;
Fax: 012 341 3975

**Qatar (State of)**
Embassy: Private Bag X13, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 452 1700; Fax: 012 346 6732

**Romania (Republic of)**
Embassy: PretoriaTel: 012 460 6940/1; Fax: 012 460 6947

**Russian Federation**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 1337/8; Fax: 012 362 0116

**Rwanda (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6536; Fax: 012 342 7106

**Saharawi (Arab Democratic Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5532; Fax: 012 430 7428

**Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)**
Royal Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 4230/40; Fax: 012
362 4239

**Senegal (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 5263; Fax: 012 346 5550

**Serbia (The Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 5626; Fax: 012 460 6003

**Seychelles (Republic of)**
Embassy: Randburg; Tel: 012 348 0270;
Fax: 012 348 0069

**Singapore (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 430 6035;
Fax: 012 342 4425

**Slovakia (Slovak Republic)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 2051/2; Fax: 012 342 3688
**Slovenia (Republic of)**
Honorary Consulate: Cape Town; Tel: 021 970 2447/2;
Fax: 086 604 6603

**Spain (Kingdom of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 0123; Fax: 012 460 2290

**Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 7690;
Fax: 012 460 7702

**Sudan (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 4538; Fax: 012 342 4539

**Suriname (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 346 7627/45; Fax: 012 346 0802

**Swaziland (Kingdom of)**
High Commission: Pretoria ; Tel: 012 344 1910;
Fax: 012 343 0455

**Sweden (Kingdom of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 426 6400; Fax: 012 426 6464

**Switzerland (Swiss Confederation)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 452 0660; Fax: 012 346 6605

**Syrian (Arab Republic of)**
Embassy:Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 4701;Fax: 012 342 4702

**Taipei**
Liaison Office in South Africa: Pretoria
Tel: 012 430 6071; Fax: 012 342 7110

**Tanzania (United Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 4393;
Fax: 012 430 4383

**Thailand (Royal Thai)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5470; Fax: 012 342 4805

**Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 9688;
Fax: 012 346 7302

**Tunisia (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6282/83;
Fax: 012 342 6284

**Turkey (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 6055; Fax: 012 342 6052

**Uganda (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria
Tel: 012 342 6031/3; Fax: 012 342 6206

**Ukraine**
Embassy:Pretoria; Tel: 012 460 1946; Fax: 012 460 1944

**United Arab Emirates**
Embassy:Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 7736; Fax: 012 342 7738

**United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland**
Her Britannic Majesty's High Commission: Pretoria; Tel:
012 421 7500; Fax: 012 421 7555

**United States of America**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 431 4000; Fax: 012 342 2299

**Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 6521/2; Fax: 012 362 6523

**Venezuela (Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 6593; Fax: 012 362 6591

**Vietnam (Socialist Republic of)**
Embassy: Pretoria; Tel: 012 362 8119; Fax: 012 362 8115

**Yemen (Republic of)**
Embassy:Pretoria8; Tel: 012 425 0760; Fax: 012 425 0762

**Zambia (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 326 1854; Fax: 012
326 2140

**Zimbabwe (Republic of)**
High Commission: Pretoria; Tel: 012 342 5125; Fax: 012
342 5126

## Representatives of the Republic of South Africa abroad

**Afghanistan (Transitional Islamic State of )**
Representation accredited from Pakistan.

**African Union and United Nations Economic Commission for Africa**
South African Mission: Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; Tel:
+251113711002; Fax: +251113711330

**Albania (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Rome, Italy

**Algeria (Democratic People's Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Hydra, Algiers
Tel: +21321484418; Fax: +21321484419

**Andorra (Principality of)**
Representation accredited from Madrid, Spain

**Angola (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Luanda
Tel: +244222460732; Fax: +244222460638

**Antigua and Barbuda**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Argentina (Republic of) :** South African Embassy: Buenos Aires; Tel: +541143172900; Fax: +541143119993

**Armenia (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Kyiv, Ukraine.

**Australia (Commonwealth of)**
South African High Commission: Canberra
Tel: +61262727300; Fax: +61262723203

**Austria (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Vienna; Tel: +431 320 6493;
Fax: +431 320 0814

**Azerbaijan (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Turkey.

**Bahamas (The Commonwealth of the)**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Bahrain (Kingdom of)**
Representation accredited from Saudi Arabia.

**Bangladesh (People's Republic of)**
Representation accredited from India.

**Barbados**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Belarus (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Russia.

**Belgium (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: (Embassy to Belgium and Luxembourg and Mission to the European Communities); Brussels; Tel: +3222854400; Fax: +3222854402

**Belize**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Benin (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Cotonou; Tel: +229213 0695;
Fax: +2292130685

**Bhutan (The Kingdom of)**
Representation accredited from India.

**Bolivia (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from India.

**Bosnia-Hertzegovina**
Representation accredited from Greece.

**Botswana (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Gaborone
Tel: +2673904800; Fax: +267390550

**Brazil (Federative Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Brasilia
Tel: +556133129500; Fax: +556133228491

**Brunei Darussalam (Negara Brunei Darussalam)**
Representation accredited from Malasia

**Bulgaria (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: SofiaTel: +35929395015;
Fax: +359 29395017

**Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Burkina Faso Tel:+22650376099;
Fax: +22650376097

**Burundi**
South African Embassy: Bujumbura; Tel: +25722244650;
Fax: +25722249164

**Cambodia (Kingdom of)**: Representation accredited from Thailand.

**Cameroon (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: , Yaounde
Tel: +23722200438; Fax: +23722200995

**Canada**
South African High Commission: Ottawa
Tel: +16137440330; Fax: +16137411639

**Cape Verde (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Senegal.

**Central African Republic**
Representation accredited from Cameroon.

**Chad**
South African Embassy: N'Djaména
Tel: +252524006; Fax: +865178850

**Chile (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Santiago; Tel: +5622312860;
Fax: +5622313185

**China (People's Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Beijing; Tel: +86108532000;
Fax: +861065320177

**Colombia (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Venezuela.

**Comoros (The Union of)**
South African Embassy: Moroni; Tel: +269734783;
Fax: +269734524

**Congo (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Brazzaville; Tel: +2425301388;
Fax: +115076073

**Congo (Democratic Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Kinshasa ; Tel: +243814769700;
Fax: +243815554322

**Cook Islands**
Representation accredited from Australia.

**Costa Rica (Republic of)**
South African Honorary Consulate: San Jose
Tel: +5062221470; Fax: +5062238223

**Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Abidjan; Tel: +22522445963;
Fax: +22522447450

**Croatia (Republic of)**
South African Honorary Consulate: Zagreb
Tel: +138514894111; Fax: +138514844363

**Cuba (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Havana; Tel: +5372049671;
Fax: +5372041101

**Cyprus (Republic of)**
South African Honorary Consulate-General:
Nicosia; Tel: +35722374411; Fax: +35722377011

**Czech (Republic)**
South African Embassy: Prague; Tel: +420267311114; Fax: +420267311395

**Denmark (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Copenhagen; Tel: +4539180155; Fax: +4539184006

**Djibouti (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Ethiopia.

**Dominica (Commonwealth of)**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Dominican Republic**
Representation accredited from Cuba.

**East Timor (Republic of Timor Leste)**
Representation accredited from Indonesia.

**Ecuador (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Peru.

**Egypt (Arab Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Cairo; Tel: +20223594365; Fax: +20223595015

**El Salvador (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Mexico.

**Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Malabo; Tel: +240333099522; Fax: +240092746

**Eritrea (State of)**
South African Embassy: Asmara; Tel: +291115251; Fax: +2911152072

**Estonia (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Finland.

**Ethiopia (Federal Democratic Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Addis Ababa; Tel: +251113711002; Fax: +251113711330

**European Union**
South African Mission: Brussels; Tel: +3222854400; Fax: +3222854402

**Fiji (Republic of the Fiji Islands)**
Suva, Fiji; Tel: +6793311087; Fax: +6793311086

**Finland (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Helsinki; Tel: +358968603100; Fax: +358968603160

**France (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Paris; Tel: +33153592323; Fax: +33153592333

**Gabon (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Libreville; Tel: +241791150; Fax: +241774536

**The Gambia**
Representation accredited from Senegal.

**Georgia (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Ukraine.

**Germany (Federal Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Berlin
Tel: +4930220730; Fax: +4930220731

**Ghana (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Accra
Tel: +233302740450; Fax: +23330274460

**Greece (Hellenic Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Athens
Tel: +302106178020; Fax: +3026106640

**Grenada**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Guatemala (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Mexico

**Guinea (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Mossoudougou, Conakry;Tel: +22430466015; Fax: +22430466016

**Guinea-Bissau (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: CP 1334, Bissau
Tel: +2456655444

**Guyana (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Haiti (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Holy See (The Vatican)**
Representation accredited from Switzerland.

**Honduras (Republic of)**
South African Honorary Consulate: San Pedro Sula
Tel: +5045522093; Fax: +5045532553

**Hong Kong**
South African Consulate-General: Wanchai
Tel: +85225773279; Fax: +85228901975

**Hungary (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Budapest; Tel: +3613920999; Fax: +3612007277

**Iceland (Republic of)**
South African Honorary Consulate-General: Reykjavik
Tel: +3545910355; Fax: +3545910358

**India (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: New Delhi
Tel: +911126149411; Fax: +911126143605

**Indonesia (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Jakarta
Tel: +622129912500; Fax: +62215740661

**International Monetary Fund [World Bank]**
South African Permanent Mission: Washington DC USA;
Tel: +12023648320; Fax: +12023546008

**Iran (Islamic Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Tehran
Tel: +982122702866; Fax: +98212719516

**Ireland**
South African Embassy: Dublin; Tel: +35316615553;

Fax: +35316615590

**Israel (State of)**
South African Embassy: Tel Aviv
Tel: 97235252566 Fax: +97235253230

**Italy (Italian Republic)**
South African Embassy: Rome; Tel: +3906852541;
Fax: +390685254301

**Jamaica**
South African High Commission: Kingston
Tel: +1876978 3160; Fax: +18769780339

**Japan**
South African Embassy: Tokyo; Tel: +81332653366;
Fax: +81332653573

**Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Amman; Tel: +96265921194;
Fax: +96265920080

**Kazakhstan (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Astana; Tel: +7172925326;
Fax: 00 77172925329

**Kenya (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Nairobi
Tel: +254202827100; Fax: +254202827245

**Kiribati (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Australia.

**Korea (Democratic People's Republic of)**
Representation accredited from China.

**Korea (Republic of South)**
South African Embassy: Seoul; Tel: +8227924855;
Fax: +8227924856

**Kuwait (The State of)**
South African Embassy: Kuwait; Tel: +96525617988;
Fax: +96525617917

**Kyrgyz Republic**
Representation accredited from Kazakhstan.

**Lao People's Democratic Republic**
Representation accredited from Thailand.

**Latvia (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Sweden.

**Lebanon (Republic of)**
South African Honorary Consulate:
Representation accredited from Syria.

**Lesotho (Kingdom of)**
South African High Commission: Maseru
Tel: +26622225800; Fax: +26622325228

**Liberia (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Congo Town, Monrovia
(no further contact details available)

**Libya (Great Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)**
South African Embassy: Tripoli
Tel: +218213337006; Fax: +218213340432

**Liechtenstein (Principality of):** Representation accredited from Switzerland.

**Lithuania (Republic of)**: Representation accredited from Denmark.

**Luxembourg (Grand Duchy of)**: Representation accredited from Belgium.

**Madagascar (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Antananarivo
Tel: +261202243350; Fax: +261202249514

**Malawi (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Lilongwe
Tel: +2651773722 ; Fax: +2651772571

**Malaysia (Federation of)**
South African High Commission: Kuala Lumpur
Tel: +60321702412; Fax: +60321643742

**Maldives (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from India.

**Mali (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Bamako
Tel: +22320292925; Fax: +22320292926

**Malta**
Representation accredited from Italy

**Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)**
PB 2006, Nouakchatt, Mauritania
Tel: +2225241287; Fax: +2225245591

**Mauritius (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Port Louis
Tel: +2302126925; Fax: +2302126936

**Mexico (United Mexican States)**
South African Embassy: Colonia Polanco
Tel: +525511004970; Fax: +525552829259

**Micronesia (Federated States of)**
Representation accredited from Australia.

**Moldova (Republic of):** Representation accredited from Ukraine.

**Monaco (Principality of)**: Representation accredited from France.

**Mongolia**: Representation accredited from PRC.

**Montenegro**: Representation accredited from Greece

**Morocco (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Rabat
Tel: +2125706760; Fax: +2125724550

**Mozambique (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Maputo Tel:
+25821491614; Fax: +25821493029
**Myanmar (The Union of)**: Representation accredited from Thailand.

**Namibia (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Windhoek
Tel: +264612057111; Fax: +26461227771

**Nauru (Republic of):** Representation accredited from Australia.

**Nepal (Kingdom of)**
Representation accredited from Sri Lanka.

**Netherlands (The Kingdom of the)**
South African Embassy: The Hague
Tel: +31703924501; Fax: +31703460669

**New Zealand**
South African High Commission: Wellington
Tel: +6442348006; Fax: +6442348075

**Nicaragua**
Representation accredited from Mexico.

**Niger (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Niamey, Niger
Tel: +22720726083; Fax: +22720726082

**Nigeria (Federal Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Plot 371, Diplomatic Zone, CBD Abuja; Tel: +23494624200;
Fax: +23494133829

**Niue**
Representation accredited from Australia.

**Norfolk Island**
Representation accredited from Australia.

**Norway (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Oslo; Tel: +4723273220;
Fax: +4722443975

**Oman (Sultanate of)**
South African Embassy: Muscat ; Tel: +96824647300;
Fax: +96824694792

**Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)**
South African High Commission: IslamabadTel:
+92512262354; Fax: +92512250114

**Palestine (State of)**
South African Representative Office: West Bank
Tel: +97282841313; Fax: +97282841333

**Palau (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Australia.

**Panama (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Peru.
**Papua New Guinea**
Representation accredited from Singapore.

**Paraguay (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Argentine

**Peru (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Lima; Tel: +5116124848;
Fax: +5114223881

**Philippines (Republic of the)**
South African Embassy: Makati City; Tel: +6328899383;
Fax: +6328899337

**Poland (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Warsaw; Tel: +48226256228;
Fax: +48226256270

**Portugal (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Avenida Luis Bvar 10, 1069-024 Lisbon ; Tel: +351213192200; Fax: +351213535713

**Qatar (State of)**
South African Embassy: Dohar; Tel: +9744857111;
Fax: +9744835961

**Romania**
South African Embassy: Bucharest
Tel: +40213133725; Fax: +40213133795

**Russian Federation**
South African Embassy: Moscow
Tel: +74959261177; Fax: +74959261178

**Rwanda (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Kigali
Tel: +250252583185; Fax: +250252511758

**Saint Kitts and Nevis**
Representation accredited from Jamaica.
**Saint Lucia:** Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Saint Vincent and the Grenadines:** Representation accredited from Jamaica.

**Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic:** Representation accredited from Algeria
**San Marino (Republic of)**: Representation accredited from Italy.

**São Tomé and Principe (Democratic Republic of)**
South African Embassy: São Tomé and Principe
Tel: +239225719; Fax: +2392224916

**Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Riyadh
Tel: +96614229716; Fax: +96614229712

**Senegal (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Dakar; Tel: +221338651959;
Fax: +22133864 2359

**Serbia**
Representation accredited from Greece.

**Seychelles (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Mauritius.

**Sierra Leone (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Ivory Coast.
**Singapore (Republic of)**
South African High Commission:
Tel: +6563393319; Fax: +6563396658

**Slovak Republic**
Representation accredited from Austria

**Slovenia (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Austria.
**Somalia (Republic of**
Representation accredited from Ethiopia.

**South Sudan (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Juba; Tel: +27211922000440

**Spain (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Madrid
Tel: +34914363780; Fax: +34915777414

**Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic)**
South African High Commission: Colombo
Tel: +94112689926; Fax: +94112688670

**Sudan (Republic of the)**
South African Embassy: Khartoum
Tel: +249183585301; Fax: +249183585082

**Suriname**
Representation accredited from Jamaica

**Swaziland (Kingdom of)**
South African High Commission: Mbabane
Tel: +2684044651/4; Fax: +2684044335

**Sweden (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Stockholm
Tel: +468243950; Fax: +4686607136

**Switzerland (Swiss Confederation)**
South African Embassy: Berne
Tel: +41313501313; Fax: +41313501310

**Syrian (Arab Republic)**
South African Embassy: Damascus
Tel: +963161351520; Fax: +963116111714

**Taiwan**
Liaison Office of South Africa: Taipei
Tel: +886227153251; Fax: +886227125109

**Tajikistan (United Republic of):** Representation accredited from Kazakhstan

**Tanzania (United Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Dar-es-Salaam
Tel: +255222601800; Fax: +255222600684

**Thailand (Kingdom of)**
South African Embassy: Bangkok, 10330, Thailand
Tel: +6626592900; Fax: +6622501063

**Togo (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Ivory Coast

**Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Trinidad
Tel: +18686229869; Fax: +18686227089

**Tunisia (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Tunis
Tel: +21671798449; Fax: +21671796742

**Turkey (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Ankara
Tel: +903124466861; Fax: +903134466434

**Uganda (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Kampala
Tel: +256417702100; Fax: +256414348216

**Ukraine**
South African Embassy: Kyiv
Tel: +380442877172; Fax: +380442897206

**United Arab Emirates**
South African Embassy]; Abu Dhabi
Tel: +97124473446; Fax: +97124473031

**United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland**
South African High Commission: London
Tel: +442074517299; Fax: +442074517284

**United Nations – New York**
South African Permanent Mission: New York; NY
Tel: 00 1212 213 4880 Fax: 00 1212 213 0102

**United Nations – Geneva**
South African Permanent Mission: Geneva, Tel: 004122 849 5454 Fax: 004122 849 5432

**United States of America**
South African Embassy: Washington DC Tel: +120222324400; Fax: +120222651607

**Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Montevideo
Tel: +59826017591; Fax: +59826003165

**Uzbekistan (Republic of)**
Representation accredited from Turkey

**Venezuela (Bolivarian Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Caracas
Tel: +582129520026; Fax: +582129520277

**Vietnam**
South African Embassy: Hanoi
Tel: +8449362000; Fax: +8449361991

**Yemen (Republic of):** Representation accredited from Saudi Arabia

**Zambia (Republic of)**
South African High Commission: Lusaka, Tel: +2601260999; Fax: +2601263001

**Zimbabwe (Republic of)**
South African Embassy: Harare
Tel: +2634753147; Fax: +2634757908